

THIS FILE IS MADE AVAILABLE THROUGH THE DECLASSIFICATION EFFORTS AND RESEARCH OF:

# THE BLACK VAULT

THE BLACK VAULT IS THE LARGEST ONLINE FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT / GOVERNMENT RECORD CLEARING HOUSE IN THE WORLD. THE RESEARCH EFFORTS HERE ARE RESPONSIBLE FOR THE DECLASSIFICATION OF THOUSANDS OF DOCUMENTS THROUGHOUT THE U.S. GOVERNMENT, AND ALL CAN BE DOWNLOADED BY VISITING:

[HTTP://WWW.BLACKVAULT.COM](http://www.blackvault.com)

YOU ARE ENCOURAGED TO FORWARD THIS DOCUMENT TO YOUR FRIENDS, BUT PLEASE KEEP THIS IDENTIFYING IMAGE AT THE TOP OF THE .PDF SO OTHERS CAN DOWNLOAD MORE!

140816



# SPOT REPORT

SPOT REPORT (DTG) 131642(L)DEC03

MSG ID

**Line 1 - SITUATION OR ACTIVITY OBSERVED**

Prisoner fight in Ganci Compound 3 involving 30-40 prisoners

**Line 2 - ACTION**

MP 31001 - range non-lethal crowd dispersal round into the melee

**Line 3 - RESULT**

Disturbance ended

**Line 4 - DATE/TIME OBSERVED** 131642(L)DEC03

**Line 5 - LOCATION** BCF, Camp Ganci, Compound 2

**Line 6 - UNIT/GROUP ID** UNK

**Line 7 - EQUIPMENT/CLOTHING/VEHICLE** Tent poles

**Line 8 - SOURCE**

**Line 9 - REPORTING POC** SSG [REDACTED]

**Line 10 - REPORTING UNIT** 320<sup>th</sup> MP BN

**Line 11 - TELEPHONE (DSN/COMM)** 559-1738

**Line 12 - EMAIL**

RECEIVED BY

DTG

POSTED BY

FORWARDED BY

DTG

TO

UNCLASSIFIED//~~FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY~~

ANNEX 16

**Baghdad Correctional Facility – SIR**

- 1 Category: NA
- 2 Type of Incident: DISTURBANCE IN GANCI, ATTACK ON MP
- 3 DTG:171459(L)DEC2003
- 4 Location: BAGHDAD CORRECTIONAL FACILITY
- 5 Weekend/Holiday: None
- 6 Personnel involved

**a Subject 1**

- i Name: [REDACTED]
- ii Rank: NA
- iii ISN: [REDACTED]
- iv Nationality: IRAQI
- v Sex: M
- vi DOB: [REDACTED]
- vii Position: NA
- viii Security: NA

**B Subject 2**

- i Name: [REDACTED]
- ii Rank: NA
- iii ISN: [REDACTED]
- iv Nationality: IRAQI
- v Sex: M
- vi DOB: [REDACTED]
- vii Position: NA
- viii Security: NA

**C Subject 3**

- i Name: [REDACTED]
- ii Rank: NA
- iii ISN: [REDACTED]
- iv Nationality: IRAQI
- v Sex: M
- vi DOB: UNK
- vii Position: NA
- viii Security: NA
- ix Crime Accused: UNK

**D Subject 4**

- i Name: [REDACTED]
- ii Rank: SPC
- iii SSN: [REDACTED]
- iv Nationality: US
- v Sex: M
- vi DOB: [REDACTED]
- vii Position: MP
- viii Security: SECRET

**E Subject 5**

- i. Name [REDACTED]
- ii Rank SGT
- iii ISN: [REDACTED]
- iv. Nationality US
- v. Sex M
- vi. DOB: [REDACTED]
- vii. Position. MP
- viii. Security: SECRET

7. Narrative of Incident: During prisoner feeding, subject one became disruptive requiring MP to physically subdue him. While taking down the prisoner, the other two subjects lunged at MP. One round of non-lethal was deployed. Subjects two and three were quickly subdued without injury to MP.

All three prisoners are segregated in isolation

8 Remarks

9 Publicity UNK

10 Command Reporting 320<sup>th</sup> MP BN

11 POC [REDACTED]

12 Downgrading Instructions



## Camp Bucca Detention Facility



### An Analysis Of The Escape of On 26 January 2004 from Compound 9

Conducted by:  
CPT [REDACTED] / 310<sup>th</sup> MP BN S-3



## Timeline (26 January 04)



- 0001 CPT [REDACTED] (S-3) instructs SSG [REDACTED] (Battle Captain) to implement Fog Plan do to the increasing low level FOG moving in (if needed)
- 0020 OIC (1LT [REDACTED] 988<sup>th</sup> MP Co) plans to implement Fog Plan
- 0030 Visibility very poor; OIC calls Fog Plan
- 0040 All compounds notified to implement Fog Plan
- 0100 Response team arrives by PLT (entire 988<sup>th</sup> MP Co / IF OPS)
- 0200 OIC lifts Fog Plan do to the fog lifting and visibility increasing
- 0215 SFC [REDACTED] (CCT -NCOIC) reports all prisoners accounted for
- 0300 OIC fog coming in heavy, visibility 25 meters,
- 0320 OIC reinstates Fog Plan, plans order of count of compound 12, 11, 10, 9 & 8
- 0330 SRT and additional MPs arrives
- 0355 Compound 9 receives notice of Fog Plan, instructed to count
- 0440 Complete count (as per compound 9) (CCT reports 100% accountability)
- 0545 After arrive back from the IF, CPT [REDACTED] tells SSG [REDACTED] to have compounds conduct complete ISN count of all detainees



## Timeline

(Continue)



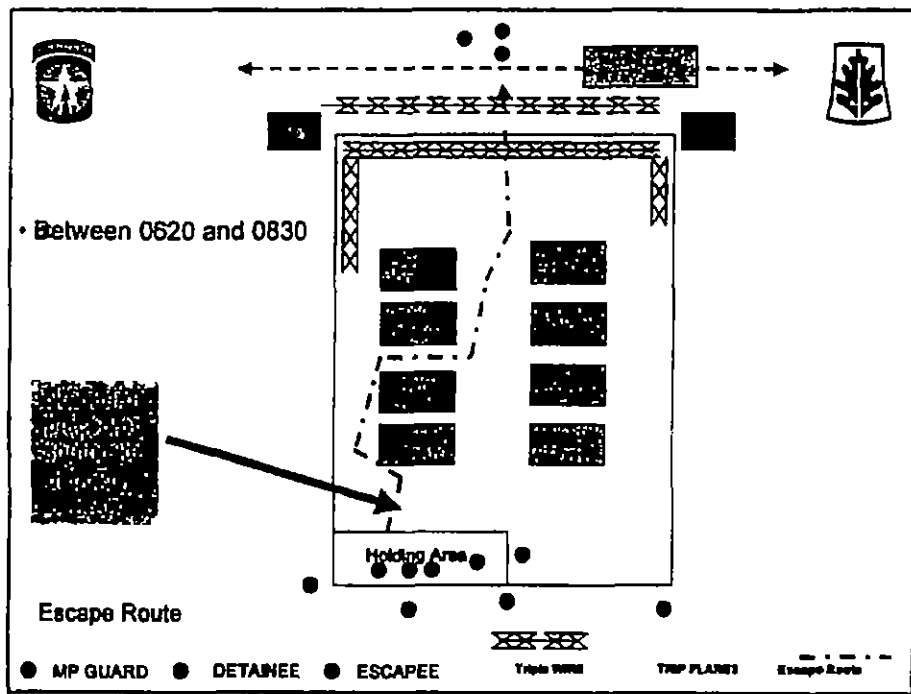
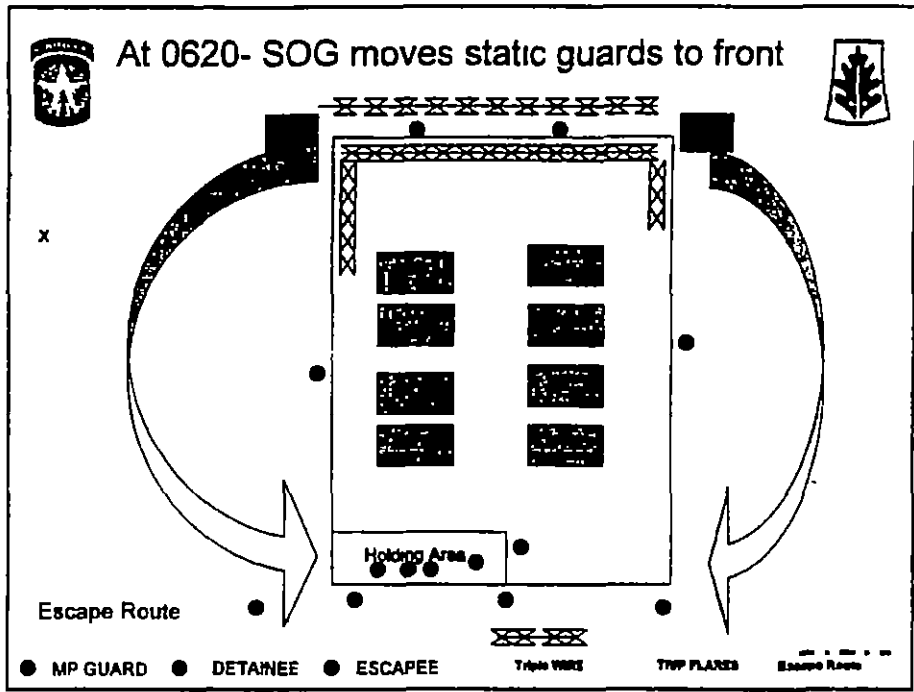
0600 OIC moves static guard and tower to front  
0620 Last static guards moves to front  
0700 Compound 9 conducts counts by ISN (approximate detainee chow arrival)  
0730 Chow arrives at compound 9 approximately  
0830 CCT 9 discovers ISNs are missing  
0930 SOG fog starts to lift, move back to towers (compound 9)  
1000 SOG calls off Fog Plan  
1013 Fog Plan lifted, advised compound NCOIC and SOG  
1030 SOG meets with [REDACTED] (463 - coming up short) 458 (2 in hospital)  
1140 Advised by compound 9 that prisoners reported as hospitalized  
1145 Rover team sent to check for tracks  
1151 Advised by compound 9 SOG of foot tracks from back and over berm  
1200 Notified 977th to activate QRF to conduct search  
1240 Advised by MSG [REDACTED] (OPS -SGM) that detainees 115236, 116272, 151933, need manifest to include pictures  
1410 Contact British forces and local Iraqi Police in UMM Qasar

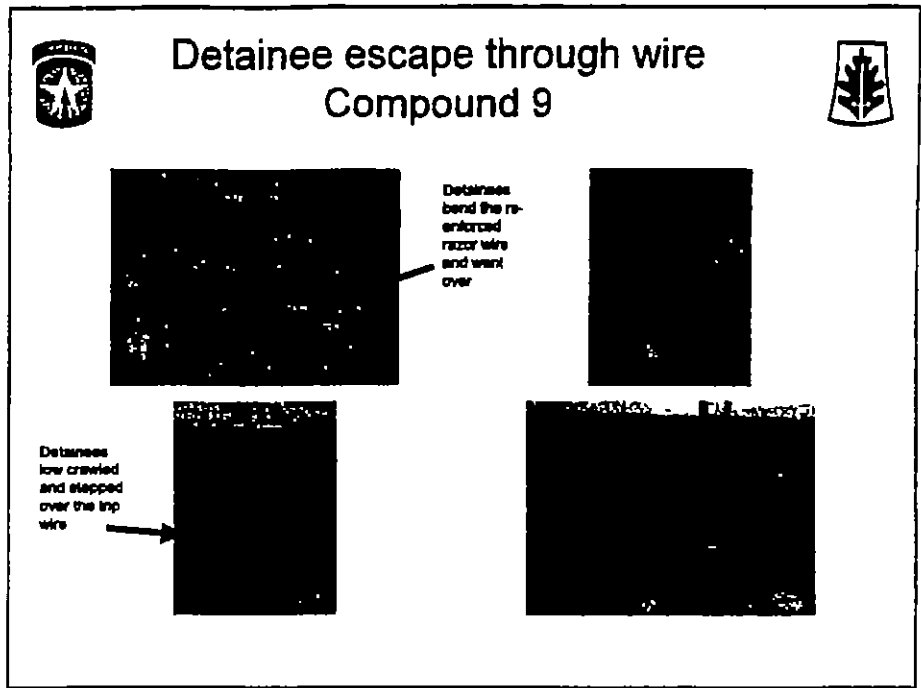


## Summary of Key Events



- Visibility was 10 to 15 meters from 0300 to 0900
- 988<sup>th</sup> MP CO used entire company to surround the compound Rule of thumb was each guard was placed within viewing distance of each other
- Conditions and use of guards coming off a 12 hour shift hampered observation ability
- MP/Guards were not completely surrounding the holding pen after count was complete as instructed in the FOG Plan MPs were placed on the North, East, and West No guard was placed on the south side of the holding pen
- Holding area dimensions are approximately 20 x 50 meters
- The SOG moved the exterior static guards on the south side of compound 9 at 0620
- Compound control team NCO did not immediately inform the SOG that his count may be off He recounted to check his original count
- The window of opportunity for the detainee to escape is established between 0620 and 0830 It was during this time that the exterior static guards on the south side of compound 9 move to the front of the compound and when the compound control team NCO discovered the count was off during detainee feeding
- SOG discovers that detainees low crawled under the wire from the holding area to the rear of the compound and through the rear layer of wire





**Corrective Action**

---

In-Process

- Chain link fence
- 20-foot ditch around entire compound
- K-9 dog teams
- Additional trip flares
- Additional radios

Not Confirmed

- Thermal equipment
- Contracted engineer assets to add additional wire





## Corrective Action



---

### SOP Improvements

- Fog Plan rehearsal of plan
- Count procedures
- Ensure that 360 degree security is maintained on compound at ALL times to include holding area during FOG plan
- Use of QM, BN, and Signal personnel for additional bodies once all MPs are exhausted

**SWORN STATEMENT**

For use of this form, see AR 190-45, the proponent agency is ODCSOPS

**PRIVACY ACT STATEMENT**

**AUTHORITY** Title 10 USC Section 301, Title 5 USC Section 2951 E O 9397 dated November 22 1943 /SSN/  
**PRINCIPAL PURPOSE** To provide commanders and law enforcement officials with means by which information may be accurately  
**ROUTINE USES** Your social security number is used as an additional/alternate means of identification to facilitate filing and retrieval  
**DISCLOSURE** Disclosure of your social security number is voluntary

1 LOCATION	2 DATE (YYYYMMDD) 2004 1 27	3 TIME 1300 HRS	4 FILE NUMBER
5 LAST NAME, FIRST NAME MIDDLE NAME [REDACTED]	6 SSN [REDACTED]	7 GRADE/STATUS E-4 / SPC	
8 ORGANIZATION OR ADDRESS 310TH MP BN			

9  
 I, [REDACTED] WANT TO MAKE THE FOLLOWING STATEMENT UNDER OATH

On Monday, 26 JAN 2004, Sgt [REDACTED] and I reported to work at the IF. We assumed responsibilities at compound 9 at around 0002 hrs I could see that there was fog in the area, making it hard for us to see the compound we were informed that the Fog Plan was to be actuated we were told to tell the prisoners to stay in their tents later we were told to start getting the prisoners out of their tents and take them into the holding pen I was lining up the detainees to send them into the pen, 10 at a time Sgt [REDACTED] was counting them as they walked into the pen once the count was done, Sgt [REDACTED] said that our count was at 100%. The Fog Plan was still dense and we kept the prisoners in the holding pen the prisoners were still in the pen when the morning chow arrived at around 0700 hrs we started feeding the prisoners and also conducted an ISN manifest count Sgt [REDACTED] was counting the prisoners tent by tent by ISN number The prisoners ate their food in the holding pen because the Fog Plan had not been lifted we ~~perceived~~<sup>received</sup> received word that the Fog Plan had been lifted and the prisoners were counted as they left the holding pen Sgt Plummer was not comfortable with the count, he tried to make contact with the TOC but he couldn't get through He then asked the tower guard to get a hold of his SOB and the SOG was informed by Sgt. [REDACTED]

10 EXHIBIT	11 INITIALS OF PERSON MAKING STATEMENT [REDACTED]	PAGE 1 OF 3 PAGES
------------	--	-------------------

ADDITIONAL PAGES MUST CONTAIN THE HEADING "STATEMENT \_\_\_\_\_ TAKEN AT \_\_\_\_\_ DATED \_\_\_\_\_"

THE BOTTOM OF EACH ADDITIONAL PAGE MUST BEAR THE INITIALS OF THE PERSON MAKING THE STATEMENT AND PAGE NUMBER MUST BE INDICATED

USE THIS PAGE IF NEEDED IF THIS PAGE IS NOT NEEDED PLEASE PROCEED TO FINAL PAGE OF THIS FORM

STATEMENT OF [REDACTED] TAKEN AT 1300 HRS DATED 2004 1 27

9 STATEMENT (Continued)

that he was not comfortable with the count. The prisoners were then placed back in the holding pen and made another count and came to the conclusion that there were 4 detainees missing from the compound.

END OF STATEMENT

INITIALS OF PERSON MAKING STATEMENT [REDACTED]

PAGE 2 OF PAGES

STATEMENT OF [REDACTED] TAKEN AT 1300 HRS DATED 2005-11-27

9 STATEMENT (Continued)

AFFIDAVIT

I, [REDACTED] HAVE READ OR HAVE HAD READ TO ME THIS STATEMENT WHICH BEGINS ON PAGE 1, AND ENDS ON PAGE 2 I FULLY UNDERSTAND THE CONTENTS OF THE ENTIRE STATEMENT MADE BY ME THE STATEMENT IS TRUE I HAVE INITIALED ALL CORRECTIONS AND HAVE INITIALED THE BOTTOM OF EACH PAGE CONTAINING THE STATEMENT I HAVE MADE THIS STATEMENT FREELY WITHOUT HOPE OF BENEFIT OR REWARD, WITHOUT THREAT OF PUNISHMENT AND WITHOUT COERCION UNLAWFUL INFLUENCE OR UNLAWFUL INDUCEMENT

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of Person Making Statement)

WITNESSES

Subscribed and sworn to before me a person authorized by law, I administer oaths this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
ORGANIZATION OR ADDRESS

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of Person Administering Oath)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Typed Name of Person Administering Oath)

\_\_\_\_\_  
ORGANIZATION OR ADDRESS

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Authority To Administer Oaths)

INITIALS OF PERSON MAKING STATEMENT [REDACTED]

PAGE 3 OF 3 PAGES

# SWORN STATEMENT

For use of this form, see AR 190-45, the proponent agency is ODCSOPS

## PRIVACY ACT STATEMENT

**AUTHORITY** Title 10 USC Section 301 Title 5 USC Section 2951, E.O. 9397 dated November 22, 1943, SSN  
**PRINCIPAL PURPOSE** To provide commanders and law enforcement officials with means by which information may be accurately  
**ROUTINE USES** Your social security number is used as an additional/alternate means of identification to facilitate filing and retrieval  
**DISCLOSURE** Disclosure of your social security number is voluntary

1 LOCATION	2 DATE (YYYYMMDD) 20040127	3 TIME 1300	4 FILE NUMBER
5 LAST NAME, FIRST NAME, MIDDLE NAME [REDACTED]	6 SSN [REDACTED]	7 GRADE STATUS 15	
8 ORGANIZATION OR ADDRESS 31011 mp BA			

9 I, [REDACTED] WANT TO MAKE THE FOLLOWING STATEMENT UNDER OATH

At approximately 0335 the fog plan was placed into effect. After I was informed that the covers were in place at the back of the compound and to start my count I did. The Camp major was informed that the fog plan was in effect and he started to call all detainees from their tents. SFC [REDACTED] group the detainees by "1" and counted them off by ten as he sent them to me. I then, using a hand held counter, counted them into the feed pen. Once we had 100% count approximately 440 I informed the NCOIC/OIC of the camp status.

Once morning chow arrived (between 0700-0730) I counted the detainees once again using the ISN manifest. At the end of this count I was not comfortable with the numbers I obtained. About the same time the NCO in charge of the manifest came for the daily pick-up. I informed the sergeant that I wanted to check the numbers with the log book and movement sheet before the manifest was taken.

Once the fog plan was lifted, which was about the same time, started to perform another count. I was still unhappy with the numbers. At this time I attempted to contact the NCOIC/OIC on the site.

con't

10 EXHIBIT	11 INITIALS OF PERSON MAKING STATEMENT [REDACTED]	PAGE 1 OF 2 PAGES
------------	--	-------------------

ADDITIONAL PAGES MUST CONTAIN THE HEADING "STATEMENT \_\_\_\_\_ TAKEN AT \_\_\_\_\_ DATED \_\_\_\_\_"  
THE BOTTOM OF EACH ADDITIONAL PAGE MUST BEAR THE INITIALS OF THE PERSON MAKING THE STATEMENT AND PAGE NUMBER MUST BE INDICATED

STATEMENT OF

[REDACTED]

TAKEN AT

1300

DATED

June 01 27

9 STATEMENT (Continued)

and the TOC with no luck I then told the trainees to contact the SOG. Once the SOG arrived another count was conducted with the conclusion that (4) detainees were missing from compound #7.

SOG/OIC took the necessary steps and started the search and investigation which initially concluded that the detainees left the back of the Forward Per making their way to the back of the compound and low cabbles outside of the IF, now waiting final result of investigation.  
End Statement.

INITIALS OF PERSON MAKING STATEMENT

[REDACTED]

PAGE 2 OF 2 PAGES

STATEMENT OF \_\_\_\_\_ TAKEN AT \_\_\_\_\_ DATED \_\_\_\_\_

9 STATEMENT (Continued)

**AFFIDAVIT**

I, \_\_\_\_\_, HAVE READ OR HAVE HAD READ TO ME THIS STATEMENT WHICH BEGINS ON PAGE 1 AND ENDS ON PAGE 2. I FULLY UNDERSTAND THE CONTENTS OF THE ENTIRE STATEMENT MADE BY ME. THE STATEMENT IS TRUE. I HAVE INITIALED ALL CORRECTIONS AND HAVE INITIALED THE BOTTOM OF EACH PAGE CONTAINING THE STATEMENT. I HAVE MADE THIS STATEMENT FREELY WITHOUT HOPE OF BENEFIT OR REWARD WITHOUT THREAT OF PUNISHMENT AND WITHOUT COERCION, UNLAWFUL INFLUENCE OR UNLAWFUL INDUCEMENT.

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signature of Person Making Statement)*

WITNESSES

Subscribed and sworn to before me, a person authorized by law to administer oaths, this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
ORGANIZATION OR ADDRESS

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Signature of Person Administering Oath)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
ORGANIZATION OR ADDRESS

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Typed Name of Person Administering Oath)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Authority To Administer Oaths)*

INITIALS OF PERSON MAKING STATEMENT

PAGE OF PAGE

**DAILY STAFF JOURNAL OR DUTY OFFICER'S LOG**

For use of this form see AR 220-15 the proponent agency  
is Office of The Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations & Plans

PAGE NO

NO OF PAGES

ORGANIZATION OR INSTALLATION

30th mp BR

LOCATION

Comp  
Bureau Hq

PERIOD COVERED

FROM TO  
HOUR DATE HOUR DATE  
0001 25 Jan 04

ITEM NO	TIME		INCIDENTS, MESSAGES, ORDERS, ETC	ACTION TAKEN	INL
	IN	OUT			
1	0001		Sgt [redacted] to Sgt [redacted] on Duty relieved Sgt [redacted] and SFC [redacted] w/m [redacted]	Logged	
2	0030		Compound check made	Logged	
3	0100		Compound check	Logged	
4	0104		Comme check w/Tower on [redacted] Note 127 Radio is map	Logged	
5	0130		check made of compound	Logged	
6	0200		Compound check made	Logged	
7	0230		Compound check	Logged	
8	0300		Compound check	Logged	
9	0330		Compound check	Logged	
10	0400		compound check	Logged	
11	0420		Dog had set off trip flare Directly in rear of compound	Logged	
12	0500		Compound check	Logged	
13	0530		Compound check	Logged	
14	0600		Compound check	Logged	
15	0600		Compound check	Logged	
15	0653		morning chow arrives	Logged	
16	0730		ON the morning count (462) in the wire (464) assigned	Logged	
17	0930		Returns # 152462, 150899		

TYPED NAME AND GRADE OF OFFICER OR OFFICIAL ON DUTY

[redacted] Sgt

SIGNATURE

[redacted] Sgt/c.s



**DAILY STAFF JOURNAL OR DUTY OFFICER'S LOG**

For use of this form see AR 220-18 the proponent agency is Office of The Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations & Plans

PAGE NO

2

NO. OF PAGES

ORGANIZATION OR INSTALLATION		LOCATION		PERIOD COVERED			
				FROM		TO	
36th mp BN		Camp Bucca 09		HOUR	DATE	HOUR	DATE
				0600	25 Jan 04	0600	25 Jan 04
ITEM NO	TIME		INCIDENTS, MESSAGES, ORDERS, ETC	ACTION TAKEN	INL		
	IN	OUT					
			116465 115340 116400, 151804				
			150747, 150374, 151718, 116337				
			150258, <del>150757</del> <sup>TP</sup> , 115638				
			Tmc note TP.	Logged			
1020			Detainee # 150825, 151803				
			152037, 151953, 151867				
			151281 AT TMC (sick call)				
			(443) in wire				
11:15			150899, 116400, 151804, 151718				
			116337, 150258, 115638 Return				
			From sick call (450) in wire	Logged			
1130			# 152462, 116465, 115340, 150-				
			747, 150379, 150258, 151867				
			151281 151953 Return Fco				
			Sick call (451) in wire	Logged			
1200			Relieved by Sgt				

NAME AND GRADE OF OFFICER OR OFFICIAL ON DUTY

[Redacted Name]

SIGNATURE

[Redacted Signature]

**DAILY STAFF JOURNAL OR DUTY OFFICER'S LOG**

For use of this form, see AR 220-15 the proponent agency is Office of The Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations & Plans

PAGE NO

1

NO OF PAGES

2

ORGANIZATION OR INSTALLATION		LOCATION		PERIOD COVERED			
310 MP BN		COMP 9 CAMP BUCCA		FROM		TO	
				HOUR	DATE	HOUR	DATE
				12.00	20040126	00 01	20040127
ITEM NO	TIME		INCIDENTS MESSAGES ORDERS ETC	ACTION TAKEN	INL		
	IN	OUT					
1	12.00		SGT [REDACTED] AND SPC [REDACTED]				
			RELIEVED SGT [REDACTED] AND SPC [REDACTED]				
			[REDACTED]	LOGGED			
2	12.30		POSSIBLE ESCAPE, FOUR				
			DETAINEES 116272 151933152	LOGGED			
3	13.00		115235, 115459	LOGGED			
3	13.00		INVESTIGATING POSSIBLE ESCAPE	LOGGED			
4	13.30		CONT INVESTIGATION ON POSSIBLE				
			ESCAPE.	LOGGED			
5	14.00		COMMENCE COUNT	LOGGED			
6	15.00		END COUNT T.C 459	LOGGED			
7	15.30		COMMENCE FEEDING	LOGGED			
8	17.00		END FEEDING	LOGGED			
9	17.30		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
10	18.00		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
11	18.30		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
12	19.00		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
13	19.30		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
14	20.00		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
15	20.30		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
16	21.00		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
17	21.30		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
18	22.00		ALL SECURE	LOGGED			
TYPED NAME AND GRADE OF OFFICER OR OFFICIAL ON DUTY				SIGNATURE			
[REDACTED]				[REDACTED]			

**DAILY STAFF JOURNAL OR DUTY OFFICER'S LOG**

For use of this form, see AR 220-15. The proponent agency is Office of The Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations & Plans

PAGE NO. 7

NO. OF PAGES

ORGANIZATION OR INSTALLATION <b>310TH MP BN</b>	LOCATION <b>CAMP BUCCA</b>	PERIOD COVERED			
		FROM		TO	
		HOUR <b>2000</b>	DATE <b>01-25-01</b>	HOUR	DATE

ITEM NO	TIME		INCIDENTS MESSAGES ORDERS ETC	ACTION TAKEN	INITIALS
	IN	OUT			
1	2000		SSG ██████ ASSUMES DUTY		
2	0020		1 OIC - IMPLEMENTS FOG PLAN		
3	0040		ALL COMPANIES NOTIFIED OF IMPLEMENTATION OF FOG PLAN		
4	0200		1 OIC LIFTS FOG PLAN. AWAITING CONFIRMATION FROM COMPANIES -		
5	0215		SFC ██████ REPORTS ALL PRESENTS ACCOUNTED FOR & RETURNED TO TENTS		
6	0320		1 OIC REACTIVATES FOG PLAN		
7	0610		FOG PLAN LIFTED		
08	0800		SSG ██████ off duty	Log (see 1)	

TYPED NAME AND GRADE OF OFFICER OR OFFICIAL ON DUTY	SIGNATURE
---	-----------

**DAILY STAFF JOURNAL OR DUTY OFFICER'S LOG**

For use of this form, see AR 220-15, the proponent agency  
 is Office of The Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations & Plans

PAGE NO

1

NO OF PAGES

2 of 3

ORGANIZATION OR INSTALLATION <b>310TH MP BN</b>	LOCATION <b>CAMP BUCCA TOL</b>	PERIOD COVERED			
		FROM		TO	
		HOUR <b>0800</b>	DATE <b>01-26-04</b>	HOUR <b>200</b>	DATE <b>01-26-04</b>

ITEM NC	TIME		INCIDENTS MESSAGES ORDERS ETC	ACTION TAKEN	IN.
	IN	OUT			
01	0800		SSG [redacted] on duty no serious incidents to report.	Logged	[redacted]
02	0904		Sgt [redacted] notified TOL that clearance is pending. Release notified SFC [redacted] En route to location in about 15 min.	Logged	[redacted]
03	1013		FOL Plan has been lifted advised by Command NLTCC and SOG	Logged	[redacted]
04	1102		Advised that POC class has been changed from 1030 to 1400 advised 977+988+310	Logged	[redacted]
05	1146		Advised [redacted] manager that I have local national + CSA referred at TOL BERMA TO SEE [redacted]	Logged	[redacted]
06	1151		Advised by command 9 that prisoners 116432-116431-151282 referred as Bremer hospitalized are not logged in only one '15 116432	Logged	[redacted]
07	1155		Advised by Sgt of four tracks from back of command 9 and over Burma	NOTIFIED 977 TO ACTIVATE ASO	[redacted]
08	1241D		Advised by S-3A that detainees 115236 <sup>work up</sup> 116272, 151933, 152969 need manifest to include pictures distributed to each command. Notified S-1 need to notify S-1 SEC. S-3A advised that possible	ADVISE	[redacted]

TYPED NAME AND GRADE OF OFFICER OR OFFICIAL ON DUTY <b>[redacted] Etc</b>	SIGNATURE <b>[redacted]</b>
--	--------------------------------

**DAILY STAFF JOURNAL OR DUTY OFFICER'S LOG**

For use of this form, see AR 220-15, the proponent agency  
is Office of The Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations & Plans

PAGE NO

2

NO OF PAGES

1 of 3

ORGANIZATION OR INSTALLATION		LOCATION		PERIOD COVERED			
				FROM		TO	
				HOUR	DATE	HOUR	DATE
310TH mp BN		Camp Bucca TOL		0800	01-26-04	2000	01-26-04
ITEM NO	TIME		INCIDENTS MESSAGES ORDERS ETC	ACTION TAKEN	INL		
	IN	OUT					
			ESCAPE ATTEMPT WAS MADE. FROM REAR OF COMPOUND 9 FORTH-KHAWAR SIDE NOTICED DAMAGE TO WIRE POSSIBLE TIME OF ESCAPE 0444 HRS TO 0830 HRS. 977 HAS PATROLS OUT IN AREA. ALSO OUT TEAM 2 VEHICLES.	LOGGED			
09	1254		ADVISED BY S-1 NUSC THAT SSB ASST TAKEN ROUTE TO LOCATION DOWN AT JAWHAR STATION IN REGARDS TO RETURN WORKUP FOR DETAINEE NUMBERS AFORMENTIONED	LOGGED			
10	1300		NOTIFIED 977 TO ACQUIRE ORF AT THAT TIME	LOGGED			
11	1416		CONTACTED BLUISH FORCES STAKE TO A REPORT STATED HE WOULD NOTIFY 20 REGIMENT ALSO OPERATING OUT OF UM KASAR IN REFERENCE TO ESCAPED DETAINEE'S # 115236 CE + 116272 CE PASSED ON ALL NECESSARY PEDURSE INFORMATION. (6492) 963-3105	LOGGED			
12	1424		STAKE TO RFEI IN REFERENCE TO ESCAPED DETAINEES STATED THAT HE WOULD ADVISE PATROL IN AREA FROM BLUISH FORCES TO STOP AT CAMP BUCCA AND OBTAIN PHOTOS OF DETAINEE P.O.C. GIVEN MSG COMBANDANT	LOGGED			

TYPED NAME AND GRADE OF OFFICER OR OFFICIAL ON DUTY

[Redacted Name]

SIGNATURE

[Redacted Signature]

**DAILY STAFF JOURNAL OR DUTY OFFICER'S LOG**

For use of this form, see AR 220-15, the proponent agency  
is Office of The Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations & Plans

PAGE NO  
3

NO. OF PAGES  
3 of 3

ORGANIZATION OR INSTALLATION <b>3rd Amph BN</b>			LOCATION <b>Camp Bucca Tol</b>				PERIOD COVERED			
		FROM		TO						
HOUR	DATE	HOUR	DATE	HOUR	DATE	HOUR	DATE	HOUR	DATE	
<b>0800</b>	<b>01-24-04</b>	<b>2200</b>	<b>01-24-04</b>							

ITEM NO	TIME		INCIDENTS MESSAGES ORDERS ETC	ACTION TAKEN	IN.
	IN	OUT			
13	1540		<b>SFC ██████ stated that tanker that had water in it had residue of gasoline mixed with it making the water undrinkable</b>	<b>Logged</b>	█████
14	2000		<b>SSI - food off duty returned by SFC ██████</b>		█████

TYPED NAME AND GRADE OF OFFICER OR OFFICIAL ON DUTY <b>1-█████ ETO</b>	SIGNATURE <b>█████</b>
---	---------------------------

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL  
2800 ARMY PENTAGON  
WASHINGTON DC 20310-2000



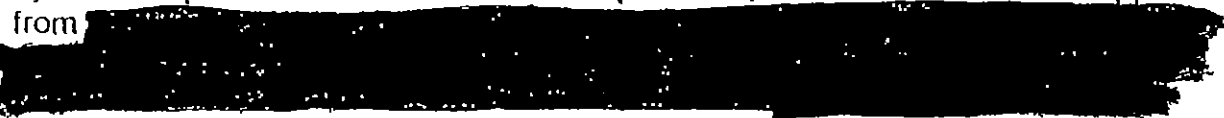
REPLY TO  
ATTENTION OF

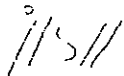
DAPM-MP-CI

6 November 2003

MEMORANDUM FOR Commanding General, Combined Joint Task Force-7, Iraq

SUBJECT Assessment of Detention and Corrections Operations in Iraq

1. Reference Memorandum, CG, CJTF-7, Subject: Detention and Corrections Operations – Request for Assistance, dated 11 August 2003.
- 2 This report documents the detention and corrections operations assessment and assistance completed during the period of 13 October – 6 November 2003
- 3 The report includes the background and methodology employed by the assistance team. It also addresses each of the areas specified in the request with recommended solutions in the near term (from now until the next unit rotations occur o/a Feb 04), mid term (OIF 2 rotation from o/a Feb 04-Feb 05), and long term (Feb 05 and after)
- 4 Planners from CJTF-7 PMO, CFLCC PMO, 800<sup>th</sup> MP Brigade and its subordinate units, have established the groundwork for a successful transition from a Coalition Forces dependant correctional system to one managed and operated by the Iraqi Prison Department under the supervision and support of the Coalition Provisional Authority Ministry of Justice Prison Department (CPA MOJ), with assistance of OIF-2 forces
- 5 The team appreciated the courtesies and cooperation provided throughout the visit by all headquarters and staff elements In particular, we received excellent support from  EX-3
- 6 POC for the attached report is LTC Mark Inch, DSN 225-8499, commercial (703) 695-8499, [mark.inch@us.army.mil](mailto:mark.inch@us.army.mil) or Mr Michael Shannon, DSN 225-4357, commercial (703) 695-4357, [Michael.Shannon@hqda-aoc.army.pentagon.mil](mailto:Michael.Shannon@hqda-aoc.army.pentagon.mil), Corrections and Internment Branch, Office of the Provost Marshal General

  
DONALD J RYDER  
Major General, USA  
Provost Marshal General

REPORT ON  
DETENTION AND CORRECTIONS OPERATIONS  
IN IRAQ

OFFICE OF THE  
PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL  
OF THE ARMY

November 5, 2003

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY



## Table of Contents

Executive Summary .....	1
Background .....	4
Methodology .....	6
Detention and Corrections System Management .....	9
Detainee Management (including movement, segregation and accountability).....	16
Means of Command and Control of the Detention and Corrections System . . .	24
Integration of Military Detention and Corrections Operations with CPA and adequacy of plans for transition to an Iraqi-run system. . . . .	32
Detainee Medical Care, Health Management and Medical Operations Assessment	36
Detention facilities that meet required health, hygiene, and sanitation standards	42
Court Integration and Docket Management for Criminal Detainees . . .	46
Detainee Legal Processing . . . . .	54
Detainee Databases and Records (including integration with law enforcement and court databases) . . . . .	60
Conclusion. . . . .	67
Annexes/Resources	
A Facility Summaries	
B Audit Instruments	
C Assistance Team Briefing	
D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program	
E Locally Employed Person Security Screening Program	
F Emergency Action Plan SOP	
G References	

## Executive Summary

Coalition Forces are detaining EPW's and Civilian Internees (both security Internees and criminal detainees) in accordance with DoD Directives and accepted U.S. and international practices. To date, Coalition Forces have processed over 30,000 detainees. The transition to an Iraqi-run corrections operation is progressing, though there is disparate progress in different regions/unit areas of responsibility throughout the country.

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED] Ex. (high) 2

As reconstruction of larger regional prisons, detention centers and additional city jails approach completion (or are approved for funding), there will be a future challenge to train sufficient Iraqi Corrections Officers in basic tasks, intermediate level supervision, and senior level management.

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED] Ex (high):

Generally, conditions in existing prisons, detention facilities and jails meet minimal standards of health, sanitation, security, and human rights established by the Geneva Conventions and encouraged in the Practical Guidelines for the Establishment of Correctional Services within United Nations Peace Operations. There is room for continued improvement in all areas. New prison facilities must be constructed during the next one to three years to achieve projected prison bed capacity requirements (approx 23,000 within five years). This will require a major capital investment to ensure appropriate security, health care, adequate living space, food service, and staff training (custody and control, security and safety, and basic human rights). In the near term, CPA should continue to prioritize training of Iraqi Correctional Officers in basic tasks and aggressively hire sufficient corrections subject matter experts to mentor Iraqi prison officials on the application of effective correctional practices and ensure humane treatment of detainees and prisoners. Additionally, the CPA must work with the Iraqi Ministries of Justice, Finance, and Interior to develop the processes and procedures necessary to ensure adequate staff recruitment, training, and appropriate pay (wages equivalent to Iraqi police and paid in a timely manner). With the limited resources available,

[REDACTED] Ex 5

[REDACTED]

All are critical programs that will ensure that the fledgling Iraqi prison system will have adequate capacity while preserving basic human rights of prisoners and detainees

While this report addresses each of the requested topic areas in the CJTF-7 memorandum, the major themes of this assessment include:

1. Consolidation. The Coalition Detention and Iraqi Prison systems will achieve greater efficiencies in detainee and corrections operations with a small number of large facilities.

[REDACTED]

EX (b)  
2  
EX  
S

2 Separation. Currently, due to the lack of Iraqi prison facilities and the ongoing consolidation efforts at the Abu Ghurayb complex, Iraqi criminals are detained with security internees (generally Iraqi-on-Coalition offenses) and EPWs, though segregated in different cells/compounds

[REDACTED]

EX S

3 Standardization There is a wide variance in standards and approaches at the various detention facilities

[REDACTED]

However, it should also be noted that the assessment team members did not identify any military police units purposely applying inappropriate confinement practices. Conversely, Military Police units of the 800<sup>th</sup> MP Brigade operating in the 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Division area of operation have established superb operations at the Mosul Regional Correctional Facility in Badush, as have 800<sup>th</sup> and British (3 RMP) units at the al-Hillah Regional Correctional Facility and al-Ma'qal

EX S

**Jail.** The 4<sup>th</sup> ID collection point was equally impressive. Consistently, those units that had soldiers with previous military or civilian corrections experience employed more effective and appropriate procedures, knowing what "right" looked like. Though Coalition Provisional Authority Memorandum #2 (Management of Detention and Prison Facilities) provides general guidelines, it does not provide sufficient detail to serve as Standing Operating Procedures. On a larger scale, there is not clear boundary between which facilities will remain under the control of the Ministry of Interior (police) and those that will transfer to the control of the Ministry of Justice. Standardization is not intended to result in centralized control of detainee and corrections operations or inhibit initiative, but merely to set and attain reasonable standards throughout the theater.

4. Enable CPA MOJ. The Corrections experts in CPA Ministry of Justice Prisons Department have experienced a high turnover rate and slow recruitment. The current administrators are proven experts in corrections, and appear very committed to the establishment of a viable Iraqi corrections system. Unfortunately, they are understaffed and are still assessing the current situation and immediate requirements. [REDACTED]

EX (b)  
1

[REDACTED] CPA MOJ would also benefit from aggressively seeking a contractor (e.g., MPRI, Dynacorp, etc.) to develop and conduct Iraqi corrections officer training for initial entry, intermediate and manager level personnel. The training burden will increase when construction of the larger regional correctional facilities is complete.

5. Enable decentralized execution/initiative The units in the 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Div have achieved great success, due in great part to the supportive command climate established by the Division Commander and his emphasis on the use of Commanders Emergency Relief Program (CERP) funds for prison projects to augment CPA spending. The current level of reconstruction of prisons (both completed and funded for future construction) and the training of Iraqi personnel is solid, and will continue to excel with sustained adequate funding. The SOPs and standardized training programs developed by the 310<sup>th</sup> MP Bn in al-Hillah are very thorough and should be considered for use at other locations. Both the North and South are quickly approaching a monitoring stage, in which only a small corrections cell (one MP MAJ/CPT, one Engineer CPT/1LT and two Corrections NCOs; E7/E6) will be necessary to work with CPA MOJ and the Iraqi Prisons personnel, at least until the larger regional facilities are established. CPA MOJ should take advantage of the initiative and energy of the military police units in theater by pushing funds to the commanders as quickly as possible, trusting the commanders to appropriately obligate both reconstruction and operational funds.

Lessons learned regarding necessary changes in doctrine and organizational structure related to detention and corrections operations will not be addressed in any detail in this report. The team did identify a significant paradigm shift in standard EPW/Detainee operations doctrine, as applied to post-hostilities detention of security internees, let alone the reconstruction of the Iraqi prison system. Similar doctrinal lessons learned had been identified in Operation Enduring Freedom, leading to work on an MP Bottom-up Review and Force Design Update. The team will forward suggested doctrinal and organizational changes to the appropriate proponent schools for review and action.

## Background

Prior to October 2002, Iraq housed over 100,000 inmates in prison facilities under the supervision of a number of government ministries; most notably the Ministry of Interior, Ministry of Labor and Social Services, Internal Security Agency, and the Military. Most prisons were operated in secrecy and did not conform to international standards for humane treatment or appropriate living conditions and correctional practices. Prior to the conflict with Coalition Forces, Saddam Hussein issued Decree 225 (Oct 02), releasing all prisoners. Only the prison officials in the Kurdish-controlled North defied that order. Following the decree, the already antiquated prison facilities fell into greater disrepair, which was only compounded during and after the war as Iraqi citizens looted and destroyed most of the existing prisons and jails. Further, there appears to have been a systematic program to destroy all prison administrative documents, to include policies and procedures, records of inmates and employee files. Consequently, the reconstruction of the Iraqi prison system—to include facilities, personnel, and practices—was practically initiated from scratch.

In May 2003, five prison experts and an accountant from the United States, Canada and the United Kingdom, under the auspices of the U.S. Department of Justice International Criminal Investigative Training Assistance Program (ICITAP), conducted an assessment of the Iraqi Prison system. The team produced a report titled, "Prisons and Detention Centers in Iraq: An Assessment and Recommendations for Prisons in a Free Society", dated 15 June 2003. The report included a basic assessment of 21 prisons and detention centers in Iraq and provided a series of recommendations for establishing a humane, functioning corrections system. Concurrently, the team initiated planning for a future Iraqi-run prison system. They drafted Coalition Provisional Authority Order # 10, "Management of Detention and Prison Facilities," and the more expansive CPA Memorandum #2 (of the same Title), both published on 8 June 2002. The policy order places "full authority and control over all detention and prison facilities...[under] the Ministry of Justice." Regrettably, the policy does not clearly define the difference between MOJ-run Detention Facilities and Ministry of Interior/Police-run City Jails. The memorandum does provide general program guidance and standards, tracking closely with the *Practical Guidelines for the Establishment of Correctional Services within United Nations Peace Operations*, and even provides more detailed instruction in such areas as discipline, instruments of restraint, and treatment of prisoners awaiting trial. The memorandum provides sufficient guidance to develop standing operating procedures (SOP) for Iraqi facilities, but cannot serve as a substitute for a detailed SOP.

Currently only the British financial specialist remains from the original team that conducted the initial assessment and support to CPA MOJ, while the six new staff members from the United States, Korea and Spain have less than 45-days experience in Iraq. The personnel turnover and slow rate of hiring has inhibited progress on the recommendations in the report, though the initiative of Coalition Forces has mitigated some of the impact. CPA MOJ continues to pursue hiring actions to eventually field an organization of 110 international staff (primarily US prison experts) and 102 Iraqi staff.

Until CPA MOJ brings on its additional personnel and is capable of functioning on its own, Coalition Military Police personnel and units will need to continue to support jail, detention center and prison operations, and the Iraqi Correctional Officer training program.

[REDACTED]

EV  
(high)  
2

The units supporting these six facilities are not currently organized for rotational deployment in support of contingency operations. On the other hand, according to the American Correctional Association, as many as 9,000 civilian correctional officers serve in the U.S. Army Reserves and National Guard. The presence of civilian correctional officers in Reserve Military Police Units that deployed in support of Operation Iraqi Freedom was purely a matter of chance and coincidence (e.g., the 310<sup>th</sup> MP Bn has twelve civilian correctional officers).

Since the transfer of authority (TOA) on 15 June 2003 between CFLCC and CJTF-7, the 800<sup>th</sup> MP Brigade, a theater asset, was tasked to expand from its previous standard EPW operations, to add detention of Security Internees, High Value Detainees, Criminal Detainees and support the establishment of Iraqi jails and prisons throughout Iraq. Additionally, the Brigade's mission includes securing the MEK, providing assistance to the CPA Prisons Department, and coordinating detainee movements (including court appearances by Iraqi criminals). An implied task has been training Iraqi Correctional Officers (over 1,400 correctional officers to date). Currently the 800<sup>th</sup> operates two internment facilities (IF); one [REDACTED] with a capacity of approximately 4,000 detainees and one in [REDACTED] with a capacity of approximately 3,000 (will expand to 4,000 once the winterization project is complete), focused primarily on detaining security internees, but also holding criminal detainees till Iraqi prisons and detention centers expand capacity.

(high)<sup>2</sup>

The 800<sup>th</sup> MP Brigade reports that Military Police support 15 Iraqi Jails, Detention Centers and Prisons. This number varies depending on definitions of police jails, vice police detention cells, and police jails, vice detention centers and prisons. The 800<sup>th</sup> reports that [REDACTED]

(high)<sup>2</sup>

Current capacity in these facilities is approximately 4,500 and 5,500, though again, may be less when applying an International Standard of twenty-five square feet per prisoner (as established by the CPA MOJ Prisons Department). Of those fifteen facilities, three are currently undergoing renovations to increase capacity, while eight other facilities in Iraq are undergoing various phases of refurbishment and construction. When current funded projects are complete, these facilities may increase capacity to as many as 10,500 criminal detainees. The current detainee population in Coalition facilities is approximately 10,600, consisting of 3,860 MEK members, 3,660 security internees, 2,700 criminals, 162 juveniles, 117 EPWs and 101 high value detainees.

## Methodology

The Commanding General, CJTF-7, LTG Ricardo S. Sanchez, requested a team of subject matter experts to assess, and make specific recommendations concerning detention and corrections operations in Iraq. (Encl 1) US Central Command coordinated for technical assistance with the Department of the Army; the Executive Agent for the DoD EPW/Detainee Program. The Office of the Provost Marshal General of the Army assumed responsibility for forming the team. The team members were selected based on experience and education in the field of corrections and in those additional areas indicated as requiring assistance (i.e., legal, medical, automation). From 13 October to 6 November 2003, MG Donald J. Ryder, the Provost Marshal General of the Army, led the assessment/assistance team of subject matter experts, which included:

[REDACTED] MP, Director, Command & General Staff School; former Commandant, United States Disciplinary Barracks (USDB), Commander, 704<sup>th</sup> MP Bn & Ft Lewis Regional Correctional Facility, and Staff Officer at the USDB; MA degree in Criminal Justice (Corrections)

[REDACTED] JA, Military Judge (OTJAG Rep); Mobilized Reservist, Indiana State Circuit Court Judge; Juris Doctor degree

[REDACTED] MP, Deputy Commandant, USDB; former Commander of Ft Knox Regional Correctional Facility and Mannheim Confinement Facility; MA degree in Criminal Justice (Corrections); American Correctional Association (ACA) Certified Correctional Executive and Auditor

[REDACTED] MP, Chief, Corrections & Internment Branch (OPMG); former Battalion Commander, 705<sup>th</sup> MP Bn (USDB) and Commander, Ft Ord Area Confinement Facility; OIC for Somali Police and Prison program (UNOSOM II); MA degree in Geography (Middle East)

[REDACTED] MS (Social Worker), Health Care Administrator, USDB (10 Years experience at USDB), Masters of Social Work degree, National Commission on Correctional Health Care (NCCHC) Certified Correctional Health Care Professional, ACA Certified Correctional Manager and Auditor

[REDACTED] EPW/Detainee Program Manager (OPMG), former ACA Deputy Director of Standards and Accreditation and Executive Director of the California Correctional Association; US Air Force Reserves Counter-Intelligence Officer; MA degree in Public Administration (Corrections)

[REDACTED] SP (Physician Assistant, OTSG Rep), Special Projects Officer (Department Health Education & Training, AMEDDCS), specializes in Preventive Medicine and Occupational Health, 17 years as a PA to include health care at USDB, Ft Lewis RCF and Ft Hood Installation Detention Facility, Masters in Public Health degree

[REDACTED] MP, XO 327<sup>th</sup> MP Bn (currently conducting detention operations at Bagram, Afghanistan), 15 years experience in Internment/Resettlement (I/R) operations, to include 6 years in a Training Support Battalion and command of an MP Escort Guard Company during Desert Storm

Ex 3 + 6  
(b)

[REDACTED] MP, Concepts Developer (USAMPS); 12 years experience in I/R operations, to include recent work on MP I/R force design update; MA degree in Management .

[REDACTED] SG, Action Officer, Strategic Architecture Branch (USCENTCOM, J6); formerly advised Kuwaiti MOD on communications and computer systems; Undergraduate degree in Police Management and MA in Business Management; will remain in country as USCENTCOM J6 LNO

[REDACTED] MP, I/R Operations Officer, CFLCC PMO since Dec '02; former LNO to CPA and ICRC before TOA; MA In Criminal Justice (Corrections) with follow-on assignment to the USDB

[REDACTED] 95C/31E (Correctional Specialist), Guard Commander, USDB; 24 years of Corrections experience to include NCOIC of the Special Housing Unit and eight years at the USDB

[REDACTED] 95C/31E, Senior Corrections Technical Advisor (USAMPS); 22 years corrections experience, to include 7 years at the USDB and two tours to GTMO; MA degree in Public Administration and Security Management

EX. 31  
b(4)

A key objective of the assessment included developing recommendations on how to bridge from current operations to an Iraqi-run prison system, synchronized with the plans of the CPA MOJ Prison Department, setting realistic expectations for the reestablishment of a long-neglected prison system in a developing Nation. The team conducted a comprehensive review of the entire detainee and corrections system and provided recommendations addressing each of the following areas requested by the Commanding General, CJTF-7:

1. Detention and corrections system management
2. Detainee management, including detainee movement, segregation, and accountability
3. Means of command and control of the detention and corrections system
4. Integration of military detention and corrections operations with CPA, and adequacy of plans for transition to an Iraqi-run system
5. Detainee medical care and health management.
6. Detention facilities that meet required health, hygiene, and sanitation standards.
7. Court integration and docket management for criminal detainees.
8. Detainee legal processing
9. Detainee databases and records, including integration with law enforcement and court databases

Team members interviewed leadership, staff representatives and soldiers from CFLCC, CJTF-7 (PMO/C3, C6, C7, SJA, IG, Surgeon), CPA (Ministries of Justice, Health, Interior [Police], and Labor & Social Services), UN (Office of Peace Keeping Operations, Corrections Liaison, New York), 1<sup>st</sup> AD, 4<sup>th</sup> ID, 82<sup>nd</sup> ABN Div, 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Div, Multi-National Division (MND), 3 RMP (UK), and the leadership of all three Military Police Brigades supporting operations in Theater (18<sup>th</sup>, 220<sup>th</sup>, and 800<sup>th</sup>) and MP units subordinate to the MP Brigades or attached to maneuver units, as well as the interim Director of the Iraqi National Prison Department



Team members visited the majority of operational Coalition Security Internee Camps and Iraqi jails and correctional facilities. A summary of trends and observations concerning each facility visited are listed at Annex A. Audit instruments used by team members conducting security, medical treatment, training, and legal assessments are at Annex B. The assessment team visited the following camps, jails, detention centers, and regional corrections facilities in Iraq:

**US Security Internee Camps and Collections Points:**

- 800th MP Bde, 4 of 5 facilities, [REDACTED]

(high) 2

- Three Division Collection Points (4th ID, 101st ABN (AA) Div, and 1<sup>st</sup> AD DIF), two Brigade Collection Points, and the MEK compound

**Iraqi Prisons, Detention Centers, and Jails:**

- Existing or Proposed Iraqi Regional Correctional Facilities: 3 of 3 partially operational prisons [REDACTED] and 2 of 5 proposed prison sites [REDACTED]

(high) 2

- Existing or Proposed Detention Centers (MOJ responsibility) and Major City Jails (currently MOI responsibility): [REDACTED]

(high) 2

## Detention and Corrections System Management

### General.

Since the cessation of major hostilities, most Iraqi and third country nationals detained by Coalition Forces are Civilian Intermees, protected according to Geneva Convention IV (Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War). Very few Enemy Prisoners of War remain in U.S. custody. The division of Civilian Intermees (CI) into Security Intermees (SI) and Criminal Detainees (CD), gives rise to two distinct and ideally separate detention systems, one run by Coalition Forces, the other by the Iraqi Prison Department and Iraqi correctional officers under the supervision of CPA MOJ Prisons Department. [REDACTED]

(high) 2

The population of the Coalition forces and the emerging Iraqi Prison System is made up of various designations including Enemy Prisoners of War (EPW)/Civilian Intermee (CI) including the High Value Detainee, Security Intermee (SI), Criminal Detainee (CD). Each population must be managed appropriate to their specific designation in accordance with Iraqi Law, US Policy and where applicable the Geneva Conventions and the Laws of War.

Security Intermees are civilians interned during conflict or occupation for their own protection or because they pose a threat to the security of coalition forces, its mission, or are of intelligence value. This includes persons detained for committing offenses (including attempts) against coalition forces (or previous coalition forces) members of the Provisional Government, NGO's, State infrastructure or any person accused or committing war crimes or crimes against humanity. Certain Security Intermees may also be classified as a High Value Detainee (HVD), which are Security Intermees of significant intelligence or political value.

When Coalition forces detain a Security Intermee, the detaining unit will generally take the SI to a Brigade Collection Point, where Brigade-level personnel determine whether to continue detention, reclassify the detainee as a Criminal Detainee and transfer the individual to the Iraqi police, or release the individual. For those who remain in Coalition custody, the same vetting process occurs at the Division Holding Area. Again, if the Division-level personnel verify that the detainee is a Security Intermee, then they transfer the SI to the 800<sup>th</sup> Military Police Brigade, either at [REDACTED]

[REDACTED] Currently, the MND South-Central and the 82<sup>nd</sup> ABN Div take Security Intermees directly from Brigade Collection Points or the detaining unit to [REDACTED] and the British 3 RMP to [REDACTED]. With the anticipated closure of [REDACTED] in Dec '03, the British will build a Security Intermee Holding Facility, though the length they intend to hold SI's and procedures to transfer SI's to [REDACTED] is unclear.

(high)  
2

**Criminal Detainees are persons who are detained because they are reasonably suspected of having committed a crime against Iraqi Nationals or Iraqi properties, a crime not related to the Coalition Force Mission. Whether detained by Coalition Forces or Iraqi Police, the CD will most appropriately be held in a Police Detention Cell or in larger cities, a Police Jail (some Jails maintain over 300 detainees). Within 48-72 hours, the suspect should be brought before a magistrate, and if sufficient evidence exists to continue detention, be placed in an MOJ-run Detention Center. Currently, only [REDACTED] have dedicated Detention Centers, while in the rest of the country, MOI-run police jails hold all Pre-trial CD's. Until sufficient capacity is built in the Iraqi prison system, criminal detainees are also held at [REDACTED] and to a lesser extent, [REDACTED]**

If a Criminal Detainee is convicted in an Iraqi Court, and sentenced to confinement, the CD should be moved to a MOJ-run prison (i.e., regional correctional facility). Currently, only [REDACTED] have dedicated post-trial prisons, while most MOI-run police jails have dedicated separate cells for convicted criminals. Some have suggested that each Province should have a Regional Correctional Facility, but anticipated prisoner population may allow consolidation of smaller provinces' prisoners at a neighboring larger provincial facility (e.g., the three Northern Provinces can be amply served by one facility in Mosul and another in Dahuk [which also addresses the concerns of the Kurdish population], the proposed facility at Kanbani Saad would serve both Salah ad-din [Tikrit] and Diyala Provinces, and Basrah could likely handle the three or four of the Southeastern Provinces), at least in the mid-term. Also, each major population center should have a separate MOJ-run Women and Juvenile Facility. Currently, [REDACTED] have separate Women and Juvenile Facilities, while MOI-run police jails generally have designated separate cells for women and juveniles. (high) b7

Current planning for the Iraq Prison System is being modified from the 15 Jun 03 ICITAP report, that proposes new construction, reconstruction and modernization of twenty-six prisons and detention centers for juveniles and adults at a cost of US\$99 Million and is anticipated to increase the system wide capacity by approximately 10,000. Occupancy trends in the surrounding region are declining (UN samples from 97-02). Although at present Iraq appears to be experiencing a higher degree of criminal activity, one can reasonably expect over time given similarities in culture, religion and societal development that the country will be on par with its contemporaries in the region in relation to prison population trends. Presently, the region sustains a prisoner to population ratio of approximately 106 prisoners for every 100,000 persons. This ratio suggests that once Iraq achieves a normalized state (i.e., efficient police and court systems) the requirement for prisoner cells in Iraq will be 23,970 (adjusted down for over 65 population of 3.08%). Given a population growth rate of 2.84 (2001 est.) the 15-year requirement is upwards of 30,000 prisoner beds.

**Observations:**

**NOTE: Observations related to the detention of Security Internees will be addressed under "Means of Command and Control of the Detention and Corrections System."**

1. The Coalition Provisional Authority (CPA) Order #10, Management of Detention and Prison Facilities promulgates full authority and control over all detention and prison facilities currently exercised by the Ministry of Labor and Social Affairs and the Ministry of Interior to the Ministry of Justice (MOJ). Additionally, all employees of the Directorate of Adult Prisons and the Directorate of Juvenile Prisons in the Ministry of Labor and Social Services are transferred to the MOJ. In reality, the transfer of facilities and employees is fragmented, with most facilities still under MOI (police) control.
2. The International Staff of CPA MOJ is [REDACTED]. The Department Director has been on [REDACTED] while the interim Director, though a proven expert in corrections and well known to several team members [REDACTED]. The 800<sup>th</sup> MP Bde has augmented the eight staff members at CPA MOJ with three Captains and several NCO's with Corrections experience, as well as a Major LNO. The performance and tangible results generated by the military augmentees have been absolutely superb, and worthy of special recognition. (high) b2
3. The Iraqi National Prison Department currently has a staff of almost seventy personnel. The Iraqi interim Director has not expressed a desire to continue in his position and recognizes that he lacks the experience to run a National prison system (though he is willing to stay on as a senior supervisor). The laborious process for designating a national director is nearing completion, with the formal installation of a Director General for the Iraq Corrections Service expected by mid-November of 2003. The Iraqi Prison Department is currently located in [REDACTED] and has little day-to-day contact with CPA MOJ Prisons Department. Prison wardens in the outer regions [REDACTED] communication and guidance from the Iraqi Prison Department.
4. The 800<sup>th</sup> MP Bde has missioned eight MP (I/R) Battalions and its specialized detachments to support the reestablishment of the Iraqi Prison system and to operate its security internee facilities. They have also tasked one Battalion to operate the HVD facility, and another to secure the MEK [REDACTED] compound. Due to the array of missions and extent of the Area of Operations, and earlier responsibility to operate the 3<sup>rd</sup> ID/1<sup>st</sup> AD Division Collection Point [REDACTED] the 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde has not supported the reestablishment of Iraqi prisons in the 4<sup>th</sup> ID and 82<sup>nd</sup> ABN Div AOs. The lack of support to those two AOs [REDACTED]. (high) b2

5. The 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Brigade has used elements of several assigned MP I/R Battalions and two Brigade Liaison Detachments to assist CPA MOJ and Maneuver Units to train Iraqi Correctional officers in the 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Div, 1<sup>st</sup> AD, and MND South Central AO's. Organic or attached Military Police or Civil Affairs units have worked with Police Jails in the British, 4<sup>th</sup> ID, and 82<sup>nd</sup> ABN Div AO's, and their respective training programs. Two Captains in the 800<sup>th</sup> MP Bde, [REDACTED] supporting the 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Div and [REDACTED] of the 310<sup>th</sup> MP Bn deserve special recognition for their personal efforts and initiative; two men that have made a difference. 3

6. There is not a clear long-term vision or projected end-state for facilities, staff levels, or anticipated prison population. The new staff at CPA MOJ is still conducting its initial survey of existing facilities and has not decided on what facilities will remain open, closed or be consolidated, creating challenges with establishing goals and setting priorities for funding.

7. The ICITAP report states that there are 151 prisons in Iraq, with a total potential capacity of 11,078 beds. But not only are total number of facilities and projected capacity suspect, most facilities have [REDACTED] (high) b2

[REDACTED] Though some allowances can be made for short-term jails and detention centers, long-term prison facilities must achieve a higher standard, more in line with International Standards.

8. There is confusion on which facilities will transfer to the CPA MOJ Prisons Department oversight and funding, and which will remain under MOI (Police) control. A review of the CJTF-7 IPS Report does not delineate Police stations with mere detention cells, from police stations with actual jails. The report also does not delineate between MOJ-run Detention Centers (pre-trial) and MOJ-run prisons (post-trial correctional facilities). The report would be more useful if it also showed maximum capacity and current population.

9. There is concern among Iraqi Correctional Officers, currently employed as Iraqi Police guards (and appropriately paid equivalent to Iraqi police), that they will lose pay and stature, when transferred to the MOJ Prison Department. Iraqi Correctional Officers also express concern over winter uniforms, [REDACTED] (high) b2

[REDACTED] It is unclear how transfer will take place from mil supported to CPA and ultimately to an independent Iraqi system

10. The CPA MOJ Prisons Department must obligate US\$10 Million by December 31, 2003. Money has been obligated against ongoing construction in Baghdad Central, Basrah, Mosul, and al-Hillah. CPA has also endorsed US\$5.6 Million for projects at Kanbani Saad, al-Amarah, Nasariyah and Baghdad city. There appears to be some confusion as to whether US\$2.9 Million has been allocated to the Mosul facility, and US\$2.1 Million to the proposed Dahuk facility.

11. There is a consistent theme of frustration with the Iraqi Ministry of Finance and the emerging bureaucracy surrounding budgetary planning and execution, and the difficulty of getting projects funded and pay disbursed in a timely manner. The CPA Iraqi Infrastructure Office now has one POC for prison projects, and reports a consortium of seventeen construction companies prepared to execute projects under an abbreviated "fast-track" process.

12. There are conflicting perceptions of the end state of the [REDACTED] Prison complex (i.e. [REDACTED] Central Correctional Facility). Some believe the complex is programmed for destruction in three years, leaving only the death chamber as a memorial, while others believe it will assume a more GTMO-like character, focused exclusively on U.S. mission priorities. The [REDACTED] Complex has

[REDACTED] The Southeast compound currently has one Maximum-security prison under renovation and partially operation under the CPA MOJ (though one tier is used exclusively for U.S. mission priorities), as well as the 320<sup>th</sup> MP Bn TOC and [REDACTED]

(high) b2

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

S

b5

65



## Detainee Management (Including movement, segregation and accountability)

### General.

There is a wide variance in standards and approaches at the various detention facilities. Several Division/Brigade collection points and US monitored Iraqi prisons [REDACTED]

[REDACTED] (e.g., weapons in the facility, improper restraint techniques, detainee management, etc.). Though there were no military police units purposely applying inappropriate confinement practices. Conversely, Military Police units of the 800<sup>th</sup> MP Brigade operating in the 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Division area of operation have established superb operations at the [REDACTED] Regional Correctional Facility in [REDACTED] as have 800<sup>th</sup> and British (3 RMP) units at the [REDACTED] Regional Correctional Facility and [REDACTED] and [REDACTED] Jails. The 4<sup>th</sup> ID collection point was equally impressive. Consistently, those units that had soldiers with previous military or civilian corrections experience employed more effective and appropriate procedures, knowing what "right" looked like. (high) 2

Though Coalition Provisional Authority Memorandum #2 (Management of Detention and Prison Facilities) provides general guidelines, it does not provide sufficient detail to serve as Standard Operating Procedures. On a larger scale, there is not clear boundary between which facilities will remain under the control of the Ministry of Interior (police) and which will transfer to the control of the Ministry of Justice. Standardization is not intended to result in centralized control of detainee and corrections operations or inhibit initiative, but merely to set and obtain reasonable standards throughout the theater.

Currently, due to the lack of Iraqi facilities, Iraqi criminals are detained with security internees (generally Iraqi-on-Coalition offenses) and EPWs in the same facilities; though segregated in different cells/compounds. [REDACTED] is within the same compound as the [REDACTED] Central Correctional Facility (an Iraqi-manned facility). At the High Value Detainee location, 30 EPWs are intermingled with the other security internees. These categories of offenders need to be separated as soon as facility construction and renovation projects permit, especially separating those facilities run by US personnel (for security internees) and those run by Iraqi personnel (for Iraqi criminals). The management of multiple disparate groups of detained persons in a single location by members of the same unit [REDACTED] (high) 2

[REDACTED] Absent specific mission constraints, intermingling these categories of detainees should be avoided

There is virtually [REDACTED] The CPA MOJ plan for hiring corrections experts to act in an oversight capacity and shadow training program for the leadership and management of the Iraqi Correctional System is sound and should be underway as soon as possible to begin building continuity in the system. Management expertise alone, however, will not enable a successful system. Staffing is a critical

element to the CPA/Iraqi Prison System. The training provided in support of CPA MOJ by the 800<sup>th</sup> MP Bde in an "academy" like setting provides a very basic course of instruction, but will require enhancements in areas of security, custody, control and unarmed self-defense, as well as Intermediate and Managerial level training.

Observations.

1. The Coalition Provisional Authority (CPA) Memorandum #2, Management of Detention and Prison Facilities, provides general program guidance and standards, tracking closely with the Practical Guidelines for the Establishment of Correctional Services within United Nations Peace Operations, and even provides more detailed instruction than the UN guidelines in a few areas, such as discipline, instruments of restraint, and treatment of prisoners awaiting trial. The memorandum provides sufficient guidance to develop standard operating procedures (SOP) for the Iraqi prison system, but cannot serve as a substitute for a detailed facility SOP.
2. Military Police supporting some Iraqi facilities have established policies and procedures based on CPA Memorandum Number #2. Several of the MP units benefited from assigned soldiers with experience in Federal or State correctional system. The facilities under the 310 MP Bn and the 381<sup>st</sup> MP Det (+) supporting the 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Div have translated their local policies and procedures into Arabic, and set a good initial template for smaller Detention Facilities and Police Jails. The SOPs for the larger regional correctional facilities will need to be more comprehensive, consistent with the complexity of running such facilities.
3. There is a lack of transportation assets for Iraqi operated facilities. Facility administrators either have one vehicle or no vehicle to transport prisoners to court, medical appointments or transfer to another facility (101<sup>st</sup> Abn (AA) Div did finance vans for their facilities). Some facilities without a vehicle must rely on the local police or Coalition military to assist in transporting detainees. The movement of detainees to facilities, court, or hospital is the responsibility of the confining power. Prior to Coalition presence, the Ministry of the Interior managed prisoner movement to and from their court appearances. The current CPA plan (est. US\$3.1 Million) has the Ministry of Justice possessing dedicated assets embedded within the prison system for this activity. [REDACTED]  
[REDACTED] Prisoners are by nature a high potential target requiring at present substantial force protection measures. [REDACTED]  
[REDACTED] for a small number of prisoners resulting in a backlog on the court docket. This slow pace of movement requires the [REDACTED]  
[REDACTED] for longer periods of time. Greater efficiency and a [REDACTED]  
[REDACTED] can be achieved through better docket management, dedicated movement control and alternatives to traditional court appearances

(high) 2

4. Currently the 800<sup>th</sup> MP Bde and other military police units have trained over 1,400 Iraqi correctional officers in basic confinement tasks, both in Baghdad and at remote locations. CPA MOJ has proposed a plan for a National Public Safety Training Academy and Regionalized In-Service Training Programs at an estimated cost of US\$360,000. The proposal is for one National Academy and three regional training centers. CPA MOJ has one staff member dedicated to the training program, requiring almost exclusive dependence [REDACTED]. Several Contract companies have expressed interest, or would likely express interest, in developing a more comprehensive tiered training Program of Instruction, and running the actual Iraqi correctional officer training programs. Though the current training program is sufficient for smaller short-term jails, it will not be sufficient to handle the numbers and skill-set required for larger and more complex regional prisons.

5. [REDACTED]

6. [REDACTED] (high) 2  
These basic necessities include cleaning supplies, hygiene items, medical supplies, food, and programs to reduce prisoner idleness or prepare them for release. Some facilities have had issues with contractors meeting their deadlines or statement of work

7. Detainees are segregated into the following categories: Enemy Prisoners of War (EPW), Security Internees, High Value Detainees (HVD), and criminal detainees. The criminal detainee category is subdivided into: untried adult male, untried adult female, untried male juvenile, untried female juvenile, sentenced adult male, sentenced adult female, sentenced male juvenile, and sentenced female juvenile. There are facilities classified for males, females, and juveniles, but, except for HVD, some of the other categories are confined within the same facility. Violent criminals and non-violent criminal detainees are housed together with [REDACTED]

8. [REDACTED] Contact and non-contact visitation varies from facility to facility. Some facilities have restricted visitation to non-contact

visitation because of [REDACTED] Visitation by female guests is limited because of the shortage of female Iraqi correctional officers available for searching female visitors. Visitors are searched prior to access, but there are no criteria for who is authorized to visit. Presently, anyone can visit if they possess identification.

9. [REDACTED]

10. A back log exists of criminal detainees due to difficulties in court docket management, transportation, and security issues and a general lack of records availability. Iraqi criminal detainees compete with higher mission priorities for transportation and force protection requirements for transportation to court. This has resulted in a backlog of magistrate hearings and an inability to effectively schedule trials. The courts have also been [REDACTED]

(high) 2

11. The 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde units did not receive corrections specific training during their mobilization period. Corrections training is only on the METL of two MP (I/R) Confinement Battalions, one currently serving in Afghanistan, and elements of the other at [REDACTED] MP units supporting JTF-GTMO received ten days of training in detention facility operations, to include two days of unarmed self defense, as well as training in interpersonal communication skills, forced cell moves, and correctional officer safety

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

S

b<sup>s</sup>

65

b 5

b5



## **Means of Command and Control of the Detention and Corrections System**

### **General.**

The Secretary of the Army is the DoD Executive Agent (EA) for administering the DoD EPW and CI program. The Army, in coordination with the Assistant Secretary of Defense, International Security Affairs (ASD-ISA), plans and develops policy for the operation of the program. This policy is captured in DoDD 2310.1 and AR 190-8. DoDD 2310-1 provides that persons captured or detained by the U.S. Military Services shall normally be handed over for safeguarding to U.S. Army Military Police, or to detainee collecting points or other holding facilities and installations operated by U.S. Army Military Police as soon as practical. AR 190-8 provides specific guidance on the administration and operation of both EPW and CI facilities, directing the establishment of Internment facilities in the communications zone of each theater of operations for the purpose of receiving, accounting for, administering, security, and logistically supporting EPWs, though contingency plans may direct transfer of EPWs to CONUS.

United States Army Military Police Doctrine calls upon specialized MP units to conduct Internment/Resettlement (I/R) operations. These units are almost exclusively Compo 2 and 3 units. Typically, a theater would be assigned one MP Brigade (I/R) to provide command, staff planning, and supervision of I/R operations performed by assigned and attached elements. The Brigade would establish I/R facilities in the COMMZ, and coordinate transfer of EPWs from the Corps Holding Areas to the I/R facilities. If the scope of responsibility (measured in number of subordinate MP (I/R) Battalions) exceeds its span of control, MP Brigade Liaison Detachments (BLD) can be assigned to extend the capability of the MP Brigade (I/R) to plan and supervise collection, internment, and evacuation operations of EPW's, Civilian Internees (CIs), Displaced Civilians (DCs), and US military prisoners. The BLDs can also act as a coordination link to allied and indigenous organizations to ensure that they are complying with the Geneva Conventions concerning EPWs and CIs; ensure that EPW operations in the theater follow US policies and directives, international agreements, and US policies implementing international law, and serve as an essential link with HN forces securing EPWs, CIs, and DCs, ensuring that policies consider the intent of the US to comply with international treaties pertaining to the care and handling EPWs, CIs, and DCs.

Subordinate to the MP (I/R) Brigade are MP (I/R) Battalions and MP Guard and Escort Guard Companies. The MP (I/R) Bn is the key unit of employment in I/R operations, providing command, staff planning, administration, and logistical support to operate an I/R facility for EPWs, CIs, or US military prisoners. Each HHC, MP (I/R) Bn has not only its principal staff elements, but four compound control and works projects teams, of approximately 15 military police each. These teams typically conduct inprocessing and "in-the-wire" operations. By doctrine, when attached with an MP Guard company, the Battalion is capable of securing 500 US military prisoners, 2,000 EPWs, 2,000 CIs, or 4,000 DCs in an I/R facility (the number doubles with the addition of a second MP Guard Company). MP Guard companies can also provide fixed-facility security.

The escort guard company provides supervision and security for evacuating and moving EPWs, CIs, DCs, US military prisoners, and other detained persons via vehicles, trains, planes, and road marches (but not by organic vehicles). Though few MP escort guard companies remain in the Army inventory, an MP Combat Support (CS) company can equally, if not more capably, perform the prisoner escort mission, due to its authorized vehicle, radio, and weapon array.

Except for two MP I/R (Confinement) Battalions currently conducting confinement of US military prisoners at [REDACTED] and the other detention operations in Afghanistan, <sup>high</sup> and a small number of specialized detachments, MP I/R units have 95B/31B military <sup>b2</sup> police soldiers, vice 95C/31E military police correctional specialist. HQDA has approved a new Force Design Update to address expanding operational requirements consistent with I/R operations. The FDU establishes one 95C/31E Internment/Resettlement company for each MP (I/R) Bn, to enhance the capability of the MP I/R Bn to handle high-risk detainees and support restoration of national prison systems, especially following a regime change. The new FDU is currently competing for resourcing in TAA-2011. The FDU also allows for the conversion of US correctional and confinement facilities to the new MTOE design, allowing rotational deployment of Active Component 95C/31E soldiers in support of contingency operations

The 800<sup>th</sup> MP Bde currently has eight MP (I/R) Battalions, with both MP Guard and Combat Support companies. Five Battalions conduct detention of security internees, one secures the MEK, and the remaining two support the reestablishment of the Iraqi prison system. Due to unit redeployment rules, the 800<sup>th</sup> will lose three Battalion HHCs in December, a fourth in January, and the remainder in March. The units that remain are generally under strength, as Reserve component units do not have an individual personnel replacement system to mitigate medical losses or the departure of individual soldiers that have reached 22 months of Federal active duty (i.e., activated prior to the soldier's unit activation or cross-leveled from a unit that had previously been activated). But with the acceptance that all Reserve and National Guard units will spend 12-months "boots-on-the-ground" the 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde has a clear and logical plan to realign remaining Battalion and Company-sized units to meet its mission requirements (assuming proposed consolidation of the security internee facilities and anticipated progress in Iraqi manning of Iraqi prisons, detention centers, and jails)

### Observations

- 1 The 800<sup>th</sup> Military Police Brigade (Internment/Resettlement) is currently a CFLCC asset TACON to CJTF-7 to conduct the internment and confinement operations in Iraq. All detention operations of EPWs and Security Internees are conducted in the CJTF-7 AO—not the COMMZ—a [REDACTED] <sup>high</sup> [REDACTED] and a separate High Value Detention site. The 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde is one of two MP (I/R) Brigades in the Army, the other having just completed a rotation to GTMO.

2. CFLCC has not requested an MP (I/R) Brigade for OIF 2, but has requested four MP (I/R) Battalions, four MP (Combat Support) Companies, four MP (Guard) Companies and two MP Detachments (I/R Brigade Liaison Detachment) to support internment and confinement operations in Iraq. The request was based on anticipated security internee operational requirements in March, coupled with an expectation of reduced manning to the Iraqi prison system.
3. The 800<sup>th</sup> MP Bde has experienced challenges adapting its organizational structure, training and equipment resources from a unit designed to conduct standard EPW operations in the COMMZ, to its current mission-set and the characteristics of the Iraqi and third country national detainee population. Specifically, the 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde and its subordinate units [REDACTED] Further, the doctrinal soldier to detainee population ratio and facility layout templates are predicated on a compliant, self-disciplining EPW population, and not criminals or high-risk security internees.
4. The HVD site is not a typical detention facility, adding the challenge and complexity of detaining once-privileged political and military leaders, some in the status of EPWs and others as security internees. Many of the HVDs are in poor physical health, and more advanced in age than the typical detainee population, [REDACTED] The facility procedures in respect to the two classifications is unclear, as HVDs are now being provided the same treatment regardless of their individual status, as opposed to specific and separate treatment for EPWs. EPW's and Civilian Internees should receive the full protections of the Geneva Conventions, unless those elements which are denied are due to specifically articulated military necessity (e.g., no visitation to preclude the direction of insurgency operations). Military necessity, though, grows more tenuous the greater the period of time between capture and length of detention. The current measures appear appropriate to the tactical situation. (high) 2
5. The mission to secure the [REDACTED] compound is unique, but well suited for an MP (I/R) Battalion. The complex interaction with the MEK leadership and varied US agencies addressing the MEK requires a battalion level headquarters, trained to support a community construct (i.e., the "R" in Internment/Resettlement). But the size of the compound [REDACTED] escort requirements for the MEK, and security of the [REDACTED] is better performed by an MP Combat Support company, than a traditionally aligned MP Guard company [REDACTED] (324<sup>th</sup> MP Bn) handle on the complex nature of the MEK situation was impressive, as was the apparent good relations of all the unit's leadership with the MEK.

6. The initial classification of Iraqis as security internees requires more oversight and discipline. Though anecdotal in nature, numerous cases exist where Iraqis at most expressed displeasure or ill will with the U.S. personnel, and have been held for several months, waiting for their case to be reviewed. The current release decision process is not following DOD policy for the Global War on Terror or policy related to the DOD Enemy POW Detainee Program (DODD 2310.1). A more disciplined system would reduce the security internee population and inherent challenge of holding Iraqis that feel they have been unjustly detained.
  
7. AR 190-8 requires military police to provide an area for intelligence collection efforts within EPW facilities. Military police, though adept at passive collection of intelligence within a facility, do not participate in Military Intelligence supervised interrogation sessions. Recent intelligence collection in support of Operation Enduring Freedom has posited a template where by military police actively set favorable conditions for subsequent interviews. Such actions generally run counter to the smooth operation of a detention facility, attempting to maintain its population in a compliant and docile state. The 800<sup>th</sup> MP Bde has not been asked to change its facility procedures to set the conditions for MI interviews, nor participate in those interviews.

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

b5

65

Chq/2  
7  
5

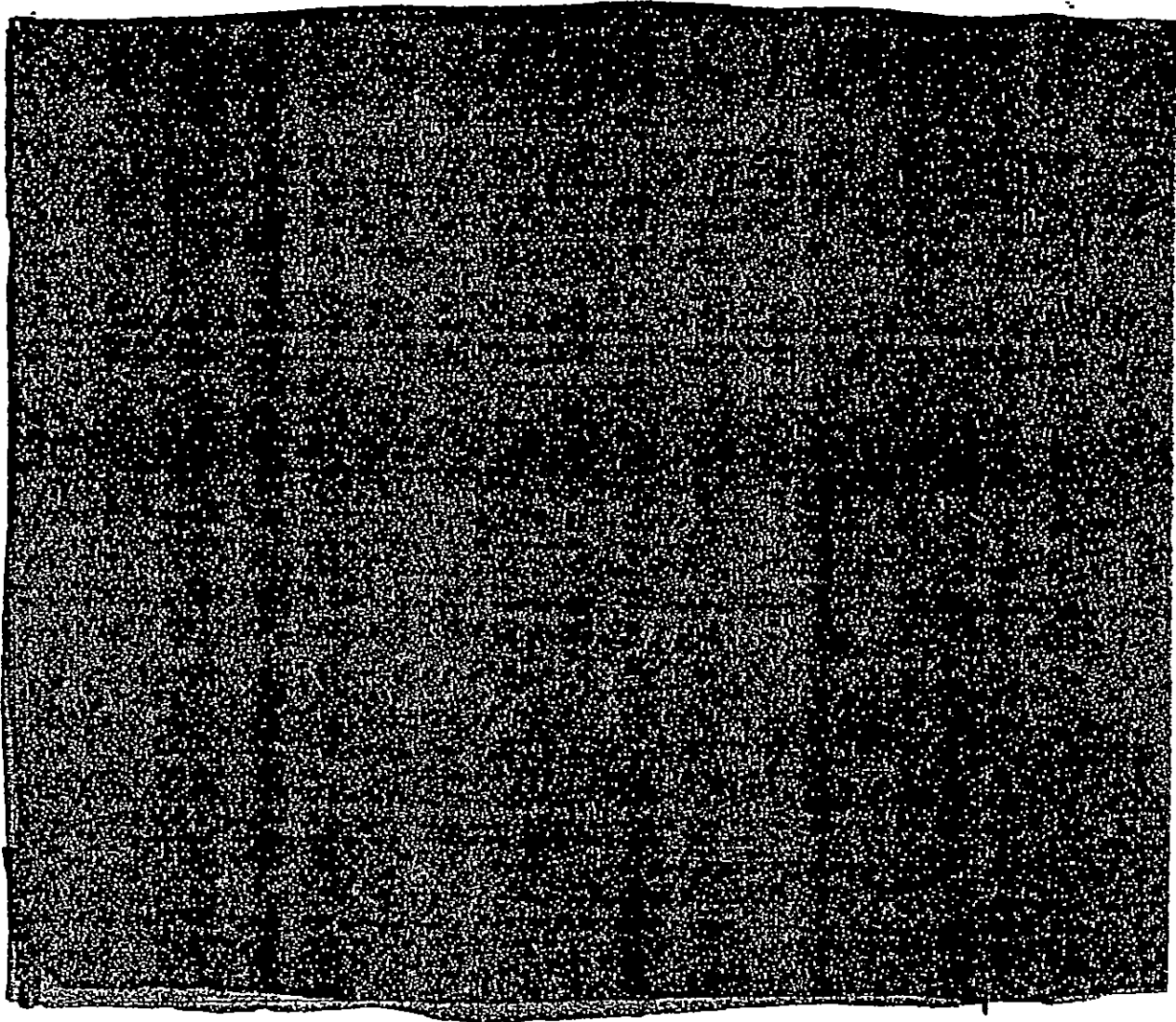
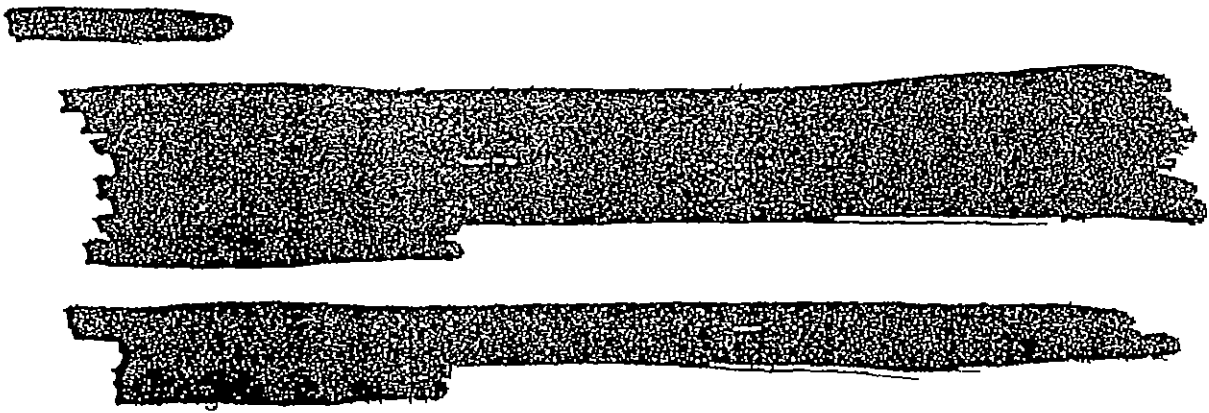


Diagram 1 Abu Ghurayb Complex



b 5

65



## **Integration of Military Detention and Corrections Operations with CPA and adequacy of plans for transition to an Iraqi-run system**

### **General.**

In May 2003, five prison experts and an accountant from the United States, Canada and the United Kingdom, drafted Coalition Provisional Authority Order # 10, "Management of Detention and Prison Facilities," and the more expansive CPA Memorandum #2 (of the same Title), both published on 8 June 2002. The policy order places "full authority and control over all detention and prison facilities. [under] the Ministry of Justice." Currently only the British financial specialist remains from the original team that conducted the initial assessment and support to CPA MOJ, while the six new staff members from the United States, Korea and Spain have less than 45-days experience in Iraq. CPA MOJ continues to pursue hiring actions to eventually field an organization of 110 international staff (primarily US prison experts) and 102 Iraqi staff

The 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde currently supports the CPA MOJ Prisons Department with military staff augmentation (one Major, three Captains and several NCO's) and force protection during site surveys. On-site support and monitoring of all active MOJ and MOI prisons, detention centers, and jails is being conducted almost exclusively through the use of military assets. Until CPA MOJ brings on its additional personnel and is capable of functioning on its own, Coalition Military Police personnel and units will need to continue to support jail, detention center and prison operations, and the Iraqi Correctional Officer training program

Unfortunately, military police generally lack the requisite institutional knowledge to effectively work issues related to National prison system policy and the operation of more complex long-term regional correctional facilities. Only a small number of officers in the U.S. Army Military Police Corps Regiment hold advanced degrees and measurable experience in corrections, and there are currently less than 1,000 95C/31E military police corrections specialists authorized to operate the six Army correctional and confinement facilities. The units supporting these six facilities are not currently organized for rotational deployment in support of contingency operations. On the other hand, according to the American Correctional Association, as many as 9,000 civilian correctional officers serve in the U.S. Army Reserves and National Guard. The presence of civilian correctional officers in Reserve Military Police Units that deployed in support of Operation Iraqi Freedom was purely a matter of chance and coincidence (e.g., the 310<sup>th</sup> MP Bn has twelve civilian correctional officers)

## Observations.

1. The current Interim Director and assigned colleagues of the CPA MOJ Prisons Department are proven experts in the Field of Corrections. Though only in country for less than two months, they have aggressively attacked the issues inherent in rebuilding a National Prison system. [REDACTED] Also, a natural tendency to want to address individual facility issues has slowed their assessment and construct of a National approach. The team continues its on-site assessments of the current facilities and proposed future sites for prisons, detention centers, and jails.
2. [REDACTED] There is much communication with military counter parts in the judicial system [REDACTED]
3. The weekly meeting is not as productive towards system development and transition planning as it could be. The large number of attendees, addressing primarily individual facility issues, tends to detract from the larger and more essential issues of reestablishing a National Prison System (b19) 2
4. CPA and the 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde has only recently coordinated planning for redeployment of current units and the potential impact on the reestablishment of the Iraqi Correctional system. Though the 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde has a clear plan for managing the reduction of military forces against anticipate security internee and criminal detainee population, it is predicated on an expectation of increased Iraqi correctional officers on duty, more active CPA MOJ Prisons Department oversight, and the transfer of Iraqi correctional officer training to civilian correctional experts.
5. There appears to be a different expectation between CPA MOJ and the Coalition military of facility standards and conditions for transfer of Iraqi-run facilities from military joint operations, to military oversight, and then to actual transfer to CPA MOJ Prisons Department oversight. The differing perspectives and level of corrections experience will also manifest itself in the actual conduct of Iraqi facility support (e.g., CPA MOJ personnel were unimpressed with the procedures and facility condition of the [REDACTED] jail, where military leadership would rate the facility as satisfactory for Iraqi assumption of responsibility with periodic military or CPA oversight. This two perspectives is natural, and only exemplifies the importance of transferring the mission to reestablish the Iraqi Prison system from military units to the CPA MOJ Prisons Department, fully staffed with civilian correctional experts for planning, training, and facility oversight

6. At the current pace of academy graduation it will take 33 month to fill the anticipated staffing requirements based on a western staffing model. The local staffing model is more manpower intensive.

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

5

[REDACTED]

bs

## Detainee Medical Care, Health Management and Medical Operations Assessment

### General.

As part of the CJTF-7 Detention Operation Assistance Visit, the medical operations and detainee health management were evaluated with emphasis on health management medical care, sanitation and hygiene conditions. Early in the assessment several key issues surfaced regarding mission definition, command and control, manpower, and logistics which made the discrete evaluation of sanitation and hygiene and general health care operations difficult to quantify and report on specifically. Further, in keeping with the mission of enabling the Coalition Provisional Authority (CPA) to transition to the end state of assuming the role of prison operations (to include health care operations) and assessing U.S. military managed prisons, the need for recommendations specific to each system and to joint operations became evident.

A review of available international guidance and CPA guidance provided the framework for the evaluation. Assessment tools incorporating this framework were developed and formed the basis for data collection. Physical inspections of the following locations were accomplished

[REDACTED]

(high)  
b2

Additionally, interviews and discussions were held with key players to include the 800<sup>th</sup> MP Bde Surgeon [REDACTED] (Medical Advisor to the Ministry of Health specifically tasked to assist with prison medical operations), and [REDACTED] Chief, Clinical Operations, CJTF-7 Surgeon's Office, [REDACTED] PhD, and the medical officers at each visited location. All available ICRC reports and responses were also reviewed looking for trends along with individual findings

b3

The separation of the Iraqi and U.S. military health care responsibilities is essential for the smooth operation of both systems. The goal of capacity building within the Iraqi correctional health care system and the differences within the systems require independent management and operations. As the Iraqi correctional health care system develops, the CPA can take on the oversight of all correctional health care and the assessment of the facility conditions for the Iraq Department of Corrections. The separation of these systems is dependent on the clear delineation of responsibility for each category of detainee. Mission confusion is significantly increased by co-locating Iraqi detainees and U.S. security detainees in the same compound. Iraqi and U.S. controlled detainees must be separated in order to support the primary mission of capacity building for Iraq and allowing U.S. military medical assets to focus on security detainees.

## Observations.

1. No clear delineation of the responsibilities for health care exists for the various detainee categories. This results in confusion regarding the responsibilities between the U.S. military and CPA health care systems.
2. The Iraqi correctional medical system is in its initial phase of development and is not fully operational. This has resulted in the U.S. military providers covering many Iraqi responsibilities.
3. Health care providers have been operating in a high velocity change environment without a clearly communicated and established end-state. Expansion of mission responsibilities have challenged the health care delivery system. Despite the challenging environment of providing unit health care and a large detainee population, U.S. military health care providers are extremely dedicated and innovative. With further refinement of operational orders detainee health care will improve due to their focused efforts.
4. There currently exists expertise and oversight in both the CPA Ministry of Health [REDACTED] and the CTJF-7 Surgeon's office [REDACTED] and staff) to continue the effort of defining and meeting the mission of detainee health care for the immediate future. b3
5. There is a clear need for a published document regarding detainee categorization and health care directives. This document would clearly define each category of detainees and should further specify the medical care responsibilities by US military, coalition, or the CPA health care systems. Currently detainee populations at various locations are mixed or unclassified, resulting in US forces providing care for a greater population than its doctrinal capability. Additionally, detainees requiring level III health care of all categories are brought to the 28<sup>th</sup> Combat Support Hospital (CSH) through default due to the level of services provided, force protection issues, and poorly defined alternatives. The US military detainee medical mission would be reduced to clearly achievable capacity if the definitions and responsibilities were published and adhered to.
6. The early stages of the CPA, MOH, and detainee operations, to include health care operations, has not yet resulted in significant relief of responsibilities for health care to all classes of detainees for US military medical forces. Since the end of hostilities, the end of the previous conditions, and the movement towards a CPA and eventual Iraqi self-rule, the efforts at rebuilding an operational Iraqi prison system and establishing a military interment and re-settlement operation has been monumental and progressive.

7. **Facility conditions and operations prior to transition must also be re-mediated resulting in a multitude of tasks of various priorities. Current physical lay-out conditions in many facilities are abysmal and do not lend towards the basic needs of a safe environment, adequate shelter, food, hygiene, and sanitation. Further, the MOH is charged with health care within the country along with the corrections element that requires an overall health care model adoption which may be culturally dissimilar to US standards.**
8. Regarding corrections health care the MOH, has retained the services of several physicians, has begun an aggressive re-building process, and currently has the direction of one military medical advisor for assistance. In order to further assist the CPA and MOH a process action team should be hired to accomplish several goals for the organizations. This team ideally should involve limited military assets and should include prison health care experts in the areas of healthcare administration, scope of care, training, quality assurance, logistics and clinical operations. Once this team is assembled and operational, specific tasks and timelines should be established and reviewed periodically.
9. There is a need to stabilize the US military corrections operations resulting in a clearly defined detainee health care mission. With the continued transition of Iraq corrections to the complete control and management by the CPA, the provision of health care services provided to detainees by military forces will dramatically drop. All US and coalition health care providers observed are extremely dedicated to the missions of providing healthcare to all assigned unit soldiers and to all detainees within their area of responsibility. This dedication has led to innovative approaches to providing healthcare to multitudes despite the constraints of personnel and equipment.
10. The availability medical expertise within the theater of operations within the CJTF-7 Surgeons office, CENTCOM Surgeon's office, the 800<sup>th</sup> Military Police Brigade and interim assistance within the MOH is exceptional. The CTJF-7 Surgeon and his staff in coordination with the CENTCOM Surgeon, are fully involved with the various issues concerning detainee health care operations. As an example, they recently participated and responded to the Inspector General evaluation of detainee operations as well as participated in discussion between the MOH, and Bureau of Prisons. These offices have purview over all US and coalition medical operations within the theater of operations and respond directly to the CTJF Commander. They are dealing with both the day-to-day operation issues as well as conducting mid and long-term planning for continued operations. The specifics of detainee health care, sanitation and hygiene are being addressed on a priority basis.

11. The 800<sup>th</sup> MP Brigade Surgeon is assigned, as are all the Brigade physician assets, on a 90-day rotation period. This rapid turnover of U.S. military physician personnel creates significant correctional health care management concerns and inefficiencies. Clear lines of supervision and coordination are critical to ensure the unique health issues faced in confinement by health care professionals are understood and addressed to mitigate risk, provide quality health care, and meet administrative and logistical requirements. While not all physician rotations can be extended, the position of Brigade Surgeon should be tasked as a one-year rotation obligation either to an IR or AD physician versant in preventive medicine and/or correctional medical operations for continuity and mission oversight. The Brigade Surgeon would be charged with overseeing Brigade operations as well as coordinating with the CTJF-7 and CENTCOM Surgeon's offices.

12. Additionally, there is a medical advisor [REDACTED] within the MOH providing oversight, assistance, and coordination while the CPA develops its correctional health care system. Until the issues stated in the above observations can be accomplished this position should remain in effect and filled.

b3

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

S  
b3  
b2

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]



bs

[REDACTED]

S  
b3

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

## **Detention Facilities that meet required Health, Hygiene, and Sanitation standards**

### **General.**

Significant variance in the health, hygiene and sanitation conditions were observed in the detention facilities throughout Iraq. Major progress in all these areas has been made according to the most recent reports by the International Committee for the Red Cross (ICRC). Most facilities have adequate water supplies, sewage management and appropriate food services to comply with the United Nations guidelines. Those facilities with deficiencies in these basic services are aggressively pursuing options to meet basic health standards.

The highest priority for facility safety is adequate standing operating procedures and equipment to minimize loss of life during emergency operations (fires, explosions, riots, etc.) Fire suppression plans and equipment were non-existent in some facilities and no facility had written guidance on how to evacuate detainees under life threatening conditions. With primitive, over used electrical systems and open flame cooking in housing areas, the threat of fires is exceptionally high.

Inadequate logistical support for facility operations is the root of most deficiencies observed in the areas of health, hygiene and facility sanitation. The Iraqi medical system is diligently working to provide appropriate logistical support (equipment, medications, and vehicles) to perform its mission. However, present shortfalls are taxing the U.S. military system into providing the services and locking overall responsibility for health care with the U.S. The military units lack adequate vehicles and medics to appropriately manage detainee operations. The administrative and logistical demands of a confinement facility are significant and require increased staffing and equipment support.

### **Observations**

- 1 Institutional programs (work, recreation, education, spiritual services and mental health services) are critical components of a smoothly run confinement facility. *Idleness in prison breeds resentment and disciplinary problems that fester into major resistance.* The health, hygiene and sanitation conditions of all the detention facilities would be enhanced with detainee programs. Housekeeping and laundry details for detainee work programs would have major affect on the overall sanitation conditions. Detainee idleness aggravates mental illness and must be addressed as a basic health care SOP and equipment for emergency operations (fires, explosions, and riots) are grossly inadequate and present immediate threat to life concerns.
- 2 Present shortfalls in logistical support (equipment, medications, vehicles) for the Iraqi medical system are taxing the U.S. military system into providing services and locking the overall responsibility for detainee care with the U.S.

3. U.S. military medical units lack adequate personnel and vehicles to appropriately manage the detainee mission.
4. Iraqi medical personnel are specialists and lack the range of skill sets necessary to adequately serve the detainee population. Military health care providers are continuing to assume coverage for Iraqi doctors during non-duty hours, rather than the Iraqis assuming 24/7 responsibility for care.
5. [REDACTED] is not appropriately staffed and equipped to manage chronically ill and special needs detainees. The facility lacks hospital beds, diagnostic equipment and custodial personnel to perform paraprofessional duties.
6. The [REDACTED] facility has major sanitation problems within [REDACTED]. The area is littered with trash, has pools of water standing around latrines and the bottles of water carried by detainees for water consumption are filthy. The tents lack floors and are inadequate to provide protection from the elements and form potential hostile fire. The area is not conducive to the long term management of detainees and offers minimal options for improved sanitation. (high)<sup>2</sup>
7. The contacting of the food service provides culturally appropriate meals, but does not allow for special diets for medical needs.
8. The renovations of the criminal prison in [REDACTED] will provide adequate living space, lighting, weather and hostile fire protection for the detainees
9. The tents for [REDACTED] are inadequate for the climate and present major safety concerns due to hostile fire
10. Initial issue clothing is being provided in most facilities, but the lack of laundry facilities and the harsh climate are resulting in the garments quickly becoming filthy.
11. Adequate cleaning supplies (brooms soap, disinfectant) were non-existent in many facilities.
12. Idleness is a serious problem facing all the detention facilities. Long term idleness will generate discontent and aggravate the conditions for the mentally ill detainees
13. The mentally ill were receiving no treatment and the field of mental health was not addressed by the Iraqi medical system. Mental illness is a grossly neglected area for the health care of Iraqi detainees

b5

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

S  
b3  
b2

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

## Court Integration and Docket Management for Criminal Detainees

### General.

CPA Memorandum Number 3, Criminal Procedures, reiterates the goal of transitioning the Iraqi Criminal Justice system from a "dependency" on military support as quickly as possible. When Coalition Forces completed the ground war phase of Operation Iraqi Freedom, 24 million Iraqi people had no functioning criminal justice system. Courthouses had been destroyed and/or looted. Looting was not limited to removal of furniture but the dismantling and removal of lights and fixtures, air-conditioning systems, drywall, and even pipes and ductwork in some cases. Judges and Prosecutors had to be screened and re-appointed/re-hired and the Courts purged of Baath Party members and other corrupt individuals and practices. Involvement of Military Police and Judge Advocates, as well as many other Coalition Forces experts has been extensive.

Significant resources have been devoted to restoring the Iraqi Criminal Justice System. The task was monumental and unprecedented. A few examples underscore the significance of the work done by Coalition Forces and the efforts of the Coalition Provisional Authority. the abolition of Special Security courts which served as a means by which Saddam Hussein could purge his political opponents or naysayers under the guise of a "Court" process, a total review of Iraqi Criminal Law and Procedural law with an emphasis on conformance with International standards, creation of a Judicial Review Committee to insure that Judges and Prosecutors were of the highest integrity, creation of a Council of Judges, selection of a Minister of Justice, and re-opening of the Iraqi Judicial College.

Release protocols play a significant role in population control and ultimately establishing facility, staffing requirements. As a general rule, establishing a Central Booking Facility (as in [redacted] and ensuring a timely operation of the Investigative Courts decreases pre-trial criminal detainee populations. Another option is for magistrate hearings to be held at the facility en mass. From this process some will be determined eligible for release and others, who are remanded for trial, can be docketed. A review and enhancement of security at the court locations and knowledge of how many trials are anticipated will enable better military force protection planning. This will allow the docket to move more efficiently, aiding detainee population control

(high)

### Observations.

1. While the majority of Iraqi courts are at least substantially operational, there is no plan or time line for withdrawal of JAG assistance and replacement with CPA personnel or civilian contractors. Their efforts, as well as the efforts of the MP support personnel, have been extraordinary. At the same time, the resources of CPA have been extremely limited or almost non-existent in some areas. It is critical that definitive planning with dates be discussed between CPA and Coalition Forces and a time-line and action plan be developed.

2. Due to operational limitations, facility limitations and Force Protection Issues, there are Criminal Detainees collocated with other types of detainees, including Security Internees. However, the Geneva Convention does not allow this. Criminal Detainees are defined as all persons detained By Coalition Forces (including Iraqi police) solely in relation to allegations of criminal acts and who are not security internees. Generally, Criminal Detainees are Iraqi citizens (or non-coalition forces) charged with or being investigated for criminal acts against other Iraqi citizens (or non-Coalition forces). Almost all of these Criminal Detainees are awaiting trial in the Iraqi Court system.
  
3. Significant efforts have been made to improve the Juvenile Court process but there is much work to do. The current detention Juvenile facility in [REDACTED] is poor, but a good plan is in place to build a new detention facility. The Juvenile facility in [REDACTED] is inadequate for numerous reasons but is being moved to a building that is near the [REDACTED] police station and is being refurbished. There are juveniles (under age 18) being held in Juvenile facilities that have "security holds" or Security Internee status. Some are alleged to have committed serious crimes against Coalition Forces. They are being held in the same facility as other juveniles charged with theft or other less serious crimes. Some may pose a security risk in the facility. Some pose no danger. The review process being used to review the status of the juveniles held as Security Internees is substantially the same as those for adults. The process is cumbersome and slow and labor intensive. Resource and manpower limitations have made it very difficult to get these cases reviewed and to release those individuals that pose very little or no danger. The efforts of [REDACTED] should not go unmentioned. With due concern for not adequately recognizing the efforts of many others, he has almost single handedly lifted the Baghdad Juvenile Court, Detention Facility and process from the rubble. [REDACTED] and [REDACTED] are currently working diligently to expedite the process in which cases involving juveniles detained for alleged offenses against Coalition Forces are quickly reviewed to determine whether the juvenile should continue to be held. (high) 2<sup>b</sup>
  
4. There exists no Iraqi method by which to investigate allegations of improper conduct and corruption by Judges and Prosecutors. Coalition Forces have established Judicial Review Panels and have been working extremely hard and successfully in screening former judges and re-establishing the operating judiciary. In addition, they have been monitoring the workflow and work product of judges and making on the spot corrections, and in some cases, disqualifying judges from service. Discussions have been ongoing among JAG personnel, and others assisting the courts, about the creation of an Internal Affairs Department or Anti-Corruption Agency. Indeed the 101<sup>st</sup> Airborne Division has already developed a concept plan for such a process but it has not been implemented. } 3



5. **There is a disconnect between the Ministry of Justice and the Ministry of Finance with respect to the payment for services performed by MOJ personnel, including prison guards and juvenile detention guards, as well as the payment for construction and remodeling of facilities and purchasing of supplies and equipment. While the CPA/MOJ now has a Coalition Forces Finance Officer assigned, rather than having the time to assess and implement systems, there is concern that too much time is spent on a scavenger hunt trying to determine why payment has not been made or why payment was made when the job was not done. The problem is becoming even more critical as employees, particularly prison guards, are complaining about not being paid in a timely manner. This seems to be an on-going problem that is permeating all facets of the efforts to restore the Iraqi Criminal Justice System and the Iraqi prison system. If not corrected, this situation is likely to deteriorate and could result in partial or massive walkout of Iraqi prison guards, court staff, and others. This would result in a massive re-introduction of a significant number of Military Police personnel and others to keep the system operating.**
6. **There is no standard docket management system in Iraq. While there exists the Iraqi Criminal Code and Procedural Code, each courthouse operates a little different than the other. The court system in the [redacted] area is operating at a near pre-Coalition time. The court system in [redacted] is not as autonomous from Coalition assistance as is [redacted]. Generally, JAG personnel are assisting and coordinating with the identification of criminal detainees who need to come before the Investigative courts, transportation of same, docket scheduling and monitoring of the actual court process. This is a quasi-shepherding process Coalition Forces are not operating the Courts but we are assisting. In [redacted] elements of the 101<sup>st</sup> have developed a plan to computerize the court docket system. These efforts, primarily the work of [redacted] and others members of the 101<sup>st</sup>, could serve as a model for use throughout Iraq. They should be carefully documented and shared with CPA representatives** (high)2
7. **While JAG personnel have been critical in getting the Court system operating, there is no plan to transition from JAG personnel serving as LNO's to civilian contractors/experts and no time line in place. Current and anticipated missions needs and planning dictates that a plan be implemented to phase out JAG involvement in the court system so that those assets can be used in other venues. In addition, as the environment becomes more secure and the courts more operational, persons with extensive experience with civilian court operations, supervision, docketing management and assistance will become more critical if the Iraqi Criminal Justice System (and civil Justice System) is to be successful after Coalition Forces and the CPA depart. There are U.S. and International Resources available to assist the courts, prosecutors and others** b3

8. While the efforts of the JAG liaison teams in re-establishing the Iraqi Court system have been exceptional, they have not had the time, or the resources to adequately share the fruit of their efforts with other teams. Consequently there is not very much coordination and copying of best practices and lessons learned. There are insufficient personnel at the Ministry of Justice to monitor these activities and to coordinate between the various JAG liaison teams. This situation is compounded by the fact that JAG personnel will begin to rotate out of country very soon.

9. It is particularly important to note some of the efforts of members of the Judge Advocate General's Corps, the 800<sup>th</sup> MP Brigade, and other units, too numerous to mention, in the re-opening and improvement of the Iraqi Court system:

- In the [redacted] area, there are 31 Courts up and running, including one juvenile court (high) 2
- The 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Div has established a Court-Appointed Attorney Program (CAAP) in the North. This innovative program was the effort of [redacted] and others b3
- A Judicial Education program for sitting Judges has also been launched by the 101<sup>st</sup> and CJTF7 in Mosul and by LNO's in Baghdad. Establish a standardized filing system, file contents, file tracking system, and file security system
- Prosecutor advocacy skill training, Victim & Witness coordination, and other initiatives have been implemented
- [redacted] and the Office of the SJA, 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Div, have established a prototype Central Booking Facility and Investigative Arraignment Court b3

[redacted]

[redacted]

[redacted]

b(2)  
b(3)

S

[redacted]

bs

65

51



[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

S  
b2  
b3

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

## Detainee Legal Processing

### General.

Procedures have been implemented for the legal processing of detainees since the inception of hostilities. These methods have undergone revision over time and now are centered on the identification and processing of Security Internees (including High Value Detainees) as well as Criminal Detainees. While the EPW mission remains significant, there is very little legal processing of EPW's as they are in a hold status until a determination is made to either release them or prosecute them before military commissions.

Security Internees are defined as those persons who are detained by Coalition Forces when necessary for imperative reasons of security. In accordance with Article 78 of the Fourth Geneva Convention, persons held as Security Internees are afforded the right of appeal of the decision to intern them. The decision to intern a person shall then be reviewed not later than six months from the date of the induction into the internment facility.

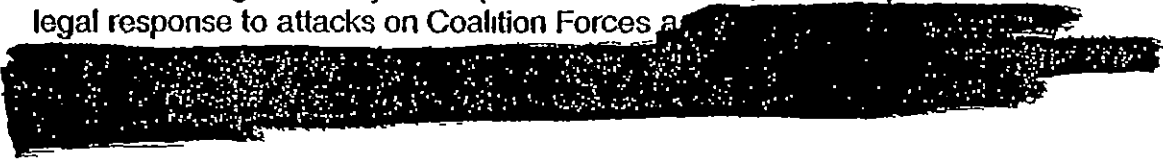
CJTF-7 has developed and implemented procedures designed to insure that all persons detained are treated in accordance with all applicable laws and that there is timely processing. FRAGO 749 sets forth the requirements and details concerning the capturing, detaining, and processing of detainees. Additional guidance has been provided to commanders to facilitate consistent processing of those persons identified as a Security Internee.

### Observations

1. The Fourth Infantry Division has supplemented the guidance from CJTF7 and added a Detainee Disposition Worksheet and a Detainee Inquiry Response Form. Use of the Detainee Disposition Worksheet seems to more clearly identify the capturing unit, thus making subsequent communication easier. In addition, the form, to the extent the recommendations can be obtained in the field, documents the staff recommendation as to whether the person should be released after processing, held or turned over to the Iraqi police. It also provides an opportunity for the capturing unit to concur or non concur where release may be later contemplated and further states the 4<sup>th</sup> ID's recommendation to the CJTF-7 Review Board. The Detainee Inquiry Response Form is used by 4<sup>th</sup> ID to respond to inquiries from families of those persons captured by the 4<sup>th</sup> ID.
2. At present there are approximately [redacted] Security Internees in custody. As many as [redacted] have been interned and approximately [redacted] have been released. The future trend will likely continue, although it is driven by a number of factors (e.g., number of missions by Coalition Forces, frequency and accuracy of new intelligence information and the activity of any anti-Coalition forces). (6/19/07)

3. While the Geneva Convention requires a 72-hour review, it should be noted that the CPA has concurred with CJTF7's determination that the 72-hour review requirement starts when the detainee reaches the central collection point in Baghdad. CJTF-7 has established a 14-day grace period in which persons detained and initially identified as a Security Internee should be brought to the central collection point. This was done to accommodate the transportation and security issues that Coalition Forces operating far from Baghdad were experiencing
4. The 72-hour review is being conducted by JAG officers. In fact, regardless of whether the capturing unit has had JAG assets to conduct the 72 hour review, CJTF-7's JAG Detention Cell team is conducting in some cases a second 72 hour review. The CJTF-7 Detention cell mission is headed by [REDACTED] b3  
He has done an outstanding job staying on top of this unique mission.
5. Persons determined to be Criminal Detainees are referred to the Iraqi Criminal process
6. Individuals determined to be Security Internees at the 72-Hour Review are interned under Article 78 of the Geneva Convention. They may appeal the decision to a Review and Appeal Board. Thereafter, if the appeal is denied, or in the event no appeal is made, the detainee's case must be reviewed by an Article 78 Board within six months. No six-month review boards have been required thus far but they will begin to occur in November
7. The number of detainees being processed has been so overwhelming that the CJTF-7 SJA has taken the initiative. The SJA has developed and implemented an interim step between the 72 Hour Review and the Review and Appeal Board (if an appeal is taken) and the 72 Hour Review and the six month review requirement in an effort to more quickly screen those cases that might warrant release by the Review and Appeal Board earlier than would otherwise occur under the normal required process. The SJA's initiative has proven to be very helpful in managing the numbers of detainees.
8. While the Review and Appeal Board, currently composed of [REDACTED] and [REDACTED] retains release authority for all Security Internees, the creation of the Review Panel has effectively served to speed up the review process and identify those persons worthy of release while not compromising the integrity of the process. With respect to the Geneva Convention requirements, the Review Panel affords the Security Internee additional opportunities for release and therefore, additional due process and consideration. The Review Panel consists of one MP officer, one MI officer and a Judge Advocate. The Review Panel screens for the Review and Appeal Board, both the six month review requirement and the appeal requirement. The Review Panel can meet more frequently than the Review and Appeal Board and has been invaluable b

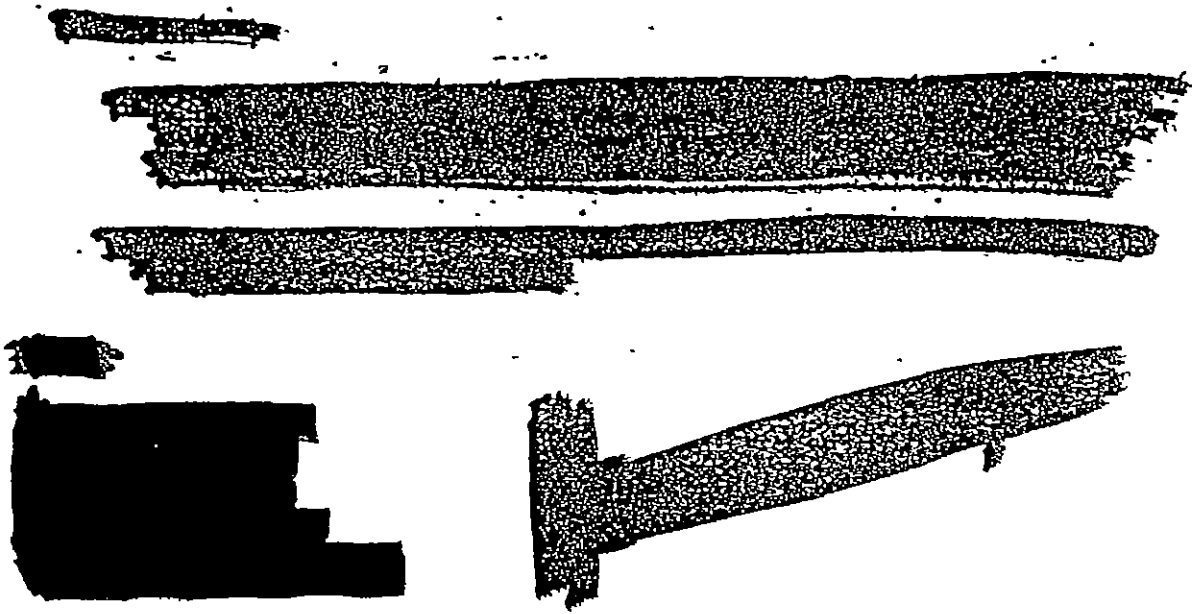


9. With the steady flow of detainees coming into the system and the impending requirement to hold 6 month reviews of Security Detainee/Internee status beginning in November, it is unlikely that the current process will be able to accommodate the numbers of cases that will need to be reviewed in the future since there will be the requirement to hold 6 month reviews and handle appeals. Recognizing this, CJTF-7 has identified the need for additional personnel, both JAG and MI assets. On 25 August 2003, the CJTF-7 SJA submitted his memorandum justifying Reserve Component Augmentee Support. A similar request has been made by the MI community.
10. In addition, as recently as 2 October 2003, the CJTF-7 SJA, again recognizing the upcoming increased demand for Security Internee case reviews, has requested and obtained approval for the creation of a separate Appellate Review Panel to review all appeals by Security Internees and a Six Month Review Panel to focus solely on the six month review cases.
11. In this manner, the Review and Appeal Board will hear only those cases that have been reviewed by a subordinate panel and recommended for release by that panel
12. In an effort to give finality to the process of internment and to provide a definitive legal response to attacks on Coalition Forces a  b2 S  
b3
13. The CJTF-7 SJA has also made plans for the disposition of cases involving HVD's, regardless of their classification as either Security Internees or EPW's. Options include prosecution by the Central Criminal Court of Iraq and/or Military Commissions, depending on the allegations against the detainee (Operation Wolverine).
14. CJTF-7 has established a Criminal Review Board to review serious criminal cases involving an Iraqi victim so that a JAG legal review can be done and in those cases where a "reasonable prosecutability" threshold cannot be met, release can be ordered. In the alternative the detainees can be held as a Security Internee if the Board finds that the individual is a security threat
15. Due to resource limitations and competing mission requirements, there have been some instances when a person ordered released has not been released in a timely manner, i.e., not within 24-48 hours, when ordered released. In some instances, the person has been inadvertently moved to another facility but not released. There has even been a delay in the receipt of some juvenile release orders. This situation is compounded by the fact that these juvenile detainees are housed with ordinary juvenile delinquents

65

57

b5



S  
b2  
b3

## **Detainee Databases and Records (including integration with law enforcement and court databases)**

### **General.**

The 800<sup>th</sup> MP BDE is using two main databases to track detainees. The National Detainee Reporting System (NDRS) is being used to track EPWs and Security Internees. The Biometric Automated Toolset System (BATS) is used to establish a biometric record (digital fingerprint, eye scan and facial photo) to track all detainees that enter a US Forces managed detainee locations (EPW, High Value Detainee (HVD), Security Internees (SI) and Iraqi Criminal Detainees).

The National Detainee Reporting System (NDRS) is the Department of Army approved EPW tracking system. Its use within CJTF-7 appears to be fairly well managed. Information is routinely gathered at each camp on EPWs and security internees and passed from the 800<sup>th</sup> MP BDE to CFLCC, thru CENTCOM to the National Detainee Reporting Center at HQDA. The operation of the NDRS appears to be occurring with only minor problems related to the application of Internment Serial Numbers (ISNs) for new detainees.

The Biometric Automated Toolset (BATS) System is a good system to reliably track detainees, especially in the CENTCOM AOR, where central tracking individuals by governmental means is limited at best. Despite what name an individual is registered under, the biometrics collected on the individual assures positive identification in the future. BATS is designed as a centrally managed database with feeder inputs by the in-processing facilities at the detainee camps. The database is designed to compare new inputs and can be programmed to alert the administrator when an individual is entered in the database more than once (multiple arrests, etc). In addition, BATS is designed to be assessable via web-based applications in order to facilitate external organizations to query the database for analysis.

Effective prison management relies heavily on the ability to accurately account for and manage information on prisoner designation, movement, and incidents. In the US few systems for the collection of data are interoperable between prisons systems let alone between other law enforcement agencies. The Iraqi prison system and the entire justice system have a unique opportunity to establish from the beginning a fully integrated and interoperable system of data collection and information management. The courts, police and the prisons departments all have the immediate need, with most using carbon paper as a duplication and paper management technique. There are several off the shelf programs that would enhance the data management of the Iraqi system. A contract for developing a comprehensive justice system would be an even better answer. The BATS system is an excellent system that with some enhancement to include docket management and police blotter and reporting could fit the need and set the Iraqi system apart from many other countries in their criminal justice information management.

It is anticipated that this population will continue to grow during continued Coalition presence. There is not an efficient release process in place. Those among the SI population who are later classified, as Criminal/Enemy Combatants are to be treated IAW DOD policy. That is, treatment, not status of EPW's. They receive the protections of the Geneva Convention absent those exclusions deemed appropriate for safe, secure and humane custody and which are in the interests of the US and Coalition forces. Only those SI's who are ultimately determined to be EPW, CI, or an Enemy Combatant (EC) after the MI, Legal, and threat analysis are to be entered into the National Detainee Reporting System (NDRS) as well as the BATS.

### Observations

1. NDRS appears to be operating with only minor problems. The area that needs more attention is training and the enforcing the policy of who is entered into NDRS. EPWs certainly should be tracked with NDRS. Currently Security Internees are entered into NDRS. Only after a clear determination is made that a Civilian Internee is going to be classified as a Security Internee should an ISN be issued and the individual entered into the NDRS. Careful consideration must be given to which categories are entered since the NDRS database is reported to the International Red Cross, giving the Red Cross and International Community the impression that individuals who committed crimes against Coalition Forces privileges and classification as a legal EPW inappropriately.
2. Currently there is no effective central system administration of BATs. Data terminals are not located at all detainee camps and the BATS terminals that are distributed are not connected to the central server. As a result, some detainees are not being tracked at all, and most detainees are only being tracked at individual detainee camps. The data gathered is not being made available in a central location for analysis. Currently not all the detainee camps have connectivity via the SIPRNET. As a result, for effective data sharing, courier runs need to be established to the CJTF-7 C2 in order to update the BATs server with new detainee information. The C2 has established an action officer to control system administration. His actions should include establishing SOPs, TTPs and their monitoring to ensure data inputs are done properly and timely.
3. Currently not all detainee facilities have reliable data connectivity. The SIPRNET has been established as the network over which BATS will operate. However, that decision appears to have been made due to SIPRNET being the most reliable network available. As the telecommunications infrastructure matures in Iraq, consideration should be given to moving the BATS from SIPRNET (after the data has been properly vetted) to another less restrictive network (possibly CENTRIXS) as telecommunications becomes more commercialized.

4. Not all detainee facilities have a BATs terminal. As a backup method of tracking detainees, all sites also are managing an Excel spreadsheet of detainees. Consequently, a biometric record is not being established on all detainees. BATS terminals at all locations are essential to properly tracking all detainees that enter the system as well as providing for more comprehensive analysis.
5. Accountability for detainees is maintained by using the National Detainee Reporting System (NDRS), the Biometric Automated Toolset (BAT) System or an Excell spreadsheet for a facility or collection point without NDRS or BATs. There exists no tracking system for the courts, detention facilities or prisons.

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

b2  
b3

5

b 5



## Conclusion

The objective of the assessment was to observe detention and prison operations, identify potential systemic and human rights issues, and provide near-term, mid-term, and long-term recommendations to improve operations and transition the fledgling Iraqi prison system from military control/oversight to the Coalition Provisional Authority and eventually to the Iraqi government. The assessment focused on detainee and corrections systems management (including detainee movement, segregation, accountability, and command and control), detainee medical care and health management, detainee legal processing, court integration and legal processing, detainee databases and records management, integration of military detention and corrections operations with CPA, and adequacy of plans for transition to an Iraqi-run system. The assessment revealed a wide variance of prison, detention center and jail operations. The [REDACTED] prisons are operating very efficiently under Iraqi control with oversight by Coalition soldiers. City jails generally reflect less stringent adherence to International standards of confinement, but in many cases are being operated satisfactorily by Iraqi personnel with Coalition oversight (e.g., the [REDACTED] prison in [REDACTED] under the 3 RMP (UK) and facilities in the 101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Div AO). Conversely, the Baghdad facilities need additional security and construction upgrades, improved sanitation, and are dependant on augmentation and continuous direction by Military Police, while some cities do not have functioning jails (e.g., [REDACTED] [REDACTED] and the team was unable to observe city jails in the 4<sup>th</sup> ID/82<sup>nd</sup> ABN Div AOs

(high) 2

[REDACTED]

b2  
S  
b3

We applaud CPA MOJ efforts to recruit enough subject matter experts to ensure that appropriate prison construction is initiated, ensure that Iraqi correctional officer training academies are staffed and providing appropriate instruction, and provide mentors for Iraqi Correctional leaders so they are capable of operating their facilities without US or Coalition military support or supervision. Due to cultural differences and local realities, the answer is not for the Iraqi officials to replicate the U.S. system, but mold their Department using a set of reasonable International standards and realistic expectations.

[REDACTED]

b2  
b3  
S

The current team in the CPA MOJ Prisons Department has demonstrated a desire to work with CJTF-7 on developing and implementing solutions to the challenges in the Iraqi corrections system. Recommend that DoD/CJTF-7 provide political support for CPA MOJ to enable them to better address the many challenges ahead for the Iraqi Corrections System.

## Annex A-Facility Summaries

	Camp	Tent and wire within a perimeter wall, fully visible to others	Facility has both Criminal Detainees and Security Internees housed in separate compounds SOPs are being revised	The facility is built on top of the old landfill for the prison, trash migrates up through the soil Tents have carpet waiting for wood floors/winterization.
	Camp	Tent and wire within a perimeter wall fully visible to others	Poor communication between towers and compound control team Poor detainee accountability procedures No SOP Local contractors feed detainees	No running water in the facility, poor toilet maintenance for both detainee and cadre Contractors lay waste disposal hoses over exterior wire, reducing its effectiveness
	Camp	Tent and wire within a perimeter fence	EWVs, Criminal Detainees and Security Internees are housed in the same perimeter, but they are in separate compounds The Segregation Facility does not have a SOP Units do not have adequate communication equipment to properly operate the facility	An effective plumbing system and waste water removal system was built at the facility. Units did not have adequate medical staff to meet demands at facility capacity.
4th ID	Collection Point	Building and Tent design, exterior wall on three sides	Well developed and employed SOPs; well established transfer system between Brigade and Division Collection Point	Tents have wooden floors and internees have mats; large internee population, clean and well maintained.
101 ABN (AA) Div	Collection Point	Wooden structure and wire within perimeter fence; new facility under construction	Sold operational procedures, small internee population	Clean and well maintained.
1st AD DIF	Collection Point	Good hard stand and wire perimeter Too small for long term operations	Currently being utilized as a Division Collection Facility for Security Internees The facility is operated by a Division MP Platoon, who have received no additional training for operating a High Risk Detainee site	The facility is very clean and well maintained. There is no plumbing in the facility, requiring the detainees to be escorted for shower/lathrine use
	Prison	Block and tier design both single and multiple cell Compound and facility perimeter walls	Populations are not fully segregated by designation No Iraq/CPA SOP for the facility	Clean and well maintained, or policy for Cadre to conduct forced cell movement
	Prison	Three Compounds, one operational, two waiting funding. Block buildings with a ten meter perimeter wall	SOPs have recently been printed and are awaiting final approval, developed by civilian correctional officers, excellent key control; camera system, well trained Iraqi guards	The facility was exceptionally maintained and sanitary. Each cell had a bed available for each detainee. The facility has a temporary medical facility; running water, and sewage treatment plant.

(high) 2

(high) 2

## Annex A-Facility Summaries

	Prison	Block buildings with 30 cell blocks and perimeter walls	Iraqi (MOJ) operated facility with oversight from the 310th MP Bn. SOPs are in place and the Iraqi guards are trained and familiar with them. Communications is good, but additional handheld radios are needed	The facility has exposed wiring and lighting
	Prison	Partially completed modern facility on German 2-floor unit management design (concrete structure), no perimeter wall	Requires US\$2.1 Million to complete construction	N/A
	Prison	One story block buildings with perimeter walls being converted into prison facility.	Not Operational. The FEST has submitted a plan for this facility	NA
	Detention Center	New Construction, single 2-story building with perimeter wall and separate admin building	Not Operational	
	Jail A	Programmed for destruction to build civic center	Though operational, preparing to move detainees to Prison B	Poor sanitation; very old facility
	Jail B	Block buildings with perimeter walls, divided into three compounds; one compound operational	Accountability of the detainees is well maintained within the facility. Prison "B" is being refurbished in preparation for Prison "A" closing.	The cells and latrines were inadequate and not properly maintained. Detainees slept on floor mats. Cells are a fire hazard due to kerosene heaters/stoves being utilized with limited ventilation and no firefighting equipment.
	Detention Center	Block buildings with perimeter walls.	Iraqi (MOJ) operated facility with oversight from the 400th MP Bn. Facility has good accountability of detainees	The cell blocks had poor sanitation due to population and not well maintained. The facilities had severe overcrowding with bunk beds in close proximity to each other.
	Detention Center	Block buildings with perimeter walls	Iraqi (MOJ) operated facility with British RMP oversight. Houses pre and post-trial male, female and juveniles. Post-trial will go to [redacted] upon completion.	The cell blocks were unsanitary and not properly maintained. The latrines were unsanitary and not properly maintained
	Women's Detention Center	Good hardstand structure with a perimeter wall. The facility is too small for long term operations, will likely close	Iraqi (MOJ) operated facility with oversight from the 400th MP Bn. Facility has good accountability of detainees. Policies and procedures are posted in both English and Arabic	The facility does not have shower facilities on site. Unreliable electrical system.

(high) 2

## Annex A-Facility Summaries

	Jail	Good structure, potential permanent site. Several variations possible with single and multiple cells. Perimeter wall and surrounded by military compound	Currently being utilized as a Brigade Collection Facility for Security Intermees. The facility currently has no SOPs, and is operated by 3CT 1AD	All three buildings have adequate showers for the detainees, two of the buildings have latrines; however none of the cells have plumbing inside the cells
	Juvenile Detention Center	Two building, 2 floor structure with perimeter wall, recently refurbished	Not Operational	Running water and new latrine and shower facilities, lacks exercise yard
	Detention Center	Block buildings with perimeter walls	Accountability of the detainees is well maintained within the facility. The facility houses both pre and post-trial confinement, and mental health patients, excellent Iraqi leadership, prison stayed operational after Oct 02 release decree	The cells are inadequate due to overcrowding. Many cells did not have beds with detainees sleeping on the floor. There is an open sewage area next to the facility in need of repair. Medical assistance is available on site.
	Jail	Block buildings with eight cellblocks and perimeter walls. Facility has four additional cellblocks under construction, and the space to expand to 2000+ capacity.	Iraqi (MOI) operated facility with oversight from the 310th MP Bn. SOPs are in place and the Iraqi guards are trained and familiar with them. The facility houses pre-trial male/juvenile/female offenders	The facility is kept clean and organized. Food contractor provides three meals per day. Each cell has a swamp cooler to keep cells cool.
	Jail	Block buildings with perimeter walls. Two C-Huts are being built to increase capacity	Iraqi (MOI) operated facility with oversight from the 310th MP Bn. SOPs are in place and the Iraqi guards are trained and familiar with them. They have good accountability of the detainees utilizing the BATS system	The facility has exposed wiring and lighting. The building is old and has inadequate plumbing. Overall the facility is properly maintained. Medical support is provided by two physicians and the local hospital.
High Value Detainees	HVD	Single cell design, functional, but not optimal due to location and overall facility design. Barn/wall and wire perimeter.	The facility has had no serious incidents relating to cadre or detainees to date.	The facility has gravel in the areas of exercise for the detainees, this can cause ankle injury.

(b)(7) 2

Annex A-Facility Summaries

[REDACTED]
[REDACTED]
[REDACTED]
[REDACTED]
[REDACTED]

(b)(7)(c) 2

Excellent QRF procedures, unit has tazer as part of non-lethal package. Weapons maintained outside facility.

Insufficient Lighting, one weapon kept inside wire (Admin Tent) in lock box

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

The facility has a single entrance gate w/ surveillance camera; weapons are not permitted inside the facility, but are used in the towers and rooftops for overwatch

# Annex A-Facility Summaries

<p>Towers around the facility provide good protection. Facility has two operational sally ports. [REDACTED]</p>
<p>N/A</p>
<p>N/A</p>
<p>The facility has a single entrance gate, but does not have a sally port. Weapons are not permitted inside the facility, but are utilized in the towers for overwatch. Guards did maintain key control within the facility.</p>
<p>Facility does not have a sally port entrance. Weapons are authorized inside the facility, but not in the cell blocks. [REDACTED]</p>
<p>Facility does not have a sally port entrance. Weapons are authorized inside the facility, but not in the cell blocks. There is no key control in the facility. [REDACTED]</p>

Chgh/2

2023-24

## Annex A-Facility Summaries

<p>There is no control of weapons within the facility. Weapons were taken into the cells with the detainees. A large cash of weapons is maintained in the facility in an evidence room</p>
<p>New construction adding crash gates and sealing potential escapes routes; detainees will have to leave cells to use latrines/showers</p>
<p>The facility has a single entrance gate, but does not have a sally port. Weapons were permitted inside the facility administrative areas, but not inside the cellblocks. Guards did maintain key control within the facility</p>
<p>The facility has towers with oversight of the facility. Facility has two operational sally ports</p>
<p>The facility has an adequate badge system, and key control program. Weapons are maintained in the facility's control room. Movement within the facility is controlled, but [REDACTED]</p>
<p>Detainees should never be underestimated. [REDACTED]</p>
<p>Detainees are allowed support groups, although they are prohibited from communicating there remains risk whenever multiple detainees of this caliber are in proximity to each other</p>

(b)(7)2

## Annex B Audit Instruments

Though the primary purpose of the site surveys was to identify trends and national level requirements, the team provided onsite guidance and assistance to units performing detention operations and assistance to the Iraqi Correctional Officers, to include a two-day train-the-trainer session for 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde NCOs from its assigned Battalions. The team also left examples of SOPs used at the United States Disciplinary Barracks with the 320<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bn at [REDACTED] and have included SOPs, Training Plans and Emergency Action Plan resources in this report. Though detailed observations, whether written or provided verbally, were given onsite or forwarded to respective unit and facility commanders, there is merit in conducting subsequent surveys. Attached is the audit instruments used by this assistance team, but more detailed guidance and standards are available from the American Correctional Association (ACA). We would caution, though, to the strict application of U.S. standards (even U.S. facilities fall short of many published standards), and only offer the ACA standards as general guidelines. The baseline remains 1) Accountability, 2) Humane treatment, 3) Safe, Sanitary and Secure Facilities, and 4) Proper Segregation. (high)2

### Table of Contents

Appendix 1 (Legal Data Collection Tool). . . . .	.B-2
Appendix 2 (Health and Safety of a Correctional Facility). . . . .	.B-8
Appendix 3 (Corrections Training Academy Data Collection Tool). . . . .	.B-10
Appendix 4 (Prison Security Management Data Collection Tool).. . . . .	.B-12
Appendix 5 (Corrections Medical Operations Data Collection Tool).. . . . .	.B-14



## Annex B Audit Instruments

### Appendix 1 (Legal Data)

#### Legal Data Collection Tool Questionnaire for On-Site Visits

Date of visit \_\_\_\_\_ Facility/place visited \_\_\_\_\_

Name of person completing checklist \_\_\_\_\_

Name of translator/interpreter \_\_\_\_\_

Information for this checklist was obtained from the following person(s) Include title and telephone number, fax? and email?

The questions are designed for a YES or NO response, unless otherwise obvious. Please write a "Y" or "N". In some cases a short answer is necessary. It is not necessary that every question is asked or all information obtained.

Is the facility/place run by U S Military----Coalition Provisional Authority----Iraq? (Circle one)

What is the primary mission of the prison/facility?

What is the secondary mission?

#### Initial Detention:

List all of the means by which a person is detained at the facility. In other words, are they brought by Court Order and/or U S Forces and/or Iraqi authorities?

What is the process?

Is documentation submitted with each person left to be detained? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, what documentation?

Who created the documentation?

Please obtain a copy (copies) of such documentation

Is this documentation reviewed by someone at the prison/facility for completeness/correction/appropriateness? \_\_\_\_\_

What is the standard being used for detention?

## Annex B Audit Instruments

Is documentation completed by the prison/facility when a person being detained first arrives? \_\_\_\_\_

Who created this documentation?

Please obtain a copy (copies) of such documentation.

Is someone responsible for reviewing the paperwork submitted with the person being detained at the time they are being first placed in the prison/facility? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, who?

Does this person have the authority to refuse to accept the person being detained? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, under what circumstances?

Is the person being detained advised of the basis for their confinement? \_\_\_\_\_

Are they advised of what will happen to them next? (i.e., court appearance, how long they will be held, rights to counsel, whatever is applicable) \_\_\_\_\_

Is the person being detained given an individual identifier? \_\_\_\_\_

If yes, what are the identifiers being used?

How are they tracked?

Is the person being detained given any initial briefing or otherwise advised of the rules of conduct for the prison/facility?

Is there an initial assessment of the person being detained to determine their physical and mental condition? \_\_\_\_\_

Security risk? \_\_\_\_\_ Special needs? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, is there an initial assessment form or guideline? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, please obtain a copy of it

### Documentation:

Is a master file or central documentation kept on each person being detained? \_\_\_\_\_

If YES, please provide a copy of any sample documentation that is being used. Ask where the documentation came from that is being used

Is there standardized information kept in each file? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, please list the standard information

Is one particular person or one particular office or section responsible for maintaining the file? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, who or what maintains the files and where are they maintained?

## Annex B Audit Instruments

### Classifications of Detainees:

Are persons being detained classified? \_\_\_\_\_  
If so, how many different classifications are used?  
What are the different classifications?

Are pre-trial persons held apart from post-trial persons? \_\_\_\_\_  
Are the different classifications of persons detained kept in the same place/cells or are they segregated? (Circle one)  
Are men and woman kept segregated? \_\_\_\_\_  
Are pregnant women separated from the other population?  
Are juveniles identified and separated or moved to another facility?

What is the current population of each classification on the date of the visit?

What is the current population of pre-trial? \_\_\_\_\_ Of post-trial? \_\_\_\_\_  
How confident are they that this number is correct?  
Very confident----Confident----Not very confident----- (circle one)  
Is this number verified by someone or by some method? \_\_\_\_\_  
How is that number verified?

Are there standards/criteria for classification? \_\_\_\_\_  
Obtain copies of any documentation describing the process or SOP? \_\_\_\_\_  
Who makes the classification determination?  
Is the determination reviewed? \_\_\_\_\_  
How quickly? Who?  
Is the determination reviewed periodically? \_\_\_\_\_  
If so, how often?

Regardless of classification, does everyone detained appear in court at some point? \_\_\_\_\_  
Which classification of those detained, if any appear in court for a hearing?

Does someone at the prison/facility determine who and when the person detained goes to court or does someone from the court make the determination? (Circle one)

Is someone responsible for insuring a person detained appears in court when scheduled?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Who?  
Is someone responsible for transporting a detained person to court? \_\_\_\_\_  
Who?

## Annex B Audit Instruments

Are there any SOP's describing the legal rights of the persons being detained in the prison/facility? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, please obtain a copy

Are the persons being detained advised of their legal rights, orally or in writing, when they are detained? If so how?

Please obtain a copy of any written advisement. If an oral advisement is given, please make note of what is told to the detainee

### Counsel:

Can lawyers meet in the prisons/facilities with their clients? \_\_\_\_

If so, are these meetings conducted in private between the lawyer and the client? \_\_\_\_

Are there any written policies relating to an attorney visiting his client in the prison facility? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, please obtain copies of such policies

If lawyers are permitted to consult with their clients, are there certain classifications of persons detained that are not permitted to consult with an attorney? \_\_\_\_

If so, which classifications?

### Internal Discipline.

Are prisoners/persons detained punished for disciplinary breaches afforded due process of law? \_\_\_\_\_

Who administers/imposes such punishment?

What is the burden of proof required for such determination?

What is the due process?

If there is a SOP or other written guidance on the rights and/or the process by which a detainee is punished for a violation of the prison/facility rules? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, please obtain a copy of it

Does the prison/facility have written behavioral or conduct rules for those persons detained? \_\_\_\_

If so, please obtain a copy of it

If a person being detained is punished for violation of the prison rules, is the determination and punishment imposed reviewed by some authority? \_\_\_\_

If so, by whom?

How quickly after the initial determination?

### Detention and Correction systems management:

Does the prison/facility utilize any computer based management system? \_\_\_\_\_

If so describe it

## Annex B Audit Instruments

Does the prison/facility have any case management system? \_\_\_\_

If so, describe it or obtain copies of the SOP.

How often does the prison/facility transport prisoners to court for hearings?

Daily---weekly---upon request---other (specify: \_\_\_\_\_) (circle one)

Can the prison/facility transport a person to court upon request by the court? \_\_\_\_

How does the prison/facility communicate with the Court?

By phone----by mail----by courier-----by fax----- (other please specifies \_\_\_\_\_)

Circle one

Has the Administrator/chief executive officer of the prison/facility been trained primarily by the CPA-----U.S. Military-----Iraqis-----Other (please circle all that apply)

What training has this person received within the last twelve months?

Is the Administrator/chief executive officer aware of the International Standards that apply to this facility? \_\_\_\_\_

Do they believe they are in compliance with such standards? \_\_\_\_\_

If not, where are they lacking?

Is the Administrator/chief executive officer satisfied with the level of training that they and their staff have received? \_\_\_\_\_

If not, what additional training do they believe is most necessary?

Has the Administrator/chief executive officer and/or their staff received any specialized training in the legal rights of those being detained? \_\_\_\_

If so, when and by whom?

If not, is this training the Administrator would like to see provided to they and their staff?

Ask the Administrator to please rank the following types of training that is the most needed at this particular facility? (1 being the most needed and 6 being the least needed)

\_\_\_\_\_ Training in the legal rights of persons being detained

\_\_\_\_\_ Training in the classification of persons being detained

\_\_\_\_\_ Training in how to keep accurate records and files on persons being detained

\_\_\_\_\_ Training on maintaining good order and discipline in the prison/facility.

\_\_\_\_\_ Training on appropriate methods and processes to punish those persons being detained for violations of prison/facility rules

\_\_\_\_\_ Training in improving the coordination and communication between the prison and the Courts

## Annex B Audit Instruments

Regardless of the priority stated above, is there any area stated above that you do not need training in? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, please list

Is their adequate food in the facility? \_\_\_\_\_

How many meals are served per day? \_\_\_\_\_

Are there enough beds in the facility? \_\_\_\_\_

Is there adequate medical care in the facility? \_\_\_\_\_

Is there a Doctor either in the facility or on call 24 hours a day? \_\_\_\_\_

Are mental health/counseling services available in the facility? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, please describe

Are family members and friends allowed to visit any person being held in the facility? \_\_\_\_\_

If only certain classifications of persons being detained are entitled to have visitors, which classifications are allowed visitors?

Is there a protocol or SOP for family members and friends of persons being detained? \_\_\_\_\_

If so please obtain a copy

Are their periodic reviews of every prisoner's status, to include the following last court date, next court date, out date (if applicable), and behavior/conduct? \_\_\_\_\_

If so, how are those reviews documented?

Who is the Legal Advisor/Who provides Legal Advice for this particular prison/facility?  
(need name, office, telephone number and fax number, and email if available)

## Annex B Audit Instruments

### Appendix 2 (Health and Safety of a Correctional Facility)

YES	NO	N/A	<b>Framework for the Assessment of the Health and Safety of a Correctional Facility</b>
			<b>A. Detainee Space</b>
			1 Adequate living space, lighting, weather and noise containment
			2 Separation of special populations ( children, females, physically and mentally ill)
			<b>B Water Management ( availability and reliability)</b>
			1 Potable water for drinking and basic hygiene
			2 System for fire suppression
			<b>C Sewage and Trash Removal</b>
			1 Septic system capable of sustaining basic sanitation
			2 Daily trash removal and cleaning of the facility
			3 Ready access to toilets and hand washing
			<b>D Food Service</b>
			1 Kitchen sanitation procedures
			2 Food handler procedures for basic sanitation management
			3 Food handling/storage in detainee living areas
			<b>E. Ventilation</b>
			1 Adequate airflow to minimize stagnant air pockets
			2 Ability to mitigate extreme temperatures
			<b>F Personal Hygiene</b>
			1 Hand washing facilities readily available
			2 Shower facilities in adequate numbers to support routine showers
			3 Laundry facilities
			4 Adequate clothing and bedding to permit frequent rotation
			<b>G Housekeeping</b>
			1 Adequate cleaning material and equipment

### Annex B Audit Instruments

		2. Assess frequency of cleaning within the facility (how dirty is the facility and is there evidence of vermin and insect infestation).
		<b>H. Programs</b>
		1. Work – institutional work to maintain the facility
		2 Recreation – space and activities to deal with boredom
		3 Education – essential for facilities with children
		4 Spiritual services – religious programs
		5 Counseling programs – psychological services for the severely mentally ill, including suicide prevention and intervention
		<b>I. Emergency Plans</b>
		1 Disaster Management Procedures – riot control, hostage procedures, weather situations
		2 Fire procedures and drills
		3 Medical emergencies – mass casualty, hunger strikes, etc



## Annex B Audit Instruments

### Appendix 3 (IRAQ Corrections Training Academy Data Collection Tool)

Yes	No	N/A	<b>IRAQ Corrections Training Academy Data Collection Tool</b>
			<b>The Basic Corrections Training Course is</b> 1 2 3 4 5 6 Weeks 1 2 3 4 5 6 Months 1 yr 18 months (other ) in Duration <b>(Circle one)</b>
			<b>Does the school provide the following as part of its Correctional Training Program?</b>
			Introduction & Overview of the Iraqi Corrections System
			International Standards and Norms Impacting on Prison Work & Inmates
			Iraqi Corrections Policy & Procedures
			Cross Cultural Awareness
			Inmate Discipline Process
			Inmates and the Prison Environment
			Violence in Prison
			Correctional Treatment Process
			Hostage Survival
			Supervision of Inmates
			Inmate Search Procedures (Frisk/Strip)
			Cell and Common Area Search Procedures
			Drug Awareness
			Suicide Prevention/Intervention
			Assist & Communicate with Inmates (IPC)
			First Aid & CPR
			Universal Precautions for Blood Born Diseases
			Personal Protection Techniques (USD)
			Key & Tool Control Procedures
			Inmate Accountability Procedures
			Report Writing
			Stress Management
			Use of Force
			Forced Cell Moves
			Firearms Training
			Restraint Procedures
			Escort Procedures & Transportation of Inmates
			Security Procedures within a Correctional Institution
			Emergency Actions for Fire/Escapes & Disorders
			Visitation Procedures
			Feeding Procedures within a Correctional Institution
			In-processing/Intake Procedures
			Cellblock Operations
			Special Housing Unit (SHU) Operations
			<b>Does the Academy Provide a Performance Evaluation Exercise as a Course Completion Requirement?</b>
			<b>Does School have Advanced Correctional Training Courses?</b>

**Annex B Audit Instruments**

		<b>Does the Academy Provide Annual Refresher Training?</b>
		<b>Does the Academy have an Instructor Certification Process?</b>
		<b>Does School have Viable POI/CMP?</b>
		<b>Does the Training Adequately Provide Students with the Basic Knowledge to Perform the Job?</b>
<b>Remarks</b>		

## **Annex B Audit Instruments**

### **Appendix 4 (Prison Security Management Data Collection Tool)**

1. Access Control
  - a. Sallyport
  - b. Pedestrian
  - c. Vehicle
  - d. Searches
  - e. Posted Rules/Contraband
  - f. Weapons Control
  
2. Perimeter Security
  - a. Barrier (Fence/Wall)
  - b. Tower/mobile patrols
  - c. Lighting
  
3. Control Center
  - a. Communication (Internal/Outside Agencies) ,
  - b. Two types of communications
  - c. Duress System
  - d. Emergency Plans
  - e. Movement control
  - f. Policies/SOPs/Post Orders
  
4. Accountability
  - a. Inmate (Master Alpha Roster)
    - Headcounts
    - Bedcounts
  - b. Staff (How many inside facility at any given time)
    - Badge system/Restricted entry
  - c. Tool Control
  - d. Key and Lock control
  - e. Sharps Control
    - Needle /Syringe
    - Cooking Utensils
  - f. Mail
  
5. Inmate Movement
  - a. Escorted
  - b. Unescorted
  - c. Mass
  - d. Supervised

## **Annex B Audit Instruments**

### **6. Prisoner Programs/Management**

- a. Grievance System
- b. Discipline System
- c. Educational Programs
- d. Recreational Programs
- e. Food Service
- f. Sanitation
- g. Medical

### **7 Classification/Custody (Segregated by )**

- a. Criminal
- b. High Risk Detainees
- c. MEK
- d. Pre-trial
- e. Administrative Segregation (Protective custody, mentally ill, medical, leaders)

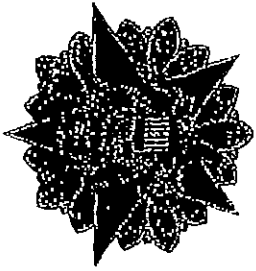
### **8 Visitation**

- a. Contact/Non-contact
- b. Legal
- c. Family
- d. Government Official

## Annex B Audit Instruments

### Appendix 5 (IRAQ Corrections Medical Operations Data Collection Tool)

IRAQ Corrections Medical Operations Data Collection Tool			
		<p>The current medical oversight is being provided by:</p> <p>POC name:</p> <p>Specialty : (MD, PA, civilian, other)</p> <p>Assigned unit or agency:</p>	
YES	NO	N/A	Initial Evaluation:
			Are health assessments performed on in-processing detainees?
			Are records kept of all initial and follow on medical assessments/treatments?
			Are there standing operating procedures for dealing with infectious diseases which address protection issues for both staff and prisoners?
			<b>Health Care Operations:</b>
			Are there procedures that address detainees medical needs for daily, chronic, specialized and/or emergency care?
			Are records kept of all detainee patient visits?
			Are detainees with mental health issues identified and managed?
			Are "special needs" (i.e. mentally ill, suicidal patients) detainees identified and managed?
			How are detainees that require specialized or hospital care managed?
			Are unique medical needs of women, nursing mothers, infants, and children addressed?
			Pharmaceuticals How are medications managed (i.e. accountability, distribution, and storage)?
			How are healthcare operations assessed and reviewed?
			Are dental services available to detainees?
			<b>Medical/legal issues:</b>
			Is there a policy for the use of medical restraints?
			Is there a policy for the forced use of mood altering medications?
			Is there a policy for the management of suicidal detainees?
			Are detainees given the right to care and the right to refuse care?
			<b>Health Education and Preventive Medicine:</b>
			Are detainees trained on the prevention of communicable diseases?
			Are staff educated on the management of special needs detainees (i.e. mentally ill, infectious detainees, lactating women and other special populations)?



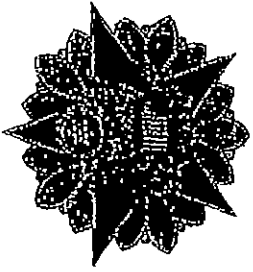
**OFFICE OF THE  
PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL**



**CJTTF-7 DETENTION  
OPERATIONS ASSISTANCE  
VISIT**

6 Nov 03

*MG Donald J. Ryder  
Provost Marshal General*

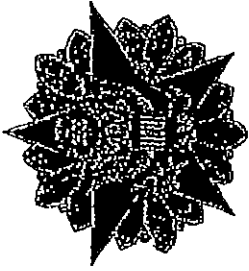


# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARS HAL GENERAL



## Agenda

- Mission
- Background
- Methodology
- Observations/Recommendations  
(9 Subject Areas)
- Conclusion



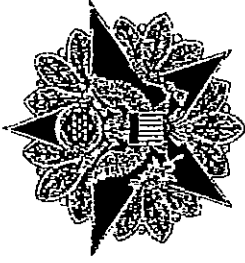
# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL



## Team Mission

- Cdr, CJTF-7 requests a team of subject matter experts to assess, and make specific recommendations concerning detention and corrections operations in Iraq...assist in resolving the management and administration of detainee operations.
  - The team must be prepared to make specific recommendations and identify the resources required to ensure that detainees are held and processed in accordance with the requirements imposed by U.S. and international law.
  - The focus of the team will be to identify problems, propose solutions and recommend the resources necessary to implement the solutions. A report that merely documents problems will not be helpful.
- Restated Mission: We view our team in an assistance role, as part of the CJTF-7 Team. A key aspect of the mission is to make recommendations on how to bridge from current operations to an Iraqi-run prison system that is synched with CPA plans, and adequately address general detention operations and management, legal/judicial systems, medical support and information systems management.





# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL



## Background

- Oct 02, Saddam Hussein releases 100K inmates
- Antiquated/fragmented Prison infrastructure systematically disassembled and heavily looted during hostilities
- Jun 03, Publication of “Prisons and Detention Centers in Iraq: An Assessment and Recommendations for Prisons in a Free Society”
- Jun 03, CPA issues Order #10 and Memorandum #2: Management of Detention and Prison Facilities
- Jun 03 TOA, the 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde expands mission to include Security Internees, HVD, Criminal Detainees, and MEK
- Since Jun 03, CPA Ministry of Justice Prisons Department personnel departure inhibits progress
- 15 Sep 03, new CPA MOJ Prisons Department director arrives
- Impact of CPA turn-over mitigated by initiative of 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde and other Military Police Units in Theater



# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARS HAL GENERAL

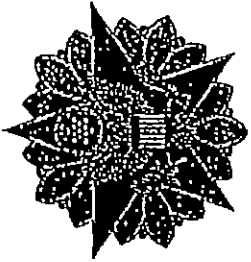


## Methodology

- Team Tasks (CJTTF-7 Memo, dtd 11 Aug 03)
- Team Composition (PMG and 13 SME's in Corrections, MP I/R Doctrine and Employment, Legal, Medical & Automation)
- Command, Principal Staff and Soldier Interviews
- Site Surveys (32 Facilities)
- Focus:
  - U.S. Security Internee Operations; OIF 2 requirements
  - Coalition Support to CPA MOJ Prisons Department for Criminal Detainee/Iraqi Prisons; OIF 1 synchronization and transition plan
- Assistance packages and train-the-trainer program

(high) 2

slide 6



# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL

## Detention and Corrections System Management

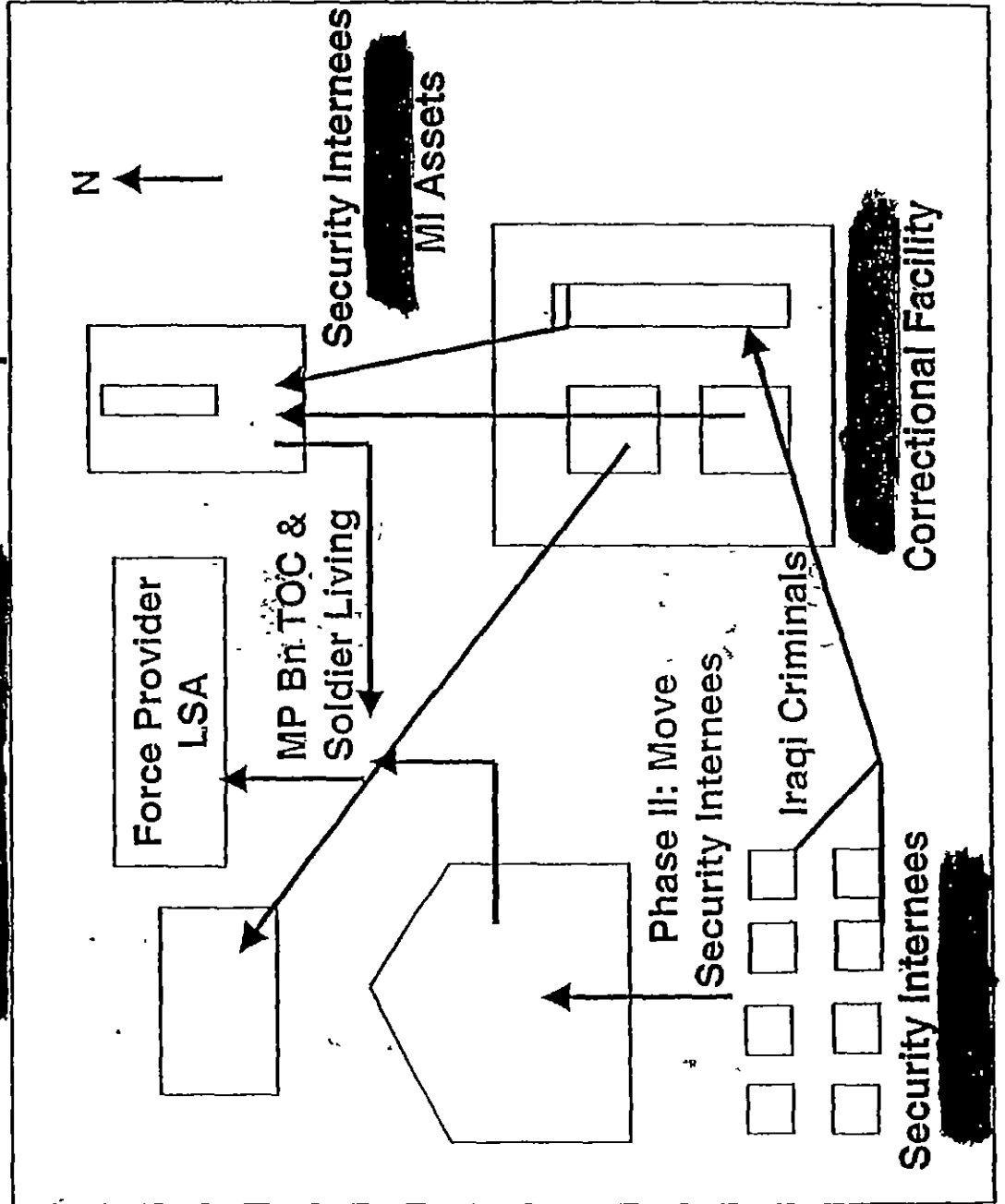
- Observations (12):
  - CPA MOJ Prisons Department are proven experts in corrections, but under-manned, resulting in over-reliance on Coalition MP support
  - 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde has used elements of several assigned MP (I/R) Bns and two Brigade LNO Dets to assist CPA MOJ
  - Long-term vision or projected end-state for facilities, staff levels, or anticipated prison population is unclear
  - Conflicting perceptions [redacted] Prison complex end-state (high) 2

[Large redacted area]

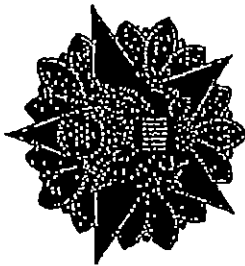
b/s



# OFFICE OF THE PROTESTANT MARSHAL GENERAL Complex



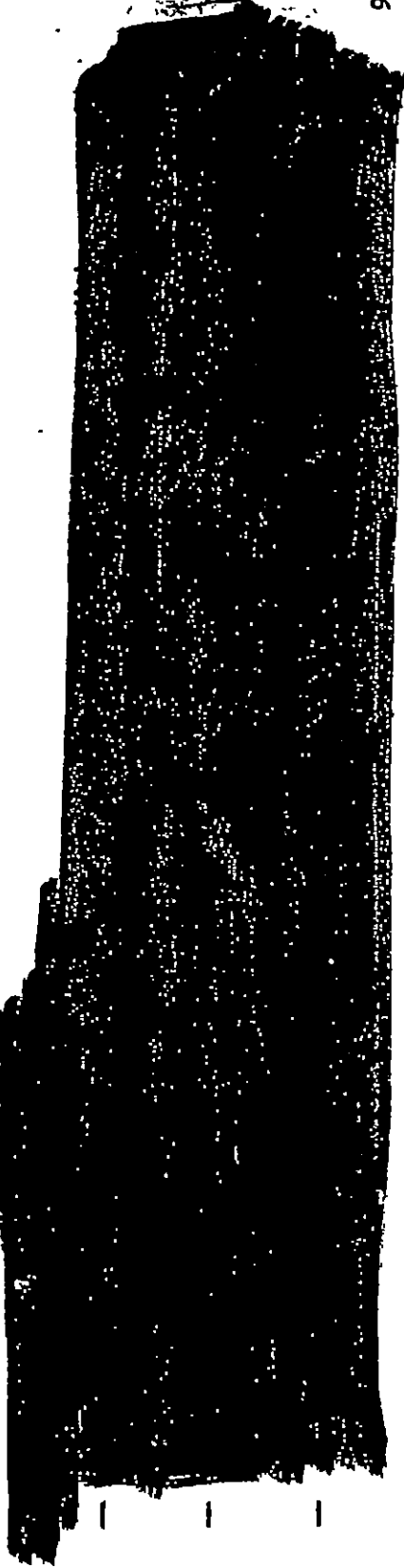
(high) 2

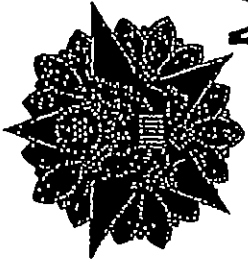


# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARS HAL GENERAL

## Detainee Management (including movement, segregation and accountability)

- Observations (10):
  - CPA Memorandum #2, provides sufficient guidance to develop standard operating procedures (SOP) for the Iraqi prison system
  - Memo #2 cannot serve as a substitute for a detailed facility SOP; CPA MOJ is working on a more comprehensive facility operational guide
  - No military police units purposely applying inappropriate confinement practices
  - Soldiers with previous military/civilian corrections experience employed more effective & appropriate procedures, knowing what "right" looked like





# OFFICE OF THE

## PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL

### Means of Command and Control of the Detention and Corrections System



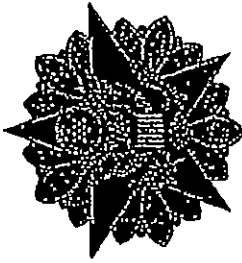
- Observations (7):
  - US Army MP doctrine calls upon specialized Theater-level MP units to conduct Internment/Resettlement (I/R) operations in the COMMZ
  - 800<sup>th</sup> MP (I/R) Bde has experienced challenges adapting its structure, training and equipment resources to its current mission-set
  - CFLCC has not requested a replacement MP (I/R) Bde for OIF 2
  - HQDA has approved a new Force Design Update to address new paradigm in I/R operations and expanding operational requirements.



59

slide 11



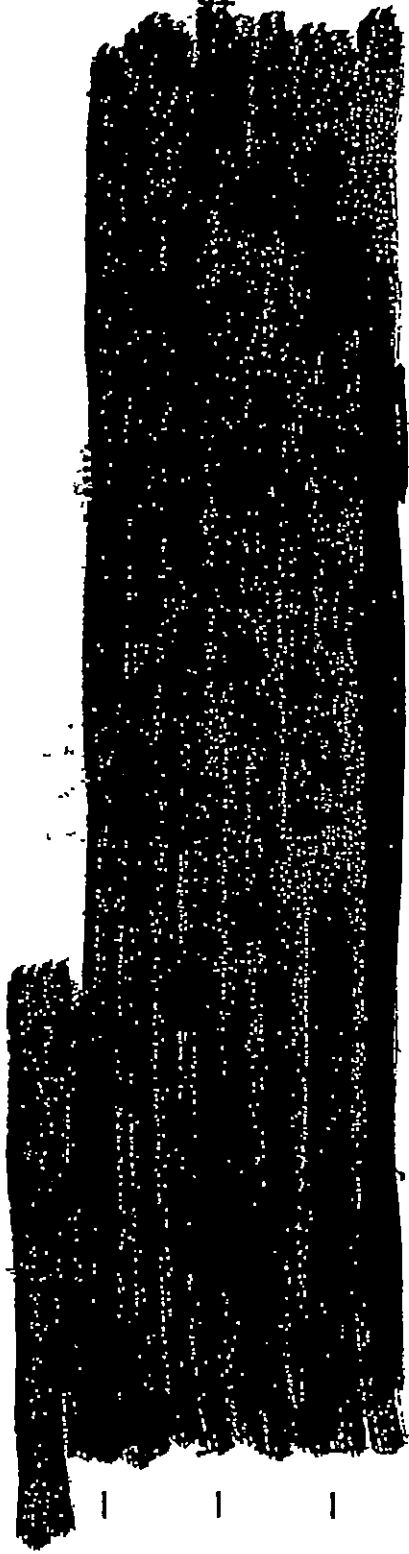


# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL

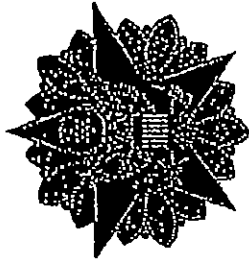


## Integration of Military Detention & Corrections Operations with CPA; adequacy of plans for transition to an Iraqi-run system

- Observations (6):
  - CPA MOJ efforts inhibited by a small staff, turn-over, security concerns, and a natural tendency to address individual facility issues
  - MPs generally lack experience/institutional knowledge to effectively work National prison system policy
  - Few MP officers and only 95C/31Es have experience in the operation of more complex long-term regional correctional facilities



b5



# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL



## Detainee Medical Care, Health Management and Medical Operations Assessment

- Observations (12):
  - U.S. military providers cover many Iraqi responsibilities; delineation of responsibilities for health care is unclear between detainee categories
  - U.S. military medical units lack adequate personnel/vehicles to appropriately manage the detainee mission
  - Rapid turnover of U.S. military physician personnel creates additional concerns for appropriate correctional health care management

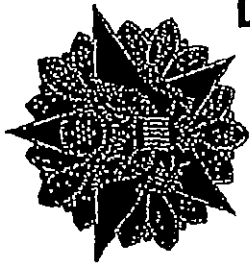
• [REDACTED]

- [REDACTED]

- [REDACTED] b5

- [REDACTED]

- [REDACTED]



# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARS HAL GENERAL

## Detention Facilities that meet required Health, Hygiene, and Sanitation Standards

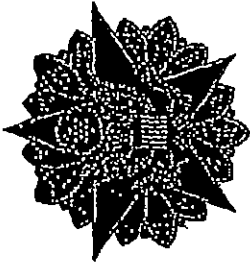
- Observations (13):
  - Significant variance in the health, hygiene and sanitation conditions in various facilities; ICRC reports major progress in all these areas
  - Most facilities have adequate water supplies, sewage management and appropriate food services to comply with United Nations guidelines
  - Present shortfalls in logistical support (equipment, medications, vehicles) for the Iraqi medical system are taxing the U.S. military system

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]



# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL

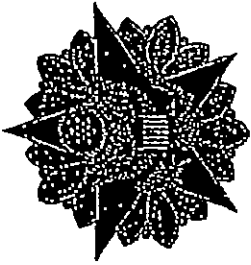


## Court Integration and Docket Management for Criminal Detainees

- Observations (9):
  - Docket management and release protocols play a significant role in population control and ultimately facility & staffing requirements
  - Mosul Central Booking Facility with onsite court facilities, coupled with timely Investigative Courts a solid model for large urban areas



65



# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL

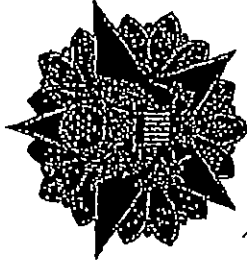
## Detainee Legal Processing

- Observations (15):
  - Criminal Detainees are referred to the Iraqi Criminal process
  - Security Internees are interned under Article 78 of the Geneva Conventions
  - 4<sup>th</sup> ID has added a Review Panel of one MP officer, one MI officer and a Judge Advocate for release decisions
  - At present there are approx. [redacted] Security Internees in custody; as many as [redacted] have been interned; and approximately [redacted] released

(high) 2

[Large redacted block of text]

bs



# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSCHAL GENERAL

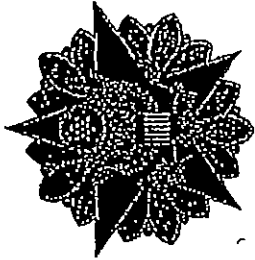


## Detainee Databases and Records (including integration w/ law enforcement/court databases)

- Observations (5):
  - Security Internee information recorded in NDRS and BATS
  - Not all have reliable data (NIPR/SIPR) or phone connectivity to connect BATS terminals to the central server, no central system administrator
  - Though there are several US State integrated prison systems, none are effectively integrated with law enforcement agencies and courts
  - CPA MOJ contracting for database system for Iraqi prison system

[REDACTED]

3

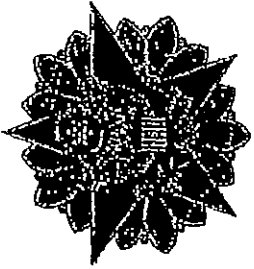


# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSCHAL GENERAL

## Conclusion



- Consolidation.
  - Achieve greater efficiencies with a consolidation at [REDACTED] (high) 2
  - CPA MOJ expand Iraqi Regional Correctional Facilities
- Separation. Establish distinctly separate facilities for Security Internees (US run) and Iraqi Criminals (Iraqi run)
- Standardization.
  - Provide standard guidance and training on detention operations and procedures for security internee facilities
  - CPA MOJ/MOI provide guidance on Iraqi prisons, Detention Centers, and Jails
- Enable CPA MOJ. (provide force protection/escort)
  - Continue staff augmentation through OIF 1
  - Establish decentralized Liaison in OIF 2
  - Encourage contracting of Iraqi training and International participation
- Enable Decentralized Execution/Initiative. Minimize bureaucracy (especially MOF) and support unit initiatives (101<sup>st</sup> ABN (AA) Div)

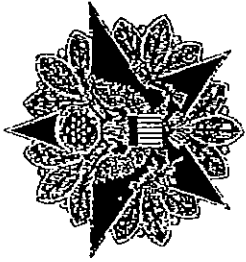


# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARS HAL GENERAL



## Back-up Slides





# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARS HAL GENERAL

## TEAM TASKS



(Slide 1 of 2)

- Detainee management, including detainee movement, segregation and accountability
- Detainee databases and records, including integration with law enforcement and court databases
- Interrogation prioritization and management (separate team)
- Detention facilities that meet required health, hygiene and sanitation standards
- Detention and Corrections systems management

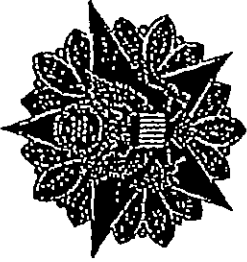


# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL TEAM TASKS



(Slide 2 of 2)

- Court integration and docket management for criminal detainees
- Detainee medical care and health management
- Detainee legal processing
- Integration of military detention and corrections operations with CPA, and adequacy of plans for transition to an Iraqi-run system (i.e., “Bridging Mechanism”)
- Means of command and control of the detention and corrections system



# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL Team Members



(slide 1 of 3)

Team Chief: MG Donald J. Ryder, Provost Marshal General

Team Members:

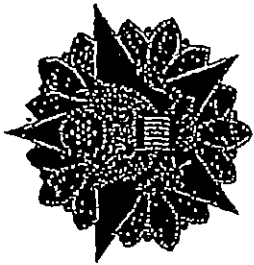
[REDACTED], MP, Director, Command & General Staff School; former  
Commandant, United States Disciplinary Barracks (USDB), Commander,  
704<sup>th</sup> MP BN & Ft Lewis Regional Correctional Facility, and Staff Officer at  
the USDB; MA degree in Criminal Justice (Corrections)

[REDACTED] JA, Military Judge (OTJAG Rep); Mobilized Reservist, Indiana  
State Circuit Court Judge; Juris Doctor degree

[REDACTED], MP, Deputy Commandant, USDB; former Commander of Ft  
Knox Regional Correctional Facility and Mannheim Confinement Facility;  
MA in Criminal Justice (Corrections); American Correctional Association  
(ACA) Certified Correctional Executive and Auditor

[REDACTED], MP, Corrections & Internment Branch Chief (OPMG); former  
Battalion Commander, 705<sup>th</sup> MP Bn (USDB) and Commander, Ft Ord Area  
Confinement Facility; OIC for Somali Police and Prison program  
(UNOSOM II); MA degree in Geography (Middle East)

Handwritten initials and numbers: "123" and "ET".



# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL

## Team Members

(slide 2 of 3)

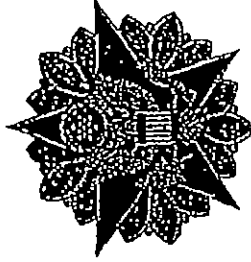
[REDACTED], MS (Social Worker), Health Care Administrator, USDB (10 Years experience at USDB); Masters of Social Work degree, National Commission on Correctional Health Care (NCCHC) Certified Correctional Health Care Professional, ACA Certified Correctional Manager and Auditor

[REDACTED], EPW/Detainee Program Manager (OPMG), former ACA Deputy Director of Standards and Accreditation and Executive Director California Correctional Association; US Air Force Reserves Counter-Intelligence Officer; MA degree in Public Administration (Corrections)

[REDACTED], SP (Physician Assistant, OTSG Rep), Special Projects Officer (Department Health Education & Training, AMEDDCS); specializes in Preventive Medicine and Occupational Health; 17 years as a PA to include health care at USDB, Ft Lewis RCF and Ft Hood Installation Detention Facility; Masters in Public Health degree

[REDACTED], MP, XO 327<sup>th</sup> MP Bn (currently at Bagram, Afghanistan); 15 years experience in Internment/Resettlement (I/R) operations, to include 6 years in a Training Support Battalion and command of an MP Escort Guard Company during Desert Storm





# OFFICE OF THE PROVOST MARSHAL GENERAL Team Members



(slide 3 of 3)

[REDACTED], MP, Concepts Developer (USAMPS); 12 years experience in I/R operations, to include recent work on MP I/R force design and employment; MA degree in Management

[REDACTED], SG, Action Officer, Strategic Architecture Branch (USCENTCOM, J6); formerly advised Kuwaiti MOD on communications and computer systems; Undergraduate degree in Police Management and MA in Business Management; will remain in country as USCENTCOM J6 LNO

[REDACTED], MP, I/R Operations Officer, CFLCC, PMO since Dec '02; former LNO to CPA and ICRC before TOA; MA in Criminal Justice (Corrections) with follow-on assignment to the USDB

[REDACTED], 31E (Correctional Specialist), Guard Commander, USDB; 24 years of Corrections experience to include NCOIC of the Special Housing Unit and eight years at USDB

[REDACTED], 31E, Senior Corrections Technical Advisor (USAMPS); 22 years corrections experience, to include 7 years at USDB and two tours to GTMO; MA degree in Public Administration and Security Management

# ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

## Table of Contents

Appendix 1 (Correctional Officer Safety).....	D-2
Appendix 2 (React to a Physical Attack using Unarmed Self-Defense Techniques).....	D-10
Appendix 3 (Restrain a Detainee).....	D-41
Appendix 4 (Forced Cell Moves).....	D-52

# ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

## Appendix 1

### Correctional Officer Safety

#### SECTION 1. ADMINISTRATIVE DATA

Oct 2003

#### SECTION I. ADMINISTRATIVE DATA

All Courses Including This Lesson

COURSE NUMBER(S)

COURSE TITLES(S)

Task(s) Taught or Supported

TASK NUMBER

TASK TITLE

None

Reinforced Task(s)

TASK NUMBER

TASK TITLE

None

Academic Hours

The academic hours required to teach this lesson are as follows

	HRS/MOI		
	0 7/CO		
	0 3/TP		
TEST			
TOTAL HOURS	1 0		

Test Lesson Number

Testing,  
(to include test review)

Hours

0  
0

Lesson No

Prerequisite Lesson(s)

(State if there are none )

LESSON NUMBER

LESSON TITLE

None

Foreign Restrictions

Security Clearance/ Access

Unclassified

**ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

**References**

<u>Number</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Additional Information</u>

**Student Study Assignments**

None

**Instructor Requirements**

One primary instructor

**Additional Support Personnel Requirements**

None

**Equipment Required**

**Materials Required**

STUDENT MATERIALS pen/pencil and notebook

**Classroom, Training Area, and Range Requirements**

One 40-person classroom

**Ammunition Requirements**

None

**Instructional Guidance**

Before presenting this lesson, instructors must thoroughly prepare by studying this lesson and identified reference material

**Proponent Lesson Plan Approvals**

NAME	RANK	POSITION	DATE
Edward J Baldwin Jr	SFC	Corrections SME	Oct 03



## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

### SECTION II. INTRODUCTION

Method of instruction CO  
 Instructor to student ratio is 1:60  
 Time of instruction 0.1  
 Media Slides

**NOTE:** Show Slide #1 (Safety in Internment Facilities)

**NOTE:** PRIOR TO CLASS OBTAIN AND DISPLAY NUMEROUS EQUIPMENT ITEMS FOR ASSISTING IN IDENTIFICATION OF SAFETY HAZARDS (I.E., BROOM, MP W/BUCKET, BUFFER, ETC.).

**Motivator** You will soon be supervising detainees and as their supervisor you are responsible for their safety. A lot of the incidents or accidents discussed in this class may seem minor or that common sense could have prevented the accident. No matter how minor, people were still hurt or property was damaged. As for common sense some of the same accidents are still happening.

**NOTE:** Inform students of the following terminal learning objective requirements

**NOTE:** Show Slide #2 (Action, Conditions, Standards)

**Terminal Learning Objective** At the completion of this lesson you will

<b>ACTION:</b>	Discuss the potential safety hazards in an Internment facility and discuss the appropriate actions in conducting your duties in a safe manner
<b>CONDITION:</b>	In a classroom environment, given a conference presentation
<b>STANDARD:</b>	Recognize all potential safety hazards and perform duties in a safe manner in an Internment environment

**Safety Requirements** None.

**Risk Assessment Level** Low

**Environmental Considerations** None. It is the responsibility of all soldiers and DA civilians to protect the environment from damage.

**Evaluation** None

**Instructional Lead-in** Safety in an Internment facility relates to most of the classes you will receive but closely relates to supervise work activities within a confinement facility.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

### SECTION III. PRESENTATION

**Note:** Inform the students of the Enabling Learning Objective requirements

**Enabling Learning Objective A**

<b>ACTION:</b>	Identify safety hazards to detainees and staff in a confinement environment.
<b>CONDITION:</b>	Given a conference presentation in a classroom environment
<b>STANDARD:</b>	Recognize safety hazards to detainees and staff in a correctional environment

**NOTE** Show Slide #3 (Accident)

#### Learning Step/Activity 1.

Method of instruction CO Instructor to student ratio is 1:60.

Time of instruction 0.1 hour(s)

Media Slides

References

Security Classification None

**Something that occurs unexpectedly or unintentionally and results in damage and (or) injury is classified as an accident**

1 Safety is a concern for all supervisors. The immediate supervisor, the person that is supervising the detainees, more than likely is the one that will be held accountable if there is an incident.

**NOTE. SHOW EQUIPMENT ITEMS AND HAVE STUDENTS DISCUSS THE SAFETY HAZARDS FOR EACH ITEM. USE PERSONAL EXPERIENCES**

**NOTE** Show Slides #4 and #5 (Institutional Safety)

- 2 We will discuss the situations listed
  - a Locating safety hazards
  - b. Establishing safety standards
  - c Training detainees to follow safety standards
  - d Fire and accident prevention

**NOTE** Instructor will discuss some of the most common accidents that occur in a confinement facility

- 3 As a corrections staff member you will have some responsibilities on the supervision of detainees and safety standards
  - a Setting the example by always following good safety practices
  - b Being constantly alert to potential safety hazards
  - c Making sure that safety equipment is issued and that the

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

proper working condition before letting the detainees use them.

d. Instructing the detainee on proper safety measures and ensuring the safe working habits of all the detainees.

**Note:**

Inform the students of the Enabling Learning Objective requirements

**Enabling Learning Objective B**

<b>ACTION:</b>	Identify ways to perform corrections staff member duties in a safe manner.
<b>CONDITION:</b>	Given a conference presentations in a classroom environment
<b>STANDARD:</b>	Recognize ways to perform your duties safely in an internment environment

**Learning Step/Activity1.**

Method of instruction: CO/TP Instructor to student ratio is 1.60

Time of instruction 0 3/0 3

Media slides

References

Security Classification None

NOTE Show Slides #6 and #7 (Officer Safety)

SECTION V. We will discuss the situations listed

SECTION V. Safety rules to be observed when escorting detainees

SECTION V Safety practices when approaching cell doors and when walking underneath the tiers

SECTION V. Always look up

SECTION V. Watch the detainee's hands

SECTION V. Use the windows to see the reflection like a mirror

c Safety rules pertaining to cell searches

SECTION V. Proper procedure for breaking up an altercation between detainees and the proper action to take if suddenly confronted by an armed detainee

NOTE SHOW JOB AIDS: I.E., WHISTLE, RUBBER GLOVES, MIRROR, FLASHLIGHT, AND RADIO

2 We will discuss the job aids available to correctional personnel, the equipment that is designed to make our job safer, such as the body alarm, radio, mirror, rubber gloves, flashlight, etc

NOTE What are your questions concerning safety in a confinement/ correctional facilities

NOTE Show Slides #8 and #9 (Pre-attack Cues)

SECTION V We will discuss and identify PRE-ATTACK CUES and be aware and look for the warning signs of detainees

## **ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

**they prepare to attack.**

**a BLADING** – this is shifting one foot in back of the other, so the detainee can move toward you more easily

**b CLENCHING THE FISTS** – to prepare the detainee for attack by lubricating the finger joints, and to keep themselves under control

**c SHIFTING THE SHOULDERS BACK** – to give you a message that he means business, as well as providing a certain amount of protection for himself, or as preparation before **STRIKING YOU**

**d TARGET GLANCE** – looking for a weapon to attack with or an area on your body to strike

**e CONSPICUOUSLY LOOKING UP** – the detainee may be trying to distract you by looking in a certain direction, prior to a surprise attack, or checking out his post-attack escape route

**f THOUSAND-YARD STARE** – the detainee may try to depersonalize you, by looking straight through you (A good example of this can be seen in the movie "The Silence of the Lambs," when Anthony Hopkins looks at Jody Foster as if she wasn't even there.)

**g FACIAL WIPE** – hiding or averting the face (Sometimes people who are on the verge of losing control of themselves perform a facial wipe, by which they attempt to hide the level of anxiety they're experiencing by physically moving their hands over their faces. This may show up as removing a hat, slicking back the hair, or something equally inconspicuous.)

**h ROCKING ON THE BALLS OF THE FEET** – as the detainee gets more upset, these movements act as a means of diffusing their overload of adrenaline and anxiety

**i LOWERING THE BODY SLIGHTLY** – causing the head to lower, just before moving into the attack

**j GROWLING** – at the climax of their fear or anger, some humans even growl before they attack

**k FACIAL COLORING** – changing from flushed to pale (The body is moving blood from the extremities to the internal organs, to protect them in case of injury)

**l BOISTEROUS PROFANITY** – detainees will speak loud and yell words or profanity to demoralize you in an attempt to intimidate you, prior to attack

**m WAVING ARMS AND HANDS** – detainees will wave their arms and hands rapidly as they speak, in an attempt to distract you prior to attack

**NOTE: BE AWARE OF AND LOOK FOR THESE BEHAVIORS AND CUES, AS THEY ARE CLEAR SIGNS OF DANGER, BEING ABLE TO OBSERVE AND DETECT THESE CUES AND TAKE APPROPRIATE ACTIONS WILL MAKE THE DETERMINATION WHETHER OR NOT YOU WILL SAFELY ACCOMPLISH YOUR DUTIES.**

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Traiger Training Program

NOTE: Show Slide #10 (React to Danger).

**NOTE: THERE ARE THREE GENERAL STEPS TO TAKE WHEN CONFRONTED BY A POTENTIALLY DANGEROUS SITUATION THAT MAY FEEL UNSAFE.**

SECTION V. STOP (WHAT YOU ARE DOING).

SECTION V. THINK (OBSERVE THE SITUATION, AND ASSESS THE DANGER).

SECTION V REACT (TAKE APPROPRIATE ACTION).

NOTE Show Slide #11 (Time and Distance)

QUESTION WHAT IS REACTION TIME?

ANSWER: THE AVERAGE AMOUNT OF TIME YOUR BODY WILL REACT TO A GIVEN SITUATION

QUESTION WHAT IS THE AVERAGE REACTION TIME IF YOU WERE ATTACKED BY A DETAINEE THAT IS APPROXIMATELY FIVE FEET AWAY FROM YOU?

ANSWER LESS THAN .1/4 second

QUESTION WHAT IS THE AVERAGE REACTION TIME IF YOU WERE ATTACKED BY A DETAINEE THAT IS APPROXIMATELY TEN FEET AWAY FROM YOU?

ANSWER: LESS THAN 1/2 a second

QUESTION WHAT IS THE AVERAGE REACTION TIME IF YOU WERE ATTACKED BY A DETAINEE THAT IS APPROXIMATELY TWENTY FEET AWAY FROM YOU?

ANSWER LESS THAN 1 and 1/4 SECONDS

NOTE Whenever you are encountering a potentially dangerous detainee that makes an attempt to attack ALWAYS remember that he will always act faster than you think he will and you will always react slower than you think you will

---

### SECTION IV

### SUMMARY

---

Method of instruction CO  
Instructor to student ratio is 1 60  
Time of instruction 0 1 hour(s)  
Media None

---

Determine if students have learned the material presented by –

Check on  
Learning

SECTION V. Soliciting student questions and explanations

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

### SECTION V. Asking questions and getting answers from the students.

- c. Providing immediate feedback in context to the material presented and correcting student misunderstandings.

#### Review/ Summarize Lesson

1. RETAIN ATTENTION As a correctional staff member you will be responsible for the detainees safety and other corrections staff member safety as well as your own

2 SUMMARY. Supervising detainees includes enforcing safety standards, recognizing safety hazards and ensuring that safety equipment is being properly used While performing your duties you will have to stay alert to ensure you perform your duties in a safe manner

3 CLOSING STATEMENT You, as the detainees immediate supervisor will be the person in the position to ensure the detainees follow established safety standards The way you handle this responsibility could reduce or increase the amount of accidents in the facility

#### Transition to Next Lesson

#### SECTION V

#### STUDENT EVALUATION

#### Testing Requirements

None

#### Feedback Requirement

SECTION V. Schedule and provide immediate feedback in context to the material presented, correct student misunderstandings

SECTION V. Provide remedial training as needed

# ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

## Appendix 2

### React to a Physical Attack using Unarmed Self-Defense Techniques

**SECTION I. ADMINISTRATIVE DATA**

**All Courses Including This Lesson**

<u>Course Number</u>	<u>Version</u>	<u>Course Title</u>
----------------------	----------------	---------------------

**Task(s) Taught(\*) or Supported**

<u>Task Number</u>	<u>Task Title</u>
<u>Individual</u> 191-381-1370 (*)	React to a Physical Attack using Unarmed Self Defense Techniques

**Reinforced Task(s)**

<u>Task Number</u>	<u>Task Title</u>
--------------------	-------------------

**Academic Hours**

The academic hours required to teach this lesson are as follows

	<u>Resident Hours/Methods</u>
	0.6 hrs Conference / Discussion
	5.0 hrs / Demonstration
	5.0 hrs / Practical Exercise
Test	1.6 hrs
Test Review	0 hrs
<b>Total Hours</b>	<b>12 Hrs</b>

**Test Lesson Number**

	<u>Hours</u>	<u>Lesson No</u>
Testing (to include test review)		

**Prerequisite Lesson(s)**

<u>Lesson Number</u>	<u>Lesson Title</u>
	<u>Apply Priorities of Force</u>

**Clearance Access**

Security Level *Unclassified*  
Requirements There are no clearance or access requirements for the lesson

**Foreign Disclosure Restrictions**

FD5 This product/publication has been reviewed by the product developers in coordination with the (installation/activity name) foreign disclosure authority. This product is releasable to students from all requesting foreign countries without restrictions.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Traiger Training Program

**References**

<u>Number</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Additional Information</u>
STP 19-95C1-4-SMTG	Soldier's Manual for MOS 95C, Corrections Staff member, Skill Level 1	30 Sep 2003	
AR 190- 14	Carrying of Firearms and Use of Force for Law Enforcement and Security Duties	12 Mar 1993	
AR 190-47	Army Corrections System	15 Aug 1996	

**Student Study Assignments**

None

**Instructor Requirements**

1 Primary and 4 assistants per 60 students

**Additional Support**

<u>Name</u>	<u>Stu Ratio</u>	<u>Qty</u>	<u>Man Hours</u>
<u>Assistant Instructors</u>	1:12	4	8 hrs

**Personnel Requirements**

None

**Equipment Required for Instruction**

<u>ID Name</u>	<u>Stu Ratio</u>	<u>Instr Ratio</u>	<u>Spt</u>	<u>Qty</u>	<u>Exp</u>
Floor Mat 12X12 or wrestling mats	1 2	1 12			
Strike Pad (Foam)	1:2	1 12			
*Knife (Mock)	1:2	1 12			

\* Before Id indicates a TADSS

**Materials Required**

**Instructor Materials**

**Student Materials** None

**Classroom, Training Area, and Range Requirements**

Gym or other suitable training area

**Ammunition Requirements**

<u>Id</u>	<u>Name</u>	<u>Exp</u>	<u>Stu Ratio</u>	<u>Instr Ratio</u>	<u>Spt Qty</u>
None					

**Instructional**

NOTE Before presenting this lesson, instructors must thoroughly prepare



## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**Guidance** by studying this lesson and identified reference material. All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively.

Proponent Lesson Plan Approvals	<u>Name</u>	<u>Rank</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Date</u>
	Edward J Baldwin Jr	SFC	Corrections SME	25 Oct 03

### SECTION II. INTRODUCTION

Method of Instruction <u>Conference / Discussion</u>
Instructor to Student Ratio is <u>1 60</u>
Time of Instruction <u>10 mins</u>
Media <u>Large Group Instruction</u>

**Motivator** The concepts relating to self-defense have a long history and originated from the far east. Some of the self-defense tactics include jujitsu, judo, tae kwon do, aikido, etc.

A majority of the techniques taught in this lesson are derived from Aikido, which was founded in Japan in 1925 as an adaptation of jujitsu. Japanese warriors primarily used Aikido for a method self defense. Pressure points, throwing, and joint locking (holds) are its principle techniques.

An 80-year-old man named Morihei Ushiba who was a master in many different styles of martial arts initially designed aikido. He developed these defensive techniques because as he got older he found that when he would hit or kick an opponent he would feel pain as well. He designed Aikido as a means of using the attacker's strength and energy against them just by redirecting their energy. This program was designed for old people, women, and children, so if they can perform these techniques then everyone here today should have no problem executing these techniques.

You must be aware of your surroundings while working within an Internment facility because whenever men or women are housed in a tightly controlled environment tensions and stress levels increase. As a result there may be times as a staff member that you may find yourself being required to use force to defend yourself. When force is used to quell a disturbance or to defend ourselves we must use the minimum amount of force all times. Knowing that the propensity for exists we must be alert for and potential violent attack, as well as being aware of our avenue of possible escape.

**Terminal Learning Objective** NOTE: Inform the students of the following Terminal Learning Objective requirements:

At the completion of this lesson, you [the student] will

<b>Action</b>	React to a physical attack using unarmed self-defense techniques.
---------------	---

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

<b>Condition:</b>	Given a situation that requires you to use physical force against an aggressive assailant who is attacking you in an Interment facility and all lower levels of force have been ineffective.
<b>Standard:</b>	React to a physical attack by selecting the appropriate unarmed self-defense technique and perform all the necessary steps to defend yourself against a physical attack as demonstrated by successfully completing the performance evaluation

### Safety Requirements

There will be a lot of hands on training during this program of instruction. This is a controlled environment and the following safety precautions must be enforced by all instructors and students during this lesson

- 1 All participants will only practice those techniques explained by the primary instructor. ALL students MUST relax and be flexible during each technique applied to reduce injury to limbs and joints
- 2 There will be no horseplay or other types of disturbances during the class
- 3 Instruct students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the defender's commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another

**SECTION V.** All watches, rings, glasses and necklaces etc must be removed prior to the beginning of class and stored in a safe location away from the training area

- 5 All participants must warm up major muscle groups prior to training to help prevent muscular injuries
- 6 Additional instructors will be tasked to assist the Primary Instructor to help control and supervise the training as well as assist and critique students as necessary
- 7 All techniques will be conducted step by step the first time using a talk through demonstration method of instruction a minimum of two times prior to allowing students an opportunity to conduct any practical exercises
- 8 The techniques taught in this lesson will NEVER be conducted by any student at combat speed during this lesson

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

---

**Risk Assessment Level**

Low

---

**Environmental Considerations**

**NOTE:** It is the responsibility of all soldiers and DA civilians to protect the environment from damage

---

**Evaluation**

This material will be tested utilizing a competency-based hands on performance evaluation upon completion of the training

---

**Instructional Lead-In**

The United States Army has high standards to training and Defensive Tactics is one of those high priority-training programs that requires you to participate in and understand the policies on what type of techniques you will be authorized to use to defend yourself when the time arises. In any potentially dangerous situation humans have one of two reactions that they will take known as fight or flight. No one says you have to stay and fight. But if you do stay you should at least possess the basic knowledge and skills to defend yourself, get away from an attacker and avoid confrontation whenever possible. The techniques you will learn in this lesson will give you the basic knowledge to do just that. You must be aware of your surroundings while in an Internment facility and be alert for potential attacks from any violent attacker, as well as being aware of your avenues of escape. It is important that as a staff member working inside of an internment facility that if you must use force to defend yourself that you must use the lowest level of force necessary to defend yourself in any situation. This means that you will not only use physical force to defend yourself but, verbal persuasion as well. During this lesson you will be instructed how to deescalate a physical confrontation and get away in order to sound an alarm to alert other staff within the facility to assist you in successfully deescalating the situation. You must understand that this lesson is NOT intended to teach any fighting offensive techniques it is intended on providing you the skills needed to successfully defend yourself if the situation arises.

### SECTION III PRESENTATION

---

**SECTION V Learning Step / Activity 1 Introduction of Natural Weapons of the Body**

Method of Instruction	Demonstration
Instructor to Student Ratio	1:12
Time of Instruction	10 mins
Media	Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES.** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned throughout the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration.

Pre-designated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them.

During demonstrations one pre-designated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.

All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively.

After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary.

### • NATURAL WEAPONS OF THE BODY

We all have areas of our body that we may employ as natural weapon when defending ourselves, the following is a list of these areas

- Finger.
- Knuckles
- Edge of hand
- Heel of hand
- Head.
- Knee
- Shin
- Heel
- Finger poke.
- Grab.
- Elbow.

**NOTE:** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity.

### SECTION V Learning Step / Activity 2 Perform Proper Stances/Falls

<i>Method of Instruction</i>	<i>Demonstration</i>
Instructor to Student Ratio	1 12
Time of Instruction	30 mins
Media	Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES:** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned throughout the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration

Pre-designated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them

During demonstrations one pre-designated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique

The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction

All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively

After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

- **Interview-stance.**

(1) This stance allows complete relaxation yet at the same time allows you a quicker reaction time

**SECTION V.**      *The upper body is erect and centered over the hips. The weight is distributed evenly between the left and right foot. The weak foot to the rear approximate shoulder width apart at a forty-five degree angle. The hands are placed at waist level in front of the body in a non-aggressive manner.*

- **Defensive-stance.**

(1) This is a preferred stance for defending yourself, because you are not braced, but are in a relaxed comfortable, balanced position from which you may be able to effectively defend.

(2) The upper body is erect and centered over the hips. The head should be carried vertically with the point of the chin toward the attacker. The knees should be slightly bent and weight evenly distributed. The rear elbow is held down and in front of the ribs. The open palm of the hand faces the attacker and is positioned in front between the shoulders.

**NOTE:** After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform the steps. Assist and critique students as necessary.

### c Movement Techniques

(1) **Step and Drag Step –**

(a) Forward – From the Defensive Stance, Step forward with your lead foot and drag your rear foot returning to a comfortable defensive stance

(b) Backwards – From the defensive stance, step backwards with your rear foot first then your lead foot returning to a comfortable defensive stance

(c) Left and Right movements – Depending on which direction your moving in the foot that direction moves first then dragging the trail foot returning to a comfortable defensive stance

### SECTION V.      **Falling Techniques**

(a) Back fall – cross your arms in front of your chest, squat to a crouch position, roll onto your buttocks and back keeping your chin tucked in, and slap the mat with both hands down

(b) Side fall – is a rolling fall. Roll 45-degrees over your shoulder striking the mat with one side of your body, arm will extend out and slapping the mat palms down

**NOTE:** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity

### SECTION V      Learning Step / Activity 3 Apply Pressure Points

Method of Instruction      Demonstration

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

Instructor to Student Ratio: 1:12  
Time of Instruction: 1hr  
Media Large Group Instruction

**NOTE: Inform students that nothing is 100%; meaning that not every technique will cause the same reaction to every attacker and being able to identify more than one pressure point of the body will aid the defender in applying more than one technique if confronted by an attacker.**

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES: The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned through out the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration.**

**Pre-designated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them.**

**During demonstrations one pre-designated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique**

**The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.**

**All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively.**

**After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps Assist and critique students as necessary.**

### **CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION**

Remind students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the defenders commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another.

### **APPLY PRESSURE POINTS**

By applying pressure to certain areas of an attacker's body, you may be able to disarm him, escape or control the attack. Vital areas (Pressure Points) are those areas that are vulnerable to pressure applied by the hand, foot, or knee and may cause pain. Pressure points are sensitive to various types of applications, whether by hand, finger, knee, foot, or any available defensive tool. Proper application of pressure to a vulnerable area will either impede or incapacitate a violent attacker. You be aware that people have different tolerances for pain and some pressure points may not be as effective. When applying one technique and it does not appear to give you desired effect immediately move to another pressure point. These techniques can also be used when conducting force cell moves.

#### **Pressure points include**

- (1) **Infra-orbital nerve (nose)** – Secure the head by reaching around with weak hand and grasping the chin. Ensure to keep your fingers away from the mouth. The head should be secured into the pocket of the around armpit area. With your strong hand (knife hand) apply pressure to nose by pushing in then up. Once assailant complies release the pressure not the hold.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

- (2) **Mandibular angle nerve (ear)** – Secure the head by reaching around with weak hand and grasping the chin. Ensure to keep your fingers away from the mouth. The head should be secured into the pocket of the around armpit area. Hyper extend the head to the opposite side where pressure is going to be applied. Slide your thumb downward from the top of the ear to bottom. You will feel a pocket towards the bottom of the ear, this is where you will push your thumb inward towards the opposite ear. Once assailant complies release the pressure not the hold
- (3) **Hypoglossal nerve (under jaw)** – with your grasping hand you should apply pressure under the jaw by pushing in and up
- (4) **Suprascapular (traps)** – With a knife hand strike make contact with the muscle area on top of the trapezoids
- (5) **Brachial stun** – impact should be made with a ridge hand or forearm across the brachial nerve on the side of the neck
- (6) **Clavicle nerve** – impact should be made by applying pressure in a downward motion along the clavicle/collar bone
- (7) **Jugular notch nerve** – Place your index finger directly into the Jugular notch and apply pressure in a downward motion
- (8) **Radial nerve (Forearm)** – With a knife hand strike apply pressure or impact directly on top of the forearm
- (9) **Median nerve (Forearm)** – With a knife hand strike apply pressure or impact directly under the forearm
- (10) **Peroneal nerve (leg)** – impact should be made with the knee just above the back of the knee to the outside of the leg (thigh muscle area)

**NOTE:** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity

### SECTION V Learning Step / Activity 4 Create and Maintain Distance.

Method of Instruction	Demonstration
Instructor to Student Ratio	1:12
Time of Instruction	30 mins
Media	Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES.** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned through out the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration.

Pre-designated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**During demonstrations one predesignated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique.**

**The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.**

**All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively.**

**After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary.**

### CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION

Remind students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the defenders commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another.

#### ONE-HAND CHECK

- (1) One-hand check – While informing the individual to stop you will forcefully extend your lead hand, hands open, lower portion of palm forward at the assailant at the same time he/she is making an attack
- (2) Use the palm of your lead hand, direct the strike to the brachial plexus tie-in and immediately re-track turn towards your nearest avenue of escape (This should disturb your attacker's rhythm, thus giving you ample time to vacate the area) //
- (3) Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

#### TWO-HANDED CHECK

- (1) Two-handed check – this technique is applied in the same manner as the one-hand check with the following exceptions use both palms and direct the strike to both sides of the brachial plexus tie-in
- (2) Once contact is made with the attacker look for your nearest avenue of escape (This should disturb your attacker's rhythm, thus giving you ample time to vacate the area)
- (3) Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

#### THREE-POINT CHECK

- (1) Three-point check – If a situation arises where time and space does not permit you to escape from a rushing attacker, use the wall behind you as a support and simultaneously lift the lead knee and direct strikes (palms) to the brachial plexus tie-in
- (2) Once contact is made with the attacker, look for your nearest avenue of escape (This should disturb your attacker's rhythm, thus giving you ample time to vacate the area)



## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

- (3) Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

### TWO or MORE ASSAILANTS:

- (1) Two or more assailants- Never attempt to run or move between assailants. Assess the situation, look for the nearest avenue of escape, and move toward the outer most portion of the attackers
- (2) You will always attempt to keep one attacker between you and the rest or push that attacker into the rest of the attackers while you use your avenue of escape. (This should disturb your attacker's rhythm, thus giving you ample time to vacate the area)
- (3) Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

**NOTE.** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity

### Learning Step / Activity 5 Defend Against Lapel Grabs

Method of Instruction	Demonstration
Instructor to Student Ratio	1 12
Time of Instruction	2hrs
Media	Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES:** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned throughout the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration

Pre-designated assistant-instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them.

During demonstrations one pre-designated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique.

The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction

All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively

After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary

**CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION**

Remind students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the defender's commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another

**INSTRUCTOR NOTE** Prior to employing any technique the students must understand the FIVE phases of AIKIDO. Furthermore, everyone must understand the importance of employing all five phases every

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

time someone attempts to harm him or her and if they employ the techniques properly they will be able to successfully defend themselves.

**FIRST PHASE: "Mind Direction"** This is a distraction technique you must employ to temporarily redirect your attackers mind for a split second from the area or point on your attackers body that you intend on grabbing (Simply slapping your attackers face lightly or kicking your attacker in the shin lightly may accomplish this)

**INSTRUCTOR NOTE:** Bring a student to the front of the class and have him place his arm straight out to the side. Demonstrate the distraction technique by initially attempting to push his hand straight down while exerting a lot of energy and not being able to move the hand down. Once you have the students attention attempt to push it down once again but also use your free hand and move it towards the students groin are illustrating the use of distracting his attention for a split second and the hand that was pushing the students hand down will be able to effectively accomplish this task (reinforcing your teaching of the distracting technique)

**SECOND PHASE: "Energy Direction"** This is a technique you must employ to temporarily redirect your attackers strength and energy. This is accomplished in conjunction with first phase, by slight moving your attackers energy in the opposite direction (2-4 inches) for a split second causing him to exert more energy in the opposite direction in which you intend to move in order to effectively employ any given technique (an example of this is when your attacker is pulling your arm in a direction and your entire body moves that way over exaggerating your movement this will cause him to push the opposite direction with more energy than you, allowing you to employ your defensive technique more effectively with little or no force on your part)

**THIRD PHASE: "Proper Grip and Technique"** This is utilized simultaneously with phase 1 & 2 and is where you must employ your intended defensive technique properly. These techniques will be explained as we advance through the lesson)

**FOURTH PHASE: "Pain Compliance"** This is where you must effectively apply a technique in a manner that causes the attacker to no longer present a threat to you. This is accomplished by applying only enough pressure to a specific area of the body (ie wrist/foot or pressure point) to keep the attacker on the threshold of pain, care must be given to ensure that you do not keep steady pressure on any area for too long or the attacker will become oblivious to the pain and resist your technique and attack you more aggressively.

**FIFTH PHASE: "Proper Release"** This is where you must effectively position your attacker in a manner that he will not be able to re-attack you upon your release of him. This is accomplished by utilizing the fourth phase in conjunction with your communication skills to direct him into a compliant position facing away from your escape route, allowing you to release him and subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilizing your body alarm, radio or whistle, seeking assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

**NOTE:** When applying wrist hold techniques, proper grip is of utmost importance. If you have a proper grip, your attacker will not be able to get out of the hold easily thus defeating his efforts and placing you in a safe controlling position. Using the wrist holds enables you to assist the attacker to the ground giving you the ability to gain even more time and space as well as to create and maintain distance. Be aware that it only takes 2 to 5 lbs. Of pressure to break the wrist, 6 to 8 for the elbow, 8 to 10 for the shoulder, and this can be accomplished with two fingers if a person resists the hold. When an attacker grabs you and you apply one of the wrist holds properly you will not break your attackers joints. The attacker will fracture his own joints if he resists the hold. Again always ensure to give orders to the attacker, so that he knows what you want him to do i.e. "STOP", "GET DOWN ON THE FLOOR" etc.

**Inform the students:** An attacker will grab you in one of three ways. We will discuss these three as Palms Up, Palms Down and Palms Facing In.

The first lapel grab we will discuss and demonstrate will be if an attacker grabs you with his Palms Up

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**NOTE: The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.**

### Palms Up defense using "Wrist Hold #1":

**Role Playing (Attacker) Reach and grab the shirt of the defender with both hands Palms Up**

**Defender: Utilizing the first phase (Mind Direction) kick the shin of your attacker, while simultaneously employing the second phase (Energy Direction) leaning and pulling your upper body slightly to the rear 2-4 inches. This will distract the attacker and cause him to respond by pulling you forward. As you are employing phase 1 & 2 simultaneously utilize the third phase (Proper Grip) by grabbing the left hand of your attacker in the following manner using the "Wrist Hold #1" defensive technique**

#### **Wrist hold #1 (Proper Technique)**

Reach and grab the meaty part of the little finger of the attackers left hand with your left hand and simultaneously grab the meaty part of his right thumb with your right hand and place your thumbs together on the center of the back of the attackers hand just below the knuckles

Bend the attackers wrist straight back to his elbow, causing him to drop to his knees

With both of your hands twist the attackers left hand to the right causing him to lie on his back

While maintaining control of the attackers hand with both of your hands ensure that you maintain your balance (the general rule of thumb is that your feet are always wider than your knees and your knees are always wider than your shoulders)

Next, hyper extend his left arm and slide your left hand down the attackers arm and grasp his arm just before the elbow

Simultaneously, twist the attackers left hand to the right with your right hand and pull his arm to the left with your left hand, while walking around his head (using the step-drag-step) technique learned previously in this lesson causing him to lie flat on his stomach

**NOTE. Do not cross your feet while walking around the attackers head or you will be pulled off balance**

Once the attacker is flat on his stomach, slide your left hand back up to the attackers hand and re-grab his hand using wrist hold #1 as you did in step a above

Execute the fourth phase (Pain Compliance) by slightly bending the attackers hand straight back to his elbow while keeping his arm straight and moving it along his torso towards his head. While applying pain compliance verbally direct your attacker to look away from you place his free hand under his groin and cross his legs

**NOTE: (CAUTION) Only apply enough pressure to the attacker until he is compliant to your commands, but do NOT release your grip until you are ready to move away from him. Remain cognizant that it only takes 2 to 5 lbs of pressure to break the wrist, 6 to 8 lbs of pressure to break the elbow and 8 to 10 lbs of pressure for the shoulder to break. The attacker will fracture his own joints if he resists the hold. Again always ensure to give verbal instructions to the attacker, so that he knows what you want him to do.**

The fifth phase (Proper Release) can now be executed by you releasing his left hand subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilizing your body alarm, radio or whistle, seeking assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**NOTE:** Following the demonstration of this technique at least two times have students pair off into lines with half facing the front and the other half facing the rear of the training area so that you can begin the step by step method of instruction. Inform the students that those that are facing the front of the class will be the defender first and once each step is explained and practiced the students will change rolls and you will repeat the steps.

**NOTE:** Direct the students to "simulate" grabbing one another when (role playing) as the attacker, by placing their left hand, fingers extended and joined palm facing their own face directly in front of their face. This will facilitate proper grip as well as prevent unnecessary injury to wrists.

To help the students be able to practice the technique on themselves direct the students to perform the following: Place your left hand in the center of your chest, palm up, and bend your fingers upward, so that your pinky finger is against the breastbone. With your right hand grasp the meaty part of your thumb with your fingers. Place your right thumb tip between the index finger and middle finger below the knuckles. Bend the wrist straight back to the elbow until they feel pressure. This is the proper grip and technique.

The second lapel grab we will discuss and demonstrate will be if an attacker grabs you with his Palms Down

**NOTE:** The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.

### Palms down defense using "Wrist Hold #2"

**Role Playing (Attacker)** Reach and grab the shirt of the defender with both hands Palms Down.

**Defender** Utilizing the first phase (Mind Direction) lift your right hand and slap the left side of the attackers face, while simultaneously employing the second phase (Energy Direction) leaning and pulling your upper body slightly to your left 2-4 inches. This will distract the attacker and cause him to respond by pulling you to the right. As you are employing phase 1 & 2 simultaneously utilize the third phase (Proper Grip) by grabbing the top of your attackers right hand (meaty part of the little finger) in the following manner using the "Wrist Hold #2" defensive technique.

#### **Wrist hold #2. (Proper Technique)**

Reach and grab the meaty part of the little finger of the attackers right hand with your right hand, while placing your right thumb in the webbing of his forefinger and thumb.

With your right hand quickly twist the attackers right hand to your right in a clockwise circular fashion.

Simultaneously reach up with your left hand and place the webbing of your forefinger and thumb just above the attackers right elbow and continue to twist your attackers hand to the right causing your attacker to bend at the waist.

You will utilize both phase 4 & 5 in this next step. With both of your hands continue to twist the attackers right hand in a clockwise circular motion to the right as he is moving to your right, you must step back to your right with your right foot (maintaining your balance) and quickly release your attacker causing him to hit the floor.

Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilizing your body alarm, radio or whistle, seeking assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**NOTE: (CAUTION) Only apply enough pressure to the attacker until he is compliant to your commands, but do NOT release your grip until you are ready to move away from him. Remain cognizant that it only takes 2 to 5 lbs of pressure to break the wrist, 6 to 8 lbs of pressure to break the elbow and 8 to 10 lbs of pressure for the shoulder to break. The attacker will fracture his own joints if he resists the hold. Again always ensure to give verbal instructions to the attacker, so that he knows what you want him to do.**

**NOTE: Following the demonstration of this technique at least two times have students pair off into lines with half facing the front and the other half facing the rear of the training area so that you can begin the step by step method of instruction. Inform the students that those that are facing the front of the class will be the defender first and once each step is explained and practiced the students will change rolls and you will repeat the steps.**

**NOTE: Direct the students to "simulate" grabbing one another when (role playing) as the attacker, by placing their right hand, fingers extended and joined palm facing their down towards the defender. This will facilitate proper grip as well as prevent unnecessary injury to wrists.**

To help the students be able to practice the technique on themselves direct the students to **perform the following:** Place your left hand across the center of your chest, palm down, your fingers are extended, joined and parallel to the ground. With your right hand reach across the top of your left hand and grasp the meaty part of your little finger with your fingers. Place your right thumb tip in the webbing of the forefinger and thumb. Twist and bend the left wrist outward until you feel pressure. This is the proper grip and technique.

The third lapel grab we will discuss and demonstrate will be if an attacker grabs you with his **Palms Facing In**

**NOTE: The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.**

### Palms Up defense using "Wrist Hold #3":

**Role Playing (Attacker)** Reach and grab the shirt of the defender with both hands **Palms Facing In**

**Defender** Utilizing the first phase (**Mind Direction**) kick the shin of your attacker, while simultaneously employing the second phase (**Energy Direction**) leaning and pulling your upper body slightly to your left 2-4 inches. This will distract the attacker and cause him to respond by pulling you to your right. As you are employing phase 1 & 2 simultaneously utilize the third phase (**Proper Grip**) by grabbing the left hand of your attacker in the following manor using the "Wrist Hold #3" defensive technique.

#### **Wrist hold #3 (Proper Technique)**

Reach and grab the meaty part of the thumb of the attackers left hand with your right hand and place your thumb on the back of the attackers hand just below the knuckles of the ring finger and little finger, while simultaneously placing the palm of your left hand on top of your right thumb (keeping your thumb in place) causing your attacker to bend backward and to his left at the waist.

You will utilize both phase 4 & 5 in this next step. With both of your hands continue to quickly twist the attackers left wrist to your right and forward bending his wrist back to his elbow and outward over his shoulder at an approx angle of 45 degrees, you must step backward slightly to your right with your right foot (maintaining your balance) and quickly release your attacker causing him to hit the floor.

Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilizing your body alarm, radio or whistle, seeking assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**NOTE: (CAUTION)** Only apply enough pressure to the attacker until he is compliant to your commands, but do NOT release your grip until you are ready to move away from him. Remain cognizant that it only takes 2 to 5 lbs of pressure to break the wrist, 6 to 8 lbs of pressure to break the elbow and 8 to 10 lbs of pressure for the shoulder to break. The attacker will fracture his own joints if he resists the hold. Again always ensure to give verbal instructions to the attacker, so that he knows what you want him to do.

**NOTE:** Following the demonstration of this technique at least two times have students pair off into lines with half facing the front and the other half facing the rear of the training area so that you can begin the step by step method of instruction. Inform the students that those that are facing the front of the class will be the defender first and once each step is explained and practiced the students will change rolls and you will repeat the steps.

**NOTE:** Direct the students to "simulate" grabbing one another when (role playing) as the attacker, by placing their left hand, fingers extended and joined palm facing their own face directly in front of their face. This will facilitate proper grip as well as prevent unnecessary injury to wrists

To help the students be able to practice the technique on themselves direct the students to perform the following. Place your left hand in the center of your chest, palm up, keeping your fingers extended and joined and place your pinky finger is against your breastbone. With your right hand grasp the meaty part of your thumb with your fingers. Place your right thumb tip between the ring finger and little finger on the back of your left hand below the knuckles. Turn your wrist outward away from your body until you feel pressure. This is the proper grip and technique

**NOTE:** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity

### Learning Step / Activity 6 Defend Against Wrist Grabs

Method of Instruction	Demonstration
Instructor to Student Ratio	1:12
Time of Instruction	30 mins
Media	Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES:** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned throughout the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration.

Pre-designated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them

During demonstrations one pre-designated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique.

The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.

All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively

After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary

CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

Remind students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the defenders commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another

### WRIST GRABS.

#### (1) Attacker grabs you by one of your wrists with one of his hands. (Weak Thumb Principle)

- (a) Spread your fingers on the hand of the wrist that is grabbed
- (b) Twist that hand and pull against the opening of the attackers forefinger and thumb
- (c) Attacker will release his grip
- (d) Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

#### (2) Attacker grabs you by one of your wrists with two of his hands (Weak Thumb Principle)

- (a) Spread your fingers on the hand of which wrist is grabbed
- (b) Twist that hand and pull against the opening of the attackers forefingers and thumbs
- (c) If he does not release his grip, use your free hand to grab your other hand and pull against the opening of the attackers forefingers and thumbs
- (d) Attacker will release his grip
- (e) Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

#### Attacker grabs one of your wrists across your body and none of the above works

The attacker is facing you and reaches across your body to grab your right wrist with his right hand

- (b) You must slightly pull your right arm to the right approx 2-4 inches to redirect his energy causing your attacker to pull your right arm to his right
- (c) Continue to move your right arm to his right using his energy until the palm of your right hand is parallel to the ground above his wrist, then immediately rotate your right hand in a clockwise circular motion to the right in order to grasp the back of the attackers right wrist

Immediately cover the top of the attackers fingers on his right hand with your left hand palm down

With both of your hands apply pressure against the attacker's wrist in a downward fashion

At this point, you will cause the attacker to drop to his knees Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

**NOTE:** These techniques can be utilized whether either the left or right hand is grabbed across the body.

#### Attacker grabs one of your wrists using the opposite hand and none of the above works.

The attacker is facing you and grabs your right wrist with his left hand

- (d) First, you must slightly pull your right arm to your left approx 2-4 inches to redirect his energy causing your attacker to pull your right arm to his left
- (c) Continue to move your right arm to his left using his energy until the palm of your right hand is parallel to the ground above his wrist, then immediately rotate your right hand in a counterclockwise circular motion to the right in order to grasp the back of the attackers left wrist

Immediately cover the top of the attackers fingers on his left hand with your left hand palm down

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

- (e) With both of your hands apply pressure against the attacker's wrist in a downward fashion.
- (f) At this point, you will cause the attacker to drop to his knees. Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

**NOTE:** These techniques can be utilized whether either the left or right hand is grabbed.

**Attacker grabs both of your wrists simultaneously.**

The attacker is facing you and grabs both your right and left wrists simultaneously. First, you must simultaneously slightly pull both your right and left arms outward to the side approx 2-4 inches to redirect his energy causing your attacker to pull your arms inward. Continue to move your right arm to his left using his energy until the palm of your right hand is parallel to the ground facing upward under his right wrist. Immediately grab the meaty part of the thumb of his right hand with your right hand and pull downward to his right in a counterclockwise circular motion. As he lets go of his grip, immediately cover the top of your right thumb with your left hand palm down. Apply pressure against the attacker's wrist in a downward fashion. At this point, you will cause the attacker to fall backward rapidly. Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

**NOTE:** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity.

### 7 Learning Step / Activity 7 Defend against a Bear Hug, Head Lock, Choke Hold, and Full Nelson

Method of Instruction	Demonstration
Instructor to Student Ratio	1:12
Time of Instruction	2hrs
Media	Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES:** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned throughout the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration.

Pre-designated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them.

During demonstrations one pre-designated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique.

The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.

All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively.

After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary.

**CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION**

Remind students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the



## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

defenders commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another.

### Bear Hug Defense:

#### Attempted Bear Hug from the Front (Pinning the Arms)

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker that has his arms out in a threatening manner with the intent to grab you from your front around your torso you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson.

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground.

(if your arms are pinned) make a fist with your strong hand placing it on your chest with the knuckles facing outward, you must slide your hand up or down your chest until it is directly in front of your attacker's sternum. As he applies pressure to you he will feel pain to his sternum causing him to release his grip on you.

Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

#### Attempted Bear Hug from the Front (Not Pinning the Arms)

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker that has his arms out in a threatening manner with the intent to grab you from your front around your torso you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson.

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground.

(if your arms are not pinned) with your strong hand use one of your natural weapons of your body the edge of your hand and apply one of the pressure points as learned earlier in this lesson by applying pressure to the (Infra-orbital nerve).

As you apply pressure to his nose area he will feel pain causing him to release his grip on you. Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

#### Attempted Bear Hug from the Rear (Pinning the Arms)

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker that has his arms out in a threatening manner with the intent to grab you from the rear around your torso you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson.

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground.

(if your arms are pinned) lower your center of gravity by spreading your feet as wide as you can and step to your strong side maintaining your balance.

## **ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

**Make a fist with your weak hand and reach back as hard and as fast as you can to strike your attacker in the groin area. As he will feel pain to his groin he will release his grip on you.**

**Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape**

### **Attempted Bear Hug from the Rear (Not Pinning the Arms)**

**As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance Upon being approached by an attacker that has his arms out in a threatening manner with the intent to grab you from the rear around your torso you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson**

**Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground**

**(if your arms are not pinned) lower your center of gravity by spreading your feet as wide as you can and step to your strong side maintaining your balance**

**Make a fist with your strong hand and strike the back of the attackers hand with your knuckles until he releases one of his fingers**

**As he releases a finger, you must grab the free finger with your hand that is on that side and rotate it outward causing his hand to become inverted This pain will cause him to release his grip on you**

**Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape**

### **Head Lock Defense**

**As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance Upon being approached by an attacker that has his arms out in a threatening manner with the intent to grab you from your front around your head you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson**

**Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground**

**Immediately turn your head inward towards your attackers stomach, reducing injury from your attacker punching your face**

**With your hand that is to the rear of your attacker reach up his back to his throat and apply one of the pressure points learned previously in this lesson either (Hypoglossal nerve under the jaw or Mandibular angle nerve under the ear)**

**While applying pressure to one of these areas simultaneously utilize the hand that is to the front by reaching under the attackers leg and pinch a tiny area near the femoral nerve This technique will cause your attacker extreme pain and he will release his grip on you**

**Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape**

### **Choke Defense from the Front**

## **ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

**As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker that has his arms out in a threatening manner with the intent to grab you from your front around your neck you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson.**

**Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground**

**Immediately bring your strong hand up, over and under your attackers wrists close to your throat**

**Bring your weak hand against your strong hand and apply pressure against your attackers wrists twisting to your strong side**

**This technique will cause your attacker to release his grip on you utilizing the weak to strong principle as learned previous in this lesson. Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape**

### **Choke Defense from the Rear:**

**As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker that has his arms out in a threatening manner with the intent to grab you from the rear around your neck you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson**

**Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground**

**Upon the attacker bringing his arm around your throat immediately lower your center of gravity by spreading your feet as wide as you can and step to either your strong or weak side maintaining your balance while simultaneously tucking your chin into his elbow**

**Reach up with both of your hands and grab your attackers elbow and pull down**

**Pull your attackers elbow to either your weak or strong side (depending on which side his elbow is) (if he grabs you with his right arm you will step back with your left foot and vice versa) and step back with either your weak or strong foot throwing your attacker to the ground over your hip**

**NOTE: Do NOT attempt to throw your attacker over your shoulder or you will cause yourself unnecessary pain and suffering**

**This technique will cause your attacker to release his grip on you subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape**

### **Full Nelson Defense (Prevention).**

**As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker that has his arms out in a threatening manner with the intent to grab you from the rear in an attempt to place you in a full nelson you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson**

**Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground**

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

Being aware of your surroundings will assist greatly in prevention from being placed in a full nelson. As soon as you feel anyone touching your mid section from the rear lock your arms and clinch them together pinning anyone that may be attempting to do you harm

Immediately lower your center of gravity by spreading your feet as wide as you can and step to your strong side maintaining your balance.

With either your strong or weak hand grab a free finger of your attacker and rotate it outward causing his hand to become inverted. This pain will cause him to release his grip on you. Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

### Full Nelson Defense.

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker that has his arms out in a threatening manner with the intent to grab you from the rear in an attempt to place you in a full nelson you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson.

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground.

Upon being placed in a full nelson immediately lower your center of gravity by spreading your feet as wide as you can and step to your strong side maintaining your balance, simultaneously, use the knuckles of your fists to strike the back of the hands of your attacker causing him to release a finger.

As he releases a finger, you must grab the free finger with the hand that is on that side and rotate it outward causing his hand to become inverted. This pain will cause him to release his grip on you. Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

**NOTE:** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity.

### Learning Step / Activity 8 Defend against a Knife Attack

Method of Instruction	Demonstration
Instructor to Student Ratio	1 12
Time of Instruction	2 hrs
Media	Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned through out the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration.

Pre-designated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them.

During demonstrations one pre-designated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique.

The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**All Instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively.**

**After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary.**

### **CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION**

Remind students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the defender's commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another.

**NOTE:** When confronted by an attacker with any potentially sharp object or stabbing weapon you must be mentally prepared to defend yourself and not go into shock if you get cut during the physical altercation. Most of the time the act of getting cut causes people to go into shock and die, so we must tell ourselves the following every time we are confronted with a sharp object or stabbing weapon "I am going to get cut but I am not going to die" this will help us be more effective when utilizing the following defensive techniques.

#### **Knife Attack with the Attacker (Standing) with a knife in front of your Face or Throat**

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker carrying a knife or potentially sharp stabbing weapon you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson.

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground.

As soon as the attacker places the knife close to your face/throat area, raise your hands slowly as if you are surrendering.

Keep your hands close to your body and when you get your hands parallel to the height of his wrist, (with both of your hands palms open) simultaneously strike the inside of his wrist and the center of the back of his hand as hard as you can.

This will cause the attacker's hand to open up and drop the knife, subsequently allowing you to grab the back of his hand and employ wrist hold # 3 as described previously in this lesson to disarm your attacker. Subsequently, create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

#### **b Knife Attack Thrusting down to your Chest**

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker carrying a knife or potentially sharp stabbing weapon you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson.

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

As soon as the attacker attempts to slash or stab you in a downward manner you must redirect his energy by pivoting on the ball of your outside foot (opening an avenue of approach of the attacker) simultaneously, reaching up with both hands in a circular motion touching the forearm of the attacker redirecting his blow in towards him

Keep your hands close together in a circular fashion when you make contact with him causing the attacker stab himself with the knife

Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Allowing you the opportunity to utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle, to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

### c. Knife Attack Straight Thrust to Stomach

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance Upon being approached by an attacker carrying a knife or potentially sharp stabbing weapon you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground

As soon as the attacker attempts to stab you in a thrusting straight forward manner you must redirect his energy by pivoting on the ball of your outside foot (opening an avenue of approach of the attacker) simultaneously, reaching across the top of his hand and grab the back of his hand and employ wrist hold # 3 as described previously in this lesson to disarm your attacker

Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Allowing you the opportunity to utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

### d. Knife Attack Thrusting upward to your Abdomen

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance Upon being approached by an attacker carrying a knife or potentially sharp stabbing weapon you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground

As soon as the attacker attempts to stab you in a upward manner at your abdomen you must redirect his energy by pivoting on the ball of your outside foot (opening an avenue of approach of the attacker) simultaneously, using your outside forearm to strike the attackers elbow area redirecting the weapon away from your body

Next, step forward with your outside leg and utilize your inside forearm to strike the attackers Brachial nerve in a stunning manner

This will cause your attacker to hit the ground rapidly subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Allowing you the opportunity to utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

### Knife Attack Slashing side to side at your Stomach

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker carrying a knife or potentially sharp stabbing weapon you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson.

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground

As soon as the attacker attempts to slash you in a side-to-side manner at your abdomen you must do the unexpected and move forward as he is swinging his arm side-to-side and assumes a natural pause on his upswing

Care must be taken to time your forward movement to allow you an opportunity to secure his slashing arm against his stomach with your weak arm simultaneously, using your forearm to strike the attackers Brachial nerve in a stunning manner

This will cause your attacker to hit the ground rapidly subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Allowing you the opportunity to utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle, to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

**NOTE:** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity

Learning Step / Activity 9 Defend against a Punch to the Face

Method of Instruction	Demonstration
Instructor to Student Ratio	1 12
Time of Instruction	30 mins
Media	Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES:** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned through out the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration.

Predesignated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them

During demonstrations one predesignated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique

The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction.

All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively.

After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary.

**CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION**

Remind students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the defenders commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Traiger Training Program

students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another.

### **Straight Punch Defense:**

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker with his hands in the form of a fist you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground

As soon as the attacker attempts to punch you with a straight punch to the jaw, you must redirect his energy by pivoting on the ball of your outside foot (opening an avenue of approach of the attacker) simultaneously, reaching up with both hands touching both the elbow and wrist of the attacker in the following manner

Simultaneously using open hands push forward with your outside hand while pulling towards yourself with your inside hand making contact with the attackers elbow with the outside hand and the inside of the wrist with the inside hand

When your hands make contact with his arm and hand you will redirect his energy pushing him to move by you and to the floor this will subsequently, allow you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Allowing you the opportunity to utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle, to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

### **b Roundhouse Punch Defense:**

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker with his hands in the form of a fist you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground

As soon as the attacker attempts to punch you with a roundhouse punch to the side of your head, you must do the unexpected by moving closer to him to redirect his energy by pivoting on the ball of your inside foot (opening an avenue of approach of the attacker) simultaneously, reaching up with your weak hand blocking the inside of his wrist while simultaneously moving the forearm of your other hand up to the side of his neck to initiate a Brachial stun

You must simultaneously step inside of the attacker with your strong foot

Next, pivot on the ball of your strong foot and step backward with your weak foot in a counterclockwise circular fashion

As the attackers momentum is moving forward you will redirect his energy and throw him to the ground

Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Allowing you the opportunity to utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape



## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**NOTE:** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity.

### Learning Step / Activity 10. Defend against a Kick

Method of Instruction: Demonstration  
Instructor to Student Ratio 1:12  
Time of Instruction 30 mins  
Media Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES:** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned through out the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration.

Predesignated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them.

During demonstrations one predesignated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique.

The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction

All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively.

After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary

### CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION

Remind students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the defenders commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another

#### a Kick to the Groin Defense.

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker that will potentially kick you, you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground

As soon as the attacker attempts to kick you in an upward manner at your groin area you must redirect his energy by pivoting on the ball of your outside foot (opening an avenue of approach of the attacker) simultaneously, using your outside forearm to strike the under side of the attackers leg redirecting the kick away from your body

This will cause your attacker to hit the ground rapidly subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Allowing you the opportunity to utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**NOTE:** Conduct a check on learning and summarize the learning activity.

### Learning Step / Activity 11. Defend against Club Attack

Method of Instruction: Demonstration  
Instructor to Student Ratio: 1:12  
Time of Instruction: 30 mins  
Media: Large Group Instruction

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES:** The primary instructor will ensure all assistant instructors are positioned through out the training area to ensure students can see each demonstration.

Predesignated assistant instructors will demonstrate each technique, as the primary instructor explains them.

During demonstrations one predesignated assistant instructor will role-play as an attacker, while the other demonstrates each technique.

The following techniques will be conducted initially by the instructors at a moderate pace in order to demonstrate the effectiveness of each technique before it is demonstrated step-by-step using the demonstration method of instruction

All instructors must conduct rehearsals prior to presenting this lesson in front of students to ensure each step is mastered and can be demonstrated effectively.

After each step has been demonstrated, have the students perform these steps. Assist and critique students as necessary.

**CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION- CAUTION- CAUTION-CAUTION-CAUTION**

Remind students when they feel pain or discomfort while (role playing) as the attacker during ANY technique to pat themselves or pat the ground with a free hand, or say "CODE BLUE" this will inform the student applying the technique to release the pressure in that area. However, the student applying the technique may continue to execute the technique slowly until the (role playing) attacker complies with the defenders commands. On the command of "STOP", or "CODE RED" or at the sound of a whistle ALL students applying any technique will release the hold on the attacker and stop the technique being applied in order to minimize injury to one another

### Club Attack down at your head

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance. Upon being approached by an attacker carrying a club or other club type weapon you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground

As soon as the attacker attempts to swing at you in a downward manner you must do the unexpected by moving forward under his arms and place your strong foot between his feet

Next, pivot on the ball of your strong foot and step backward with your weak foot in a counterclockwise circular fashion while simultaneously reaching up and grabbing the club with both of your hands

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

As the attackers momentum is moving forward you will redirect his energy and throw him over your strong hip to the ground disarming him

Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques. Allowing you the opportunity to utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle, to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape.

**NOTE: Do NOT attempt to throw your attacker over your shoulder or you will cause yourself unnecessary pain and suffering.**

### Club Attack Slashing side to side at your Stomach

As a defender you must assume a good natural interview-stance Upon being approached by an attacker carrying a club or other club type weapon you must immediately assume a defensive stance as explained previously in this lesson.

Your reaction will be unexpected by your attacker and a last minute response by standing your ground

As soon as the attacker attempts to swing at you in a side to side manner you must be unexpected by moving forward to inside his chest area as he is on the up swing and place your strong foot between his feet

Next you must pivot on the ball of your strong foot and step backward with your hands in a circular fashion while simultaneously reaching up and grabbing the club with both hands

As the attackers momentum is moving forward you will redirect his energy and throw him over your strong hip to the ground disarming him

Subsequently, allowing you to create and maintain distance using any of the previous techniques Allowing you the opportunity to utilize your body alarm, radio or whistle, to seek assistance as you are using your avenue of escape

**NOTE: Do NOT attempt to throw your attacker over your shoulder or you will cause yourself unnecessary pain and suffering.**

### SECTION IV. SUMMARY

Method of Instruction	<u>Conference / Discussion</u>
Instructor to Student Ratio is:	<u>1 60</u>
Time of Instruction	<u>20 mins</u>
Media	<u>Large Group Instruction</u>

#### Check on Learning

Determine if the students have learned the material presented by soliciting student questions and explanations Ask the students questions and correct misunderstandings

#### Review / Summarize Lesson

### SECTION V STUDENT EVALUATION

---

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

---

**Testing  
Requirements**

**NOTE:** Describe how the student must demonstrate accomplishment of the TLO.  
Refer student to the Student Evaluation Plan.

---

**Feedback  
Requirements**

**NOTE:** Feedback is essential to effective learning. Schedule and provide feedback on the evaluation and any information to help answer students' questions about the test. Provide remedial training as needed.

---

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

### Appendix A Test

#### React to a Physical Attack using Unarmed Self-Defense Techniques

#### PERFORMANCE EXAM

The following is a competency-based performance evaluation. All students must be able to effectively execute each task to standard

		GO	NOGO
1	Demonstrate the Interview-stance & Defensive-stance		
2	Explain what the 5-Phases Are		
	a M _____		
	b E _____		
	c P _____		
	d P _____		
	e P _____		
3	Demonstrate the Proper Wrist Hold # 1 Technique		
4	Demonstrate the Proper Wrist Hold # 2 Technique		
5	Demonstrate the Proper Wrist Hold # 3 Technique		
6	Defend yourself against a Single Wrist Grab		
7	Defend yourself against Double Wrist Grab		
8	Defend yourself against a Bear Hug from the Front Pinning your Arms		
9	Defend yourself against a Bear Hug from the Front Not Pinning your Arms		
10	Defend yourself against a Bear Hug from the Rear Pinning your Arms		
11	Defend yourself against a Bear Hug from the Rear Not Pinning your Arms		
12	Defend yourself against a Head Lock		
13	Defend yourself against a Choke Hold from the Front		
14	Defend yourself against a Choke Hold from the Rear		
15	Defend yourself against Full Nelson		
16	Prevent a Full Nelson from Being Applied		
17	Defend yourself against a Club Attack		
18	Defend yourself against a Straight Punch		
19	Defend yourself against a Round House Punch		
20	Defend yourself against a Kick		
21	Defend yourself against a Knife Attack		
	a Standing		
	b Slashing Down		
	c Slashing Up		
	d Slashing side to side		
	e Straight Jab		

# ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

## Appendix 3

### Restrain a Detainee

#### SECTION 1. ADMINISTRATIVE DATA

Oct 2003

#### SECTION I. ADMINISTRATIVE DATA

All Courses Including This Lesson

COURSE NUMBER(S)

COURSE TITLES(S)

Task(s) Taught or Supported

TASK NUMBER

TASK TITLE

Reinforced Task(s)

TASK NUMBER

TASK TITLE

None

The academic hours required to teach this lesson are as follows

Academic Hours

	HRS/MOI		
	1.5/CO		
	0.5/DM		
	1.0/PE1		
TEST			
TOTAL HOURS	3.0		

Test Lesson Number

Hours

Lesson No

(State if there are none )

Prerequisite Lesson(s)

LESSON NUMBER

LESSON TITLE

Foreign Restrictions

Security

Unclassified

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**Clearance/  
Access**

**References**

<u>Number</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Additional Information</u>

**Student Study  
Assignments**

**Instructor  
Requirements**

One primary and six assistant instructors

**Additional  
Support  
Personnel  
Requirements**

None

**Equipment  
Required**

Twenty ratchet style handcuffs w/key, and twenty leg restraints w/key

**Materials  
Required**

INSTRUCTOR MATERIALS: None

**Classroom,  
Training Area,  
and Range  
Requirements**

One 40-person classroom

**Ammunition  
Requirements**

None

**Instructional  
Guidance**

Before presenting this lesson, instructors must thoroughly prepare by studying the lesson and identified reference material

**Proponent  
Lesson Plan  
Approvals**

NAME	RANK	POSITION	DATE
Edward J Baldwin Jr	SFC	Corrections SME	

**SECTION II**

**INTRODUCTION**

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Traiger Training Program

Method of instruction CO  
 Instructor to student ratio is 1.60.  
 Time of instruction 0.1 hour(s)  
 Media. None

**Motivator**

The installation commander may delegate his authority to use individual restraining devices such as hand restraints and leg restraints within the internment facility or hospital prison ward. Authority for these devices and the specific circumstances under which they may be used will be covered in your local SOP.

**NOTE:**

Inform students of the following terminal learning objective requirements.

**Terminal Learning Objective**

At the completion of this lesson you will

<b>ACTION.</b>	Restrain a Detainee
<b>CONDITION</b>	In a classroom environment given a situation with a Detainee (role played) who requires a restraint device, a set of hand restraints, a set of leg restraints and access to the facility SOP
<b>STANDARD.</b>	You must do all the steps in sequence to correctly select and apply the appropriate restraining device while observing all safety procedures.

**Safety Requirements**

None

**Risk Assessment Level**

Low

**Environmental Considerations**

None. It is the responsibility of all soldiers and DA civilians to protect the environment from damage.

**Evaluation**

This material is tested in a Performance Evaluation Exam where you will be required to apply the devices without error.

**Instructional Lead-in**

In controlling or moving an unruly Detainee, sufficient custodial personnel should be used to overcome the individual's resistance without the necessity of strong-arm tactics associated with man-to-man confrontation. In those instances where a male Detainee refuses to comply with haircuts and shave standards, or a female Detainee fails to comply with hair length or style standards, the Detainee may be restrained and reasonable force used as necessary to administer an appropriate haircut or shave.

**SECTION III**

**PRESENTATION**

**Note.**

Inform the students of the Enabling Learning Objective requirements.



## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**Enabling**

**Learning**

**Objective A**

<b>ACTION:</b>	Apply hand/leg restraints using the front, rear, or seated method.
<b>CONDITION:</b>	Given hand/leg restraints with key and a Detainee (role played).
<b>STANDARD:</b>	Correctly apply hand/leg restraints in sequence.

### Learning Step/Activity 1.

Method of instruction: CO/DM Instructor to student ratio is 1:60

Time of instruction 0.1/0 1 hour(s)

Media None.

References.

Security Classification

4 Hand restraints are the most often used type of restraining device. Always remember that they are temporary and the individual handcuffed is not completely helpless

COMMENT ALWAYS CHECK THE HAND RESTRAINTS AND LEG RESTRAINTS TO ENSURE THAT THEY ARE OPERABLE DO THIS BY CLOSING THE CUFFS DOUBLE LOCK THEM BY PUSHING IN THE DOUBLE-LOCKING DEVICE WITH THE TOP OF THE KEY, SQUEEZE EACH CUFF TO ENSURE THE DOUBLE LOCK IS ENGAGED THEN UNLOCK THE CUFFS

COMMENT WHEN IT BECOMES NECESSARY TO RESTRAIN UNRULY DETAINEES, REQUEST MEDICAL PERSONNEL, IF AVAILABLE, TO CHECK THE DETAINEE IT IS NOT NECESSARY, HOWEVER, FOR MEDICAL PERSONNEL TO CHECK DETAINEES WHO ARE WEARING HAND RESTRAINTS AND LEG RESTRAINTS FOR ESCORT PURPOSES

5 Apply the hand restraints with Detainee's arms in front of him/her

a Stand to the front of the Detainee If the Detainee is uncooperative, be sure that at least one other correctional staff member is present when applying or removing hand restraints

b Direct the Detainee to extend both arms to the front, elbows extended and locked, palms facing each other

c With your right hand, grasp the hand restraint by the chain, so that the keyholes are facing out towards you and the double locks are oriented to the up position

d With your left hand grasp the Detainees right hand using the handshake method With your right hand, apply hand restraint to the Detainees right wrist so the double lock is up and the keyhole is facing you

e Tighten cuffs being careful not to cut off circulation (check tightness by inserting fingertip between the Detainee's wrist and restraints)

f With your left hand, firmly grip the chain in order to maintain control of the hand restraint

g Grasp the Detainee's left hand, using the handshake method, with your right hand Using your free hand, apply the hand restraint to the left wrist of the Detainee so that the double lock is up and the keyhole is facing you

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

h. Being careful not to cut off the Detainee's circulation, tighten the hand restraints. Check the tightness by inserting one fingertip between the Detainee's wrists and the restraints

i Double-lock both hand restraints by using the tip of the hand restraint key

j Check double-lock by squeezing the hand restraints

COMMENT: AN EXTRA PRECAUTION IF THE DETAINEE IS UNCOOPERATIVE, REMOVE THE BELT. PASS THE BELT THROUGH THE HAND RESTRAINT CHAIN, REPLACE THE BELT WITH BUCKLE TO REAR OF DETAINEE

NOTE INSTRUCTOR DEMONSTRATES APPLYING THE HAND RESTRAINTS TO A DEMONSTRATOR WITH HIS ARMS IN FRONT OF HIM

### Learning Step/Activity 2

Method of instruction: CO/DM Instructor to student ratio is 1 60

Time of instruction: 0 1/0 1 hour(s)

Media: None

References:

Security Clearance: None

6 Apply hand restraints to a Detainee with their hands placed behind them

a Stand to the rear of the Detainee

b Direct him to place his left hand behind his back with the palm facing out

c Using the handshake method, grasp the Detainee's left hand with your left hand. Apply the hand restraint with your right hand so that the double lock is up and the keyhole is facing you

d While maintaining control of the hand restraints with your left hand, pass the connecting chain under the Detainee's belt. Make sure the belt buckle remains in the front

e Direct the Detainee to place his right hand behind his back with the palm facing out

f Grasp his right hand with your right, using the handshake method. With your left hand, apply the hand restraints with the double lock up and the keyhole facing you

g Tighten the hand restraint. Check each hand restraint by inserting your fingertip between the Detainee's wrist and the hand restraint to be sure it is not too tight

h Double lock both hand restraints

i Check the double lock by squeezing the hand restraints

NOTE INSTRUCTOR DEMONSTRATES APPLYING THE HAND RESTRAINTS TO A DEMONSTRATOR WITH HIS ARMS BEHIND HIM

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

### Learning Step/Activity 3.

Method of instruction: PE1. Instructor to student ratio is 1:6.

Time of instruction: 0.2 hour(s)

Media: None.

References

Security Classification: None

NOTE: Conduct Practical Exercise on Apply Hand Restraints

### Learning Step/Activity 4.

Method of instruction: CO/DM Instructor to student ratio is 1:60

Time of instruction: 0 1/0 1 hour(s)

Media: None

References

Security Classification: None

#### 7 Apply leg restraints to a Detainee

NOTE: HAND RESTRAINTS WILL ALWAYS BE PLACED ON A DETAINEE PRIOR TO APPLYING LEG RESTRAINTS

COMMENT: IF DETAINEE IS UNCOOPERATIVE, PLACE HIM FACE DOWN ON THE FLOOR TO APPLY LEG RESTRAINTS. HAVE AT LEAST ONE OTHER CORRECTIONS STAFF MEMBER OR MILITARY POLICE PRESENT. USE MINIMUM FORCE TO IMMOBILIZE DETAINEE

a. Stand behind the Detainee and direct the Detainee to stand with his feet spread approximately shoulder width apart. If the Detainee will not cooperate, place the Detainee face down on the floor to apply the leg restraints. Have at least one other corrections person or an MP present. Use minimum force to overcome the Detainee.

b. Crouch behind the Detainee, but be sure to keep your balance.

c. Grasp one of the Detainee's ankles.

d. Place the leg restraint above the ankle so that the keyhole is up and the double lock is facing you.

e. Tighten the leg restraint without cutting off the Detainee's circulation. (It may be necessary to turn down the boot tops to make room for the leg restraints.)

f. Grasp the chain between the leg restraints to keep control of the Detainee.

g. Apply and tighten the other leg restraint in the same way.

h. Check to be sure the leg restraints are not too tight. Then double lock them.

i. Check the double lock by squeezing the restraints.

NOTE: INSTRUCTOR DEMONSTRATES APPLY THE LEG RESTRAINTS. DEMONSTRATOR

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**NOTE** Conduct Practical Exercise on Apply Leg Restraints

### Check on Learning

Determine if students have learned the material presented by --

- a Soliciting student questions and explanations.
- b Asking questions and getting answers from the students.
- c Providing immediate feedback in context to the material presented and correcting student misunderstandings

### Review/ Summarize Lesson

**RETAIN ATTENTION** When your supervisor directs you to get some type of restraining device, do you know how to check it to make sure it works properly? Do you know how to apply the different devices? If you don't, you will have bigger problems with the Detainee. It will be too late to learn how when it comes time to apply them in a real life situation.

**SUMMARY** We have seen, discussed, and conducted practical exercises on applying restraining devices. We've covered the method of applying the devices. Also discussed was the amount of caution used when applying these devices.

**CLOSING STATEMENT** Remember, a restraining device is nothing more than a job aid in getting a Detainee to carry out your will. Just like any other job aid, it is most effective when applied properly. But job aids can also become dangerous if used improperly. While working as a corrections staff member, you could be called upon at any time to apply or assist in applying restraining devices.

### Transition to Next Lesson

### SECTION V.

### STUDENT EVALUATION

### Testing Requirements

Describe how the student must demonstrate accomplishment of the TLO

- 1 Performance examination

### Feedback Requirement

- a Schedule and provide immediate feedback in context to the material presented to correct student misunderstandings
- b Provide remedial training as needed

**ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

**RESTRAIN A DETAINEE PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION GRADE SHEET**

**PURPOSE:** This examination evaluates your ability to properly apply restraining devices to a Detainee.

**ACTION.** Apply hand and leg restraints

**CONDITIONS:** Given a set of hand restraints and leg restraints with a key, a cooperative Detainee, and a situation requiring you to apply restraints

**STANDARDS:** You must correctly complete all performance measures for applying hand restraints to the front, apply leg restraints and apply hand restraints to the rear in sequence within 10 minutes

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Print Student Rank/Name L, F, MI)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Instructor Signature)

DATE \_\_\_\_\_

**START TIME**      **STOP TIME**

**CIRCLE ONE**

APPLY HAND RESTRAINTS TO THE FRONT	GO	NO GO
APPLY LEG RESTRAINTS	GO	NO GO
APPLY HAND RESTRAINTS TO THE REAR	GO	NO GO
Completed exam within 10 minutes	GO	NO GO

**Remarks:**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

**RESTRAIN A DETAINEE PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION**

**INSTRUCTOR NOTES:**

**GIVE A SAFETY BRIEFING TO ALL PERSONNEL PRIOR TO CONDUCTING THE EXAM.**

**USE PASS/FAIL EVALUATION CHECKLIST TO GRADE STUDENT PERFORMANCE.**

**CIRCLE GO OR NO-GO ON THE RESTRAIN A DETAINEE PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION GRADE SHEET AND WRITE REMARKS IF APPLICABLE.**

**IF A STUDENT FAILS TO ACHIEVE A STEP DURING THE EVALUATION MAKE A NOTE AND UPON COMPLETION OF THE EVALUATION INFORM THE STUDENT OF THE NOGO SHORTCOMING. CIRCLE THE F (Fail) AND NOTE THE SHORTCOMING IN THE REMARKS SECTION OF THE EVALUATION CHECKLIST.**

**IF A STUDENT RECEIVED A 1X NOGO, COUNSEL HIM/HER ON THE CONSEQUENCES OF THE NOGO AND CONDUCT RETRAINING ON THE STEP OR STEPS THE STUDENT MISSED, ALLOW THEM TIME TO REHEARSE THOSE STEPS AND RETEST THEM ONLY ON THE STEP OR STEPS THAT WERE MISSED.**

**IF A STUDENT RECEIVES A 2<sup>ND</sup> X GO INDICATE IT ON THE RESTRAIN A DETAINEE PERFORMANCE EXAMINATION GRADE SHEET, MAKE A NOTE IN THE REMARKS SECTION AND CONTACT THE SENIOR INSTRUCTOR.**

**ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

**RESTRAIN A DETAINEE PERFORMANCE EVALUATION CHECKLIST**

**1. APPLY HAND RESTRAINTS TO A DETAINEE WITH HIS ARMS IN FRONT.**

Circle One

- a. Checked hand restraints to make sure they worked properly P or F
- b. Stood in front of the Detainee and directed the Detainee to extend both arms to the front locking the elbows with the palms facing each other P or F
- c. With the left hand, grasped the Detainee's right hand Used the right hand and applied the hand restraint on the Detainee so that the double lock was up and the keyhole was facing him P or F
- d. Moved his left hand to the chain and grasped the Detainee's left hand with his right hand Used his left hand to apply the hand restraint so that the double lock was up and the keyhole was facing him P or F
- e. Checked each hand restraint by inserting the tip of his finger between the Detainee's wrist and the hand restraint to make sure it was not too tight F or F
- f. Double locked both hand restraints, and checked the double locks by squeezing the hand restraints F or F

**2. APPLY LEG RESTRAINTS TO A DETAINEE.**

1. Checked leg restraints to make sure they worked properly F or F
2. Stood behind the Detainee and directed the Detainee to stand with his feet shoulder width apart. (Crouched behind the Detainee while maintaining his/her balance.) P or F
3. Grasped one of the Detainee's ankles, maintained control of the leg restraints F or F
4. Applied the leg restraint above the ankle so that the keyhole was up and the double lock was facing him (It may be necessary to turn down the boot tops to apply the leg restraints ) P or F
5. Tightened the leg restraint without cutting off the Detainee's circulation P or F
6. Grasped the chain between the leg restraints and applied the other leg restraint in the same manner as the first one P or F
7. Checked each leg restraint by inserting the tip of his finger between the Detainee's leg and the leg restraint to make sure it was not too tight P or F
8. Double locked both leg restraints, and checked the double locks by squeezing the leg restraints P or F

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

### RESTRAIN A DETAINEE PERFORMANCE EVALUATION CHECKLIST (Continued)

- |  | Circle One |
|--|------------|
| <b>3. APPLY HAND RESTRAINTS TO A DETAINEE WITH HIS HANDS BEHIND HIM.</b>   | P or F     |
| a. Checked hand restraints to make sure they worked properly.  | P or F     |
| b. Stood behind the Detainee and directed the Detainee to place his left hand behind his back with the palm facing out   | P or F     |
| c. Used the handshake method, grasp the Detainee's left hand with his left hand. Applied the hand restraint with his right hand so that the double lock was up and the keyhole was facing him. | P or F     |
| d. Maintained control of the hand restraints with his left hand  | P or F     |
| e. Directed the Detainee to place his right hand behind his back with the palm facing out  | P or F     |
| f. Grasp the Detainee's right hand with his right hand. With his left hand, applied the hand restraint with the double lock up and the keyhole facing him.                                     | P or F     |
| g. Checked each hand restraint by inserting the tip of his finger between the Detainee's wrist and the hand restraint to make sure it was not too tight.                                       | P or F     |
| h. Double locked both hand restraints, and checked the double locks by squeezing the hand restraints   | P or F     |



**ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

**Appendix 4**

**Forced Cell Moves**

**SECTION 1. ADMINISTRATIVE DATA**

Oct 2003

**SECTION I. ADMINISTRATIVE DATA**

**All Courses Including This Lesson**

**COURSE NUMBER(S)**

**COURSE TITLES(S)**

**Task(s) Taught or Supported**

**TASK NUMBER**

**TASK TITLE**

NA

**Reinforced Task(s)**

**TASK NUMBER**

**TASK TITLE**

The academic hours required to teach this lesson are as follows

**Academic Hours**

PEACETIME			MOB
AC	TASS Training Bns	AC/RC	
	HRS/MOI		
	1 2/CO		
	3.8/DM/P		
TEST			
<b>TOTAL HOURS</b>	4 0		

**Test Lesson Number**

Testing,  
(to include test review)

Hours  
0

Lesson No

**Prerequisite Lesson(s)**

(State if there are none )

**LESSON NUMBER**

**LESSON TITLE**

**Foreign Restrictions**

**Security**

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**Clearance / Access**                      **Unclassified**

**References**

<u>Number</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Additional Information</u>

**Student Study Assignments**

None

**Instructor Requirements**

One primary instructor.

**Additional Support Personnel Requirements**

None

**Equipment Required**

**Materials Required**

**Classroom, Training Area, and Range Requirements**

One 60-person classroom

**Ammunition Requirements**

None

**Instructional Guidance**

Before presenting this lesson, instructors must thoroughly prepare by studying the lesson and identified reference material

**Proponent Lesson Plan Approvals**

NAME	RANK	POSITION	DATE
BALDWIN, Edward J Jr	SFC	Corrections SME	

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**SECTION II. INTRODUCTION**

Method of instruction CO  
 Instructor to student ratio is 1.60  
 Time of instruction 0 1 hour(s)  
 Media. None

NOTE: Show Slide #1 (Forced Cell Moves)

**Motivator** Whenever an unruly detainee is housed in a tightly controlled environment such as close confinement, the potential for a disorder is very high. The sooner the disorder is quelled, the likelihood of personnel and/or property loss is minimized. This is accomplished by the expeditious use of a properly trained Forced Cell Move Team.

**NOTE:** Inform students of the following terminal learning objective requirements

NOTE: Show Slide #2 (TLO)

**Terminal Learning Objective** At the completion of this lesson you will

<b>ACTION:</b>	Identify appropriate actions to take when conducting a forced cell move
<b>CONDITION:</b>	In a classroom environment given a conference, identify procedures used to forcibly move uncooperative detainees from a cell.
<b>STANDARD:</b>	Identify steps to take when forcibly moving and uncooperative detainee

**Safety Requirements** None

**Risk Assessment Level** Low

**Environmental Considerations** None. It is the responsibility of all soldiers and DA civilians to protect the environment from damage.

**Evaluation** None

**Instructional Lead-in** There are times when it is necessary to subdue an unruly detainee. There are a number of things to consider during this procedure to ensure that the minimum amount of force is used at all times, the team is properly trained and supervised. Most importantly, personnel use minimum amount of force necessary to subdue unruly detainee.

**SECTION III PRESENTATION**

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

---

### Learning Step/Activity 1.

Method of instruction: CO. Instructor to student ratio is 1:60.

Time of instruction 0 4 hour(s)

Media None

References

Security Classification None

NOTE Show Slide #3 (Purpose for a Forced Cell Move)

#### 1 Purpose for a Forced Cell Move

- a Detainee refuses to move from one cell into another as ordered
- b Detainee refuses to surrender any item ordered to by staff member
- c Refusals to take shower within the allotted time period required by the facility SOP
- d Refusal to receive haircut IAW local SOP
- e Refusing to receive prescribed medication by qualified medical personnel, i e , mental health patients
- f Detainees refuse orders to return to their assigned cells.
- g Detainees become a physical threat to themselves or others
- h Detainee is barricaded inside a cell, window, or room
- i The detainee cannot be approached without risk of serious physical injury to the detainee or others, or the approach would result in a major disturbance or serious property damage.

NOTE Show Slide #4 (Forced Cell Move Team Composition)

#### 2. Forced Cell Move Team composition

- a As a Corrections Officer you will become familiar with the operations of a Forced Cell Move Team
- b It is important to have a working knowledge of the duties of each member of a Forced Cell Move Team and the ability of team members to work as one using the minimum amount of force necessary to subdue, restrain, and move an unruly detainee
- c Remember we are not moving the detainee as punishment, we are moving the detainee for his/her safety, and we are helping the detainee
- d All of the following equipment must be worn properly at all times by each member of the Forced Cell Move Team

- (1) Helmet with face shield
- (2) Groin protector
- (3) Flak vest

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

- (4) Elbow pads.
- (5) Gloves
- (6) Leg/shin protectors.

e A Forced Cell Move Team is comprised of five members each with a specific task, supported by a Military Police Investigator, a duty Medic, and an Officer in Charge of the team.

NOTE: In order for each member of a Forced Cell Move Team to ensure minimum force is used all members should receive a class in self-defense to include but not limited to Pressure Point Control Techniques (PPCT) Prior to training for Forced Cell Moves

NOTE: Show Slide # 5 (Responsibilities of Each Member)

### 3 Responsibilities

a The following is a list of responsibilities belonging to each member of the Forced Cell Move Team, and support personnel

(1) Number one person - Locate the detainee prior to entering the cell and inform the rest of the team of what is seen inside the cell. Pinning the detainee upon entering the cell and securing the detainee's head during all movements, using the minimum amount of force necessary. This is to ensure the detainee's head is not injured, or causes injury to any member of the team.

(2) Number two person - Responsible for controlling the detainee's strong arm using the minimum amount of force necessary. He/she will carry the hand restraints with key or flexi-cuffs, and secure the detainee's arms to the rear with the restraints.

(3) Number three person - Responsible for controlling the detainee's weak arm, using the minimum amount of force necessary and assisting the number two person applying the wrist restraints.

(4) Number four person - Responsible for controlling the detainee's right leg, using the minimum amount of force necessary and assisting the number five person in securing the detainee's legs with leg restraints or flexi-cuffs. The number four person will carry the leg restraints with a key or flexi-cuffs.

(5) Number five person - Is the Team Leader, responsible for giving all commands. Responsible for controlling the detainee's left leg and ensuring that the rest of the team uses the minimum amount of force necessary to accomplish the move. Also responsible that all extra equipment that may be used during the move is available for the team (i.e., extra hand restraints, leg restraints, soap and sponge). The team leader directs the opening and closing of the cell.

(6) Duty Investigator - Responsible for filming the briefing of Forced Cell Move Team, all movements of the Forced Cell Move Team, and the actual Forced Cell Move. Ensuring that a use of force statement is completed upon the completion of the Forced Cell Move and receives statements from all persons involved.

(7) Duty Medic - Responsible for all medical attention needed by the detainee and cadre.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

(8) Officer in Charge (OIC)- Has overall responsibility for the operation. The OIC will determine whether a Forced Cell Move is needed and if so will conduct the briefing of the incident that resulted in the requirement for the use of force and what the team will be instructed to accomplish which will be read aloud in front of the Forced Cell Move Team and be videotaped by the investigator. The OIC will give all commands to the detainee, and will also conduct a debrief with the Forced Cell Move Team upon completion of the mission. The OIC is overall responsible that the Forced Cell Move Team uses the minimum amount of force necessary to complete the mission

NOTE: ISSUE HANDOUT #1 (BRIEFING EXAMPLE)

NOTE Show Slide #6 (Team Member Briefing)

### b. Briefing

(1) Each member of the Forced Cell Move Team, to include the duty medic, will be given a briefing by the OIC. This briefing will be filmed by Investigations. Each member of the team will step in front of the camera and state the following:

(2) My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the number one person. My mission is to pin the detainee using the minimum amount of force necessary.

(3) My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the number two person. My mission is to secure the detainee's right arm and apply the wrist restraints to the detainee using the minimum amount of force necessary. I will carry the wrist restraints (the number two person will hold the restraints up to the camera).

(4) My name and rank is \_\_\_\_; I am the number three person. My mission is to secure the detainee's left arm and assist the number two person with applying the wrist restraints to the detainee using the minimum amount of force necessary.

(5) My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the number four person. My mission is to secure the detainee's right leg and apply the leg restraints to the detainee's legs using minimum amount of force necessary. I will carry the leg restraints (the number four person will hold the restraints up to the camera).

(6) My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the number five person. My mission is to secure the detainee's left leg and assist the number four person in applying the leg restraints to the detainee's legs using the minimum amount of force necessary. I am the team leader for this mission, I am also responsible for ensuring that the team uses the minimum amount of force necessary at all times.

(7) My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the duty medic. I will treat any and all medical emergencies during the move.

(8) Each member of the team after stating their mission will then execute an about face allowing the camera to see the number on the back of their helmet and flak vest, take one step forward and execute another about face.

NOTE: THE NUMBERS ASSIST IN IDENTIFYING ALL PERSONNEL INVOLVED FOR THEIR SAFETY.

NOTE: IF FORCE IS USED, EACH MEMBER OF THE TEAM WILL REPORT TO

## **ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

### **INVESTIGATIONS UPON COMPLETION OF THE MISSION AND WILL COMPLETE THE APPROPRIATE PAPERWORK.**

**NOTE: Show Slide #7 (Team Action During the Move).**

#### **4 TEAM ACTION DURING THE MOVE**

a The following is a list of actions that the team will take upon initiating the move

(1) The OIC will move to the front of the detainee's cell and order the detainee to comply with previous instructions. Upon receiving no reply or a negative response from the detainee, the OIC will command the Forced Cell Move Team to move the detainee as per the situation would dictate

(2) The Investigator will carry a video camera and be positioned where the entire event can be recorded

(3) The on-duty medic will be carrying an aid bag and be positioned where he/she can observe the entire situation. The medic will render medical assistance to anyone that may require it during the mission

**NOTE WHEN ORDERED, THE TEAM WILL MARCH IN A COLUMN TO THE FRONT OF THE DETAINEE'S CELL DOOR, REMAIN IN A COLUMN DIRECTLY IN FRONT OF THE CELL PREPARED TO ENTER AND RESTRAIN THE DETAINEE**

(4) The number one person carrying a 3-foot protective shield, will stop in front of the cell, once in front of the cell, will be the "eyes and ears of the team"

(a) The number one person will observe the entire cell, check for anything that may cause harm to the team or the detainee. The number one person will inform the rest of the team by looking over their right shoulder and announcing the exact location of the detainee, if the detainee is holding anything, if a barricade has been erected, if the floor is wet or if the light is on or off, etc

**NOTE IN ORDER FOR THE NUMBER ONE PERSON TO KNOW THAT THE TEAM HAS HEARD AND UNDERSTOOD HIM EACH MEMBER OF THE TEAM STARTING WITH THE NUMBER FIVE PERSON WILL GRAB THE RIGHT SHOULDER OF THE MEMBER IN FRONT OF HIM UNTIL THE NUMBER ONE PERSON IS SIGNALLED IF THERE IS NO RESPONSE THE NUMBER ONE PERSON WILL REPEAT THE INFORMATION**

(b) Once the number one person determines that the detainee does not have any weapons and can see the detainee's hands, the number one person will drop the shield and prepare to move into the cell once it begins to open by bending at the knees and at the waist, with hands about chest high in front of them

(c) If the number one person cannot see the detainee's hands and/or the detainee is known to have a weapon, or any other situation that may

cause undue injury to the team or detainee, the number one person may carry a pinning shield into the cell, after (OC) spray has been used (See use of OC spray)

(d) Upon entering the cell the number one person's mission is to pin the detainee, attempting to guide the detainee to the bunk and secure the

## **ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

detainee's head to prevent any injury to the detainee or the team.

(5) The number two person will stand directly behind the number one person outside of the cell, with both hands on the waist of the number one person, preparing to push the number one person into the cell upon the cell door opening

(a) Once inside the cell, the number two person will secure the detainee's right arm and apply the wrist restraints to the detainee's wrists behind the detainee's back, using the minimum amount of force necessary

(b) Once the number two person has the wrist restraints secured on the detainee the number two person will announce to the team, "HANDS SECURE" and will be positioned where the number two person can carry the detainee at the direction of the team leader. If there is no response the number one person will repeat the information

(6) The number three person will stand directly behind the number two person outside of the cell, with both hands on the waist of the number two person preparing to push the number two and number one person into the cell upon the cell door opening

(a) Once inside the cell, the number three person will secure the detainee's left arm and assist the number two person in applying the wrist restraints on the detainee's wrists behind the detainee's back, using minimum amount of force necessary

(b) Once the hands are secure the number three person will be positioned where the number three person can carry the detainee, at the direction of the team leader

(7) The number four person will stand directly behind the number three person outside the cell, with both hands on the number three person's waist preparing to push the number three, two, and one person into the cell upon the cell door opening

(a) Once inside the cell, the number four person will secure the detainee's right leg and apply the leg restraints on the detainee, using the minimum amount of force necessary

(b) Once the leg restraints are secured the number four person will announce to the team, "LEGS SECURE" and be positioned where the number four person will be able to carry the detainee, at the direction of the team leader

(8) The number five person will stand directly behind the number four person outside of the cell, with both hands on the waist of the number four person preparing to push the number four, three, two, and one person into the cell upon the cell door opening

(a) Prior to the cell door being opened, the team leader will ensure that the team is prepared to enter the cell and signal to the OIC to have the cell door opened, using a prearranged signal

(b) Once inside the cell the number five person will secure the detainee's left leg and assist the number four person in applying the leg restraints to the detainee's legs, using the minimum amount of force necessary



## **ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

(c) Once the legs are secure the number five person will be positioned where the number five person can carry the detainee.

(d) When the hands and legs are secure, the team leader will survey the area and visually check all members of the team to ensure that they are ready to move the detainee out of the cell

**NOTE: ALL MEMBERS OF THE TEAM WILL REMAIN SILENT DURING THE MOVE UNLESS NOTIFYING THE TEAM OF INSTRUCTIONS OR ANSWERING THE TEAM LEADER. NONVERBAL PREARRANGED HAND SIGNALS SHOULD BE USED TO RELAY ANYTHING THAT MAY AGITATE THE DETAINEE**

(e) Once the Team Leader has checked the team, team leader will command **"PREPARE TO LIFT", "TEAM LIFT"**. At this time the team will simultaneously lift and carry the detainee to the doorway of the cell

(f) Prior to exiting the cell the team may have to turn the detainee to the side. To do this the team leader will command, **"PREPARE TO TURN", AND "TEAM TURN"**. At this time the team will turn the detainee's body so that the detainee's face is facing the bunk, (This may psychologically ease the detainee, if the detainee can see a soft area the detainee may relax), the team will proceed outside the cell with the detainee

**NOTE Show Slide #8 (Once Outside the Cell)**

(g) Once outside the cell the team leader will command the team, **"PREPARE TO LOWER" "TEAM LOWER"**. At this time the team will (simultaneously slowly lower the detainee to the floor. The medic will check the detainee for any injuries

(9) Once outside the cell if the team is not in the correct position the team leader will direct adjusting movements. After the medic examines the detainee, the team leader will direct the team to lift and move the detainee to the predesignated cell

**NOTE ONCE OUTSIDE THE CELL THE TEAM LEADER WILL INSTRUCT THE NUMBER TWO AND FOUR PERSON TO READJUST THE RESTRAINTS AS NECESSARY AND DOUBLE LOCK THE RESTRAINTS TO PREVENT INJURY TO THE DETAINEE DURING FURTHER MOVEMENT, AS APPLICABLE**

**NOTE Show Slide #9 (Before Entering the Cell)**

(10) Before entering the cell, turn the detainee's body so that the detainee's face is facing the bunk, if necessary

**NOTE Show Slide #10 (Place the Detainee in Predesignated Cell)**

(11) Place the detainee in the predesignated cell as follows

(a) Face down on the bunk, with the detainee's head furthest away from the cell door

**NOTE Show Slide #11 (Remove the Restraints)**

(12) Remove the restraints in the following manner (if predetermined prior to initiating the move), these instructions would be given to the

## **ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program**

the briefing.

(a) The number two person will remove the wrist restraints and announce to the team, "HANDS UNSECURE". Then secure the restraints on their person readily available for use, as applicable.

(b) The number four person will remove the leg restraints and announce to the team, "LEGS UNSECURE". Then secure the restraints on their person readily available for use, as applicable.

(13) The number one person will secure the detainee's head to prevent injury to the detainee or any member of the team, using minimum amount of force necessary

(14) The number three person will assist the number two person by holding the detainee's hands behind the detainee's back using PPCT, or appropriate wrist holds

(15) The number four person will assist the number five person by crossing the detainee's legs and folding them against the detainee's body and applying pressure to keep them secure, using minimum amount of force necessary.

NOTE Show Slide #12 (Exiting the Cell)

(16) The team will exit the cell in the following manner

(a) Each team member, at the direction of the team leader, will exit the cell opposite from the way that they came in, beginning with the number five person. As they exit each team member will stand in the ready position outside the cell prepared to reenter if necessary

NOTE. THE READY POSITIONS IS CROUCHED WITH HANDS AT CHEST LEVEL EYES ON THE OTHER MEMBERS STILL IN THE CELL //

(b) When exiting each team member will sound off with "five out", "four out", "three out", the number two and number one person will temporarily continue to restrain the detainee on the bunk

(c) The number two person will be positioned on top of the detainee's legs. The number one person will be positioned across the detainee's back and secure the detainee's hands behind his back using PPCT

(d) When ready, the number one person (using a prearranged non-verbal signal), will signal the number two person when prepared to exit, the number two person will signal the number one person in return

(e) The number one person will then signal the number three person that they are preparing to exit the cell. The number three person will then reach in and grab the number two person, the number two person will grab the number one person and they will exit the cell simultaneously

(f) While they are moving out of the cell the OIC will notify the staff member cage via the radio or other prearranged signal and have the cell secured

(g) Once the entire team is outside of the cell the team leader will command the team to depart the area

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**NOTE: IF WHILE THE CELL DOOR IS CLOSING, THE DETAINEE MAKES AN EFFORT TO CHARGE THE GATE IN ATTEMPT TO ESCAPE THE CELL, OR ASSAULT ONE OF THE TEAM MEMBERS, THE TEAM WILL REENTER AND RESECURE THE DETAINEE IN RESTRAINTS, IAW LOCAL SOP, REPEATING THE ABOVE LISTED PROCEDURE**

**NOTE: IF THE DETAINEE IS KNOWN TO HAVE HIV OR AIDS SPECIAL PRECAUTIONS MUST BE USED TO INCLUDE BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE OF OC SPRAY, ALL TEAM MEMBERS MOPP LEVEL 4, AND/OR WET WEATHER GEAR AND SURGICAL MASK, IAW LOCAL SOP**

### Learning Step/Activity 2.

Method of instruction CO Instructor to student ratio is 1 60

Time of instruction .1 hour(s)

Media. None

References

Security Classification None

NOTE Show Slide #13 (Shower Procedures)

#### 1 SHOWER PROCEDURES

a If directed to administer a shower to a detainee, use the following procedure

(1) Remove the detainee from the cell using the above procedures and place the detainee on the tier. The medic will conduct an examination of the detainee

(2) Upon completion of the examination, the number two person under the direction of the team leader, will remove the detainee's shirt in the following manner

(a) First carefully move the detainee's shirt down the arms until meeting the wrist restraints

(b) Then apply a second set of restraints above the shirt ensuring that the hand restraints are double locked, or the flexi-cuffs are not cutting off the blood circulation (which ever is used)

(c) Remove the first set of restraints and the shirt

NOTE THE TEAM LEADER MUST ENSURE THAT THERE ARE EXTRA SETS OF THE HAND RESTRAINTS AND LEG RESTRAINTS OR OTHER RESTRAINTS AVAILABLE PRIOR TO EXECUTING THIS MOVE

(3) After the shirt has been removed, the number four person will remove the detainee's pants in the following manner

(a) Unbutton and slide the pants and shorts down over the leg restraints

(b) Apply a second set of restraints above the pants ensuring that the leg restraints are double locked, or the flexi-cuffs don't cut off blood circulation

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

(c) Then remove the first set of restraints, the pants and shorts.

(4) At the direction of the team leader, the team will lift and carry the detainee to the shower and administer a shower.

(5) Once inside the shower the team will stand the detainee up so that the detainee is facing towards the doorway of the shower

(a) Each team member will secure a limb, except for the number one person

(b) The number one person will wash the detainee with soap and a sponge

NOTE (THE TEAM LEADER MUST ENSURE THAT THE PROPER EQUIPMENT IS AVAILABLE PRIOR TO EXECUTING THE MOVE )

(c) Once the detainee's front side has been washed, the team will turn the detainee around and wash the back side in the same manner

(d) Once the detainee has been washed, the number one person under the direction of the team leader will dry the detainee. The number one person may also attempt to dry the floor area as best as possible, so that all personnel involved in the move can maneuver out of the cell without injury

(e) After carrying the detainee out of the shower, the team will place the detainee on the tier floor. The medic will once again check the detainee for any injuries

(f) Once this is accomplished, the team leader will direct the team to move the detainee into a predesignated cell, following the procedures discussed earlier in this lesson

NOTE IAW LOCAL SOP THE TEAM MAY BE WEARING WET WEATHER GEAR TO INCLUDE RUBBER BOOTS TO PROVIDE MORE PROTECTION AND A BETTER GRIP ON THE WET FLOOR

### Learning Step/Activity 3.

Method of instruction CO Instructor to student ratio is 1:60

Time of instruction 1 hour(s)

Media None

References.

Security Classification None

NOTE Show Slide #14 (Use of Oleoresin Capsicum Spray)

#### 1 USE OF OLEORESIN CAPSICUM (OC) SPRAY

a Authorization to use OC Pepper Spray will be under the following conditions.

(1) If the detainee is known to have a weapon, is barricaded inside

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

the cell, or has smeared a slippery substance to himself/herself or the cell.

(2) The detainee cannot be approached without risk of serious physical injury to the detainee or others, or the approach would result in a major disturbance or serious property damage.

(3) A medical doctor should be consulted prior to the use of OC Pepper Spray, unless the commander determines that circumstances are such that immediate use is necessary. Whenever possible, the detainee's medical file should first be reviewed by a doctor to determine whether the detainee has any diseases or conditions, including, but not limited to, asthma, emphysema, bronchitis, tuberculosis, obstructive pulmonary disease, angina pectoris, cardiac pulmonary or congestive heart failure, which would be dangerously affected if the OC Pepper spray was used.

(4) The OIC of the Forced Cell Move Team will instruct the detainee to surrender the weapon, or to dismantle the barricade, and prepare to be placed in restraining devices.

(5) If the detainee refuses to comply, the OIC will order the team to move in front of the detainee's cell. Once in front of the cell the number two person will spray the detainee in the following manner:

**NOTE CAUTION (ALL FORCED CELL MOVE TEAM MEMBERS WILL RECEIVE TRAINING IN THE USE OF (OC) PEPPER SPRAY, PRIOR TO AN ACTUAL APPLICATION IN A FORCED CELL MOVE)**

(a) The OIC will communicate with the detainee in an attempt to distract the detainee from the team; allowing the number two person (only at the direction and authorization of the installation commander) the opportunity to assume a good position and spray the detainee with the OC spray.

(b) The number two person will hold the (OC) spray dispenser in the strong hand, extended out and away from the body in front of the shield aiming at the detainee's eyes, nose and mouth.

(c) Press the actuator with the thumb, using two one-second bursts, spray the detainee's face. (This may need to be repeated as necessary to achieve a positive affect.)

(6) The team will wait a minimum of six seconds (IAW local SOP) after the detainee has been sprayed to avoid secondary vapor effects prior to entering the cell. The OIC will notify the staff member cage and have the cell opened, at which time the team will secure the detainee as instructed earlier in the lesson.

**NOTE THE TEAM MUST BE ALERT FOR ONE OR MORE OF THE FOLLOWING RESPONSES OF THE DETAINEE AFTER BEING SPRAYED WITH OC PEPPER SPRAY:**

- 1 EYES CLOSE IMMEDIATELY
- 2 BREATHING BECOMES DIFFICULT
- 3 LOSS OF BALANCE
- 4 MUSCLE DYSFUNCTION

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

5. DETAINEE FALLS TO THE FLOOR.

6. NO REACTION, DETAINEE JUST STANDS STILL.

7. DETAINEE BECOMES AGGRESSIVE AND VIOLENT, AGITATED, WANTING TO FIGHT THE TEAM.

NOTE: ONCE THE DETAINEE HAS BEEN SPRAYED THE OIC SHOULD GIVE THE DETAINEE INSTRUCTIONS TO LAY ON THE FLOOR, AND TO NOT RESIST. THE OIC SHOULD TRY TO REASSURE THE DETAINEE THAT COOPERATION IS NECESSARY. THIS WILL POSITIVELY EFFECT THE MINIMAL AMOUNT OF FORCE USED.

NOTE CAUTION - THE TEAM AND SUPPORT PERSONNEL MAY NEED TO BE WEARING THEIR PROTECTIVE MASKS DURING THE SPRAYING PROCESS, TO AVOID ANY POSSIBLE RESIDUAL SPRAY, THAT MAY INCAPACITATE ANY MEMBER OF THE FORCED CELL MOVE TEAM. EACH FACILITY SHOULD CONDUCT TESTS OF THE SPRAY DURING TRAINING IN ORDER TO HAVE A WORKING KNOWLEDGE OF HOW THE SPRAY MAY EFFECT ANYONE OUTSIDE OF THE CELL AS WELL AS ONCE THE TEAM ENTERS THE CELL (WILL THE TEAM UPON ENTERING THE CELL BE EFFECTED AND WHAT ARE THOSE EFFECTS?) CELL CONFIGURATION AND SPACE IS AN IMPORTANT FACTOR WHEN CONSIDERING USING OC SPRAY IAW LOCAL SOP.

(7) Once the detainee has been placed on the tier, the medic will check and decontaminate the detainee.

NOTE: THE PROTOCOL FOR THE PARTICULAR COMMERCIAL OC PEPPER SPRAY MUST BE FOLLOWED BY THE INDIVIDUAL FACILITY PERSONNEL TO ACHIEVE CLEANSING AND DECONTAMINATION OF THE DETAINEE AFTER THE OC PEPPER SPRAY HAS BEEN APPLIED.

(a) The medic will splash water on the detainee's face to dilute the pepper on the skin, and flush the eyes with water to decontaminate the eyes.

(b) Once the detainee is decontaminated, the team will place the detainee into the predesignated cell (AS DIRECTED BY THE OIC). They will remove the hand and leg restraints as explained earlier in the lesson.

(8) After the detainee has been placed into the cell, corrections personnel will monitor the detainee for a minimum of one hour. If the detainee shows signs of respiratory problems or loses consciousness the medic will be summoned.

NOTE: NEVER LEAVE A DETAINEE UNSUPERVISED AFTER BEING SPRAYED AND DECONTAMINATED. BE ALERT FOR ANY OUT OF THE ORDINARY RECOVERY SYMPTOMS AND ENSURE MEDICAL PERSONNEL ARE SUMMONED IF ANY OF THE ABOVE SYMPTOMS OCCUR.

### Learning Step/Activity 4

Method of instruction: CO Instructor to student ratio is 1:60.

Time of instruction: 1 hour(s)

Media: None

References:

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

Security Classification: None

NOTE: Show Slide #15 (Placing Detainee on Stretcher).

### 1 PROCEDURES FOR PLACING A DETAINEE ON A STRETCHER FOR TRANSPORTATION

a Use the following procedures to place an unruly detainee that has been secured in hand and leg restraints onto a stretcher for transportation

NOTE THIS WILL BE ONLY FOR SHORT PERIODS OF TIME

(1) Remove the detainee from the cell and place the detainee on the floor. Allow the medic to check the detainee for injuries. Place the detainee on a stretcher as follows

(a) At the direction of the team leader the team will slowly lower the detainee face down onto the stretcher

(b) Once on the stretcher, the number one person will secure the detainee's head by turning it to the side, to ensure no injuries are sustained to the detainee or any member of the team

(c) The number two person, at the direction of the team leader, will secure the detainee's upper torso to the stretcher with velcro or leather restraining straps, or by using reinforced duct tape

NOTE CAUTION -BE CAREFUL NOT TO TARE THE SKIN OF THE DETAINEE IF POSSIBLE.

(d) The number four person, at the direction of the team leader, will secure the detainee's legs to the stretcher with velcro or leather restraining straps, or by using reinforced duct tape.

(2) When removing the restraining straps or tape and moving the detainee into a predesignated cell, the procedures will be in reverse order as when the detainee was placed onto the stretcher.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

---

### SECTION IV.

#### SUMMARY

---

Method of instruction CO  
Instructor to student ratio is 1:20  
Time of instruction 0 1  
Media Slides

---

#### Check on Learning

Determine if students have learned the material presented by --

- a Soliciting student questions and explanations
  - b Asking questions and getting answers from the students
  - c Providing immediate feedback in context to the material presented and correcting student misunderstandings
- 

NOTE Show Slide #19 (Summary)

#### Review/ Summarize Lesson

During this block of instruction, you have been taught forced cell moves, forced shower procedures, use of (OC) spray procedures, procedures for placing a detainee on a stretcher for transportation, applying leather restraints, placing the straitjacket on a detainee, the proper structure of the team, and each team member's responsibilities during a move

CLOSING STATEMENT Forced Cell Moves are both mentally and physically stressful. Teamwork is a vital aspect of a successful operation. Continuous practice enables a team to work and move safely and efficiently in the most difficult conditions. A Forced Cell Move should not be taken lightly and all members must always use the minimum amount of force necessary to accomplish the mission.

---

#### Transition to Next Lesson

---

### SECTION V.

#### STUDENT EVALUATION

---

#### Testing Require- ments

Describe how the student must demonstrate accomplishment of the TLO  
None  
Note Refer student to the Student Evaluation Plan

---

#### Feedback Requirement

- a Schedule and provide immediate feedback in context to the material presented and correct student misunderstandings
  - b Provide remedial training as needed
-



## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

### RESTRAIN A DETAINEE AND PLACE ON STRETCHER FOR TRANSPORT.

#### INSTRUCTIONS TO STUDENT

Given a situation with a person role-playing as an unruly detainee, restraining devices, and a stretcher. You must do all the necessary steps to correctly secure and place the detainee on a stretcher using minimum amount of force necessary

#### THE STUDENT

1 Upon being briefed by the OIC step forward in front of the camera and state your mission

a. The number one person will say "My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the number one person. My mission is to pin the detainee using the minimum amount of force necessary "

b. The number two person will say "My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the number two person. My mission is to secure the detainee's strong arm and apply the wrist restraints to the detainee using the minimum amount of force necessary. I will carry the leg restraints "

c. The number three person will say "My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the number three person. My mission is to secure the detainee's weak arm and assist the number two person with applying the restraints to the detainee using the minimum amount of force necessary "

d. The number four person will say "My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the number four person. My mission is to secure the detainee's right leg and apply the leg restraints to the detainee's legs using minimum amount of force necessary. I will carry the leg restraints "

e. The number five person will say "My name and rank is \_\_\_\_, I am the number five person. My mission is to secure the detainee's left leg and assist the number four person in applying the leg restraints to the detainee's legs using the minimum amount of force necessary. I am the team leader for this mission, I am also responsible for ensuring that the team uses the minimum amount of force necessary at all times "

Each member of the team will then execute an about face allowing the camera to see the number one on the back of their helmet and flak vest, take one step forward and execute another about face

2. When ordered to move to the front of the detainee's cell the team will

a. The number one person carrying a 3-foot protective shield, will stop in front of the cell, once in front of the cell, will be the "eyes and ears of the team "

b. The number one person will observe the entire cell, check for anything that may cause harm to the team or the detainee. The number one person will inform the rest of the team by announcing the exact location of the detainee, if the detainee is holding anything, if a barricade has been erected, if the floor is wet or if the light is on or off, etc

c. Once the number one person determines that the detainee does not have any weapons and can see the detainee's hands, the number one person will drop the shield and prepare to move into the cell once it begins to open by bending at the knees and at the waist, and holding their hands about chest level in front of them

d. If the number one person cannot see the detainee's hand and or the detainee is known to have a weapon, the number one person will carry a pinning shield into the cell, after (OC) spray has been

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

e. The number two person will stand directly behind the number one person outside of the cell, with both hands on the waist of the number one person, preparing to push the number one person into the cell upon the cell door opening.

f. The number three person will stand directly behind the number two person outside the cell, with both hands on the waist of the number two person preparing to push the number two and number one person into the cell upon the cell door opening

g. The number four person will stand directly behind the number three person outside the cell, with both hands on the number three person's waist preparing to push the number three, two, and number one person into the cell upon the cell door opening

h. The number five person will stand directly behind the number four person outside of the cell, with both hands on the waist of the number four person preparing to push the number four, three, two, and one person into the cell upon the cell door opening

### 3 Team's Action upon entering the Cell.

a. The number one person will pin the detainee, attempting to guide the detainee to the bunk and secure the detainee's head to prevent any injury to the detainee or the team

b. The number two person will secure the detainee's strong arm and apply the wrist restraints to the detainee's wrists behind the detainee's back, using the minimum amount of force necessary

c. Once the number two person has the wrist restraints secured on the detainee the number two person will announce to the team, "HANDS SECURE" and will be positioned where the number two person can carry the detainee at the direction of the team leader. If there is no response the number one person will repeat the information

d. The number three person will secure the detainee's weak arm and assist the number two person in applying the wrist restraints on the detainee's wrists behind the detainee's back, using minimum amount of force necessary

e. Once the hands are secure the number three person will be positioned where the number three person can carry the detainee, at the direction of the team leader

f. The number four person will secure the detainee's right leg and apply the leg restraints on the detainee, using the minimum amount of force necessary

g. Once the leg restraints are secured the number four person will announce to the team, "LEGS SECURE" and be positioned where the number four person will be able to carry the detainee, at the direction of the team leader

h. The number five person will secure the detainee's left leg and assist the number four person in applying the leg restraints to the detainee's legs, using the minimum amount of force necessary

i. Once the legs are secure the number five person will be positioned where the number five person can carry the detainee

j. When the hands and legs are secure, the team leader will survey the area and visually check all members of the team to ensure that they are ready to move the detainee out of the cell

k. The team leader commands

(1) "Prepare to lift, team lift "

(2) "Prepare to turn, team turn "

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

### (3) "Prepare to lower, team lower."

#### 4. Placing the detainee on the stretcher:

a. At the direction of the team leader the team will slowly lower the detainee face down onto the stretcher.

b. Once on the stretcher, the number one person will secure the detainee's head by turning it to the side, to ensure no injuries are sustained to the detainee or any member of the team.

c. The number two person, at the direction of the team leader, will secure the detainee's upper torso to the stretcher with Velcro or leather restraining straps, or by using reinforced duct tape

d. The number four person, at the direction of the team leader, will secure the detainee's legs to the stretcher with Velcro or leather restraining straps, or by using reinforced duct tape

#### 5. Place the detainee back in the cell or predesignated cell.

a. When removing the restraining straps or tape and moving the detainee into a predesignated cell, the procedures will be in reverse order as when the detainee was placed onto the stretcher

b. The detainee will be placed face down on the bunk, with the detainee's head furthest away from the cell door

(1) The restraints will be removed in the following manner (if predetermined prior to the move); these instructions would be given during the briefing

(2) The number two person will remove the wrist restraints and announce to the team, "HANDS UNSECURE". Then secure the restraints on their person readily available for use, as applicable

(3) The number four person will remove the leg restraints and announce to the team, "LEGS UNSECURE". Then secure the restraints on their person readily available for use, as applicable

(4) The number one person will secure the detainee's head to prevent injury to the detainee or any member of the team, using minimum amount of force necessary

(5) The number three person will assist the number two person by holding the detainee's hands behind the detainee's back using PPCT

(6) The number four person will assist the number five person by crossing the detainee's legs and folding them against the detainee's body and applying pressure to keep them secure, using minimum amount of force necessary

#### 6. The team will exit the cell in the following manner

a. Each team member, at the direction of the team leader, will exit the cell opposite from the way that they came in, beginning with the number five person. As they exit each team member will stand in the ready position outside the cell prepared to reenter if necessary

b. When exiting each team member will sound off with "five out", "four out", "three out", "two out", and "one out". The number two and number one person will temporarily continue to restrain the detainee on the bunk

c. The number two person will be positioned on top of the detainee's legs. The number one person will be positioned across the detainee's head while securing the detainee's hands behind his back

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

d. When ready, the number one person (using a prearranged non-verbal signal), will signal the number two person when prepared to exit, the number two person will signal the number one person in return.

e. The number one person will then signal the number three person that they are preparing to exit the cell. The number three person will then grab the number two person, the number two person will grab the number one person and they will exit the cell simultaneously. The OIC will have the cell door closed as the number one person clears the cell doors.

f. Once the entire team is outside of the cell the team leader will command the team to depart the area.

### USE OF PEPPER SPRAY ON AN UNRULY DETAINEE

#### INSTRUCTIONS TO STUDENT

Given a situation with a person role playing as an unruly detainee that is involved in one of the following circumstances:

1. The detainee has a weapon
2. The detainee is barricaded inside the cell
3. The detainee is nude with a slippery substance on his body, the cell walls and floor
4. The detainee cannot be approached without risk of serious physical injury to the detainee or others
5. Approaching the detainee may result in a major disturbance or serious property damage

You are given restraints and (OC) Pepper Spray, you must properly spray and secure in restraints the unruly detainee. Move the detainee out of the cell or area, ensure decontamination is accomplished and place the detainee in a pre-designated cell, using minimum amount of force necessary.

The OIC orders the team to the detainee's cell.

a. Once in front of the cell the number two person (only at the direction and authorization of the Installation commander) will spray the detainee in the following manner:

(1) Hold the (OC) spray dispenser in the strong hand, extended out and away from the body in front of the number one person, aiming at the detainee's eyes, nose and mouth.

(2) Press the actuator with the thumb, using two one-second bursts, spray the detainee's face. (This may need to be repeated as necessary to achieve a positive affect.)

(3) The team will wait a minimum of six seconds (IAW local SOP) after the detainee has been sprayed to observe the detainee for one or more of the following responses:

(a) Eyes closed, difficulty breathing, loss of balance, muscle dysfunction, and falls to ground.

(b) No reaction, detainee just stands in place.

(c) The detainee becomes aggressive, more violent, agitated and wants to engage in physical contact with the team.

## ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

(4) While observing the detainee's reaction this also gives the team time to wait and avoid any secondary vapor effects from the spray prior to entering the cell

(5) The OIC will ensure that the cell door is opened and the team enters and secures the detainee in restraints and moves the detainee out onto the tier for the medic to decontaminate him (Apply a second set of restraints if applicable )

(6) After Decontamination The team moves the detainee back into the cell and removes the restraints if ordered, then exits the cell, as discussed earlier in this lesson

ANNEX D Corrections Train-the-Trainer Training Program

**TEAM BRIEFING STATEMENTS**

**Upon being briefed by the OIC each team member will step forward in front of the camera and state their mission.**

The number one person will say:

**"I am (ie: SGT Jones)\_\_\_\_\_; I am the number one person. My mission is to pin the Detainee using the minimum amount of force necessary."**

The number two person will say:

**" I am (ie: SGT Jones) ; I am the number two person. My mission is to secure the Detainee's Right arm and apply the wrist restraints to the Detainee's wrists using the minimum amount of force necessary. I will carry the wrist restraints."**

The number three person will say:

**" I am (ie: SGT Jones) ; I am the number three person. My mission is to secure the Detainee's Left arm and assist the number two person with applying the wrist restraints to the Detainee using the minimum amount of force necessary."**

The number four person will say:

**" I am (ie: SGT Jones) ; I am the number four person. My mission is to secure the Detainee's Right leg and apply the leg restraints to the Detainee's legs using minimum amount of force necessary. I will carry the leg restraints."**

The number five person will say:

**" I am (ie: SGT Jones) ; I am the number five person. My mission is to secure the Detainee's Left leg and assist the number four person in applying the leg restraints to the Detainee's legs using the minimum amount of force necessary. I am the team leader for this mission, I am also responsible for ensuring that the team uses the minimum amount of force necessary at all times."**

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Standard Operation Procedures**

**LOCALLY EMPLOYED PERSON SECURITY SCREENING PROGRAM**

**21 March 2003**

---

**FOR THE COMMANDER**

Official

JOHN DOE  
COL (P), GS  
CHIEF OF STAFF

JOHN SMITH  
COL, GS  
AcofCS, G2

**DISTRIBUTION.**

A

---

**Summary.** This SOP outlines procedures for screening local national employees to ensure the force protection posture is maintained throughout the Area of Responsibility (AOR)

**Applicability.** This SOP applies to the force protection team assigned to Karshi Khanabad Airbase or attached to support OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM

**Management Control.** Supplementation of the regulation is prohibited without prior approval from 19<sup>th</sup> ABN Corps, OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM, APO AE 09xxx

**Interim Changes.** Interim changes to this circular are not official unless they are approved by the J2X office and authenticated by the J2X, OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM

**Suggested Changes.** The proponent of this circular is the J2X, OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM. Users may send suggestions to improve this regulation on Form 2028 to Commander, 19<sup>th</sup> ABN Corps, OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM, APO AE 09xxx ATTN J2, APO AE 09xxx

4

b<sup>s</sup>

7



65

E-3

b5



65

65

b5

E-8

65

59

65



**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Appendix A – LEP Database Instructions**

1. Access to the Local National Hire Database is restricted to Tactical HUMINT Teams. U.S. Contractors and Operation Enduring Freedom personnel may request information available in the database by altering Annex F to meet their needs. Release of information from the database to the requester must be approved by the local THT, and the Base Ops Commander

2 Input data into the LEP Database using the following instructions *(Note. All entries will be entered in all Capitals.)*

a DATE OF SCREENING – DD/MMM/YY.

b SCREENER – Input first and last name of screener.

c PASSPORT NUMBER

d COUNTRY PASSPORT ISSUED IN – Spell Out

e LAST NAME

f FIRST NAME

g OTHER NAMES – Such as a nickname or alias

h PHOTO –

(1) Photo size should be setup as follows in the Access database: Width-3.12; Height-2.37, Left-2.87, Top-1.54 but, adjust field to fit as necessary.

(2) Photo should be taken with the following picture/camera settings: Resolution-300, 24-bit depth, Width-640, Height-480, File Type JPEG (JPG)

i GENDER – Use pull down menu on field by pressing arrow key next to field block

j HAIR COLOR – Use pull down menu on field by pressing arrow key next to field block

k EYE COLOR – Use pull down menu on field by pressing arrow key next to field block

l HEIGHT – Inches only (i.e. 66)

m WEIGHT – Pounds only (i.e. 120)

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

- n. DATE OF BIRTH – DD/MMM/YY.
- o. PLACE OF BIRTH – City, Country. Spell Out
- p. LANGUAGES – Spell Out
- q. ETHNICITY – Spell out
- r. RELIGION – Use pull down menu on field by pressing arrow key next to field block
- s. EDUCATION – Years completed or highest level attained (8 YEARS, PRIMARY, SECONDRY, TECHNICAL, TRADE, etc )
- t. COLLEGE MAJOR – Institution and dates of study Focus of study.
- u. BASECAMP – Self-explanatory (i e BAF),
- v. EMPLOYER/CONTRACTOR – Use pull down menu on field by pressing arrow key next to field block
- w. EXACT WORK PLACE – Where employee performs job (DFAC, GYM, FUEL POINT, etc )
- x. POSITION – Current Position (CLEANER, INTERPRETOR, GENERAL LABOR, etc ).
- y. DATE OF HIRE – DD/MMM/YY
- z. DATE OF RELEASE OR DATE BARRED FROM BASE – DD/MMM/YY
- aa. CURRECT and PREVIOUS RESIDENCES (from 1990 to present). DATES – Express as MMM/YY - MMM/YY or YYYY - PRESENT
- bb. ADDRESS – Street Address
- cc. CITY – Self-explanatory
- dd. COUNTRY – Complete name of country
- ee. PHONE NUMBER – Employee's phone
- ff. PREVIOUS EMPLOYMENT (from 1980 to present) DATES – Express as MMM/YY - MMM/YY or YYYY - PRESENT

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

- gg. **FIRM** – Name of person or firm for whom employee worked.
- hh. **POSITION AT FIRM** – Title of employees job.
- ii. **ADDRESS AND COUNTRY OF FIRM** – Self-explanatory.
- jj. **PREVIOUS EMPLOYMENT WITH INTERNATIONAL ORGANIZATION** –  
List all international organizations. All Capitals
- kk **MILITARY EXPERIENCE** – (YES/NO)
- ll **UNIT/BRANCH OF SERVICE** – Spell Out.
- mm **RANK** – Spell Out
- nn **SERVICE DATES** – Express as MMM/YY - MMM/YY
- oo **STATIONED WHERE** – Spell Out
- pp **DUTIES / TRAINING** – Spell Out
- qq **VEHICLE MAKE / MODEL** – Spell Out
- rr **VEHICLE YEAR / COLOR** – Spell Out
- ss. **VEHICLE LICENSE PLATE NUMBER** – Spell Out
- tt **MARITAL STATUS** – Use pull down menu on field by pressing arrow key next  
to field block
- uu **SPOUSE** – Name of spouse, Capitalize first letter, Maiden name, Residence,  
Profession, Age
- vv **CHILDREN** – Full name, Residence, Profession / Year in School, Age
- ww. **FATHER** – Full name, Residence, Profession, Age
- xx **MOTHER** – Full name, Maiden name, Residence, Profession, Age
- yy **BROTHER / SISTER** – Full name, Maiden name (if applicable), Residence,  
Profession, Age
- zz **REMARKS** – Used to input additional information obtained during the interview  
that would not fit into current fields on the database

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Appendix B – LEP Screening Sheet  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM  
LOCALLY EMPLOYED PERSON SCREENING QUESTIONNAIRE**

Screener \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Screening \_\_\_\_\_  
*(First and Last Name)*

**BIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION**

Tazkara # \_\_\_\_\_ Registry # \_\_\_\_\_ Book # \_\_\_\_\_ Page # \_\_\_\_\_

Passport # \_\_\_\_\_ Country of Issue \_\_\_\_\_ Exp. Date \_\_\_\_\_

Last Name \_\_\_\_\_ First Name \_\_\_\_\_ AKA \_\_\_\_\_

Gender \_\_\_\_\_ Hair Color \_\_\_\_\_ Eye Color \_\_\_\_\_

Ht./Wt. \_\_\_\_\_ Date of Birth \_\_\_\_\_ Age \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Inches/Pounds) (1-1-Year if unknown)*

Nationality \_\_\_\_\_ Ethnicity \_\_\_\_\_ Religion \_\_\_\_\_

Education \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Years Completed, Degree/Major if applicable)*

Birthplace \_\_\_\_\_ Language(s) \_\_\_\_\_  
*(village/city, province and country)*

**EMPLOYMENT INFORMATION**

Basecamp \_\_\_\_\_ Contractor \_\_\_\_\_ Work Location \_\_\_\_\_ Position \_\_\_\_\_

**Employment History**

Dates	Name of Company And Location	Supervisor	Phone Number	Position

**CURRENT AND PREVIOUS RESIDENCES**

Dates	Address	City/Village	Province

Current Phone Number \_\_\_\_\_

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**MILITARY EXPERIENCE**

Rank/Unit	Service Dates	Stationed	Duties

**VEHICLE(S)**

Make/Model	Year/Color	License Number

**FAMILY DATA**

Marital Status \_\_\_\_\_ No. of Children \_\_\_\_\_

Relationship	Name	Location	Profession	Age
Father				
Brother				

**FOREIGN TRAVEL**

Where	When	Why

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**FOREIGN CONTACTS – GOVERNMENT, BUSINESS**

Name	Type of Contact and How Often	Reason

CI Comments \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**I hereby swear or affirm that everything I have communicated during this interview is true. I also realize that any deception on my part will result in the termination of my job.**

با امضا کردن این فرم من قسم میخورم که معلومات که در این ملاقات من دادم حقیقت دارد و ضمناً من مطلع هستم که اگر کدام چیزی غیر از حقیقت باشد اجازه دخول در بیس را از دست خواهم داد //

X \_\_\_\_\_

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Appendix C – LEP Screening Question Guidance for New Hire  
NEW HIRE**

Below are key words and corresponding questions that should be addressed during screenings. Tailor your use of this question guide to the locality. Keep in mind how the employee's baseline response behavior will be affected by questions asked, motivation to lie, and cultural differences. This list is not intended to be all-inclusive because of the situational diversity of the force protection mission. The key words are listed so a quick glance at them can help confirm all topics have been covered. AF--Afghanistan, UZ--Uzbekistan

**OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**INTRODUCTION** (Suggestion for the Introduction: "The reason why you are here today is because our job is to preserve the peace. Since you are very familiar with the areas in which you live, shop and work, you may be aware of information that will help ensure the safety of everyone. We believe our presence here is helping your country and providing people like yourself with employment. We need you to help us by being truthful in response to the questions you will be asked. You will be asked to sign a statement regarding your honesty. If you have any questions, please ask them at this time.")

"The interpreter for today's interview is an American citizen. All information you give will be guarded and your name will not be released as the source of information."

**JOB RELATED.** How did you first find out about this job? (Initial screening)

Were you forced to pay a fee to get a job here?

Do you know of anyone who is forcing people to pay a fee to get a job here?

AF--For Commanders--Do you receive fees or charge anybody to work here?

**EMPLOYEE FINANCE** How are your current finances, do you owe anyone money?

**CHARACTER DEVELOPMENT** Have you ever been fired from a job? When? Why?

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Have you, your family or friends ever been in trouble with the law or arrested? When? Why?**

**What countries have you traveled to? When? Why?**

**What organizations do you belong to?**

**OPINION:** **How do you feel about the US presence here?**

**How do you feel about the establishment of the base camp?**

**How do you feel about the Afghan government?**

**OTHERS' OPINION:** **How do others feel about the US presence here?**

**How do others feel about the establishment of the base camp?**

**THREATS:** **What threats are there to U.S and Coalition Forces in this or other areas?**

**Have there been any strangers in your town/village?**

**GROUPS:** **Do you know about any groups or individuals that are members of or support any terrorist or extremist groups in your local area?**

**Do you know about any terrorist or extremist activity in your area or elsewhere?**

**COLLECTION** **Has anyone ever approached you seeking information about your job on base, access to the base, base personnel, missions, etc ?**

**Has anyone offered you money or favors in exchange for information on this base camp?**



**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

Have you seen anybody taking pictures or making notes about the base or the activities here?

**BLACKMARKET.** Do you know of anyone selling U.S /Coalition property downtown/in the bazaar such as supplies or equipment?

**UNSAFE AREAS** Would it be safe for Americans to walk around in your city/village at night time?

Where would it be unsafe for them to go? Why?

**FALSE ID** Do you know anyone that can make a false ID/Tazkara Card?

Has anyone asked to copy your ID/Tazkara Card?

Has anyone lost their ID/access badge recently?

**WEAPONS:** Do you know anyone that has large quantities of weapons?

Where are the caches of weapons, explosives and ammunition?

**SECURITY** Do see any place around the base that you feel security is easy to bypass or is not sufficient?

Do you know of anyone stealing from the base/work place?

**ILLEGAL DRUGS** Do you know of any soldiers or civilians using or selling illegal narcotics?

Have you ever used or sold illegal drugs?

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**CATCH ALL:** Is there anything that we haven't discussed that you feel is important we talk about?

**WRAP-UP:** Do you have any questions for us?

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Appendix D – LEP Screening Question Guidance for Rehire  
REHIRE**

Below are key words and corresponding questions that should be addressed during screenings. Tailor your use of this question guide to the locality. Keep in mind how the employee's baseline response behavior will be affected by questions asked, motivation to lie, and cultural differences. This list is not intended to be all-inclusive because of the situational diversity of the force protection mission. The key words are listed so a quick glance at them can help confirm all topics have been covered AF Afghanistan; UZ—Uzbekistan

OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM

**INTRODUCTION:** (Suggestion for the Introduction “The reason why you are here today is because our job is to preserve the peace. Since you are very familiar with the areas in which you live, shop and work, you may be aware of information that will help ensure the safety of everyone. We believe our presence here is helping your community and providing people like yourself with employment. We need you to help us by being truthful in response to the questions that will be asked. You will be asked to sign a statement regarding your honesty. If you have any questions, please ask them at this time.”  
“The interpreter for today's interview is an American citizen. The information you give will be guarded and your name will not be released as the source of information.”

**JOB RELATED.** Do you feel that your employer has fair hiring practices?

Were you forced to pay a fee to get a job here?

Do you know of anyone who is forcing people to pay a fee to get a job here?

AF--For Commanders—Do you receive fees or charge anyone for work here?

**EMPLOYEE FINANCE** How are your current finances, do you owe anyone money?

Is your employer paying you the amount that you agreed to for?

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

When payday arrives are you being paid on time?

**CHARACTER DEVELOPMENT:** Have you, your family or friends ever been in trouble with the law or arrested? When? Why?

What countries have you traveled to? When? Why?

What organizations do you belong to?

**OPINION** How do you feel about the US presence here?

How do you feel about the establishment of the base camp?

How do you feel about the Afghan government?

**OTHERS' OPINION** How do others feel about the US presence here?

How do others feel about the establishment of the base camp?

**THREATS:** What threats are there to U.S and Coalition Forces in this or other areas?

Have there been any strangers in your town/village?

**GROUPS** Do you know about any groups or individuals that are members of or support any terrorist or extremist groups in your local area?

Do you know about any terrorist or extremist activity in your area or elsewhere?

**COLLECTION** Has anyone ever approached you seeking information about your job on base, access to the base, base personnel, missions, etc.

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Has anyone offered you money or favors in exchange for information on this base camp?**

**Have you seen anybody taking pictures or making notes about the base or the activities here?**

**BLACKMARKET** Do you know of anyone selling U.S /Coalition property downtown/in the bazaar such as supplies or equipment?

**UNSAFE AREAS** Would it be safe for Americans to walk around in your city/village at night time?

Where would it be unsafe for them to go? Why?

**FALSE ID** Do you know anyone that can make a false ID/Tazkara Card?

Has anyone asked to copy your ID/Tazkara Card?

Has anyone lost their ID/access badge recently?

**WEAPONS:** Do you know anyone that has large quantities of weapons?

Where are the caches of weapons, explosives and ammunition?

**SECURITY** Do see any place around the base that you feel security is easy to bypass or is not sufficient?

Do you know of anyone stealing from the base/work place?

Have you over heard any of your coworkers speaking about stealing anything from the work place?

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**ILLEGAL DRUGS:** Do you know of any soldiers or civilians using or selling illegal narcotics?

Have you ever used or sold illegal drugs?

**JOB  
SATISFACTION:**

Are you being fairly treated with respect by your coworkers?

Are you being fairly treated with respect by your supervisor?

Are you having any problems with your job?

**CATCH ALL:**

Is there anything that we haven't discussed that you feel is important we talk about?

**WRAP-UP**

Do you have any questions for us?

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Appendix E – LEP Screening Question Guidance for Foreign Nationals  
FOREIGN NATIONALS**

Below are key words and corresponding questions that should be addressed during screenings. Tailor your use of this question guide to the locality. Keep in mind how the employee's baseline response behavior will be affected by questions asked, motivation to lie, and cultural differences. This list is not intended to be all-inclusive because of the situational diversity of the force protection mission. The key words are listed so a quick glance at them can help confirm all topics have been covered. AF-- Afghanistan, UZ--Uzbekistan

OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM

**INTRODUCTION**      *(Suggestion for the Introduction "The reason why you are here today is because our job is to preserve the peace. Since you are very familiar with the areas in which you live, shop and work, you may be aware of information that will help ensure the safety of everyone. We believe our presence here is helping your country and providing people like yourself with employment. We need you to help us by being truthful in response to the questions you will be asked. You will be asked to sign a statement regarding your honesty. If you have any questions, please ask them at this time."*  
*"The interpreter for today's interview is an American citizen. All information you give will be guarded and your name will not be released as the source of information."*

**JOB RELATED**      How did you first find out about this job? (Initial screening)

Do you feel that your employer has fair hiring practices?

Do you know of anyone who is forcing people to pay a fee to get a job here?

**EMPLOYEE FINANCE**      How are your current finances, do you owe anyone money?

**CHARACTER DEVELOPMENT**      Have you ever been fired from a job? When? Why?

Have you, your family or friends ever been in trouble with the law or arrested? When? Why?

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**What countries have you traveled to? When? Why?  
What organizations do you belong to?**

- OPINION:**                   How do you feel about the US presence here?
- How do you feel about the establishment of the base camp?
- How do you feel about your government, and its involvement?
- How do you feel about the US presence in your country?
- OTHERS' OPINION**                   How do others feel about the US presence here?
- How do others feel about the establishment of the base camp?
- THREATS.**                   What threats are there to U S and Coalition Forces in this or other areas?
- COLLECTION:**                   Has anyone ever approached you seeking information about your job on base, access to the base, base personnel, missions, etc ?
- Has anyone offered you money or favors in exchange for information on this base camp?
- Have you seen anybody taking pictures or making notes about the base or the activities here?
- BLACKMARKET**                   Do you know of anyone selling U S /Coalition property downtown/in the bazaar such as supplies or equipment?
- FALSE ID.**                   Has anyone lost their ID/access badge recently?



**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**SECURITY:** Do see anyplace around the base that you feel security is easy to bypass or is not sufficient?  
Do you know of anyone stealing from the base/work place?

Have you over heard any of your coworkers speaking about stealing anything from the work place?

**ILLEGAL DRUGS.** Do you know of any soldiers or civilians using or selling illegal narcotics?

Have you ever used or sold illegal drugs?

**JOB SATISFACTION** Are you being fairly treated with respect by your coworkers?

Are you being fairly treated with respect by your supervisor?

Are you having any problems with your job?

**CATCH ALL** Is there anything that we haven't discussed that you feel is important we talk about?

**WRAP-UP** Do you have any questions for us?

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Appendix F – Assessment Write-up Example**

Screening Cell Office Symbol

Date

**MEMORANDUM FOR S2 BASEOPS, Bagram Airfield, Afghanistan, 09354**

**SUBJECT: Assessment Write-up**

- 1 The screening cell obtained information during an interview conducted on *DATE* which could impact on operations or security of the base
- 2 Describe what relevant information was obtained during the interview. If it is a security issue, and the individual should be restricted from getting a badge or a current badge should be recovered, provide the name and other information as needed to identify the LEP.
- 3 The POC for this action is *NAME OF SCREENER AT 318-231-4312*

OIC NAME  
RANK, BR  
Screening Cell OIC

*Note: Information that may be relevant*

- (1) Threats to the base or coalition forces
- (2) Knowledge of personnel gathering intelligence about the base
- (3) Knowledge of persons making false ID cards
- (4) Knowledge of weaknesses in security at the base.
- (5) Contacts with personnel who are opposed to the Afghan government, US, or other coalition forces
- (6) Comments about the LEP or other personnel having to pay a fee to get a job, pay a fee to maintain employment, contractors taking money out of their pay, or taking tip money

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Appendix G – Memo of Completed Screenings**

Screening Cell Office Symbol

Date

**MEMORANDUM FOR S2 BASEOPS, Bagram Airfield, Afghanistan, 09354**

1. The following personnel have successfully completed screening for the week of 15 September 2003 thru 21 September 2003.

	LAST Name	First Name	Tazkara/PP#
1	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX	CMXXXXXXXX
2	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX	CMXXXXXXXX
3	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX	CMXXXXXXXX
4	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX	CMXXXXXXXX

2. The following personnel are not recommended for employment at Bagram Airfield, Afghanistan. Information obtained during the screening make them a potential risk to security at the base or to coalition forces

	LAST Name	First Name	Tazkara/PP#
1	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX	CMXXXXXXXX
2	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX	CMXXXXXXXX
3	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX	CMXXXXXXXX
4	XXXXXXXXXX	XXXXXXXXXX	CMXXXXXXXX

3. Point of contact is the undersigned at DSN. 318-231-4312

OIC NAME  
RANK, BR  
Screening Cell OIC

*Note This will be completed weekly and turned in to S2, BASEOPS*

**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Appendix H – BRSC Termination Codes**

<b>CODE</b>	<b>JUSTIFICATION</b>
01	JOB COMPLETE
02	REDUCTION IN FORCE
04	DECEASED
09*	FAILURE TO WORK DURING POSSIBLE LABOR DISPUTE
21*	HEALTH REASON
22*	EMPLOYEE DISABILITY
23	FAMILY REASONS
24	DEPENDENT CARE
41	TRANSPORATION PROBLEMS
42'	MOVING AWAY
43	PERSONAL REASONS
44	WORK ELSEWHERE
45	DISSATISFACTION WITH SUPERVISOR
47	RETURN TO SCHOOL
50	DISSATISFACTION WITH COMPANCY POLICY
51	DISSATISFACTION WITH ANOTHER
52	DISSATISFACTION WITH LOCATION
53	DISSATISFACTION WITH PAY
54	DISSATISFACTION WITH PROMOTION OPPORTUNITY
55	DISSATISFACTION WITH TYPE OF WORK
71	FAILURE TO REPORT
72	JOB ABANDONMENT
73	FIGHTING ON THE JOB
74*	INSUBORDINATION
76	WALKED OFF THE JOB
78	SLEEPING ON THE JOB
79*	DISOBEYED SAFTEY REGULATION
80*	DISOBEYED INSTRUCTIONS
82*	ATTENDANCE
85*	REFUSED JOB ASSIGNMENT
88	UNSATISFACTORY JOB PERFORMANCE
89	MISREPRESENTATION
90*	VIOLATION OF ALCOHOL POLICY
91*	VIOLATION OF POLICY
92*	SECURITY RELATED
93*	VIOLATION OF DRUG POLICY
98*	OTHER

\* REQUIRES EXPLANATION

b<sup>s</sup>

65

bs

.

b<sup>s</sup>



65

E-35

65

b5

b5

b5

bs

E-40

65

E-41

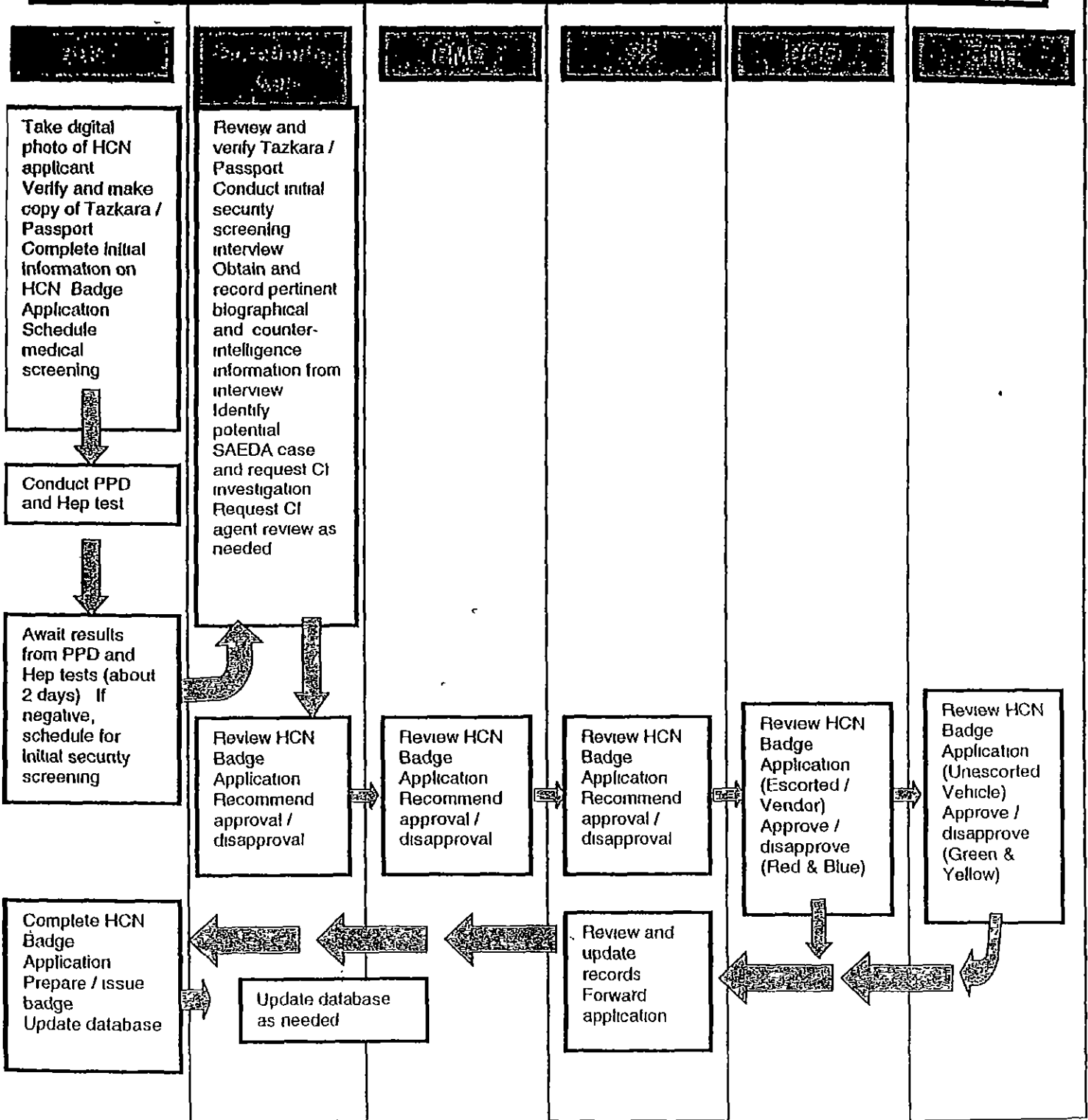
65

E-42



**ANNEX E-Locally Employed Person (LEP) Security Screening Program SOP  
OPERATION ENDURING FREEDOM**

**Host Nation National (HNN) & Third Country National (TCN)  
Badging & Security Screening Application Process**



## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Table of Contents (Emergency Action Plans)**

Appendix 1 (Lone Disorderly).....	F-2
Appendix 2 (Minor Disorder).....	F-3
Appendix 3 (Major Disorder, Mass Riot, Hostage).....	F-4
Appendix 4 (Fire).....	F-5
Appendix 5 (Escape) .. .	F-6
Appendix 6 (Bomb Threat).....	F-8
Appendix 7 (Cell Inspection).....	F-9
Appendix 8 (Cell Extraction) .. .	F-10
Appendix 9 (Headcounts) .. .	F-12
Appendix 10 (Restraints) .. .	F-13

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battallon SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 1 (Lone Disorderly)**

#### **Respond to a Lone Disorderly Detainee.**

1. MP observing unruly behavior of Detainee orders him to stop the behavior.
2. The order to stop is repeated two additional times if needed.
3. If behavior continues, (Sound the Alarm by blowing three short blast of the whistle) order Detainees not involved to move to the left or the right side of the cell away from the disorder and face away from the incident, and notifies SOG and OIC or NCOIC.
4. SOG notifies all MP (via Operations RTO) on shift of a minor emergency and its location
5. One additional MP from unaffected cellblocks will rapidly respond to the incident, while the other MP's secure the cellblocks and maintain control of those Detainees not involved in the situation (MP's in unaffected areas must be alert to any changes in Detainee behavior, note any unusual conduct and report it to the SOG). Upon Arrival to the effected area the senior responding NCO determines level of force required to quell the disturbance and takes appropriate action IAW the theater ROE and all applicable references If necessary coordinates with SOG or NCOIC
6. If necessary, SOG notifies NCOIC QRF to report to OIC or NCOIC.
7. OIC or NCOIC will order Detainee to stop the behavior and lay face down in the center of the cell facing away from the entrance
8. . If Detainee continues to disregard order, OIC or NCOIC will notify the QRF to initiate the Cell Extraction team procedures to prepare to enter the cell IAW Annex c appendix 8 of this SOP.
9. Operations will notify command IAW Wake up criteria during non-duty hours
- 10 O/O after completion of the incident MP observing unruly behavior of Detainees completes Observation Reports

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 2 (Minor Disorder)**

#### **Respond to a Minor Disorder.**

1. MP observing the unruly behavior of Detainee orders them to stop the behavior.
2. The order to stop is repeated two additional times if needed.
3. If behavior continues, (Sound the Alarm by blowing three short blast of the whistle) order Detainees not involved to move to the left or the right side of the cell away from the disorder and face away from the incident, and notifies SOG and OIC/NCOIC.
4. SOG notifies all MP (via Operations RTO) on shift of a minor emergency and its location.
5. One additional MP from unaffected cellblocks will rapidly respond to the incident, while the other MP's secure the cellblocks and maintain control of those Detainees not involved in the situation. (MP's in unaffected areas must be alert to any changes in Detainee behavior, note any unusual conduct and report it to the SOG) Upon Arrival to the effected area the senior responding NCO determines level of force required to quell the disturbance and takes appropriate action IAW the theater ROE and all applicable references. If necessary coordinates with SOG/NCOIC.
6. If necessary, SOG notifies NCOIC QRF to report to OIC/NCOIC
7. OIC/NCOIC will order Detainees to stop the behavior and lay face down in the center of the cell.
8. OIC/NCOIC will order Detainees, one at a time to stand and move to the front of the cell to have restraints applied, QRF/Escorts will apply restraints and escort to ISO
9. If Detainees continue to disregard order, OIC/NCOIC will secure the cell by posting QRF as augmentation while waiting for additional response force IAW Major Disorder.
10. Operations will notify command IAW Wake up criteria during non-duty hours.
11. O/O after completion of the incident MP observing unruly behavior of Detainees completes Observation Reports

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battallion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 3 (Major Disorder, Mass Riot, Hostage)**

#### **Respond to a Major Disorder, Mass Riot, or Hostage.**

1. MP observing the unruly behavior of Detainees orders them to stop the unruly behavior.
2. The order to stop is repeated two additional times if needed.
3. If behavior continues, (Sound the Alarm by blowing three short blast of the whistle) order Detainees not involved to move to the left or the right side of the cell away from the disorder and face away from the incident, and notifies SOG and OIC/NCOIC.
4. SOG notifies all MP (via Operations RTO) on shift of a major emergency and its location.
5. One additional MP from unaffected cellblocks will rapidly respond to the incident, while the other MP's secure the cellblocks and maintain control of those Detainees not involved in the situation (MP's in unaffected areas must be alert to any changes in Detainee behavior, note any unusual conduct and report it to the SOG). Upon Arrival to the effected area the senior responding NCO determines level of force required to quell the disturbance and IAW the theater ROE and all applicable references coordinates with SOG/NCOIC/OIC
6. OIC/NCOIC determines level of force required to quell the disturbance If necessary, coordinates with Confinement OIC and Facility Commander
7. SOG notifies NCOIC QRF to report to OIC/NCOIC.
8. OIC/NCOIC will determine if a larger force is to be alerted
9. Operations will notify command IAW Wake up criteria during non-duty hours
- 10 Operations notify CJTF-7.
11. O/O after the incident the MP observing unruly behavior of Detainees completes Observation Reports
- 12 OIC/NCOIC will isolate the disturbance awaiting support and guidance from the Confinement OIC or Facility Commander.
- 13 Alerted personnel will rendezvous at the Entrance Point near the QRF area and wait for further instructions

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 4 (Fire)**

#### **Respond to a Fire.**

1. MP observing the fire calls "Fire!, Fire!, Fire!", and the location of the fire.
2. Soldiers initiate fire-fighting procedures.
  - a. Use available extinguishers if safe to do so.
  - b. Use available fire buckets and water resources if safe to do so.
3. MPs will relay notifying SOG and OIC/NCOIC.
4. SOG notifies QRF to post in the Recreation Towers in preparation for Facility evacuation
5. SOG notifies Operations of situation and location of fire
6. Operations notify Fire Department and CJTF-7.
7. If a particular cell/compound is in immediate danger from the fire, escorts will evacuate that cell and moves Detainees to the Recreation Area. All Detainees will be restrained prior to movement with hand and leg irons unless risk of loss of life is imminent. If not restrained prior to movement, all Detainees will be restrained while in the recreation yard.
8. Escorts conduct headcount once assembled on recreation yard and report count to SOG
9. After the fire is extinguished, escorts will return Detainees to appropriate cell. Recreation towers will remain manned until headcount is cleared.
  10. SOG/OIC initiates headcount.

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 5 (Escape)**

#### **Respond to an Escape.**

##### **1. Escape Detected By Eyewitness.**

a. MP observing escape attempt alerts all personnel with three blasts on their whistle and yell halt at a minimum of three times. MP will secure escape route and remaining Detainees if needed.

b. MPs hearing the whistle will notify SOG of the direction and location.

c. SOG notifies escorts, QRF, and Roving Patrol of the location of the whistle.

d. SOG notifies Operations of situation and location of escape.

e. Floor Guards lock down all cells and compounds

f. Main Gate/Sally Port secures main entrance to facility and only allows on-duty personnel to enter.

g. Escorts secure any perimeter breaches.

h. Operations notifies R & U, if needed to repair affected areas. R & U will have concertina wire staged for such emergencies

i. SOG and MP conduct headcount and identify all missing Detainees

j. Operations notifies PMO and CJTF-7 of escape and provides Escape Notification Card with Detainee photo, name, and description.

##### **2. Escape Detected By Headcount**

a. MP observing headcount discrepancy immediately recounts the headcount

b. If a discrepancy remains, the MP notifies SOG

c. SOG conducts a headcount and identifies all missing Detainees.

d. If the headcount is still incorrect, the SOG notifies OIC/NCOIC.

e. OIC/NCOIC conducts a headcount and identifies all missing Detainees

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

- f. If a discrepancy remains, the OIC/NCOIC will initiate a lockdown and notifies QRF.
- g. Floor Guards lock down all cells and compounds.
- h. OIC/NCOIC notifies Operations of situation.
- i. Operations notifies QRF/Roving Patrol to search exterior areas of facility.
- j. Operations notifies R & U, if needed to repair affected areas.
- k. Operations notifies PMO and CJTF-7 of escape and provides Escape Notification Card with Detainee photo, name, and description.
- l. Escorts secure any perimeter breaches.



## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 6 (Bomb Threat)**

#### **Respond to a Bomb Threat.**

1. A runner will be used to ensure that all soldiers are aware that they must turn off all radios.
2. Soldiers do not touch a suspected bomb.
3. SOG notifies QRF to post in the Recreation Towers in preparation for Facility evacuation.
4. SOG notifies Operations of situation and location of bomb if known
5. Operations notifies EOD, PMO and CJTF-7 of route to facility and marked route to bomb
6. If a particular cell/compound is in immediate danger from the bomb threat, Escorts evacuate that cell and moves Detainees to predesignated locations in the Recreation Area (Which must be searched for any secondary IED's prior to placing anyone in that area) All Detainees will be restrained prior to movement with hand and leg irons or flexicuffs unless there is imminent risk of loss of life. If not restrained prior to movement, all Detainees will be restrained while in the recreation yard. (Note: when bunkers have been installed inside the perimeter fence, Detainees will be escorted to predesignated bunkers )
7. Escorts conduct headcount once assembled on recreation yard and report count to SOG.
8. After the bomb threat is cleared, escorts will return Detainees to appropriate cell Recreation towers will remain manned until headcount is cleared
9. SOG/OIC will direct all headcounts

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 7 (Cell Inspection)**

#### **Inspect a Cell.**

1. MP and QRF assemble for entry.
2. Over watch posts in sufficient number to cover down on all cells, including cells to be inspected.
3. Interpreter announces cell inspection using PA system.
4. Instruction is given to Detainees to prepare and position themselves for cell inspection, including removal of any Detainee in any cellblock.
5. Security team enters a cellblock, followed by the inspection team. OIC/NCOIC will remain outside of the cells to provide command and control.
6. Security team stands watch over Detainees to ensure safety of the inspection team
7. Inspection team proceeds with search of cell and personal belongings of each Detainee
  - a. Search personal belongings on the opposite side that the Detainees are positioned.
  - b. Take care to not damage or show disrespect to Quran and any personal belongings
  - c. After search of personal belongings, perform pat down search of each Detainee by having them stand facing away from the guard performing the search with his feet spread approx shoulder width apart and arms out to the sides parallel to the ground palms facing upward
  - d. Secure any contraband and its owner. Record contraband items with the SOG or the OIC/NCOIC
8. After completion of the search, the inspection team, followed by the security team will exit the cellblock, ensuring that they are prepared to reenter if needed
9. Steps are repeated as necessary in other cells
10. Cells are re-secured and returned to operational condition at the completion of all inspections

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 8 (Cell Extraction)**

#### **General Population Cell Extraction.**

1. MP and QRF assemble for entry. QRF will wear the following equipment:
  - a. Flak Vest
  - b. Shin/Knee guards
  - c. Elbow pads
  - d. Helmet w/Face Shield
  - e. Shield (Protective or Pinning)
  - f. Gloves (Leather)
  - g. Set of leg and hand restraints, (Flexi-cuffs preferred)
2. Instruction is given to Detainee to prepare and position themselves for cell inspection including removal of any Detainee in any cell/area. Detainees will be positioned so that they are prone facing back of the cell with their hands behind their back
3. Instruction is given to Detainees in the target cell to move away from the Detainee to be removed and stay at the rear of the cell facing away from the entrance
4. Extraction teams move onto the tier and position themselves directly in front of the cell door in preparation to enter the cell
5. Security team enters a cell, followed by the extraction team as applicable
6. Security team stands watch over non-combatant Detainees to ensure safety of the extraction team
7. Extraction team enters the cell and restrains the Detainee with appropriate restraints (using ONLY the minimum amount of force)
8. The extraction team removes the Detainee from the cell, and searches the Detainee
9. The Detainee is medically evaluated/treated as needed by the on-duty medic

**Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

10. The Detainee is placed into a predestinated cell and the cell is re-secured and returned to operational condition.

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 9 (Headcounts)**

#### **Headcounts.**

1. Headcounts are performed to maintain accountability of Detainees. To facilitate this task, headcounts will be made at scheduled and unscheduled times throughout the day.

a. **Scheduled Headcounts.** The following procedures apply for conducting scheduled headcounts:

(1) SOG directs floor guards to conduct headcounts on main floor three times per shift and another at shift change. SOG directs a three-point check for headcount consisting of the face, badge, and wristband

(2) ISO cell guards perform cell check/headcount every 15 minutes

(3) After headcounts are completed, stations will –

(a) Annotate in the log book the number assigned/number present and status of not present by Detainee Number.

(b) Report the location if not present such as (transport of Detainees to appointment etc..) as “Not Present” during headcount until transfer of custody of the Detainee is confirmed by Operations

b. **Unscheduled Headcounts** The following procedures apply for conducting unscheduled headcounts. Unscheduled headcounts will be performed whenever a situation arises requiring a headcount at that moment, including, but not limited to, power outages, major disorder, etc, or by the direction of Operations, Confinement OIC, and Team OIC

c. **Sleeping Headcounts** SOG directs a sleeping headcount of the main floor at 2100Z, once more before midnight and at a minimum of once between midnight and reveiry. Sleeping headcount is completed by a floor guard visually verifying each Detainee by seeing skin and that they are breathing

## **Annex F EXAMPLE MP Battalion SOP Emergency Action Plan**

### **Appendix 10 (Restraints)**

#### **Restraints.**

1. Responsibilities. OIC/NCOIC/SOG ensures all Guard Personnel are familiar with the Facility SOP on Restraints.
2. Procedures.
  - a. OIC/NCOIC/SOG will ensure that all new arrivals are placed in restraints when signed over to the Facility S-3 Ops section.
  - b. New Detainee arrivals will be held in the holding room, where any form of restraints that they arrived with will be removed
  - c. OIC/NCOIC will ensure that new Detainee arrivals have goggles and earmuffs placed on them before original leg and hand restraints are removed and our facility leg and hand irons are placed on the new Detainee.
  - d. Hand irons will be placed on the Detainee with the double lock up and the keyhole facing out. The cuffs will be loose to where a finger can fit snugly between the Detainee's wrist and the hand irons when they are double locked
  - e. Leg restraints will be placed on new Detainees from the rear with the keyhole up and the double lock to the rear. Leg irons will be loose to where a finger can fit snugly between the Detainee's leg and the leg iron
3. When moving a Detainee within the facility, Detainees will be restrained as outlined above except when a Detainee is moved to an IR room, when the double lock on the leg irons will be used for Detainee safety.
4. When a Detainee is escorted to the latrine/shower the hand irons will always be used and upon arrival at the latrine/shower they will be removed (leg irons then hand irons) after arrival to the latrine/shower but will be replaced after use of the latrine/shower prior to returning him to the cell

## References

- DoD Directive 2310.1, Subj: DoD Program for Enemy Prisoners of War (EPOW) and Other Detainees, 18 Aug 94
- AR 190-8, Subj: Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees and Other Detainees, Oct 97
- AR 190-47, Subj: Army Corrections System, 15 Aug 96
- STP 19-95C14-SM-TG, Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide MOS 95C Internment/Resettlement Specialist, 26 Mar 99
- FM 3-19.40, Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations, 1 Aug 01
- Standards for Administration of Correctional Agencies, 2<sup>nd</sup> ed, American Correctional Association, Apr 93
- Standards for Adult Correctional Institutions, 4<sup>th</sup> ed, American Correctional Association, Jan 03
- Standards for Small Jail Facilities, American Correctional Association, Jan 89
- Standards for Juvenile Detention Facilities, American Correctional Association
- Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in the Armed Forces in the Field, 12 Aug 49
- Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War, 12 Aug 49
- Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War, 12 Aug 49
- *Prisons and Detention Centers in Iraq: An Assessment and Recommendations for Prisons in a Free Society*, Coalition Provisional Authority Ministry of Justice, 15 Jun 03
- *Standard Minimum Rules for the Treatment of Prisoners*, Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights, 13 May 77
- *Basic Principles for the Treatment of Prisoners*, Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights, 14 Dec 90
- *Body of Principles for the Protection of All Persons under Any Form of Detention or Imprisonment*, Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights, 9 Dec 88
- *United Nations Rules for the Protection of Juveniles Deprived of their Liberty*, Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights, 14 Dec 90
- *Making Standards Work: an International Handbook on Good Prison Practices*, Penal Reform International, 2001
- *Practical Guidelines for the Establishment of Correctional Services within United Nations Peace Operations*, International Corrections and Prisons Association for the Advancement of Professional Corrections (ICPA), 19 Apr 02 (Draft)
- *The treatment of Foreign Prisoners*, Gary Hill (American Correctional Association International Committee), Sep 02
- *The Religious Rights, Duties and Customs of Muslim Inmates in Prison A Guide for Criminal Justice Personnel*, Gary Hill (United Nations Alliance on Crime Prevention and Criminal Justice in consultation with The Arab Society Studies and Training Center, Riyadh, Saudi Arabia)
- *A Human Rights Approach to Prison Management Handbook for Prison Staff*, Andrew Coyle (International Center for Prison Studies)

~~SECRET NOFORN X1~~

**Assessment of DoD Counterterrorism  
Interrogation and Detention Operations in  
Iraq (U)**

~~SECRET NOFORN X1~~

Annex 20  
Enclosure 4



1 ~~(S/NF)~~ **Introduction** – From 31 August to 9 September 2003, MG Geoffrey Miller, US Army, Commander, Joint Task Force Guantanamo (JTF-GTMO) led a team of personnel experienced in strategic interrogation (Annex A) to HQ, CJTF-7, Baghdad, to conduct assistance visits to CJTF-7, TF-20, and the Iraqi Survey Group (ISG) to discuss current theater ability to rapidly exploit internees for actionable intelligence. The team focused on three areas: intelligence integration, synchronization, and fusion; interrogation operations, and detention operations. The team used JTF-GTMO operational procedures and interrogation authorities as baselines.

2 ~~(S/NF)~~ **Executive Summary** – The dynamic operational environment in Iraq requires an equally dynamic intelligence apparatus. To improve velocity and operational effectiveness of counterterrorism interrogation, attention in three major mission areas is needed. The team observed that the Task Force did not have authorities and procedures in place to affect a unified strategy to detain, interrogate, and report information from detainees/internees in Iraq. Additionally, the corps commander's information needs required an in-theater analysis capability integrated throughout the interrogator operations structure to allow for better and faster reach-back to other worldwide intelligence databases. Last, the detention operations function must act as an enabler for interrogation.

~~(S/NF)~~ The command has initiated a system to drive the rapid exploitation of internees to answer CJTF-7 theater, and national level counter terrorism requirements. This is the first stage toward the rapid exploitation of detainees. Receipt of additional resources currently in staffing will produce a dramatic improvement in the speed of delivering actionable intelligence and leveraging the effectiveness of the interrogation efforts. Our assessment is, given the implementation of the attached recommendations, a significant improvement in actionable intelligence will be realized within thirty days.

3 ~~(S/NF)~~ **Functions: Integration – Synchronization** – [REDACTED]

a (U) **Integration** – Defined as to organize HUMINT collection and analytical resources under a coordinating authority that can rapidly task, direct, conduct analysis, and action intelligence gained from interrogations.

~~(S/NF)~~ **Observation** - HUMINT collection and analysis is being performed by several autonomous entities in the theater, resulting in duplication of effort and imperfect information flow.

~~(S/NF)~~ **Recommendation** – Establish a robust coordinating authority to direct and coordinate all HUMINT collection and analysis in Iraq. Supplement this authority with a collection management operation focused to support the needs of the Global War on Terrorism (GWOT), the Theater Commander and CJTF-7 Commanders' intelligence and targeting objectives. Additional resources are required for the CJTF-7 CJ2X to sustain this effort.

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation - HUMINT collection priorities were not clearly defined leading to ambiguous collection efforts. There are a large number of collection priorities that require a clear prioritization as to which requirements support the commander's critical information requirements.

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation/Action In-progress - CJTF-7 CJ2X has established a clear method of prioritization for collection requirements. Requirements are now being combined into areas of focus to drive interrogation tasking and operations.

b. (U) **Synchronization** - Defined as to establish a defined process and procedure to integrate the prioritization and tasking of all interrogation assets. [REDACTED]

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation - No written guidance specifically addressing interrogation policies and authorities was disseminated to units.

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation/Action In-progress - CJTF-7 is drafting approval documents containing the authorities, policies and practices to outline requirements to process, interrogate and exploit security internees.

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation - DoD assets and other autonomous entities are active in the theater collecting information and conducting analysis under independent chains of command. Information sharing is not fully integrated. The various organizations are generally unaware of each other's capabilities, interests, and mutual information needs. They also lack protocols for coordinating access to internees, and for sharing the information collected and analysis performed.

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation - CJTF-7 is establishing a HUMINT Collection and Targeting meeting that provides a weekly forum for system information sharing, internee access, and tasking protocols to fully leverage the participation of all entities active in the theater (to include Special Operations Forces (SOF), the Criminal Investigative Task Force, [REDACTED] and the Iraqi Survey Group) to support the CJTF-7 commander's intelligence and targeting objectives.

c. (U) **Fusion** - Fusion is defined as assuring that all required resources and actions to support internee operations are properly integrated, supervised, executed and assessed to support the commander's intent. [REDACTED]

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation - The resiliency and global reach of GWOT targets requires much closer cooperation between the strategic analytical community and the collectors and analysts in the field. Military intelligence analysts at the CJTF-7 ACE, CJ2X, and in the field are closely focused on the tactical mission and are generally unaware of the assets and capabilities of the broader national intelligence community and the existence of dedicated CT analytical centers, such as DIA's Joint Intelligence Task Force Combating Terrorism (JITF-CT) and the CIA's Counterterrorism Center (CTC).

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation - Expedite the exchange of Counterterrorism information and analysis between collectors in the field and the national intelligence community by integrating the Interrogator Tiger Teams with analysts at the CJTF-7 CJ2X and national intelligence community through JITF-CT. Energize the analysis-collection feedback loop of the intelligence cycle with robust, timely, GWOT oriented collection management planning and execution.

4. (U) **Interrogation** - Setting the conditions to exploit internees to respond to questions that answer theater commanders' critical questions. [REDACTED]

~~(S/NF)~~ Summary - Tactical interrogation operations differ greatly from strategic interrogation operations. The interrogators within CJTF-7 have been accomplishing the tactical mission, at a high rate of professionalism and effectiveness since the beginning of the war. As the CJTF transitions to a new phase of operations, the category of internees to interrogate and analytical backstopping required necessitates transition to strategic interrogation operations. The interrogation mission is hindered by an absence of analytical resources and reach-back data systems. The detention operation does not yet set conditions for successful interrogations. Interrogations are conducted without a clear strategy for implementing a long-term approach strategy and clearly defined interrogation policies and authorities. To achieve rapid exploitation of internees it is necessary to integrate detention operations, interrogation operations and collection management under one command authority.

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation - There is minimal analytical support to the interrogation mission. Interrogators continue to use tactical interrogation methods in a transitioning strategic environment.

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation - Establish and train Interrogation Tiger Teams comprised of one interrogator and one analyst, both with SCI access. CJTF-7 has established an initial cadre of integrated Interrogation Tiger Teams from current assets and scheduled deploying interrogators and analysts to attend strategic interrogator and analyst training at Tiger Team University, USAICS, and Fort Huachuca in October 03.

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation - CJTF-7's two interrogation facilities operate with their own independent collection focus without an integrated coordinating element. Coordination between facilities is conducted informally and inconsistently.

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation - Consolidate the interrogation mission at one Joint Interrogation Debriefing Center (JIDC)/strategic interrogation facility under CJTF-7 command. This action has been initiated.

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation - Detention operations do not enable the interrogation mission.

~~(S/AF)~~ Recommendation - Dedicate and train a detention guard force subordinate to the JIDC Commander that sets the conditions for the successful interrogation and exploitation of internees/detainees. This action is now in progress.

~~(S/AF)~~ Observation - The lack of awareness of available analytical databases by interrogators and analysts limits the ability to conduct effective integrated interrogation operations.

~~(S/AF)~~ Recommendation - Train analysts to incorporate databases including DIMS, CT-link, web-safe, CIA Source, Harmony, and Coliseum in interrogation planning and execution. This training is provided at Tiger Team University and can be leveraged with a sustained theater training program.

~~(S/AF)~~ Observation - Analysts at JIDC (Joint Interrogation Debriefing Center) interrogation operations section have limited access to automated intelligence systems that would allow the analyst to reach back to national level resources. The primary collection facilities (Abu Ghariab) requires at a minimum 2 JWICS terminal to meet full operational capability.

~~(S/AF)~~ Recommendation - Provide the necessary systems and bandwidth to enable direct analytical support to interrogation operations. See paragraph 6 (Information Technology).

~~(S/AF)~~ Observation - There is no Behavioral Science Consultation Team (BSCT) to support interrogation operations. These teams comprised of operational behavioral psychologists and psychiatrists are essential in developing integrated interrogation strategies and assessing interrogation intelligence production.

~~(S/AF)~~ Recommendation - Provide 1 BSCT to support interrogation operations.

~~(S/AF)~~ Observation - The system procedures to rapidly transfer/return fully exploited internee intelligence sources back to the internee general population or recommend their release require assessment and streamlining.

~~(S/AF)~~ Recommendation - Assess and refine transfer criteria to support continued rapid exploitation of high value internees and the release of fully exploited or low value internees in a more timely manner.

~~(S/AF)~~ Observation - Task Force 20 (TF-20) lacks adequate number of trained interrogator-analyst Tiger Teams for mission requirements.

~~(S/AF)~~ Recommendation - That CJTF-7 provide TF-20 Tiger Team support.

~~(S/AF)~~ Observation - The application of emerging strategic interrogation strategies and techniques contain new approaches and operational art. Legal review and

recommendations of internee interrogation operations by a dedicated command staff judge advocate is required to maximize interrogation effectiveness

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation – Dedicate a judge advocate(s) to advise commanders and interrogation leadership on requirements to operate within approved interrogation authorities responsible for the detention and intelligence missions. This action is in progress

## 5 (U) Detention Operations ~~XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX~~

(U) Functions – Provide a safe, secure and humane environment that supports the expeditious collection of intelligence

~~(S/NF)~~ Summary - The importance of the rapid collection and dissemination of intelligence is vital for success and must be emphasized in the conduct of detention operations. It is essential that the guard force be actively engaged in setting the conditions for successful exploitation of the internees. Joint strategic interrogation operations are hampered by lack of active control of the internees within the detention environment. The pending establishment of the theater joint interrogation detention center at Abu Gharib will consolidate both detention and strategic interrogation operations and result in synergy between MP and MI resources and an integrated, synchronized and focused strategic interrogation effort.

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation – Minimal operational procedures and guidance were available for internee in-processing, collection and integration of intelligence, security procedures, internee discipline standards and procedures for reacting to emergencies situations in the detention facilities

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation – Develop a comprehensive set of detention physical security SOPs. Conduct training for detention center leadership and staff on the implementation of these procedures. JTF-GTMO SOPs for physical security and detention operations were provided to CJTF-7 staff

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation – Some of the detention facility guard force interviewed were unable to apply their standing orders and Rules of Engagement procedures to hypothetical situations – e.g. escaping internees

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendations – Scenario-based training for the current operational and future theater operational environment is recommended to ensure standing procedures (e.g. Rules of Engagement) are known and their application thoroughly understood by the detention leadership and staff

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation – Detention operations must be structured to ensure detention environment focuses the internee's confidence and attention on their interrogators. The MP detention staff should be an integrated element supporting the interrogation functions and received orientation training to support interrogation operations

~~[REDACTED]~~ Recommendation – Assign, train, and sustain interrogator and detention staff team building focused on improving the collection of intelligence MP detention staff training programs utilized by JTF-GTMO were provided to CJTF-7 for consideration and baseline implementation

Observation – Disciplinary procedures for internees are arbitrary or not clearly defined

~~[REDACTED]~~ Recommendation/Action In-progress – The unit is updating its operating procedures for implementing disciplinary measures related to detainee operations

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation – Males, females and juveniles are detained in the same camp in close proximity to each other Full utilization of a classification system that is sensitive to group dynamics is not currently in place

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation/Action In-progress – Procedures to segregate males, females and juvenile internees in the detention facility to prevent unauthorized contact are being refined

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation- Some detainees who had infectious medical conditions were detained in the general internee population This mingling of internees could result in possible contamination of other detainees and soldier detention staff Detainees suffering from apparent mental illness were segregated in a holding pen that was normally used for disciplinary purposes

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation - Special needs sections of the detention facility should be developed for internees with contagious medical conditions and internees who exhibit mental illness


#### **6 (U) Information Technology (IT)** ~~[REDACTED]~~

(U) Functions – IT focus is streamlined information gathering resulting in rapid intelligence analysis and exploitation

~~(S/NF)~~ Observation- Current information management systems do not support rapid, integrated exploitation of intelligence community databases

~~(S/NF)~~ Recommendation - Create a robust automated knowledge center, incorporating information and documents currently located in diverse data stores to allow for sharing of all information on internees (See Annex B for specific IT comments )

7 (U) **Conclusion** - Actions to improve the Task Force's ability to conduct counterterrorist strategic interrogations were being developed at the time of this report's drafting. Provision of resources is crucial to success. Expedient fill of two leadership billets - one as Chief of the HUMINT Operations Center (HOC) and the other as Chief, HUMINT Analysis Center (HAC), CJTF-7, is essential to enable successful joint, integrated interrogation operations. Concurrently, assignment of expert analysts is required to form Tiger Teams and populate the HAC.


  
Major General, U S Army

Annex A Assessment Team Members


Team Leader

MG Geoffrey Miller, USA      JTF-GTMO      Commander


Synchronization Team

	DIA	Former JTF-GTMO Joint Interrogation Group Dir
	DIA/DHS	Former JTF-GTMO Interrogation Control Ele Chief
	JTF-CT	Former JTF-GTMO CTC Chief
	JATF SOUTH	Former JTF-GTMO Analysis Chief
	JTF-GTMO	Former JTF-GTMO Staff Judge Advocate
	CITF	Information Technology Chief
		Former JTF-GTMO Crim Invest Task Force Chief

Interrogation Operations Team

	DIA/DHS	Former JTF-GTMO Interrogation Control Ele Chief
	476 <sup>th</sup> MI BDE	Former GTMO Saudi Team Chief
	JTF-GTMO	Central Asia Team Chief
	JTF-GTMO	Central Asia Team Analyst
	JTF-GTMO	Saudi Team Noncommissioned Officer-in-Charge
	JTF-GTMO	Saudi Team Analyst
	JTF-GTMO	Special Projects Interrogator
JTF-GTMO	Special Projects Analyst	

Detention Operations Team

	JTF-GTMO	Camp Delta Superintendent
	JTF-GTMO	Camp Delta Company Commander



Annex B Information Technology Solutions

The goal of a theater-wide intelligence information technology initiative is *fused intelligence* which will allow for a faster interrogation cycle, faster exchange of information, minimize manual processes, eliminate redundancy, manpower savings, rapid data mining, focused interrogation plan, and an automated collection plan

ISSUES

- There isn't sufficient bandwidth or connectivity available to support current interrogation operations and consolidated internee database for near-real time information sharing
  - o Some locations have SIPR connectivity but it is slow and unreliable. Some locations do not have enough SIPR drops to support the mission and personnel
- There are diverse data stores to include MS Excel spreadsheets, MS Access databases, MS Word documents that are not shared by the various internee camps
  - o There isn't a theater level network that reaches out to all the units for the purpose of sharing folders, files, and documents, with the exception of email. Email is not an effective way of sharing information for the purpose of conducting data mining and intelligence exploitation
- There are no standardized information gathering and reporting methods that will allow for tracking of information collected from internees from the time of capture and through the intelligence requirements management and interrogation process
  - o There isn't a comprehensive collection management and dissemination system in place
- There isn't an effective method to link internees to other internees or associates, organizations, locations, and facilities or to associate documents to internees to allow analysts to quickly search all information pertaining to an internee

OPTIONS

- Implement a theater level network that supports folder file and document sharing
  - o Ensure bandwidth is adequate to support the network traffic and all the users
  - o Ensure that all units have access to the network with adequate number of workstations to support the mission, especially for those units that capture and/or initially process internees and those units that conduct analysis and interrogations
- Develop a database that incorporates the various data stores, from the time of capture and through the intelligence analysis and interrogation process
  - o The web-based Joint Detainee Information Management System (JDIMS) developed for and currently utilized by JTF Guantanamo, with some tailoring and modifications, will be adequate to meet this need of a consolidated internee database. The database also contains a collection management and dissemination module that manages all requirements and reporting on internees. It also contains an online reports writing feature which allows the analysts and interrogators to create reports and immediately share information.

The Detention Information Management System (DIMS) also developed for and utilized by JTF Guantanamo to capture initial detainee information as well as operational data gathered by the military police, will allow for input of internee information from the time of capture and throughout their stay at the detention facilities when not being interrogated.
  - o A Joint Detainee Information Management System-Iraq will share data with JTF Guantanamo detainee database and make it available to the intelligence community. By sharing detainee information, the intelligence community will benefit from a web-based single source of detainee information readily available to them via the SIPR network.
  - o A similar system should be implemented in Afghanistan for the detainee operations conducted there.

The goal of a worldwide-integrated detainee database is to address the needs of detainee interrogation operations and to share information regardless of location. It is the tool to bridge intelligence and technology in order to achieve information dominance and efficient operational control over the detainee/internee population and allow for near-real time data mining, information visualization, and intelligence exploitation to combat the Global War on Terrorism.

~~SECRET NOFORN X1~~

~~SECRET NOFORN X1~~

**Army Regulation 190-8  
OPNAVINST 3461.6  
AFJI 31-304  
MCO 3461.1**

**Military Police**

**Enemy  
Prisoners of  
War, Retained  
Personnel,  
Civilian  
Internees and  
Other Detainees**

**Headquarters  
Departments of the Army,  
the Navy, the Air Force,  
and the Marine Corps  
Washington, DC  
1 October 1997**

**UNCLASSIFIED**

# ***SUMMARY of CHANGE***

AR 190-8/OPNAVINST 3461 6/AFJI 31-304/MCO 3461 1  
Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees and Other  
Detainees

This revision--

- o Establishes a multi-service regulation for all services (para 1-4a)
- o Ensures compliance with DOD Directive 2310.1 dated August 1994 (para 1-4g)
- o Establishes HQDA, Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations as the primary Army Staff responsibility for the Enemy Prisoner of War, Civilian Internee and Retained Persons Program (para 1-4c)
- o Establishes a DD FORM 2745, Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag (para 2-1b)
- o Highlights Combatant Commanders, Task Force Commanders and Joint Task Force Commanders responsibilities (para 1-4g)
- o Establishes procedures for conducting tribunals (para 1-6)
- o Establishes Public Affairs policy (para 1-9)
- o Establishes policy for EPW held aboard ship (para 2-1b)
- o Updates OCONUS evacuation policy (para 2-3)
- o Establishes the use of Health and Comfort Packs as a temporary substitution for Advance of Pay for short term operations (para 3-4h)
- o Updates procedures for contracting EPW (para 4-22)
- o Combines AR 190-8 and AR 190-57 (para 6-1)

Headquarters  
Departments of the Army,  
the Navy, the Air Force,  
and the Marine Corps  
Washington, DC  
1 October 1997

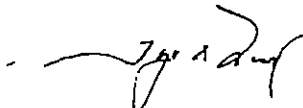
\*Army Regulation 190-8  
\*OPNAVINST 3461.6  
\*AFJI 31-304  
\*MCO 3461.1

Effective 1 November 1997

## Military Police

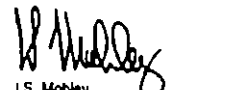
### Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees and Other Detainees

By Order of the Secretary of  
the Navy



TOGO D. WEST, JR.  
Secretary of the Army

I. L. JOHNSON  
Admiral, United States Navy  
Chief of Naval Operations  
Acting




J.S. Mobley  
Rear Admiral, United States Navy  
Director, Navy Staff

By Order of the Secretary of  
the Air Force

RICHARD A. COLEMAN  
Colonel USAF  
Chief of Security Police

By Order of the Secretary of  
the Navy



LT GENERAL J. L. JONES USMC  
Marine Corps Deputy Chief of Staff  
for Plans, Policies and Operations

**History.** This printing publishes a revision of this publication. Because the publication has been extensively revised the changed portions have not been highlighted.

**Summary.** This regulation implements Department Of Defense Directive 2310.1 and establishes policies and planning guidance for the treatment, care, accountability, legal status, and administrative procedures for Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, Retained Persons, and Other Detainees. This regulation is a consolidation of Army Regulation 190-8 and Army Regulation 190-57 and incorporates SECNAV Instruction 3461.3 and Air Force Joint Instruction 31-304. Policy and procedures established herein apply to the services and their capabilities to the extent that they are resourced and organized for enemy prisoner of war operations.

**Applicability.** This is a multi-service regulation. It applies to the Army, Navy, Air Force and Marine Corps and to their Reserve components when lawfully ordered to active duty under the provisions of Title 10 United States Code.

**Proponent and exception authority.** The proponent of this regulation is the Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations and Plans. The proponent has the authority to approve

exceptions to this regulation that are consistent with controlling law and regulation. Proponents may delegate the approval authority, in writing, to a division chief within the proponent agency in the grade of colonel or the civilian equivalent.

**Army management control process.** The Regulation contains management control provisions in accordance with AR 11-2, but does not contain checklists for conducting management control. Reviews are used to accomplish assessment of management controls.

**Supplementation.** Army supplementation of this regulation and establishment of command or local forms is prohibited without prior approval from HQDA (DAMO-ODL), WASH DC 20310. Navy, Marine Corps and Air Force supplementation of this regulation is authorized, but is not required. If supplements are issued, major or second echelon commands will furnish one copy of each supplement to their headquarters as follows: Navy, to the Chief of Naval Operations (N511), 2000 Navy Pentagon, Washington DC 20350-2000; Marine Corps, to the Commandant of the Marine Corps, HQ USMC (POS-10) 2 Navy Annex, Washington DC, 20380-1775 11; and Air Force, to HQ USAF/SPO,

1340 Air Force Pentagon, Washington, DC 20330-1340.

**Suggested Improvements.** Users are invited to send comments and suggested improvements through channels as follows: HQDA (DAMO-ODL), WASH DC 20310-0440.

**Distribution.** Army Distribution of this regulation is made in accordance with initial distribution number (IDN) 092120, intended for command levels A, B, C, D, and E for Active Army, Army National Guard, U S Army Reserve.

Navy: SNDL A (Navy Department), B5 (Coast Guard), (COMDTCOGARD, only) 21A (Fleet Commanders in Chief), 22A (Fleet Commanders), 23 (Force Commanders), 24 (Type Commanders), 26A (Amphibious Groups), 28 (Squadron, Division, and Group Commanders—Ships), 41A (COMSC), SECNAV/OPNAV Directives Control Office, Washington Navy Yard Bldg 200, 901 M Street SE, Washington DC 20374-5074.

Air Force: F  
Marine Corps: PCN 10203324000

\*This regulation supersedes AR 190-8, 1 June 1982, and rescinds AR 190-57, 4 March 1987. This regulation also rescinds DA Form 5451-R, August 1985, DA Form 5452-R, August 1985, and DA Form 5976, January 1991.

## Contents (Listed by paragraph and page number)

### Chapter 1

#### Introduction, page 1

Purpose • 1-1, page 1

References • 1-2, page 1

Explanation of abbreviations and terms • 1-3, page 1

Responsibilities • 1-4, page 1

General protection policy • 1-5, page 2

Tribunals • 1-6, page 2

The National Prisoner of War Information Center (NPWIC) • 1-7, page 3

The Branch PWIC • 1-8, page 3

Public Affairs • 1-9, page 4

### Chapter 2

#### Beginning of Captivity EPW/RP, page 4

Initial actions upon capture • 2-1, page 4

Evacuation and care of EPW and RP • 2-2, page 5

Evacuation Policy • 2-3, page 5

### Chapter 3

#### Administration and Operation of EPW Internment Facilities, page 5

Establishment • 3-1, page 5

EPW internment facilities • 3-2, page 5

EPW Facility Management • 3-3, page 5

Operation of prisoner of war internment facilities • 3-4, page 6

Procedures for prisoner of war correspondence • 3-5, page 7

Discipline and security • 3-6, page 9

Punitive Jurisdiction • 3-7, page 10

Judicial proceedings • 3-8, page 10

Loss or damage to property • 3-9, page 11

Death and burial • 3-10, page 11

Transfer of prisoners of war • 3-11, page 12

Repatriation of sick and wounded EPW/RP • 3-12, page 13

Repatriation of other EPW/RP • 3-13, page 14

Repatriation transfer procedures • 3-14, page 14

Retained personnel • 3-15, page 14

Complaints and requests to camp commanders • 3-16, page 15

EPW/RP safety program • 3-17, page 15

### Chapter 4

#### Employment and Compensation for EPWs, page 15

##### Section I

##### General Policy and Guidelines, page 15

General principles • 4-1, page 15

Restricted employment • 4-2, page 15

Liability to perform labor • 4-3, page 15

Authorized work • 4-4, page 16

Unauthorized work • 4-5, page 16

Decisions on work conditions and safeguards • 4-6, page 16

Referrals to HQDA, ODCSOPS • 4-7, page 16

Length of workday • 4-8, page 16

Rest periods • 4-9, page 17

Responsibility for work supervision • 4-10, page 17

Work detail leaders and interpreters • 4-11, page 17

Task system • 4-12, page 17

Employing EPW • 4-13, page 17

Paid work • 4-14, page 17

Restriction on paid work • 4-15, page 17

Rates for paid work • 4-16, page 17

Days of paid work per month • 4-17, page 18

Unpaid work • 4-18, page 18

Sale of articles and repair services • 4-19, page 18

Disability compensation • 4-20, page 18

Operation of government vehicles • 4-21, page 18

##### Section II

Contract Employment, page 18

Rules and procedures • 4-22, page 18

### Chapter 5

#### Beginning of Internment (CI), page 18

General protection policy—civilian internee • 5-1, page 18

Civilian Internee Safety Program • 5-2, page 19

Republic of Korea/United States Agreement on processing civilian internees in Korea • 5-3, page 19

### Chapter 6

#### Administration and Operation of CI Internment Facilities, page 19

Internment Facility • 6-1, page 19

Administrative processing • 6-2, page 20

Personal effects • 6-3, page 20

Internee Committee • 6-4, page 21

Supplies • 6-5, page 21

Medical Care and Sanitation • 6-6, page 22

Social, Intellectual, and Religious activities • 6-7, page 22

Procedures for communications • 6-8, page 23

Complaints and requests to camp commanders and protecting power • 6-9, page 24

Discipline and security • 6-10, page 24

Provisions common to disciplinary and judicial punishments • 6-11, page 25

Disciplinary proceedings and punishments • 6-12, page 25

Judicial proceedings • 6-13, page 26

Death and burial • 6-14, page 27

Transfers • 6-15, page 27

Release • 6-16, page 28

### Chapter 7

#### Employment and Compensation—Civilian Internees, page 28

General • 7-1, page 28

Ability to perform labor • 7-2, page 28

Authorized work • 7-3, page 28

Unauthorized work • 7-4, page 28

Working conditions • 7-5, page 28

Length of workday • 7-6, page 28

Day of rest • 7-7, page 28

Paid work • 7-8, page 28

Unpaid work • 7-9, page 28

Compensation for paid work • 7-10, page 29

Disability compensation • 7-11, page 29

### Appendixes

A References, page 30

B Internment Serial Number, page 31

### Glossary

### Index

## Chapter 1 Introduction

### 1-1 Purpose

a This regulation provides policy, procedures, and responsibilities for the administration, treatment, employment, and compensation of enemy prisoners of war (EPW), retained personnel (RP), civilian internees (CI) and other detainees (OD) in the custody of U S Armed Forces This regulation also establishes procedures for transfer of custody from the United States to another detaining power

b This regulation implements international law, both customary and codified, relating to EPW, RP, CI, and ODs which includes those persons held during military operations other than war The principal treaties relevant to this regulation are

(1) The 1949 Geneva Convention Relative to the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field (GWS)

(2) The 1949 Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea (GWS SEA)

(3) The 1949 Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War (GPW)

(4) The 1949 Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War (GC), and in the event of conflicts or discrepancies between this regulation and the Geneva Conventions, the provisions of the Geneva Conventions take precedence

### 1-2. References

Required and related publications and prescribed and referenced forms are listed in appendix A

### 1-3 Explanation of abbreviations and terms

Abbreviations and special terms used in this regulation are explained in the glossary

### 1-4. Responsibilities

a *The Secretaries of the Military Departments* The Secretaries will—

(1) Develop internal policies and procedures consistent with this regulation in support of the Department of Defense (DOD), EPW/CI and other detainee programs

(2) Ensure that appropriate training, as required, pursuant to DOD Directive 5100 77 is provided so that the principles of the Geneva Conventions, and the rights and obligations thereunder, are known by members of their service

(3) Ensure that suspected or alleged violations of the international law of war are promptly reported and investigated per DOD Directive 5100 77

(4) Conduct a periodic review of the EPW, CI and RP Program and training to ensure compliance with the law of war

b *The Secretary of the Army (SA)* The Secretary of the Army is the DOD Executive Agent (EA) for administering the DOD EPW, CI and RP Program The SA, in coordination with the Assistant Secretary of Defense, International Security Affairs (ASD-ISA), will plan and develop the policy and coordinate the operation of the programs

c *The Army Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations and Plans (DCSOPS)* DCSOPS has primary Headquarters, Department of the Army (HQDA) staff responsibility for the EPW, CI and RP programs The DCSOPS will—

(1) Develop and disseminate policy guidance for the treatment, care, accountability, legal status, and processing of EPW, CI, RP, and ODs

(2) Report suspected or alleged violations of law committed by or against military personnel or civilians

(3) Provide HQDA staff supervision for National Prisoner of War Information Center (NPWIC)

(4) Develop plans for the initial assignment and replacement of block interment serial numbers (ISNs) from the NPWIC to the

Branch PWIC and for the assignment of the theater code section of the ISN

(5) Provide necessary reports, coordination, technical advice, and staff assistance to

(a) The Office of the Secretary of Defense (OSD)

(b) The Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS)

(c) The military departments

(d) Unified commands

(e) Department of State and other Federal agencies

(f) The International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC)

(g) Protecting powers

d *The Army Judge Advocate General (TJAG)* The TJAG will provide HQDA guidance and advice to commanders on the legal aspects of the EPW, CI and RP program TJAG will—

(1) Conduct liaison in coordination with the ASA-ISA, the Department of State, the Department of Justice, and other Federal agencies, the JCS, the Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA), the military departments, the ICRC, the Protecting Powers, and other detaining powers, as required

(2) Provide advice and assistance to commanders on legal aspects of reported violations by EPW, CI, RP, and ODs

(3) Provide theater guidelines for any EPW, CI and RP claims against the U S Government

(4) Provide guidance regarding GPW Article 5 Tribunals

e *Deputy Chief of Staff for Logistics (DCSLOG)* The DCSLOG will ensure logistical resources are available to support EPW operations

f *The Assistant Secretary of the Army Financial Management (ASA-FM&C)* The ASA-FM&C will establish the policies and procedures governing entitlement, control, and accounting for pay, allowances, and personal funds for EPW, CI, RP, and ODs per the provisions of the GPW and GC

g *Combatant Commanders, Task Force Commanders and Joint Task Force Commanders* Combatant Commanders, Task Force Commanders and Joint Task Force Commanders have the overall responsibility for the EPW, CI and RP program, operations, and contingency plans in the theater of operation involved to ensure compliance with international law of war DOD Directive 2310 1 provides that persons captured or detained by the U S Military Services shall normally be handed over for safeguarding to U S Army Military Police, or to detainee collecting points or other holding facilities and installations operated by U S Army Military Police as soon as practical U S Army Military Police have units specifically organized to perform the long-term functions associated with EPW/CI internment Commanders must ensure the proper force structure is included in any joint operational plans Commanders at all levels will ensure that all EPW, CI, RP, and ODs are accounted for and humanely treated, and that collection, evacuation, internment, transfers, release, and repatriation operations are conducted per this regulation Combatant Commanders, Task Force Commanders and Joint Task Force Commanders will—

(1) Provide for an EPW, CI and RP camp liaison and assistance program to ensure the protection of U S interests per the Geneva Conventions upon the capture and transfer of EPW, CI, RP, and ODs to a host or other nation

(2) Plan and procure logistical support to include transportation, subsistence, personal, organizational and Nuclear, Biological & Chemical (NBC) clothing and equipment items, mail collection and distribution, laundry, and bath for EPW, CI and RP

(3) Collect and dispose of captured enemy supplies and equipment through theater logistics and Explosive Ordnance Disposal (EOD) channels

(4) Coordinate for acquisition of real estate, and as required, for planning, design, contracting, and construction of facilities for EPW, CI and RP with the Theater or JTF Engineer

(5) Establish guidance for the use, transport, and evacuation of EPW, CI, RP, and ODs in logistical support operations

(6) Identify requirements and allocations for Army Medical units in support of the EPW, CI and RP Program, and ensure that the



medical annex of OPLANs, OPORDs and contingency plans includes procedures for treatment of EPW, CI, RP, and ODs. Medical support will specifically include

(a) First aid and all sanitary aspects of food service including provisions for potable water, pest management, and entomological support

(b) Preventive medicine

(c) Professional medical services and medical supply

(d) Reviewing, recommending, and coordinating the use and assignment of medically trained EPW, CI, RP and OD personnel and medical material

(e) Establishing policy for medical repatriation of EPW, CI and RP and monitoring the actions of the Mixed Medical Commission

h U S Army Criminal Investigation Command (USACIDC) USACIDC will provide criminal investigative support to EPW, CI and RP Camp Commanders per AR 195-2

#### 1-5. General protection policy

a U S policy, relative to the treatment of EPW, CI and RP in the custody of the U S Armed Forces, is as follows

(1) All persons captured, detained, interned, or otherwise held in U S Armed Forces custody during the course of conflict will be given humanitarian care and treatment from the moment they fall into the hands of U S forces until final release or repatriation

(2) All persons taken into custody by U S forces will be provided with the protections of the GPW until some other legal status is determined by competent authority

(3) The punishment of EPW, CI and RP known to have, or suspected of having, committed serious offenses will be administered IAW due process of law and under legally constituted authority per the GPW, GC, the Uniform Code of Military Justice and the Manual for Courts Martial

(4) The inhumane treatment of EPW, CI, RP is prohibited and is not justified by the stress of combat or with deep provocation. Inhumane treatment is a serious and punishable violation under international law and the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ)

b All prisoners will receive humane treatment without regard to race, nationality, religion, political opinion, sex, or other criteria. The following acts are prohibited: murder, torture, corporal punishment, mutilation, the taking of hostages, sensory deprivation, collective punishments, execution without trial by proper authority, and all cruel and degrading treatment

c All persons will be respected as human beings. They will be protected against all acts of violence to include rape, forced prostitution, assault and theft, insults, public curiosity, bodily injury, and reprisals of any kind. They will not be subjected to medical or scientific experiments. This list is not exclusive. EPW/RP are to be protected from all threats or acts of violence

d Photographing, filming, and video taping of individual EPW, CI and RP for other than internal Internment Facility administration or intelligence/counterintelligence purposes is strictly prohibited. No group, wide area or aerial photographs of EPW, CI and RP or facilities will be taken unless approved by the senior Military Police officer in the Internment Facility commander's chain of command

e A neutral state or an international humanitarian organization, such as the ICRC, may be designated by the U S Government as a Protecting Power (PP) to monitor whether protected persons are receiving humane treatment as required by the Geneva Conventions. The text of the Geneva Convention, its annexes, and any special agreements, will be posted in each camp in the language of the EPW, CI and RP

f Medical Personnel Retained medical personnel shall receive as a minimum the benefits and protection given to EPW and shall also be granted all facilities necessary to provide for the medical care of EPW. They shall continue to exercise their medical functions for the benefit of EPW, preferably those belonging to the armed forces upon which they depend, within the scope of the military laws and regulations of the United States Armed Forces. They shall be provided with necessary transport and allowed to periodically visit EPW situated in working detachments or in hospitals outside the

EPW camp. Although subject to the internal discipline of the camp in which they are retained, such personnel may not be compelled to carry out any work other than that concerned with their medical duties. The senior medical officer shall be responsible to the camp military authorities for everything connected with the activities of retained medical personnel

#### g Religion

(1) EPW, and RP will enjoy latitude in the exercise of their religious practices, including attendance at the service of their faith, on condition that they comply with the disciplinary routine prescribed by the military authorities. Adequate space will be provided where religious services may be held

(2) Military chaplains who fall into the hands of the U S and who remain or are retained to assist EPW, and RP, will be allowed to minister to EPW, RP, of the same religion. Chaplains will be allocated among various camps and labor detachments containing EPW, RP, belonging to the same forces, speaking the same language, or practicing the same religion. They will enjoy the necessary facilities, including the means of transport provided in the Geneva Convention, for visiting the EPW, RP, outside their camp. They will be free to correspond, subject to censorship, on matters concerning their religious duties with the ecclesiastical authorities in the country of detention and with international religious organizations. Chaplains shall not be compelled to carry out any work other than their religious duties

(3) Enemy Prisoners of War, who are ministers of religion, without having officiated as chaplains to their own forces, will be at liberty, whatever their denomination, to minister freely to the members of their faith in U S custody. For this purpose, they will receive the same treatment as the chaplains retained by the United States. They are not to be obligated to do any additional work

(4) If EPW, RP, do not have the assistance of a chaplain or a minister of their faith, a minister belonging to the prisoner's denomination, or in a minister's absence, a qualified layman, will be appointed, at the request of the prisoners, to fill this office. This appointment, subject to approval of the camp commander, will take place with agreement from the religious community of prisoners concerned and, wherever necessary, with approval of the local religious authorities of the same faith. The appointed person will comply with all regulations established by the United States

#### 1-6 Tribunals

a In accordance with Article 5, GPW, if any doubt arises as to whether a person, having committed a belligerent act and been taken into custody by the U S Armed Forces, belongs to any of the categories enumerated in Article 4, GPW, such persons shall enjoy the protection of the present Convention until such time as their status has been determined by a competent tribunal

b A competent tribunal shall determine the status of any person not appearing to be entitled to prisoner of war status who has committed a belligerent act or has engaged in hostile activities in aid of enemy armed forces, and who asserts that he or she is entitled to treatment as a prisoner of war, or concerning whom any doubt of a like nature exists

c A competent tribunal shall be composed of three commissioned officers, one of whom must be of a field grade. The senior officer shall serve as President of the Tribunal. Another non-voting officer, preferably an officer in the Judge Advocate General Corps, shall serve as the recorder

d The convening authority shall be a commander exercising general courts-martial convening authority

#### e Procedures

(1) Members of the Tribunal and the recorder shall be sworn. The recorder shall be sworn first by the President of the Tribunal. The recorder will then administer the oath to all voting members of the Tribunal to include the President

(2) A written record shall be made of proceedings

(3) Proceedings shall be open except for deliberation and voting by the members and testimony or other matters which would compromise security if held in the open

(4) Persons whose status is to be determined shall be advised of their rights at the beginning of their hearings

(5) Persons whose status is to be determined shall be allowed to attend all open sessions and will be provided with an interpreter if necessary

(6) Persons whose status is to be determined shall be allowed to call witnesses if reasonably available, and to question those witnesses called by the Tribunal. Witnesses shall not be considered reasonably available if, as determined by their commanders, their presence at a hearing would affect combat or support operations. In these cases, written statements, preferably sworn, may be submitted and considered as evidence

(7) Persons whose status is to be determined have a right to testify or otherwise address the Tribunal

(8) Persons whose status is to be determined may not be compelled to testify before the Tribunal

(9) Following the hearing of testimony and the review of documents and other evidence, the Tribunal shall determine the status of the subject of the proceeding in closed session by majority vote. Preponderance of evidence shall be the standard used in reaching this determination

(10) A written report of the tribunal decision is completed in each case. Possible board determinations are

(a) EPW

(b) Recommended RP, entitled to EPW protections, who should be considered for certification as a medical, religious, or volunteer aid society RP

(c) Innocent civilian who should be immediately returned to his home or released

(d) Civilian internee who for reasons of operational security, or probable cause incident to criminal investigation, should be detained

f The recorder shall prepare the record of the Tribunal within three work days of the announcement of the Tribunal's decision. The record will then be forwarded to the first Staff Judge Advocate in the internment facility's chain of command

g Persons who have been determined by a competent tribunal not to be entitled to prisoner of war status may not be executed, imprisoned, or otherwise penalized without further proceedings to determine what acts they have committed and what penalty should be imposed. The record of every Tribunal proceeding resulting in a determination denying EPW status shall be reviewed for legal sufficiency when the record is received at the office of the Staff Judge Advocate for the convening authority

#### 1-7. The National Prisoner of War Information Center (NPWIC)

The NPWIC will—

a Forward blocks of ISNs to designated Branch PWIC in Theater and CONUS, as required

b Obtain and store information concerning EPW, CI and RP, and their confiscated personal property. Information will be collected and stored on each EPW, CI, and RP captured and detained by U S Armed Forces. This includes those EPW, RP, who were captured by the United States but are in custody of other powers and those who have been released or repatriated. EPW, CI and RP cannot be forced to reveal any information however they are required to provide their name, rank, serial number and date of birth. The Geneva Convention requires the NPWIC to collect and store the following information for EPW, RP

(1) Complete name

(2) ISN

(3) Rank

(4) Serial number

(5) Date of birth

(6) City of birth

(7) Country of birth

(8) Name and address of next of kin

(9) Date of capture

(10) Place of capture

(11) Capturing unit

(12) Circumstances of capture

(13) Location of confiscated personal property

(14) Nationality

(15) General statement of health

(16) Nation in whose armed services the individual is serving

(17) Name and address of a person to be notified of the individual's capture

(18) Address to which correspondence may be sent

(19) Certificates of death or duly authenticated lists of the dead

(20) Information showing the exact location of war graves together with particulars of the dead

(21) Notification of capture

(22) List of personal articles of value not restored upon repatriation

c Obtain and store information concerning CI and ODs who are kept in the custody of U S Armed Forces who are subjected to assigned residence, or who were interned and then released. The following information will be collected

(1) Any particulars that may assist in the individual's identification. This information shall include at least the person's surname, first names, place and date of birth, nationality, last residence and distinguishing characteristics, the first name of the father and the maiden name of the mother, the date, place and nature of the action taken with regard to the individual, the address at which correspondence may be sent and the name and address of the person to be informed

(2) The individual's personal data for notification of his or her internment, state of health, and changes to this data

(3) Certificates of death or authenticated lists of the dead and information showing the location of graves

(4) Authenticated lists of personal valuables left by these protected persons

(5) Information pertaining to children living in territories occupied by the United States. This will include all data necessary for identifying children whose identity is in doubt

d Process all inquiries concerning EPW and RP captured by U S Armed Forces

e Make reports to the ICRC, the State Department, and other Federal agencies as required

f Provide to the adverse party via the ICRC's Central Tracing Agency (CTA) all pertinent information pertaining to EPW, CI, and RP, in custody of the U S Armed Forces

g Transmit via the CTA/ICRC/PP, all official documents and information on judicial proceedings concerning EPW and RP captured, interned, retained or detained by U S Armed Forces

h Information and Property Transfers

(1) In response to an inquiry, the NPWIC will forward all information and documents to the CTA or PP

(2) Valuables and personal property which can be returned to a released or repatriated person will be forwarded through the CTA or PP

(3) Valuables and personal property of deceased EPW/RP, which can be released, will be forwarded to the next of kin through the CTA or PP

i The ICRC/PP transmits information, documents, and personal effects to the State it represents as follows

(1) If civilians are concerned, to their countries of origin and/or residence

(2) If combatants or EPW, CI, and RP are concerned, to their country of origin or to the Power on which they depend

#### 1-8 The Branch PWIC

a The Branch PWIC functions as the field operations agency for the NPWIC. It is the central agency responsible to maintain information on all EPW, CI and RP and their personal property within an assigned theater of operations or in CONUS

b The Branch PWIC serves as the theater repository for information pertaining to

(1) Accountability of EPW, CI, and RP and implementation of DOD policy

(2) Providing initial and replacement block ISN assignments to theater EPW, CI and RP processing organizations, and requests replacement ISNs from the NPWIC

(3) Obtaining and storing information concerning all EPW, CI and RP, in the custody of U S Armed Forces, those captured by U.S Armed Forces and transferred to other powers for internment (either temporarily or permanently), those EPW and RP transferred to CONUS for internment, and EPW, CI and RP released or repatriated Obtaining and storing information about CI kept in the custody of U S Armed Forces within its assigned theater of operations who are subjected to assigned residence, interned, or released Information required includes

(a) That which may assist in an individual's identification

(b) Certificates of death or authenticated lists of the dead

(c) Information showing the location of war graves, together with particulars of the dead

(d) Individual personal data, notification of capture, state of health, and changes

(e) Certificates of death or authenticated lists of the dead and information showing the location of graves

(f) Authenticated lists of personal valuables left by CI

(g) Information pertaining to children living in territories occupied by the United States This will include all data necessary for identifying children whose identity is in doubt

(4) Processing, storing and maintaining all personal property of escaped or dead EPW/CI/RP or articles of value which were not restored upon repatriation, until final disposition instructions are received from the NPWIC or next higher headquarters

(5) Processing and replying to all inquiries received from the NPWIC, the chain of command, or other agencies as directed by the NPWIC concerning EPW/CI/RP and other protected persons in the theater of operations that the U S is responsible for under the Geneva Convention

(6) Making regular reports to the NPWIC, the chain of command, and supported internment facilities as required This will include all pertinent information, official documents and information on judicial proceedings pertaining to EPW/CI/RP in the theater of operations for which the U S is responsible under the Geneva Convention

(7) Valuables and personal property which can be returned to a released or repatriated person are forwarded to the ICRC CTA or Protecting Power, as directed by the NPWIC

(8) Valuables and personal property of deceased EPW, CI, and RP which can be released, will be forwarded to the next of kin through the NPWIC to the ICRC Central Tracing Agency or Protecting Power

(9) Confiscated property which cannot be released or returned will be stored until final disposition is determined

(a) Unclaimed property will be safeguarded by the Branch PWIC until all EPW/CI have been repatriated If property ownership cannot be determined, said property shall be released through the MP BDE G-4 and SUPCOM to the Defense Reutilization and Marketing Office (DRMO)

(b) Unclaimed money and negotiable instruments will be maintained by the PWIC pending inquiry Upon completion of all repatriation actions and inquiries, unclaimed money and negotiable instruments will be transferred to the FAO as abandoned property

(10) Accountability data concerning personal and confiscated property of EPW, CI, and RP transferred to CONUS will be forwarded directly to the PWIC designated to support CONUS operations

(11) The Branch PWIC is responsible for establishing and enforcing the information requirements that the United States forces will collect on EPW, CI and RP taken or held in the Branch PWIC's area of responsibility The Branch PWIC will receive its information requirements from the NPWIC

## 1-9 Public Affairs

In the interest of national security, and the protection of the prisoners from public curiosity, and in adherence to the GPW and GC,

EPW, CI, RP and other detainees will not be photographed as per paragraph 1-5d Interviews of EPW, CI, RP and other detainees by news media will not be permitted Requests for media access to EPW, CI, or other detainee internment facilities will be coordinated through the Public Affairs Office, and the Staff Judge Advocate, and approved by the first commander who exercises General Court Martial Convening Authority over the internment facility Requests for exception to policy will be forwarded through command channels to HQDA (SAPA-PP), Washington, D C 20310-4420

## Chapter 2 Beginning of Captivity EPW/RP

### 2-1. Initial actions upon capture

a The commanding officer of the capturing unit will ensure that

(1) All EPW/RP are protected, safeguarded, and accounted for per this regulation This regulation applies from the time of capture until evacuation to designated internment facilities

(a) Each EPW/RP will be searched immediately after capture Use males to search males and females to search female prisoners, when possible Weapons, ammunition, and equipment or documents with intelligence value will be confiscated and turned over to the nearest intelligence unit Propaganda and other Psychological Operations (PSYOP) materials will be confiscated, identified by the EPW/RP name and ISN and turned over to the supporting EPW/CI PSYOP unit through intelligence channels Currency will only be confiscated on the order of a commissioned officer and will be receipted for using DA Form 4137 (Evidence/Property Custody Document) EPW and RP are allowed to retain personal effects such as jewelry, helmets, canteens, protective mask and chemical protective garments, clothing, identification cards and tags, badges of rank and nationality, and Red Cross brassards, articles having personal or sentimental or religious value, and items used for eating except knives and forks

(b) All prisoners of war and retained persons will, at the time of capture, be tagged using DD Form 2745 They will be searched for concealed weapons and items of intelligence All equipment, documents, and personal property confiscated during the search must be tagged and administratively accounted for by the capturing unit Capturing units must provide the date of capture, location of capture (grid coordinates), capturing unit, and any special circumstances of the capture (how the EPW was captured) The remaining information will be included on the tag as it becomes available

(c) The DD Form 2745 is perforated in three parts The form is individually numbered and is constructed of durable, waterproof, tear-resistant material, and has reinforced eye-holes at the top of parts A and C Part A is attached to the detainee with wire, string, or other type of durable material Part B is retained by the capturing unit and maintained in the unit's records Part C is attached to the property confiscated from the detainee, so that it may later be matched to that detainee

(d) Prisoners may be interrogated in the combat zone The use of physical or mental torture or any coercion to compel prisoners to provide information is prohibited Prisoners may voluntarily cooperate with PSYOP personnel in the development, evaluation, or dissemination of PSYOP messages or products Prisoners may not be threatened, insulted, or exposed to unpleasant or disparate treatment of any kind because of their refusal to answer questions Interrogations will normally be performed by intelligence or counterintelligence personnel

(e) Prisoners will be humanely evacuated from the combat zone and into appropriate channels as quickly as possible Instructions given to prisoners during evacuation from the combat zone will be, if possible, in their own language and as brief as possible When military necessity requires delay in evacuation beyond a reasonable period of time, health and comfort items will be issued, such as food, potable water, appropriate clothing, shelter, and medical attention Prisoners will not be unnecessarily exposed to danger while awaiting evacuation The capturing unit may keep prisoners in the

combat zone in cases where, due to wounds or sickness, prompt evacuation would be more dangerous to their survival than retention in the combat zone. Individuals presumed to have intelligence value should be separated immediately from other EPW.

(f) Accountability will be maintained for all evacuated prisoners, regardless of the evacuation channel used. Units designated to receive the prisoners at the collecting points or camps will prepare a receipt DD Form 629 (Receipt for Prisoner or Detained Person) with a list of each prisoner's name attached and provide a copy of the receipt to the escort.

(2) Prisoners will not be located next to obvious targets such as ammunition sites, fuel facilities, or communications equipment. First aid and medical treatment will be provided to the same extent that the United States provides to its own forces. Sick and wounded prisoners will be evacuated separately, but in the same manner as US and allied forces. Accountability and security of prisoners and their possessions in medical facilities is the responsibility of the respective echelon commander.

b Special policy pertaining to the temporary detention of EPW, CI, RP and other detained persons aboard United States Naval Vessels

(1) Detention of EPW/RP on board naval vessels will be limited.

(2) EPW recovered at sea may be temporarily held on board as operational needs dictate, pending a reasonable opportunity to transfer them to a shore facility, or to another vessel for transfer to a shore facility.

(3) EPW/RP may be temporarily held aboard naval vessels while being transported between land facilities. They may also be treated and temporarily quartered aboard naval vessels incidental to their treatment, to receive necessary and appropriate medical attention if such detention would appreciably improve their health or safety prospects.

(4) Holding of EPW/RP on vessels must be temporary, limited to the minimum period necessary to evacuate them from the combat zone or to avoid significant harm that would be faced if detained on land.

(5) Use of immobilized vessels for temporary holding of EPW/RP is not authorized without SECDEF approval.

## 2-2 Evacuation and care of EPW and RP

Those units designated to hold and evacuate EPW and RP will

a Collect prisoners from capturing units, and evacuate them from the combat zone as soon as possible.

b Ensure sick and wounded EPW and RP in their custody are classified, by qualified medical personnel, as either walking wounded or litter, or as non-walking wounded. Walking wounded or litter EPW will be evacuated through established evacuation channels. Non-walking wounded or sick EPW will be delivered to the nearest medical aid station and evacuated through medical channels. All detained personnel will remain physically segregated from US and allied patients.

(1) Appropriate intelligence sources will be notified when EPW and RP are found in possession of large sums of US or foreign currency. A receipt DA Form 4137 will be prepared to account for all property that is taken from the EPW. Copies of DD Form 629 (Receipt for Prisoner or Detained Person) and DA Form 4137 will be maintained to establish positive accountability of the EPW and their property and can be used to substantiate proper care and treatment at a later time. DA Form 4137 will be used to account for property released before final disposition is ordered. Records of disposition of property will be evacuated with prisoners for inclusion in their personnel records.

(2) EPW will be segregated into categories of officer, noncommissioned officer, enlisted, male, female, nationality, recognized ethnic groups, deserters or any other category that the senior officer or NCO having custody of the prisoners designate to ensure the security, health and welfare of the prisoners. Segregation should prevent prisoners from communicating by voice or visual means. Guards will communicate with the prisoners only to give commands and instructions.

(3) The requirements for safeguarding prisoners are the same as those for capturing units.

c In cases of mass capture or surrender of entire units, combatants should be disarmed and those with the greatest intelligence value identified for debriefing.

d Repatriation or parole of the remainder should be considered, with final determination directed by HQDA. Prisoners will not be forced to be repatriated against their will. Prisoners who refuse repatriation will be treated as prisoners of war until their legal status and further disposition can be determined by competent authority.

## 2-3. Evacuation Policy

a Evacuation of EPW or RP outside the theater of operations requires SECDEF approval.

b Wounded EPW generally will not be evacuated to CONUS until released from medical channels. They will be processed through US military police assets. If EPW are to be medically evacuated, they will be processed and accounted for per this regulation.

## Chapter 3 Administration and Operation of EPW Internment Facilities

### 3-1 Establishment

Internment facilities will be established in the communications zone of each theater of operations for the purpose of receiving, accounting for, administering, securing, and logistically supporting EPW/RP.

### 3-2. EPW internment facilities

a The operation of all EPW internment facilities is governed by the provisions of the Geneva Conventions.

b The theater commander remains responsible for the location of EPW facilities. EPW/RP may be interned only in premises located on land and affording proper health and hygiene standards. Except in extreme circumstances, in the best interests of the individual, EPW/RP will not be interned in correctional facilities housing military or civilian prisoners. Prisoners will not normally be interned in unhealthy areas, or where the climate proves to be injurious to them, and will be removed as soon as possible to a more favorable climate. Transit camps or collecting points will operate under conditions similar to those prescribed for permanent prisoner of war camps, and the prisoners will receive the same treatment as in permanent EPW camps.

c The internment facility will be marked with the letters "PW" (Prisoner of War Camps) and will be placed so they will be clearly visible from the air during the daytime. Other markings may be used when agreed to by the combatant commanders and approved by HQDA.

### 3-3 EPW Facility Management

a The United States may subject EPW/RP to internment and may have contingency plans to confine and enclose EPW in camps located both in and outside CONUS. Medical personnel and chaplains classified as RP, while retained by the Detaining Power with a view to assisting prisoners of war, shall not be considered prisoners of war. The EPW facility commander will provide command, control, accountability, administrative, and logistical support for the operation of all EPW/CI facilities. The EPW/CI facility commander will

(1) Intern prisoners captured by or transferred to the custody of US forces.

(2) Process interned prisoners to include tagging, assignment of ISN, fingerprinting, photographing, and weighing, as needed.

(a) EPW and RP may be required to show their identity card issued by his or her government, however in no case may the card be taken from the individual.

(b) If an EPW does not hold an identity card issued by his or her

government, the EPW will be issued a completed DA Form 2662-R (EPW Identity Card) The identity card will be in the possession of the EPW at all times A notation indicating preparation of DA Form 2662-R will be made under item 36 of DA Form 4237-R (Detainee Personnel Record) DA Form 2662-R will be reproduced locally on 5-by 3-inch card head to foot A copy for reproduction purposes is located at the back of this regulation DA Form 4237-R will be reproduced locally on 8 1/2 by 11-inch paper A copy for reproduction purposes is located at the back of this regulation These forms are for the use of Army only

(c) DA Form 2663-R (Fingerprint Card) will be prepared in duplicate for each EPW/RP One copy will be retained at the camp in which the EPW/RP is confined and will accompany the EPW/RP upon transfer The other is forwarded to the Branch PWIC

(3) Provide prisoners with humane treatment, health and welfare items, quarters, food, clothing, and medical care Health Services Command (HSC) provides medical and dental care for EPW in federal or civilian health care facilities per HSC plans

(4) Provide for morale, religious, intellectual, educational, social, physical and recreational activities for the prisoners

(5) Establish liaison with the supporting Branch PWIC, collect necessary information regarding the location, the physical well-being, legal status, and any change thereto, of all prisoners interned by the command

(6) Allow prisoners to correspond with their families and receive relief shipments

(7) Provide prisoners copies of the 1949 Geneva Conventions (in their own language, if possible)

(8) Employ and compensate assigned prisoners based on verified needs/requirements and monitor all aspects of EPW and RP employment per this regulation If sundry packets are provided, no advance pay is required

(9) Provide command and control, and operate, administer, and secure the camp

(10) Prepare necessary documents for administrative actions, court-martial charges or any disciplinary proceedings for prisoners

(11) Post personnel files and maintain unit level records of proceedings

(12) Supervise qualified EPW/RP in providing medical care and field sanitation/preventive medicine for prisoners

(13) Provide the initial medical examination and monthly screening of prisoners

(14) Maintain EPW labor and finance records on each prisoner per AR 37-1

(15) Ensure preparation of monthly pay credit statements of prisoner's personal accounts and ensure pay for prisoners

(16) Direct activities relating to the assignment and supervision of work projects for prisoners

(17) Advise employers of provisions for handling EPW

(18) Establish and maintain records of prisoner labor projects

(19) Provide initial reports of and perform initial investigation and inquiries into prisoner labor injuries or incidents

(20) Report allegations of criminal acts or war crimes committed by or against EPW/RP to the supporting element of the U S Army Criminal Investigation Command (USACIDC) Deaths resulting from other than natural causes will be investigated by USACIDC

(21) Provide assistance to the medical facility commander to assess the threat posed by hospitalized EPW

(22) Establish and maintain complete and accurate accountability information regarding the location, physical and legal status, training, and employment of all individuals in the custody of, or assigned to, the EPW facility Information will be posted to the individual's personal, medical, and financial records, and will be provided to the supporting PWIC and next higher headquarters, as required

(23) Provide an area for intelligence collection efforts

b USACIDC will ensure criminal investigative support for EPW and RP is planned and resources are allocated for this purpose

### 3-4. Operation of prisoner of war Internment facilities

EPW camps will be organized and operated, when possible, as other military commands Each internment facility will be commanded by a commissioned officer of the U S Military The following provisions will be observed

a The Geneva Conventions will be posted within the camp in the language(s) of the EPW/RP nation(s) A copy of the text will be supplied, on request, to any person who does not have access to posted copies The supporting EPW/CI PSYOP unit can assist in preparing and disseminating native language copies of the text as well as other translation, printing, and audio-visual information dissemination support

b EPW will be interned in camps according to their nationality and language They will not be separated from other prisoners belonging to the Armed Forces with which they were serving at the time of their capture, except with their consent Officers will be separated from enlisted personnel and females will be separated from males

c EPW representatives will be authorized for EPW Camps

(1) At each enlisted EPW or branch camp, EPW will select a prisoner representative These representatives will be elected by secret ballot every 6 months and are eligible for reelection EPW will be permitted to consult freely with their representatives In turn, their representatives will represent them before

(a) The military authorities

(b) The Protecting Power

(c) The ICRC

(d) Other relief or aid organizations

(2) In officer EPW camps or in camps with both officers and enlisted EPW, the senior EPW officer, unless incapacitated or incompetent, will be recognized as the prisoner representative In officer EPW camps, one or more advisers chosen by the EPW officers will assist the prisoner representative The supporting EPW/CI PSYOP unit can assist in identifying officers, key communicators, and English speaking EPW who may be hiding within the camp population

(3) In mixed camps (officers and enlisted), one or more enlisted advisors will be elected to assist the EPW officer representative

(4) The camp commander will be designated as the final approval authority for each elected prisoner representative When the camp commander denies, approves, or dismisses an elected representative, a notice to that effect will be sent through channels to HQDA, (DAMO-ODL) NPWIC for forwarding to the ICRC or the PP Reasons for the refusal will be included EPW will then be permitted to elect another representative

(5) RP (medical personnel and chaplains) are not considered prisoners of war and therefore may not elect prisoner representatives The senior medical officer in each camp will be responsible for matters connected with the activities of retained medical personnel Individual chaplains, like the responsible medical officer, will have direct access to camp authorities

(6) Prisoner representatives may appoint EPW assistants These assistants are in addition to the advisers provided for in (2) above The camp commander will also approve the selection of such assistants and their continuance in those positions

(7) Prisoner representatives must be of the same nationality, observe the same customs, and speak the same language as the EPW they represent EPW interned in separate compounds due to differing nationality, language, or customs will be permitted to have their own prisoner representative according to (1) through (4) above The internment facility commander will establish the local policy for an escort to accompany the representative

(8) Duties, responsibilities, and available resources

(a) Representatives will be responsible for furthering the physical, spiritual, and intellectual well-being of the persons they represent They will not exercise any disciplinary powers They will not perform any other work if the work interferes with their duties as representatives They will be allowed a reasonable time to acquaint their successors with their duties and related current affairs

(b) Representatives may be given the freedom of movement

needed to accomplish their duties, such as inspection of labor detachments and receipt of supplies. Ordinarily, representatives will be permitted to visit places where EPW, whose interests they represent are detained.

(c) Postal and telegraph facilities will be made available to prisoner representatives for communicating with the U S Army authorities, Protecting Powers, if any, the ICRC and its delegates, the Mixed Medical Commission, and other organizations authorized to assist EPW. Prisoner representatives at branch camps will be granted the same facilities for communication with the prisoner representative of the parent camp.

d EPW/RP social privileges. Social privileges will be subject to security considerations and camp discipline. EPW/RP will be encouraged to take part in intellectual, educational, and recreational activities. The introduction of political overtones into or the furtherance of anti-U S propaganda objectives through these activities is prohibited. The supporting EPW/CI PSYOP unit can assist in identifying agitators, malcontents, and political officers who may create resistance within the camp. These units are also trained to develop and implement programs to reduce hostile political activity and to persuade EPW/CI populations to accept U S authority and regulations.

e EPW/RP will be quartered under conditions as favorable as those for the force of the detaining power billeted in the same area. The conditions shall make allowance for the habits and customs of the prisoners and shall in no case be prejudicial to their health. The foregoing shall apply in particular to the dormitories of EPW/RP as it regards both total surface and minimum cubic space and the general installation of bedding and blankets. Quarters furnished to EPW/RP must be protected from dampness, must be adequately lit and heated (particularly between dusk and lights-out), and must have adequate precautions taken against the dangers of fire. In camps accommodating both sexes, EPW/RP will be provided with separate facilities for women. When possible consult the preventive medicine authority in theater for provisions of minimum living space and sanitary facilities.

f The daily food rations will be sufficient in quantity, quality, and variety to keep EPW/RP in good health and prevent loss of weight or development of nutritional deficiencies.

(1) Account will be taken of the habitual diet of the prisoners.

(2) EPW/RP who work may be given additional rations when required.

(3) Sufficient drinking water will be supplied to EPW/RP.

(4) The use of tobacco will be permitted in designated smoking areas.

(5) EPW will, as far as possible, be associated with the preparation of their meals and may be employed for that purpose in the kitchens. Furthermore, they will be given means of preparing additional food in their possession. Food service handlers must have training in sanitary methods of food service.

(6) Adequate premises will be provided for messing.

(7) Collective disciplinary measures affecting food are prohibited.

g Clothing, underwear, and footwear will be supplied to EPW/RP in sufficient quantities, and allowances will be made for the climate of the region where the prisoners are detained. Captured uniforms of enemy armed forces will, if suitable for the climate, be made available to clothe EPW/RP. The camp commander will ensure the regular replacement and repair of the above articles. EPW/RP who work will receive clothing appropriate to the nature or location of the work demands.

h Canteens. EPW/RP will be provided sundry/health and comfort packs, which may be supplemented with items tailored to their cultural needs, as a temporary substitute for establishing canteen operations. When directed by the Theater Area Provost Marshal or senior Military Police officer in the internment facilities' chain of command, canteens will be installed in all camps, where EPW/RP may procure foodstuffs, soap, tobacco and ordinary articles in daily use. The tariff will never exceed local market prices. When authorized, canteens will be operated IAW the provisions of the GPW. Procedures regarding EPW/RP payment for canteen purchases are

contained in AR 37-1. Profits made by camp canteens will be used for the benefit of the prisoners, a special fund will be created for this purpose. The prisoners' representative may make suggestions regarding the management of the canteen and of this fund. When an internment facility is closed, the credit balance of the special fund will be transferred to another U S internment facility operating in theater. When all facilities are closed, funds will be turned over to an international welfare organization. The fund will be employed for the benefit of EPW/RP of the same nationalities as those who have contributed to the fund. In case of a general repatriation, profits will be kept by the United States.

i Hygiene and medical care.

(1) The United States is bound to take all sanitary measures necessary to ensure clean and healthy camps to prevent epidemics. EPW/RP will have access, day and night, to latrines that conform to the rules of hygiene and are maintained in a constant state of cleanliness. In any camps in which women EPW/RP are accommodated, separate latrines will be provided for them. EPW/RP will have sufficient water and soap for their personal needs and laundry. The necessary facilities and time will be made available for those purposes. The supporting EPW/CI PSYOP unit can assist in maintaining and improving health and sanitary conditions by producing and disseminating informational products concerning proper hygiene, sanitation, and food preparation, where required.

(2) Every camp will have an infirmary. EPW/RP with a contagious disease, mental condition, or other illness, as determined by the medical officer, will be isolated from other patients. A list of endemic diseases of military importance can be obtained from the theater surgeon or preventive medicine officer. EPW/RP will be immunized and reimmunized against other diseases as recommended by the Theater Surgeon. EPW/RP suffering from serious disease, or whose condition necessitates special treatment, surgery, or hospital care, must be admitted to any military or civilian medical unit where such treatment can be given. Special facilities will be available for the care and rehabilitation of the disabled, particularly the blind. EPW/RP will be accorded the attention of medical personnel of the power on which they depend and, if possible, of their nationality. EPW/RP will not be denied medical care. The detaining authorities shall, upon request, issue to every EPW/RP who has undergone treatment, an official certificate indicating the nature of the illness or injury, and the duration and kind of treatment received. A duplicate of this certificate will be forwarded to the ICRC. The detaining authority will also ensure medical personnel properly complete the SF 88 (Report of Medical Examination), SF 600 (Chronological Record of Medical Care and DA Form 3444 (Treatment Record). The cost of treatment will be borne by the United States.

(3) Medical inspections of EPW/RP will be held at least once a month, where each detainee will be weighed and the weight recorded on DA Form 2664-R (Weight Register). DA Form 2664-R will be reproduced locally on 8- by 5-inch card. A copy for reproduction purposes is located at the back of this regulation. This form is for the use of Army only. The purpose of these inspections will be to monitor the general state of health, nutrition, and cleanliness of prisoners and to detect contagious diseases, especially tuberculosis, venereal disease, lice, louse-borne diseases and HIV.

(4) EPW who, though not attached to the medical service of the Armed Forces, are physicians, surgeons, dentists, nurses, or medical orderlies may be required to exercise their medical functions in the interests of prisoners of war dependent on the same power after being certified per Paragraph 3-15. They will continue to be classified as EPW, but will receive the same treatment as corresponding RP (medical personnel). They will be exempted from any other work.

(5) Experimental research will not be conducted on EPW/RP.

### 3-5 Procedures for prisoner of war correspondence

a EPW/RP will be allowed to send and receive letters and cards. There is no restriction on the number or length of letters or cards. EPW/RP may receive. EPW/RP will be permitted to send not less than two letters and four cards monthly, in addition to the capture

cards provided in Article 70, GPW. In the event EPW/RP are prevented from writing their monthly quota of letters and cards because of a lack of stationery forms, they will be allowed to make up their quotas when forms are available.

*b* All persons may address complaints, in writing to U.S. military authorities and the Protecting Power. These communications will not be limited in length or number, nor will they be charged against the person's correspondence quota. They will be transmitted without delay.

*c* Letters and cards addressed to persons other than representatives of a Protecting Power or to U.S. military authorities will not

(1) Contain complaints or criticism of any governmental agency or official

(2) Refer to events of capture

(3) Compare camps

(4) Contain quotations from books or other writings

(5) Contain numbers, ciphers, codes, music symbols, shorthand, marks, or signs other than those used for normal punctuation

(6) Contain military information on numbers of EPW/RP (Exceptions: Letters to a Protecting Power or prisoner representative or to a relief or aid organization)

(7) Should any such correspondence be discovered, it will be turned over to the supporting counterintelligence element

*d* Correspondence forms

(1) EPW will use DA Form 2667-R (Prisoner of War Mail (Letter)) and DA Form 2668-R (Prisoner of War (Post Card)) for correspondence, except as authorized elsewhere in this regulation. DA Form 2667-R will be reproduced on 8 1/2-by 11-inch paper, head to head. DA Form 2668-R will be reproduced locally on 6-by 4-inch cards, head to foot. Copies for reproduction purposes are located at the back of this regulation. These forms are for the use of Army only. Legal documents may be written on blank paper instead of DA forms. Prisoner representatives may use ordinary paper in writing to

(a) The Protecting Power

(b) ICRC

(c) Other approved relief or aid organizations

(d) U.S. military authorities

(2) Except for official correspondence by prisoner representatives or unless required by HQDA, communication in two or more copies is prohibited.

(3) Camp commanders will distribute DA letter and card forms to EPW/RP.

(4) Upon completion of DA Form 4237-R, but not later than 1 week after arrival at a camp for processing, each EPW or RP will be permitted to send a DA Form 2666-R to a relative or next of kin.

(5) Within a period of not more than 1 week after arrival at the first EPW camp or when an EPW/RP's address is changed by transfer to a hospital or to another camp, a DA Form 2665-R (Capture Card for Prisoner of War) will be filled out and forwarded to the Branch PWIC. DA Form 2665-R will be reproduced locally on 6-by 4-inch card, head to foot, a copy for reproduction purposes is located at the back of this regulation. This form is for the use of Army only.

*e* Subject to (1) and (2) below, outgoing letters and cards will be sent unsealed directly from the camp to the theater commander's designated censorship element. All incoming letters and cards that arrive at a camp without having been censored will be sent to the designated censorship element before delivery to addressees.

(1) Communication to the Protecting Power or the ICRC. Letters and cards not intended for other addresses and not containing enclosure for other addresses will be forwarded directly from the camp to the proper Branch PWIC.

(2) Other correspondence. Outgoing letters and cards from a branch camp's EPW will be forwarded as soon as possible.

*f* Date and packaging of correspondence. Letters and cards will be forwarded without undue delay in pouches or in government envelopes.

(1) EPW/RP may not write letters for others who are able to write. If an EPW/RP is unable to write, the camp commander may

permit another person to write the message. The person doing the writing will countersign the message.

(2) EPW/RP legal documents may be enclosed with outgoing correspondence. When it becomes necessary for a detainee to send a legal document, the document and forwarding letter or card may be enclosed in a plain envelope.

(3) EPW/RP will not send maps, sketches, or drawings in outgoing correspondence.

*g* Individuals will not be permitted to mail or receive registered, certified, insured, or COD.

*h* Letters and cards to or from EPW/RP sent by ordinary mail are postage free.

*i* Outgoing letters and cards will be secured by using locked boxes or similar means. Only authorized U.S. personnel will handle outgoing mail. Incoming mail may be sorted by detainees when supervised by U.S. personnel.

*j* Censorship of EPW/RP mail may be instituted by the theater commander as follows:

(1) Outgoing letters and cards may be examined and read by the camp commander or his designated representative. No censorship action of any kind will be taken at the camp. The camp commander will return to the sender for rewriting any outgoing correspondence containing obvious deviations from regulations with a copy provided to the supporting counterintelligence element.

(2) Camp commanders will designate U.S. military personnel to supervise the opening of all mail pouches containing incoming letters and cards for detainees. These items will be carefully examined by the named personnel before delivery to detainees.

(3) EPW/CI wishing to make complaints concerning mail delivery must direct those complaints to

(a) The camp authorities

(b) The responsible major commander

(c) The Protecting Power/ICRC

*k* Parcels

(1) Persons may receive individual parcels and collective shipments containing

(a) Foodstuffs

(b) Clothing

(c) Medical supplies

(d) Articles of a religious, educational, or recreational nature

(2) EPW/RP will not be permitted to mail parcels (Article 16, 1974 Universal Postal Convention).

(3) Parcels received for transferred persons will be forwarded immediately.

(4) Nonperishable articles received for persons who have died or escaped, or who have been repatriated, will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC. Perishable items received for deceased or escaped persons will be released to the prisoner representative who will deliver them to the camp infirmary or hospital for the benefit of EPW/RP.

(5) The contents of all incoming parcels will be examined at the camp by a U.S. officer in the presence of the addressee or the named representative. When considered necessary, the camp commander may request that the parcel be examined by the censors. The articles in each parcel will be removed. The string, the inner wrappings, the outer container, and any extraneous items found in the parcel will not be turned over to the EPW/RP or the designated representative. Examination will be close enough to reveal concealed articles and messages, however, undue destruction of contents of parcels will be avoided.

*l* EPW/RP may send and receive telegrams as determined by the camp commander. They may not make or receive telephone calls.

(1) At a minimum

(a) A detainee who has not received mail from next of kin for 3 months may send a telegram. One month from the date a previous telegram was sent, a detainee who has not received a written answer or other communication from the addressee may send another telegram.

(b) Detainees unable to receive mail from their next of kin or send mail to them by ordinary postal routes, or who are a great

distance from their home, will be permitted to send one telegram a month

(c) A person who is seriously ill, or who has received news of serious illness or death in the family, may be permitted to send a telegram. The camp commander may authorize the sending of additional telegrams.

(2) The sending of telegrams as provided for in (1) above will be governed by the following

(a) The message proper will consist of not more than 15 words

(b) The cost of sending the telegram will be debited to the person's account

(c) Arrangements for messages going to or through enemy-occupied countries will be made with the ICRC Field Director

(d) Telegrams, as a general rule, shall be written in their native language

(e) No telegram will be sent to a Government official or to a Protecting Power

(f) Telegrams are subject to the same procedures for censorship listed in paragraph 3-5j(2)

m EPW/RP may receive books. Books that arrive at camps uncensored will be censored. Publications containing maps may be made available to the EPW/RP upon approval of the camp commander, provided they do not contain maps of the territory surrounding the camps. Books, included in parcels of clothing and foodstuffs, may be confiscated on order of the camp commander.

n The following may be made available to EPW/RP

(1) Current newspapers and magazines published in the English language and selected by the camp commander

(2) Unmarked, unused magazines in the English language, published in the United States, and distributed by approved relief or aid organizations at the discretion of the camp commanders after censorship

(3) Foreign language newspapers and magazines published in the United States, upon approval of the camp commander and after censorship of individual issues

(4) Newspapers and magazines published outside the United States, regardless of language, must be approved by the theater commander

### 3-6 Discipline and security

Measures needed to maintain discipline and security will be established in each camp and rigidly enforced. The camp commander will maintain records of disciplinary punishments. These records will be open to inspection by the Protecting Power.

a The following acts will not be permitted

(1) Fraternization between EPW, RP and U.S. military or civilian personnel. Fraternization is defined as improper or intimate communications or actions between U.S. Armed Forces personnel and EPW/RP.

(2) Donating or receiving gifts or engaging in any commercial activity between persons in U.S. custody and U.S. personnel.

(3) Setting up of courts by detainees. Disciplinary powers will not be delegated to or exercised by EPW/RP. Punishment will not be administered by EPW/RP.

b The GPW, regulations, orders, the contents of any special agreements and notices on the conduct and activities of detainees will be published in a language the detainee understands. They will be posted in places within each camp where the detainees may read them and will be made available to persons who do not have access to posted copies. Additional copies will be given to the prisoner representatives. Every order and command will be addressed to detainees personally. The supporting EPW/CI PSYOP unit may assist in providing necessary printed, loudspeaker, or other audio-visual support in communicating directly to EPW/RP. To protect persons from acts of violence, bodily injury, and threats of reprisals at the hands of fellow detainees, a copy of the following notice in the detainees' language will be posted in every compound.

#### NOTICE

EPW/RP who fear that their lives are in danger or that they may

suffer physical injury at the hands of other EPW/RP will immediately report the fact personally to any U.S. Armed Forces Personnel of this camp without consulting the EPW/CI representative. From that time on, the camp commander will assure adequate protection to such EPW/RP by segregation, transfer, or other means. EPW/RP who mistreat fellow detainees will be punished.

Signed (Commanding Officer)

c The following military courtesies are required of EPW

(1) When the U.S. national anthem is played or "To the Colors" or "Retreat" is sounded, EPW not in buildings will stand at attention and face toward the music or colors.

(2) Besides the courtesies required in their own armies toward their officers, enlisted EPW will salute all commissioned officers of the U.S. Armed Forces. Officer EPW will be required to salute only officers of a higher rank and the camp commander regardless of grade.

(3) EPW may salute in the way prescribed by regulations in force in their own armies.

(4) Other military courtesies will be rendered per AR 600-25 (Salutes, Honors, and Visits of Courtesy) and FM-22-5 (Drill and Ceremonies).

d U.S. military personnel will extend the following courtesies toward EPW

(1) U.S. military personnel will not be required to salute EPW or assume the position of attention when addressing them, however, U.S. officers will return the salutes of EPW.

(2) When addressing senior officer EPW on official business, U.S. military personnel will be courteous and extend the respect due them by grade and age.

e Flags upon which an enemy political emblem or device appears will be seized. EPW/RP will not have any political emblem, insignia, flag, or picture of political leaders. Badges of grade and nationality, and decoration worn as part of the uniform are permitted. EPW/RP may have pictures of political leaders that appear in magazines, books, and newspapers if the pictures are not removed.

f Security guidelines outlined below concern the custody and use of EPW/RP

(1) *Guard work details.* EPW on work details will be guarded as required to provide security against escape. Selected EPW/RP may be employed without guards in areas where military personnel are on duty if

(a) EPW/RP are under a U.S. work supervisor

(b) Frequent counts of detainees and work inspections are made at irregular intervals

(2) *Preventing escape.* The camp commander will ensure that each EPW/RP understands the meaning of the English word "halt". If EPW/RP attempt to escape, the guard will shout "halt" three times, thereafter the guard will use the least amount of force necessary to halt the EPW/RP. If there is no other effective means of preventing escape, deadly force may be used.

(a) In an attempted escape from a fenced enclosure, a prisoner will not be fired at unless he/she has cleared the outside fence and is making further effort to escape.

(b) EPW/RP attempting to escape outside a fenced enclosure will be fired on if they do not halt after the third command to halt.

(c) An EPW/RP will have succeeded in escaping when he or she has

1. Joined the armed forces of the power on which he or she depends or those of an ally of that power.

2. Left the territory under U.S. control or control of U.S. allied powers.

3. Joined a ship flying the flag of the power on which he or she depends, or of an ally of that power, in U.S. territorial waters, and the ship is not under U.S. control.



(d) An EPW who has successfully escaped shall not be punished for the escape if subsequently recaptured

### 3-7. Punitive Jurisdiction

a EPW/RP are subject to punishment under the Uniform Code of Military Justice and other U S Laws, regulations and orders in force during the time of their detention

b Judicial proceedings against EPW and RP will be by courts-martial or by civil courts When EPW are tried by courts-martial, pretrial, trial, and post-trial procedures will be according to the UCMJ and the U S Manual for Courts-Martial An EPW will not be tried by a civil court for committing an offense unless a member of the U S Armed Forces would be so tried

c When possible, disciplinary rather than judicial measures will be taken for an offense The disciplinary measures below are authorized

(1) Suspend or eliminate privileges granted over and above the minimum privileges provided for in the GPW and GC

(2) Confinement

(3) A fine not to exceed one-half of the advance of pay (article 60 GPW) and working pay (article 62 GPW) that the detainee would otherwise receive during a period of not more than 30 days

(4) Fatigue duties not exceeding 2 hours daily Thus punishment will not be applied to officers

d EPW and RP rights Before any disciplinary punishment is pronounced, EPW/RP will be given precise information regarding the offenses for which they are accused They will be given a chance to explain their conduct and to defend themselves They will be permitted to call witnesses and to have use of a qualified interpreter, if necessary and reasonably available The board's decision will be announced to the person and to the person's representative

e The following are limitations on punishment

(1) Collective punishment for individual acts, corporal punishment, imprisonment in premises without sunlight, and any form of torture or cruelty is forbidden

(2) EPW may not be deprived of their grade or prevented from wearing insignia of grade and nationality

(3) No EPW or RP will be handcuffed or tied, except to ensure safe custody or when prescribed by a responsible medical officer as needed to control a medical case requiring restraint

(4) No EPW or RP may be punished more than once for the same act or sentenced to any penalties except those authorized herein

(5) In no case will disciplinary punishments be inhumane, brutal, or dangerous to the person's health The length of a single disciplinary punishment will not exceed 30 days Confinement served while awaiting the hearing of a disciplinary offense or the award of disciplinary punishment will be deducted from punishment awarded No more than 30 days punishment may be prescribed even if a person is answerable for several acts at the same time This is true whether such acts are related or not The period between pronouncing an award of disciplinary punishment and commencing punishment will not exceed 30 days

(6) When EPW or RP are awarded a further disciplinary punishment, a period of at least 3 days will elapse between punishments if the length of one of the punishments is 10 days or more

(7) EPW or RP being disciplined or judicially punished will not be subjected to more severe treatment than that authorized for the same offense by members of the U S Armed Forces of equal grade

(8) EPW or RP sentenced by a courts-martial or awarded disciplinary punishment will not be treated differently from other detainees after their punishment

f Offenses and warranted punishments EPW or RP who attempt to escape or escape the confines of the camp, but who do not succeed in their escape, will be liable only to disciplinary punishments for those escape acts They will not be liable to judicial proceedings, even if they are repeat offenders Escapes or attempts to escape, even if they are repeat offenses, will not be considered aggravating circumstances if detainees are tried by judicial proceedings for offenses committed during their escapes or attempts to

escape Offenses, such as those against public property, theft without intention of self-enrichment, drawing up or use of false papers, or wearing of civilian clothing, that are committed by detainees with the sole intent of making their escape easier and that do not entail any violence against life or limb will warrant disciplinary punishment only Because of attempts to escape, EPW and RP may be subjected to close watch The watch must not affect the state of their health The EPW and RP watched must be in camp The watch must not deprive them of the safeguards granted by the Geneva Conventions Persons who aid or abet an escape or an attempt to escape will be liable on this count for disciplinary punishment only

g Offenses against discipline EPW and RP accused of an offense against disciplinary measures will not be confined pending a hearing, unless members of the U S Armed Forces would be confined if they were accused of a similar offense or unless camp order and discipline would be jeopardized A period spent in confinement awaiting disposal of an offense against disciplinary measures will be reduced to an absolute minimum It will not exceed 14 days

h Confinement A pretrial investigation of an offense alleged to have been committed by a detainee will be conducted as soon as circumstances permit so that trial, if warranted, will take place as soon as possible A detainee will not be confined while awaiting trial unless a member of the U S Armed Forces would be so confined if accused of a similar offense, or unless national security would be served In no case will this confinement exceed 3 months A period spent in confinement while awaiting trial will be deducted from a sentence of imprisonment The period will be taken into account in fixing a penalty

i Retention of Geneva Convention benefits Persons prosecuted for an act committed before capture will retain, even if convicted, the protection of the Geneva Conventions EPW, RP undergoing confinement will

(1) Continue to enjoy the benefits of the Geneva Convention except when such benefits do not apply because detainees are confined

(2) Be permitted to exercise their right to complain and to confer with visiting representatives of the Protecting Power

(3) Not be deprived of the prerogatives attached to their grade

(4) Be allowed to exercise and to stay in the open air at least 2 hours daily

(5) Be given medical attention as prescribed in this regulation

(6) Be permitted to read and write and to send and receive letters and cards Parcels, however, may be withheld from them until the punishment is completed Such parcels will be released to the safe-keeping of the detainee representative If perishable goods are contained in the parcels, the detainee representative will give them to the camp infirmary or hospital to distribute them fairly among the other detainees

### 3-8 Judicial proceedings

a No EPW or RP will be tried or sentenced for an act that was not forbidden by U S law or by international law in force at the time the act was committed

b No moral or physical coercion will be exerted to induce EPW or RP to admit guilt for any act

c No EPW or RP will be convicted without having had the chance to present a defense and without having the assistance of a qualified advocate or counsel

d Accused persons will be notified promptly of the charges in writing Charges will be in a language understood by the accused These persons will be tried as soon as possible A notification (in duplicate) of proceedings against a detainee will be submitted through channels to the NPWIC The NPWIC will send such notification to the Protecting Power in cases of charges involving the death penalty or imprisonment for 2 years or more Upon request, the Protecting Power will be furnished data on the status of such proceedings Furthermore, the Protecting Power will be entitled, upon request, to be furnished with all data or any other proceedings started against a detainee The information will be sent without delay Trial will not commence until 3 weeks after the Protecting

Power has been notified Unless evidence is submitted at the opening of the trial that this regulation has been fully complied with, the trial will not proceed The following information will be provided

(1) Surname and first name, grade, if proper, ISN, date of birth, and profession, trade, or prior civil capacity of the detainee

(2) Place of internment or confinement

(3) Specification of the charges with penal provisions under which they are brought

(4) Designation of the court that will hear the case

*e* The EPW representatives will be informed of all judicial proceedings against EPW and RP and the results of the proceedings Records of trials will be kept by the first Staff Judge Advocates General office in the internment facility's chain of command These records will be open to inspection by representatives of the Protecting Power

*f* In each trial by court-martial, accused persons will be entitled to assistance by one of his prisoner comrades, a qualified advocate or counsel of their own choice, to the calling of witnesses, and services of a competent interpreter, if needed. The commander concerned will appoint a Judge Advocate to serve as defense counsel in addition to any other counsel of the accused person's choice The commander concerned will notify the accused person of these rights in ample time before the trial

(1) If the accused does not exercise the right to choose an advocate or counsel, notice to that effect will be sent through the NPWIC to the Protecting Power to permit the Protecting Power to choose counsel If the accused and the Protecting Power fail to choose an advocate or counsel, the commander concerned shall appoint a counsel, which in normal circumstances will be the judge advocate previously appointed The accused person must consent to the service of the appointed advocate or counsel

(2) If requested by the accused person, the commander concerned will appoint an interpreter to assist the accused person during the preliminary hearing and the hearing in court The interpreter must not be a trial counsel, a defense counsel, an assistant to either, a witness, or have any bias or interest in the case Accused persons have the right to object to the interpreter appointed, and to ask for a replacement

(3) A judge advocate will serve as defense counsel in any general or special court-martial of an EPW/RP

*g* Representatives of the Protecting Power may attend the trial It may be decided that in the interest of security, the trial will be conducted with the public excluded If so, a notice will be given to NPWIC at least 3 weeks before the trial opens to permit notice to the Protecting Power

*h* Two copies of the findings and the sentence, if applicable, will be forwarded immediately to NPWIC A summary will be sent to the Protecting Power, and the detainee representative Notice of the EPW, RP decision to use or waive the right of appeal to the Court of Appeals for the Armed Forces, when review by that court is not mandatory, will also be forwarded (in duplicate) to HQDA (DAMO-ODL), NPWIC, WASH, DC 20310-0400 NPWIC will send a copy of the decision to the Protecting Power An EPW, RP waiver of the right to appeal will in no way affect, or change the requirement for, review by a supervisory authority, a board of review, or the U S Court of Military Appeals when such review is required under the UCMJ If the sentence adjudged is death, one copy of the court-martial record of trial will be forwarded to ODCSOPS, NPWIC NPWIC will send a copy of the record of trial to the Protecting Power The following information will be included

(1) A precise wording of the approved finding and sentence

(2) A summary report of the evidence, including any preliminary investigation, elements of offenses, and any defense raised thereto

(3) If applicable, the place where the detainee will serve confinement

*i* A sentence to confinement imposed on EPW, or RP will be served in the same type of place and under the same conditions as in the case of a member of the U S Armed Forces EPW and RP sentenced to U S Disciplinary Barracks (USDB) or Federal penitentiaries will remain EPW/RP Accountability requirements will be

coordinated prior to any transfer by the losing commander and Commandant, USDB through HQDA (DAMO-ODL) NPWIC Accused persons and the Protecting Power will be informed as soon as possible of all offenses that are punishable by the death sentence under U S laws Lists of these offenses will be posted in all camps Duplicate lists will be given to detainee representatives Other offenses will not thereafter be made punishable by the death penalty without the concurrence of the power on which the detainee depends

(1) An EPW or RP can be sentenced to death only if the court has taken into consideration, to the maximum extent possible, the fact that the accused is not a US citizen and is not bound to it by any duty or allegiance and is in US custody as a result of circumstances beyond their own will or control

(2) If the death sentence is pronounced, it will not be carried out until 6 months have passed from the date the Protecting Power received the U S notice of the judgment and sentence

(3) ODCSOPS will monitor and acknowledge when the ICRC/Protecting Power has received the notice permitting the execution of the sentence

### 3-9. Loss or damage to property

*a* Persons will be held responsible for the loss of, or damage to, any Government property through negligence or wrongful acts A complaint may be made to the installation commander that property of a private person has been destroyed, lost, or damaged by a person interned at the installation, including any branch camp If the EPW, RP does not accept responsibility for the damage, the commander will appoint a board of one to three officers to investigate the complaint

*b* Reports of survey or statements of charges will be processed according to AR 735-5 For this purpose, the commanding officer of an internment facility will be considered an installation commander Amounts collected will be disposed of according to AR 735-5

*c* Supporting EPW/CI PSYOP units can assist the commanding officer in improving relations with local populations following loss or damage to private property

### 3-10. Death and burial

*a* For general procedures and authorized expenses for the care and disposition of remains, see AR 638-30 and AR 600-8-1

*b* When EPW and RP have chosen to make a will, the original will and two certified copies will be forwarded to the supporting PWIC upon death or at their request

*c* When an EPW or RP in U S custody dies, the attending medical officer will immediately furnish the camp (or hospital) commander or other officer charged with their custody before death, the following information

(1) Full name of deceased

(2) ISN of deceased

(3) Date, place, and cause of death

(4) Statement that death was, or was not, the result of the deceased's own misconduct

(5) When the cause of death is undetermined, the attending medical officer will make a statement to that effect When the cause of death is finally determined, a supplemental report will be made

*d* The camp or hospital commander, or other officer charged with custody of the person before death, will notify the proper Branch PWIC immediately, by telegram or the most expeditious means, of the death The data listed in subparagraph c above will be included If the required data has not been determined, a supplemental report will be made as soon as possible

*e* The attending medical officer and the appropriate camp commander will complete a DA Form 2669-R (Certificate of Death) DA Form 2669-R will be reproduced locally on 8 1/2 by 11-inch paper The form is located at the back of this regulation This form is for the use of Army only Enough copies of form will be made out to provide distribution as follows

(1) Original—information center

(2) Copy—information center (branch), if necessary

(3) Copy—The Surgeon General

(4) Copy—EPW or RP personal file

(5) The proper civil authorities responsible for recording deaths in the particular state if the EPW dies in the United States

*f* Investigating officer's report

(1) The camp commander will appoint an officer to investigate and report

*(a)* Each death or serious injury caused by guards or suspected to have been caused by guards or sentries, another detainee, or any other person

*(b)* Each suicide or death resulting from unnatural or unknown causes

(2) One copy of the investigating officer's report will be forwarded to the NPWIC

(3) USACIDC special agents will investigate deaths from other than natural causes per AR 195-2. A copy of the USACIDC report of investigation, if any, will be attached to the camp commander's report.

*g* Burial, record of internment, and cremation. Deceased detainees will be buried honorably in a cemetery established for them according to AR 638-30. Deceased detainees will be buried, if possible, according to the rites of their religion and customs of their military forces. Unless unavoidable circumstances require the use of collective (group or mass) graves, detainees will be buried individually. Graves Registration Services will record any later movement of the remains. The United States will also care for the ashes of cremated persons. Ashes will be kept by Graves Registration Service persons until proper disposal can be decided according to the wishes of the power on which that person depended. A body may be cremated only due to imperative hygiene reasons, the detainee's religion, or the detainee's request for cremation. When a body is cremated, this fact together with the reasons will be set forth in the death certificate.

*h* Burial at sea and after land transfer. If a detainee dies at sea, the body will not be buried there unless absolutely necessary. If the body has to be buried at sea, the procedures prescribed for U.S. troops will be followed as far as possible, however, a U.S. flag will not be used. When death occurs during a land transfer, the responsible officer will follow the same procedures for burial prescribed for U.S. military personnel.

*i* The personnel file of a deceased person with all pertinent records will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC.

### 3-11 Transfer of prisoners of war

*a* General. Permanent transfer of EPW in the custody of the U.S. forces to the host nation or other allied forces requires approval of the Secretary of Defense (SECDEF). The permanent transfer of EPW to foreign national control will be governed by bilateral national agreement and in accordance with subparagraph *b* below following SECDEF approval. Temporary transfer of EPW/RP to accommodate surges in prisoner population beyond the immediate capability of U.S. forces to manage is authorized. Theater commanders will develop measures to ensure accountability and humane treatment of prisoners so transferred.

*b* EPW/RP may only be transferred from the custody of the United States to a power which is a party to the GPW, and only after a representative of the United States has visited the Power's internment facilities and is satisfied that the Power in question is willing and able to apply the GPW. EPW/RP transfers should not increase the difficulty of repatriation. Prisoners of war during transfer will have sufficient food and drinking water to keep them in good health, and will be provided adequate clothing, shelter, and medical attention. Precautions will be taken, especially in case of transport by sea or by air, to ensure their safety during transfer. A complete list of all transferred prisoners will be made before their departure and maintained by the Branch PWIC.

*c* The supporting Branch PWIC and NPWIC will be notified immediately by the EPW camp commander of any EPW or RP transferred.

*d* Transfer within the territory of the detaining power will always be carried out humanely and in conditions no less favorable

than those enjoyed by the troops of the detaining power during their movements. If EPW/RP are transferred on foot, only those who are fit to walk may be so transferred. The EPW/RP will not be exposed to excessive fatigue during transfer by foot.

*e* The sick, wounded, or infirm EPW and RP as well as maternity cases will be evacuated through U.S. military medical channels and will remain in medical channels until they are certified "fit for normal internment" by competent medical authorities.

*f* Necessary clothing, adequate shelter, and medical attention will be made available.

*g* Suitable precautions will be taken to prevent EPW and RP, from escaping and to ensure their safety. Wounded and sick EPW and RP will not be transferred as long as their recovery may be endangered by the journey, unless their safety demands it.

*h* The EPW and RP will be permitted to take with them their personal effects and property. The weight of their baggage may be limited if the conditions of transfer so require, but in no case will it be limited to less than 55 pounds per EPW/RP. The personal property that the EPW and RP are unable to carry will be forwarded separately.

*i* The mail and parcels addressed to EPW and RP who have been transferred will be forwarded to them without delay.

*j* Property, such as that used for religious services, or items donated by welfare agencies, will be forwarded as community property. These items are not to be considered a part of the 55 pounds of personal effects and property that each EPW is authorized to take.

*k* When EPW and RP are to be transferred, they will be notified of their new postal addresses before departure. Notice will be given in time to pack and tag their luggage. They will also be given time to inform their next of kin and the Branch PWIC of their transfer and new address.

*l* EPW and RP will not be confined in a jail or other correctional institution during transfer except in an emergency. They will be confined only in such fashion while the circumstances that necessitate the measures continue to exist. Transfer will be effected under conditions not less favorable than those under which U.S. Armed Forces are transferred.

*m* Receipt of transferred EPW/RP

(1) EPW and RP will not be accepted for detainment or transfer to U.S. Military control from outside nations without prior approval from SECDEF. EPW and RP received by transfer from an allied nation will be properly receipted for by the officer designated to accept them. The receipt will indicate the place and date the United States assumed custody and the name, grade, ISN, and nationality of each transferred EPW and RP. Three or more copies of the receipt will be prepared. The original, plus one copy, will be delivered to the commander of the camp to which the EPW and RP are assigned. Upon receiving the copies, the camp commander will forward immediately one copy directly to the Branch PWIC, or to the NPWIC if the Branch PWIC is not operational. A DA Form 4237-R or an allied equivalent form for individuals listed on the receipt should be delivered to the accepting officer at the time the transfer is effected.

(2) EPW and RP transferred between EPW facilities and hospitals will be receipted for as above when there is little chance that the EPW/RP will be returned to the original camp. When EPW and RP are transferred to hospitals outside the jurisdiction of the EPW/CI camp, the hospital commander is required to submit their strength accountability reports to the supporting branch PWIC.

(3) The use of a manifest identifying the name, rank/status, ISN, power served/nationality, and physical condition of each EPW and RP transferred and received is required. The manifest will be attached to the original receipt of transfer and forwarded to the Branch PWIC.

*n* EPW and RP captured or detained by the U.S. Marine Corps, Navy, Air Force, or Coast Guard are turned over to the U.S. Army at receiving points designated by the Theater Commander.

(1) All inter-service transfers should be effected as soon as possible after initial classification and administrative processing has been accomplished.

(2) CI will only be transferred within theater, unless directed by DOD.

(3) A manifest is required to identify as a minimum the name, rank/status, ISN (if assigned), power served/nationality, and physical condition of each EPW and RP transferred and received. The manifest will be attached to the receipt of transfer and will become a permanent record to assure accountability of each prisoner.

*o* When EPW are moved to a port of debarkation from an interior point, the theater commander will provide for:

(1) Transportation of the EPW up to and including their departure from the port.

(2) Care and security of the EPW, their baggage, monies, other valuables, and records until their custody is assumed by the CONUS EPW command.

*p* Transfers between Army commands. The EPW's command, with the advice of military medical authority, is authorized to transfer injured, sick, and wounded EPW to other commands.

*q* Transfer of personal effects.

(1) Each EPW and retained person will be permitted to hand carry personal effects and property not to exceed 55 pounds.

(2) EPW/RP who have been serving as chaplains or clergymen during their internment will be permitted to transfer, at Government expense, an additional 110 pounds to take other religious materials with them.

*r* The transfer of physically disabled, insane, mentally incompetent, or wounded EPW/RP in a theater of operations will be according to procedures set up by the Theater Commander.

*s* When a railroad car other than an US Military-owned or operated hospital car is used to transfer EPW or RP patients, Red Cross signs will be placed on the inside of the middle window of each side of the car and on the inside of each door window of the car. These signs will be made of white paper or cardboard with a large red cross in the center of the sign. The word "hospital" will be placed above, and the word "car" below the red cross, in black letters. When EPW/RP patients are transferred in a compartment, drawing room, bedroom, or roomette, a sign as described above, with the exception of the word "car," in proportionate dimensions will be placed on the outside of the door of the compartment, drawing room, bedroom, or roomette.

*t* Theater commanders are subject to the general restrictions on transfers contained in this regulation. They may transfer injured, sick, or wounded EPW who are within their commands to or from hospitals designated by the theater surgeon or Commander, HSC with guidance from the Joint Medical Regulation Office (JMRO) or the Theater Patient Movement Requirements Center (TPMRC) if:

(1) The EPW requires prolonged hospitalization or specialized treatment, including surgery, that is not available locally.

(2) The transfer is recommended by a medical officer after an examination of the EPW.

*u* When EPW no longer require hospital care, they may be returned to the command from which transferred or to an EPW camp within the receiving command.

### 3-12 Repatriation of sick and wounded EPW/RP

*a* Sick and wounded prisoners will be processed and their eligibility determined for repatriation or accommodation in a neutral country during hostilities. Both will be according to the procedures set forth below:

(1) Sick and wounded prisoners will not be repatriated against their will during hostilities.

(2) Procedures for a Mixed Medical Commission will be established by HQDA, according to this regulation and Annex II of the GPW. The purpose of the Commission will be to determine cases eligible for repatriation. The Mixed Medical Commission will be composed of three members. Two of the members, appointed by the ICRC and approved by the parties to the conflict, will be from a neutral country. As far as possible, one of the neutral members will be a surgeon and the other a physician. The third member will be a medical officer of the US Army selected by HQDA. One of the members from the neutral country will act as chairman.

*b* If for any reason the use of neutral doctors cannot be arranged for by the ICRC, the United States, acting in agreement with the

Protecting Power concerned, will set up a Medical Commission. This Commission will perform the duties of a Mixed Medical Commission.

*c* The Mixed Medical Commission will:

(1) Examine EPW, and RP who have applied for repatriation.

(2) Inspect clinical records pertaining to these EPW.

(3) Determine those cases eligible for repatriation or hospitalization in a neutral country.

*d* Decisions made by the Mixed Medical Commission will be a majority vote and cannot be changed to the detriment of the EPW and RP examined, except upon concurrence of the Commission.

*e* The decisions made by the Mixed Medical Commission on all cases will be communicated to HQDA (DAMO-ODL), NPWIC, the Protecting Power, and the ICRC, during the month following the Commission's visit. Each EPW and RP examined will be informed by the Mixed Medical Commission of the decision made on the case.

*f* The United States will carry out the decisions of the Mixed Medical Commission as soon as possible and within 3 months of the time after it receives due notice of the decisions.

*g* The US member will arrange all administrative details to expedite the work of the Commission. Commanders concerned will assist, facilitate, and expedite the operations of the Commission to the fullest extent.

*h* The EPW and RP noted below will be examined by the Mixed Medical Commission:

(1) EPW and RP designated by a camp or hospital surgeon or a retained physician or surgeon who is exercising the functions of the surgeon in a camp.

(2) EPW and RP whose applications are submitted by a prisoner representative.

(3) EPW and RP recommended for examination by the power on which the EPW and RP depend or by an organization duly recognized by that power and that gives assistance to them.

(4) EPW, RP who submit written requests. These EPW will not be examined until the EPW listed in (1), (2), and (3) above have been examined.

*i* An EPW or RP found ineligible by the Mixed Medical Commission may apply for reexamination 3 months after the last examination.

*j* Each commander will be notified before arrival of the Commission. Before arrival of the Commission at a camp, hospital, or other designated place, the commander will prepare DA Form 2670-R (Mixed Medical Commission Certificate for EPW) and update and make available the records. For each EPW and RP to be examined, DA Form 2670-R will be completed in four copies. DA Form 2670-R will be locally reproduced on 8 1/2 by 11-inch paper. This form is located at the back of this regulation. This form is for the use of Army only.

*k* The commanding officers of designated hospitals will complete DA Form 2671-R (Certificate of Direct Repatriation for EPW) and forward to the Branch PWIC. DA Form 2671-R will be locally reproduced on 8 1/2 by 11-inch paper. The form is located at the back of this publication. This form is for the use of Army only. The certificate will be in four copies to:

(1) Make the repatriation of sick and wounded EPW, RP easier.

(2) Relieve the Mixed Medical Commission of the need to visit EPW and RP patients who are eligible for direct repatriation.

*l* The following EPW and RP are eligible for direct repatriation:

(1) EPW and RP suffering from disabilities as a result of injury, loss of limb, paralysis, or other disabilities, when these disabilities are at least the loss of a hand or foot, or the equivalent.

(2) Sick or wounded EPW and RP whose conditions have become chronic to the extent that prognosis appears to preclude recovery in spite of treatment within 1 year from inception of disease or date of injury.

*m* The original and one copy of DA Form 2671-R will be forwarded to ODCSOPS, NPWIC. The other two copies will be attached to the clinical record. In all instances, these records will accompany the records of the EPW or RP when transferred.

### 3-13. Repatriation of other EPW/RP

Prisoners who are not sick or wounded will be repatriated or released at the cessation of hostilities as directed by OSD

### 3-14. Repatriation transfer procedures

a Control and accountability of EPW and RP will be maintained until the EPW or RP is received for by the serving power or designated protecting power

b The use of a manifest identifying at the minimum, name, rank/status, ISN, power served/nationality, and physical condition of each EPW and RP transferred is required. The manifest will be used as an official receipt of transfer and will become a permanent record to assure accountability of each EPW and RP until final release

c Copies of appropriate personnel, finance, and medical records will accompany the released and/or repatriated EPW/RP. These records will be transferred to the custody of the designated official receiving for the EPW/RP

d All confiscated personal property that can be released, will accompany the released or repatriated EPW/RP. An inventory will be conducted and any discrepancies identified. The individual will sign a property receipt for his personal items

e Upon completion of the transfer, the U.S. escort guard will forward the official receipt of transfer to the Branch PWIC

f Upon notification from the PWIC that the transfer is complete, the losing EPW or RP internment facility will forward all official records and confiscated property that cannot be released to the Branch PWIC for final disposition

g The PWIC will

(1) Notify the NPWIC of final status of released/ repatriated EPW and RP

(2) Forward all EPW and RP records and reports per AR 25-400-2, The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS)

(3) Dispose of confiscated property in their possession per instructions received from the NPWIC and applicable Army Regulations

### 3-15 Retained personnel

a Enemy personnel entitled to a retained status should have on their person at the time of capture a special identity card attesting to their status. The minimum data shown on the card will be the name, date of birth, grade, and service number of the bearer. The card will state in what capacity the bearer is entitled to the protection of GPW. The card will also bear the photograph of the owner and either the signature or fingerprints or both. It will be embossed with the stamp of the military authority with which the person was serving at time of capture

b Enemy personnel who fall within any of the following categories, are eligible to be certified as RP

(1) Medical personnel who are members of the medical service of their armed forces

(2) Medical personnel who are exclusively engaged in

(a) The search for or the collection, transport, or treatment of the wounded or sick

(b) The prevention of disease

(c) Staffs exclusively engaged in administering medical units and establishments

(3) Chaplains

(4) The staff of the National Red Cross, Red Crescent, and other voluntary aid organizations. These organizations must be duly recognized and authorized by their governments. The staff of these organizations may be employed on the same duties as persons in (2) above, if such organizations are subject to military laws and regulations

c RP whose status is certified will not be considered as EPW, however, they will receive the benefits and protection of an EPW

d EPW who are certified to be proficient medically or religiously continue to be considered and identified as EPW, as appropriate, but will be administered and treated in the same way prescribed for RP. Enemy personnel who are classified in these

categories and are determined qualified by competent Army authority are eligible to be certified as proficient to perform medical or religious duties

(1) EPW who are ministers of religion, however, they have not officiated as chaplains to their own forces

(2) Specially trained EPW, employed at the time of their capture as hospital orderlies, nurses, or auxiliary stretcher-bearers, in search for, or in collecting, transporting, or treating of the wounded and sick. These EPW are not eligible for RP status but may be employed only on medical duties they are qualified to perform

e Certification of the retained status of personnel will be effected upon the decision that the special identity card held by each such person is valid and authentic. This certification will be decided, if possible, at the time of processing by the camp commander

f The Theater Commander, or CINCUSACOM will confirm the certification of the technical proficiency of the persons described in paragraph 3-15d. Qualified U.S. Military medical and religious personnel must first confirm the medical or religious proficiency of each EPW

g Classification forms will be completed as follows

(1) DA Form 2672-R (Classification Questionnaire for Officer Retained Personnel) will be completed in three copies by captured officers and civilians of equal grade who have or

(a) Claim RP status

(b) Are applicants for a certificate of medical proficiency. DA Form 2672-R will be locally reproduced on 8 1/2 by 11-inch paper. The form is located at the back of this publication. This form is for the use of Army only

(2) DA Form 2673-R (Classification Questionnaire for Enlisted Retained Personnel) will be completed in three copies by all captured enlisted persons and civilians of equal grade who have or are applicants for a certificate of medical proficiency. DA Form 2673-R will be locally reproduced on 8 1/2 by 11-inch paper. The form is located at the back of this publication. This form is for the use of Army only

h The camp commander will retain one copy of each of the forms noted in subparagraph g above. The second will be forwarded to the next higher commander. The third copy will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC

i Verifications of retained status and religious or medical proficiency will be recorded on the DA Form 4237-R of the person concerned. Denials of claims to retained status or certification of proficiency will also be recorded together with a brief statement of the reason

j RP are subject to the internal discipline of the camp in which they are retained, however, they may not be compelled to do any work except that relating to their medical or religious duties

k RP, who are members of the enemy's Armed Forces, will be assigned to EPW camps. If available, they will be assigned in the ratio of two physicians, two nurses, one chaplain, and seven enlisted medical personnel per 1,000 EPW. Economy of medical staffing may be achieved at higher levels per guidance from Commanding General, HSC. As much as possible, these RP will be assigned to camps containing EPW from the same Armed Forces upon which the RP depend

l CINCs, Task Force Commanders, Joint Task Force Commanders are authorized to transfer RP and EPW who are qualified to perform medical or religious duties between EPW camps within their jurisdiction in order to distribute them equitably

m Subject to security requirements the theater commander will ensure

(1) Full use of enemy medical personnel for the treatment of sick and wounded EPW/RP

(2) Release of U.S. medical personnel, when possible, from caring for sick and wounded EPW except for supervision and training of enemy medical personnel

n The senior medical officer in each camp will provide close and continuing supervision of the professional activities of the retained medical persons and report all improper activities

o RP will not be allowed access to or custody of narcotic drugs or other controlled substances as delineated in Title 21, United

States Code, except under close supervision of U S medical personnel

*p* EPW camp surgeons or hospital commanders in which retained persons are used will verify

- (1) Accuracy of the final diagnosis
- (2) Adequacy of treatment

(3) Final disposition of patients treated by RP

*q* While caring for the sick and wounded, RP will receive the same daily rate of pay as is received by EPW

*r* Monthly allowances for RP will be the same as those prescribed for EPW of the same rank

*s* RP may be detained in EPW camps. When practical, they will be assigned quarters separate from EPW

*t* RP will wear on their left sleeve a water resistant arm band bearing the distinctive emblem (Red Cross, Red Crescent) issued and stamped by the military authority of the power with which they have served. Authorized persons who do not have such armbands in their possession will be provided with Geneva Convention brassards (AR 670-1)

*u* RP will enjoy the same correspondence privileges as EPW. Chaplains will be free to correspond, subject to censorship, on matters about their religious duties. Correspondence may be with ecclesiastical authorities both in the country where they are retained and in the country on which they depend, and with international religious organizations. RP will be authorized the following additional privileges

(1) They will be granted facilities necessary to provide EPW with medical care, spiritual assistance, and welfare services

(2) They will be authorized to visit EPW periodically in branch camps and in hospitals outside the EPW camps in order to carry out their medical, spiritual, or welfare duties

(3) They will be given the necessary means of transportation for making such visits

(4) The senior retained medical officer, as well as chaplains, will have the right to correspond and consult with the camp commander or his or her authorized representatives on all questions about their duties

*v* RP are subject to the same disciplinary measures as are EPW

*w* RP will be retained only insofar as the state of health, the spiritual needs, and the number of EPW require. Persons whose retention is not required will be repatriated as soon as military requirements permit. Nothing precludes reasonable measures to prevent such persons from carrying information of strategic or tactical value. Should they come into possession of such information, their return to their own armed force may be delayed until the information is of no significant value

### **3-16 Complaints and requests to camp commanders**

*a* EPW and RP have the right to make complaints and requests to camp commanders and the ICRC/protecting powers regarding the conditions of their internment. EPW and RP may not be punished for making complaints, even if those complaints later prove unfounded. Complaints will be received in confidence, as they might endanger the safety of other detainees. Appropriate action, including segregation, will be taken to protect detainees when necessary. This policy also applies to persons who are confined pending trial or as a result of a trial

*b* EPW and RP may take complaints or requests to the camp commander

*c* Persons exercising the right to complain to the ICRC or protecting power about their treatment and camp may do so

- (1) By mail
- (2) In person to the visiting representatives of the ICRC or protecting power
- (3) Through their detainee representative

*d* Written complaints to the protecting power will be forwarded promptly through HQDA, ODCSOPS (DAMO-ODL) NPWIC. A separate letter with the camp commander's comments will be included. Military endorsements will not be placed on a detainee's communication.

*e* If an ICRC/protecting power communicates directly with an EPW/CI camp commander about any matter requiring an answer, the communication and commander's reply will be forwarded to HQDA, ODCSOPS (DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, for proper action

*f* Any act or allegation of inhumane treatment will be investigated and, if substantiated, reported to HQDA as a Serious Incident Report (SIR) per AR 190-40. Once completed, a copy of the SIR accompanies the prisoner to the EPW/CI camp, and a copy is furnished to the monitoring Branch PWIC. All available pertinent information that the EPW or RP is willing to give, will be entered on the form

### **3-17. EPW/RP safety program**

A safety program for EPW and RP will be set up and administered in each EPW camp. Army regulations, circulars, and pamphlets in the 385-series may be used as guides for establishing an EPW and RP safety program. Accident injury forms used in the EPW and RP safety programs will be prepared, administered, and maintained separately from those prepared for other persons included under the Army Safety Program

## **Chapter 4 Employment and Compensation for EPWs**

### **Section I General Policy and Guidelines**

#### **4-1 General principles**

*a* To the extent possible, EPW will be employed in work needed to construct, administer, manage, and maintain EPW camps. EPW will be employed in other essential work permitted by this regulation only when qualified civilian labor is not available. Essential work is work that must be done, despite the availability of EPW

*b* EPW labor, external to DOD, is regulated by contract. When authorized by theater directives, EPW, RP may be given advance pay. Procedures for administering this advance pay are set forth in AR 37-1

#### **4-2 Restricted employment**

*a* EPW will not be employed in positions that require or permit them

(1) Access to classified defense information or records of other personnel

(2) Access to telephone or other communication systems

(3) Authority to command or instruct U S personnel

*b* EPW may be employed in the following types of labor

(1) EPW camp administration, installation, or maintenance

(2) Agriculture

(3) Public works, public utilities, and building operations which have no military character or purpose

(4) Transportation and handling of stores which are not military in nature or purpose

(5) Domestic service

#### **4-3 Liability to perform labor**

*a* Subject to the limitations stated in paragraph 4-5 and 4-6, EPW will be required to perform any and all work consistent with their grade and status as follows

(1) Officer EPW. Officer EPW will not be required to work. Officer EPW, however, may make a written request for work. The camp commander will provide such work, if feasible. Officer EPW may, at any time, revoke a voluntary request for work. Officer EPW are required to maintain their personal areas, equipment and other items/areas in a manner that promotes good health and personal hygiene

(2) Noncommissioned officer (NCO) EPW. NCO EPW will be required to do supervisory work only. NCO EPW, however, may make a written request for work other than supervisory work. NCO

EPW may, at any time, revoke a voluntary request for work other than supervisory work

(3) Enlisted EPW Enlisted EPW will be required to do any and all work consistent with this regulation

b Fitness of EPW for labor will be verified at least once a month by medical examination An attending medical officer will classify the level of physical fitness EPW can perform for work as follows heavy work, light work, and no work Lists of these individual labor levels of EPW will be posted in each EPW camp If physical conditions permit, each EPW will perform labor as directed by the camp commander

#### 4-4 Authorized work

a Categories Levels of work for which each EPW are authorized and may be compelled to perform are categorized as follows

(1) Restricted work EPW may be compelled to perform the following types which may not be of a military nature or purpose

(a) Public works and building operations The primary factor in deciding whether EPW may be employed is the nature of the construction being undertaken If the construction is purely military in nature, each EPW may not be compelled to engage in such work If the construction is not purely military in nature, the purpose for which the structure is to be used is the deciding factor If the completed construction is intended to be used primarily by units engaged in, or in direct support of, military operations against the enemy, EPW may not be compelled to work on the project

(b) Transporting and handling stores The first consideration is the nature of the property being handled If the stores are military in nature, EPW may not be compelled to transport or handle them If the items are not military in nature, then their purpose is the deciding factor EPW may not be required to transport or handle stores specifically consigned to units engaged in military operations EPW and RP may, however, be required to handle stores when handling is incidental to the performance of authorized types of work For example, work in a military mess may be classified as domestic service Handling of rations by EPW in connection with domestic service may be required

(c) Public utility services Construction, repair, or maintenance of water, sewage, drainage, gas or electrical facilities are not of an inherent military nature The purpose of these services is the deciding factor as to whether or not EPW may be compelled to engage in such activities Such services may be intended primarily or exclusively for the benefit of units engaged in, or directly supporting, operations against the enemy If so, EPW may not be required to perform these services On the other hand, services intended primarily or exclusively for other purposes represent work that EPW may be compelled to perform

(2) Nonrestricted work EPW may be compelled to perform types of work listed below having no direct military purpose

(a) Construction, administration, management, and maintenance of EPW camps

(b) Agriculture

(c) Manufacturing industries, with the exception of metallurgical, machinery, and chemical industries

(d) Commercial business and arts and crafts

(e) Domestic service, including a clothing repair shop, laundry, bakery, or a mess hall

#### 4-5. Unauthorized work

a Unhealthy or dangerous work EPW and RP may not be employed in any job considered injurious to health or dangerous because of the inherent nature of the work, the conditions under which it is performed, or the person's physical unfitness or lack of technical skill A specific task should be considered, not the industry as a whole The specific conditions for each job are the deciding factors For example, an otherwise dangerous task may be rendered safe by the use of safety equipment Likewise, an otherwise safe job may be dangerous because of the circumstances under which the work is required to be done Similarly, dangerous work may be safe for

those whose training and experience have made them adept at it EPW will not be employed in tasks requiring

(1) Exertion beyond physical capacity

(2) Use of inherently dangerous mechanisms or materials such as

(a) explosives or mine removal

(b) Mechanisms that are dangerous because the person is unskilled in their use

(3) Climbing to dangerous heights or exposure to risk of injury from falling objects under motion and not under full control

b Humiliating work No person will be assigned labor that is humiliating or degrading for a member of the U.S. Armed Forces This prohibition does not prevent EPW from doing ordinary and frequently unpleasant tasks such as maintaining sanitation facilities, ditch digging and manual labor in agriculture

c Other specifically prohibited work Certain occupations or types of work are prohibited for safety, security, or other reasons EPW and RP will not be

(1) Permitted to work in an area where they may be exposed to combat zone fire

(2) Employed as personal servants to members of the U.S. Armed Forces

(3) Employed to tend bars or serve alcoholic beverages in officers' messes or similar establishments

(4) Permitted to work inside correctional facility walls or near inmates

d Questionable work In case of doubt as to whether certain work is authorized, the next higher HQ Staff Judge Advocate (SJA) will review the proposed tasks The purpose of the review will be to ensure consistency with this regulation and the law of war The SJA will provide recommendations in writing to the camp commander A copy will be forwarded to HQDA (DAJA-1A), WASH DC 20310-2214

#### 4-6 Decisions on work conditions and safeguards

Commanders will make on-the-job decisions as to whether work is safe They will take into account the guidance set forth in this regulation Commanders will make decisions by ordinary standards of sound judgment, assisted by the informed advice of persons familiar with the occupations and other available data Data will include the opinions of the SJA Preliminary job training will be given when necessary and, protective clothing and accessories will be provided as required (e.g., hard-toed shoes, goggles, and gloves) Such safety devices will be equal to safeguards provided for civilian labor Commanders will make periodic inspections to ensure satisfactory conditions and safeguards are maintained at all times

#### 4-7. Referrals to HQDA, ODCSOPS

a When substantial doubt exists as to whether or not a type of work is permissible according to this regulation, a request to ODCSOPS for specific instructions will be made through channels by the most expeditious means

b Each question forwarded will be accompanied by a statement as to

(1) Type and place of work

(2) Tasks to be performed

(3) Number of EPW to be employed

(4) Other facts having a direct bearing on the employment

#### 4-8 Length of workday

a The length of the workday for EPW, including the time for travel will not exceed that permitted for civilians in the locale who are employed in the same general type of work The working period may be extended but will not be considered excessive because EPW are laboring under a task system EPW contracts will contain specific terms on the hours of employment

b Except as provided in subparagraph c below, the EPW will not be required to work more than 10 hours (in one day) exclusive of a one hour lunch and rest period They will not be kept out of camp for more than 12 consecutive hours, including travel time Rest

cycles consistent with the wet bulb, black globe temperature will be monitored and followed

*c* EPW may be required to work any number of hours for the efficient operation of the EPW compound messes EPW are responsible for preparing food within these messes

#### 4-9. Rest periods

*a* Day of rest Each EPW will be allowed a rest period of 24 consecutive hours every week These hours will preferably be on Sunday or on the day of rest in the prisoner's country of origin or as established by his or her religious affiliation

*b* Annual Each EPW who has worked for one full year will be given a rest of eight consecutive days during which the U S will give working pay to the EPW

#### 4-10 Responsibility for work supervision

The EPW camp commander will

(1) Decide, as far as practical, how adequate the technical supervision is which is provided by the using agency

(2) Report the facts on inadequately supervised details to the using agency

(3) Refuse to continue details on contract work unless adequate work supervision is provided

#### 4-11. Work detail leaders and interpreters

EPW camp commanders are authorized to use selected EPW as work detail leaders and interpreters The time of work detail leaders and interpreters will be included in labor reports under the same project work classification as their details The supporting EPW/CI PSYOP unit can assist the camp commander in identifying key communicators, informal leaders, and linguists among the camp population for use as work detail leaders and interpreters

#### 4-12 Task system

The task system will be used when it is possible to predetermine the amount of finished work that an EPW, or group of EPW, can reasonably be expected to complete in a specific period of time

*a* Elements of the task system The task system consists of

(1) Assigning each EPW, or each group of EPW, a definite and reasonable amount of work to be completed within each workday or other predetermined time period

(2) Payment for completed work according to this regulation

(3) Incentive adjustments of the required work according to this regulation

(4) Penalty measures needed to enforce the task system

*b* Decision on daily tasks The camp commander will decide the reasonable amount of completed work to be required of each EPW or group of EPW during a day

*c* Notice to EPW EPW will be informed of the adoption of the task system before it is put into effect Each EPW or group of EPW, depending upon whether separate or group tasks are assigned, will be informed of the amount of completed work required each day

*d* Incentives As an incentive, EPW who have completed the required amount of work in less than normal time may be returned to quarters

*e* Enforcing the task systems The camp commander may take disciplinary action against physically qualified EPW who habitually fail to complete the assigned tasks

#### 4-13 Employing EPW

*a* The greatest benefit from EPW labor on work projects will be obtained EPW will be employed, as far as practical, on work for which they are qualified The Dictionary of Occupational Titles, U S Government Printing Office, WASH, DC, will be used as a guide in deciding the qualifications of each EPW

*b* In assigning EPW to details requiring special training and skills, the following qualification will be considered

(1) Technical skills

(2) Aptitudes

(3) Past work records

(4) On-the-job training

*c* EPW capable of performing skilled and semi-skilled work should be employed on essential work Persons on work details that require special training or skill will remain as constant as practical When it is necessary to substitute an EPW in such a detail, the using agency will be notified

#### 4-14 Paid work

EPW will be compensated for performing work for which pay is authorized The rate of such pay shall be not less than as prescribed in Article 62, GPW Compensation for all such work will be made as authorized from U S Army appropriated funds, canteen funds, or camp EPW funds Types of paid work for which compensation is authorized are

*a* Labor performed for a contract employer or for a federal agency

*b* Services as orderlies and cooks (for officer EPW)

*c* Services to construct, administer, manage, and maintain EPW camps, branch camps, and hospitals when such services are performed by EPW permanently assigned to certain duties or occupations

*d* Labor of RP for their duties

*e* Spiritual or medical duties required to be performed by EPW for fellow EPW

*f* Service as prisoner representative or assistant Such persons will be paid from the camp EPW fund If no such fund exists, they will be paid the prescribed rate of pay from U S Army appropriated funds

*g* Work as detail leaders or interpreters

#### 4-15 Restriction on paid work

*a* Mess personnel The number of EPW cooks and assistant cooks who will be paid for work in camp messes will in no case exceed the total number authorized for Army enlisted messes of the same or similar size

*b* Fatigue details Kitchen police, latrine orderlies, and other fatigue details will normally be provided by rotating enlisted EPW Each EPW assigned to these details will not be paid from Government canteen or camp EPW funds Assignment of persons to such details by rotation on a duty roster may interfere with the work program If so, the Camp Commander may assign those duties to EPW who volunteer and whose skills or training are not essential for other work details In such cases, EPW assigned may be paid the authorized daily rate from canteen credits contributed by all EPW Payment will be under supervision of the Camp Commander

*c* Gardening work

(1) To the extent practical, EPW will be required to raise their own vegetables This work will be classified as paid work

(2) The produce from gardens operated with EPW labor will be U S property It will be used for the benefit of EPW and U S Armed Forces personnel It should not be sold or traded in civilian markets

#### 4-16 Rates for paid work

EPW employed for paid work will be compensated at a rate to be specified, on either piecework or by the workday, as provided below

*a* Piecework rates Piecework rates will be used in compensating EPW when the work performed is for a contract employer or a Federal agency other than DOD

*b* Working rates Working rates will be used for compensating all other paid work (other than contract work) as follows

(1) EPW of all grades, whether acting in a supervisory capacity or otherwise, will be compensated at the authorized daily rate per full workday

(2) EPW laboring less than the full workday will be compensated in proportion to the number of hours worked, except when working under a task system and having completed the required task, EPW working under a task system will be paid only for the completed parts of the task despite the number of hours worked

(3) The U S work supervisor may decide that an EPW who is not under a task system is producing less than should be produced



in a full workday. If so, the EPW will be compensated at a rate proportionately lower than the authorized daily rate. Such a decision must be approved by the Camp Commander.

#### 4-17. Days of paid work per month

The maximum number of days of paid work for an EPW will be limited to the number of workdays in a calendar month. The total workdays include the total number of days minus Sunday and any holiday specifically authorized by HQDA, ODCSOPS, (DAMO-ODL) NPWIC.

#### 4-18. Unpaid work

EPWRP will not be paid for those services connected with administering and maintaining EPW camps, branch camps, and hospitals when such services are performed on a daily rotation or other temporary basis. Unpaid work, in all cases, will include:

- a Kitchen police
- b Latrine orderlies
- c Ground police
- d Other routine fatigue details of the types normally assigned and performed equitably and temporarily by persons in U.S. Army units.

#### 4-19. Sale of articles and repair services

The canteen officer may sell articles made to order for, or repair services performed for, U.S. personnel by EPW. This sale is subject to the following provisions:

- a Articles will be manufactured or repair services will be performed only during the spare time of EPW.
- b No expense to the U.S. will be incurred for equipment, materials, or labor.
- c Repair work or the making of articles to order for U.S. personnel will be prohibited unless an order for the work is placed through the EPW canteen.
- d The canteen officer will fix the price of each article or repair service. The price will reasonably conform to prices for similar articles or services in the civilian market, less the cost of any material supplied by the customer.
- e The canteen officer and the Camp Commander will enter into a blanket contract. Under this contract, the canteen officer will pay to the Camp Commander amounts derived from the sale of articles made to order for, and repair service performed for, U.S. personnel, less a handling charge by the canteen of not more than 10 percent. The canteen officer will submit a voucher monthly to the camp commander. The voucher will list:

(1) The individual sales and services performed during the month.

(2) The price charged for each.

(3) The deductions made for handling charges.

f The Camp Commander will deposit the amount derived from the sale of articles made to order for, or repair services performed for, U.S. personnel with the U.S. Treasurer. Procedures for these transactions are prescribed in AR 37-1. The EPW will be paid an hourly rate. The rate will not exceed the authorized daily rate for paid work for the services performed. However, in no case will the amount paid to the EPW exceed the price of the article or repair service fixed under subparagraph d above. Amounts will be subject to deductions provided for in this regulation. Any residual money will be disbursed by the EPW camp counsel for use by camp EPW. This disbursement must be approved by the Camp Commander.

#### 4-20. Disability compensation

a An EPW may be injured or suffer a disability while working under circumstances that may be attributed to work. If so, DA Form 2675-R (Certificate of Work Incurred Injury or Disability) will be completed in four copies. The original will be given to the EPW, the second copy will be forwarded to the PWIC to be sent to the National Prisoner of War Information Center, and the third and fourth will be placed in the EPW's personnel file.

b A claim by the EPW for compensation for work-incurred injury or disability will be forwarded to the PWIC. The PWIC will send the claim to the Power on which the EPW depends for settlement. A copy of the completed DA Form 2675-R taken from the personnel files of the EPW will be attached to the claim. DA Form 2675-R will be reproduced locally on 8 1/2 by 11 inch paper. This form is for the use of Army only.

#### 4-21. Operation of government vehicles

EPW may be licensed to operate Government motor vehicles according to AR 600-55.

### Section II

#### Contract Employment

#### 4-22. Rules and procedures

Rules and procedures governing the military and contract employment of EPW will be according to the most current contract laws, procedures and guidelines and comply with the provisions of the Geneva Convention. All requests for the contracting of EPW will be forwarded promptly through channels to HQDA, ODCSOPS (DAMO-ODL) and be coordinated with HQDA, DAJA.

### Chapter 5

#### Beginning of Internment (CI)

#### 5-1. General protection policy—civilian internee

##### a. Treatment

(1) No form of physical torture or moral coercion will be exercised against the CI. This provision does not constitute a prohibition against the use of minimum force necessary to effect compliance with measures authorized or directed by these regulations.

(2) In all circumstances, the CI will be treated with respect for their person, their honor, their family rights, their religious convictions and practices, and their manners and customs. At all times the CI will be humanely treated and protected against all acts of violence or threats and insults and public curiosity. In all official cases they will be entitled to a fair and regular trial as prescribed by this regulation.

(3) The CI will be especially protected against all acts of violence, insults, public curiosity, bodily injury, reprisals of any kind, sexual attack such as rape, forced prostitution, or any form of indecent assault.

(4) The CI will be treated with the same consideration and without adverse distinction based on race, religion, political opinion, sex, or age.

(5) The CI will be entitled to apply for assistance to the protecting powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross, approved religious organizations, relief societies, and any other organizations that can assist the CI. The commander will grant these organizations the necessary facilities to enable them to assist the CI within the limits of military and security considerations.

(6) The following acts are specifically prohibited:

(a) Any measures of such character as to cause the physical suffering or extermination of the CI. This prohibition applies not only to murder, torture, corporal punishment, mutilation, and medical or scientific experiments, but also to any other measure of brutality.

(b) Punishment of the CI for an offense they did not personally commit.

(c) Collective penalties and all measures of intimidation and terrorism against the CI.

(d) Reprisals against the CI and their property.

(e) The taking and holding of the CI as hostages.

(f) Deportations from occupied territory to the territory of the occupying power or to that of any other country, occupied or not, are prohibited.

b Authorization to intern. Internment of protected civilian persons in a CI camp is authorized and directed provided that such

persons satisfy the requirements for being accorded the status of CI One of the following two conditions must apply

(1) Internment has been determined by competent U S Military authority to be necessary for imperative reasons of security to the United States Armed Forces in the occupied territory

(2) Internment has been directed by a properly constituted U S military court sitting in the occupied territory as the sentence for conviction of an offense in violation of penal provisions issued by the occupying U S Armed Forces

*c* Order for internment

(1) A protected civilian person in occupied territory will be accepted for evacuation to, and/or for internment in, a CI camp only on receipt of one of the following

(a) An internment order for imperative security reasons authenticated by a responsible commissioned officer of the United States Military specifically delegated such authority by the theater commander

(b) An order of an authorized commander approving and ordering into execution a sentence to internment pronounced by a properly constituted U S military court sitting in the occupied territory

(2) The internment order will contain, as a minimum, the following information

(a) The internee's personal data to include full name, home address, and identification document number, if any

(b) A brief statement of the reason for internment

(c) Authentication to include the signature of the authenticating officer over his or her typed name, grade, service number, and organization

*d* Compassionate internment Notwithstanding the provisions of b and c above, requests by the CI for the compassionate internment of their dependent children who are at liberty without parental care in the occupied territory will normally be granted when both parents or the only surviving parent is interned

*e* Spies and saboteurs

(1) As individually determined by the theater commander, protected civilian persons who are detained as alleged spies or saboteurs or as persons under definite suspicion of activities hostile to the security of the United States as an occupying power, will be regarded as having forfeited rights of communication with the outside world under the Geneva Convention (GC) for reasons of military security Such forfeiture will be viewed as an exceptional and temporary measure Due to the seriousness of the charges, such persons will not be processed as ordinary CI

(2) Suspected spies and saboteurs will be afforded the same human rights treatment as the CI, and in case of trial, will be accorded the rights of fair and regular trial prescribed by the GC and by this regulation

(3) When by the direction of the theater commander, suspected spies and saboteurs rights of communication with the outside world have been restored, their internment in a CI camp may be ordered in accordance with the provisions stated in paragraphs b and c above When so interned, they will be accorded full CI status and rights and privileges as provided for by these regulations

(4) At the earliest date consistent with the security of the United States, they will be released and granted full rights and privileges as protected persons under the GC

*f* Custodial security The degree of security and control exercised over the CI will reflect the conditions under which their internment is authorized and directed and will recognize the escape hazards and difficulties of apprehension attendant on the internment of the CI in the occupied territory

*g* Appeals and periodic review of security internment cases

(1) *Appeals* The CI who are interned for imperative security reasons will be accorded the right to appeal the order directing their internment Such appeals will be decided with the least possible delay by a board of officers Appeals will be decided only on the grounds of the existence or nonexistence of imperative security reasons requiring the internment of the protected person

(2) *Periodic review* In the case where an appeal has been rejected, the board will review the case at least every 6 months, if

possible, to determine whether continued internment is essential to the security of the U S Armed Forces

(3) *Reclassification to assigned residence* In each CI case reviewed by the board in which continued control is necessary, the CI will be considered for an assignment to a residence in an area where there is adequate control

*h* *Support of dependents* The United States will financially support the CI's dependents who are at liberty in the occupied territory and are without adequate means of support or are unable to earn a living

## 5-2. Civilian Internee Safety Program

*a* *Establishment* A safety program for the CI will be established and administered in accordance with the policies prescribed in AR 385-10 and other pertinent safety directives

*b* *Reports and records* DA forms and procedures outlined in AR 385-40 will be used in the implementation of the CI safety program When so used, the letters "CI" will be clearly stamped at the top and bottom of each form All such forms will be prepared, administered, and maintained separately from those prepared for personnel included under the Army Safety Program

## 5-3 Republic of Korea/United States Agreement on processing civilian internees in Korea

*a* On 12 February 1982, the United States and Korea signed The Memorandum of Agreement for the Transfer of the CI The agreement applies to both the Republic of Korea (ROK) Armed Forces and the United States Armed Forces in Korea (USFK) who handle the CI

*b* As a result of this agreement, USFK Regulation 190-6 reflects minor modifications to procedures and forms concerning the processing of CI applicable only to the Korean theater of operations

## Chapter 6 Administration and Operation of CI Internment Facilities

### 6-1. Internment Facility

*a* *Location* The theater commander will be responsible for the location of the CI internment facilities within his or her command The CI retained temporarily in an unhealthy area or where the climate is harmful to their health will be removed to a more suitable place of internment as soon as possible

*b* *Quarters* Adequate shelters to ensure protection against air bombardments and other hazards of war will be provided and precautions against fire will be taken at each CI camp and branch camp

(1) All necessary and possible measures will be taken to ensure that CI shall, from the outset of their internment, be accommodated in buildings or quarters which afford every possible safeguard as regards hygiene and health, and provide efficient protection against the rigors of the climate and the effects of war in no case shall permanent places of internment be placed in unhealthy areas, or in districts the climate of which is injurious to CI

(2) The premises shall be fully protected from dampness, adequately heated and lighted, in particular between dusk and lights out The sleeping quarters shall be sufficiently spacious and well ventilated, and the internees shall have suitable bedding and sufficient blankets, account being taken of the climate, and the age, sex and state of health of the internees

(3) Internees shall have for their use, day and night, sanitary conveniences which conform to the rules of hygiene and are constantly maintained in a state of cleanliness They shall be provided with sufficient water and soap for their daily personal hygiene and for washing their personal laundry, installations and facilities necessary for this purpose shall be provided Showers or baths shall also be available The necessary time shall be set aside for washing and for cleaning

(4) CI shall be administered and housed separately from EPW/

RP Except in the case of families, female CI shall be housed in separate quarters and shall be under the direct supervision of women

*c Marking* Whenever military considerations permit, internment facilities will be marked with the letters "CI" placed so as to be clearly visible in the daytime from the air Only internment facilities for the CI will be so marked

*d Organizations and operation*

(1) The CI internment facilities will be organized and operated, so far as possible, as other military commands

(2) A US Military commissioned officer will command each CI internment facility

(3) When possible, the CI will be interned in CI camps according to their nationality, language, and customs All CI who are nationals of the same country will not be separated merely because they speak different languages

(4) Complete segregation of female and male CI will be maintained except—

(a) When possible, members of the same family, particularly parents and children, will be lodged together and will have facilities for leading a normal family life

(b) A parent with children, if single or interned without spouse, will be provided quarters separate from those for single persons

(c) CI may be searched for security purposes Female CI may be searched only by female personnel

## 6-2 Administrative processing

### *a Military police processing*

(1) Military Police (MP) prisoner of war units officially establish CI status and processes the CI

(2) Only civilian persons entitled to protected status and that meet the requirements set forth in the GC will be classified as a CI

(3) Dependent children, who are interned for compassionate reasons with their parents, will not be classified as CI or otherwise processed except as required on DA Form 2674-R (Enemy Prisoner of War/Civilian Internee Strength Report) (RCS CSGP-1583) and DA Form 2663-R DA Form 2674-R will be reproduced locally on 8 1/2 by 11 inch paper, head to head A copy for reproduction purposes is located at the back of this regulation This form is for the use of Army only Children under the age of twelve are to be identified by the wearing of some form of identity badge or wristband or some other means of identification

(4) All efforts will be made to take the necessary measures to ensure that children under fifteen, who are orphaned or are separated from their families as a result of the war, are not left to their own resources

### *b DA Form 2674-R*

(1) General DA Form 2674-R will be prepared for each CI camp and hospital to which CI are assigned Preparation will be in accordance with applicable procedures set forth for EPWs DA Form 2674-R will be reproduced locally on 8 1/2 by 11-inch paper, head to head A copy for reproduction purposes is located at the back of this regulation This form is for the use of Army only

(2) Personnel to be accounted for All civilians processed and classified as CI and for whom a DA Form 4237-R has been prepared in accordance with paragraph 6-2 of this regulation and dependent children for whom compassionate internment with their CI parents has been approved in accordance with procedures prescribed by the theater commander

(3) Basic personnel data References to entries in section B, Remarks, requiring basic personnel data, will be interpreted as follows

(a) Name Enter last names and first names, in that order, alphabetically according to section (assigned gains, losses, and so forth) of CI and dependent children

(b) Internment serial number Enter complete serial number of this regulation (dependent children are not assigned internment serial numbers (ISNs))

(c) Grade Civilian capacity or title, CI only

(d) Sex CI and dependent children

(e) Nationality CI and dependent children Enter name of country of which parents claim citizenship

(f) Occupational skill Applies only to CI

(4) Remarks column On initial entry, enter in the "remarks" column the notation "approved by" (insert appropriate headquarters) on (insert date approved) CI and dependent children

### *c Civilian internee personnel record*

(1) DA Form 4237-R will be prepared for each protected civilian processed in an occupied territory as a CI or dependent child

(2) All pertinent information available or which the CI is willing to give will be entered on the form If a CI refuses or is unable to give any items of information, a notation will be made in item 36 on DA Form 4237-R The codes to be used are contained in the Prisoner of War Information System (PWIS) Operator's Manual Stamp the letters "CI" at the top and bottom of all pages of the form

(3) All items on DA Form 4237-R are self explanatory except the following entries

(a) *Item 3* Civilian capacity or title (for example, mayor or police chief) if appropriate

(b) *Item 4* Serial number of identification document, if any

(c) *Item 5* Entry of "civilian internee"

(d) *Items 19 through 21* Not applicable

(e) *Items 23 through 25* Name of apprehending unit and location, if known

(f) *Item 35* List impounded items from DA Form 1132 (Prisoner's Personal Property List-Personal Deposit Fund) and have the CI sign in the appropriate space verifying the impounded items

(4) Entries will be typed if possible, otherwise, the form will be printed by hand in BLOCK LETTERS

(5) Once completed, a copy of the form will accompany the CI to the CI camp A copy will be furnished to the Branch PWIC monitoring CI activity for the theater commander

*d Internment serial number (ISN)* ISNs for each CI will be assigned according to the procedure set forth for EPW The letters ACI@ will be substituted for AEPW@ e.g US9AB-0001CI

*e DA Form 2677-R (Civilian Internee Identity Card)* Each CI will be issued a completed DA Form 2677-R Notation thereof will be made under item 36 of DA Form 4237-R DA Form 2677-R will be reproduced locally on 3- by 5- inch card head to foot (Copy for local reproduction is located at the back of this regulation) This form is for the use of Army only All cards will be weatherproof The CI will retain their identity cards at all times

*f Internment card* On completion of a DA Form 4237-R, but not later than one week after arrival at a CI camp, each CI must complete two copies of DA Form 2678-R (Civilian Internee Notification of Address) One copy will be addressed to the EPW/CI information organization and the other copy to a relative or next-of-kin DA Form 2678-R will be reproduced locally on 4- by 6-inch card, printed head to foot (Copy for local reproduction is located at the back of this regulation)

*g DA Form 2663-R* DA Form 2663-R will be completed in duplicate for each CI and for each interned dependent child One copy will be retained in the camp at which the CI or dependent child is interned and will accompany internee on transfers, the other copy will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC

## 6-3 Personal effects

*a* All personal effects, including money and other valuables, of the CI will be safeguarded Personal effects are classified according to their disposition

*b* The personal effects that detainees are allowed to retain, but are taken from them temporarily for intelligence purposes, will be receipted for and returned as soon as practical Any national identification card or DA Form 2677-R will not be taken from the CI at any time

(1) The camp commander may receive personal effects that the CI are permitted to retain, but which they wish stored Individual receipts will be given to the CI for all items stored in this manner

(2) Any claim by a CI for compensation for personal effects, money, or valuables stored or impounded by the United States and not returned upon repatriation or any loss alleged to be the fault of

the United States or its agents will be referred to the country to which the CI owes allegiance. In all cases, camp commanders will provide the CI with a statement, signed by a responsible officer, describing the property not returned and the reason. A copy of this statement will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC.

*c* An inventory of personal effects that have been impounded will be entered on DA Form 4237-R, item 35. Also, DA Form 1132 will be completed by the CI and signed by the officer in charge or his or her authorized representative and a copy given to the CI.

*d* The commanding officer of the camp where the CI is interned will be responsible for storing and safekeeping impounded personal effects. Such property will be marked or otherwise identified and securely bound or packaged. Upon transfer, the CI's impounded property will be delivered to the commanding officer of the receiving facility.

*e* Money found in the possession of the CI will be handled according to AR 37-1.

*f* Confiscated items of economic value will be receipted to the proper agency. Items of intelligence interest will be brought to the attention of military intelligence personnel immediately and receipted to them.

*g* Personal property and documents of importance to the next-of-kin left by a CI who has been released, has died, or has been in an escaped status in excess of 30 days, will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC in sealed parcels. The parcels will be accompanied by statements identifying the CI and listing the contents. All parcels will be receipted for by the authorized losing or gaining facility representative.

*h* The theater commander will be responsible for retaining and storing other personal effects, pending final disposition instructions from HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400.

#### 6-4 Internee Committee

*a Election* At each camp and branch camp, CI will be elected by secret written ballot to the Internee Committee. This committee is empowered to represent the camp to the protecting powers, International Committee of the Red Cross, or other authorized relief or aid organizations and U.S. military authorities.

*b Composition* The Internee Committee will consist of not less than two and not more than three elected members. Elections will be held every 6 months or upon the existence of a vacancy. Committee members are eligible for re-election.

*c Approval* Each member of the Internee Committee will be approved by the camp commander prior to assumption of duty. If the camp commander refuses to approve or dismisses an elected member, a notice to that effect with the reasons for refusal or dismissal will be forwarded through channels to the Branch PWIC for transmittal to the protecting power with a copy furnished to NPWIC.

*d Assistants* Each member of the Internee Committee may have an assistant to act as an interpreter. The interpreter must be approved by the camp commander.

##### *e Duties*

(1) The Internee Committee will be responsible for furthering the physical, spiritual, and intellectual well being of the CI. Members will not be required to perform any other work if it interferes with their duties.

(2) Any mutual assistance organization set up by the CI will be under the jurisdiction of the Internee Committee.

(3) Internee Committee members will be provided with the necessary materials, facilities, and transportation and will be given the freedom required to accomplish their duties. Additional special duties performed by members of an Internee Committee include the following:

(a) Visits to outside labor details.  
(b) Checking the management of the canteen and the canteen fund.

(c) The presentation and transmittal of petitions and complaints to the appropriate authorities.

(d) The distribution and disposition of collective relief shipments.

(e) Keeping informed of ongoing and final judicial proceedings instituted against a CI whom they represent.

(f) The delivery of perishable goods to the infirmary when addressed to a CI undergoing disciplinary punishment.

(g) Representing the interest of the CI by ensuring the transport of their community property and luggage that they are unable to take with them on transfers because of baggage weight limitations.

(4) Members of Internee Committees who are transferred will be allowed a reasonable time to acquaint their successors with their duties and related current CI affairs.

*f Communications facilities* Members of the Internee Committee will be accorded postal and telegraphic facilities for communicating with the protecting powers, International Committee of the Red Cross and its delegates, or other relief and aid organizations authorized to assist the CI and U.S. military authorities. Committee members of branch internment camps will be accorded similar facilities for communicating with the Internee Committee of the parent CI camp. These communications will be unlimited and will not be considered as forming a part of the correspondence quota outlined in paragraph 6-8.

#### 6-5 Supplies

##### *a General*

(1) The CI must provide their own clothing and footwear. Approved items of clothing and equipment, general supplies, subsistence, and fuel will be supplied upon requisition.

(2) Except for work clothing or as circumstance warrant, or climatic conditions required, no replacement clothing will be issued.

(3) Except for hats and other accessories any item of clothing that may be worn as outer garments will be marked as prescribed below.

(a) All shirts, undershirts, blouses, jackets, coats including overcoats and raincoats, and similar articles will be marked with the letters "CI" across the back and on the front of each sleeve between the elbow and shoulder. The letters will be black and 4 inches high. If the clothing or uniforms are of such color that black letters do not contrast well, white will be used.

(b) Trousers, walking shorts, and like items of clothing will be similarly marked with the same letters across the back just below the belt and on the front of both legs just above the knees.

(c) At the discretion of the camp commander, the ISN or other identification marks may be written or stamped on the inside of all CI clothing.

##### *b Food*

(1) Subsistence for the CI will be issued on the basis of a master CI menu prepared by the theater commander. Preparation of the menu will include the following:

(a) The daily individual food ration will be sufficient in quantity, quality, and variety to maintain the CI in good health and to prevent nutritional deficiencies.

(b) The customary diet of the CI will be considered.

(c) The CI performing physical labor will receive additional food in proportion to the kind of labor performed.

(d) Expectant and nursing mothers and children under 15 years of age will receive additional food in proportion to their physiological needs.

(2) Facilities will be available to the CI for preparing additional food received or procured by them from authorized sources.

##### *c Miscellaneous*

(1) The issuance of expendable supplies is authorized according to allowances prescribed in Army publications.

(2) Equipment required to support vocational training projects such as gardening, carpentry, tinsmithing, blacksmithing, masonry, repairing shoes and clothing, tailoring, barbering, potting, and farming may be requisitioned through normal supply channels. Subject to restrictions imposed on authorized expenditures from the camp Civilian Internee Fund, camp commanders may purchase locally items of equipment, materials, and supplies needed in the vocational training program that are not available through supply channels.

## 6-6. Medical Care and Sanitation

### a General

(1) Dental, surgical, and medical treatment will be furnished free to the CI

(2) A medical officer will examine each CI upon arrival at a camp and monthly thereafter. The CI will not be admitted into the general population until medical fitness is determined. These examinations will detect vermin infestation and communicable diseases especially tuberculosis, malaria, and venereal disease. They will also determine the state of health, nutrition, and cleanliness of each CI. During these examinations, each CI will be weighed, and the weight will be recorded on DA Form 2664-R.

(3) Each CI will be immunized or reimmunized as prescribed by theater policy.

### b CI medical personnel

(1) Qualified CI medical personnel will be used as much as possible in medical and hygiene work necessary for the well-being of all CI.

(2) Required Army medical personnel will be provided within the capability of the theater commander.

**c Medical facilities** Each CI camp will provide personnel, material, and facilities for adequate routine and emergency dispensary treatment. Patients requiring hospital treatment will be moved, if feasible, to a civilian hospital. The treatment must be as good as that provided for the general population. When civilian hospital facilities are not available or their use is not feasible due to security considerations, U.S. military hospital facilities may be used. Guards for hospitalized CI will be provided, as necessary.

### d Medical care

(1) Medical and dental care, including dentures, spectacles, and other required artificial appliances, will be provided the CI in accordance with AR 40-3.

(2) Each CI will be given an initial radioscopic chest examination. If active disease is found, pulmonary disease consultation is indicated. If no active disease is found, the individual will be followed through routine periodic examinations.

(3) For children up to 14 years of age, a tuberculin skin test (TST) will be administered. No chest x-ray is necessary if the TST is negative. The local medical officer will establish guidance for subsequent tests based on the tuberculosis experience of the population. Routine annual tuberculin testing of children is not warranted unless there is clear-cut evidence of high risk. (See AR 40-26, para 8 f.)

(4) Experimental research will not be conducted on the CI even if the CI agrees to it.

(5) Sick call for the CI desiring medical attention will be held each day. Emergency treatment will be provided at all times.

**e Blood donations** At each CI camp and hospital, a list will be maintained according to blood types of CI who have volunteered to furnish blood.

### f Records and reports

(1) General. The medical records and forms used for the hospitalization and treatment of U.S. Army personnel and for EPWs will be used for CI. The letters "CI" will be stamped at the top of the form. Medical and dental records will accompany the CI when they are transferred.

(2) Certificate of Work Incurred Injury or Disability. If a CI is injured while working or incurs a disability that may be attributed to work, a DA Form 2675-R will be completed.

(3) Certificate of medical treatment. Each CI who has undergone medical treatment will be given on request an official certificate indicating the nature of his or her illness or injury, and the duration and kind of treatment given. A duplicate of this certificate will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC.

(4) Seriously ill report. When a CI is seriously ill because of injury or disease, the camp or hospital commander will notify the Branch PWIC without delay and provide a brief diagnosis of the case. Follow-up reports, including notification of removal from the seriously ill list, will be submitted each week thereafter during the period the CI remains critical.

### g Sanitation

(1) Hygiene and sanitation measures will conform to those prescribed in AR 40-5 and related regulations. Camp commanders will conduct periodic and detailed sanitary inspections.

(2) A detailed sanitary order meeting the specific needs of each CI camp or branch camp will be published by the CI camp commander. Copies will be reproduced in a language that the CI understands and will be posted in each compound.

(3) Each CI will be provided with sanitary supplies, service, and facilities necessary for their personal cleanliness and sanitation. Separate sanitary facilities will be provided for each sex.

(4) All CI will have at their disposal, day and night, latrine facilities conforming to sanitary rules of the Army.

## 6-7. Social, Intellectual, and Religious activities

### a General

(1) Subject to security considerations and camp discipline, the CI will be encouraged, but not required, to participate in social, intellectual, religious, and recreational activities. Introducing political overtones into or furthering enemy propaganda objectives through these activities will not be tolerated.

(2) Premises and facilities for conducting the activities in (1) above will be made available in each camp, if possible. Required materials and supplies will be requisitioned through normal supply channels.

(3) Carefully selected and qualified civilian nationals and CI may be used for the conducting of activities in (1) above where practical as long as they are closely supervised by U.S. Military personnel.

### b Visits

(1) Official. Duly accredited representatives of the protecting powers and of the International Committee of the Red Cross and other will be permitted to visit and inspect CI camps and other places of internment in the discharge of their official duties. The inspections will be at times previously authorized by the theater commander. Such visits will not be prohibited, nor will their duration and frequency be restricted, except for reasons of imperative military necessity, and then only as a temporary measure. These representatives will be permitted to—

(a) Interview the CI without witnesses, if requested.

(b) Distribute relief supplies and approved materials intended for educational, recreational, or religious purposes, or for assisting the CI in organizing their leisure time within the places of internment. Visiting representatives may not accept from the CI any letters, papers, documents, or articles for delivery.

(2) Social. Near relatives and other persons authorized by the theater commander will be permitted to visit the CI as frequently as possible in accordance with theater regulations. They should be advised that the taking of photographs on or about the facility is prohibited.

(3) Emergency visits by civilian internees. Subject to theater policy, the CI may visit their homes in urgent cases, particularly in cases of death or serious illness of close relatives.

### c Education

(1) The CI education program, as developed for each CI camp, will reflect consideration of the following:

(a) The several educational levels represented in the CI population of the camp.

(b) The establishment of basic courses of instruction to include elementary level reading, writing, geography, mathematics, language, music, art, history, and literature.

(c) The uninterrupted education of dependents residing with their CI parents. This education will reflect to the extent determined feasible by the theater commander, the educational curriculums of the particular country.

(d) The development of vocational training projects with an immediate view of developing skills that may be useful during internment and a longer range view of enabling the CI to learn a useful trade in which they may engage when returned to normal civilian life. Such projects may include, at the discretion of the theater commander, carpentry, tinsmithing, masonry, repairing shoes and clothing, tailoring, barbering, potting, and farming.

(2) Equipment required to support the education program will be requisitioned through normal supply channels. At the discretion of the camp commander, items not in supply may be purchased locally and paid for from the camp Civilian Internee Fund provided the items will benefit most CI. The CI personnel employed in the education program will be paid the established rate of pay from the camp Civilian Internee Fund.

*d* Religion

(1) CI will enjoy freedom of religion, including attendance at services of their respective faiths held within the internment camps. Wines used for religious purposes will be permitted.

(2) CI who are clergy may minister freely to CI who voluntarily request their ministrations. Equitable allocation of CI clergy will be effected among the various camps.

(3) If there is a shortage of CI clergy and the circumstances warrant, the camp commander will provide the CI clergy with the necessary means of transport for visiting the CI in branch camps and hospitals.

(4) The CI clergy will be permitted to correspond on religious matters with the religious authorities in the country of detention and, as far as possible, with the international religious organizations of their faiths. This correspondence will not be considered as forming a part of the quota that may be established in accordance with paragraph 6-8, but will be subject to censorship.

(5) Ordained clergy or a theological student who are not CI may be authorized to enter a camp and conduct religious services. Visits by such personnel will be in accordance with procedures prescribed by the theater commander.

*e* Recreation

(1) Recreational activities and facilities, in addition to sports and outdoor games, may include concerts and plays put on by the CI, recorded music, selected motion pictures, and other activities provided by the theater commander.

(2) Special playgrounds will be reserved for dependent children of the CI.

(3) Expenditures from the camp Civilian Internee Fund for the purchase or rental of recreational equipment are authorized.

(4) Appointed delegates of the International Committee of Red Cross are authorized to assist in developing recreational and welfare activities.

**6-8. Procedures for communications**

*a* Restrictions on numbers and addresses. Procedures for CI correspondence will be in accordance with paragraph 3-5 a-f except that DA Forms 2668-R and 2680-R (Civilian Internee PostCard) will be substituted for DA Forms 2667-R and 2679-R (Civilian Internee Letter) respectively. No restriction will be placed on persons with whom the CI may correspond. DA Form 2679-R will be reproduced on 8 1/2-by 11-inch paper, head to head. DA Form 2680-R will be reproduced on 4-by 6-inch card, head to foot. Copies for local reproduction are located at the back of this regulation. These forms are for the use of Army only.

*b* Outgoing mail. The following procedures apply to outgoing mail.

(1) Letters and cards will be typed or written legibly in ink. Block printing may be used.

(2) Correspondence will be addressed as follows:

(a) Names and addresses will be complete, they will be placed in the spaces designated on the correspondence forms.

(b) The return address will be in block print to include the full name, grade, ISN, place and date of birth of the sender, and the name of the camp to which assigned. Instructions for including the APO number or the country in which the camp is located should be issued by local directives.

(c) A person at a branch camp will give the parent camp as the return address. The person will be retained on the rosters and postal records of the parent camp.

(d) The surnames in the address and return address of letters and cards will be underlined.

(3) Each person will be required to date his or her letters and

cards. The name of the month will be written, not shown by a number.

(4) To expedite the handling of mail, CIs will designate the language of their communication.

(5) The date will not be crossed off, written over, or otherwise modified.

(6) Letters and cards will not be numbered consecutively.

(7) The entire letter or card will be written by the same person. If necessary, the address may be written by someone else.

(8) The CI may not write letters for others who are able to do so themselves. A person may be unable to write because of lack of education, accident, or sickness. If so, the camp commander may permit another person to write the message. In these cases, the person doing the writing will countersign the message.

(9) Letters and cards with parts excised, deleted, or otherwise mutilated before being dispatched from the camp will be returned to the person for rewriting.

*c* Correspondence sent to civilian internees. Instructions on letters and cards that are sent to CI should be communicated by CI to their correspondents.

(1) The name and return address of the sender will be typewritten or hand printed. For letters, the sender's name and address will always appear on the backs of the envelope. The addresser's surname will be underlined.

(2) The name, grade, ISN of the detainee, the name or number of the base camp, and the geographical designation or APO number will be placed in the center lower half of the envelope card. These items are specified by local directives or the camp commander. The entire name of the detainee will be in block print. The address will be placed as near the lower edge of the envelope as possible, the postmark at the top will not be obscured or obliterated.

(3) The term "Civilian Internee Mail" will be placed in the upper left corner on the address side. In the upper right corner the words "Postage Free" must be shown.

*d* Legal documents. Legal documents, such as wills and deeds, may be enclosed with outgoing correspondence. When it is necessary for a CI to send a legal document, the document and forwarding letter or card may be enclosed in a plain envelope.

*e* Maps, sketches, or drawings. The CI will not send maps, sketches, or drawings in outgoing correspondence.

*f* Registered certified, insured, COD, or airmail items. Individuals will not be permitted to mail registered, certified, insured, COD, or airmail items. If registered, certified, insured, or COD mail of either domestic or foreign origin addressed to a detainee is received, it will be refused. The local post office will return them to the sender.

*g* Postage. Letters and cards to and from the CI will be sent by ordinary mail and postage free.

*h* Security. Outgoing letters and cards will be secured by using locked boxes or similar means. Only authorized US personnel will handle outgoing mail. Incoming mail may be sorted by the CI when supervised by US personnel.

*i* Censorship. Censorship of the CI mail will be according to policies established by the theater commander.

(1) Outgoing letters and cards may be examined and read by the camp commander. The camp commander will return outgoing correspondence containing obvious deviations from regulations for rewriting.

(2) Camp commanders will name US military personnel to supervise the opening of all mail pouches containing incoming letters and cards for CI. These items will be carefully examined by the named personnel before delivery to detainees. Those items that arrive without having been censored by appropriate censorship elements will be returned for censorship to the designated censorship elements.

(3) The CI complaints concerning mail delivery will not be directed to censorship elements. These will be directed to—

(a) The camp authorities

(b) The responsible major Army commander

(c) HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400

(d) The protecting power

j Procedures for parcels

(1) A person may receive individual parcels and collective shipments containing—

(a) Foodstuffs

(b) Clothing

(c) Medical supplies

(d) Articles of religious, educational, or recreational nature

(2) Books, included in parcels of clothing and foodstuffs, may be confiscated as the camp commander decides

(3) The CI may send parcels subject to such restrictions as may be deemed necessary by the theater commander with respect to quotas, contents, size, and weight. The CI may send parcels free of charge up to a weight of 5 kilograms per package, or 10 kilograms in the case of articles that cannot be separated (Art 39, Universal Postal Convention)

(4) Parcels received for transferred persons will be forwarded immediately to them

(5) Nonperishable articles received for persons who have died, escaped, or been released will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC. Perishable items received for deceased or escaped persons will be released to the Internee Committee who will deliver them to the camp infirmary or hospital for the benefit of the CI

(6) The contents of all incoming parcels will be examined at the camp by a U S officer in the presence of the addressee or the named representative. When considered necessary, the camp commander may request that the parcel be examined by the censorship element. The articles in each parcel will be removed. The string, the inner wrappings, the outer container, and any extraneous items found in the parcel will not be turned over to the CI or the named representatives. Examination will be close enough to reveal concealed articles and messages, however, undue destruction of contents of parcels will be avoided

k. Telegrams and telephone calls. The CI may read and receive telegrams. They may not make or receive telephone calls

(1) Dispatching telegrams will be as follows

(a) A CI who has not received mail from next-of-kin for 3 months may send a telegram not earlier than one month from the date a previous telegram was sent

(b) CI who are unable to receive mail from their next-of-kin or send mail to them by ordinary postal routes or who are a great distance from their home will be permitted to send one telegram a month

(c) The CI who is seriously ill or who has received news of serious illness or death in the family will be permitted to send a telegram. The camp commander will authorize the sending of additional telegrams

(2) The sending of telegrams as provided for in (1) above will be governed by the following

(a) The message proper will consist of not more than 15 words

(b) The cost of sending the telegram will be charged to the personal account of the CI

(c) Arrangements for messages going to or through enemy-occupied countries will be made with the local International Committee of the Red Cross field director and will be sent through the International Committee of Red Cross, Geneva, Switzerland

(d) Telegrams will be in the English

(e) No telegram, except by members of the Internee Committee, will be sent to a Government official or to a protecting power

(f) Telegrams will be censored according to instructions issued by the chief censor

l Books. The CI may receive books. Persons or organizations may donate new or unmarked used books, singly or in collections, to camp libraries. Books that arrive at camps uncensored will be censored by a representative of the censorship element. Publications (books, magazines, newspapers, and so forth) containing maps may be made available to the CI upon approval by the camp commander, provided they do not contain maps of the territory surrounding the camps

m Newspapers and magazines. The following may be made available to the CI

(1) Current newspapers and magazines published in English in the United States and selected by the camp commanders

(2) Unmarked, unused magazines in English published in the United States and distributed by approved relief or aid organizations received at the discretion of the camp commanders for camp libraries after censorship by the censorship element

(3) Foreign language newspapers and magazines published in the United States, upon approval of the camp commander and after censorship of individual issues by the censorship element

(4) Newspapers and magazines published outside the United States, regardless of language, must be approved by the theater commander or HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400

## 6-9. Complaints and requests to camp commanders and protecting power

a Persons may make complaints or requests to the camp commander, who will try to resolve the complaints and answer the requests. If the CI are not satisfied with the way the commander handles a complaint or request, they may submit it in writing, through channels, to HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400

b Persons exercising the right to complain to the protecting power about their treatment and camp may do so—

(1) By mail

(2) In person to the visiting representatives of the protecting power

(3) Through their Internee Committee

c Written complaints to the protecting power will be forwarded promptly through HQDA (DAMO-ODL)NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400. A separate letter with the comments of the camp commander will be included. Military endorsements will not be placed on any CI communications

d If a protecting power communicates with a CI camp commander about any matter requiring an answer, the communication and commander's reply will be forwarded to HQDA (DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400, for proper action

e Any act or allegation of inhumane treatment or other violations of this regulation will be reported to HQDA (DAMO-ODL), WASH DC 20310-0400 as a Serious Incident Report. Reporting instructions in AR 190-40 will be used

## 6-10 Discipline and security

Measures needed to maintain discipline and security will be set up in each camp and rigidly enforced. Offensive acts against discipline will be dealt with promptly. The camp commander will record disciplinary punishments. The record will be open to inspection by the protecting power

a Prohibited acts

(1) Associations on close terms between the CI and U S military or civilian personnel

(2) Exchange of gifts between the CI and U S military or civilian personnel

(3) Setting up of courts by the CI. The CI will not have any disciplinary power or administer any punishment

b Regulations, orders, and notices. Regulations, orders, and notices on the conduct and activities of the CI will be written in a language the CI can understand. They will be posted in a place within each camp where the CI may read them. They will also be made available to persons who do not have access to posted copies. Additional copies will be given to the Internee Committee. This requirement will also apply to the text of the GC and texts of special agreements concluded under it. Every order and command addressed personally to the CI must be given in a language he or she understands. To protect persons from acts of violence, bodily injury, and threats of reprisals at the hand of fellow internees, a copy of a notice in the internee's language will be posted in every compound

## NOTICE

The CI regardless of faith or political belief, who fear that their lives are in danger or that they may suffer physical injury at the hands of other detainees will immediately report the fact personally to any U S Army officer of this camp without consulting the Internee Committee. From that time on, the camp command will assure adequate protection to such civilian internees by segregation, transfer, or other means. Civilian internees who mistreat fellow internees will be punished.

Signed (Commanding Officer)

*c* **Courtesies** The normal civilian courtesies will be required of the CI in their relationships with military personnel. U S military personnel will be courteous and will extend to the CI the regard due them.

*d* **Flags and political emblems** Flags on which a political enemy emblem or device appears will be seized. The CI will not have any political emblem, insignia, flag, or picture of political leaders. The CI may have pictures of political leaders that appear in magazines, books, and newspapers if the pictures are not removed.

*e* **Security** All security matters connected with the custody and utilization of the CI are the responsibilities of the theater commanders in overseas areas.

### 6-11. Provisions common to disciplinary and judicial punishments

#### *a* General

(1) If general laws, regulations, or orders declare acts committed by the CI to be punishable, whereas the same acts are not punishable when committed by persons who are not interned, these acts will only entail disciplinary punishment.

(2) When possible disciplinary punishment rather than judicial punishment will be used.

(3) The courts or authorities in passing sentence or awarding disciplinary punishment will consider the fact that the defendant is not a national of the United States. They will be free to reduce the penalty prescribed for the offense with which the CI is charged and will not be obliged to apply the prescribed minimum sentence but may impose a lesser one.

(4) Punishment will not be inhumane, brutal, or dangerous to the health of the CI. The age, sex, and state of health of the CI will be considered.

(5) Imprisonment in premises without daylight is prohibited.

(6) The length of time a CI is confined while awaiting a disciplinary hearing or a trial will be deducted from any disciplinary or judicial punishment involving confinement to which he or she may be sentenced and will be taken into account in finding any penalty.

(7) No CI may be punished more than once for the same offense.

(8) The CI who has served disciplinary punishment on judicial sentences will not be treated differently from other CI.

*b* **Confinement benefits** The CI undergoing confinement, whether before or after trial and whether in connection with disciplinary or judicial proceedings, will—

(1) Be allowed to exercise and stay in the open air at least two hours daily.

(2) Be allowed to attend daily sick call, receive medical attention as needed, and if necessary be transferred to a hospital.

(3) Be given enough food to maintain them in as good health as that provided other CI.

(4) Be permitted to confer with visiting representatives of the protecting power or the ICRC.

(5) Be permitted to receive spiritual assistance.

(6) If a minor, be treated with proper regard.

(7) Be provided with hygienic living conditions.

(8) Be provided adequate bedding and supplies and facilities necessary for personal cleanliness.

(9) If a female, be confined in separate quarters from male CI and will be under the immediate supervision of women.

### 6-12 Disciplinary proceedings and punishments

*a* **Authority to order disciplinary punishment** Without prejudice to the competence of courts and higher authorities, disciplinary punishment may be ordered only by the camp commander.

*b* **Rights of accused prior to imposition of disciplinary punishment** Prior to imposition of disciplinary punishment, the CI will be—

(1) Provided precise information regarding the offense of which they are accused.

(2) Given an opportunity to defend the allegation.

(3) Permitted to call witnesses and to have, if necessary, the service of a qualified interpreter.

*c* **Authorized disciplinary punishment** The following disciplinary punishments are authorized.

(1) Discontinuance of privileges granted over and above the treatment provided for by this regulation.

(2) Confinement.

(3) A fine not to exceed one-half of the wages that the CI may receive during a period of not more than 30 days.

(4) Extra fatigue duties, not exceeding 2 hours daily, in connection with maintaining the internment camp.

*d* **Duration of disciplinary punishment**

(1) The duration of any single disciplinary punishment will not exceed 30 consecutive days. The maximum of 30 days will not be exceeded even if the CI is answerable for several breaches of discipline, whether related or not, at the time when punishment is imposed.

(2) The period elapsing between the pronouncing of the disciplinary punishment and the completion of its execution will not exceed 30 days.

(3) After imposition of disciplinary punishment on the CI, further discipline will not be imposed on the same CI until at least 3 days have elapsed between the execution of any two of the punishments if the duration on one of the two punishments is 10 days or more.

*e* **Escape and connected offenses**

(1) The CI who are recaptured after having escaped or when attempting to escape will be liable to disciplinary punishment with respect to this act only, even if it is a repeated offense.

(2) The CI punished as a result of escape or attempt to escape may be subjected to special surveillance that does not affect the state of their health, when the punishment is exercised in a CI camp and if it does not violate any of the provisions of this regulation.

(3) The CI who aid and abet an escape or an attempt to escape, if no injury is done to a person, will be liable to disciplinary punishment only.

(4) Escape, or attempt to escape, even if it is a repeated offense, will not be deemed an aggravating circumstance in cases where the CI is prosecuted for offenses committed incidental to or during his or her escape or attempt to escape.

(5) The CI is liable to prosecution for an escape or attempted escape that results in a death or serious bodily injury to another person.

*f* **Confinement pending hearing**

(1) The CI accused of an offense for which disciplinary punishment is contemplated will not be confined pending a disciplinary hearing unless it is essential to the interest of camp order and discipline. Its duration will in any case be deducted from any sentence of confinement.

(2) Any period spent by the CI in confinement awaiting a hearing will be reduced to an absolute minimum. For offenses entailing disciplinary punishment only, it will not exceed 14 days.

*g* **Confinement facilities** CI confined as disciplinary punishment will undergo their punishment in a CI camp stockade.

*h* **Confinement benefits** In addition to the benefits provided by paragraph 6-11 b of this regulation, the CI placed in confinement in connection with disciplinary proceedings will be allowed to send and receive letters, cards, and telegrams in accordance with the



provisions of this chapter. Parcels and remittances of money, however, may be withheld from the CI until the completion of the punishment. Parcels will be released to the safekeeping of the Internee Committee. If perishable goods are contained in the parcels, the Internee Committee will give them to the infirmary or hospital.

### 6-13. Judicial proceedings

#### a General principles

(1) The penal laws of the occupied territory will remain in force, with the exception that they may be repealed or suspended by the United States in cases where they constitute a threat to its security or an obstacle to the application of the GC.

(2) The United States may subject the population of the occupied territory to provisions that are essential to enable it to fulfill its obligation under the GC, to maintain orderly government of the territory, and to ensure the security of the US Armed Forces.

(3) The penal provisions enacted by the United States will not come into force before they have been published and brought to the knowledge of the inhabitants in their own language. The effect of penal provisions will not be retroactive.

(4) The CI may be tried by general court-martial that must sit within the occupied territory. The CI will not be tried before summary or special court-martial.

(5) No CI will be tried or sentenced for an act that was not forbidden by US law or by international law in force at the time the act was committed.

(6) No protected person may be punished for an offense he or she has not personally committed.

(7) No moral or physical coercion will be exerted to induce the CI to admit guilt for any act.

(8) No CI will be convicted without having had the chance to present a defense with the assistance of a qualified advocate or counsel.

#### b Notification of judicial procedures

(1) The accused will be promptly notified, in writing in a language they understand, of the charges against them and will be tried as rapidly as possible.

(2) A notice (in duplicate) of proceedings against the CI will be submitted through channels to HQDA (DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400 for transmittal to the protecting power, in cases of charges involving the death penalty or imprisonment for 2 years or more. Upon request, the protecting power will be furnished with information regarding the status of such proceedings. Furthermore, the protecting power will be entitled, on request, to be furnished with all particulars of any other proceedings instituted against the CI.

(3) The above notice will be sent without delay. The trial will not commence until 3 weeks after the protecting power has been notified.

(4) The notice will include the following:

(a) Surname and first names, internment serial number, date of birth, and profession, trade, or prior civil capacity of the CI.

(b) Place of internment.

(c) Specification of the charges with penal provisions under which they are brought.

(d) Designation of the court that will hear the case.

(e) Place and date of the first hearing.

(5) The Internee Committee will be informed of all judicial proceedings against the CI that it represents and of the results of the proceedings.

(6) The records of trials will be kept by the courts and will be open to inspection by the representatives of the protecting power.

#### c Rights and means of defense

(1) In each trial by court-martial, the accused will be entitled to assistance by a qualified advocate or counsel of his or her own choice, the calling of witnesses, and, if necessary, the services of a competent interpreter. The CI will be advised of these rights by the commander concerned in due time before the trial.

(2) When the accused does not exercise the right to choose an advocate or counsel, notice to that effect will be sent through

HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400, to the protecting power. The protecting power may provide a counsel.

(3) When the protecting power is not functioning and the accused is faced with a serious charge, the convening authority will provide, subject to consent of the accused, an advocate or counsel.

(4) Unless the CI freely waives such assistance, an accused will be provided with the assistance of an interpreter both during preliminary investigation and during the hearing in court. The CI will have the right to object to the interpreter provided and to ask for a replacement.

(5) The defense counsel will be given at least 2 weeks before the opening of the trial and will be granted the necessary facilities to prepare the defense of the accused. The defense counsel will be permitted to visit the accused freely and to interview the accused in private. The defense counsel will also be permitted to confer with any witnesses for the defense including other CI. These privileges will continue until the term of appeal or petition has expired.

(6) Copies of the charge sheet will be given to the accused and the defense counsel in the language that they understand at least 2 weeks before the trial begins.

(7) The interpreter, appointed for and sworn by the court, will provide the official translation of all trial proceedings. The interpreter must not be a trial counsel, defense counsel, assistant to either, or witness, nor should he or she have any bias or interest in the case. The interpreter will translate testimony given in the language of the accused into English for the benefit of the court.

d Participation of protecting power in criminal proceedings. Representatives of the protecting power will be permitted to attend the trial of any CI unless the hearing has to be held secretly as an exceptional measure in the interest of the security of the United States. If a trial is to be held in secret, a notice as to the reasons, the date, and place of the secret trial will be sent to HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400. They will be notified at least three weeks before the opening of the trial to permit timely notification to the protecting power.

#### e Notification of judgment and sentence

(1) In all cases requiring notification to the protecting power, two copies of the findings, and if applicable the sentence will be forwarded immediately to HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL), NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400, in the form of a summary communication for transmittal to the protecting power. When NPWIC transmits this information to the protecting power, it will include a brief statement of the appellate rights of the accused. Notification as to the decision of the CI to use or waive his or her right to appeal will also be forwarded (in duplicate) to HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400, for transmittal to the protecting power. If the sentence adjudged is death, the information set forth in g below, together with one copy of the court-martial record of trial will be forwarded to HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400, for transmittal to the protecting power.

(2) After final approval of a sentence involving the death penalty or imprisonment for 2 years or more, the following information will be forwarded (in duplicate) to HQDA, ODCSOPS(DAMO-ODL) NPWIC, WASH DC 20310-0400, for transmittal to the protecting power:

(a) A precise wording of the approved finding and sentence.

(b) A summarized report of the evidence.

(c) If applicable, the name of the place where confinement will be served.

#### f Appeals in criminal proceedings

(1) The convicted CI sentenced to confinement or to punishment other than death will have the right of appeal provided for by the laws applied by the court. In all instances, the CI condemned to death will be permitted to petition for pardon or reprieve. The CI will be fully informed of the right to appeal or petition and of the time within which it must be done.

(2) When the laws applied by the court make no provision for appeals, the convicted CI will have the right to petition against the finding and sentence to the competent authority of the United States.

(3) Any period allowed for appeal in the case of sentences involving the death penalty or imprisonment of 2 years or more will not begin to run until notification of the judgment has been received by the protecting power

(4) Courts of Appeal, if at all possible, will sit in the occupied territory

*g* Death penalty

(1) The CI will be informed as soon as possible of all offenses that are punishable by the death sentence under applicable laws. Lists of these offenses will be posted in all camps. Duplicate lists will be given to the Internee Committee

(2) The death sentence may not be pronounced against the CI who was under 18 years of age at the time of the offense unless the attention of the court has been particularly called to the fact that since the accused is not a national of the United States, he or she is not bound to it by any duty or allegiance

(3) If the death sentence is pronounced, it will not be executed for at least 6 months from the date when the protecting power received the detailed communication furnished by the United States in regard to trial (e above) except as provided in (4) below

(4) The 6-month period after suspension of the death sentence ((3) above) may be reduced in an individual case in circumstances of grave emergency involving an organized threat to the security of the United States. However, the protecting power must always be notified by HQDA (DAMO-ODL) as to the exception to the 6-month waiting period

*h* Civil proceedings. In every case where the CI is a party to any civil litigation, the camp commander will if the CI so requests inform the court of his or her detention. The camp commander will, within legal limits, take all necessary steps to prevent the CI from being in any way prejudiced by reason of his or her internment regarding the preparation and conduct of the case or execution of any judgment of the court

*i* Confinement pending trial. A pretrial investigation of an offense alleged to have been committed by the CI will be conducted rapidly so that the trial will take place as soon as possible. The CI will not be confined while awaiting trial unless a civilian national of the occupied territory would be so confined if accused of a similar offense. The CI may be confined if it is essential to do so in the interest of camp or national security. However, this confinement will never exceed 3 months

*j* Confinement facilities. CI confined as judicial punishment will serve their sentences in an internment facility, assigned by the theater commander, in the occupied territory as long as U.S. authorities can guarantee their protection

*k* Confinement benefits. In addition to the benefits stated in paragraph 6-11b, the CI placed in confinement in connection with judicial proceedings will be permitted to receive one relief parcel each month

#### 6-14 Death and burial

*a* Reference. For general procedures and authorized expenses for the care and disposition of remains, see AR 638-30 and AR 638-40

*b* Disposition of wills. When a person has chosen to make a will, the original and two certified copies will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC upon death or at the CI's request

*c* Information furnished to camp or hospital commander upon death. When the CI in U.S. custody dies, the attending medical officer will promptly furnish the following to the camp (or hospital) commander, the local provost marshal, or other officers who were charged with the custody of the CI prior to his or her death:

- (1) Full name
- (2) ISN
- (3) Date, place, and cause of death
- (4) Statement that in his or her opinion death was, or was not, the result of the CI's own misconduct
- (5) When the cause of death is undetermined, the medical officer will make a statement to that effect.
- (6) When the cause of death is finally determined, a supplemental report will be made

*d* Notifying the Branch PWIC of a death. The camp or hospital commander or other officer charged with custody of the CI prior to his or her death will notify the local Branch PWIC immediately by telegram of the death. Notification will include all data required in c above. The use of supplemental reports is authorized until requirements have been met

*e* Certificate of Death. A copy of DA Form 2669-R is contained in this regulation. For each death, the attending medical officer and the responsible camp commander will complete a DA Form 2669-R. The form will be made out in enough copies to provide the distribution below:

- (1) Original—NPWIC
- (2) Copy—Branch PWIC
- (3) Copy—The Surgeon General
- (4) Copy—CI's Personnel File
- (5) If the CI dies in the United States, a copy will be sent to the proper civil authorities responsible for recording deaths in that State *f* Investigating officer's report.

(1) The camp or hospital commander will appoint an officer to investigate and report the following:

- (a) Each death or serious injury caused, or suspected to have been caused, by guards or sentries, another CI, or any other person
- (b) Each suicide or death resulting from unnatural or unknown causes

(2) The precepts outlined in GC 1949, part IV, section 3, will be used as a guide. (See DA Pam 27-1)

(3) Military police investigators may be used at the discretion of the camp commander

*g* Burial, record of internment, and cremation

(1) The deceased CI will be buried honorably in a cemetery set up for them according to AR 638-30 and if possible, according to the rites of their religion. Unless unavoidable circumstances require the use of collective (group or mass) graves, the CI will be buried in a separate grave

(2) Graves Registration Services will record information on burials and graves. A copy of DD Form 551 (Record of Internment) will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC. The United States will care for graves and record of any subsequent moves of the remains

(3) A body may be cremated only because of imperative hygiene reasons, the CI's religion, or the CI's request for cremation. The reason for cremation of a body will be cited on the death certificate. Ashes will be kept by Graves Registration until proper disposal can be decided according to the instructions of the protecting power

*h* Forwarding deceased person's file. The personnel files of a deceased person with all pertinent records will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC

#### 6-15 Transfers

*a* Authority to transfer. Theater commanders may direct the transfer of the CI, subject to the following conditions:

(1) The CI may not be transferred beyond the borders of the occupied country in which interned except when for material reasons it is impossible to avoid such displacement. The CI thus evacuated will be transferred back to the area from which they were evacuated as soon as hostilities in that area have ceased

(2) The sick, wounded, or infirmed CI, as well as maternity cases, will not be transferred if the journey would be seriously detrimental to the health of the CI

(3) If the combat zone draws close to an internment camp, CI may not be transferred unless they can be moved under adequate conditions of safety. However, CI may be moved if they would be exposed to greater risks by remaining than by being transferred

*b* Notification of transfer

(1) The CI to be transferred will be officially advised of their departure and their new postal address in time for them to pack their luggage and notify their next-of-kin. The Internee Committee members to be transferred will be notified in time to acquaint their successors with their duties and related current affairs

(2) The Branch PWIC and NPWIC will be notified immediately of any CI transferred

*c* Treatment during transfer

(1) Generally, the CI will be transferred under conditions equal to those used for the transfer of personnel of the U.S. Military in the occupied territory. If, as an exceptional measure, the CI must be transferred on foot, only those who are in a fit state of health may be so transferred. The CI will not be exposed to excessive fatigue during transfer by foot.

(2) The sick, wounded, or infirmed CI as well as maternity cases will be evacuated through U.S. military medical channels and will remain in medical channels until they are certified "fit for normal internment" by competent medical authorities.

(3) Potable water and food sufficient in quantity, quality, and variety to maintain them in good health will be provided to the CI during transfer.

(4) Necessary clothing, adequate shelter, and medical attention will be made available.

(5) Suitable precautions will be taken to prevent CI from escaping and to ensure their safety.

*d* Transfer of personal effects and property

(1) The CI will be permitted to take with them their personal effects and property. The weight of their baggage may be limited if the conditions of transfer so require, but in no case will it be limited to less than 55 pounds per CI. The personal property that the CI are unable to carry will be forwarded separately.

(2) The mail and parcels addressed to CI who have been transferred will be forwarded to them.

(3) Property, such as that used for religious services, or items donated by welfare agencies will be forwarded as community property. These items are not to be considered a part of the 55 pounds of personal effects and property that each CI is authorized to take.

## **6-16 Release**

*a* General

(1) Control and accountability of CI will be maintained until the CI is received for by a representative of his or her country of residence or a designated protecting power.

(2) After hostilities cease and subject to the provisions of (3) below, CI will be released as soon as the reasons for their internment are determined by the theater commander to no longer exist.

(3) The CI who are eligible for release but have judicial proceedings pending for offenses not exclusively subject to disciplinary punishment will be detained until the close of the proceedings. At the discretion of the theater commander, the CI may be detained until completion of their penalty. The CI previously sentenced to confinement as judicial punishment may be similarly detained. Lists of the CI held under this guidance will be forwarded to the Branch PWIC and NPWIC for transmittal to the protecting power.

*b* Return of impounded personal effects. Upon release, the CI will be given all articles, moneys, or other valuables impounded during internment and will receive in currency the balance of any credit to their accounts. If the theater commander directs that any impounded currency or articles be withheld, the CI will be given a receipt.

*c* Cost of transport. The United States will pay the cost of returning the released CI to the places where they were living when interned.

*d* Medical fitness. The CI will not be admitted into the general population until their medical fitness is determined.

## **Chapter 7 Employment and Compensation—Civilian Internees**

### **7-1 General**

*a* Theater commanders may issue, within their respective commands, implementing instructions governing the employment and compensation of the CI consistent with these regulations. Copies of such instructions will be forwarded promptly to ODCSOPS.

*b* The CI will be employed, so far as possible, in work necessary

for the construction, administration, management, and maintenance of the CI camps.

*c* The CI compensation procedures will be accomplished in accordance with AR 37-1.

### **7-2. Ability to perform labor**

*a* The CI will be required to perform any work consistent with their age and physical condition and in accordance with this regulation.

*b* The fitness of CI for labor will be determined using the same procedures as those outlined in paragraph 3-4 *b*.

*c* The CI under 18 years of age will not be compelled to work.

### **7-3. Authorized work**

*a* Compulsory. The CI may be compelled to perform only the following type of work:

(1) Administrative, maintenance, and domestic work in an internment camp.

(2) Duties connected with the protection of the CI against aerial bombardment or other war risks.

(3) Medical duties if they are professionally and technically qualified.

*b* Voluntary. Subject to the provisions of paragraph 4-4 and to other restrictions as may be imposed by the theater commander, the CI may volunteer for, but may not be compelled to perform, work of any type without regard to the military character, purpose, or classification of the work. They will be free to terminate such work at any time subject to having labored for 6 weeks and having given an 8-day notice.

### **7-4. Unauthorized work**

The criteria for unauthorized work for CI is the same as those found for EPW/RP in paragraph 4-5.

### **7-5 Working conditions**

The working conditions for the CI, to include protective clothing, equipment, and safety devices, will be at least as favorable as those prescribed for the civilian population of the occupied territory by the national laws and regulations and as provided for in existing practice. In no case will the working conditions for the CI be inferior to those for the civilian population employed in work of the same nature and in the same district.

### **7-6. Length of workday**

*a* The length of the working day of the CI will not exceed that permitted for civilians in the locality who are employed in the same general type of work. A rest period of not less than 1 hour will be allowed during the workday.

*b* The length of the workday for CI will be in accordance with paragraph 4-8.

### **7-7 Day of rest**

Each CI will be allowed a rest of 24 consecutive hours every week, preferably on Sunday or on the day of rest in his or her country.

### **7-8 Paid work**

The following are types of work for which the CI will be compensated:

*a* Services, including domestic tasks, in connection with administering and maintaining CI camps, branch camps, and hospitals when the CI performs these services permanently.

*b* Spiritual and medical duties performed by the CI on behalf of their fellow CI.

*c* Services as members and as assistants to the members of the Internee Committee. These persons will be paid from the camp Civilian Internee Account. If there is no such account, they will be paid the prescribed rate from U.S. Army appropriated funds.

*d* All types of work that the CI does not have to do but does voluntarily.

**7-9. Unpaid work**

The criteria for unpaid work for CI is the same as for EPW/RP found in paragraph 4-18

**7-10 Compensation for paid work**

The daily compensation that the CI will receive for paid work will be announced by the Department of the Army at an appropriate time subsequent to an outbreak of hostilities. The CI compensation procedures will be in accordance with AR 37-1

**7-11. Disability compensation**

Procedures for CI disability compensation will be the same as those found in paragraph 4-20

## **Appendix A References**

### **Section I Required Publications**

- AR 37-1**  
Army Accounting and Fund Control (Cited in para 3-3n)
- AR 40-3**  
Medical, Dental, and Veterinary Care (Cited in para 6-6d)
- AR 40-5**  
Preventive Medicine (Cited in para 6-6g)
- AR 190-40**  
Serious Incident Report (Cited in para 3-16f)
- AR 195-2**  
Criminal Investigation Activities (Cited in para 1-4h)
- AR 600-8-1**  
Army Casualty Operation/Assistance/Insurance (Cited in para 3-10a)
- AR 600-25**  
Salutes, Honors, and Visits of Courtesy (Cited in para 3-6c(4))
- AR 600-55**  
The Army Driver and Operator Standardization Program (Selection, Training, Testing, and Licensing) (Cited in para 4-21)
- AR 638-30**  
Graves Registration Organization and Functions in Support Major Military Operations (Cited in para 3-10a)
- AR 670-1**  
Wear and Appearance of Army Uniforms and Insignia (Cited in para 3-15e)
- AR 735-5**  
Policies and Procedures for Property Accountability (Cited in para 3-9b)
- FM 22-5**  
Drill and Ceremonies (Cited in para 3-6c(4))
- Dictionary of Occupational Titles**  
(Cited in para 4-13a)
- Manual for Courts-Martial**  
Manual for Courts-Martial, U S , 1984 (Cited in para 3-7b)
- Uniform Code of Military Justice**  
(Cited in para 3-7b)
- DODD 2310.1**  
DOD Program for Enemy Prisoners of War (EPOW) and Other Detainees (Cited in para 1-4g)
- DODD 5100 77**  
DOD Law of War Program (Cited in para 1-4a(2))

### **Section II Related Publications**

A related publication is merely a source of additional information. The user does not have to read it to understand this regulation.

- AR 40-66**  
Medical Record Administration

- AR 40-400**  
Patient Administration

- AR 55-355**  
Defense Traffic Management Regulation (NAVSUPINST 4600 70, AFR 75-2, MCO P4600 14B, DLAR 4500 3)

- AR 190-14**  
Carrying of Firearms and Use of Force for Law Enforcement and Security Duties

- AR 190-47**  
The Army Corrections System

- AR 355-15**  
Management Information Control System

- AR 380-5**  
Department of the Army Information Security Program

- AR 985 series**  
Army Safety Program

- DA PAM 27-1**  
Treaties Governing Land Warfare

- FM 33-1**  
Psychological Operations

- AF Handbook (AFH) 31-302**  
Air Base Defense and Contingency Operations Guidance and Procedures

- SECNAVINST 3461.3**  
Program for Prisoners of War and Other Detainees

### **Section III Prescribed Forms**

- DA Form 2662-R**  
EPW Identity Card (Prescribed in para 3-3a(2)(b))

- DA Form 2663-R**  
Fingerprint Card (Prescribed in para 3-3a(2)(c))

- DA Form 2664-R**  
Weight Register (Prescribed in para 3-4i(3))

- DA Form 2665-R**  
Capture Card for Prisoner of War (Prescribed in para 3-5d(5))

- DA Form 2666-R**  
Prisoner of War - Notification of Address (Prescribed in para 3-5d(4))

- DA Form 2667-R**  
Prisoner of War Mail - Letter (Prescribed in para 3-5d(1))

- DA Form 2668-R**  
Prisoner of War Mail - Post Card (Prescribed in para 3-5d(1))

- DA Form 2669-R**  
Certificate of Death (Prescribed in para 3-10e)

- DA Form 2670-R**  
Mixed Medical Commission Certificate for EPW (Prescribed in para 3-12j)

- DA Form 2671-R**  
Certificate of Direct Repatriation for EPW (Prescribed in para 3-12k)

**DA Form 2672-R**  
Classification Questionnaire for Officer Retained Personnel

**DA Form 2673-R**  
Classification Questionnaire for Enlisted Retained Personnel

**DA Form 2674-R**  
Enemy Prisoner of War/Civilian Internee Strength Report

**DA Form 2675-R**  
Certificate of Work Incurred Injury or Disability (Prescribed in para 6-6f(2))

**DA Form 2677-R**  
Civilian Internee Identity Card (Prescribed in para 6-2e)

**DA Form 2678-R**  
Civilian Internee Notification of Address Prescribed in para 6-2f)

**DA Form 2679-R**  
Civilian Internee Mail (Prescribed in para 6-8a)

**DA Form 2680-R**  
Civilian Internee Post Card (Prescribed in para 6-8a)

**DA Form 4237-R**  
Detainee Personnel Record (Prescribed in para 3-3a(2)(b))

**DD Form 2745**  
Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag (Prescribed in para 2-1b)

#### **Section IV** **Referenced Forms**

**DA Form 1132**  
Prisoners Personal Property List - Personal Deposit Fund

**DD Form 551**  
Record of Internment

**DD Form 629**  
Receipt for Prisoner or Detained Person

**Standard Form 88**  
Report of Medical Examination

**Standard Form 600**  
Chronological Record of Medical Care

**DA Form 1132**  
Prisoners Personal Property List-Personal Deposit Fund

**DA Form 3444**  
Treatment Record

**DA Form 4137**  
Receipt for Evidence/Property Custody Document

#### **Appendix B** **Internment Serial Number**

The internment serial number (ISN) is a unique identification number assigned to each EPW, RP and CI taken into the custody of the U S Armed Forces. Throughout internment/detention, EPW/CI are identified PWIS accountability for EPW, RP and CI by the U S is established when the ISN is assigned. The ISN will consist of three components, with the first two separated by a dash as follows:

*a First Component* The first component will contain five characters. The first two will be the alpha-characters 'US'. The third character will be either the alpha or numeric designation for the

command/theater under which the EPW, RP and CI came into the custody of the U S. The fourth and fifth positions are alpha-characters designating the EPW, RP and CI serving power.

*b Second Component* The second component is a six character numeric identifier. These numbers will be assigned consecutively to all EPW, RP and CI processed through ISN assigning organizations. The Branch PWIC will assign blocks of numbers to ISN assigning organization/elements in the supported theater.

*c Third Component* The third component will consist of an acronym identifying the classification of the individual: either EPW, RP, or CI, to represent Enemy Prisoner of War, Retained Person, or Civilian Internee, respectively. Should an individual that was initially classified as an EPW later determined to be a medically or religiously qualified retained person, the classification may be changed to "RP" with the approval of the EPW command/brigade.

*d Example* The first EPW processed by an ISN assigning organization in a theater designated as "9" and whose country was designated as "AB" will be assigned the following ISN: US9AB-00001-EPW. The tenth such EPW processed by the same command will be assigned the ISN of US9AB-00010-EPW. If the eleventh individual processed by the same command was an RP and the fifteenth a CI, their ISNs would be US9AB-00011-RP and US9AB-00015-CI, respectively.

*e EPW transferred to CONUS* without having been assigned an ISN and those captured within the Continental U S, will be processed and assigned an ISN as above, by the CONUS EPW organizations.

## Glossary

### Section II Abbreviations

#### Section 1 Abbreviations

**ADP**  
Automated Data Processing

**APO**  
Army Post Office

**Cdr**  
Commander

**CI**  
Civilian Internee(s)

**COD**  
Cash on Delivery

**CONUS**  
Continental U S

**CTA**  
Central Tracing Agency

**DA**  
Department of the Army

**DAR**  
Defense Acquisition Regulation

**DCSINT**  
Deputy Chief of Staff for Intelligence

**DCSLOG**  
Deputy Chief of Staff for Logistics

**DCSOPS**  
Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations and Plans

**DCSPER**  
Deputy Chief of Staff for Personnel

**DOD**  
Department of Defense

**DRMO**  
Defense Reutilization and Marketing Office

**EDCSA**  
Effective Date of Change of Strength Accountability

**EPW**  
Enemy Prisoner(s) of War

**FAO**  
Finance and accounting officer

**FBI**  
Federal Bureau of Investigation

**FORSCOM**  
Forces Command

**GC**  
Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in time of War

**GPW**  
Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War

**GWS**  
Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the field

**GWS SEA**  
Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea

**HQDA**  
Headquarters, Department of the Army

**HSC**  
U S Army Health Services Command

**ICRC**  
International Committee of the Red Cross

**ISN**  
Internment Serial Number

**JCS**  
Joint Chiefs of Staff

**MPMIS**  
Military Police Management Information Systems

**NCO**  
noncommissioned Officer

**OD**  
Other Detainees

**OSD**  
Office of the Secretary of Defense

**NPWIC**  
National Prisoner of War Information Center

**PP**  
Protected Person

**PSYOP**  
Psychological Operations

**PWIC**  
Prisoner of War Information Center

**RP**  
Retained Personnel

**ROK**  
Republic of Korea

**SJA**  
Staff Judge Advocate

**TJAG**  
The Judge Advocate General

**TRADOC**  
U S Army Training and Doctrine Command

**TSG**  
The Surgeon General

**TST**  
Tuberculin Skin Test

**UCMJ**  
Uniform Code of Military Justice

**USAFAC**  
U S Army Finance and Accounting Center

**USFK**  
U S Armed Forces, Korea

### Section II Terms

**Canteen**  
A facility set up for the sale of authorized services and items of merchandise

**Central Tracing Agency**  
Centralizes tracing requests concerning all persons reported missing during the conflict. Requests are either forwarded by centralized information bureaus or submitted by families via their respective National Red Cross or Red Crescent Societies. The Central Tracing Agency (CTA) then passes them on for processing to the appropriate authorities and forwards replies to the requesters.

**Civilian Internee(s)**  
A civilian who is interned during armed conflict or occupation for security reasons or for protection or because he has committed an offense against the detaining power.

**Civilian Internee Account**  
Accounts established and records maintained under control of the disbursing officer. Deposit Fund Account 21X6015.

**Civilian Internee Branch Camp**  
A subsidiary camp under the supervision and administration of a civilian internee camp.

**Civilian Internee Camp**  
An installation established for the internment and administration of civilian internees.

**Civilian Internee Compound**  
A subdivision of a CI enclosure.

**Civilian Internee Enclosure**  
A subdivision of a CI camp.

**Contract Employer**  
Any person, corporation, association, State or municipal government agency, and other employer (except DOD) that contracts for work to be done.

**Dependent Child Internee**

A child who on request of the interned parents, for compassionate reasons, is accommodated in a CI internment camp with the interned parents

**Detainee**

A term used to refer to any person captured or otherwise detained by an armed force

**Domestic Service**

Such normal household duties as preparing and serving food and the care and repair of clothing

**Enemy Prisoner of War**

A detained person as defined in Articles 4 and 5 of the Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of August 12, 1949. In particular, one who, while engaged in combat under orders of his or her government, is captured by the armed forces of the enemy. As such, he or she is entitled to the combatant's privilege of immunity from the municipal law of the capturing state for warlike acts which do not amount to breaches of the law of armed conflict. For example, a prisoner of war may be, but is not limited to, any person belonging to one of the following categories who has fallen into the power of the enemy: a member of the armed forces, organized militia or volunteer corps, a person who accompanies the armed forces without actually being a member thereof, a member of a merchant marine or civilian aircraft crew not qualifying for more favorable treatment, or individuals who, on the approach of the enemy, spontaneously take up arms to resist invading forces.

**Enlisted EPW**

Enlisted EPW and civilian EPW entitled to be treated as enlisted EPW

**EPW Branch Camp**

A subsidiary camp under supervision and administration of the main EPW camp

**EPW Camp**

A camp set up by the U.S. Army for the separate internment and complete administration of EPW

**EPW Compound**

A subdivision of an EPW enclosure

**EPW Enclosure**

A subdivision of an EPW camp. Internment Serial Number Unique, controlled identification number assigned an EPW upon capture and entry into the Prisoner of War Information System

**Military Nature**

Term that applies to those items or those types of construction that are used exclusively by members of the Armed Forces for operational purposes (e.g., arms, helmets). The purposes are in contrast to items or structures that may be used either by civilian

or military personnel (e.g., food, soap, buildings, public roads, or railroads)

**Military Purpose**

Activities intended primarily or exclusively for military operations as contrasted with activities intended primarily or exclusively for other purposes

**Noncommissioned Officer EPW**

Enlisted EPW and civilian EPW entitled to be treated as a Noncommissioned Officer EPW

**Other Detainee (OD)**

Persons in the custody of the U.S. Armed Forces who have not been classified as an EPW (article 4, GPW), RP (article 33, GPW), or CI (article 78, GC), shall be treated as EPWs until a legal status is ascertained by competent authority

**Personal Effects**

Personal effects the EPW may retain include the following:

- a Clothing
- b Mess equipment (knives and forks excluded)
- c Badges of rank and nationality
- d Decorations
- e Identification cards or tags
- f Religious literature
- g Articles that are of a personal use or have a sentimental value to the person
- h Protective mask

**Prisoner of War Information System**

A computer information system designed to assist military police in the field, the Branch PWIC and the National PWIC to manage enemy prisoners of war by providing automated support for the policies and procedures established by regulation

**Prisoner of War Information Center (PWIC)**

A TOE organization established to collect information pertaining to EPW, RP and CI and to transmit such information to the National Prisoner of War Information Center

**Protected Person**

Persons protected by the Geneva Convention who find themselves, in case of a conflict or occupation, in the hands of a Party to the conflict or Occupying Power of which they are not nationals

**Retained Personnel**

Enemy personnel who come within any of

the categories below are eligible to be certified as retained personnel (RP)

a Medical personnel who are members of the medical service of their armed forces

b Medical personnel exclusively engaged in the—

(1) Search for, collection, transport, or treatment of, the wounded or sick

(2) Prevention of disease

(3) Staff administration of medical units and establishments exclusively

c Chaplains attached to enemy armed forces

d Staff of National Red Cross societies and other voluntary aid societies duly recognized and authorized by their governments. The staffs of such societies must be subject to military laws and regulations

**Section III****Special Abbreviations and Terms**

This section contains no entries



## Index

This index is organized alphabetically by topic and subtopic. Topics and subtopics are identified by paragraph number.

**Canteen, 3-4h**

**Capture, 2-1**

**Civilian Internee**

Authorization to Intern, 5-1b

Definition (Glossary Section II)

Personal effects, 6-3

Treatment, 5-1a(1)

**Complaints**

CI, 6-9

EPW and RP, 3-16,

**Correspondence**

Enemy Prisoner of War and Retained Personnel, 3-5

Civilian Internee, 6-8

**Discipline and Security**

CI, 6-10, 6-11

EPW and RP, 3-6

**Death and Burial, 3-10**

Civilian Internee, 6-14

Burial at sea, 3-10h

**Death Penalty**

Civilian Internee, 6-13g

EPW/RP, 3-8i(1)

**DOD Directive 2310.1, 1-4g**

**Enemy Prisoner of War**

Definition (Glossary-Section II,

Sick and Wounded, 2-2

Transfers, 3-11

Questioning of Prisoners, 2-1a(1)(d)

Evacuation of Prisoners, 2-2, 2-3,

**Escape**

Preventing Escape, 3-6f(2)

**Evacuation Policy, 2-3**

**Executive Agent, 1-4b**

**Flags, 3-6e**

**Finance**

Supplemental Pay, 4-14, 4-16

**Health and Comfort Packets, 3-4h**

**International Committee of the Red Cross**

**Internee Committee, 6-4**

**Internment Serial Numbers (Appendix B)**

**Judicial proceedings**

Civilian Internees, 6-13

EPW/RP, 3-8,

**Labor (Civilian Internee,**

Authorized work, 7-3

Unauthorized work, 7-4

Working conditions, 7-5

Day of rest, 7-7

**Labor (EPW/RP)**

Authorized work, 4-4

Length of work day, 4-8

Rest Periods, 4-9

Task system, 4-12

Unauthorized work, 4-5

**Mail**

Civilian Internee, 6-8b

EPW/RP, 3-5

**Medical**

Civilian Internee Dental Care, 6-6d(1)

Civilian Internee Medical Care and Sanitation, 6-6

Medical Personnel, 1-5f

Mixed Medical Commission, 3-12

**Military Police, 1-4g, 6-2**

**National Prisoner of War Information**

Center (NPWIC,, 1-7

Naval Vessels, 2-1b

**Prisoner of War Information Center, 1-8**

**Property, 3-9**

**Other Detainee (Glossary Section II)**

**Parcels, 3-5k**

**Photographing, 1-5d**

**Prisoner of War Information Center**

National Prisoner of War Information Center, 1-6

Branch Prisoner of War Information Center, 1-7

**Protection Policy, 1-5**

**Public Affairs, 1-9**

**Release**

Civilian Internee, 6-16

**Religion, 1-5g**

Civilian Internee, 6-7

Chaplains, 3-15b(3)

Enemy Prisoner of War, 1-5g(2)

Ministers, 3-15d(1)

**Repatriation, 3-14)**

Sick and wounded, 3-12)

**Retained Personnel, 3-15)**

Definition (Glossary Section II)

Chaplains, 3-15b(3)

Medical Personnel, 1-5f

**Safety**

Civilian Internee, 5-2

EPW/RP, 3-17

**Saluting, 3-6d**

**Social, Intellectual and Religious activities, 3-4d**

Civilian Internee, 6-7

EPW/RP, 3-4d

**Spies and Saboteurs, 5-1e**

**Telegrams**

Civilian Internee, 6-8k

EPW/RP, 3-5l

**Tobacco, 3-4h**

**Transfers**

CI, 6-15

EPW and RP, 3-11

**Tribunals, 1-6**

Article 5 GPW, 1-6a

<b>EPW IDENTITY CARD</b> For use of this form, see AR 190-8, the proponent agency is DCSPER		<b>DATE ISSUED</b>	
<i>(Photograph)</i>	<b>LAST NAME</b>		<b>GRADE</b>
	<b>FIRST NAME</b>		<b>POWER SERVED</b>
	<b>SERVICE NUMBER</b>		
<b>PLACE OF BIRTH</b>		<b>DATE OF BIRTH</b>	
<b>SIGNATURE OF BEARER</b>			

DA FORM 2662-R, May 82

EDITION OF 1 JUL 63 IS OBSOLETE

(Front)

<b>OTHER MARKS OF IDENTIFICATION</b>	<b>LEFT INDEX</b>	<b>FINGERPRINTS</b>	<b>WEIGHT</b>	<b>COLOR OF EYES</b>
			<b>HEIGHT</b>	<b>COLOR OF HAIR</b>
			<b>BLOOD TYPE</b>	<b>RELIGION</b>
			<b>NOTICE</b>	
<b>RIGHT INDEX</b>	<p>This card is issued to prisoners of war in the custody of the United States Army. This card must be carried at all times by the EPW to whom it is issued.</p>			

Reverse of DA Form 2662-R, May 82

(Reverse)

1

<b>FINGERPRINT CARD</b> For use of this form, see AR 190-8. the proponent agency is DCSPER				INTERNMENT SERIAL NUMBER		
LAST NAME			FIRST NAME		GRADE	
POWER SERVED	NATIONALITY		SEX	AGE	HEIGHT	WEIGHT
OTHER MARKS OF IDENTIFICATION			COLOR OF EYES		COLOR OF HAIR	
<i>LEAVE THIS SPACE BLANK</i>						
SIGNATURE OF OFFICIAL TAKING FINGERPRINTS			CLASSIFICATION			
SIGNATURE OF EPW/CIVILIAN INTERNEE			REFERENCE			
1. RIGHT THUMB	2. RIGHT INDEX	3. RIGHT MIDDLE	4. RIGHT RING	5. RIGHT LITTLE		
6. LEFT THUMB	7. LEFT INDEX	8. LEFT MIDDLE	9. LEFT RING	10. LEFT LITTLE		
LEFT FOUR FINGERS TAKEN SIMULTANEOUSLY		LEFT THUMB	RIGHT THUMB	RIGHT FOUR FINGERS TAKEN SIMULTANEOUSLY		



**WEIGHT REGISTER**

For use of this form, see AR 190 B, the proponent agency is DCSPER

INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER

NAME (Last, first MI)

WEIGHT	DATE	WEIGHT	DATE	WEIGHT	DATE



<b>PRISONER OF WAR MAIL</b>	
<b>IMPORTANT</b>	<b>TO:</b> <b>CENTRAL PRISONERS OF WAR AGENCY</b>
<p>This card must be completed by each prisoner immediately after being taken prisoner and each time his/her address is changed (by reason of transfer to a hospital or to another camp)</p> <p>This card is distinct from the special card which each prisoner is allowed to send to his/her relatives</p>	

DA FORM 2665-R, May 82

EDITION OF 1 JUL 63 IS OBSOLETE

(Front)

<b>CAPTURE CARD FOR PRISONER OF WAR</b>			
<small>For use of this form, see AR 190-8 the proponent agency is DCSPER</small>			
<b>WRITE LEGISLY IN BLOCK LETTERS. DO NOT ADD ANY REMARKS</b>			
NAME (Last, First, MI)		GRADE	
SERVICE NUMBER	POWER SERVED	PLACE OF BIRTH	
DATE OF BIRTH	FIRST NAME OF FATHER	MAIDEN NAME OF MOTHER	
NAME, ADDRESS, AND RELATIONSHIP OF NEXT OF KIN		DATE OF CAPTURE OR TRANSFER	
<b>PHYSICAL CONDITION (Check applicable box)</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> GOOD HEALTH	<input type="checkbox"/> RECOVERED	<input type="checkbox"/> SICK	<input type="checkbox"/> SERIOUSLY WOUNDED
<input type="checkbox"/> NOT WOUNDED	<input type="checkbox"/> CONVALESCENT	<input type="checkbox"/> SLIGHTLY WOUNDED	
FORMER ADDRESS		INTERMENT SERIAL NO	
PRESENT ADDRESS (Name of Camp, or Hospital, and Location)			
DATE	SIGNATURE OF PRISONER		

Reverse of DA Form 2665 R, May 82

(Reverse)





<b>PRISONER OF WAR MAIL</b>	
<b>DO NOT WRITE HERE</b>	<b>TO</b>
	<b>STREET</b>
	<b>CITY</b>
	<b>COUNTRY</b>
	<b>PROVINCE OR DEPARTMENT</b>

DA FORM 2666-R, May 82

EDITION OF 1 JUL 63 IS OBSOLETE

(Front)

<b>PRISONER OF WAR NOTIFICATION OF ADDRESS</b> <small>For use of this form, see AR 190-8 the proponent agency is DCSPER</small>			
<b>LANGUAGE</b>		<b>POWER SERVED</b>	
<b>PRINT CLEARLY THE INFORMATION CALLED FOR. DO NOT ADD ANY REMARKS</b>			
<b>NAME (Last, First MI)</b>			<b>GRADE</b>
<b>INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER</b>		<b>DATE OF CAPTURE OR TRANSFER</b>	
<b>DATE OF BIRTH</b>	<b>PLACE OF BIRTH</b>		
<b>PHYSICAL CONDITION (Check applicable box)</b>			
<input type="checkbox"/> GOOD HEALTH	<input type="checkbox"/> RECOVERED	<input type="checkbox"/> SICK	<input type="checkbox"/> SERIOUSLY WOUNDED
<input type="checkbox"/> NOT WOUNDED	<input type="checkbox"/> CONVALESCENT		<input type="checkbox"/> SLIGHTLY WOUNDED
<b>FORMER ADDRESS</b>			
<b>PRESENT ADDRESS (Name of Camp or Hospital, and Location)</b>			
<b>DATE</b>	<b>SIGNATURE OF PRISONER</b>		

Reverse of DA Form 2666 R, May 82

(Reverse)



Country where posted \_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Camp \_\_\_\_\_  
Date and Place of Birth \_\_\_\_\_  
Internment Serial Number \_\_\_\_\_  
Name (Last, first MI) \_\_\_\_\_

SENDER:

(Fold on this line)

PRISONER OF WAR MAIL LETTER

Language \_\_\_\_\_  
To \_\_\_\_\_  
Street \_\_\_\_\_  
City \_\_\_\_\_  
Country \_\_\_\_\_  
Province or Department \_\_\_\_\_

(Fold on this line)

DO NOT WRITE HERE

(Fold on this line)







<b>PRISONER OF WAR MAIL</b>	
<b>SENDER</b>	<b>TO</b>
NAME (Last, first, MI)	
INTERNMENT SERIAL NUMBER	STREET
DATE AND PLACE OF BIRTH	CITY
NAME OF CAMP	COUNTRY
	PROVINCE OR DEPARTMENT
COUNTRY WHERE POSTED	

DA FORM 2668-R, May 82

EDITION OF 1 JUL 63 IS OBSOLETE

(Front)

<b>POST CARD</b>		<b>DATE</b>
For use of this form, see AR 190-8 the proponent agency is DCSPER		
<b>LANGUAGE</b>	<b>POWER SERVED</b>	
<b>WRITE BETWEEN LINES AND AS LEGIBLY AS POSSIBLE</b>		

Reverse of DA Form 2668 R May 82

(Reverse)





**CERTIFICATE OF DEATH**

INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER

For use of this form, see AR 180-8, the proponent agency is DCSPER.

FROM:

TO:



NAME (Last, first, MI)		GRADE	SERVICE NUMBER
NATIONALITY	POWER SERVED	PLACE OF CAPTURE/INTERMENT AND DATE	
PLACE OF BIRTH			DATE OF BIRTH
NAME ADDRESS, AND RELATIONSHIP OF NEXT OF KIN			FIRST NAME OF FATHER
PLACE OF DEATH	DATE OF DEATH	CAUSE OF DEATH	
PLACE OF BURIAL			DATE OF BURIAL
IDENTIFICATION OF GRAVE			

PERSONAL EFFECTS (To be filled in by Office of Deputy Chief of Staff for Personnel)

 RETAINED BY DETAINING POWER FORWARDED WITH DEATH  
CERTIFICATE TO (Specify) FORWARDED SEPARATELY TO  
(Specify)BRIEF DETAILS OF DEATH/BURIAL BY PERSON WHO CARED FOR THE DECEASED DURING ILLNESS OR DURING LAST MOMENTS  
(Doctor, Nurse, Minister of Religion, Fellow Internee) IF CREMATED, GIVE REASON (If more space is required continue on reverse side)DO NOT WRITE IN THIS SPACE  
CERTIFIED A TRUE COPY

DATE	SIGNATURE OF MEDICAL OFFICER
SIGNATURE OF COMMANDING OFFICER	
WITNESSES	
SIGNATURE	ADDRESS
SIGNATURE	ADDRESS



**MIXED MEDICAL COMMISSION CERTIFICATE FOR EPW**

For use of this form, see AR 190-8, the proponent agency is DCSPER

FROM \_\_\_\_\_

TO \_\_\_\_\_



The undersigned make up the Mixed Medical Commission They are duly appointed under the GPW of 1949 to examine \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (state nationality) EPW in custody of the US Armed Forces. The EPW claim eligibility  
 for repatriation or for hospitalization in a neutral country under the provisions of that convention. The EPW named below has  
 been presented to the Commission and has been examined at the location, and on the date shown

NAME (Last, first, MI)		GRADE
SERVICE NUMBER	INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER	DATE OF BIRTH
<b>STATUS</b>		
<input type="checkbox"/> MEDICAL	<input type="checkbox"/> LITTER	<input type="checkbox"/> AMBULANT
<input type="checkbox"/> SURGICAL	<input type="checkbox"/> LOCKED WARD	<input type="checkbox"/> OPEN
<input type="checkbox"/> NEUROPSYCHIATRIC		<input type="checkbox"/> ISOLATION
THE MIXED MEDICAL COMMISSION FINDS THAT THE ABOVE NAMED EPW IS (Check applicable box)	<input type="checkbox"/> a. INELIGIBLE FOR REPATRIATION OR HOSPITALIZATION IN A NEUTRAL COUNTRY.	
	<input type="checkbox"/> b. ELIGIBLE FOR DIRECT REPATRIATION	
	<input type="checkbox"/> c. ELIGIBLE FOR HOSPITALIZATION IN A NEUTRAL COUNTRY	
	<input type="checkbox"/> d. ELIGIBLE FOR RE EXAMINATION BY NEXT COMMISSION.	

FINAL DIAGNOSIS (Continue on reverse side if more space is required)

PLACE OF EXAMINATION		DATE
TYPED NAME OF CHAIRMAN, MIXED MEDICAL COMMISSION	SIGNATURE	
TYPED NAME OF MEMBER	SIGNATURE	
TYPED NAME OF US MEDICAL REPRESENTATIVE	SIGNATURE	



**CERTIFICATE FOR DIRECT REPATRIATION FOR EPW**

For use of this form, see AR 190-8, the proponent agency is OCSPER

FROM

TO



The undersigned make up the medical command of a US general hospital. They have examined the EPW named herein and have agreed that he/she is eligible for repatriation according to the medical agreement in the GPW of 1949

NAME (Last, first, MI)		GRADE
SERVICE NUMBER	INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER	DATE OF BIRTH

**STATUS**

- MEDICAL                       LITTER                       AMBULANT  
 SURGICAL                       LOCKED WARD                       OPEN                       ISOLATION  
 NEUROPSYCHIATRIC

FINAL DIAGNOSIS

PLACE OF EXAMINATION	DATE
TYPED NAME OF COMMANDING OFFICER	SIGNATURE
TYPED NAME OF EXECUTIVE OFFICER	SIGNATURE
TYPED NAME OF CHIEF OF SERVICE	SIGNATURE



**CLASSIFICATION QUESTIONNAIRE FOR OFFICER RETAINED PERSONNEL**

For use of this form, see AR 190-8, the proponent agency is DCSPER

NAME (Last, First, MI)		GRADE	SERVICE NUMBER		
DATE OF BIRTH	NATIONALITY	POWER SERVED	DATE OF CAPTURE		
LENGTH OF MILITARY SERVICE	RELIGION	INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER			
GENERAL EDUCATION (Check highest school attended)		LANGUAGES	EXCELLENT	GOOD	FAIR
<input type="checkbox"/> PRIMARY SCHOOL <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH SCHOOL <input type="checkbox"/> UNIVERSITY OR COLLEGE					

**PROFESSIONAL EDUCATION**

NAME OF PROFESSIONAL SCHOOL	LOCATION	YEARS ATTENDED	YEAR GRADUATED	DEGREE

**INTERNSHIP (Do not include Residences)**

NAME OF HOSPITAL	LOCATION	SERVICE	YEAR COMPLETED	TIME (Months)

**RESIDENCES AND FELLOWSHIPS**

HOSPITAL OR INSTITUTION	LOCATION	SERVICE OR SUBJECT	YEAR COMPLETED	TIME (Months)

VERIFIED BY STATE BOARD OF	LOCATION	DATE	SPECIALTY





**CLASSIFICATION QUESTIONNAIRE FOR ENLISTED RETAINED PERSONNEL**

For use of this form, see AR 190-8, the proponent agency is DCSPER

NAME (Last, first, MI)		GRADE	SERVICE NUMBER		
DATE OF BIRTH	NATIONALITY	POWER SERVED	DATE OF CAPTURE		
LENGTH OF MILITARY SERVICE	RELIGION	INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER			
EDUCATION (Check highest school attended)		LANGUAGES	EXCELLENT	GOOD	FAIR
<input type="checkbox"/> PRIMARY SCHOOL <input type="checkbox"/> HIGH SCHOOL					
<input type="checkbox"/> UNIVERSITY OR COLLEGE					

**PRINCIPAL ASSIGNMENTS IN MILITARY SERVICE**

STATION	LOCATION	SPECIFIC MEDICAL DUTIES	TIME (Months)

**VERIFICATION**

DOCUMENTARY EVIDENCE	DATE VERIFIED	VERIFIED
<input type="checkbox"/> IDENTITY CARD <input type="checkbox"/> NONE		<input type="checkbox"/> EPW PROCESSING CO <input type="checkbox"/> AREA COMMANDER <input type="checkbox"/> CAMP COMMANDER

**MEDICAL ASSIGNMENTS SINCE CAPTURE**

STATION	LOCATION	SPECIFIC ASSIGNMENTS

PRESENT MEDICAL ASSIGNMENT	MEDICAL CLASSIFICATION

REMARKS

DATE	NAME (Typed or Printed)	SIGNATURE



# ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR/CIVILIAN INTERNEE STRENGTH REPORT

For use of this form, see AR 190-8, the proponent agency is DCSPER

REQUIREMENT CONTROL SYMBOL  
CSGPA-1883

PERIOD ENDING 2400 HOURS (Year, month, day)

PAGE NO

NO OF PAGES

TO

FROM: (Organization and Location)

## SECTION A - STRENGTH

LINE	CATEGORY	TYPE PERSONNEL						TOTAL
		ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR	MILITARY DETAINEES	RETAINED PERSONS	CIVILIAN DETAINEES	INNOCENT CIVILIANS	OTHER	
	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h
1	PREVIOUS STRENGTH							
2	GAINS	INITIAL						
3		RETURN FROM ESCAPE						
4		ASSIGNED FROM ANOTHER POWER EPW CAMP						
5		TRANSFERRED FROM ANOTHER US EPW CAMP						
6		OTHER						
7	LOSSES	TRANSFERRED TO ANOTHER POWER EPW CAMP						
8		ESCAPE						
9		REPATRIATION						
10		INTERNATIONAL TRANSFER						
11		RELEASE IN PLACE						
12		TRANSFERRED TO ANOTHER US EPW CAMP						
13		DEATH						
14		OTHER						
15	ACCOUNTABLE	TRANSFER TO HOSPITAL						
16		IN TRANSIT						
17		UNPROCESSED						
18		OTHER						
19		TOTAL						







**CERTIFICATE OF WORK INCURRED INJURY OR DISABILITY**

For use of this form, see AR 190-8; the proponent agency is DCSPER

FROM	DATE
------	------

TO



**SECTION I - TO BE COMPLETED BY INVESTIGATING OFFICER**

NAME (Last, first, MI)			GRADE
INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER	SERVICE NUMBER	NATIONALITY	POWER SERVED
___ INJURY      ___ DISEASE		LABOR PERFORMED AT TIME OF INJURY OR WORK DISABILITY	
PLACE WHERE INJURED	TIME	DATE (Day, Month, Year)	

WITNESSES

CIRCUMSTANCES UNDER WHICH INJURY OR DISABILITY WAS INCURRED

In my opinion the injury to, or physical disability of, the EPW/Civ Internee named above ___ is not attributable to his/her work assignment	TYPED OR PRINTED NAME GRADE AND ORIGATION OF INVESTIGATING OFFICER	
	SIGNATURE	DATE

**SECTION II - TO BE COMPLETED BY MEDICAL OFFICER**

STATEMENT OF MEDICAL TREATMENT AND HOSPITALIZATION

FINDINGS OF MEDICAL OFFICER

In my opinion the injury, or physical disability of the EPW/Civ Internee named above in Section I ___ was ___ was not attributable to his/her work assignment	TYPED OR PRINTED NAME AND GRADE OF MEDICAL OFFICER	
	SIGNATURE	DATE





<b>CIVILIAN INTERNEE IDENTITY CARD</b> For use of this form, see AR 190-57; the proponent agency is ODCSPER.		DATE ISSUED	
<i>(Photograph)</i>	LAST NAME		
	FIRST NAME	SEX	
	SERVICE NUMBER	POWER SERVED	
PLACE OF BIRTH		DATE OF BIRTH	
SIGNATURE OF BEARER			

DA FORM 2677-R, NOV 86 EDITION OF AUG 63 IS OBSOLETE.

(FRONT)

OTHER MARKS OF IDENTIFICATION	LEFT INDEX	FINGERPRINTS	WEIGHT	COLOR OF EYES
			HEIGHT	COLOR OF HAIR
			BLOOD TYPE	RELIGION
	NOTICE			
	RIGHT INDEX			

REVERSE OF DA FORM 2677-R, NOV 86

(REVERSE)



## CIVILIAN INTERNEE NOTIFICATION OF ADDRESS

For use of this form, see AR 190-57, the proponent agency is ODCSPER.

<b>DO NOT WRITE HERE</b>	TO
	STREET
	CITY
	COUNTRY
	PROVINCE OR DEPARTMENT

DA FORM 2678-R, NOV 86

EDITION OF AUG 63 IS OBSOLETE

*(Front)*

LANGUAGE	POWER SERVED		
PRINT CLEARLY THE INFORMATION CALLED FOR DO NOT ADD ANY REMARKS			
NAME <i>(Last, First, MI)</i>	GRADE		
INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER	DATE OF CAPTURE OR TRANSFER		
DATE OF BIRTH	PLACE OF BIRTH		
<b>PHYSICAL CONDITION</b> <i>(Check applicable box)</i>			
<input type="checkbox"/> GOOD HEALTH	<input type="checkbox"/> RECOVERED	<input type="checkbox"/> SICK	<input type="checkbox"/> SERIOUSLY WOUNDED
<input type="checkbox"/> NOT WOUNDED	<input type="checkbox"/> CONVALESCENT		<input type="checkbox"/> SLIGHTLY WOUNDED
FORMER ADDRESS			
PRESENT ADDRESS <i>(Name of Camp or Hospital and Location)</i>			
DATE	SIGNATURE OF PRISONER		

REVERSE OF DA FORM 2678-R, NOV 86



-----  
*(Fold on this line)*

**SENDER:**

Name *(Last, first, MI)*

Internment Serial Number

Date and Place of Birth

Name of Camp

Country where posted

-----  
**CIVILIAN INTERNEE LETTER**

For use of this form, see AR 190-57, the proponent agency is ODCSPER

Language \_\_\_\_\_

To \_\_\_\_\_

Street \_\_\_\_\_

City \_\_\_\_\_

Country \_\_\_\_\_

Province or Department \_\_\_\_\_

-----  
*(Fold on this line)*

**DO NOT WRITE HERE**

-----  
*(Fold on this line)*



**DO NOT WRITE BEYOND HEAVY LINES**

Lined writing area consisting of multiple horizontal lines for text entry.





# CIVILIAN INTERNEE POST CARD

For use of this form, see AR 190-57, the proponent agency is ODCSPER

SENDER		TO	
NAME (Last, First, MI)			
INTERMENT SERIAL NUMBER		STREET	
DATE AND PLACE OF BIRTH		CITY	
NAME OF CAMP		COUNTRY	
		PROVINCE OR DEPARTMENT	
COUNTRY WHERE POSTED			

DA FORM 2680-R, NOV 86

EDITION OF AUG 83 IS OBSOLETE

(Front)

LANGUAGE	POWER SERVED	DATE
----------	--------------	------

WRITE BETWEEN LINES AND AS LEGIBLY AS POSSIBLE

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

REVERSE OF DA FORM 2680-R, NOV 86

(Reverse)



## DETAINEE PERSONNEL RECORD

For use of this form, see AR 190-8, the proponent agency is ODCSPER.

### PART I - TO BE COMPLETED AT TIME OF PROCESSING

<b>CARD I</b>		1 INTERMENT SERIAL NO (1-13)	2 NAME (Last, first, middle) (14-34)		3 RANK (35-37)
4 ENEMY SVC NO (38-46)		5 TYPE (47)	6 DATE OF CAPTURE (48-63)		7 DATE OF BIRTH (64-69)
8 NATIONALITY (60-61)		9 EDUCATION (62)	10 RELIGION (63-64)	11 MARSTA (65)	12 PW CAMP UIC (66-71)
				13 PW PROCESS DATE (72-77)	
<b>CARD II</b> <i>(Keypuncher will pick up Item 1 above)</i>		14 SEX (14)		15 LANGUAGE I (15-16)	
				16 LANGUAGE II (17-18)	
17 PHYSICAL CONDITION (19)		18 PW CAMP LOCATION (20-22)		19 ENEMY UNIT (23-34)	
20 ARM OF SVC (35)		21 MOSC (36-39)		22 CIVILIAN OCCUPATION (40-45)	
				23 UIC CAPTURE UNIT (46-51)	
24 CORPS AREA OF CAPTURE (52)		25 PLACE OF CAPTURE		26 POWER SERVED	
				27 PLACE OF BIRTH	
28 ADDRESS TO WHICH MAIL FOR PW MAY BE SENT				29 FATHER/STEPFATHER	
				30 MOTHER'S MAIDEN NAME	
31 PERMANENT HOME ADDRESS OF PW				32 NAME, ADDRESS, AND RELATIONSHIP OF PERSON TO BE INFORMED OF CAPTURE	
33 OTHER PARTICULARS FROM ID CARD				34 DISTINGUISHING MARKS	
35 IMPOUNDED PERSONAL EFFECTS AND MONEY (1AW AR 37-36)					

THE ABOVE LIST OF IMPOUNDED ITEMS IS CORRECT

36 REMARKS	(Signature of Detainee)	
	37 PHOTO	
	PHOTO (Front View)	PHOTO (Right Profile)
38 PREPARED BY (Individual and unit);	39 SIGNATURE	
40 DATE PREPARED	41 PLACE	



**PART II - TO BE MAINTAINED BY UNIT HAVING CUSTODY**

42a LAST NAME b. FIRST NAMES

43 INTERNMENT SERIAL NUMBER

44 **MEDICAL RECORD**

a IMMUNIZATION (*Vaccinations and Inoculations with Dates*)

b MAJOR ILLNESSES AND PHYSICAL DEFECTS (*With Dates*)

c BLOOD GROUP

45 INTERNMENT EMPLOYMENT QUALIFICATIONS

46 SERIOUS OFFENSES, PUNISHMENTS AND ESCAPES (*With Dates*)

47 **TRANSFERS**

FROM ( <i>Location</i> )	TO ( <i>Location</i> )	DATE

48 REMARKS

49 **FINANCIAL STATUS AT TIME OF FIRST INTERNATIONAL TRANSFER**

a CERTIFICATE OF CREDIT BALANCE ISSUED TO EPW (*Amount in words*) b AMT IN FIGURES

c LOCATION d DATE

50 **FINANCIAL STATUS AT TIME OF SECOND INTERNATIONAL TRANSFER**

a CERTIFICATE OF CREDIT BALANCE ISSUED TO EPW (*Amount in words*) b AMT IN FIGURES

c LOCATION d DATE

51 **REPATRIATION**

a REASON

b MODE c DATE

52 **FINANCIAL STATUS AT TIME OF REPATRIATION**

a CERTIFICATE OF CREDIT BALANCE ISSUED TO EPW (*Amount in words*) b AMT IN FIGURES

c LOCATION d DATE



**UNCLASSIFIED**

**PIN 050730-000**



# USAPA

ELECTRONIC PUBLISHING SYSTEM

TEXT FORMATTER ... Version 2.45

PIN: 050730-000

DATE: 05-11-98

TIME: 10:41.04

PAGES SET: 84

---

DATA FILE: ar190-8.fil

DOCUMENT: AR 190-8

DOC STATUS: REVISION

# **FM 3-19.40**

(formerly FM 19-40)

**Military Police**

# **Internment/ Resettlement Operations**

**Headquarters,  
Department of the Army**

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION Approved for public release, distribution is unlimited

# Military Police Internment/Resettlement Operations

## Contents

	<b>Page</b>
<b>PREFACE</b>	v
<b>PART ONE FUNDAMENTALS OF INTERNMENT/RESETTLEMENT OPERATIONS</b>	
<b>Chapter 1 INTRODUCTION</b>	1-1
Procedures	1-1
Definitions	1-2
Objectives	1-5
Agencies	1-6
Protection of Captives and Detainees	1-11
Protection of Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees	1-12
Protection of Refugees	1-13
<b>Chapter 2 COMMANDER AND STAFF RESPONSIBILITIES</b>	2-1
<b>Section I - Commanders</b>	2-1
Procedures	2-1
Principles and Policies	2-2
Security	2-5
<b>Section II - Staff Officers</b>	2-9
Adjutant General	2-9
Finance Officer	2-9
Civil-Military Operations Officer	2-9
Chaplain	2-10
Engineer Officer	2-10
Public Affairs Officer	2-10
Signal Officer	2-10
Staff Judge Advocate	2-10
Medical Operations	2-11

**Distribution Restriction.** Approved for public release, distribution is unlimited

\*This publication supersedes FM 19-40, 27 February 1976, and FM 19-60, 27 May 1986

	Page
Movement Control Officer . . . . .	2-12
Inspector General .. . . .	2-12
Psychological Operations . . . . .	2-12
<b>Section III - Training</b> . . . . .	<b>2-13</b>
<b>PART TWO ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR AND CIVILIAN INTERNEES</b>	
<b>Chapter 3 DIVISION COLLECTING POINTS AND CORPS HOLDING AREAS . . . . .</b>	<b>3-1</b>
Overview . . . . .	3-1
Processing Captives . . . . .	3-2
Evacuating Captives . . . . .	3-8
Division Collecting Points . . . . .	3-10
Corps Holding Areas . . . . .	3-15
Collocated Screening Sites . . . . .	3-17
Collecting Points in Other Operations . . . . .	3-18
<b>Chapter 4 ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR . . . . .</b>	<b>4-1</b>
Evacuation . . . . .	4-1
Receiving and Processing Areas . . . . .	4-1
Assignment to Internment Facilities . . . . .	4-9
Control and Discipline . . . . .	4-12
Clothing . . . . .	4-15
Subsistence . . . . .	4-17
Medical and Sanitation Considerations . . . . .	4-17
Correspondence . . . . .	4-17
Canteens . . . . .	4-18
Social Programs . . . . .	4-18
Security . . . . .	4-21
<b>Chapter 5 CIVILIAN INTERNEES . . . . .</b>	<b>5-1</b>
General Protection . . . . .	5-1
Administrative Responsibilities . . . . .	5-2
Principles and Policies . . . . .	5-3
Clothing . . . . .	5-5
Subsistence . . . . .	5-5
Receiving and Processing Areas . . . . .	5-6
Control and Discipline . . . . .	5-10
Internee Committee . . . . .	5-12
Correspondence . . . . .	5-13
Complaints and Requests . . . . .	5-13
Medical Treatment . . . . .	5-13
Sanitation . . . . .	5-13
Transfer . . . . .	5-14
Release . . . . .	5-15
Social Programs . . . . .	5-15
Employment . . . . .	5-16
Security . . . . .	5-17
Disturbances . . . . .	5-18
Facility Markings . . . . .	5-18

	Page
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>INTERNMENT/RESETTLEMENT FACILITIES</b> 6-1
	Planning 6-1
	Security Requirements 6-2
	Layout 6-3
	Receiving and Processing Centers 6-5
	Medical and Sanitation Considerations 6-7

**PART THREE UNITED STATES MILITARY PRISONERS**

<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>ARMY CORRECTIONS SYSTEM</b> 7-1
	Levels of Confinement 7-1
	Correctional Facilities 7-3
	Legal Rights and Requirements 7-3
	Segregation 7-4
	Custody and Control 7-5
	Correctional-Treatment Programs 7-8
	Employment and Education 7-10
	Recreation 7-10
	Compensation, Clemency, and Parole 7-11
	Correctional Staff 7-12
	Prisoner Services Branch 7-16
	Personal Property and Funds 7-18
	Mail and Correspondence 7-19
	Support Personnel 7-20
	Transfer and Disposition Procedures 7-21
	Logistics 7-22
	Medical and Dental Treatment 7-23
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>BATTLEFIELD CONFINEMENT OF UNITED STATES MILITARY PRISONERS</b> 8-1
	Planning 8-1
	Field Detention Facility 8-3
	Field Confinement Facility 8-3
	Transfer and Disposition of Prisoners 8-19

**PART FOUR MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT TO CIVIL-MILITARY OPERATIONS**

<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>POPULACE AND RESOURCE CONTROL</b> 9-1
	Dislocated-Civilian Operations 9-2
	Planning Dislocated-Civilian Operations 9-3
	Military Police Support to Dislocated-Civilian Operations 9-7
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>HUMANITARIAN ASSISTANCE AND EMERGENCY SERVICES</b> 10-1
	<b>Section I - Humanitarian Assistance</b> 10-1
	Operational Environment 10-1
	Rules of Engagement 10-3
	Legal Considerations 10-3
	Military Police Support 10-4

	<b>Page</b>
<b>Section II - Emergency Services</b>	10-14
In Continental United States	10-14
Outside Continental United States	10-17
<b>Appendix A METRIC CONVERSIONS</b>	A-1
<b>Appendix B USE OF FORCE AND RIOT CONTROL MEASURES</b>	B-1
Use of Force	B-1
Deadly Force	B-1
Rules of Engagement	B-2
Nonlethal Weapons	B-3
Crowd Dynamics	B-6
Riot Control Measures	B-9
Riot Control Agents	B-11
Positions	B-14
Formations	B-16
<b>Appendix C EQUIPMENT GUIDE</b>	C-1
<b>Appendix D MILITARY POLICE INTERNMENT/RESETTLEMENT UNITS</b>	D-1
<b>GLOSSARY</b>	Glossary-1
<b>BIBLIOGRAPHY</b>	Bibliography-1
<b>INDEX</b>	Index-1

## Preface

In 1996, the United States (US) Army Military Police (MP) Corps restructured its four combat support (CS) missions into the following five CS functions. These functions adequately describe MP capabilities in support of US forces deployed worldwide.

- Maneuver and mobility support
- Area security
- Law and order (L&O)
- Internment/resettlement (I/R)
- Police intelligence operations

Field Manual (FM) 3-19.40 depicts the doctrinal foundation, principles, and processes that MP will employ when dealing with enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), civilian internees (CIs), US military prisoner operations, and MP support to civil-military operations (populace and resource control [PRC], humanitarian assistance [HA], and emergency services [ES]). FM 3-19.40 is not a standalone manual, and it must be used in combination with other publications. These publications are pointed out throughout the manual, and a consolidated list is provided in the bibliography.

This manual provides guidance that can be used by US Army service schools, students, sister services, and federal agencies. It is fully compatible with current joint, multinational, and interagency doctrine.

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 directly to Commandant, US Army Military Police School, ATTN: ATSJ-MP-TD, 401 MANSCEN Loop, Suite 2060, Fort Leonard Wood, Missouri 65473-8926.

This publication implements Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 2044, Procedures for Dealing With Prisoners of War (PW) (Edition 5), 28 June 1994. **NOTE. The DA term EPW is interchangeable with the term PW used in STANAG 2044. The DA uses the term PW when referring to US soldiers who are prisoners of the enemy and uses the term EPW when referring to enemy soldiers who are prisoners of the US.**

Appendix A contains a metric conversion chart.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

**PART ONE**

# **Fundamentals of Internment/Resettlement Operations**

Part One provides information that is critical in understanding the I/R function. Chapter 1 introduces the manual by providing key definitions, establishing the I/R objectives and principles, and providing a list of agencies concerned with I/R operations. Chapter 2 describes commander and staff responsibilities that are unique to I/R operations. Together, these chapters provide leaders and soldiers with the foundation necessary for successful implementation of national military objectives as they relate to I/R operations.

---

## **Chapter 1**

### **Introduction**

This chapter provides key definitions as set forth by the Geneva and Hague Conventions, Army regulations (ARs), and the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ). These definitions explain personnel categories that the MP commander may be tasked to handle, protect, and account for. He must ensure that personnel are treated according to established laws, regulations, and international agreements. The MP leaders and soldiers conducting I/R operations must maintain task proficiency for each category.

#### **PROCEDURES**

1-1 Unlike EPW/CI operations in the past, I/R operations include additional detained persons. The I/R operations include handling, protecting, and accounting for dislocated civilians (DCs) and conducting battlefield confinement of US military prisoners. With the alignment of these additional categories, leaders and soldiers must ensure that they understand and are prepared to apply the rules of engagement (ROE) and the rules of interaction (ROI) that apply to each category. The keys to a successful I/R operation are getting the mission accomplished and performing the mission under the correct mind-set. For example, the ROE that may apply to an EPW may not apply to a refugee or a US military prisoner. However, an MP may be tasked to handle each category during the course of an operation. This dimension is addressed throughout the manual to increase the MP commander's situational awareness (SA) as it relates to this aspect of I/R operations.



## DEFINITIONS

1-2 The following terms are defined below

- Combat zone (CZ)
- EPW
- CI
- Retained person (RP)
- Other detainee (OD)
- DC
  - Displaced person (DP)
  - Refugee
  - Evacuee
  - Stateless person
  - War victim
  - Migrant
  - Internally displaced person (IDP)
  - Expellee
- US military prisoner

## COMBAT ZONE

1-3 The CZ is the area required by combat forces to conduct operations. It normally extends forward from the land force's rear boundary. The communications zone (COMMZ) is the rear part of the theater of operations (TO). It is behind and contiguous to the CZ. The COMMZ contains lines of communication (LOC), supply and evacuation areas, and other agencies required for the immediate support and maintenance of field forces. It reaches to the continental United States (CONUS), to a supporting combatant command's area of responsibility (AOR), or to both. An EPW must be moved as quickly as possible from the CZ to the COMMZ where an I/R unit interns him.

**NOTE.** For a complete discussion on the operational framework of a CZ, see FM 3-0.

## ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR

1-4 As defined in the Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War (GPW), 12 August 1949, an EPW is—

- A member of an enemy armed force or a member of a militia or a volunteer corps forming part of an enemy armed force
- A member of a militia or a volunteer corps (including an organized resistance movement) that (1) belongs to an enemy power, (2) operates in or outside its own territory (even if the territory is occupied), and (3) fulfills the following conditions
  - The organization is commanded by a person responsible for his subordinates
  - The organization has a fixed, distinctive sign that is recognizable at a distance
  - The members are carrying arms openly

- The organization is conducting operations according to the laws and customs of war
- A member of an enemy armed force who professes allegiance to a government or an authority not recognized by the detaining power (the US)
- A person who accompanies an enemy armed force without actually being a member (a civilian member of a military aircraft crew, a war correspondent, a supply contractor, a member of a labor unit, or a member of a service that is responsible for enemy welfare) if he has authorization and an identification (ID) card from the armed force
- A crew member (a master, a pilot, or an apprentice of a merchant marine or a member of a civil aircraft under the enemy's power) who does not benefit from more favorable treatment under other provisions of international law
- Inhabitants of an unoccupied territory who spontaneously take up arms to resist invading US armed forces (without having time to form themselves into a regular armed unit) if they carry arms openly and respect the laws and customs of war

1-5 The following persons are treated as EPWs

- A person who qualifies for EPW status under paragraph 1-4 (if the US is a party to the conflict) and falls into the hands of the US as a neutral or nonbelligerent power
- A person belonging to or having belonged to an armed force of a country occupied by the US (if the US considers it necessary by reason of such allegiance to intern him) even though he may have been originally liberated from EPW status by the US while hostilities were going on outside the occupied territory Particular application is made to a person who has made an unsuccessful attempt to join an armed force that is engaged in combat or who has failed to comply with a summons for internment

1-6 Captured enemy personnel are presumed to be EPWs immediately upon capture if the circumstances are unmistakable (armed, uniformed enemy) If questions arise as to whether captured personnel belong in the EPW category, they receive the same treatment as EPWs until their status is determined by a competent military tribunal according to AR 190-8

### CIVILIAN INTERNEE

1-7 A CI is a person who is interned during armed conflict or occupation if he is considered a security risk or if he needs protection because he committed an offense (insurgent, criminal) against the detaining power A CI is protected according to the Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War (GC), 12 August 1949

### RETAINED PERSON

1-8 An RP is an enemy who falls within one of the following categories

- A person who is a member of the medical service of an enemy armed force

- A medical person exclusively engaged in—
  - Searching, collecting, transporting, or treating wounded or sick personnel
  - Preventing disease
  - Administering a medical unit or establishment
- A chaplain attached to an enemy armed force
- A member of the International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies (IFRC) or another voluntary aid organization. The organization must be duly recognized and authorized by its government. The staff may be employed in the same duties as medical personnel if the organization is subject to military laws and regulations.

1-9 An RP is a special category for medical personnel and chaplains because of their special skills and training. They may be retained by the detaining power (see FM 27-10) to aid EPWs, preferably those of the armed force to which the RP belongs. Per the Geneva Conventions, RPs receive the same benefits and protection as EPWs. The following privileges and considerations are extended to RPs due to their professions:

- Correspondence privileges that are over and above those afforded to EPWs
- Facilities to provide medical care, spiritual assistance, and welfare services to EPWs
- Transportation for periodic visits to EPW branch I/R facilities and hospitals outside the EPW I/R facility to carry out medical, spiritual, and welfare duties
- Work assignments that are restricted to medical and religious duties they are qualified to perform
- Quarters that are separate from EPW quarters when practicable

**NOTE:** For a complete discussion on RPs, see AR 190-8

## OTHER DETAINEE

1-10 A person in the custody of US armed forces who has not been classified as an EPW (Article 4, GPW), an RP (Article 33, GPW), or a CI (Article 78, GC) is treated as an EPW until a legal status is ascertained by competent authority.

## DISLOCATED CIVILIAN

1-11 A DC is a civilian who left his home for various reasons. His movement and physical presence can hinder military operations. He most likely requires some degree of aid (medicine, food, shelter, or clothing). A DC may not be native to the area (local populace) or to the country where he resides. A DC is a generic term that is further subdivided into the following categories:

- **DP** A DP has been dislocated because of war, a natural disaster, or political/economic turmoil. Consequently, the motivation for civilians to flee and their status under international and domestic laws vary, as does the degree of assistance required and the location for relief.

operations Likewise, the political, geographical, environmental, and threat situations also vary

- **Refugee** The Geneva Convention Relative to the Status of Refugees (1951) states that a refugee is a person who "owing to a well-founded fear of being persecuted for reasons of race, religion, nationality, membership in a particular social group, or political opinion, is outside the country of his nationality, and is unable to or, owing to such fear, is unwilling to avail himself of the protection of that country"
- **Evacuee** An evacuee is a civilian who is removed from his place of residence by military direction because of personal security or other requirements of the military situation
- **Stateless person** A stateless person is a civilian who has been denationalized, whose country of origin cannot be determined, or who cannot establish his right to nationality claimed
- **War victim** A war victim is a civilian who suffered an injury, a loss of a family member, or damage to or destruction of his home because of war
- **Migrant** A migrant is a worker who moves from one region to another by chance, instinct, or plan
- **IDP** An IDP may have been forced to flee his home for the same reasons as a refugee, but he has not crossed an internationally recognized border
- **Expellee** An expellee is a civilian who is outside the boundaries of his country of nationality or ethnic origin and is being forcibly repatriated to that country or a third country for political or other purposes

## UNITED STATES MILITARY PRISONER

1-12 A US military prisoner is sentenced by a court-martial to confinement or death and ordered into confinement by competent authority, whether or not the sentence has been approved by the convening authority A person placed into confinement by competent authority pending trial by court-martial is a pretrial prisoner or a pretrial detainee

## OBJECTIVES

1-13 The objectives of I/R operations are to process, handle, care for, account for, and secure—

- EPWs
- CIs
- RPs
- ODs
- DCs
- US military prisoners

1-14 The principles employed to achieve the objectives are according to the Hague Convention (1907), the Geneva Conventions (1949), the Geneva Convention Relative to the Status of Refugees (1951) and its protocol (1967), and current STANAGs These principles include—

- Humane treatment and efficient care
- Prompt evacuation from the CZ
- Provisions for captive or detainee interrogation
- Procedures for evacuation, control, and administration of internees with other CS and combat service support (CSS) operations

**NOTE. The principles employed for US military prisoners are outlined in AR 190-47 and Department of Defense (DOD) Directive 1325.4.**

## AGENCIES

1-15 The expanded MP functions of I/R involve certain international and domestic organizations not previously considered during MP operations. There are numerous private relief organizations, foreign and domestic, that are involved in humanitarian relief and I/R operations. Likewise, the media normally provides extensive coverage of I/R operations. In many instances, the DOD will not be the lead agency in I/R operations, which adds to the complexity. For instance, the DOD could be tasked in a supporting role, with the Department of State (DOS) or another agency in the lead.

## DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE

1-16 Under the Geneva Conventions and subsequent protocols, a capturing power is responsible for proper and humane treatment of detainees from the moment of capture or other apprehension. The Secretary of the Army is the executive agent for DOD I/R operations and administration. He is responsible for plans, policy development, and operational coordination for persons captured and interned by US armed forces. Navy, Marine, and Air Force units that detain or capture persons turn them over to the Army at designated receiving points after initial classification and administrative processing.

1-17 Per DOD Directive 3025.1, the Secretary of the Army tasks DOD components to plan and commit DOD resources in response to requests for military support from civil authorities. The Director of Military Support (DOMS) provides leadership in this effort.

1-18 Examples of DOD decision makers are the Under Secretary of Defense (USD) for Policy and the Deputy Assistant Secretary of Defense (DASD) for Humanitarian and Refugee Affairs (H&RA). The USD for Policy develops and administers military policies and programs for international HA and foreign relief operations. The DASD for H&RA executes the policies and tasks the services accordingly.

## DEPARTMENT OF STATE

1-19 The DOS is organized into functional and regional bureaus. It represents the US via embassies throughout the world.

## FEDERAL EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT AGENCY

1-20 Per the Stafford Act, the federal government responds to disasters and emergencies to save lives and protect public health, safety, and property. The

Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) is responsible for the nation's emergency management system. Local and state programs are the heart of the nation's emergency management system, and most disasters are handled by local and state governments. When devastations are especially serious and exceed local and state capabilities and resources, states turn to the federal government for help.

1-21 When the President declares a major disaster, FEMA coordinates response activities for federal agencies that may participate. The agencies help states and localities recover from disasters by providing services, resources, and personnel. They transport food and potable water, provide medical aid, assist with temporary housing, and furnish generators for hospitals and other essential facilities. The FEMA also works with states and territories during nondisaster periods to plan for disasters, develop mitigation programs, and anticipate requirements.

1-22 The Federal Response Plan addresses the consequences of disasters and emergencies. It applies to natural disasters (earthquakes, hurricanes, typhoons, tornadoes, and volcanic eruptions), technological emergencies (radiological and hazardous material [HM] releases), and other incidents. The plan describes the basic mechanisms and structures to mobilize resources and conduct activities that augment state and local efforts. It uses a functional approach to group the types of federal assistance that a state is most likely to need under emergency support functions (ESFs). Each ESF is headed by a primary agency based on its authorities, resources, and capabilities in the functional area. The ESFs are the primary mechanisms through which federal assistance is provided. Federal assistance is provided to affected states under the overall coordination of a federal coordinating officer, who is appointed by the FEMA director on behalf of the President.

## MISCELLANEOUS AGENCIES

1-23 Other federal agencies provide advice, assistance, and resources to plan, implement, and accomplish I/R operations. They are the—

- **Department of Transportation (DOT)** Its technical capabilities and expertise in public transportation are available to assist in specific operations.
- **United States Department of Agriculture (USDA)** It has projects and activities ongoing in foreign countries and provides technical assistance and expertise.
- **United States Agency for International Development (USAID)** Although not directly under the control of DOS, USAID coordinates activities at the department and country levels within the federal government.
- **Office of Foreign Disaster Assistance (OFDA)** It provides prompt nonmilitary assistance to alleviate death and suffering of foreign disaster victims. The OFDA may request DOD assistance for I/R operations. The coordination and determination of forces required is normally accomplished through DOD and the joint task force (JTF).
- **United States Information Agency (USIA)** The USIA helps achieve US objectives by influencing public attitudes overseas. It

advises the US government on the possible impacts of policies, programs, and official statements on foreign opinions. The USIA helps HA forces gain popular support and counters attempts to distort and frustrate US and JTF objectives.

- **Department of Justice (DOJ)** The I/R forces may contact the DOJ Community Relations Service for assistance in domestic HA operations. It provides on-site resolution assistance through a field staff of mediators and negotiators.
- **Public Health Service (PHS)** It promotes protection and advancement of the nation's physical and mental health. The US forces work with the PHS during refugee operations in and near the US and its territories.
- **Immigration and Naturalization Service (INS)** It provides information and services to the public while enforcing immigration control. The INS is essential for processing and settling migrants and refugees in the US and its territories.

## CIVILIAN ORGANIZATIONS

1-24 Civilian organizations are responsible for a wide range of activities encompassing HA, human rights, the protection of minorities, refugees, and DPs, legal assistance, medical care, reconstruction, agriculture, education, arts, science, and project funding. The commander must understand the mandate, role, structure, method, and principles of civilian organizations. Without this understanding, it is impossible to establish an effective relationship with them.

1-25 These organizations may already be in the area of operations (AO), providing HA or some type of relief when I/R operations are planned and implemented. The principle coordinating federal agency is the USAID, and civilian organizations are required to register with the USAID to operate under US auspices.

### Types of Civilian Organizations

1-26 There are three principle types of civilian organizations:

- **International organization (IO)** An IO is established by intergovernmental agreements and operates at the international level. Examples of IOs include the—
  - United Nations (UN)
  - United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR)
  - United Nations Development Program (UNDP)
  - United Nations Office for the Coordination of Humanitarian Affairs (UNOCHA)
  - World Food Program (WFP)
  - International Medical Corps (IMC)
- **Nongovernmental organization (NGO)** An NGO is a voluntary organization that is not funded by a government. It is primarily a nonprofit organization that is independent of a government, an IO, or

a commercial interest. It is legally different than an IO because it writes its own charter and mission.

The NGOs are increasingly numerous and sophisticated, and they can number in the hundreds in any conflict. They remain strongly independent from political control to preserve their independence and effectiveness. In many cases, their impartiality has been of great benefit, forming the only available means of rebuilding relations when political dialog has broken down. They are often highly professional in their field and extremely well motivated and prepared to take physical risks in appalling conditions. Examples of NGOs include the—

- Save the Children Foundation (SCF)
- Medecin Sans Frontieres (Doctors Without Borders) (MSF)
- Catholic Relief Services (CRS)
- National Council of Catholic Bishops (NCCB)

An NGO is mandated or nonmandated.

- **Mandated** A mandated NGO has been officially recognized by the lead IO in a crisis and has been authorized to work in the affected area.
- **Nonmandated** A nonmandated NGO has no official recognition or authorization and, therefore, works as a private concern. A nonmandated NGO can be subcontracted by an IO or a mandated NGO. It can also obtain funds from private enterprises or donors.
- **International humanitarian organization (IHO)** An IHO is an impartial, neutral, and independent organization whose mandate is to assist and protect victims of conflict. It carefully guards its neutrality and does not desire to be associated with or dependent upon the military for fear of losing its special status in the international community that allows it to fulfill its mandate. Examples of IHOs include the—
  - International Organization for Migration (IOM)
  - International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC)
  - IFRC

### Civilian Lead Agencies

1-27 A lead agency is mandated by the international community to initiate the cooperation of civilian organizations that volunteer to participate in an operation. The lead agency is normally a major UN agency, such as the UNHCR or the UNOCHA, and it—

- Acts as the point of contact (POC) for other agencies
- Coordinates field activities to avoid duplicating effort and wasting resources

### Understanding Civilian Organizations

1-28 A good working relationship can be established with NGOs, IOs, and IHOs through trust and understanding. The most effective way for military forces to understand an organization's knowledge, skills, and abilities is to



establish and maintain a liaison with it. This understanding can also be gained through educating military leaders in military schools and courses.

## UNITED NATIONS

1-29 The UN is involved in the entire spectrum of HA operations from prevention to relief. Typically, UN relief agencies establish independent networks to execute their humanitarian-relief operations. The UN system delegates as much as possible to agency elements located in the field, with supervisory and support networks traced from field officers back to UN headquarters. Military planners must be familiar with UN objectives to ensure compatibility with military plans and orders. The UN agencies include the United Nations Disaster Relief Coordinator (UNDRC) and the UNHCR.

- **UNDRC** It coordinates assistance to persons compelled to leave their homes because of disasters.
- **UNCHR** It—
  - Provides international protection to refugees. It promotes the adoption of international standards for the treatment of refugees and supervises implementation of the standards.
  - Seeks permanent solutions for refugee problems. It facilitates voluntary repatriation and reintegration of refugees into their country of origin. Where practical, it facilitates their integration into a country of asylum or a third country.
  - Provides other activities that include emergency relief counseling, education, and legal assistance. These activities entail a very active role in monitoring human rights.
  - Helps governments meet their obligations concerning refugees under various international statutes.

## INTERNATIONAL RED CROSS AND RED CRESCENT MOVEMENTS

1-30 Three organizations make up the International Red Cross and Red Crescent Movement. They are the—

- **IFRC** It provides relief operations to help victims of natural and man-made disasters. It has a unique network of national societies throughout the world. The IFRC is the umbrella organization for the ICRC.
- **ICRC** It acts as a monitoring agent for the proper treatment of EPWs and other detained persons. It coordinates National Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies' international relief operations for victims of conflict. The ICRC reports violations of international humanitarian laws and promotes awareness and development of humanitarian laws among nations.
- National Red Cross and Red Crescent organizations.

### NOTES

**1. These organizations are distinctly different and have separate mandates and staff organizations. Do not consider them to be one organization.**

---

**2 Red Crescent organizations are found in predominately Muslim countries. They have the same goals and missions as Red Cross organizations.**

1-31 Although the ICRC is essentially Swiss, it has worldwide operations and acts as a neutral intermediary in armed conflicts. The ICRC ensures that conflict victims receive appropriate protection and assistance within the scope of the Geneva Conventions, their protocols, and the ICRC mandate. The ICRC undertakes protection and assistance activities for the benefit of detainees and civilian populations by—

- Visiting detainees and attempting, through confidential contacts, to ensure compliance with the Geneva Conventions
- Supervising prisoner releases and exchanges
- Providing emergency relief to civilians who are affected by an armed conflict or a natural disaster
- Tracing individuals who are displaced because of an armed conflict or a natural disaster
- Organizing family contacts and reunions

## **PROTECTION OF CAPTIVES AND DETAINEES**

1-32 The provisions of the Geneva Conventions are applicable to captives and detainees from the time they are captured until they are released or repatriated. AR 190-8 is the implementing regulation. When a person is captured during the heat of battle, he is entitled to protection as a detainee.

1-33 Detainees receive humane treatment without distinction of race, nationality, religious belief, political opinion, or similar criteria. Captives and detainees are not murdered, mutilated, tortured, or degraded. They are not punished for alleged criminal acts without previous judgment pronounced by a legally constituted court that has accorded them judicial guarantees which are recognized as indispensable to a fair trial. Individuals and capturing nations are responsible for acts committed against detainees if the acts violate the Geneva Conventions.

1-34 Captives and detainees are entitled to respect, and they are treated with honor and as human beings. They are protected against violence, insults, public curiosity, and reprisals. They are not subjected to physical mutilation or medical or scientific experimentation that is not required for normal medical, dental, or hospital treatment. Coercion is not inflicted on captives and detainees to obtain information. Those who refuse to answer are not threatened, insulted, or exposed to unpleasant or disadvantageous treatment. Female captives and detainees are treated with respect and accorded fair and equal treatment.

## **PROTECTING POWER**

1-35 A neutral state or a humanitarian organization, such as the ICRC, is designated as a protecting power. The protecting power monitors whether detainees are receiving humane treatment as required by international law. Representatives or delegates of a protecting power are authorized to visit detainees where they are interned or confined and to interview them.

regarding their internment, welfare, and rights. The interview may be conducted without witnesses. Such visits cannot be prohibited except for imperative military necessity.

### UNITED STATES POLICY TOWARDS DETAINEES

1-36 Basic US policy underlying the treatment of detainees and other captured or interned personnel during the course of a conflict requires and directs that all personnel be accorded humanitarian care and treatment from the moment of custody until their final release or repatriation. The US personnel are fully and equally bound to observe this policy whether capturing troops, custodial personnel, or anyone else, regardless of the capacity they may be serving. This policy is equally applicable for protecting detained and interned personnel whether they are known to have committed or are suspected of committing a serious offense that could be characterized as a war crime. The punishment of such persons is administered by the due process of law and under legally constituted authority. Inhumane treatment, even if committed under stress of combat and with deep provocation, is a serious and punishable violation under national law, international law, and the UCMJ.

### PROTECTION OF ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR AND CIVILIAN INTERNEES

1-37 The Geneva Conventions, comprised of four treaties, form part of the supreme law of the land and provide the internationally recognized humanitarian standards for the treatment of war victims. The US ratified the Geneva Conventions for the Protection of War Victims, 12 August 1949. It recognizes the spirit and intent of these treaties in its treatment of EPWs, CIs, and detained and interned persons. The Geneva Conventions became effective in 1956, and the US observes and enforces the terms of these conventions. They are collectively referred to as the Geneva Conventions and include the—

- **GPW** This convention provides humane treatment of EPWs. It regulates the treatment of internees (care, food, clothing, and housing), discipline and punishment, labor and pay, external relations, representation, the international exchange of information, and the termination of captivity.
- **GC** This convention deals with the protection for populations against the consequences of war, the status and treatment of protected persons, and the treatment of CIs.
- **Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field, 12 August 1949 (GWS)** This convention provides protection for members of the armed forces and other persons on the battlefield who are wounded or sick. Members in the conflict search for and collect wounded and sick persons, protect them against pillage and ill treatment, and ensure their adequate care. They also search for dead persons and prevent them from being despoiled.
- **Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick, and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at**

**Sea, 12 August 1949 (GWS [SEA])** This convention provides humane treatment and protection for members of the armed forces and other persons at sea who are wounded, sick, or shipwrecked. It also protects hospital ships and burial at sea.

1-38 STANAG 2044 prescribes concepts and procedures for the control and administration of EPWs by US armed forces operating in Europe under operational control (OPCON) of the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), in coordination with one or more NATO allies, and supported by the doctrine contained in this manual. STANAG 2044 provides—

- Terms and definitions relating to EPWs
- Procedures for using EPW personnel record forms
- Procedures for handling EPWs, their personal property, and their money

## PROTECTION OF REFUGEES

1-39 The Geneva Convention Relative to the Status of Refugees (1951) and its protocols (1967) provide a general, universally applicable definition of refugee. They address the minimum standards for the treatment of refugees, specifying the obligations of the host nation (HN) and the refugees to one another. Among the important provisions of the 1951 Convention is the principle of nonrefoulement (Article 33). The principle of nonrefoulement is often referred to as the cornerstone of international protection. This principle prohibits the return or expulsion of a refugee to the territory of a state where his life, freedom, or personal security would be in jeopardy. Through widespread practice, the principle is considered to be a rule of customary law, binding nations whether or not they are signatories.

1-40 The 1951 Convention also provides protection of refugees. A refugee has the right to safe asylum, however, international protection comprises more than physical safety. Refugees receive the same rights and help as any other foreigner who is a legal resident, including certain fundamental entitlements of every individual. Refugees have basic civil rights, including freedom of thought and movement and freedom from torture and degrading treatment. Similarly, refugees have economic and social rights. Every adult refugee has the right to work, and no child refugee is deprived of schooling. In certain circumstances, such as large-scale inflows of refugees, asylum states may feel obliged to restrict certain rights, such as freedoms of movement, work, and education. Such gaps should be filled by the international community when possible. When resources are unavailable from the government of the asylum country or other agencies, the UNHCR will assist.

**NOTE:** For further details, see the **UNHCR Handbook for the Military on Humanitarian Operations, First Edition, 1995**

## Chapter 2

# Commander and Staff Responsibilities

All MP commanders and staff members must be familiar with applicable ARs, Army directives, and international laws necessary for the successful operation of I/R and confinement facilities. This chapter discusses areas of greatest concern when performing the I/R function.

### SECTION I - COMMANDERS

2-1 An MP battalion commander tasked with operating an I/R facility is also the facility commander. As such, he is responsible for the safety and well-being of all personnel housed within the facility. Since an MP unit may be tasked to handle different categories of personnel (EPW, CI, OD, refugee, and US military prisoner), the commander, the cadre, and support personnel must be aware of the requirements for each category.

### PROCEDURES

2-2 Commanders are familiar with applicable regulations, directives, international laws, and administrative procedures. The servicing staff judge advocate (SJA) provides legal advice and training on I/R matters. Regulations and other guidance relative to the administration, employment, and compensation of internees are prescribed in—

- AR 190-8
- Defense Finance and Accounting Service—Indianapolis (DFAS-IN) 37-1
- FM 14-100
- DA Pamphlet (Pam) 37-100-95
- FM 27-10

2-3 Copies of the Geneva Conventions and compound regulations, orders, and notices relating to internee conduct and activities are posted in each facility, in the language of internees who are housed there. If internees do not have access to posted copies, the facility commander makes copies available to them.

2-4 The commander is responsible for the administrative processing of each internee. When processing is complete, he submits a DA Form 2674-R to the servicing internment/resettlement information center (IRIC), which functions as the field operations agency for the national IRIC located in CONUS.

## PRINCIPLES AND POLICIES

2-5 The following principles apply to I/R facilities

- Use housed personnel for internal maintenance and operation
- Use captured supplies and equipment (excluding weapons and ammunition)
- Maintain control

2-6 An EPW/CI has the right to—

- Submit requests and complaints regarding the conditions of confinement
- Elect representatives
- Send and receive correspondence

**NOTE: The rights of US military prisoners are outlined in AR 190-47 and DOD Directive 1325.4**

## STANDING ORDERS

2-7 Standing orders provide uniform, orderly administration of an I/R facility. The orders to be obeyed by housed personnel are published in their language and posted where they can read the orders and refer to them. Standing orders include rules, procedures, and instructions (see Figure 2-1) governing the following activities and other matters as deemed appropriate:

- Schedule of calls, including—
  - Reveille
  - Morning roll
  - Readiness of quarters for inspection
  - Sick
  - Mess
  - Evening roll
  - Lights out
- Housed personnel actions that support the emergency action plans of the internment facility, such as—
  - Fire drills
  - Air raid drills
  - Emergency evacuations
  - Natural disaster drills
  - Blackouts
  - Escapes
- Hours for religious services, recreation activities, and so forth
- Procedures for emergency sick call
- Designated smoking areas

- 1 You must comply with rules, regulations, and orders. They are necessary for safety, good order, and discipline.
- 2 You must immediately obey all orders of US personnel. Deliberate disobedience, resistance, or conduct of a mutinous or riotous nature will be dealt with by force.
- 3 You are subject to disciplinary or judicial punishment if you disobey a rule, a regulation, or an order or if you commit any act, conduct, disorder, or neglect that is prejudicial to good order or discipline.
- 4 You will not receive disciplinary or judicial punishment until you have an opportunity to explain your conduct and to defend yourself. If you commit an offense for which judicial punishment may arise, investigation of the offense will be coordinated with the SJA before being undertaken to ensure that it is conducted according to the Geneva Conventions. You may call witnesses, and if necessary, you will be provided with the services of a qualified interpreter.
- 5 You may receive disciplinary punishment that includes discontinuing privileges over and above the treatment provided for by the Geneva Conventions. You may receive a fine up to one half of your 30-day advance and working pay. Privates may be assigned fatigue (extra) duty up to 2 hours daily, noncommissioned officers (NCOs) may be required to perform supervisory duties only, and officers may not be compelled to work.
- 6 You may not establish courts or administer punishment over other captives.
- 7 You may not have knives, sticks, metal pieces, or other articles that can be used as weapons in your possession at any time.
- 8 You may not drill or march in military formation for any purpose except as authorized and directed by the facility commander.
- 9 You may not meet or issue propaganda for political purposes.
- 10 You may not wear or display national political items.
- 11 You may not gamble.
- 12 You may not possess or consume alcoholic beverages.
- 13 You may retain personal effects and property that are authorized by the facility commander.
- 14 You may smoke at times and places specified by the facility commander.
- 15 You will follow the required courtesies toward your army's officers. If you are an enlisted captive, you will salute all US commissioned officers. If you are an officer captive, you will salute US commissioned officers of a higher grade and the facility commander, regardless of his grade.

**Figure 2-1. Sample Standing Orders**

#### **NOTICE OF PROTECTION**

2-8 To protect persons from acts of violence, bodily injury, and threats of reprisals at the hand of fellow internees, post a notice of protection (Figure 2-2) in the internees' language in every compound.

<b>NOTICE</b>
<p>A detainee who fears that his life is in danger, or fears that he may suffer physical injury at the hands of another detainee, should immediately report to a US member of the facility without consulting his representative. The facility commander ensures adequate protection for the victim by segregation, transfer, or other means. A detainee who mistreats a fellow detainee will be punished.</p>
(Signed by the Commanding Officer)

**Figure 2-2 Sample Notice of Protection**

## RECORDS AND REPORTS

2-9 The commander establishes local records and reports necessary for the effective operation of the I/R facility. They provide information about the control, supervision, and disposition of personnel housed in the facility. He determines the type (administrative, operational, logistical, intelligence, and personnel) of reports and the frequency (routine or as required). Normal reports (duty officer logs, worksheets, and situation maps) are also required.

## MEDICAL AND SANITATION CONSIDERATIONS

2-10 Commanders consider the following when establishing medical care (see AR 190-8):

- A medical officer, a physician's assistant (PA), or a nurse practitioner examines each internee monthly and—
  - Records his weight on DA Form 2664-R
  - Monitors his general health, nutrition, and cleanliness
  - Examines him for contagious diseases, especially tuberculosis (TB), venereal disease, lice, louse-borne disease, and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
- The medical treatment facility provides isolation of communicable diseases, disinfection, and inoculations. Use retained medical personnel and EPWs with medical training to the fullest extent possible when caring for sick and wounded EPWs. When medical care is inadequate, transfer housed personnel to military or civilian medical facilities where the required treatment is available.

2-11 Certain sanitation standards must be met to prevent disease and ensure cleanliness. These standards include—

- Ensuring that internees receive as much water as US soldiers
- Providing adequate space within housing units to prevent overcrowding
- Providing sufficient showers and latrines and ensuring that they are cleaned and sanitized daily
- Teaching dining-facility workers the rules of good food sanitation and ensuring that they are observed and practiced
- Disposing of human waste properly to protect the health of all individuals associated with the facility according to the guidelines established by preventive medicine (PVNTMED)
- Providing sufficient potable water for drinking, bathing, laundry, and food service
- Providing materials for personal hygiene
- Training personnel on proper garbage disposal to prevent insects and vermin that can contribute to health hazards

## SOCIAL PROGRAMS

2-12 Encourage and support active education, religious, recreation, and employment programs when practical. If possible, provide adequate facilities, instruction material, and recreation equipment.



2-13 Accredited representatives of protecting powers and the ICRC are allowed full access to the I/R facility and internees. Representatives of approved religious organizations, relief societies, NGOs, IHOs, and other organizations assisting housed personnel are permitted to visit according to policies and procedures prescribed by the DA.

2-14 Advanced coordination is encouraged by representatives of NGOs, IOs, and IHOs who want access to internees. This avoids confusion when representatives arrive at the facility. Likewise, the facility staff coordinates in advance with organizations to establish an access roster of representatives and a means of verifying their identity.

### **Religion**

2-15 Housed personnel are allowed freedom of worship, including attendance at services of their respective faith held within the facility. Retained chaplains and other EPW clergymen are permitted to devote their time to ministering to members of their faith. The MP commander may permit other ordained clergymen, theological students, or chaplains to conduct services within the compound. The US personnel will not attend services with EPWs, RPs, CIs, or ODs.

### **Recreation**

2-16 Participation in recreation activities promotes general health and welfare and alleviates tension and boredom. In addition to athletic contests, group entertainment can be provided by concerts, plays, recorded music, and motion pictures.

### **SAFETY PROGRAM**

2-17 Set up and administer a safety program for housed personnel in each I/R facility. Follow the procedures outlined in AR 385-10 and associated circulars and pamphlets to establish the safety program. Maintain records and reports for the internee safety program separate from those for the Army safety program.

### **AGRICULTURAL PROGRAM**

2-18 The EPWs are allowed to raise vegetables for their use. Subsequently, commanders must be aware of resources, procedures, and HN guidelines applicable to this program.

### **SECURITY**

2-19 The MP commander establishes security measures that effectively control housed personnel with minimal use of force. The same use of force that is employed for one category of housed personnel may not be applicable to another. Commanders protect housed personnel from threats outside the facility. The physical construction of the facility and the presence of guard personnel create the most obvious means of providing internal and external security. Maintaining a high state of discipline, a system of routines, and

required standards of behavior are all measures that enhance effective security and control

2-20 Many housed personnel will actively cooperate with US authorities or will assume a passive, compliant role. They will be composed, in part, of individuals with ideologies favorable to the US. Others, through resignation or apathy, will simply adapt themselves to the conditions of their internment.

2-21 Some housed personnel will engage in a campaign of embarrassing and harassing US personnel to create propaganda of value to their cause. The EPWs want to force the use of maximum US troops for other-than-combat missions. The leaders of the uncooperative faction may try to establish a united effort and blind obedience by all its members. They will not be content with merely planning and attempting to escape or using normal harassment tactics. The leaders will assign duties and missions to individuals so that resistance will not stop while they are interned. Any relaxation of security will be immediately detected and fully exploited.

2-22 Maintain firm control at all times. Adapt policies, tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTP) to achieve this end state.

## FACILITY GUARD FORCE

2-23 The facility guard force provides internal and external security. The force has a commander of the guard, one or more sergeants of the guard, a relief commander for each shift, and the necessary number of guards. There are two types of orders for guards:

- **General orders.** All guards are required to know, understand, and comply with the general orders outlined for sentinels in FM 22-6.
- **Special orders.** They apply to particular posts and duties. Special orders supplement general orders and are established by the commander.

2-24 The facility guard force is the primary source of security for the I/R facility. Its responsibilities include—

- Internal
  - Sally port
  - Search teams
  - Receiving and processing lines
  - Escorts
  - Facility gates
- External
  - Holding area
  - Towers
  - Transfer area
  - Work site
  - Perimeter
  - Brigade tactical operations center (BTOC)

## Standby Guards

2-25 Standby guards are soldiers who are not on duty. The standby guard force is large enough to reinforce tower and sally port guards, however, it is not normally used as a quick-reaction force (QRF) to enter enclosures and quell disturbances or conduct searches.

## Tower Guards

2-26 Tower guards are posted in towers and positioned so that they have overlapping fields of vision of the entire perimeter. This allows one or more guards to observe activities within enclosures. A tower guard's primary duties are to prevent escape and to observe and report unauthorized or suspicious activities.

## Walking Patrols

2-27 Walking patrols supplement the perimeter security when weather conditions or electrical failure prevents tower guards from clearly observing the entire perimeter. Gate guards are posted at perimeter gates and the sally port to—

- Exercise control over personnel, vehicles, and work details
- Conduct shakedown searches according to facility standing operating procedures (SOPs), special orders, and security regulations
- Prevent the smuggling of weapons or other contraband items into the facility
- Prevent escapes

## Military Working Dogs

2-28 Military working dogs (MWDs) offer a psychological and real deterrent against physical threats presented by housed personnel. However, they cannot be used as security measures against US military prisoners. The MWDs reinforce security measures against penetration and attack by small enemy forces that may be operating in the area. They also provide a positive, effective alternative to using firearms when preventing disturbances. The various techniques for employing MWDs are—

- **Demonstrations** Hold periodic demonstrations in full view of housed personnel to increase the psychological deterrent of MWDs. Emphasize how easily and quickly an MWD can overtake a fleeing individual, highlight his ability to attack and overcome physical resistance, and demonstrate his tracking ability. To ensure a successful demonstration, use only the best qualified MWD teams.
- **Perimeter security** Use an MWD team as an adjunct to perimeter security by making periodic, unscheduled patrols around the perimeter fence during periods of darkness. During inclement weather, a temporary blackout, or an electrical failure, increase the number and frequency of patrols. Ensure that housed personnel are aware of MWD presence by having dogs bark at infrequent intervals during the night.

- **Inspections** Walk an MWD team through living areas to search for contraband. Depending on the type of MWD team available, it can search for explosive devices and components and/or illegal drugs.
- **Work details** Position an MWD between the work detail and the area offering the greatest avenue of escape. The MWDs provide a valuable adjunct to work detail guards, particularly those employed in areas offering the greatest potential for escape.

## USE OF FORCE AND RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

2-29 An MP commander ensures that soldiers understand use-of-force guidelines and the ROE established by higher headquarters for each mission. Because the use of force and the ROE vary depending on the category of housed personnel and the operational environment, the commander develops SOPs that follow the guidance provided. He balances the physical security of forces with mission accomplishment and the protection of deployed forces.

**NOTE.** For more information on the use of force, see Appendix B.

2-30 The restrictions on combat operations and the use of force are clearly explained in the ROE and are understood and obeyed at all levels. Soldiers study and train on the use of the ROE and discuss them for their mission. The ROE address the distinctions between internee categories and the instruments of control available for each category. Use the following issues to develop ROE guidelines:

- What is considered lethal force?
- Under what conditions is lethal force used?
- Under what conditions is nonlethal force used?
- What are the required warnings, if any, before using force (lethal or nonlethal)?

## TYPES OF DISTURBANCES

2-31 Housed personnel may organize a disturbance within the facility to weaken the guard force. At the beginning of a disturbance, initiate a record of events. Commanders must be concerned with two types of disturbances—riots and disorders.

- Riots
  - **Organized** Leaders of housed personnel organize the internee population into quasi-military groups.
  - **Unorganized** It is spontaneous in nature, although it can be exploited and diverted by leaders into an organized riot.
  - **Multiple** When housed personnel in one compound start rioting, personnel in other compounds also riot.
- Disorders
  - **Organized** It can be a demonstration, a refusal to work or eat, a work slowdown, or the damage or destruction of property.
  - **Unorganized** It is spontaneous in nature.

**NOTE** For more information on riots and disorders, see Appendix B.

## SECTION II - STAFF OFFICERS

2-32 Staff officers at tactical headquarters and CSS commands are normally responsible for the same functional areas inside an I/R or confinement facility. However, the emphasis on different aspects and the scope and magnitude of EPW, CI, and US military prisoner activities vary in CS and CSS commands. This section describes additional staff officers that may be found at different echelons of command (primarily I/R MP units) and their areas of responsibility. FM 101-5 describes the roles, relationships, organization, and responsibilities of staffs in the US Army.

### ADJUTANT GENERAL

2-33 The adjutant general (AG) maintains personnel records for EPWs, CIs, and US military prisoners. The AG's personnel and administrative section can process eight persons per hour, depending on the category. It—

- Provides accountability documents to the IRIC if applicable
- Maintains labor records and time cards for prisoners
- Submits the required reports on prisoners
- Prepares documents for administrative court-martial charges for EPWs, CIs, and US military prisoners

### FINANCE OFFICER

2-34 The finance officer—

- Accounts for impounded financial assets (cash and negotiable instruments) of housed personnel
- Records pay/labor credits, canteen purchases/coupons, and other transactions
- Prepares payrolls, makes disbursements, and processes repatriation settlements
- Advises the commander on finance and accounting issues

**NOTE:** See FM 14-100 for more information.

### CIVIL-MILITARY OPERATIONS OFFICER

2-35 The civil-military operations (CMO) officer—

- Provides technical advice and assistance on strategies for community relations and information
- Plans community relations programs to gain and maintain public understanding and goodwill and to support military operations
- Provides liaison and coordination with other US government agencies, HN civil and military authorities concerned with I/R operations, and NGOs, IOs, and IHOs in the AO
- Coordinates with the SJA on the ROE for dealing with housed personnel

- Provides technical advice and assistance on the reorientation of enemy defectors, EPWs, CIs, and detainees

## CHAPLAIN

2-36 The chaplain or the unit ministry team—

- Provides religious support for assigned soldiers and internees
- Advises the commander on the impact of faiths and practices of indigenous religious groups in the AO and internees within the facility
- Provides religious support to the command and the community including confined and hospitalized personnel
- Exercises supervision and control over internee religious leaders within the facility

## ENGINEER OFFICER

2-37 The engineer officer is a captain in a brigade and a lieutenant in a battalion. He trains and supervises internees who perform internal and external labor (construction and repair of facilities). The engineer officer is responsible for—

- Construction, maintenance, repair, and operation of utilities (water, electricity, heat, and sanitation)
- Construction support
- Fire protection
- Insect and rodent control and fumigation

## PUBLIC AFFAIRS OFFICER

2-38 The public affairs officer (PAO)—

- Understands and fulfills the information needs of soldiers, the Army community, and the public in matters relating to internees and the I/R facility
- Serves as the command's spokesman for all communication with the external media
- Facilitates media efforts to cover operations by expediting the flow of complete, accurate, and timely information

## SIGNAL OFFICER

2-39 The signal officer is located in the brigade. He is responsible for all matters concerning signal operations, automation management, network management, and information security.

## STAFF JUDGE ADVOCATE

2-40 The SJA is located in the brigade and the brigade liaison detachment (BLD). He—

- Provides operational law advice and support for US military prisoner operations and resettlement operations, particularly the interpretation of the Geneva Conventions
- Provides advice on the application of force to quell riots and other disturbances
- Provides support and advice during investigations following the death or injury of an internee during internment
- Serves as the recorder for Article 5 tribunals (A tribunal determines the status of a person who has committed a hostile act but whose status is doubtful)
- Serves as the commander's liaison to the ICRC
- Provides legal advice on—
  - Military justice
  - Administrative law (investigations and command authority)
  - Civil law (contract, fiscal, and environmental laws)
  - International law (law of land warfare, Geneva Conventions, status of forces, ROE, and treatment of detained persons)
  - Claims
  - Legal assistance
- Provides technical advice and assistance on the internee labor policy as it relates to supporting local indigenous requirements not directly advancing the war effort
- Complies with all treaties and conventions

## MEDICAL OPERATIONS

### 2-41 The surgeon section—

- Is responsible for the combat health support (CHS) of the command and internees within the facility
- Advises the commander
- Plans and directs echelon I CHS
- Arranges echelons II and III CHS (including air/ground medical evacuation and hospitalization) when required
- Provides disease prevention through PVNTMED programs

### 2-42 The medical treatment squad—

- Provides routine medical care (sick call) and advanced trauma management for duty soldiers and internees
- Supervises qualified RPs who are providing medical care for internees
- Performs initial medical exams to determine the physical fitness of arriving internees as stipulated by the Geneva Conventions
- Is capable of operating as two separate treatment teams

### 2-43 The PVNTMED section—

- Provides limited PVNTMED services for the facility
- Performs sanitary inspections of housing, food service operations, water supplies, waste disposal operations, and other operations that may present a medical nuisance or health hazard to personnel

- Provides training and guidance to the staff, unit personnel, and others

## MOVEMENT CONTROL OFFICER

2-44 The movement control officer (MCO)—

- Plans and coordinates the movement of internees and their property with the Corps Support Command (US Army) (COSCOM) movement control center
- Coordinates with brigade operations for daily transportation requirements and evacuation and transfer of internees This includes determining the transportation requirements for the evacuation of detainees from one level of internment to the next and coordinating the arrangements

## INSPECTOR GENERAL

2-45 The inspector general (IG) is located in the brigade He—

- Advises the commander on the organization inspection policy (OIP)
- Conducts inspections, surveys, and studies to comply with international, state, and US laws
- Receives allegations and conducts investigations and inquiries based on reports and information obtained from EPWs, CIs, DCs, US military personnel, and multinational guard and police forces
- Consults with international and US agencies in matters pertaining to the overall health and welfare of the protected population
- Determines the MP unit's discipline, efficiency, morale, training, and readiness and provides feedback to the chain of command
- Assists the protected population in coping with family issues and resolving complaints consistent with military necessity
- Identifies trends to correct and improve I/R operations consistent with current doctrine, military laws, international laws, UN mandates, and foreign-nation (FN) and state laws
- Assists in the resolution of systemic issues pertaining to the processing and administration of the protected population
- Reports allegations of war crimes (from protected personnel or US soldiers) through the chain of command to the SJA or the United States Army Criminal Investigation Command (USACIC) The responsibility for investigating alleged war crimes rests with the SJA and the criminal investigation division (CID), not the IG

## PSYCHOLOGICAL OPERATIONS

2-46 Psychological operations (PSYOP) are not part of the I/R structure, however, the PSYOP officer in charge (OIC) of the EPW/CI PSYOP team supporting I/R operations serves as the special staff officer responsible for PSYOP The PSYOP officer advises the MP commander on the psychological impact of actions to prevent misunderstandings and disturbances by EPWs and CIs The EPW/CI PSYOP team—



- Assists the MP force in controlling EPWs and CIs
- Exposes EPWs and CIs to US and allied policies
- Develops and executes PSYOP programs to condition EPWs and CIs to accept facility authority and regulations
- Gains the cooperation of EPWs and CIs to reduce guard needs
- Identifies malcontents, trained agitators, and political officers within the facility who may try to organize a resistance or create a disturbance
- Develops and executes indoctrination programs to reduce or remove proenemy attitudes
- Recognizes political activists
- Helps the MP commander control EPWs and CIs during emergencies
- Plans and executes a PSYOP program that produces an understanding and appreciation of US policies and actions
- Uses comprehensive information, reorientation, educational, and vocational programs to prepare EPWs and CIs for repatriation

**NOTE:** See FMs 3-05.30 and 33-1-1 for additional information about PSYOP support to I/R operations

### SECTION III - TRAINING

2-47 The necessary care and control of housed personnel is best achieved with carefully selected and trained personnel. The specialized nature of duty at different facilities requires individuals who can be depended on to cope successfully with behavior or incidents that call for calm, fair, and immediate decisive action. These personnel must possess the highest qualities of leadership and judgment. They are required to observe rigid self-discipline and maintain a professional attitude at all times.

2-48 Personnel assigned or attached to I/R facilities are trained on the care and control of housed personnel. They are fully cognizant of the provisions of the Geneva and UN Conventions and applicable regulations as they apply to the treatment of housed personnel. A formal training program should include—

- Principles and laws of land warfare, specifically provisions of Geneva and UN Conventions and HN laws and customs
- Supervisory and human relations techniques
- Methods of self-defense
- The use of force, the ROE, and the ROI
- Firearms qualification and familiarization
- Public relations, particularly CONUS operations
- First aid
- Stress management techniques
- Facility regulations and SOPs
- Intelligence and counterintelligence techniques
- Cultural customs and habits of internees

- The basic language of internees

2-49 The guard force should receive additional training in—

- Riot control measures, control agents, and dispersers
- QRF actions
- Searching techniques, including the use of electronic detection devices
- Nonlethal equipment and weapons

2-50 Medical soldiers assigned to the facility may be required to deliver babies and care for infants and small children. Their training should include—

- Delivery procedures
- Birthing techniques
- Medical conditions associated with malnutrition and water-, food-, and arthropod-borne diseases

## PART TWO

# Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees

Part Two addresses handling, securing, and accounting for EPWs and CIs. The MP performing EPW/CI operations must follow specific ROE and ROI applicable to this category of I/R operations. The EPWs and CIs are not treated as DCs or US military prisoners. Leaders and soldiers must be knowledgeable of the Geneva and Hague Conventions, applicable protocols, ARs, and US laws. During war or military operations other than war (MOOTW) involving US forces, the accountability and safe, humane treatment of captives are essential. The US policy demands that all persons who are captured, detained, or held by US forces during conflict be treated humanely. This policy applies from the moment captives are taken until they are released, repatriated, or transferred. Chapter 3 describes division collecting points (CPs) and corps holding areas (CHAs) that may be established throughout the battlefield. Chapter 4 addresses procedures for EPWs, and Chapter 5 describes procedures for CIs. Chapter 6 addresses unique planning requirements to be considered when operating an I/R facility.

---

## Chapter 3

# Division Collecting Points and Corps Holding Areas

Chapters 3 and 4 implement STANAG 2044

A large number of captives on the battlefield hampers maneuver units as they move to engage and destroy an enemy. To assist maneuver units in performing their mission—

- Division MP units operate CPs in the division AO
- Corps MP units operate holding areas in the corps AO

## OVERVIEW

3-1 The MP units accept captives from capturing units as far forward as possible, and captives are held in CPs and CHAs until they are removed from the battlefield. Normally, CPs are operated in the division AO and CHAs are operated in the corps AO, but they can be operated anywhere they are needed. The CPs and CHAs sustain and safeguard captives and ensure a minimum level of field processing and accountability. Wounded and sick captives receive medical treatment, and captives who require lifesaving medical attention are evacuated to the nearest medical facility.

3-2 The MP establish listening posts (LPs), observation posts (OPs), guard posts, and fighting positions to protect captives and prevent their escape. Captured soldiers are trained to believe that escape from captivity is their duty, therefore, they must be closely guarded. Consider the morale and physical condition of captives when determining the number of guards needed. Guards must be prepared to use and maintain firm control and security.

3-3 The MP work closely with military intelligence (MI) interrogation teams at CPs and CHAs to determine if captives, their equipment, and their weapons have intelligence value. This process is accelerated when MI interrogation teams can observe captives during arrival and processing, and interrogators can also be used as interpreters during this phase. Before a captive is interviewed by MI personnel, he must have a Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745 (Figure 3-1) attached to him and be accounted for on DD Form 2708.

3-4 If the CP or the CHA comes under a nuclear, biological, or chemical (NBC) attack, remove captives from the contaminated area and decontaminate them to the same level as US forces. Request assistance for decontaminating captives through command channels. The supply officer issues NBC protective equipment and clothing to captives, using captured materials (when available) or US materials (if necessary).

## PROCESSING CAPTIVES

3-5 Processing begins when US forces capture or detain an individual. The processing is accomplished in the CZ for security, control, intelligence, and the welfare of captives in evacuation channels. This is referred to as *field processing*. The capturing unit begins field processing by using the Five Ss and T procedure (search, segregate, silence, speed, safeguard, and tag). At the CP or the CHA, MP continue processing with the principles of STRESS (search, tag, report, evacuate, segregate, and safeguard).

3-6 After receiving a captive from a capturing unit, MP are responsible for safeguarding and accounting for the captive at each stage of his removal from the battlefield. The processing procedure begins upon capture and continues until the captive reaches the I/R facility and is released. The process of identifying and tagging a captive helps US forces control and account for him as they move rearward from the battlefield. Before a captive is interned, repatriated, or released, MP at the I/R facility must provide full-scale processing.

**ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR (EPW)  
CAPTURE TAG (PART A)**

For use of this form, see AR 190-8  
The proponent agency is DCSOPS

Attach this part of tag to EPW (Do not remove from EPW)

- 1 Search - For weapons, military documents, or special equipment
- 2 Silence - Prohibit talking among EPWs for ease of control.
- 3 Segregate - By rank, sex, and nationality
- 4 Safeguard - To prevent harm or escape
- 5 Speed - Evacuate from the combat zone
- 6 Tag - Prisoners and documents or special equipment

DD FORM 2745 (BACK), MAY 96

1 DATE AND TIME OF CAPTURE 111300		2 SERIAL NO 0090829 A	
3 NAME DD ID		4 DATE OF BIRTH 1205	
5 RANK D	6 SERVICE NO 123-45-6789		
7 UNIT OF EPW 122D	8 CAPTURING UNIT 4DD		
9 LOCATION OF CAPTURE (Grid coordinates) D82456			
10 CIRCUMSTANCES OF CAPTURE D D	11 PHYSICAL CONDITION OF EPW D D	12 WEAPONS EQUIPMENT DOCUMENTS B7D D D	

DD FORM 2745, MAY 96

REPLACES DA FORM 5978 JAN 81  
USABLE UNTIL EXHAUSTED

**UNIT RECORD CARD (PART B)**

Forward to Unit.  
(Capturing unit retains for records)

Use string, wire, or other durable material to attach the appropriate section of this form to the EPW's equipment or property.

DD FORM 2745 (BACK), MAY 96

1 DATE AND TIME OF CAPTURE 111300		2 SERIAL NO 0090829 B	
3 NAME DD ID		4 DATE OF BIRTH 1205	
5 RANK D	6 SERVICE NO 123-45-6789		
7 UNIT OF EPW 122D	8 CAPTURING UNIT 4DD		
9 LOCATION OF CAPTURE (Grid coordinates) D82456			
10 CIRCUMSTANCES OF CAPTURE D D	11 PHYSICAL CONDITION OF EPW D D	12 WEAPONS EQUIPMENT DOCUMENTS B7D D D	

DD FORM 2745, MAY 96

REPLACES DA FORM 5978 JAN 81  
USABLE UNTIL EXHAUSTED

**DOCUMENT/SPECIAL EQUIPMENT  
WEAPONS CARD (PART C)**

Attach this part of tag to property taken (Do not remove from property)

As a minimum, the tag must include the following information

Item 1 Date and time of capture (YYYYMMDD)  
Item 8 Capturing unit.  
Item 9 Place of capture (grid coordinates)  
Item 10 Circumstances of capture (how the EPW was captured)

DD FORM 2745 (BACK), MAY 96

1 DATE AND TIME OF CAPTURE 111300		2 SERIAL NO 0090829 C	
3 NAME DD ID		4 DATE OF BIRTH 1205	
5 RANK D	6 SERVICE NO 123-45-6789		
7 UNIT OF EPW 122D	8 CAPTURING UNIT 4DD		
9 LOCATION OF CAPTURE (Grid coordinates) D82456			
10 DESCRIPTION OF WEAPONS SPECIAL EQUIPMENT DOCUMENTS B7D			

DD FORM 2745, MAY 96

REPLACES DA FORM 5978 JAN 81  
USABLE UNTIL EXHAUSTED

Figure 3-1 Sample DD Form 2745

## CAPTURING UNIT

3-7 The Five Ss and T procedure is performed by the capturing unit. The basic principles are search, segregate, silence, speed, safeguard, and tag (see Table 3-1)

**Table 3-1. Five Ss and T Procedure**

Procedure	Description
Search	Search captives for weapons and ammunition, items of intelligence value, and other inappropriate items  <b>NOTE: Conduct same-gender searches when possible. If mixed-gender searches are necessary for speed or security, conduct them in a respectful manner and avoid any action that could be interpreted as sexual molestation or assault. To prevent allegations of sexual misconduct, the on-site supervisor carefully controls soldiers who perform mixed-gender searches.</b>
Segregate	Segregate captives by rank, gender, nationality, and status
Silence	Do not allow captives to speak or allow anyone to speak to them. Speak to captives only to give orders.
Speed	Remove captives from the battlefield as quickly as possible.
Safeguard	Safeguard captives according to the Geneva Conventions and the US policy. Provide medical care as needed.
Tag	Tag captives with a DD Form 2745 or a field-expedient capture tag that includes the following information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Date of capture</li> <li>• Location of capture (grid coordinates)</li> <li>• Capturing unit</li> <li>• Special circumstances of capture (how the person was captured, if he resisted, if he gave up, and so forth)</li> </ul> <b>NOTE: The capturing unit must complete a capture tag because failure to do so hinders further processing and disposition.</b>

## COLLECTING POINTS AND HOLDING AREAS

3-8 When a captive arrives at a division CP or a CHA, he is processed by the STRESS method. The basic principles are search, tag, report, evacuate, segregate, and safeguard (see STANAG 2044)

### Search

3-9 Search and inspect each captive and his possessions. Conduct same-gender searches when possible. If mixed-gender searches are necessary for speed or security, conduct them in a respectful manner and avoid any action that could be interpreted as sexual molestation or assault. To prevent allegations of sexual misconduct, the on-site supervisor carefully controls soldiers who perform mixed-gender searches. Some items can be retained during captivity, some items are impounded and eventually returned, and certain items are confiscated and never returned, even if the captive is released or repatriated.

3-10 **Retained Items** A captive is allowed to keep certain items during his captivity. They are generally divided into two groups. The first group consists

of items taken during the receiving portion of inprocessing and returned later in the process. The second group consists of items that the captive can keep at all times. **NOTE. These lists are not all inclusive.**

- Group 1
  - Military mess equipment (except knives and forks)
  - Helmet
  - Protective clothing and equipment (NBC suits, helmets, and protective masks) for use during evacuation from the CZ
  - Personal clothing
  - Badges of rank and nationality
  - Military decorations
  - ID cards and tags
  - Rations (in the early stages of captivity)
- Group 2
  - Religious literature (within reason)
  - Personal items having no intelligence value (jewelry and pictures)

**3-11 Impounded Items** A captive is not allowed to keep impounded items during his internment. They can make escape easier or can compromise US security interests. Impounded items normally include—

- Cameras
- Radios
- Currency
- Negotiable instruments

**3-12 Confiscated Items** The following items are confiscated when searching a captive

- Weapons
- Ammunition
- Items of intelligence value (maps and orders)
- Other inappropriate items

**3-13** The MP coordinate with MI interrogation teams to determine which confiscated items have intelligence value. Personal items (diaries, letters from home, and family pictures) can be taken by MI teams for review and then returned to the proper owner via MP.

#### NOTES:

**1. Currency is only confiscated on a commissioned officer's order (see AR 190-8), and it must be accounted for on DA Form 4137**

**2. For an in-depth discussion on impounded and confiscated property, see AR 190-8 and DFAS-IN 37-1**

**3-14 Property Accountability** When seizing property from a captive—

- Bundle it or place it in a bag to keep it intact and separate from other captives' possessions
- Prepare DA Form 4137 for confiscated and impounded property

- Prepare a receipt for currency and negotiable instruments to be signed by the captive and the receiver. Use cash collection vouchers so that the value can be credited to each captive's account. List currency and negotiable instruments on the captive's personal-property list, but treat them as impounded property.
- Keep the original receipt with the property during evacuation. Give the captive a copy of the receipt, and tell him to keep it to expedite the return of his property.
- Have MI sign for property on DA Form 4137 and for captives on DD Form 2708.
- Return confiscated property to supply after it is cleared by MI teams. Items kept by MI because of intelligence value are forwarded through MI channels.
- Evacuate retained items with the captive when he moves to the next level of internment.
- Maintain controlled access to confiscated and impounded property.

## Tag

3-15 Tag each captive with a DD Form 2745. The MP at CPs and CHAs check each tag for the—

- Date and time of capture
- Capturing unit
- Place of capture
- Circumstances of the capture

The remaining information on the tag is included as it becomes available.

3-16 A DD Form 2745 is a perforated, three-part form that is individually serial-numbered. It is constructed of durable, waterproof, tear-resistant material with reinforced eyeholes on Parts A and C. Part A is attached to the captive with wire or string, Part B is maintained by the capturing unit for their records, and Part C is attached to confiscated property so that the owner can be identified later.

3-17 The MP at division CPs ensure that a DD Form 2745 is placed on each captive who arrives at the CP without one. They may direct the capturing unit to complete a capture tag before accepting the prisoner into the CP. The MP—

- Make a statement on the tag if the captive arrived without it.
- Instruct the captive not to remove or alter the tag.
- Annotate the tag's serial number and the captive's name on a locally developed manifest.

**NOTE. See Soldier Training Publication (STP) 21-24-SMCT for more information on DD Form 2745.**

## Report

3-18 Report the number of captives at each CP through MP channels. This aids in the transportation and security planning processes.



## Evacuate

3-19 Evacuate captives from the CZ through appropriate channels as humanely and quickly as possible. Do not delay movement to obtain names, ranks, service numbers, or dates of birth. When moving captives, give them clear, brief instructions in their own language when possible. Military necessity may require a delay in movement beyond a reasonable time. When this occurs, ensure that there is an adequate supply of food, potable water, appropriate clothing, shelter, and medical attention available.

3-20 The MP ensure that the proper paperwork (DA Form 4137, DD Form 515, and DD Form 2708) is complete before captives are evacuated. If necessary, a DD Form 2708 (annotated with the number of prisoners) and a manifest will suffice. Do not expose captives to unnecessary danger, and protect them while they are awaiting evacuation. For seriously wounded or sick captives, medical personnel determine if prompt evacuation is more dangerous than retaining them in the CZ.

## Segregate

3-21 The OIC or the noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) is responsible for the custody of captives. He designates segregation procedures and levels to ensure their security, health, and welfare. Segregate captives into the following categories:

- **Officers, NCOs, and enlisted members (male and female)**  
Deserters and those who gave up without a fight may be further segregated for their protection. Nationally recognized ideologies and ethnic groups can also be segregated.
- **CIs and refugees** They are separated from EPWs.
- **US military prisoners** They are separated from all other prisoners/detainees (EPWs, CIs, ODs, and refugees) (See Chapter 8 for a complete discussion on the confinement of US military prisoners).

3-22 Ultimately, all captives are classified as an EPW, a CI, or an OD. However, it may be impossible to readily classify all captives. If there is any doubt about a captive's status, protect him under the rules of the Geneva Conventions and the US policy until a competent tribunal can determine his status. (See AR 190-8 for further information.)

3-23 Do not use coercion to obtain information from captives. This includes basic information such as name, rank, service number, and date of birth that captives are required to provide under the Geneva Conventions. Coercion or inhumane treatment of captives is prohibited and is not justified by the stress of combat or deep provocation. Inhumane treatment is a serious violation of international law and the UCMJ.

3-24 Do not speak to captives except to give orders or directions. Do not let captives talk to or signal each other. This prevents them from plotting ways to counter security and plan escapes. An uncooperative captive can be gagged in certain tactical situations, however, only use a gag for as long as needed and ensure that it does not harm the captive.

## Safeguard

3-25 To safeguard captives according to the Geneva Conventions and the US policy—

- Provide first aid and medical treatment for wounded and sick captives. Evacuate them through medical channels, using the assets available to evacuate US and allied forces.
- Provide food and water. These supplies must be commensurate to those for US and allied forces (see FM 27-10 and STANAG 2044).
- Provide firm, humane treatment.
- Allow captives to use protective equipment in case of hostile fire or NBC threat.
- Protect captives from abuse by other captives and local civilians.
- Report acts and allegations of inhumane treatment through MP channels (see AR 190-40).
- Do not locate captives near obvious targets (ammunition sites, fuel facilities, and communications equipment).

## EVACUATING CAPTIVES

3-26 Remove captives from the CZ as quickly as possible. The intent is to move them from division CPs to an I/R facility. The goal is for higher echelons to go forward to lower echelons and evacuate captives to the rear as follows:

- Division MP move forward to the forward CP to escort captives to the central CP.
- Corps MP move forward to the central CP to escort captives to the CHA.
- Echelons above corps (EAC) MP move forward to the CHA to escort captives to the I/R facility.

3-27 If escort guard companies are available in the TO, they are placed under OPCON of the MP commander. They—

- Provide supervisory and security personnel during evacuation and/or movement.
- Go forward to the corps and the division to escort captives to the I/R facility.
- Escort captives from the division forward CP to the corps or the EAC (in coordination with the respective echelon provost marshal [PM]).

## SICK AND WOUNDED CAPTIVES

3-28 Medical personnel decide which captives must be medically evacuated or moved within MP channels, while MP or other command-directed nonmedical personnel provide prisoner security. Generally, walking wounded are moved through MP channels and litter patients are moved through medical channels. The US provides the same medical care for wounded and sick captives as it does for its own forces and allied soldiers. The degree of medical care, not status (such as EPW or CI), determines the disposition of wounded soldiers.

3-29 Seriously wounded or ill captives are stabilized and evacuated through medical channels to the rear area as quickly as possible. If the captive requires medical evacuation—

- Report the captive's medical condition through medical channels to the next higher echelon
- Request disposition instructions from the corps medical regulating officer (MRO)

3-30 The MRO coordinates transportation and identifies the treatment facility where wounded and sick captives are taken. Accountability for captives within medical channels is the responsibility of the MRO and the hospital commander. They coordinate their efforts with the IRIC.

3-31 The MP determine if there is a security risk during medical evacuation of wounded and sick captives. Ordinarily, captives who require medical evacuation are less likely to be a security risk. However, captives well enough to be a security risk are treated and returned to MP control.

3-32 If medical personnel request MP to guard captives at a medical facility in the corps area and the corps commander chooses to delegate that responsibility to the MP, the PM allocates support on a case-by-case basis. The MP structure is not designed to provide MP to guard hospitalized captives on a continuous, uninterrupted basis.

#### **ABLE-BODIED CAPTIVES**

3-33 The MP guard able-bodied captives during movement to prevent escape, liberation, or injury. A general planning consideration when determining the number of MP necessary is one for every five to ten captives. An MP unit tasked to escort captives considers the following information when determining the number of guards needed:

- The mission, enemy terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC)
- The number of captives being moved
- The condition and morale of the captives. Fatigued and/or cooperative individuals require fewer guards than fresh, motivated individuals.
- The type of transportation and its scheduled arrival
- The type of terrain along the evacuation route. Routes where dense vegetation is close to the road often require more guards than open, clear terrain.
- The threat level along the route. As the threat level increases, so does the need to increase security. Consider the anticipated presence of suspected sympathizers and hostile, local nationals along the route.
- The location of MP units or bases/base clusters along the route
- The location and number of rest stops. This is based on the transportation, the distance, and the terrain.

3-34 When moving forward to escort captives to the rear area, MP responsibilities begin at the CP or the CHA where custody is accepted. Verify the method of moving captives, the location and time of pickup, and the number of captives contained in orders from higher headquarters. The MP units cannot transport captives with organic assets.

3-35 The preferred method for moving captives through a battlefield is the *backhaul* system. This transportation system relies on assets that have delivered their primary cargo and are available to move personnel and materials to another location. The availability of vehicles will vary, depending on the cargo delivered to the area. The command and control (C<sup>2</sup>) element of the MP unit tasked with evacuation arranges transportation through the local MCO.

3-36 If the backhaul system cannot be employed, the MP unit guarding the captives requests an alternate means of transportation. Captives are moved on foot only as a last resort and upon approval of the MP unit commander.

## DIVISION COLLECTING POINTS

3-37 A division operates two types of CPs—forward and central. A division MP company operates forward CPs in each maneuver brigade AO and a central CP in the division rear area. Both CPs are temporary areas designed to hold captives until they are removed from the battlefield. Forward CPs are positioned as far forward as possible to accept captives from maneuver elements. Central CPs accept captives from forward CPs and local units.

## FORWARD COLLECTING POINTS

3-38 Forward CPs (Figure 3-2) are needed when a brigade conducts an offensive operation and is likely to take captives. When a maneuver brigade has an MP platoon in direct support (DS), MP teams set up and operate forward CPs. A brigade without an MP platoon in DS sets up and operates its own forward CPs.

3-39 The number of MP teams needed to operate a forward CP is based on the number of captives expected and METT-TC. The projected number of captives is based on mission analysis and intelligence estimates conducted by the brigade Intelligence Officer (US Army) (S2). Division forward CPs are mobile; they can be set up, expanded, and relocated quickly as the tactical situation warrants.

### Location

3-40 The brigade operation plan (OPLAN) or operation order (OPORD) provides the general location of forward CPs. They are located near or in the brigade support area (BSA), in an area that prevents captives from observing activities within the BSA. They are also located near main supply routes (MSRs) to make delivery, evacuation, and resupply easier.

### Medical Support

3-41 Medical support is provided by the MP company medical section. Additional medical support can be requested through the forward support battalion (FSB) to the brigade medical officer. The brigade OPORD includes specific actions and support (operational requirements) needed from non-MP units.

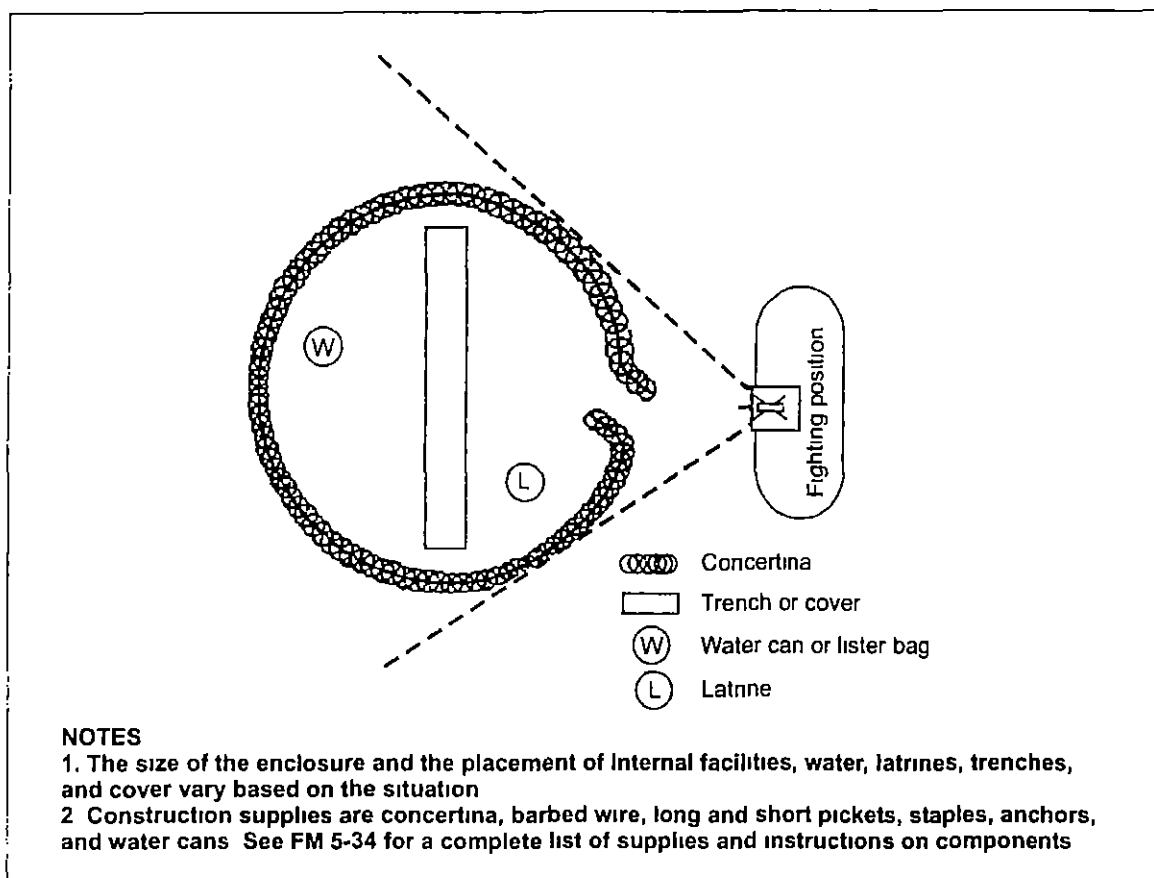


Figure 3-2. Forward CP

### Planning Considerations

3-42 When a division MP company commander is tasked with planning and operating a forward CP, he—

- Coordinates with the unit responsible for the area
- Conducts a recon of the area before selecting a location
- Locates it far enough from the fighting to avoid minor shifts in the main battle area (MBA) (normally 5 to 10 kilometers)
- Notifies the BSA tactical operations center (TOC) and the PM operations section of the selected location (grid coordinates). The BSA TOC reports the location to the brigade TOC, and the brigade TOC notifies subordinate units
- Coordinates with MI on collocating an MI interrogation team at the CP
- Provides potable water and, if required, food for captives

3-43 A forward CP is seldom located near the indigenous population to prevent problems caused by the presence of captives in the area. A forward CP is usually a guarded, roped-off area (concertina or razor tape) or a secure, fixed facility. The capture rate and the captive categories determine the size of

the forward CP. If possible, use existing structures (vacant schools, apartments, and warehouses) to conserve resources and provide protection for captives. When selecting a location, consider—

- Security
- Medical support
- Food and potable water
- Field sanitation (latrine facilities)
- Shelter
- Cover (Captives can dig or build cover to protect themselves from direct and indirect fire.)
- Access routes

### **Accountability**

3-44 Account for each captive and his equipment when they arrive at the forward CP.

### **Evacuation**

3-45 Captives should not remain at a forward CP more than 12 hours before being escorted to the central CP. When they have been processed and are ready for evacuation, MP leaders—

- Report the status to the BSA TOC and the PM (through MP channels)
- Request transportation, rations, and water from the FSB Supply Officer (US Army) (S4)
- Ensure that receipts are ready for signature
- Ensure that property is properly tagged and given to escort guards

### **CENTRAL COLLECTING POINTS**

3-46 A central CP (Figure 3-3) is larger than a forward CP, but it has a similar setup and operation. The larger holding capacity of a central CP requires additional MP. If sufficient MP are unavailable, it is augmented by a division, corps, or EAC band to assist with perimeter security. Captives are provided food, water, first aid, and medical attention as required.

### **Location**

3-47 As stated in the division OPLAN or OPORD, a central CP is located near the division support area (DSA) in an area that prevents captives from observing activities within the DSA. It is also located near MSRs to make delivery, evacuation, and resupply easier.

### **Medical Support**

3-48 Prevent captives from incurring disease and nonbattle injuries (DNBI) (heat and cold injuries or communicable diseases) while in captivity. Isolate captives who exhibit obvious signs of disease (diarrhea, vomiting, or fever) until medical personnel make an evaluation. If a large number of captives appear ill, notify medical and command channels for immediate action/treatment.

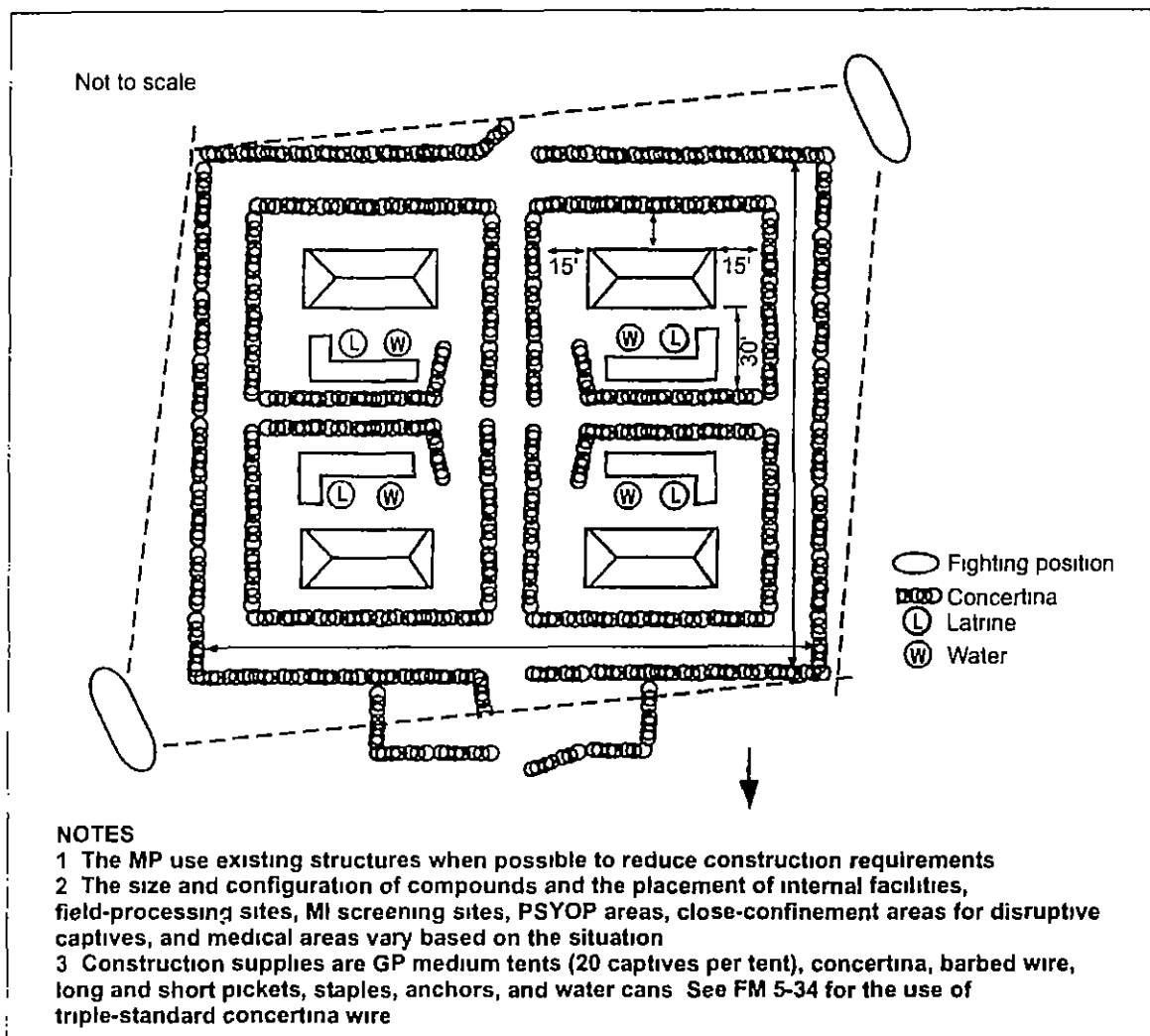


Figure 3-3 Central CP

- 3-49 The division PVNTMED section supports the central CP by—
- Monitoring drinking water and advising on disinfection procedures
  - Controlling animals and insects that carry disease
  - Ensuring that captives help prevent illness by—
    - Drinking enough water
    - Wearing clothing that is suited for the weather and the situation
    - Handling heating fuels carefully
    - Avoiding contact of exposed skin to cold metal
    - Using insect repellent, netting, and insecticides
    - Taking approved preventive medication
    - Using purification tablets when water quality is uncertain
    - Disposing of bodily wastes properly
    - Practicing personal hygiene

### Planning Considerations

3-50 When a division MP company commander is tasked with establishing and operating a central CP, he—

- Coordinates with the unit responsible for the area
- Conducts a recon of the area before selecting a location
- Notifies the PM of the exact location (grid coordinates) The PM notifies the division rear CP operations cell, who notifies area units
- Coordinates with MI on collocating an MI interrogation team at the CP
- Ensures that the location is accessible to units escorting captives from forward CPs

3-51 Like a forward CP, a central CP is seldom located near the indigenous population. Use existing structures, when available, to conserve resources. If structures are unavailable, construct the central CP from similar material as forward CPs. However, a central CP is larger and must contain some type of tentage or shelter to protect captives from the elements. A bunker in each compound or free access to a bunker is needed to protect captives from direct and indirect fire. Enlisted captives can be tasked to help construct a central CP (especially bunkers), however, officer captives cannot be used.

3-52 A central CP is as mobile as a forward CP. It must also be set up, expanded, and relocated quickly as the tactical situation dictates. Units within the DSA provide support as stated in the division OPORD. The MP company medical section provides medical support to personnel in the central CP, and additional medical support can be requested from the command surgeon.

### Accountability

3-53 Account for each captive and his equipment when they arrive at the central CP. Use the STRESS method to process captives who are brought directly to the central CP by a capturing unit (see paragraph 3-8).

### Evacuation of Captives

3-54 Captives should not remain at the central CP more than 24 hours before being evacuated to the CHA. When all captives are accounted for, processed, and ready for evacuation to the CHA, MP leaders—

- Report the status to the division rear CP and to the PM (through MP channels)
- Request transportation, rations, and water through logistics channels in the division rear
- Ensure that receipts are ready for signature
- Ensure that property is tagged with Part C of DD Form 2745 and given to the escort guards



## CORPS HOLDING AREAS

3-55 A CHA (Figure 3-4) can hold more captives for longer periods of times than a central CP. Depending on the availability of MP units to establish I/R facilities, corps MP units must be prepared to hold captives at the CHA more than 72 hours. If the CHA keeps captives more than 72 hours, MP must plan and coordinate for the increased logistics and personnel required to operate a long-term facility. The decision to hold captives longer is based on METT-TC and the availability of forces. Captives remain in the CHA until they are evacuated to an I/R facility or until hostilities end.

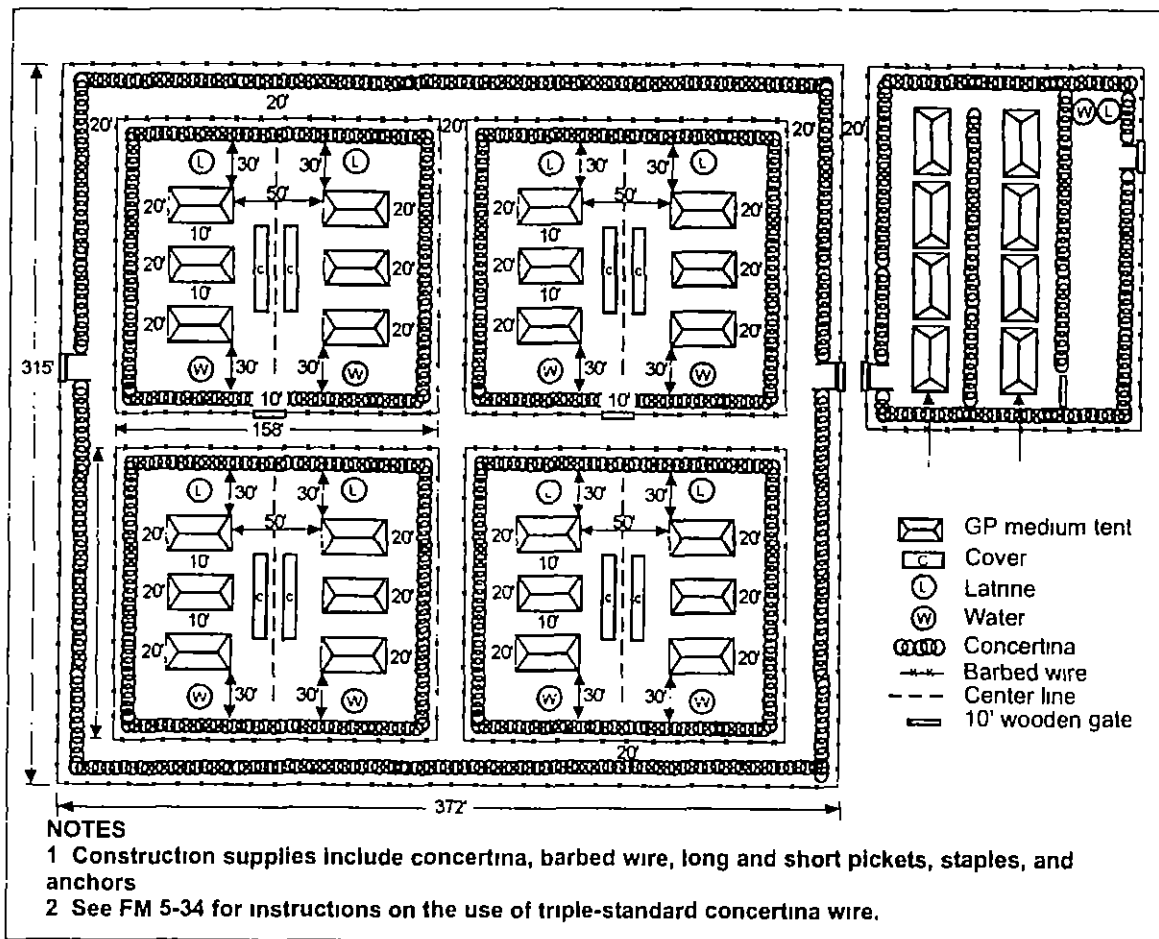


Figure 3-4 Corps Holding Area

3-56 A CHA receives captives from CPs and units that capture them in the rear area. Usually, one CHA is established to support each division conducting operations. However, additional CHAs may be required based on the—

- Size of the corps area
- Type of terrain
- Length of the LOC between the CHA and the division central CPs
- Number of captives being moved

## LOCATION

3-57 A CHA is usually located near a base or a base cluster in the corps rear area. When selecting a site—

- Coordinate with the unit responsible for the area (terrain) and the corps rear CP
- Conduct a recon to select a location
  - Is it adjacent to an MSR, a railroad, or an airfield?
  - Are existing buildings available?
  - Is it close to supply facilities?
  - Is it easily protected from enemy activities?
- Ensure that the location allows division of the site into two or more compounds for segregation, security, and ease of control
- Report the exact location (grid coordinates) through MP channels to the unit responsible for the area. The MI coordinates with MP on collocating an MI interrogation team at the CP. However, MP may have to contact MI to initiate the action.
- Ensure that the site is accessible to units escorting captives from division central CPs

## CONSTRUCTION

3-58 A CHA is more permanent than CPs. Existing structures may be used and are preferred. The capture rate and the captive categories determine the size of the CHA. A multistory building has a smaller perimeter to guard, however, it requires using guards on each floor and may present a security risk for the guards. Depending on the tactical situation, perimeter lighting can be used.

3-59 When constructing a CHA, divide it into two or more compounds for segregation, security, and ease of control. Consider providing more than one entrance into the CHA. Include a reception area for further processing, searching, and examining of selected captives by MI. Include sanitary facilities (showers and latrines) and shelter (tentage and existing buildings) from the elements and direct and indirect fire.

## GUARD FORCE

3-60 The exact CHA setup and design depend on many factors, including construction materials, terrain, and forces. An MP platoon or company from a corps MP battalion usually operates a CHA. A platoon can guard 500 captives, while a company can guard 2,000. During mass captures, a guard force augmentation may be required to handle unexpected workload. The corps band can augment MP guards to aid in security. As the population of the CHA increases, evacuations to the I/R facility also increase.

## LOGISTICS

3-61 Request supplies through logistic channels for construction, maintenance, and day-to-day operations of a CHA. Support agreements can be arranged between MP headquarters and a base or base cluster where the CHA is located. Plan ahead to provide food and water.

---

## MEDICAL AND SANITATION CONSIDERATIONS

3-62 The CHA guards isolate wounded captives and captives suspected of having a communicable disease until medical personnel can examine them (see Chapter 2) Take necessary sanitary measures to ensure a clean, healthy CHA and to prevent epidemics Request PVNTMED units to assist and advise unit field sanitation teams on—

- The survey and control of disease-carrying insects and rodents
- Sanitary engineering (water treatment and waste disposal)

## EVACUATION

3-63 The procedures used to escort captives from division forward and central CPs to a CHA are also used to escort captives from a CHA to an I/R facility

## COLLOCATED SCREENING SITES

3-64 To facilitate collecting enemy tactical information, MI may collocate interrogation teams at CPs and CHAs This provides MI with direct access to captives and their equipment and documents Coordination is made between MP and MI to establish operating procedures that include accountability An interrogation area is established away from the receiving/processing line so that MI personnel can interrogate captives and examine their equipment and documents If a captive or his equipment or documents are removed from the receiving/processing line, account for them on DD Form 2708 and DA Form 4137

## INTERROGATION TEAMS

3-65 The MI interrogation teams screen captives at CPs and CHAs, looking for anyone who is a potential source of information Screeners observe captives from an area close to the dismount point or processing area As each captive passes, MI personnel examine the capture tag and look for branch insignias that indicate a captive with information to support command priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and information requirements (IR) They also look for captives who are willing or attempting to talk to guards, joining the wrong group intentionally, or displaying signs of nervousness, anxiety, or fear

3-66 The MP assist MI screeners by identifying captives who may have answers that support PIR and IR Because MP are in constant contact with captives, they see how certain captives respond to orders and see the type of requests they make The MP ensure that searches requested by MI are conducted out of sight of other captives and that guards conduct same-gender searches

3-67 The MI screeners examine captured documents, equipment and, in some cases, personal papers (journals, diaries, and letters from home) They are looking for information that identifies a captive and his organization, mission, and personal background (family, knowledge, and experience) Knowledge of a captive's physical and emotional status or other information helps screeners determine his willingness to cooperate

## LOCATION

- 3-68 Consider the following when planning an MI screening site
- The site is located where screeners can observe captives as they are segregated and processed. It is shielded from the direct view of captives and is far enough away that captives cannot overhear screeners' conversations.
  - The site has an operation, administrative, and interrogation area. The interrogation area accommodates an interrogator, a captive, a guard, and an interpreter as well as furniture. Lights are available for night operations.
  - Procedures are implemented to verify that sick and wounded captives have been treated and released by authorized medical personnel.
  - Guards are available and procedures are implemented for escorting captives to the interrogation site.
  - Procedures are published to inform screeners who will be moved and when they will be moved.
  - Accountability procedures are implemented and required forms are available.

## COLLECTING POINTS IN OTHER OPERATIONS

- 3-69 The CPs can also be operated during river crossing, amphibious, airborne, armored, and air assault operations
- **River crossing operations** Establish temporary CPs on entry and exit sides of the river (corps MP often take control of CPs). Return from the exit bank and evacuate captives to the rear, preventing interference with tactical operations and protecting captives from hostile fire. Coordinate with traffic control personnel at the crossing site to prevent interference with assault forces who are moving forward. Use a secondary crossing site if available.
  - **Amphibious operations** The assault force initially operates CPs in the beachhead and then escorts captives to designated ships. The MP coordinate with the support force for handling captives after they are escorted from the beachhead. When facilities, supplies, and personnel permit, retain captives in the objective area if they can be protected from enemy fire.
  - **Airborne operations** The METT-TC considerations for collecting captives include the geographical location of the airhead, the tactical plan, the availability of transportation, and plans for linking up with ground forces. Captives are primarily moved by air during the early stages of the operation, which requires CPs to be established near landing zones (LZs). Consider attaching additional MP elements from area EAC to guard captives during evacuation.
  - **Armored operations** Armored units can penetrate deep into hostile territory, bypassing pockets of enemy resistance on their way to the objective. This leaves isolated enemy units on the battlefield, which may hinder the normal evacuation of captives to the rear area. Hold captives at the CP until they can be safely evacuated from the battlefield.

- **Air assault operations** Organic MP elements accompany assault elements to the objective. Establish CPs near LZs and airfields where the evacuation process begins. If necessary, attach nondivisional MP elements to guard captives during evacuation.

## Chapter 4

# Enemy Prisoners of War

Chapters 3 and 4 implement STANAG 2044

The MP are responsible for evacuating EPWs from division CPs to CHAs and then to internment facilities (normally located in the COMMZ). This chapter addresses procedures for properly handling, processing, and safeguarding EPWs. The procedures outlined in this chapter are also applicable to RPs (See Chapter 1 for complete definitions and AR 190-8 for more details.)

### EVACUATION

4-1 Corps MP commanders evacuate EPWs from CHAs to internment facilities promptly and safely. Their responsibilities include security, accountability, and support. They also account for equipment and documents and provide escort guards if an escort guard company is unavailable.

4-2 Escort guard companies are responsible for EPW operations in the TO, and they escort EPWs from CHAs to internment facilities. They are assigned to MP I/R battalions and brigades. However, if they arrive before MP I/R units, they are attached to MP CS brigades. To expedite prompt, full evacuation of EPWs, escort guards can be pre-positioned in CHAs so that they are continuously available.

4-3 The evacuation chain normally moves EPWs from a division forward CP to a division central CP, to a CHA, and then to an internment facility. When circumstances permit, such as taking advantage of available transportation, evacuation procedures may bypass one or more echelons below corps (EBC) facilities.

### RECEIVING AND PROCESSING AREAS

4-4 Receiving and processing begin when EPWs arrive. However, due to limited manning, these functions are not operational 24 hours a day. An internment facility receives, secures, houses, and feeds EPWs until receiving and processing lines are operational. The EPWs are then brought forward, and the internment process begins.

4-5 Use a controlled-flow format to escort EPWs through the processing line. Normally, four EPWs are processed at a time and the average is eight per hour. These numbers may increase or decrease based on the capture rate and the nature of the operation. Secure unprocessed EPWs in a holding area.

4-6 Request interpreters from MI, PSYOP, allied forces, or local authorities as necessary. This may require identifying and clearing trusted EPWs or local nationals to interpret. Interpreters are usually necessary when entering data into the Internment/Resettlement Information System (IRIS).

4-7 The preparation and dispatch of DA Forms 2674-R are governed by AR 190-8, and they are prepared at each internment facility. Brigade or internment facility commanders may require feeder reports from various compounds to facilitate the preparation of internee strength reports.

**NOTE** See STANAG 2044 for more information on reports and accountability as they apply to NATO TOs.

4-8 Table 4-1 outlines the internment process for EPWs. It shows who is responsible for each step and what actions they must accomplish. Based on METT-TC, the commander may tailor stations to meet the situation. Stations 1 through 4 are in the receiving line, and Stations 5 through 9 are in the processing line.

**Table 4-1 Processing Actions at the EPW Processing Area**

Station	Purpose	Responsible Individuals*	Actions
<b>Receiving Line</b>			
1	Search	MP	Assign ISNs Follow accountability procedures Escort EPWs and their property Strip-search EPWs (by MP of the same sex) before entering the processing area unless prohibited by conditions Remove and examine property, place it in a container or a tray, mark it with a control number, and take it to a temporary storage area. (Some property may be returned in the processing line.) Supervise the movement of EPWs to the next station.
2	Personal hygiene	MP and processed EPWs (when possible)	Allow EPWs to shower, shave, and get haircuts Disinfect EPWs using the guidelines established by the PVNTMED officer Supervise the movement of EPWs to the next station.
*The number of people used to perform tasks depends on the number of EPWs and the amount of time available. Other soldiers assigned to the unit may perform non-MP-specific tasks if necessary.			

Table 4-1. Processing Actions at the EPW Processing Area (continued)

Station	Purpose	Responsible Individuals*	Actions
3	Medical evaluation	Medical personnel and MP	<p>Inspect EPWs for signs of illness or injury</p> <p>Evacuate EPWs who need treatment at a medical facility</p> <p>Give immunizations or request immunization support from the supporting medical unit before internment or evacuation</p> <p>Initiate treatment and immunization records</p> <p>Place control numbers on medical records to reduce linguist support (Names, service numbers, and ISNs are entered at Station 1 with the aid of an interpreter )</p> <p>Annotate medical records with the date and place EPWs were inspected, immunized, and disinfected</p> <p>Weigh EPWs and establish a weight register</p> <p>Supervise the movement of EPWs to the next station</p>
4	Personal items	MP	<p>Issue personal-comfort items (toilet paper, soap, toothbrush, and toothpaste)</p> <p>Issue clothing (clean and distinctive, like brightly colored jumpsuits if available) that is—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Taken from EPWs at Station 1</li> <li>• Obtained from captured enemy supplies</li> <li>• Obtained through normal supply channels</li> </ul> <p>Ensure that clothing is marked "PW" as required</p> <p>Escort EPWs to the processing area (Station 5)</p>
<b>Processing Line</b>			
5	Administrative accountability	Processing clerk (assisted by an interpreter, MI, or others) and MP	<p>Ensure that ISNs are assigned to EPWs. Note the capture tag numbers that ISNs are replacing so that late-arriving property can be matched to its owner</p> <p>Initiate personnel records, ID documents, and property receipts</p> <p>Use digital equipment to generate forms and records</p> <p>Prepare forms and records to maintain the accountability of EPWs and their property (STANAG 2044)</p> <p>Prepare forms for repatriation or international transfer as specified in local regulations or SOPs</p> <p>Supervise the movement of EPWs to the next station</p>
<p>*The number of people used to perform tasks depends on the number of EPWs and the amount of time available. Other soldiers assigned to the unit may perform non-MP-specific tasks if necessary.</p>			



Table 4-1. Processing Actions at the EPW Processing Area (continued)

Station	Purpose	Responsible Individuals*	Actions
6	Photography and fingerprinting	MP	<p>Fingerprint EPWs Identify and record the information on fingerprint cards</p> <p>Take two photographs (with instant film or digital technology) Have EPWs look straight ahead, and fill the frame with their face</p> <p>Use photograph name boards (black background with white characters) List ISNs and names (translated into English) at the bottom center</p> <p>Attach one photograph to the EPW's personnel record</p> <p>Give a completed, laminated ID card (which contains the second photograph) to the EPW</p> <p>Supervise the movement of EPWs to the next station</p>
7	Personal property	MP	<p>Inventory and record property (in the presence of EPWs) brought from temporary property storage areas</p> <p>Make separate lists for returned, stored, impounded, and confiscated property List property to be returned to EPWs or stored during internment on a separate list</p> <p>Provide receipts for property placed in temporary storage</p> <p>Provide receipts for money placed in EPW accounts (AR 190-8 and DFAS-IN 37-1)</p> <p>Return retained property that was taken from the EPW at Station 1</p> <p>Supervise the movement of EPWs to the next station</p>
8	Records review	MP	<p>Review processed records for completeness and accuracy</p> <p>Escort EPWs back to processing stations to correct errors if necessary</p> <p>Let EPWs prepare notification-of-capture cards If being interned at the same place as processing, let EPWs prepare notification-of-address cards If EPWs are unable to write their own cards, have someone authorized by the commander to do it for them</p> <p>Prepare and maintain an accountability roster of all EPWs</p>
9	Accountability transfer	MP	<p>Sign for and take custody of EPWs (can use movement manifest), their records, and their impounded property if moving to another facility</p> <p>Evacuate or ship impounded property separately according to JTRs</p>
<p>*The number of people used to perform tasks depends on the number of EPWs and the amount of time available Other soldiers assigned to the unit may perform non-MP-specific tasks if necessary</p>			

## RECEIVING LINE

4-9 When EPWs arrive at the internment facility, segregate them from those who arrived earlier and those who are partially processed. Count the EPWs and match them against the manifest and the receipts for them and their equipment.

4-10 Field-process each EPW if the capturing unit or the CP did not field-process him (Chapter 3). Ensure that he receives the serial number from his capture tag (DD Form 2745). (The number is used to track him until he receives an internment serial number [ISN]).

4-11 Record his capture tag serial number and last name on an ID band. Use a banding kit to attach the band to his left wrist. Match his capture tag serial number with the number on his personal property, or if necessary, mark his capture tag serial number on his personal property.

4-12 Store personal property in a temporary storage area until EPWs are fully processed, and control access to the storage area. Ensure that EPWs receive food and water and, if necessary, first aid and medical treatment. Take them to the processing area as soon as the receiving process is complete. If they cannot be processed immediately, hold them in the receiving area.

## PROCESSING LINE

4-13 After EPWs have completed the receiving portion of their processing, move them to the processing line, where they are formally processed into the facility. They are entered into the IRIS database, and the IRIC forwards the information to the national IRIC for dissemination to the protecting power. The processing element—

- Keeps segregated EPWs apart as much as possible during processing
- Conducts administrative processing
- Expedites the processing of EPWs selected by MI teams for interrogation
- Assigns each EPW an ISN
- Replaces the control number on each EPW's wrist with his ISN

## PERSONNEL FILE

4-14 Ensure that the following forms are included in each EPW's personnel file:

- DA Form 1131-R Use this voucher to verify the balance of funds
- DA Form 1132-R List the EPW's personal property on this form
- DA Form 2662-R Issue this card if the EPW does not hold one from his country
- DA Form 2663-R Prepare this card for each EPW upon processing into the facility
- DA Form 2664-R Initiate this form upon inprocessing and update it monthly
- DA Form 4137 Record confiscated currency on this form
- DA Form 4237-R Prepare this form for each EPW processed into the facility

- DD Form 2708 Use this form to account for evacuated EPWs, regardless of the evacuation channel
- DD Form 2745 File Part B of this tag in the personnel record

### INTERNMENT SERIAL NUMBER

4-15 The national IRIC forwards blocks of ISNs to designated IRICs in the TO and CONUS as required. The ISNs are used to identify EPWs in US custody. Each ISN is a unique, individual number, no two are alike. An ISN consists of two parts:

- The first part contains the letters "US," a number indicating the TO where the EPW came into US custody, and two letters representing the EPW's country of origin
- The second part is a series of six numbers that are assigned (in sequential order) to each EPW processed in the command. The numbers are followed by the letters "EPW," "CI," "RP," or "OD" to denote the EPW's category.

For example, the first EPW processed by the US Army in TO 9, whose country designation is AB, is assigned ISN US9AB000001EPW.

4-16 If the situation permits, the IRIC processes EPWs at division CPs and CHAs. Assign ISNs as early as possible. However, if an ISN is not assigned until Station 1 (see Table 4-1, page 4-3), use the capture tag number, the manifest number, or another control number until an ISN is assigned.

**NOTE:** See STANAG 2044 and AR 190-8 for additional information on ISNs.

### IDENTIFICATION BAND

4-17 The EPW ID bands are used to—

- Verify EPW rosters against the compound population
- Identify compound work details
- Match EPWs with their medical records
- Check identities of EPWs being transferred or repatriated against transfer rosters
- Permit rapid, reliable ID of EPWs
- Enhance facility administration and operation

4-18 An EPW can remove his ID band, but doing so destroys the band so that someone else cannot use it without being detected. The MP cannot prevent EPWs from destroying bands, however, most EPWs accept the use of the band for ID purposes.

4-19 Record the EPW's ISN and last name on his ID band, and secure it to his left wrist. To enhance facility administration and operation, use various colored bands to further identify EPWs by category. For example, use—

- Blue for officers
- Red for NCOs
- Yellow for enlisted soldiers
- Black for RPs

- Green for CIs
- White for ODs

If EPW ID bands are unavailable, use a medical wristband or something similar

4-20 When serious deterioration is detected or the ISN and name is obscured, replace the ID band with a new one. Conduct periodic, random checks to detect wear and tear and efforts to destroy the band. In addition, look for efforts to exchange bands between EPWs (removing the ID band results in damage that is easily detected). When firm ID is needed, such as transfer or hospitalization, carefully examine the ID band for evidence of having been removed. Conduct periodic, routine inspections of randomly selected ID bands in dining-facility lines, during compound inspections, and at other opportune times.

## FLOW OF INFORMATION

4-21 Regard the information collected from EPWs as sensitive to protect them and the soldiers who are guarding them. If belligerent nations discover how many EPWs are in a facility or discover the location of a facility, it may be targeted to silence the sources of information. Maintain proper security throughout the information flow, and disseminate information through proper channels. The IRIC acts as a hub for information that CHAs and internment facilities produce. Report personnel records electronically on the IRIS or, if necessary, as a paper file.

4-22 The information flow begins when the EPW is captured and a DD Form 2745 is initiated. The ISN, which is assigned upon arrival at a CHA or an internment facility, is the key to tracking EPWs throughout the I/R system.

4-23 Information collected during processing (initial and full) and entered into the IRIS (CHA or internment facility) is sent to the IRIC. The IRIC collects the entire personnel file, it is normally electronic with a hard-copy backup. The internment facility reports the information to the IRIC, who disseminates it as appropriate. The strength report (DA Form 2674-R) is the only information passed up the internment facility's chain of command. Questions regarding the information or EPW flow in the TO are directed to the IRIC.

**NOTE.** Hasty processing can be initiated if normal processing cannot be done in a reasonable amount of time (normal processing is completed later).

## Initial Processing

4-24 During initial processing (at the point of capture), gather critical information from EPWs and assign ISNs. The minimum information needed during initial processing is the—

- Complete name (first, middle, and last)
- Service number
- Rank
- Capturing unit

- Date of capture
- Place of capture (grid coordinates)
- Circumstances of capture

4-25 The above information (along with the capturing country, the TO, the power served, the sequence number, and the EPW category) is enough to move the EPW into an internment facility where additional information is gathered. Much of the information is gleaned from the capture tag. The IRIC provides block ISNs, and other information is theater- and situation-driven. The initial processing is quick and effective.

### Intermediate Processing

4-26 Per AR 190-8, the national IRIC is responsible for collecting the following items to complete the intermediate processing:

- The date of birth
- The city of birth
- The country of birth
- The name and address of next of kin (NOK) (father/mother)
- The location of confiscated property
- The nationality
- A general statement of health
- The nation in whose armed services the individual is serving
- The name and address of a person to be notified of the individual's capture
- The address to which correspondence may be sent
- Certificates of death or authenticated lists of the dead
- The location of war graves (grid coordinates) and particulars of the dead
- The notification of capture (including the date sent)
- The list of personal articles of value not restored upon repatriation

### Full Processing

4-27 Remember, an EPW is only required to give his name, rank, and service number. However, collect additional information if possible. An EPW is considered fully processed when the personnel file is complete. This includes the fields completed during initial and intermediate processing and those listed below:

- Education
- Religion
- Marital status
- Internment facility unit identification code (UIC)
- Sex
- Languages spoken
- Internment facility location
- Enemy unit
- Arm of service

- Military occupational specialty (MOS)
- Civilian occupational specialty (COS)
- Corps area of capture
- Mother's maiden name
- Permanent home address
- Other particulars from the ID card
- Distinguishing marks
- Impounded personal property and money
- Photograph
- Prepared by, date prepared, place prepared, and signature
- Immunizations
- Internment employment compensation
- Serious offenses, punishments, and escapes (including dates)
- Transfers
- Financial status at the time of first and second international transfers
- Repatriation
- Financial status at the time of repatriation
- Remarks

## ASSIGNMENT TO INTERNMENT FACILITIES

4-28 Selectively assign EPWs to internment facilities that best meet their needs and the needs of the detaining power. To prevent problems, isolate EPWs from the general population if they hold violent, opposing ideologies. After EPWs are assigned to a facility, they may be further segregated due to nationality, language, and so forth. Normally, EPWs are segregated into the following categories:

- Officer
- NCO
- Enlisted
- CI
- RP
- Male
- Female

4-29 The EPWs may be further assigned to separate compounds. Always intern females in compounds that are separate from males. Further separation of EPWs may be necessary depending on security issues. (See Chapter 6 for further information on I/R facilities.)

## CLASSIFICATION AND REASSIGNMENT

4-30 The initial classification of an EPW is based on unsupported statements or documentation provided by them. Assignment to a specific compound within the internment facility is based on the assumption that the identity provided by the EPW is correct.

4-31 After an EPW is assigned to a facility, expect a continuing need for further reclassification and reassignment. Because the identity of the EPW was based on unsupported statements or documentation supplied by him, it may be necessary to reclassify him a second time as his identity becomes apparent. Agitators, enemy plants, or EPW leaders are eventually uncovered by their activities. They may be reclassified according to their new identity or ideology and reassigned to a more appropriate facility.

4-32 Anticipate the reclassification and reassignment of EPWs within the facility or to other facilities. The initial classification may be challenged by the EPW or MP assets. An individual may provide statements or documents that indicate he should be reclassified, or observations made by MP or MI may determine that an individual was incorrectly classified.

## TRIBUNAL

4-33 A tribunal is held according to Article 5, GPW. It determines the status of an individual who does not appear to be entitled to EPW status but—

- Commits a belligerent act to aid enemy armed forces
- Engages in a hostile activity to aid enemy armed forces
- Asserts that he or she is entitled to treatment as an EPW

## TRANSFER BETWEEN FACILITIES

4-34 A transfer may be a result of reclassification or another situation requiring the movement of an EPW. Transfer an EPW from one facility to another under conditions that are comparable to those for a member of the US armed forces when possible. Security measures are determined by MP and are influenced by the type of EPW being transferred, the mode of transportation used, and other pertinent conditions.

4-35 The facility commander—

- Publishes a transfer order and informs EPWs of their new postal addresses in time for them to notify their NOK and the IRIC
- Verifies the accuracy and completeness of EPW personnel records and provides records (in a sealed envelope) to MP accompanying the movement
- Verifies that EPWs possess their authorized clothing and equipment
- Prepares impounded personal property for shipment with escorting MP or separate shipment as appropriate
- Briefs escort MP on their duties and responsibilities, including procedures to be followed in case of an escape, a death, or another emergency
- Provides or arranges for rations, transportation, and notifications according to prescribed procedures
- Ensures that EPWs are manifested by name, rank/status, ISN, power served, nationality, and physical condition. Attach the manifest to the original receipt and forward it to the IRIC
- Prepares paperwork in English and other languages (if required) before transferring EPWs

4-36 Each EPW can transfer personal property not exceeding 55 pounds. Chaplains and EPWs who have been serving as clergymen are permitted to transfer an additional 110 pounds to cover communion sets, theological books, and other religious material. If an EPW's personal property exceeds 55 pounds, he selects the items he is going to transfer and disposes of the rest according to established policies.

#### TRANSFER TO HOST NATION OR ALLIED FACILITIES AND INTERSERVICE

4-37 The permanent transfer of an EPW from the custody of US forces to the HN or other allied forces requires the approval of the Secretary of Defense (SECDEF). The permanent transfer of an EPW to FN control is governed by bilateral national agreements. An EPW can only be transferred from US custody to a power that is a party to the Geneva Conventions. A US representative visits the power's internment facilities and ensures that the power is willing and able to comply with the Geneva Conventions.

4-38 The temporary transfer of EPWs is authorized to accommodate surges in EPW population beyond US capacity. The TO commander develops measures to ensure accountability and humane treatment of EPWs who are temporarily transferred.

4-39 An EPW who is captured or detained by the US Marine Corps, Navy, Air Force, or Coast Guard is turned over to the US Army at receiving points designated by the TO commander. Interservice transfers are effected as soon as possible following initial classification and administrative processing.

#### REPATRIATION

4-40 Repatriation is the process of returning an EPW to his country of birth or citizenship. An EPW who is not sick or wounded is repatriated or released at the end of hostilities as directed by the Office of the Secretary of Defense (OSD). The keys to a successful repatriation process are control and accountability. Table 4-2, page 4-12, outlines repatriation procedures.

4-41 To complete the transfer, the escort guard company forwards the official receipt of transfer to the IRIC. Upon notification from the IRIC that the transfer is complete, the losing internment facility forwards official records and unreleased confiscated property to the IRIC for final disposition. The IRIC—

- Notifies the national IRIC of the final status of released and repatriated EPWs
- Forwards EPW records and reports according to AR 25-400-2
- Disposes of confiscated property according to the national IRIC and applicable regulations

4-42 The eligibility for repatriation or accommodation of sick and wounded EPWs is determined in a neutral country by a mixed medical commission. The commission is established by Headquarters, Department of the Army (HQDA) according to AR 190-8 and the GPW. Sick and wounded EPWs are not repatriated against their will during hostilities.



Table 4-2. Repatriation Procedures

Step	Actions
Control and accountability	<p>Maintain control and accountability until EPWs are received by the serving power or the designated protecting power</p> <p>Maintain a manifest that contains the—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Name</li> <li>• Rank/status</li> <li>• ISN</li> <li>• Power served/nationality</li> <li>• Physical condition</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE</b> A manifest is used as an official receipt of transfer and becomes a permanent record to ensure accountability of each EPW until his final release</p>
Records	<p>Ensure that copies of appropriate personnel, finance, and medical records accompany released and repatriated EPWs. Transfer the records to the designated official receiving EPWs</p>
Personal property	<p>Ensure that confiscated personal property (that can be released) accompanies released and repatriated EPWs</p> <p>Conduct an inventory and identify discrepancies</p> <p>Ensure that EPWs sign property receipts</p>

## CONTROL AND DISCIPLINE

4-43 Treat EPWs fairly and firmly. Ensure that orders are decisive, clear, concise, reasonable, capable of being obeyed, and given in an understood language. Promptly report refusals and failures to obey orders, and take appropriate disciplinary action.

## CONTROL

4-44 Maintain humane, firm control of EPWs. To control EPWs—

- Observe rigorous self-discipline
- Maintain a professional, impersonal attitude
- Cope with hostile or unruly behavior and incidents calmly
- Take judicious, immediate, and decisive action

4-45 The MP establish daily and periodic routines and responses that are conducive to good EPW discipline and control. They—

- Require compliance with policies and procedures
- Use techniques that provide firm control of EPWs
- Give reasonable, decisive orders in a language that EPWs understand
- Post copies of the Geneva Conventions in the compound where EPWs can read them in their own language
- Post rules, regulations, instructions, notices, orders, and other announcements that EPWs are expected to obey. Ensure that posted information is printed in a language that EPWs understand. Provide copies to EPWs who do not have access to posted copies
- Ensure that EPWs obey rules, orders, and directives

- Report refusals and failures to obey orders and regulations

## Treatment

4-46 Equitable treatment enhances the control of EPWs. According to the Geneva Conventions, all EPWs are treated humanely and are protected against violence, intimidation, insults, and public curiosity. Treat all EPWs alike, regardless of rank, sex, and privileged treatment (which may be accorded due to their health, age, or professional qualifications).

4-47 An EPW officer is afforded the following privileges and considerations:

- Quarters and facilities that are commensurate with his grade
- The privilege of not being compelled to work
- Enlisted orderlies. They are assigned at a ratio of 1 for each general officer (GO) and 1 for every 12 officers of a lower grade.

4-48 An RP is extended additional privileges and considerations due to his profession and special skills:

- Correspondence privileges for chaplains and senior medical officers that are over and above those afforded EPW officers
- Facilities necessary to provide EPWs with medical care, spiritual assistance, and welfare service
- Authority and transportation for periodic visits to hospitals and other internment facilities
- Work assignments that are restricted to medical or religious duties he is qualified to perform
- Quarters that are separate from those of other EPWs when practical

## Representation

4-49 A limited system of representation improves communication between US forces and EPWs, thus improving control. According to AR 190-8 and the Geneva Conventions, the senior EPW officer assigned to each facility is recognized as the senior EPW representative, unless he is declared incompetent or incapacitated by US authorities. Enlisted EPWs may elect an enlisted representative if there is no officer representation at the facility. In officer facilities, EPWs choose one or more advisors to assist the senior representative. In officer/enlisted facilities, EPWs elect one or more enlisted advisors to assist the officer representative.

4-50 Elected and appointed representatives have the same nationality, customs, and language as those they represent. Each group of EPWs interned in separate facilities due to language, customs, or ideology is permitted to have an elected representative.

4-51 The primary duties of elected representatives are to promote spiritual, physical, and intellectual well-being of EPWs. Representatives are given freedom of movement within security requirements. They do not have the authority to discipline EPWs, but they are allowed to—

- Inspect labor detachments
- Receive supplies
- Communicate with—

- US military authorities
- Protecting powers (Protecting powers periodically inspect the internment facility and interview EPWs regarding the conditions of their internment, their welfare, and their rights under international law)
- The ICRC and its delegates
- Medical commissions
- Other organizations authorized to assist EPWs
- Use postal and other appropriate facilities

4-52 Representatives do not perform any other work if it interferes with their representative duties. Each representative is elected by secret ballot and serves a 6-month term. The EPWs are permitted to consult freely with their representatives, and representatives are allowed to represent EPWs before—

- The ICRC
- Protecting powers
- US military authorities
- Other relief or aid organizations (NGOs and IOs)

4-53 The facility commander is the final approving authority for each elected EPW representative. After the approval process is complete, a representative assumes his duties. When the commander denies, approves, or dismisses an elected representative, he sends a notice through channels to HQDA, the national IRIC (forwarded to the IRIC), or the protecting power. The notice includes the reason(s) for refusal if applicable. The EPWs are then permitted to elect another representative. Each elected representative can appoint assistants, as approved by the facility commander.

4-54 Medical and chaplain personnel are classified as RPs and are not considered EPWs. They receive, at a minimum, the benefits and protection afforded EPWs by the Geneva Conventions. However, EPW representatives do not represent them. The senior US or FN medical officer at each internment facility is responsible for the activities of retained medical personnel. The senior retained medical officer and the chaplain have the right to correspond and consult with the facility commander on all questions concerning their duties.

## **RULES OF INTERACTION AND ENGAGEMENT**

4-55 The ROI provide soldiers with a guide for interacting with the EPW population. The following directives may be included in the ROI:

- Speak to EPWs only when giving orders
- Treat all EPWs equally and with respect
- Respect religious articles and materials
- Treat all medical problems seriously
- Do not discuss politics or the conflict with EPWs
- Do not make promises
- Do not make obscene gestures
- Do not make derogatory remarks or political comments about EPWs and their cause

- Do not engage in commerce with EPWs

4-56 Commanders balance the physical security of forces with mission accomplishment and the ROE. The basic guidelines on ROE (Chapter 2) apply to EPWs. The employment of nonlethal weapons (NLWs) is clearly stated in the ROE (see Appendix B and FM 90-40)

4-57 The ROE vary from operation to operation. The commander in chief (CINC) establishes ROE in coordination with the SJA and the joint staff. Special ROE can be developed for use in internment facilities, but they must have CINC approval. Specific ROE may evolve to fit the changing environment and to ensure continued protection and safety for US personnel and EPWs. As a general principle, the ROE should remain simple and understandable.

## DISCIPLINE

4-58 The facility commander establishes and enforces the rules needed to maintain discipline and security. The EPWs may not establish their own court system. The following actions are not permitted between EPWs and US military or civilian personnel:

- Fraternization
- Favoritism
- Donation or receipt of gifts
- Engagement in commerce

4-59 If necessary, the MP commander or his appointed officer initiates general court-martial proceedings against EPWs using Miscellaneous Publication (Misc Pub) 27-7, the UCMJ, and US laws, regulations, and orders. Do not deliver an EPW to civil authorities for an offense unless a member of the US armed forces would be delivered for committing a similar offense.

4-60 Do not discipline an EPW until he is given precise information regarding the offense(s). Allow the accused to explain his conduct and defend himself. Permit him to call witnesses, and use an interpreter if necessary. Maintain a record (on a locally produced form if available) of disciplinary punishment administered to EPWs. Disciplinary measures include—

- Discontinuance of privileges that are granted over and above those allowed by the Geneva Conventions (not to exceed 30 days)
- Confinement (not to exceed 30 days)
- A fine (not to exceed one-half of the advance and working pay that an EPW receives during a 30-day period)
- Fatigue duty (extra duty) (not to exceed 2 hours per day for 30 days). Fatigue duty does not apply to officers, and NCOs are only required to supervise.

## CLOTHING

4-61 Supply EPWs with sufficient clothing, underwear, and footwear, and allow for the climate where EPWs are housed. Use captured uniforms of enemy armed forces if they are suitable for the climate. Ensure that clothing is replaced and repaired as necessary. Working EPWs receive clothing that is

appropriate to the nature and location of the work. Clothing worn by EPWs at the time of capture is worn until it is no longer serviceable, and then it is exchanged. (Appendix C provides a synopsis of clothing and equipment that can be issued to EPWs.)

4-62 Mark outer garments with the letters "PW." Use black letters, about 4 inches high, if the clothing is a dark color, use white letters. Mark shirts, coats, and similar items across the back and on the front of each sleeve (between the elbow and the shoulder). Mark trousers, walking shorts, and similar items across the back (slightly below the belt) and on the front of each leg (slightly above the knee). Do not mark hats and other accessories. Sample EPW clothing markings are shown in Figure 4-1.

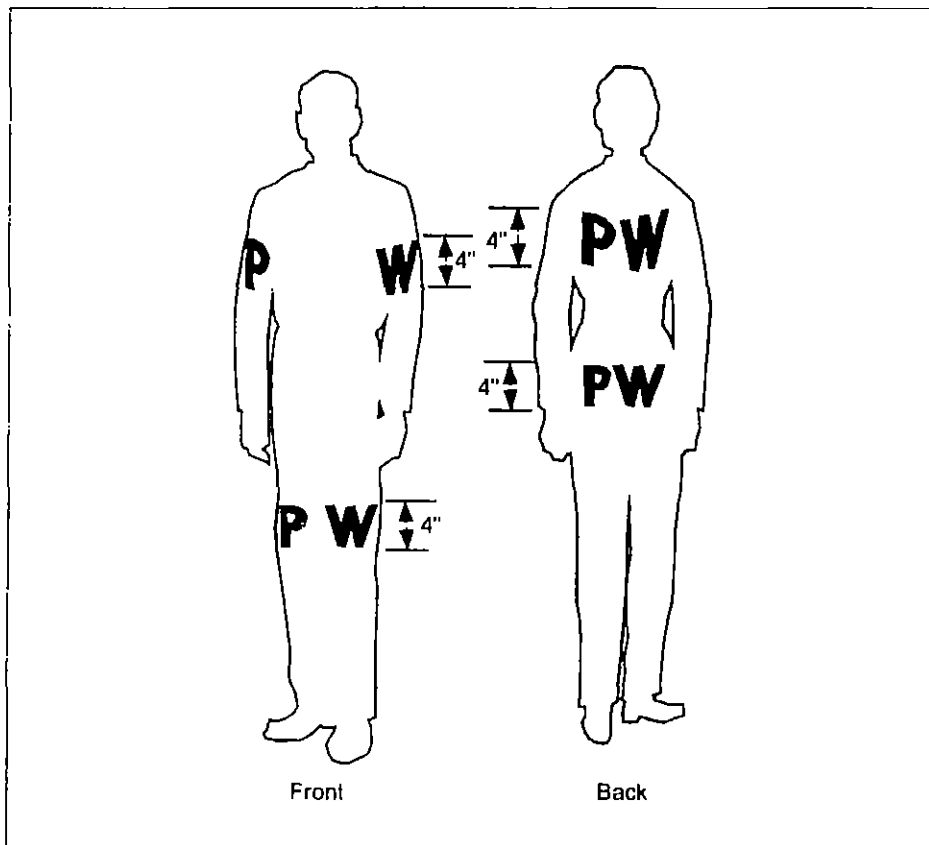


Figure 4-1. EPW Clothing Markings

4-63 An RP wears a water-resistant armband on his left sleeve bearing a distinctive emblem (such as Red Cross or Red Crescent). It is issued and stamped by the military authority of the power with which he has served. An authorized person who does not have an armband in his possession is provided a Geneva Convention brassard (see AR 670-1).

## SUBSISTENCE

4-64 The detaining power feeds EPWs a basic, daily food ration that is sufficient in quantity, quality, and variety to keep them in good health and to prevent weight loss and nutritional deficiencies. A medical officer, a PA, or a nurse practitioner keeps the commander apprised of situational needs and the nutritional health of EPWs. Supply working EPWs with extra rations to compensate for their labor. Sustain the health of EPWs at a level that is equal to that of the US forces guarding them.

4-65 If dining facilities are unavailable, feed EPWs meals, ready-to-eat (MREs). These rations are easily stored and require no additional dietary supplements. However, when perishable food supplies (fresh vegetables, fruit, and meat) are available, substitute them for nonperishable items. Always provide sufficient drinking water. Do not issue extra rations because EPWs can stockpile food and use it for escapes. The commander may authorize EPWs to prepare their own meals under the supervision of US personnel.

4-66 During the early stages of captivity (in brigade and division areas), allow EPWs to retain their own rations. However, arrange for collective feeding of EPWs according to the terms of the Geneva Conventions at the earliest opportunity.

## MEDICAL AND SANITATION CONSIDERATIONS

4-67 Ensure that adequate medical and sanitation standards are met. Chapters 2 and 6 contain additional information on these responsibilities.

## CORRESPONDENCE

4-68 Within one week of arrival at the internment facility, an EPW completes a DA Form 2665-R. When an EPW is transferred from one internment facility to another, he completes a DA Form 2666-R.

## OUTGOING CORRESPONDENCE

4-69 Outgoing correspondence is allowed as follows:

- May mail two letters (DA Form 2667-R) and four postcards (DA Form 2668-R) free of charge as prescribed in AR 190-8.
- May address complaints in writing to US military authorities and the protecting power. Complaints are not limited in length or in number, and they are not charged against an EPW's correspondence allotment. All complaints are transmitted immediately.
- Cannot write letters for other EPWs. If an EPW is unable to write, the facility commander appoints someone to write and countersign the letter.
- Cannot send parcels.

4-70 The facility commander or his designated representative examines and reads letters and postcards. The facility commander requisitions, reproduces, and supplies correspondence forms. If EPWs are prevented from writing

monthly letters due to the lack of forms, allow them to make up their allotment when forms become available

### **INCOMING CORRESPONDENCE**

4-71 An EPW can receive unlimited letters, cards, and parcels. Censors thoroughly inspect all parcels for unauthorized items and concealed or coded messages. If deemed necessary, the facility commander can request that censors also examine incoming correspondence. Parcels are forwarded to EPWs who have been transferred.

### **TELEGRAMS AND TELEPHONE CALLS**

4-72 The EPWs may send and receive telegrams as determined by the facility commander, and the cost of sending telegrams is deducted from the EPW's account. The EPWs cannot make telephone calls.

### **CANTEENS**

4-73 Provide EPWs with sundry, health, and comfort packs. The packs can be supplemented with items tailored to EPWs' cultural needs as a temporary substitute for establishing canteen operations.

4-74 Canteens are operated according to the GPW and are installed as directed by the TO PM or senior MP officer. The EPWs can procure foodstuffs, soap, tobacco, and other items in canteens. The tariff for items available for EPWs never exceeds local market price, and payment procedures are outlined in DFAS-IN 37-1.

4-75 Profits made by the facility canteen are used to benefit the EPWs, and a special fund is created for this purpose. When an internment facility closes, transfer the credit balance of the special fund to another US internment facility in the TO. When all facilities are closed, transfer funds to an international welfare organization. The special fund is employed for the benefit of EPWs of the same nationality as those who have contributed to the fund. In case of a general repatriation, profits are kept by the US.

**NOTE:** The EPW representatives can make suggestions regarding the management of canteens and special funds.

### **SOCIAL PROGRAMS**

4-76 Encourage and support active education, employment, and agriculture programs for EPWs. Like other internees, EPWs have active programs for religious worship, recreation, protecting-power visits, and safety. These programs are discussed in Chapter 2. Provide adequate facilities, instruction materials, and agriculture equipment for these activities.

### **EDUCATION**

4-77 Develop education programs according to DA policy. Within the framework of DA guidance and directives issued by other headquarters, develop a separate education program for each EPW facility. Each program reflects the individual attitudes and political orientations of those interned in

the facility. The following factors and considerations may influence an education program:

- Levels of education throughout the EPW population
- Attitudes toward education and the education program
- Requirements for essential and necessary EPW work details
- The availability of qualified instructors (may include EPWs, indigenous personnel, and US Army military and civilian personnel)
- Security considerations that may restrict or prohibit the use of EPWs or indigenous personnel

4-78 In addition to an academic program, ensure that vocational training is an integral part of the education program. The immediate objective of vocational training is to develop skills that are useful during internment. The long-range goal is for EPWs to learn trades that are useful in civilian life.

## EMPLOYMENT

4-79 The EPW population constitutes a significant labor force of skilled and unskilled workers. Employ EPWs to construct, administer, manage, and maintain the facility. The EPWs will be employed in other essential work permitted by AR 190-8 only when qualified civilian labor is unavailable.

4-80 The commander organizes and manages the EPW population in a manner that permits proper, ready employment of each EPW. He—

- Establishes and maintains a current occupational-skill record for each EPW and includes new skills as they are acquired
- Assigns individual EPWs to a work detail or a job on a regular or permanent basis
- Establishes vocational-training projects
- Encourages EPWs to study and develop skills

4-81 The EPW labor that is external to DOD is regulated through contract. (See AR 190-8 for more information on the employment of and compensation for EPWs.)

## Labor Considerations

4-82 The following restrictions apply when employing EPWs:

- An officer cannot be compelled to work
- An NCO can only be required to supervise the work of enlisted personnel
- An EPW cannot be compelled to engage in work that is purely military in nature and purpose
- An EPW cannot be employed on a work detail that is unhealthy or dangerous because of the work's nature or the individual's lack of physical fitness or technical skill. (See the GPW and AR 190-8 for guidance on this type of employment.)
- An EPW/RP cannot be assigned to labor that is considered humiliating or degrading for members of the US armed forces. This prohibition does not include unpleasant, necessary tasks that are connected to administering and maintaining the facility.



- An EPW cannot be employed or retained in an area where he may be exposed to direct or indirect fire

4-83 If in doubt as to whether work is authorized, request that the SJA review the proposed tasks. This review assures compliance with AR 190-8 and the law of land warfare.

### **Paid Work**

4-84 The EPWs are compensated when they perform work for which pay is authorized. The rate of pay is not less than that prescribed in the GPW Compensation for work is authorized from US Army appropriated funds, canteen funds, or EPW funds. The EPWs are paid for various types of authorized work, such as—

- Labor performed for a contract employer or a federal agency
- Services as orderlies and cooks for officer EPWs
- Services to construct, administer, manage, and maintain EPW facilities, branch facilities, and hospitals when such services are performed by EPWs permanently assigned to certain duties or occupations
- Labor performed by RPs
- Spiritual or medical duties
- Services as EPW representatives or assistants. These individuals are paid from the EPW fund. If an EPW fund does not exist, they are paid from US Army appropriated funds.
- Services as detail leaders or interpreters

### **Advance Pay**

4-85 The Geneva Conventions state that the detaining power shall grant EPWs a monthly advance of pay, the amount of which shall be fixed by conversion into the currency of the said power, of the following amounts:

- Category I (EPWs below the rank of sergeant [SGT]) 8 Swiss francs
- Category II (SGTs, other NCOs, and EPWs of equivalent rank) 12 Swiss francs
- Category III (warrant officers [WOs], commissioned officers below the rank of major [MAJ], and EPWs of equivalent rank) 50 Swiss francs
- Category IV (MAJs, lieutenant colonels [LTCs], colonels [COLs], and EPWs of equivalent rank) 60 Swiss francs
- Category V (GOs and EPWs of equivalent rank) 75 Swiss francs

**NOTE** The facility commander consults with the SJA and the finance office when setting up EPW advance-pay accounts.

### **AGRICULTURE**

4-86 When practical, EPWs should raise vegetables for their use, the labor is classified as paid work. Do not overlook the importance of developing an agriculture program. Agriculture and gardening projects are particularly desirable because they provide gainful employment for several individuals. The food produced by gardening projects provides a valuable supplement to

diets at minimal expense. The produce from gardens operated with EPW labor is US property. It is used for the benefit of EPWs and US armed forces personnel, and it is not sold or traded in civilian markets.

4-87 The types and quantities of agriculture supplies required (seeds, fertilizers, and implements) are procured through local purchase or Army supply channels. Ensure that necessary supplies are ordered in a timely manner.

## SECURITY

4-88 The commander is responsible for security measures that effectively control EPWs with minimal use of force. A general discussion of the commander's security responsibilities is found in Chapter 2. The information contained in this chapter applies specifically to EPW security.

## ADVERSE ACTIONS

4-89 Dissident actions by EPWs vary from acts of harassment to acts of violence. Enemy forces may support resistance activities, such as EPWs—

- Refusing to eat, work, or attend formations
- Working in an unsatisfactory manner
- Malingering
- Sabotaging equipment or facilities
- Assaulting other EPWs or guard personnel
- Taking hostages to secure concessions
- Escaping or participating in mass breakouts
- Intimidating other EPWs
- Fabricating weapons or other illegal items
- Printing or circulating propaganda material
- Creating embarrassing situations or making false accusations to influence international inspection teams or members of the protecting power or the ICRC
- Instigating disturbances and riots to place the facility staff in unfavorable positions (this allows EPWs to gain concessions and influence custodial policies)

4-90 Enemy forces may—

- Establish communications with EPWs by using agents, smuggled radios, and foreign-language newspapers
- Order members to submit to capture so that they can become agitators in the internment facility
- Liberate EPWs through direct military action by regular or irregular forces

## PLANNING

4-91 Ensure that security planning is continuous and complete and that it reflects current intelligence information on uprisings, outbreaks, and escapes.

Provide an immediate-response plan that is capable of meeting all internal and external threats to security

4-92 The EPWs may try to communicate with EPWs from other compounds and facilities. The most common places for communication are—

- **Dispensary and food distribution points** Messages can be hidden where EPWs from neighboring compounds can find them. Alert observations and periodic searches minimize the possibility of communication in these areas.
- **Hospitals** If an EPW is sick or injured, examine him carefully to ensure that hospitalization is required. Do not inform the EPW patient of his discharge until the last possible moment. Conduct a complete search of each EPW and his personal effects upon admission and discharge from a hospital.
- **Work details** Maintain an adequate distance between work details to prevent EPWs from exchanging information.

## INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

4-93 The first objective of MI is observing activities to accurately classify EPWs as cooperative or uncooperative. This minimizes security and control problems by allowing early segregation of hard-core, uncooperative EPWs to maximum-security internment facilities.

4-94 Timely information relative to attitudes and activities enables the facility commander to forecast disturbances and other clandestine activities. This information is an important means of countering resistance movements, minimizing the use of force, and maintaining control. An effective information-gathering system identifies dissident elements, including leaders, plans, and methods.

4-95 All facility personnel must detect and report significant information. They can acquire important information through observation and insight, even though they are not trained intelligence specialists.

4-96 In compounds that house cooperative EPWs, a special intelligence organization is not needed. Tap ordinary sources of information continually and assess them sensitively. These sources include communications, observations, and reports of military, administrative, and security personnel, criminal investigation data, disciplinary reports, and grievance statements.

4-97 Intelligence requirements incorporate information required by the commander to ensure the continued control of EPWs and information requested by higher headquarters and other agencies. The S2 prepares PIR and coordinates intelligence requirements to maintain a constant flow of intelligence to the commander.

4-98 Identify the following essential elements of information (EEI):

- EPW agitators and leaders and their followers
- Clandestine EPW organizations, including their strength, objectives, and members
- Underground communications systems and overt attempts to communicate—

- Between EPW compounds and internment facilities
- With indigenous civilian personnel
- Suspicious activities by local people near the internment facility (photographing or sketching the facility)
- Fabricated weapons, stores of food, and clothing supplies in the compound
- Plans to conduct demonstrations, including—
  - The date and time
  - The number of EPWs involved (by compound)
  - The nature of the demonstration (passive, harassing, or violent act)
  - Objectives (distributing propaganda, weakening or testing authority and security, establishing control, or planning mass escapes or outbreaks)

4-99 Use the following methods to obtain information on clandestine EPW activities

- Provide opportunities for EPWs to volunteer information of intelligence value and offer protection from reprisal by removal or transfer to safe facilities
- Conduct periodic, unannounced searches and patrols
- Search EPWs on departure from and return to the facility
- Train personnel on the techniques and importance of observing, recognizing, and reporting information that may have intelligence value, such as—
  - Unusual activities, especially before holidays or celebrations
  - Messages being passed between groups of EPWs on work details
  - Messages being passed to or from local civilians while EPWs are on work details
  - Messages being signaled from one compound to another

4-100 Developing an EPW intelligence network that extends to each compound is invaluable. The reliability of the network depends on the information provided and the verification of that information. Establishing an informant system is subject to local consideration of special hazards that may be involved. Take every precaution to provide safety for EPW informants.

### WORK DETAIL GUARDS

4-101 Keep work detail guards to the minimum number necessary to assure reasonable security and prevent EPW escape. Guards maintain a reasonable distance from work details and properly position themselves to provide the best observation of the area. Rest breaks for guards are taken separately while EPWs are working.

### MILITARY WORKING DOGS

4-102 The MWDs offer a viable deterrent against EPW escapes, because their tracking capabilities can be used to recapture escapees. Chapter 2 provides more information on MWDs and their use in internment facilities.

## ESCAPE PREVENTION

### 4-103 Minimize escapes by—

- Conducting periodic, unannounced, and systematic searches to detect tunneling, caches of food or clothing, weapons, maps, and money or other valuables
- Maintaining strict accountability for tools and equipment that EPWs can access or use
- Examining perimeter fencing daily to detect cuts or other weaknesses
- Examining the lighting system during darkness to detect poorly lighted areas along the perimeter (Replace burned out or broken light bulbs immediately)
- Conducting training and refresher training to ensure that all security and guard personnel are familiar with security precautions, techniques, and procedures
- Searching vehicles and containers taken into or out of the internment facility
- Supervising the disposition of unconsumed rations (in the internment facility and on work details) to prevent caching of food

### Early Detection of Escape Attempts

#### 4-104 To detect escape attempts, conduct—

- Roll calls and head counts on regular and unannounced bases
- Roll calls twice daily, preferably early morning and late evening
- Head counts immediately after witnessing a mass disturbance, discovering an open tunnel, or detecting a hole or break in a fence
- Head counts frequently while on work details and when en route to another facility

### Escape Prevention and the Use of Force

4-105 The facility commander ensures that US soldiers understand the ROE, including the use of the term *halt*, the use of deadly force, and the ban on physical or imaginary deadlines. Per AR 190-8, he also ensures that EPWs understand the use of the English word *halt* and its implications.

4-106 When an EPW tries to escape, a guard shouts *HALT* three times, thereafter, the guard uses the least amount of force necessary to halt the EPW. If there is no other effective means of preventing escape, deadly force can be used. If an EPW tries to escape from a fenced enclosure, do not fire unless he clears the outside fence (barrier, concertina wire, or razor tape) and makes further effort to escape. If an EPW tries to escape outside a fenced enclosure, fire if he does not halt after the third command.

#### 4-107 An escape is successful if an EPW—

- Reaches the lines of his forces or the allies of that power
- Leaves the territory that the US or its allied powers control

Per the unit SOP, notify commands and interested agencies of escapes and recaptures.

## Chapter 5

# Civilian Internees

A civilian whose status cannot be determined is treated as an OD. All rules, regulations, and privileges applicable to an EPW apply to an OD. When an OD is adjudicated by a military tribunal and determined to be a CI, he is removed from the EPW facility and treated as a CI. This chapter discusses the internment process after a military tribunal adjudicates a civilian and determines that he should be interned. A CI internment facility runs parallel to an EPW internment facility, with some differences. A CI—

- Is protected under the provisions of the GC
- Does not meet the criteria for classification as an EPW or an RP
- Is considered a security risk
- Needs protection because he committed an offense against the detaining power (insurgents, criminals, or other persons)

**NOTE. AR 190-8 provides detailed information on the administration of a CI internment facility and the treatment of CIs.**

### GENERAL PROTECTION

5-1 Do not physically torture or use moral coercion against CIs. This does not prevent the use of minimum force necessary to enforce measures authorized or directed by AR 190-8. Ensure that CIs are treated with respect and protected against—

- Violence
- Insult
- Public curiosity
- Bodily injury
- Reprisal
- Sexual attack (molestation, prostitution, or any form of indecent assault)

5-2 Treat CIs considerately, without adverse distinction based on race, religion, political opinion, sex, or age. The following are prohibited:

- Measures that may cause physical suffering or death
- Intimidation
- Terrorism
- Reprisal
- Hostage acts

- Deportation from the occupied territory to the territory of the occupying power or any other country (occupied or not)

5-3 The CIs can apply for assistance from protecting powers, the ICRC, approved religious organizations, relief societies, and others. Within the limits of military and security considerations, these organizations are allowed access and facilities to assist CIs.

#### AUTHORIZATION TO INTERN

5-4 The internment of protected civilians is authorized and directed if the following requirements are met:

- Internment is necessary (as determined by competent US military authority) for the security of US armed forces in the occupied territory
- Internment is directed (by a properly constituted US military court in the occupied territory) as the sentence for an offense that violates penal provisions issued by the occupying US armed forces

5-5 A protected civilian in the occupied territory is accepted for internment upon receipt of one of the following:

- An internment order for imperative security reasons authenticated by a commissioned officer who is delegated authority by the TO commander
- An order of an authorized commander, approving and ordering into execution, a sentence to internment pronounced by a properly constituted US military court in the occupied territory

5-6 A CI can request compassionate internment of his dependent children who are without parental care in the occupied territory. This is normally granted after coordination with SJA when both parents or the only surviving parent is interned.

#### SAFETY

5-7 Establish and administer a safety program for CIs according to pertinent safety directives. (See AR 385-10 for more information.)

#### ADMINISTRATIVE RESPONSIBILITIES

5-8 An I/R facility housing CIs is commanded by a commissioned officer of the US armed forces, and he is responsible for the safety and well-being of all housed personnel. He ensures that copies of the Geneva Conventions and facility regulations, orders, and notices relating to the conduct and activities of internees are posted in each facility, in the language of internees housed there. He provides copies to internees who do not have access to posted copies.

5-9 Regulations and other guidance relative to the administration, employment, and compensation of internees are prescribed in detail in AR 190-8 and DFAS-IN 37-1. The commander ensures that all members of his staff and command are familiar with applicable ARs, directives, international laws, and administrative procedures.

5-10 The commander is responsible for administratively processing each internee. When processing is complete, a strength report (DA Form 2674-R) is

transmitted to the IRIC, which functions as the field operations agency for the national IRIC located in the TO

## PRINCIPLES AND POLICIES

5-11 The following principles apply to CI internment facilities

- Use housed personnel for internal maintenance and operation
- Use captured supplies and equipment (excluding weapons and ammunition)
- Maintain control

5-12 A CI has the right to—

- Submit requests and complaints regarding the conditions of his confinement to detaining and protecting powers
- Elect representatives to the internee committee
- Send and receive correspondence

**NOTE** Commanders are authorized to impose disciplinary punishment according to the Geneva Conventions and AR 190-8.

## STANDING ORDERS

5-13 Standing orders are used to provide uniform, orderly administration of the I/R facility. The orders to be obeyed by housed personnel are published in their language and posted where they can read and refer to them. Standing orders include rules, procedures, and instructions governing the following activities and other matters as deemed appropriate

- Schedule of calls, including—
  - Reveille
  - Morning roll
  - Readiness of quarters for inspection
  - Sick
  - Mess
  - Evening roll
  - Lights out
- Housed-personnel actions that support emergency action plans of the internment facility, such as—
  - Fire drills
  - Air raid drills
  - Emergency evacuations
  - Natural-disaster drills
  - Blackouts
  - Escapes
- Hours for religious services, recreation activities, and so forth
- Procedures for emergency sick call
- Designated smoking areas



## RECORDS AND REPORTS

5-14 The commander establishes local records and reports necessary to operate the facility effectively. The reports provide information concerning control, supervision, and disposition of the CI population. The commander determines the type (administrative, operational, logistical, intelligence, and personnel) of reports and the frequency (routine or as required). Normal command records and reports, such as duty officer logs, worksheets, and situation maps, are also required.

### Processing

5-15 Internees who meet the requirements in the Geneva Conventions and AR 190-8 are entitled to the protected CI status. Process them as follows:

- Issue an ISN to each processed CI using the procedures in Chapter 4 for EPWs. Ensure that the letters "CI" follow the last number of the ISN.
- Complete DA Form 2663-R in duplicate for each CI and each dependent child. Place one copy in the CI's personnel file, which is transferred with him, and forward the other copy to the IRIC.
- Prepare DA Form 2674-R for each facility housing CIs and for each hospital where CIs are assigned. Account for all captives classified as CIs, captives who had a DA Form 4237-R prepared, and dependent children who received compassionate internment.
- Issue DA Form 2677-R to each processed CI. Direct him to retain the card at all times.
- Complete DA Form 2678-R in duplicate. Forward one copy to the CI information agency and the other copy to a relative.
- Prepare DA Form 4237-R for each protected civilian processed in the occupied territory as a CI or a dependent child. Stamp the letters "CI" on the top and bottom of each form.

### Dependent Children

5-16 Dependent children who are interned with their CI parents are not classified as CIs or processed, except as required on DA Forms 2663-R, 2674-R, and 4237-R. When dependent children reside in the facility with their parents, they are cared for, accounted for, and managed like their parents. House children and parents together in facilities that allow them to lead a normal family life. Children under the age of 12 are identified by wearing an ID badge or wristband. Ensure that children under the age of 15, who are orphaned or separated from their families as a result of the war, are not left to their own resources.

### Assignments

5-17 Assign CIs to appropriate internment facilities, and intern those with violently opposed ideologies in separate facilities. When possible, assign CIs according to their nationality, language, and customs. Do not separate CIs who are nationals of the same country merely because they speak different languages, however, consider political and cultural differences as grounds for

separation. Maintain segregation of males and females, with the following exceptions:

- House members of the same family together (particularly parents and children), allowing them to lead a near-normal family life
- Provide quarters to a parent (if single or interned without a spouse) and children that are separate from those for single persons

### Identification

5-18 The reasons for identifying CIs are many and varied, among them are—

- Verifying facility rosters against the actual population
- Identifying family members to allow timely reunification
- Matching CIs with their medical records in case of a medical emergency or an evacuation
- Checking identities of CIs being transferred against the transfer roster

5-19 An ID band (see Chapter 4) permits rapid, reliable ID of CIs. Assign each CI an ISN according to the procedures in Chapter 4 and AR 190-8. Substitute the letters "CI" for "EPW," for example, US9AB-000001CI. The ID card contains the CI's name, photograph, and ISN. When serious deterioration of an ID band or card occurs, replace it immediately. Use a DA Form 2677-R to facilitate ID.

### CLOTHING

5-20 Allow CIs to retain their clothing and footwear. Provide clothing, equipment, supplies, subsistence, and fuel as necessary. Issue work clothing and, as required by circumstances and climatic conditions, replacement clothing. Account for health and comfort items, such as razors and toothbrushes, with a direct-exchange program.

5-21 Mark outer garments with the letters "CI." Use black letters, about 4 inches high, if the clothing is a dark color, use white letters. Mark shirts, coats, and similar items across the back and on the front of each sleeve (between the elbow and the shoulder). Mark trousers, walking shorts, and similar items across the back (slightly below the belt) and on the front of each leg (slightly above the knee). Do not mark hats and other accessories. The commander can also direct that a CI's ISN be placed on the inside of his clothing. (See Figure 4-1, page 4-16.)

### SUBSISTENCE

5-22 Issue food items based on the master CI menu prepared by the TO commander. The CI menu includes a daily food ration that is sufficient in quantity, quality, and variety to maintain good health and to prevent nutritional deficiencies. Consider the customary diet when developing a CI menu. Ensure that—

- Facilities are available to CIs for preparing additional food received or procured from authorized sources

- CIs performing labor receive increased rations based on the type of work performed
- Expectant and nursing mothers and children under the age of 15 years receive additional food in proportion to their needs

5-23 If CIs receive MREs as the main source of nourishment, provide them with at least one hot meal per day. Supplement MREs with fruit, milk, and bread.

## RECEIVING AND PROCESSING AREAS

5-24 Use a controlled-flow format to escort CIs through the processing line. Normally, four CIs are processed at a time and the average is eight per hour. Secure unprocessed CIs in a holding area.

5-25 Request interpreters (linguists) from MI, PSYOP, allied forces, or local authorities as necessary. This may require identifying and clearing trusted internees or local nationals to interpret. Interpreters are particularly helpful when entering required data into the IRIS.

5-26 The preparation and dispatch of internee strength reports (DA Form 2674-R) are governed by AR 190-8, and they are prepared at each internment facility. Brigade or facility commanders may require feeder reports from various compounds to facilitate the preparation of internee strength reports.

5-27 Escort internees to the receiving area where the internment process begins. Table 5-1 outlines the internment process for CIs. It shows who is responsible for each step and what actions they must accomplish. Based on METT-TC, the commander may tailor stations to meet the situation. Stations 1 through 4 are in the receiving line, and Stations 5 through 9 are in the processing line.

## RECEIVING AREA

5-28 When CIs arrive at the facility—

- Segregate them from those who arrived earlier and those who are partially processed
- Ensure that a valid internment order was issued and accompanies each CI
- Verify that receipts for each CI and his equipment match the CI's control number
- Secure personal property in a temporary storage area until CIs are fully processed. Issue a DA Form 4137 for temporarily and permanently stored property. Do not allow CIs access to storage areas.
- Ensure that CIs receive food, water, access to sanitation facilities and, if needed, first aid
- Escort CIs to the processing area as soon as the receiving process is complete
- Hold CIs in the receiving area until they can be processed

Table 5-1. Processing Actions at the CI Processing Area

Station	Purpose	Responsible Individuals*	Actions
<b>Receiving Line</b>			
1	Search	MP	<p>Assign ISNs</p> <p>Follow accountability procedures</p> <p>Escort CIs and their property</p> <p>Conduct a same-gender search of CIs before entering the processing area unless prohibited by conditions <b>NOTE Upon initial apprehension, a mixed-gender search can be conducted, but it is discouraged due to possible negative repercussions The same-gender search restrictions are based on the detainee being officially adjudicated and declared a CI</b></p> <p>Remove and examine property, place it in a container or a tray, mark it with a control number, and take it to a temporary storage area Issue a DA Form 4137 for stored property</p> <p>Supervise the movement of CIs to the next station</p>
2	Personal hygiene	MP	<p>Allow CIs to shower, shave, and get haircuts</p> <p>Allow CIs access to sanitation facilities</p> <p>Supervise the movement of CIs to the next station</p>
3	Medical evaluation	Medical officer and MP	<p>Examine CIs for signs of illness or injury to discover health problems that may require medical treatment or evacuation</p> <p>Provide medical and dental care according to AR 40-3</p> <p>Give initial radioscopic chest examinations to look for active diseases</p> <p>Perform a TB skin test on children up to 14 years of age</p> <p>Weigh CIs and establish a weight register</p> <p>Immunize and reimmunize CIs as prescribed by TO policy</p> <p>Place control numbers on medical records to reduce linguist support (Names, service numbers, and ISNs are entered at Station 1 with the aid of an interpreter )</p> <p>Disinfect CIs as prescribed by TO policy</p> <p>Annotate medical records with the date and place of inspection, immunization, and disinfection</p> <p>Supervise the movement of CIs to the next station</p>
4	Personal items	MP	<p>Issue personal-comfort items (toilet paper, soap, toothbrush, and toothpaste)</p> <p>Ensure that clothing is marked "CI" <b>NOTE. The CIs must provide their own clothing and footwear.</b></p> <p>Escort CIs to the processing area (Station 5)</p>
*The number of people used to perform tasks depends on the number of CIs and the amount of time available			

Table 5-1 Processing Actions at the CI Processing Area (continued)

Station	Purpose	Responsible Individuals*	Actions
<b>Processing Line</b>			
5	Administrative accountability	Processing clerk (assisted by an interpreter, MI, or others) and MP	<p>Verify the internment order and the authentication, including the signature</p> <p>Assign ISNs to CIs. Note the temporary control numbers that ISNs are replacing so that late-arriving property can be matched to its owner</p> <p>Initiate personnel records (DA Form 4237-R), ID documents (DA Form 2677-R), and property receipts</p> <p>Prepare forms and records to maintain the accountability of CIs, their families, and their property (see STANAGs 2033, 2044, and 2084)</p> <p>Supervise the movement of CIs to the next station</p>
6	Photography and fingerprinting	MP	<p>Fingerprint CIs. Identify and record the information on fingerprint cards (DA Form 2663-R)</p> <p>Take two photographs (with instant film or digital technology). Have captives look straight ahead, and fill the frame with their face</p> <p>Use photograph name boards (black background with white characters). List ISNs and names (translated into English) at the bottom center</p> <p>Attach one photograph to the CI's personnel record</p> <p>Give a completed, laminated ID card (which contains the second photograph) to the CI</p> <p>Supervise the movement of CIs to the next station</p>
7	Personal property	MP	<p>Inventory and record property (in the presence of CIs) brought from temporary storage areas</p> <p>Make separate lists for returned, stored, impounded, and confiscated property. List property to be returned to CIs or stored during internment on a separate list</p> <p>Update DA Form 4137, or provide the CI with a new one</p> <p>Supervise the movement of CIs to the next station</p>
8	Records review	MP	<p>Review processed records for completeness and accuracy</p> <p>Escort CIs back to processing stations to correct errors if necessary</p> <p>Allow CIs to prepare DA Form 2678-R. If CIs are unable to write their own cards, have someone authorized by the commander to do it for them</p> <p>Prepare and maintain an accountability roster of all internees</p>
9	Movement to living area	MP	<p>Brief CIs on facility rules and regulations</p> <p>Escort CIs to their new living areas</p>
*The number of people used to perform tasks depends on the number of CIs and the amount of time available			

5-29 A medical officer—

- Examines CIs upon arrival at the facility and monthly thereafter
- Determines medical fitness, state of health, nutrition, and cleanliness
- Checks for communicable diseases (vermin infestations, TB, malaria, sexually transmitted diseases [STDs], and HIV), and isolates CIs with communicable diseases
- Records weight on DA Form 2664-R. This process monitors abrupt changes in weight that may affect health

**NOTE:** When possible, use qualified CI personnel for the medical and hygiene work necessary for the well-being of CIs.

## PROCESSING AREA

5-30 After CIs have completed the receiving portion of their processing, move them to the processing area where they are formally processed into the internment facility. They are entered into the IRIS database, and the IRIC forwards the information to the national IRIC for dissemination to protecting powers. The processing element—

- Keeps CIs segregated as much as possible during processing
- Conducts administrative processing
- Expedites the processing of CIs (suspected spies and saboteurs) selected by MI teams for interrogation
- Assigns each CI an ISN
- Replaces the control number on each CI's wrist with the ISN

## FLOW OF INFORMATION

5-31 Regard the information collected from CIs as sensitive to protect them and the soldiers who are guarding them. If belligerent nations discover how many internees are in a facility or discover the location of a facility, it may be targeted to silence the sources of information. Maintain proper security throughout the information flow, and disseminate information through proper channels. The IRIC acts as a hub for information that CHAs and I/R facilities produce. Report personnel records electronically on the IRIS or, if necessary, as a paper file.

5-32 The information flow begins when the prisoner is captured and a DD Form 2745 is initiated. The ISN, which is assigned upon arrival at a CHA or an I/R facility, is the key to tracking CIs throughout the I/R system.

5-33 A CI was initially processed as an EPW (see Chapter 4), and the information gleaned during that process is used to process him as a CI. Once an individual is adjudicated by a military tribunal as a CI, specific information must be electronically entered on DA Forms 2674-R and 4237-R.

- **DA Form 2674-R** Enter the following information in Section B
  - The first and last names of the CI and his dependent children who are given compassionate internment
  - The ISN. Assign an ISN if the individual does not have one (Dependent children are not assigned an ISN)
  - The grade, the civilian capacity, and/or the title

- The sex of the CI and his dependent children
- The nationality This is the name of the country that the CI claims for citizenship
- The occupational skill
- The name of the person who approved the internment order, the headquarters, and the date
- **DA Form 4237-R** Prepare a DA Form 4237-R for each protected civilian processed in an occupied territory as a CI or a dependent child Enter all available pertinent information and information that the CI is willing to give Note information that the CI is unable or unwilling to give

5-34 Information collected during processing (initial and full) and entered into the IRIS (CHA or I/R facility) is sent to the IRIC The IRIC collects the entire personnel file (it is normally electronic with a hard-copy backup) The I/R facility reports the information to the IRIC, who disseminates it as appropriate The strength report (DA Form 2674-R) is the only information passed up the I/R facility's chain of command Information also flows to the ICRC, the state department, and other federal agencies as required Questions regarding the information or internee flow in the TO are directed to the IRIC

## CONTROL AND DISCIPLINE

5-35 Treat all CIs fairly Ensure that directions are reasonable, capable of being obeyed, and given in an understood language Promptly report refusals and failures to obey facility rules through the chain of command

## CONTROL

5-36 The MP maintain control of CIs and efficiently administer internment facilities This includes reducing waste and avoiding duplication of effort Facility personnel quickly and fairly establish and maintain discipline For example, they—

- Observe rigorous self-discipline
- Maintain a professional, impersonal attitude
- Follow the guidelines established in the ROI and the ROE
- Cope with hostile or unruly behavior or incidents calmly
- Take fair, immediate, and decisive action

5-37 Guards take positive action to establish daily and periodic routines and responses that are conducive to good discipline and control They—

- Enforce policies and procedures
- Give reasonable, decisive orders in a language that CIs understand
- Post copies of the Geneva and UN Conventions in a language that CIs understand and ensure that copies are easily accessed The internee committee provides copies to CIs who do not have access to posted copies
- Post rules, regulations, instructions, notices, orders, and announcements that CIs are expected to obey They ensure that the

information is easily accessed and is in a language that CIs understand. The internee committee provides copies to CIs who do not have access to posted copies.

- Ensure that CIs obey orders, rules, and directives
- Report refusals and failures to obey orders and regulations

**NOTE: Per AR 190-8, single CI females are directly supervised or guarded by female personnel. A parent with children, if single or interned without a spouse, is provided quarters that are separate from those for single persons.**

5-38 The CIs can be searched for security purposes, but only same-gender searches are allowed. A strip search can be conducted to recover contraband and to report injuries and signs of drug use.

5-39 To protect CIs from violence, bodily injury, and threats of reprisal at the hand of fellow internees, post a notice of protection (Figure 5-1) in every compound. Ensure that the notice is posted in a language that internees understand.

<b>NOTICE</b>
<p>An internee (regardless of faith or political belief) who fears that his life is in danger or that he may suffer physical injury at the hands of another internee, should immediately report the fact to a US Army officer of this facility without consulting the internee committee. The facility commander provides adequate protection to the internee (such as segregation or transfer). An internee who mistreats a fellow internee will be punished.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">(Signed by the Commanding Officer)</p>

**Figure 5-1 Sample Notice of Protection**

## DISCIPLINE

5-40 Maintain and enforce discipline and security, and deal with offensive acts promptly. Maintain a record of disciplinary actions, which may be inspected by protecting powers. The internee committee does not have disciplinary power over and cannot administer punishment to fellow internees. The following actions are not permitted between CIs and US military or civilian personnel:

- Fraternization
- Donation or receipt of gifts
- Engagement in commercial activity

5-41 The facility commander is authorized to order disciplinary punishment for a CI under the provisions of AR 190-8 and the Geneva Conventions. Before imposing disciplinary punishment, provide an interpreter if necessary and—

- Provide the CI with precise information regarding the offense
- Give the CI an opportunity to defend the allegation
- Permit the CI to call witnesses

5-42 The following disciplinary actions are authorized:



- Discontinuance of privileges that are beyond those granted by AR 190-8 and the Geneva Conventions
- Confinement
- A fine (not to exceed one-half of the wages received during a 30-day period)
- Extra fatigue duty to maintain the internment facility (not to exceed 2 hours per day)

5-43 The duration of a single disciplinary punishment will not exceed 30 consecutive days—even if the CI is answerable for several breaches of discipline (related or not) at the time punishment is imposed. The period lapsing between pronouncing the disciplinary punishment and completing its execution will not exceed 30 days. After a disciplinary action has been executed, another disciplinary action cannot be imposed on the same CI until 3 days has lapsed between the execution of any two punishments, if the duration of one of the two punishments is 10 days or more.

## CONFINEMENT

5-44 A CI accused of an offense for which disciplinary punishment is contemplated will not be confined unless it is essential to facility order and discipline. If a CI does spend time in confinement awaiting a hearing, it will not exceed 14 days and it will be deducted from his sentence.

5-45 A CI who is subject to confinement serves the time in a facility stockade. Females and males are confined in separate quarters, and females are supervised by females. While undergoing confinement for pretrial, for posttrial, or in connection with disciplinary or judicial proceedings, a CI is—

- Allowed to exercise and stay in the open air at least 2 hours a day
- Allowed to attend daily sick call, receive medical attention and, if necessary, be transferred to a hospital
- Given enough food to maintain health
- Permitted to confer with visiting representatives of the protecting powers and the ICRC
- Permitted to receive spiritual assistance
- Treated with proper regard
- Provided hygienic living conditions
- Provided adequate bedding, supplies, and facilities necessary for personal cleanliness
- Allowed to send and receive letters, cards, and telegrams (Parcels and remittance of money can be withheld from a CI until his punishment is complete.)

## INTERNEE COMMITTEE

5-46 One of the best ways to ensure cooperation within a facility is to establish a form of self-government. This minimizes the impression that CIs are prisoners under the control of a foreign government and allows them to feel a sense of control over their lives. The internee committee represents the local CI population to the detaining power, protecting powers, the ICRC, and

other authorized relief and aid organizations. The committee's communications with these organizations are unlimited.

5-47 The internee committee has two or three elected members, and each member can have an assistant who acts as an interpreter. The facility commander approves each elected member and assistant. Members are elected by secret ballot every 6 months, and they can be elected to more than one term. When the commander disapproves an election, it is submitted in writing and states the reason for disapproval. He forwards the disapproval through channels to the IRIC, who forwards it to the national IRIC and protecting powers.

5-48 Duties of a internee committee include—

- Furthering spiritual, physical, and intellectual well-being
- Being responsible for and having jurisdiction over mutual assistance organizations set up by CIs
- Visiting outside labor details
- Checking the management of the canteen and the canteen fund
- Presenting and transmitting petitions and complaints to appropriate authorities
- Distributing and disposing of collective relief shipments
- Receiving briefings about ongoing and final judicial proceedings

## CORRESPONDENCE

5-49 The correspondence system for CIs parallels that for EPWs (Chapter 4). The exceptions are that DA Form 2679-R is used for letters and DA Form 2680-R is used for postcards.

## COMPLAINTS AND REQUESTS

5-50 A CI can make a complaint or a request to the facility commander, who tries to resolve the issue. If the CI is not satisfied with the resolution, he may address it to HQDA. A CI can make a complaint by mail, in person to a visiting representative of protecting powers, or through the internee committee.

## MEDICAL TREATMENT

5-51 Provide personnel, material, and facilities for routine and emergency medical treatment. Ideally, transfer patients requiring inpatient care to a civilian hospital. If a civilian hospital is unavailable or if its use is infeasible due to security considerations, transfer patients to a US military hospital. Ensure that the treatment they receive is as good as that provided for the general population, and provide guards as necessary.

## SANITATION

5-52 Proper sanitation and cleanliness of a facility prevents the spread of disease among the CI population and the US forces guarding them. The facility commander—

- Conducts periodic, detailed sanitary inspections
- Publishes a detailed sanitary order in a language that CIs understand and posts it in each compound
- Provides sanitary supplies, services, and facilities necessary for personal cleanliness and sanitation
- Ensures that—
  - Hygiene and sanitation measures conform to AR 40-5 and related regulations
  - Latrines are available 24 hours a day
  - Separate showers and latrines are available for males and females
  - Adequate space is allocated to prevent overcrowding within housing units, while maintaining proper segregation and family integrity
  - Good food sanitation and personal hygiene is observed by food service personnel
  - Waste is disposed of properly
  - Sufficient potable water is available for drinking, bathing, doing laundry, and preparing food
  - Materials are available for personal hygiene, including products for female hygiene and infant care

## TRANSFER

- 5-53 The CIs may be transferred, subject to the following conditions
- They cannot be transferred outside the borders of the occupied country where they are interned, except when material reasons prevent displacement
  - They will be transferred if they are exposed to greater risk by remaining at the facility if the CZ moves closer to the location
  - Sick, wounded, infirmed, or maternity cases are not transferred if the transfer would be detrimental to their health
- 5-54 The facility commander—
- Informs CIs of their impending transfer and new postal address so that they have enough time to pack and notify NOK
  - Verifies the accuracy and completeness of personnel records and provides records (in a sealed envelope) to escort guards
  - Verifies that CIs have authorized clothing and equipment
  - Prepares impounded personal effects and property for forwarding with escort guards or by separate shipment as appropriate
  - Instructs escort guards on their duties and responsibilities, including procedures to be followed in case of an attack, an escape, a death, or another emergency
  - Provides or arranges for rations, transportation, and notifications according to prescribed procedures
  - Ensures that CIs are manifested by name, ISN or ID number, nationality, and physical condition

- Notifies the IRIC and the national IRIC of CI transfers immediately
- 5-55 The transfer of personal effects and property parallels that of EPWs (Chapter 4), except—
- Belongings that exceed the 55-pound limit are shipped separately
  - Parcels and mail are forwarded to the new facility
  - Items donated by welfare agencies and items used in religious services are forwarded as community property

## RELEASE

5-56 A CI can be released to a representative of his country of residence or a designated protecting power if control and accountability are maintained. He can be released after hostilities cease (subject to pending judicial proceedings) if the reasons for his internment no longer exist as determined by the TO commander. A CI who is eligible for release but has judicial proceedings pending for offenses not exclusively subject to disciplinary punishment is detained until the close of proceedings. The TO commander may decide that a CI must serve his penalty before being released, and a CI already serving a penalty may be similarly detained. Rosters of detained CIs are forwarded to the IRIC and the national IRIC for transmittal to protecting powers.

## SOCIAL PROGRAMS

5-57 The commander coordinates social programs. He provides premises and facilities for these activities and procures needed materials and supplies through normal supply channels. The CIs are encouraged to participate, but they are not required to do so.

5-58 Carefully selected and qualified civilian nationals and CIs (supervised by US military personnel) can be used to guide social activities. The selected individuals will not introduce political overtones or further enemy propaganda objectives while conducting these activities.

## EDUCATION

5-59 Encourage and support an active, intellectual education program for CIs. Coordinate adequate facilities and instruction material through local agencies. Consider the following when developing an education program:

- Levels of education throughout the CI population
- Basic courses of education, including—
  - Reading
  - Writing
  - Geography
  - Mathematics
  - Language
  - Literature
  - History
  - Music
  - Art

- The education of dependents who reside with their CI parents
- Vocational training to develop skills that may be useful during internment

## RELIGION

5-60 Allow CIs the freedom of worship, including attendance at services of their faith held within the internment facility. Permit chaplains and other clergy to minister freely to those who request their help. The facility commander may permit ordained clergy or theological students to conduct services.

## VISITS

5-61 Permit close relatives and other persons authorized by the TO commander to visit CIs according to TO regulations. All visitors are subject to security precautions. Under emergency conditions and subject to the TO commander's policy, a CI may visit a close relative who is seriously or terminally ill and may attend the funeral of a close relative.

5-62 Allow accredited representatives of protecting powers and the ICRC full access to the internment facility and the internees. Per DA policies and procedures, permit visits of approved religious organizations, relief societies, NGOs, IOs, IHOs, and other organizations who assist housed personnel. Organizations who want access to internees should coordinate visits in advance to avoid confusion upon arrival at the facility. The facility staff establishes an access roster of representatives and develops a method to verify their identity.

## RECREATION

5-63 Encourage and support active participation in recreation activities to promote general health and welfare and to alleviate tension and boredom. In addition, provide athletic contests and group entertainment (concerts, plays, music, and motion pictures). Provide playgrounds for dependent children of CIs.

## AGRICULTURE

5-64 When practical, CIs should raise vegetables to supplement their diet. Do not overlook the importance of developing an agriculture program. Gardening projects are particularly desirable because they provide gainful employment for large numbers of individuals. The food produced is used for the benefit of the CI population, and it provides a valuable supplement to diets at minimal expense.

5-65 Procure the types and quantities of agriculture supplies required (seeds, fertilizers, and implements) through local purchase. Ensure that the supplies are procured in a timely manner.

## EMPLOYMENT

5-66 The TO commander may issue instructions governing the employment and compensation of CIs for labor. The CIs can be employed to construct,

administer, manage, and maintain the facility, and they are compensated according to DFAS-IN 37-1. The CIs are required to work if the labor is consistent with their age and physical condition. Their fitness for work is determined in the same manner as EPWs (Chapter 4). The CIs cannot be compelled to work if they are under the age of 18. They can be compelled to perform the following types of work and may volunteer to perform other types of work:

- Administrative, maintenance, and domestic work within the compound
- Duties relative to protecting CIs against aerial attack or other war risks
- Medical duties if they are professionally and technically qualified

## SECURITY

5-67 The facility commander is responsible for security measures that effectively control CIs with minimal use of force. The physical construction of the facility and the presence of guard personnel (Chapter 2) constitute the most obvious means of providing security. Maintaining a high state of discipline, a system of routines, and required standards of behavior enhance effective security and control.

5-68 Most CIs actively cooperate with US internment facility authorities or assume a passive, compliant role. Cooperative CIs are composed, in part, of individuals with ideologies favorable to the US. Others, through resignation or apathy, will simply adapt themselves to the conditions of their internment.

5-69 Some CIs will engage in a campaign of embarrassing and harassing US personnel to create propaganda of value to their cause that would have negative ramifications on the US. The leaders of the uncooperative faction may try to establish a united effort and blind obedience by all its members. Any relaxation of security is immediately detected and fully exploited.

## ADVERSE ACTIONS

5-70 Dissident actions by CIs vary from acts of harassment to acts of violence. Such actions may include—

- Sabotaging equipment or facilities
- Assaulting other CIs or custodial personnel
- Taking hostages to secure concessions
- Intimidating other CIs
- Fabricating weapons or other illegal items
- Creating embarrassing situations or making false accusations to influence international inspection teams or members of protecting powers
- Instigating disturbances or riots to place the facility staff in unfavorable positions (this allows CIs to gain concessions and influence custodial policies)

5-71 Paramilitary forces may—

- Establish communications with internees by using agents, smuggled radios, or foreign-language newspapers
- Order members of its armed forces to infiltrate the facility and become agitators

## PLANNING

5-72 Ensure that security planning is continuous and complete and that it reflects current intelligence information on CIs. Implement an immediate-response plan that is capable of meeting all internal and external threats to security. Security planning for a CI compound is similar to that for an EPW compound (Chapter 4). (See Chapter 2 for more information on security planning.)

## RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

5-73 The CINC establishes the ROE in coordination with the SJA and the joint staff. Special ROE can be developed for use in I/R facilities, but they must have CINC approval.

## MILITARY WORKING DOGS

5-74 The MWDs enhance the security and safety of an I/R facility. They can be used for patrolling and detecting explosives and narcotics. (See Chapter 2 and AR 190-12 for more information.)

## DISTURBANCES

5-75 Disturbances within the compound may range from riots to less violent disorders, and they can be organized or unorganized. (See Chapter 3 and Appendix B for more information.)

## FACILITY MARKINGS

5-76 When military considerations permit, mark CI facilities with the letters "CI." Place the letters so that they are clearly visible in the daytime from the air.

## Chapter 6

# Internment/Resettlement Facilities

The TO commander is responsible for EPW/CI operations, and he provides engineer and logistical support for the MP commander to establish and maintain I/R facilities. Facility construction is included in the planning phase of an operation, and MP leaders take part in the planning process. Planning, coordinating, and establishing facilities begins during the build-up phase of an operation. Each facility provides appropriate segregation, accountability, security, and support of internees. An I/R facility is semipermanent in nature and normally consists of one to eight compounds, each capable of interning 500 people. (Appendix D provides a synopsis of the various MP I/R units that may be assigned to a TO.)

### PLANNING

6-1 Planning for the construction of I/R facilities must be projected into the future. This provides timely notification of engineers, selection and development of facility sites, and procurement of construction materials.

### LOCATION

6-2 The MP coordinate the location with engineers, logistical units, higher headquarters, and the HN. The failure to properly consider and correctly evaluate all factors may increase the logistical and personnel efforts required to support operations. If an I/R facility is improperly located, the entire internee population may require movement when resources are scarce. When selecting a site for an facility, consider the following:

- Will the interned population pose a serious threat to logistical operations if the tactical situation becomes critical?
- Is there a threat of guerrilla activity in the area?
- What is the attitude of the local population?
- What classification of internees will be housed at the site?
- What type of terrain surrounds the site, and will it help or hinder escapes?
- What is the distance from the MSR to the source of logistical support?
- What transportation methods are required and available to move internees, supplies, and equipment?

6-3 In addition, consider the—

- METT-TC
- Proximity to probable target areas
- Availability of suitable existing facilities (avoids unnecessary construction)



- Anger management
- Stress management
- Adjunct therapy (such as Alcoholics Anonymous [AA] and Narcotics Anonymous [NA])
- The impact of crimes on victims
- Other programs consistent with staffing, professional support, and prisoner needs

7-40 The RCF primarily relies on counseling/treatment programs available to all soldiers. Installations unable to provide basic regional counseling services request a waiver from HQDA (DAMO-ODL)

7-41 The counseling program in a correctional facility has two goals

- Help prisoners set realistic goals and adjust to the confinement environment
- Help prisoners gain problem-solving techniques and develop acceptable behavior

7-42 The facility commander can choose counselors from assigned cadre. When possible, he selects experienced, mature NCOs who do not have a corrections background. He ensures that counselors are oriented to the missions, objectives, and operational procedures of the facility before they begin their counseling duties. Counselors must understand and be able to apply certain principles and concepts of human behavior and social values. They—

- Believe in the dignity and worth of an individual
- Recognize that individuals are different
- Understand that all behavior has meaning
- Understand that individuals are the result of their environment and life experiences
- Understand that attitude and behavior are related
- Understand that there are always reasons or causes for changes in behavior
- Believe that people have the capacity to change
- Believe that people have a right to participate in decisions affecting their welfare
- Understand that judging individuals in terms of right and wrong is not within their purview
- Are objective and unbiased
- Are alert for situations that exceed their capabilities and responsibilities and if necessary, refer the prisoner for specialized counseling or problem solving

7-43 Staff members identify and report prisoners who are—

- Escape-minded
- Dangerous
- Alcoholic
- Drug-addicted
- Sexually deviant

- Suicidal
- Emotionally disturbed (refer prisoners to mental health for evaluation)

7-44 Continuity is essential to a successful counseling program. Ideally, a counselor is assigned to a prisoner and continues to work with him throughout his confinement. The counselor makes contact with the prisoner within 48 hours of his inprocessing. The counselor completes necessary records (journal and worksheet) and initiates a follow-up plan. He maintains a case file on each prisoner that contains a record of counseling sessions, a personal-data sheet, observation reports, or other correspondence. High prisoner morale and the lack of disciplinary problems reflect a successful counseling program. The final test is a prisoner's satisfactory adjustment on his return to society. (See FMs 8-51 and 22-100 for more information on counseling.)

## EMPLOYMENT AND EDUCATION

7-45 Prisoners can be employed in tasks that benefit them and meet the needs of the facility. Education activities take priority over work projects. The USDB employment and education programs are key correctional tools for preparing prisoners to return to civilian life. The programs provide prisoners with marketable skills and self-confidence, and they teach the value of self-discipline. Job training opportunities range from unskilled, manual labor to highly skilled trades.

7-46 Close coordination between the facility commander and the garrison commander or his equivalent is maintained to establish worthwhile work projects for prisoners. The facility commander approves work projects and the assignment of prisoners to work projects. The employment section determines the best type of employment for each prisoner. The needs of the facility are considered along with the prisoner's—

- Education
- Aptitude and achievement scores
- MOS
- Attitude and interests

## RECREATION

7-47 Nonduty activities fill gaps between work and education activities and take up idle time that might otherwise be used for undesirable activities. Encourage prisoners to develop nonduty time interests, and when possible, set up a program to guide and direct nonduty activities. A prisoner's involvement in nonduty activities indicates that he is adjusting to confinement. Note and report soldiers who are not participating in nonduty activities.

7-48 Ensure that prisoners have access to a library and recreation facilities. Based on the commander's approval, prisoner recreation programs may include sporting events, hobbies, motion pictures, videotapes, and religious activities. Encourage prisoners to further their academic education by taking part in the facility's education program or through self-study courses offered by the Army Correspondence Course Program (ACCP).

## COMPENSATION, CLEMENCY, AND PAROLE

7-49 Prisoners who respond well to correctional treatment can be rewarded in several ways. The severity of their sentences may be lessened, their sentences may be reduced, or they may be granted greater freedom and more privileges. These rewards help maintain morale, discipline, and welfare.

### COMPENSATION

7-50 An inmate who is serving a sentence to confinement (other than a life sentence) can earn time off the sentence term by taking part in selected activities for which extra good-conduct time (EGCT) is authorized. The EGCT is an additional incentive to prisoners who demonstrate excellence in work, education, or vocation. It is awarded at the rate shown in Table 7-1. Only those prisoners who demonstrate ability, initiative, and productivity and meet the eligibility criteria for their assigned duties are recommended for EGCT.

Table 7-1. Rates for EGCT

Level	Description	EGCT
1	Prisoners continuously employed 1 to 5 months	1 day per month
2	Prisoners continuously employed 6 to 10 months	2 days per month
3	Prisoners continuously employed 11 to 15 months	3 days per month
4	Prisoners continuously employed 16 to 20 months	4 days per month
5	Prisoners continuously employed 21 to 25 months	5 days per month
6	Prisoners serving as assistant instructors or supervisor assistants (following attainment of Level 5) <sup>1</sup>	6 days per month
7	Trustees who have maintained Level 6 for 6 months <sup>2</sup>	7 days per month

<sup>1</sup>A prisoner (including a trustee) who loses his position as an assistant instructor or a supervisor assistant is reduced to Level 5 or the earning level held prior to elevation, whichever is less.

<sup>2</sup>The Level 7 increase is removed if a prisoner is removed from trustee status. He is reduced to Level 6 or the earning level held prior to elevation, whichever is less.

7-51 Additional EGCT can be authorized for participation in community service programs and special projects that support institutional goals or missions. It is awarded in a lump sum and does not exceed 3 days for any event or 5 days in any month.

### CLEMENCY

7-52 Clemency modifies the severity of a court-martial sentence and can be achieved through mitigation, suspension, or remission as follows. The facility commander makes recommendations concerning each prisoner's sentence if he has responded in a positive manner to correctional programs.

- **Mitigation** Mitigation lessens the severity of a sentence.
- **Suspension** Suspension is the granting of a probationary period that results in remission if it is completed successfully.
- **Remission** Remission cancels the unexecuted part of a sentence to which the remission applies.

## PAROLE

7-53 A parole is based on conduct during confinement or on special circumstances. There are three types of paroles that a prisoner may be awarded—a parole, a temporary home parole (THP), and an emergency home parole (EHP).

- **Parole** A parole serves as a transition between the strict supervision of confinement and the conditions most likely to ensure a prisoner's earliest assumption of responsibilities as a productive, law-abiding citizen.
- **THP** A THP is a temporary release from confinement granted to strengthen family relationships, and it provides incentive and reinforcement to positive behavior and morale.
- **EHP** An EHP is a temporary release from confinement due to an emergency, such as the death or critical illness of an immediate family member or a disaster.

7-54 The facility commander notifies victims and witnesses who are identified in the prisoner's correctional-treatment file (CTF) that a prisoner is being released from confinement (see AR 190-47, DOD Directive 1030 1, and DOD Instruction 1030 2). Notify victims and witnesses by the most direct means practicable before releasing a prisoner on THP or EHP. This allows the victim or witness the opportunity to respond, favorably or negatively, to the proposed release.

## CLEMENCY AND PAROLE BOARD

7-55 The facility commander appoints a permanent board that consists of at least three voting members (one officer and two enlisted). He may also assign nonvoting members to the board. The board considers factors involved in a prisoner's request for clemency or parole and recommends acceptance or rejection of the request to the Army Clemency and Parole Board.

## CORRECTIONAL STAFF

7-56 The ACS correctional staff consists of dedicated professionals who serve as positive role models for prisoners. Staff members include corrections NCOs and specialists (MP who have entered the corrections career program and received resident training in MOS 95C at the US Army Military Police School). Due to their close contact with prisoners, corrections NCOs and specialists must be firm, fair, and decisive. Their behavior and attitude form an integral part of the correctional-treatment process. Support personnel are experts in areas other than corrections, but their expertise plays an important role in the facility.

## CORRECTIONAL-SUPERVISION BRANCH

7-57 The chief, correctional-supervision branch (CSB) (senior corrections NCO)—

- Assists in the custodial operations of the facility
- Supervises correctional and custodial personnel within the facility

- Informs the facility commander of matters that affect the custody, control, and security of the facility
- Ensures that rules, regulations, and SOPs are followed and enforced

### **Guard Commander**

7-58 The guard commander—

- Supervises custodial personnel
- Is responsible for prisoner activities during his tour of duty
- Monitors custody, control, and security measures
- Ensures compliance with the schedule of calls
- Initiates emergency control measures
- Maintains the facility blotter
- Deals with situations involving prisoner admission in the absence of the chief, CSB, and the chief, prisoner services branch (PSB)

### **Prisoner Control Team**

7-59 The prisoner control team NCOIC performs many of the same duties in an I/R battalion module as in a garrison confinement facility. This specialized environment requires the same corrections background to respond to behavioral incidents requiring calm, decisive action. During I/R operations, the NCOIC is responsible for—

- Security
- Accountability
- Intelligence. Intelligence is information obtained through observation and reports submitted by guards who are in daily contact with prisoners. The best source of intelligence gathering for the CSB is the guard force.
- The guard force. There are two types of orders for the guard force—general and special. General orders apply to all guards, and special orders apply to particular posts and duties.
- Escape prevention. The MWDs can be used to track an escapee, but they cannot be used to apprehend him.

### **Cellblock Guards**

7-60 Cellblock guards—

- Maintain custody, control, and discipline of prisoners under their supervision
- Supervise all activities according to the schedule of calls
- Supervise the response to emergency action plans
- Conduct periodic inspections, searches, head counts, roll calls, and bed checks

### **Close-Confinement Guards**

7-61 Close-confinement guards—

- Maintain custody and control of prisoners who are segregated from the general population due to inprocessing or administrative or disciplinary reasons
- Accomplish activities within the schedule of calls, as applicable to the close-confinement area
- Conduct 30-minute checks (or 15-minute checks for special-status prisoners) when a DD Form 509 is required
- Ensure that all required signatures on DD Form 509 are obtained on a daily basis

### **Dining-Facility Guards**

#### **7-62 Dining-facility guards—**

- Maintain custody and control of prisoners during mealtime
- Ensure that the dining-facility traffic plan is followed
- Prevent congestion at condiment and juice areas
- Account for silverware before and after a meal
- Search prisoners before they leave the dining facility

### **Employment Detail Guards**

#### **7-63 Employment detail guards—**

- Maintain custody, control, and supervision of prisoners while on details
- Ensure that work details are accomplished and safety precautions are observed
- Maintain strict accountability of equipment and tools
- Assist with frisks and strip searches of prisoners returning from details
- Account for prisoners on details according to the schedule of calls
- Track prisoners' locations at all times while on details

### **Escort and Absent-Without-Leave Apprehension Guards**

#### **7-64 Escort and absent-without-leave (AWOL) apprehension guards—**

- Maintain custody and control of prisoners while moving them to and from designated places
- May be armed with a pistol if required and authorized by the facility commander
- Are qualified with a pistol and trained in the use of force and the ROE
- Are trained in firearms safety procedures necessary to transport prisoners by land, air, and sea

### **Main Gate and Sally Port Guards**

#### **7-65 Main gate and sally port guards—**

- Maintain custody and control of prisoners
- Ensure that only authorized persons enter the facility
- Inspect vehicles entering and exiting the facility

- Inspect packages
- Conduct inventories of items entering and exiting the facility
- Require noncustodial personnel to register on sign-in logs

### **Visitor Room Guards**

#### **7-66 Visitor room guards—**

- Maintain custody and control of prisoners during visits by family members and other authorized persons
- Detect violations of rules and regulations, improper behavior, and contraband
- Position themselves in inconspicuous places and observe conversations rather than listening to them
- Identify and report infractions, which may be grounds for terminating visits

### **Hospital Guards**

#### **7-67 Hospital guards—**

- Maintain custody and control of prisoners while escorting them to and from medical appointments and during hospitalization
- Ensure that rooms are clear of contraband
- Prevent unauthorized communications

### **Tower Guards**

#### **7-68 Tower guards—**

- Maintain custody and control by observing specific sectors of the perimeter
- Are briefed on the use of force and are familiar with a 12-gauge shotgun
- Ensure that contraband is not passed through the fence
- Provide protection for compound guards

## **TRAINING**

#### **7-69 Personnel assigned to a confinement facility are oriented and trained in the procedures of custody and control. The formal training program includes—**

- Supervisory and interpersonal communications skills
- Self-defense techniques
- Use of force (priorities of force)
- Weapons qualification (see DA Pam 350-38)
- First aid
- Emergency action plans
- Facility regulations
- Riot control techniques

## **SUPPORT PERSONNEL**

7-70 Support personnel in a confinement facility include chaplains, medical personnel, the SJA, and the IG. They perform the same functions as support personnel in a garrison.

## **PRISONER SERVICES BRANCH**

7-71 The chief, PSB—

- Supervises the administrative concerns of the facility
- Maintains records and forms
- Computes sentences
- Manages property and funds
- Processes prisoners for transfer or release
- Monitors admissions, services, THPs, EHPs, and the victim/witness program
- Advises the facility commander of administrative concerns involving prisoners

7-72 Some administrative procedures at ACS facilities are unique to confinement and corrections operations. Key procedures include inprocessing prisoners, maintaining records and forms, computing sentences, managing property and fund accounts, and transferring and releasing prisoners. In addition to ensuring the day-to-day functioning of facilities, these procedures have a direct impact on prisoner discipline and morale. A prisoner's first contact with the facility staff is during admissions processing, when he is briefed on the facility rules and his legal rights.

## **ADMISSION PROCEDURES**

7-73 Prisoners begin their confinement by inprocessing. Segregate newly confined prisoners from the main prisoner population until they are processed according to the following guidelines:

- Check the DD Form 2707 for accuracy
- Search and segregate authorized and unauthorized property
- Strip-search each prisoner
- Issue appropriate health and comfort supplies to each prisoner, and complete DD Form 504
- Photograph and fingerprint each prisoner
- Complete individual prisoner forms
- Inform prisoners of their visitation rights
- Arrange for a medical officer to examine each prisoner within 24 hours of confinement, and complete DD Form 503

## **CORRECTIONAL-REPORTING SYSTEM**

7-74 The Correctional-Reporting System (CRS) is the primary means of information management within the ACS. (See AR 190-47 for more information.)



---

## REQUIRED REGULATIONS AND FORMS

7-75 Each facility must have a complete, current set of regulations covering correctional administration. The facility commander ensures that the facility is part of the publications distribution system. The following regulations and publications must be available:

- AR 15-130
- AR 190-14
- AR 190-47
- AR 210-174
- AR 633-30
- Misc Pub 27-7
- UCMJ

7-76 Confinement facilities use a variety of forms to maintain records and reports. The following forms must be available:

- DA Form 1124
- DA Form 1125-R
- DA Form 1128
- DA Form 1129-R
- DA Form 1130-R
- DA Form 1131-R
- DA Form 1132-R
- DA Form 1134-R
- DA Form 1135-R
- DA Form 3078
- DA Form 3955
- DA Form 3997
- DD Form 2 (ACT)
- DD Form 499
- DD Form 503
- DD Form 504
- DD Form 506
- DD Form 509
- DD Form 515
- DD Form 2707
- DD Form 2710
- DD Form 2718
- Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) Form FD-249

## CORRECTIONAL-TREATMENT FILE

7-77 Establish a CTF within the first 72 hours of confinement, and maintain it throughout the confinement period. (See AR 190-47 for more information.)

**SENTENCE COMPUTATION**

7-78 Compute sentences according to AR 633-30 and DOD Directive 1325 4 The facility commander ensures that selected corrections NCOs working in the PSB are properly trained to compute sentences Incorrect computations result in incorrect release dates and can violate a prisoner's legal rights The rate of earnings for good-conduct time is calculated based on the prisoner's length of confinement, including pretrial time (see Table 7-2)

**Table 7-2. Rates for Good-Conduct Time**

Length of Sentence	Good-Conduct Time
Less than 1 year	5 days for each month of the sentence
1 year to less than 3 years	6 days for each month of the sentence
3 years to less than 5 years	7 days for each month of the sentence
5 years to less than 10 years	8 days for each month of the sentence
10 years or more, excluding life	10 days for each month of the sentence
<b>NOTE</b> If the term of confinement is reduced or if an additional sentence increases the term of confinement, recompute the good-conduct time at the abatement appropriate to the new term of confinement	

**PERSONAL PROPERTY AND FUNDS**

7-79 Prisoners are permitted to place personal property in safekeeping if it is not authorized for retention by the facility commander Without an exception, the number of items stored cannot exceed the capacity of a 12- by 16-inch envelope Account for personal property and funds according to AR 210-174, and place the funds in the prisoners' deposit fund The facility commander appoints (in writing) a commissioned officer, a warrant officer, or a DA civilian as the custodian of the prisoners' property and funds The appointee must be bonded as outlined in AR 600-13

7-80 The custodian safeguards prisoners' property and funds in trust With few exceptions, any action involving property or funds requires the prisoner's authority and consent The exceptions to this rule are as follows

- The Internal Revenue Service (IRS) can levy a prisoner's personal deposit fund to satisfy delinquent federal income taxes
- Property that has evidentiary value is subject to impounding When the property is taken from a prisoner, disposition is made only by instructions received from a competent authority (See AR 190-22 for more information )
- Property of an escapee is disposed of according to DOD 4160 21-M

**PROCEDURES**

7-81 A system of internal controls is used to protect prisoners' property and funds, to ensure the accuracy of records, and to promote efficiency in operations The custodian and the correctional staff must ensure that prisoners are denied access to property and funds (their own and other prisoners') Staff members inventory the prisoners' property and list the items

on DA Form 1132-R (five copies) (See ARs 190-47 and 210-174 for detailed procedures)

7-82 Dispose of an escapee's or a deceased prisoner's personal property according to ARs 630-10 and 700-84. The facility commander or the installation commander appoints a disinterested officer to audit the prisoner's personal property. When the audit is complete, the officer signs a DA Form 1132-R in lieu of and for the prisoner.

7-83 A prisoner's sentence determines if and how much he is paid. Prisoners are not allowed to have money in their possession. All money received while in confinement is deposited in the prisoners' deposit fund, which is a trust fund. It contains the personal funds of all the prisoners in the facility. The fund's balance equals the total of the individual accounts on the ledger.

7-84 Take all money from each prisoner during processing. Deposit US currency and US government paychecks in his deposit fund. Prepare a DA Form 1124 (in triplicate) that lists all the money received for deposit, and issue a receipt for personal checks surrendered by the prisoner.

7-85 Deposit all cash receipts in the name of the fund, and make daily deposits when practical. Ensure that checks received by prisoners while in confinement are endorsed immediately for deposit to the fund, and promptly deposit the checks in the bank for collection.

7-86 When a prisoner is transferred from one confinement facility to another, transfer his personal deposit fund to the receiving facility. When a prisoner is released and his personal deposit fund is \$50 or less, pay the entire amount to him in cash. If the balance is more than \$50, issue the balance of his personal deposit fund in the form of a check.

#### **PETTY-CASH FUND**

7-87 The USDB commandant and the RCF commander are authorized to set up a petty-cash fund, which provides prisoners with cash to make minor purchases. The commandant or the commander determine each prisoner's contribution to the petty-cash fund, and the amount is drawn from each prisoner's personal deposit fund. The commandant or the commander sets the limit, in writing, on the amount of money in the petty-cash fund.

7-88 Expenditures from the petty-cash fund may not exceed \$50 for anyone authorized expenditures except when the prisoner is released from confinement. When a petty-cash disbursement is made to a prisoner, he submits a DA Form 1128 to the cashier of the petty-cash fund.

#### **MAIL AND CORRESPONDENCE**

7-89 The correctional staff keeps a record of each prisoner's mail, correspondence, and authorized correspondents on DD Form 499. They conduct inspections to control trafficking of contraband, money, and valuables. Incoming and outgoing mail is normally inspected but not read. However, it can be read, rejected, or censored if the facility commander has probable cause to believe that it contains plans for criminal activities or escapes, codes or plans for activities in violation of facility rules, requests for prohibited gifts or

money, or obscenity. If a prisoner's mail is being censored or rejected, notify him of the decision and provide the author of the letter a reasonable opportunity to appeal the decision. An official, other than the person who originally disapproved the correspondence, decides appeals, and the appellate official's decision is final. (See AR 190-47 for more information.)

7-90 Different rules apply to inspecting and reading privileged mail. Privileged mail can be opened and inspected to control contraband, money, and valuables and to verify authenticity, but it cannot be read. If a letter qualifies as privileged mail, it is usually delivered to the prisoner unopened. If privileged mail is opened, it must be opened in the presence of the prisoner and a commissioned officer, an NCO (E7 and above), or a civilian (GS7 and above). Privileged mail consists of correspondence between prisoners and—

- The President or his representative
- The Vice President or his representative
- A member of Congress or his representative
- The US Attorney General or his representative
- The Judge Advocate General or his representative
- The prisoner's defense counsel or an attorney of record
- A chaplain or a clergy when recommended by the installation chaplain

## SUPPORT PERSONNEL

7-91 Support personnel aid the correctional process in numerous areas as follows:

- **Chaplain** The chaplain promotes the spiritual and moral welfare of prisoners through worship services, special religious activities, counseling, and emphasis on moral, ethical, spiritual, and social values.
- **Medical activity** The commander of the local medical activity provides medical services for prisoners. Medical services include the services of psychiatrists, psychologists, and social workers. They provide professional evaluations of prisoners and help develop correctional-treatment programs. The medical-activity commander coordinates with the PM and the facility commander to ensure that custody and control measures conform to medical requirements.
- **IG** The IG may assist the facility commander by investigating complaints, allegations, and charges. These actions frequently provide a basis for corrective action and discourage unfounded allegations by prisoners. The PM and the facility commander establish and maintain close liaison with the IG.
- **SJA** The SJA serves as the legal advisor to the commander and the staff. The SJA plays a major role in correctional treatment and administrative activities. He provides legal advice and assistance to the PM and the facility commander, legal assistance to prisoners when consistent with professional responsibility requirements, and official information to prisoners about the status of cases and sentences as prescribed by law and regulation. The SJA coordinates with the US

Trial Defense Service, an independent legal organization, to ensure that prisoners have independent legal advice relating to military justice

- **AG** The AG processes recommendations for administrative elimination of prisoners without a punitive discharge from the service. He advises the facility commander and unit commanders on processes and procedures.
- **Technical service** Technical service provides support to education and employment programs. Work programs permit on-the-job training for prisoners in carpentry, mechanics, painting, and masonry. They may also include skilled tasks required to maintain and operate the installation.

## TRANSFER AND DISPOSITION PROCEDURES

7-92 The transfer of a prisoner or a pretrial detainee refers to his relocation from one confinement facility to another to continue a sentence. AR 190-47 provides detailed guidance on the administrative and operational processing required for a prisoner transfer.

7-93 A prisoner or a pretrial detainee is released from confinement only with the proper authorization. At the USDB and the RCF, the installation commander can authorize the facility commander to authenticate DD Form 2718. A prisoner or a pretrial detainee is released for the following reasons:

- A causal prisoner is returned to his unit.
- The charge is dismissed.
- Parole or clemency is granted.
- Pretrial confinement is no longer deemed necessary.
- The sentence expires.
- The sentence is mitigated, suspended, or remitted.

7-94 A confined prisoner—

- Can be kept in confinement and a new confinement order can be issued if he completes a sentence and has additional charges pending.
- Is released from confinement if he is adjudged and completes a sentence before determination is made to punitively discharge him. However, he remains subject to military jurisdiction until the sentence is approved and the discharge is executed.
- Is released from confinement when he completes a sentence that includes a punitive discharge or a dismissal.
- Is released from confinement if his sentence is mitigated or remitted by the convening authority or another competent authority.
- Cannot be released from confinement until a release order is executed if a court-martial renders a decision of not guilty while he is confined.
- Cannot be released from confinement until a release order is executed if the charges are withdrawn.
- Can be retained under military jurisdiction after release for treatment of an illness or an injury that occurred or was aggravated during military service or confinement.

## LOGISTICS

7-95 Confinement facilities provide supplies for prisoners during their incarceration and for the correctional staff during their daily tour of duty. The quality of treatment programs and the morale of prisoners and staff are directly affected by the availability of supplies.

7-96 Unit commanders ensure that soldiers in pretrial status have the necessary clothing when they enter confinement. Prisoners confined in outside continental United States (OCONUS) confinement facilities wear a battle dress uniform (BDU), and those confined in CONUS facilities wear a distinctive prisoner uniform as prescribed in CTA 50-900. Prisoners are also issued two blankets, two sheets, one pillow, and one pillowcase.

7-97 The supply branch issues general and janitorial items to prisoners and staff as needed. Items include mops, buckets, brooms, cleansers, and office supplies.

## FOOD SERVICE SUPPLIES

7-98 Food service operations are important for maintaining morale and discipline. Provide prisoners wholesome, sufficient food that is prepared from the Army master menu. Supply them with a full complement of eating utensils (fork, knife, and spoon). Prisoners in close confinement and those who have lost privileges can be denied supplemental rations as described in the Army master menu.

## HEALTH AND COMFORT SUPPLIES

7-99 The facility commander ensures that basic supplies are available for prisoners to maintain personal hygiene and comfort. Health and comfort supplies are issued to new prisoners during inprocessing and regularly thereafter. Prisoners request additional supplies on DD Form 504, and they receive the supplies gratuitously if they are in a nonpay status. Basic supplies include haircuts, postage stamps, safety razors, bath soap, toothbrushes, toothpaste, and shoe polish.

7-100 A physical inventory is reconciled and balanced monthly (minimum) with the previous inventory, supplies received, and supplies issued to prisoners. The facility commander or a designated representative verifies the inventory in writing.

## SUPPLY SERVICES

7-101 Supply functions in a confinement facility are the same as those in other military units. However, stronger security measures are necessary to prevent certain supplies and equipment from falling into the hands of prisoners.

7-102 Weapons, ammunition, and emergency equipment (protective masks and hand and leg irons) must be stored in maximum-security, locked racks or cabinets in a room that is located away from prisoner areas. Guards draw weapons and ammunition as needed, and the staff keeps records of all transactions. To reduce hazards, set up an area for loading and unloading weapons outside the facility.

## MEDICAL AND DENTAL TREATMENT

7-103 The facility commander establishes a close liaison with commanders of local medical and dental facilities to ensure their full support of the confinement facility. He ensures that prisoners receive the same medical and dental care as other soldiers.

7-104 Medical officers or other medically trained personnel conduct sick call, perform emergency medical treatment, and dispense medication. Hold sick call daily at a time that does not interfere with duties and training of prisoners. Medical examinations and treatment usually require using instruments and medications that can cause custody and control problems. Secure medications and equipment when they are not in use, and inventory them frequently.

7-105 Corrections NCOs dispense medication to prisoners in cellblocks, supervise the ingestion or application of the medication, and maintain a medication issue register. When possible, use qualified medical personnel to dispense prescription medication.

## Chapter 8

# Battlefield Confinement of United States Military Prisoners

In a mature TO, MP may operate FDFs and FCFs to hold US military prisoners and pretrial detainees in short-term pretrial or posttrial confinement. Posttrial confinement includes temporary custody of prisoners until they are evacuated to permanent facilities and custody of prisoners with short-term sentences as determined by the combatant commander. Leaders tasked with performing US military prisoner operations must be familiar with the doctrine in this chapter and Chapter 7, the policies outlined in AR 190-47, the ACS, and the tasks described in STP 19-95C14-SM-TG.

## PLANNING

8-1 There are two types of battlefield facilities—FDF and FCF. When the combatant commander makes the decision to retain prisoners in the TO, FDFs are set up in the CZ and an FCF is set up in the COMMZ. Prisoners are evacuated from one facility to another according to established guidelines and available facilities (see Figure 8-1, page 8-2).

8-2 The MP plan US military prisoner operations to meet the needs of the combatant commander. The commander may decide to establish facilities throughout the TO if he encounters any of the following:

- The projected or actual amount of prisoners exceeds the unit's handling capability and may interfere with military operations.
- The distance between the TO and the CONUS/OCONUS facility is too great and makes evacuation impractical.
- Transportation assets are unavailable for expeditious evacuation to other facilities.
- The length of military operations and the maturity of the TO enable facilities to be established.
- The facilities are necessary to meet other operational needs.

8-3 The PM is a key player and assumes an important role by keeping the combatant commander informed throughout the planning process. The PM coordinates with the SJA, civil affairs (CA), the HN, the appropriate echelon coordinating staff, and the major subordinate commands before recommending that US military prisoner facilities be established. During the planning process, the PM must determine—

- The date a facility is required.
- The location of an FCF in the COMMZ.
- The resources and logistical support needed to construct and operate a facility.



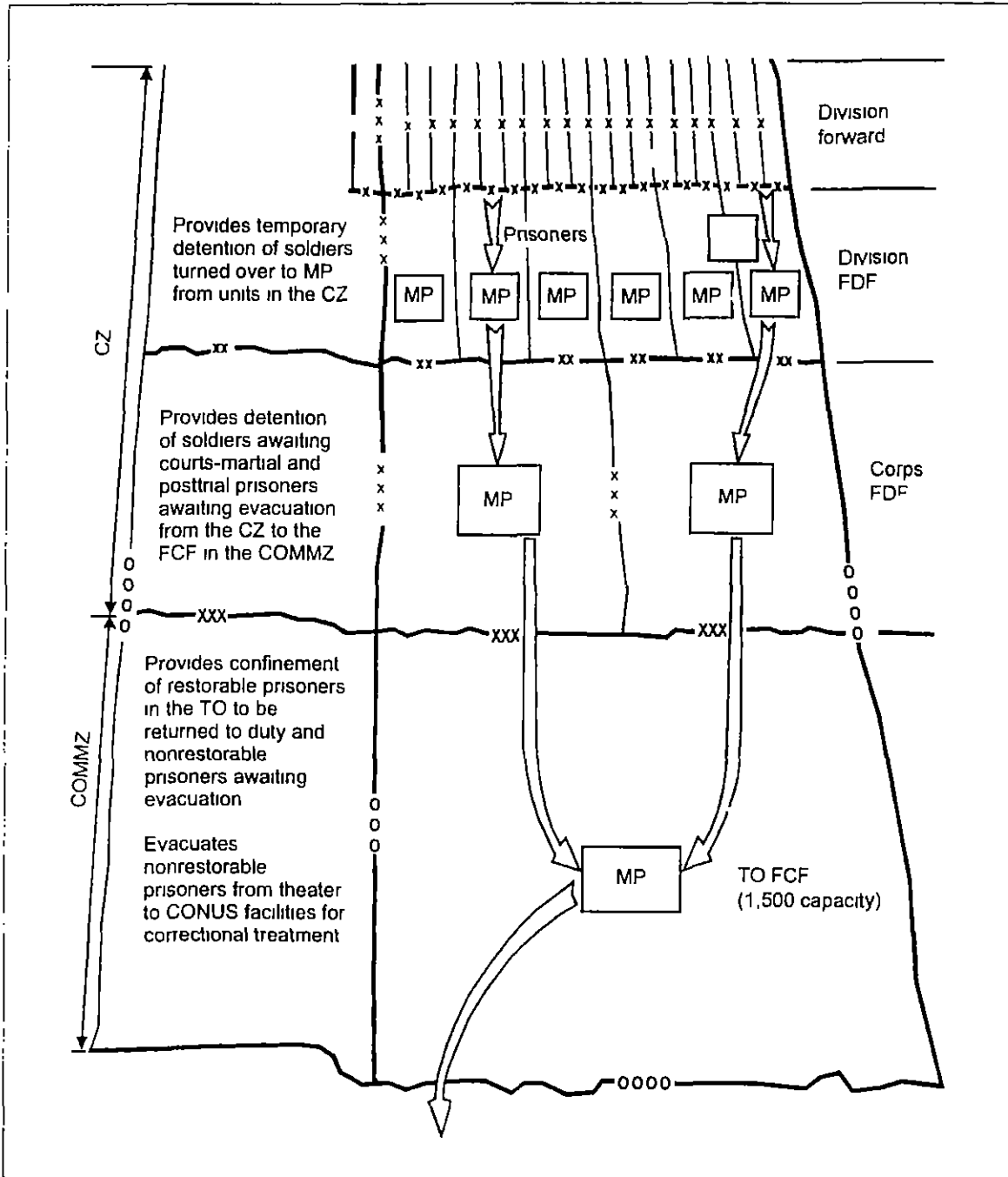


Figure 8-1. TO Confinement Evacuation Flow

- The availability of MP forces (CS MP forces in the TO or an I/R MP unit deployed from CONUS)
- The type of prisoners to be interned (pretrial, posttrial, and multiservice)
- The evacuation requirements and other prisoner-specific considerations
- The requirements of division and corps FDFs and other requirements that may impact on the operation

## FIELD DETENTION FACILITY

8-4 In the CZ, division and corps PMs are responsible for the location, setup, and operation of FDFs for as long as necessary. The MP use FDFs to detain soldiers until they can be tried, sentenced to confinement, and evacuated from the area. Soldiers awaiting trial remain in their units if possible. When the UCMJ requirements of Rules for Courts-Martial (RCM) 305 are met, soldiers are placed in pretrial confinement and retained by MP. Per RCM 305, no one can be ordered into pretrial confinement except for probable cause. Probable cause to order pretrial confinement exists when there is a reasonable belief that—

- An offense triable by court-martial has been committed
- The person confined committed it
- Confinement is required by the circumstances. For example, less severe forms of restraint are inadequate or it is foreseeable that the prisoner will engage in serious criminal misconduct or will not appear at trial, pretrial hearing, or investigation

8-5 When operating an FDF, MP sign a receipt for each prisoner (DD Form 2708) and his property (DA Form 4137). Use existing structures for FDFs if possible. If tents are used, they should be as large as a GP medium tent. Plans for establishing an FDF should include the following list of equipment and supplies:

- Barbed wire and concertina
- Fence posts
- Gates and doors
- Floodlights and spotlights
- A generator
- Food service and cleaning equipment
- Water cans or lister bags
- First aid equipment and supplies
- Clothing and bedding

## FIELD CONFINEMENT FACILITY

8-6 The MP establish an FCF in the COMMZ to detain soldiers placed in short-term custody during pretrial or posttrial or while in transit to another facility. An FCF can be a semipermanent or permanent facility, and it is more complex and elaborate than an FDF. A CS MP unit or an I/R MP unit can be tasked with operating an FCF. The respective unit commander uses the

military decision-making process (MDMP) to determine tasks that are necessary to accomplish the mission. Some considerations are—

- Location
- Construction
- Setup
- Processing
- Classification
- Identification
- Clothing
- Subsistence
- Dining facilities
- Medical facilities
- Sanitation
- Discipline
- Control
- Administration
- Emergency planning and investigations
- ROI
- Use of force
- Escape
- Transportation
- Transfer and disposition of prisoners

## LOCATION

8-7 The PM coordinates with engineers, the SJA, the HN, and the coordinating staff before selecting an FCF site. He ensures that the FCF is located away from perimeter fences, public thoroughfares, gates, headquarters, troop areas, foliage, and wooded areas. The location depends on several factors, such as—

- The availability of logistical assets (transportation and medical facilities)
- The availability of terrain and preexisting structures
- The enemy situation
- The battlefield layout
- LOC
- METT-TC

## CONSTRUCTION

8-8 The construction of an FCF depends on the availability of existing structures, the work force, and materiel. Use preexisting facilities to the maximum extent possible. If they are unavailable, coordinate with engineers to construct a facility that meets security and safety requirements. If a CS MP unit is tasked to construct an FCF, request supplies and materiel through the established supply channels. An I/R MP unit requires engineer support to

construct guard towers, fences, and perimeter roads and to repair unimproved roads

## SETUP

8-9 The FCF setup corresponds with established standards as outlined in AR 190-47. The physical layout includes facilities for administration, housing, and training (if required) as well as recreation and work areas (if available). The facilities and areas are secure against escape. Figure 8-2 shows a sample FCF setup.

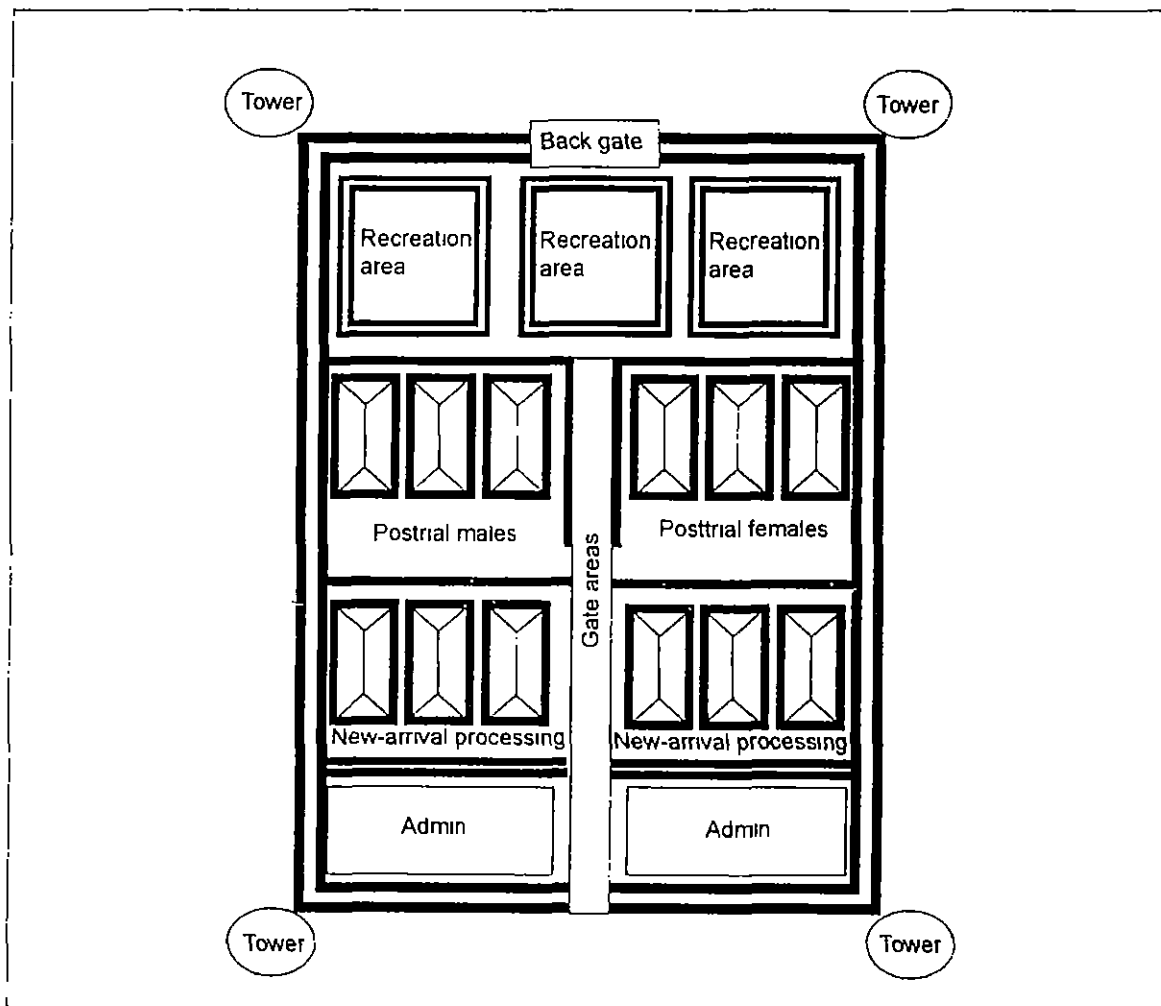


Figure 8-2 Sample FCF Setup

## PROCESSING

8-10 Processing begins when the control of a prisoner is transferred from a non-MP unit to an MP unit or from an MP unit to another MP unit. Each time control is transferred, the receiving organization signs a receipt for each prisoner (DD Form 2708) and his property (DA Form 4137).

8-11 Prisoners begin their confinement by inprocessing into the facility. If a confinement detachment is available, it performs all tasks related to inprocessing prisoners. Otherwise, the MP unit commander performs inprocessing with organic assets. Part of the inprocessing procedure is to help prisoners integrate into the confinement environment. Process each newly confined prisoner according to the guidelines in Table 8-1.

**Table 8-1. Processing a US Military Prisoner**

Station	Purpose	Responsible Individuals*	Actions
1	Search	MP	Escort prisoner and property Conduct same-gender strip search. Accomplish this before he enters the processing area unless conditions prohibit it. Supervise his movement to the next station.
2	Property inventory	MP	Inventory personal property List items on DA Form 1132-R Place items in a container or on a tray Mark items with his name and SSN Secure items in a storage area Confiscate his money, and record it on DA Form 1124 Supervise his movement to the next station.
3	Administrative processing	Processing clerk and MP	Initiate a CTF Complete individual prisoner forms (see Chapter 7) Supervise his movement to the next station.
4	Photography and fingerprinting	MP	Fingerprint and identify him, and record the information on a fingerprint card Photograph him with instant film. Use a photographic name board (black background with white characters). List his SSN and name at the bottom center. Attach the photograph to his CTF Supervise his movement to the next station.
5	Personal hygiene	MP	Allow him to shower, shave, and get a haircut Supervise his movement to the next station.
6	Medical evaluation	Medical personnel and MP	Examine him within 24 hours of arrival at the confinement facility Complete DD Form 503 Supervise his movement to the next station.
7	Records review	MP	Review processed records for completeness Escort him back to processing stations as needed Prepare and maintain an accountability roster Supervise his movement to the next station.
*The number of people used to perform tasks depends on the number of prisoners and the time available.			

Table 8-1 Processing a US Military Prisoner (continued)

Station	Purpose	Responsible Individuals*	Actions
8	Briefing	MP	Brief him on rules and regulations and visitation and correspondence rights Supervise his movement to the next station
9	Movement	MP	Move him to a secure area
*The number of people used to perform tasks depends on the number of prisoners and the time available			

8-12 Ensure that all newly assigned prisoners complete training, as soon as possible, that explains the—

- Facility rules and regulations
- Counseling procedures
- UCMJ
- Disciplinary authority and procedures
- Work assignments
- Complaint and grievance procedures per AR 20-1

8-13 Orient pretrial prisoners and officers on their status, rights, and privileges, including the following

- They are required to participate in correctional orientation and treatment programs that ensure their control, custody, employment, training, health, and welfare as determined by the facility commander
- Officer and NCO prisoners will not exercise command or supervisory authority over others. They will comply with facility rules and regulations to the same extent as other prisoners. They are not permitted special privileges normally associated with their rank

## CLASSIFICATION

8-14 Prisoners are classified into two categories—pretrial and posttrial. Separate pretrial prisoners (males and females) from posttrial prisoners. Posttrial prisoners include those retained during short-term sentences and in-transit prisoners who are being evacuated to another facility.

## IDENTIFICATION

8-15 Take two front and two profile photographs of each prisoner. Use a name board, if available, and place his last name, first name, and middle initial on the first line and his social security number (SSN) on the second line. Add a prisoner registration number on the third line if desired. (See AR 190-47 for fingerprint card requirements.)

## CLOTHING

8-16 Prisoners wear a BDU without rank insignia during incarceration. Return personal clothing and other articles to prisoners per AR 700-84 as determined by the facility commander. Issue clothing to prisoners, except officers, according to AR 700-84 and CTA 50-900. Maintain a DA Form 3078 on prisoners with less than 6 months active-duty service and prisoners who

receive clothing on an issue-in-kind basis. Provide organizational clothing within the allowances prescribed in AR 710-2 and CTA 50-900. Launder and dry-clean clothing for prisoners (except officers on pay status) without charge per AR 210-130. Dispose of clothing and personal property according to AR 190-47.

## SUBSISTENCE

8-17 Provide prisoners with wholesome, sufficient food that is prepared from the Army master menu, and supply them with a full complement of eating utensils. The facility commander can deny eating utensils for security or other reasons. Prisoners in close confinement and those who lost privileges associated with approved disciplinary action can be denied supplemental rations as described on the Army master menu. The facility commander can authorize alternate meal control procedures to prevent injury when a prisoner abuses food. The procedures require documentation in the facility blotter and concurrence of a medical officer, and they will not exceed 7 days.

## DINING FACILITIES

8-18 Dining facilities can be organic to the unit operating the FCF, or they can be set up through the appropriate contracting procedure. The facility commander decides the best feeding method to sustain prisoners based on the available dining facilities and the logistical and HN support.

## MEDICAL TREATMENT

8-19 Medical personnel in support of the FCF provide medical, dental, and mental-health care or referral, limited counseling, and social services. Except in matters requiring protection of medical information, the facility commander provides medical observations and recommendations concerning correctional-treatment requirements. Medical officers, nurse clinicians, or PAs—

- Conduct a daily examination of each prisoner in close confinement.
- Perform a medical examination to determine the fitness of a newly confined prisoner or a prisoner who has been outside military control for more than 24 hours. Complete the examination within 24 hours of a prisoner's arrival or return to confinement.
- Test each prisoner for HIV and TB within 3 duty days after initial incarceration. Record test results on DD Form 503.

## SANITATION

8-20 An Army Medical Department (AMEDD) representative, a PVNTMED NCO or officer, an environmental-science officer, a sanitary engineer, or a medical entomologist inspects the facility monthly. This inspection ensures that the operation meets PVNTMED standards. The inspector provides a copy of the inspection results to the facility commander. (See AR 190-47 for further guidance.)

8-21 Ensure that all prisoners bathe and follow basic personal-hygiene practices to prevent communicable diseases. Enforce high sanitation standards in facilities where prisoners share latrines and showers.

## DISCIPLINE

8-22 Public law and AR 190-47 authorize facility commanders to—

- Restrict the movement and action of prisoners
- Take action to maintain control as required
- Protect the safety and welfare of prisoners and other personnel
- Ensure orderly operation and administration of the FCF

8-23 A prisoner is considered in an on-duty status except during mandatory sleeping hours, mealtimes, and reasonable periods of voluntary religious observations (as determined by the facility commander in coordination with the facility chaplain) A prisoner who is denied recreation time as part of an administrative disciplinary action may be required to perform recreation time duties as deemed necessary by the appropriate authority Recreation time duties are not considered extra duty Privileges are withheld from prisoners on an individual basis, without regard to custody requirements or grade and only as an administrative disciplinary measure authorized by AR 190-47 The attractiveness of living quarters and the type and amount of material items that can be possessed by prisoners may differ by custody grade to provide incentives for custody elevation Prisoners are denied the privilege of rendering the military salute Pretrial prisoners will salute when they are in the appropriate service uniform

8-24 Authorized forms of administrative disciplinary action and punishment are described in AR 190-47 and the UCMJ Constantly review procedures, rules, regulations, living conditions, and similar factors affecting discipline for violations and disciplinary problems Physical and mental punishments are strictly prohibited Authorized administrative disciplinary actions (listed in ascending order) and are as follows

- A written or oral reprimand or warning
- Deprivation of one or more privileges Visits can be deprived or restricted as a disciplinary action only when the offense involves a violation of visitation privileges Restrictions on mail cannot be imposed as a disciplinary measure
- Extra duty Extra duty on work projects cannot exceed 2 hours per day for 14 consecutive days It cannot conflict with regular meals, sleeping hours, or attendance at regularly scheduled religious services
- Reduction of custody grade or classification
- Segregation Segregation can be imposed for an indefinite period, but it normally should not exceed 60 consecutive days Tell prisoners why they are being segregated and that they will be released when the segregation has served its intended purpose Segregated prisoners receive the same diet as other prisoners Withhold nonessential food items, such as soft drinks and candies, that are in addition to the diet stipulated by the Army master menu
- Forfeiture of all or part of earned good-conduct time or EGCT according to AR 633-30 The forfeiture need not specify whether it is good-conduct time or EGCT Both forms of abatement satisfy forfeiture, however, take good-conduct time before taking EGCT



8-25 The facility commander is authorized to administer punishment, and he can delegate the authority to a subordinate officer (captain [CPT] or above) for minor punishments. The first field grade commander in the chain of command can impose major punishment when delegated authority by the first general officer in the chain of command. The following are prohibited punitive measures:

- Clipping a prisoner's hair excessively close
- Ordering the lock-step
- Requiring silence at meals
- Requiring a prisoner to break rocks
- Using hand or leg irons, restraining straps or jackets, or shackles as punishment (The FCF SOP gives authority for the use of these devices and specifies the circumstances warranting their use.)
- Fastening a prisoner to a fixed or stationary object
- Removing a prisoner's underclothing or clothing or using other debasing practices
- Flogging, branding, tattooing, or using any other cruel or unusual punishment
- Requiring domicile in a tent as punishment
- Ordering strenuous physical activity or body positions designed to place undue stress on a prisoner
- Using hand or leg irons or belly chains that give the appearance of a chain gang

8-26 The following are prohibited security measures:

- Using dogs to guard prisoners. Dogs can be used to track escaped prisoners.
- Using chemicals except as riot control agents.
- Using machine guns, rifles, or automatic weapons at guard towers except to protect the facility from enemy or hostile fire by a belligerent power. Selected marksmen who are equipped with rifles can be used when directed as part of a disorder plan and when specifically authorized by a higher echelon commander other than the facility commander.
- Using an electrically charged wire.
- Securing a prisoner to a fixed object except in emergencies or when specifically approved by the facility commander to prevent potential danger to the facility staff or the outside community. Consult medical authorities to assess the health risk to prisoners.

**NOTE See AR 190-47 for additional guidance and procedures on disciplinary measures.**

## CONTROL

8-27 The facility commander follows control and custody guidelines as outlined in AR 190-47. The inspecting officer's report includes the verification of prisoner strength. He conducts a physical count of prisoners daily that includes a—

- Roll call or a similar accounting method during morning, noon, and evening formations
- Head count immediately upon the return of prisoners from work detail
- Bed check between 2300 and 2400 and again between 2400 and 0600

8-28 The degree of custodial supervision necessary for an individual prisoner is based on a review his records, the Army Inmate Correction System (AICS), and the recommendations of correctional supervisors and professional-services support personnel. Prisoners are not assigned a permanent custody grade based solely on the offenses for which they were incarcerated. Classification is the minimum custody grade necessary based on security requirements and the AICS. Custody grades include trustee and minimum, medium, and maximum security. Facility commanders can subdivide the custody grades as required to facilitate additional security controls.

## ADMINISTRATION

8-29 The FCF is administered by a CS MP unit or an I/R MP unit with an MP I/R confinement detachment if available. The facility commander appoints a guard commander who—

- Supervises facility guards and correctional and custodial personnel within the facility
- Monitors custody, control, and security measures and informs the facility commander on matters that affect the facility
- Ensures that rules, regulations, and SOPs are followed and enforced
- Is responsible for prisoners' activities and the facility blotter
- Ensures compliance with the schedule of calls
- Initiates emergency control measures

**NOTE. CSB personnel assigned to the FCF may also perform these duties**

8-30 Facility guards are responsible for the custody, control, and discipline of prisoners under their supervision. See Table 8-2, page 8-12, for a complete list of their duties.

**NOTE. Control team guards assigned to the FCF may also perform these duties**

**Table 8-2. Guard Duties**

Position	Actions
Close-confinement guards	Maintain custody and control of prisoners who are segregated from the general population due to inprocessing or administrative or disciplinary reasons Accomplish activities within the schedule of calls, as applicable to the close-confinement area Conduct 30-minute checks (or 15-minute checks for special-status prisoners) when a DD Form 509 is required Ensure that all required signatures on DD Form 509 are obtained on a daily basis
Dining-facility guards	Maintain custody and control of prisoners during mealtime Ensure that the dining-facility traffic plan is followed Prevent congestion at condiment and juice areas Account for silverware before and after a meal Search prisoners before they leave the dining facility
Employment detail guards	Maintain custody, control, and supervision of prisoners while on details Ensure that work details are accomplished and safety precautions are observed Maintain strict accountability of equipment and tools Assist with frisk and strip searches of prisoners returning from details Account for prisoners on details according to the schedule of calls Track prisoners' locations at all times while on details
Escort and AWOL apprehension guards	Maintain custody and control of prisoners while moving them to and from designated places May be armed with a pistol if required and authorized by the facility commander Are qualified with a pistol and trained in the use of force and the ROE Are trained in firearms safety procedures for transporting prisoners by land, air, and sea <b>NOTE</b> If available, an escort guard MP company may perform these duties
Main gate and sally port guards	Maintain custody and control of prisoners Ensure that only authorized persons enter the facility Inspect vehicles entering and exiting the facility Inspect packages Conduct inventories of items entering and exiting the facility Require noncustodial personnel to register on sign-in logs <b>NOTE.</b> If available, an MP guard company may perform these duties
<b>NOTE</b> The facility commander adjusts the number and type of guards based on the available personnel	

Table 8-2 Guard Duties (continued)

Position	Actions
Visitor room guards	Maintain custody and control of prisoners during visits by family members and other authorized persons Detect violations of rules and regulations, improper behavior, and contraband Maintain positions in inconspicuous places and observe conversations rather than listening to them Identify and report infractions, which may be grounds for terminating visits
Hospital guards	Maintain custody and control of prisoners while escorting them to and from medical appointments and during hospitalization Ensure that rooms are clear of contraband Prevent unauthorized communications
Tower guards	Maintain custody and control by observing specific sectors of the perimeter Are briefed on the use of force and are qualified with a 12-gauge shotgun or their assigned weapon Ensure that contraband is not passed through the fence Provide protection for compound guards
<b>NOTE</b> The facility commander adjusts the number and type of guards based on the available personnel	

### Required Regulations and Forms

8-31 Each facility must have a complete, current set of regulations covering correctional administration. The facility commander ensures that the facility is part of the publications distribution system. The following regulations and publications must be available:

- AR 15-130
- AR 190-14
- AR 190-47
- AR 210-174
- AR 633-30
- Misc Pub 27-7
- UCMJ

8-32 Confinement facilities use a variety of forms to maintain records and reports. The following forms must be available:

- DA Form 1124
- DA Form 1125-R
- DA Form 1128
- DA Form 1129-R
- DA Form 1130-R
- DA Form 1131-R
- DA Form 1132-R
- DA Form 1134-R
- DA Form 1135-R

- DA Form 3078
- DA Form 3955
- DA Form 3997
- DD Form 2 (ACT)
- DD Form 499
- DD Form 503
- DD Form 504
- DD Form 506
- DD Form 509
- DD Form 515
- DD Form 2707
- DD Form 2710
- DD Form 2718
- FBI Form FD-249

**Correctional-Treatment File**

8-33 Establish a CTF within the first 72 hours of confinement, maintain it throughout the confinement period, and transfer it with the prisoner when he is evacuated to another facility (See AR 190-47 for more information)

**Sentence Computation**

8-34 Based on the type of operation and its projected duration, the theater commander may determine that certain sentences will be served in the TO The FCF commander computes sentences according to AR 633-30 and DOD Directive 1325 4 He ensures that NCOs working in the personnel section are properly trained to compute sentences Incorrect computations result in incorrect release dates and can violate a prisoner's legal rights The rate of earnings for good-conduct time is calculated based on the prisoner's length of confinement, including pretrial time (see Table 8-3)

**Table 8-3 Rates for Good-Conduct Time**

Length of Sentence	Good-Conduct Time
Less than 1 year	5 days for each month of the sentence
1 year to less than 3 years	6 days for each month of the sentence
3 years to less than 5 years	7 days for each month of the sentence
5 years to less than 10 years	8 days for each month of the sentence
10 years or more, excluding life	10 days for each month of the sentence
<b>NOTE</b> If the term of confinement is reduced or if an additional sentence increases the term of confinement, recompute the good-conduct time at the abatement appropriate to the new term of confinement	

**Mail and Correspondence**

8-35 The FCF staff keeps a record of inspection of each prisoner's mail, correspondence, and authorized correspondents on DD Form 499 The

---

guidance outlined in Chapter 7 and AR 190-47 also applies to the battlefield confinement of US military prisoners

### **Prisoner Personal Property and Funds**

8-36 Prisoners in the FCF are permitted to place personal property in safekeeping if it is not authorized for retention by the facility commander. The guidance outlined in Chapter 7 and AR 190-47 also applies to the battlefield confinement of US military prisoners.

### **Support Personnel**

8-37 Support personnel organic to a CS MP unit or an I/R MP unit provide support to the FCF. Support personnel include medical officers, chaplains, and social-service workers. They may help administer the facility and are oriented and trained in custody and control procedures. Establish a formal training program that includes—

- Supervisory and interpersonal communications skills
- Self-defense techniques
- The use of force
- Weapons qualification (see DA Pam 350-38)
- First aid
- Emergency action plans
- Facility regulations
- Riot control techniques

### **Supply Services**

8-38 Supply functions in an FCF are the same as in other military operations. However, stronger security measures and accountability procedures are necessary to prevent certain supplies and equipment from falling into the hands of prisoners. Weapons, ammunition, and emergency equipment, such as hand and leg irons, must be stored in maximum-security, locked racks or cabinets in a room that is located away from prisoner areas.

8-39 The unit logistics officer ensures that a sufficient amount of general and janitorial items are available to keep the facility sanitary and free of potential diseases. Issue the items under strict control procedures and on an as-needed basis to prisoners and staff. Items include mops, buckets, brooms, cleansers, and office supplies.

8-40 Issue health and comfort items to new prisoners during inprocessing and regularly thereafter. Prisoners request additional supplies on DD Form 504, and they receive the supplies gratuitously if they are in a nonpay status. Basic supplies include safety razors, bath soap, toothbrushes, toothpaste, and shoe polish.

8-41 Conduct a physical inventory monthly to reconcile and balance the records of the previous inventory, supplies received, and supplies issued to prisoners. The facility commander or his designated representative verifies the inventory in writing.

## EMERGENCY PLANNING AND INVESTIGATIONS

8-42 The facility commander publishes formal plans for the apprehension of escaped prisoners, fire prevention, facility evacuation, prisoner riots and disorders, NBC evacuation, mass casualty, quarantine, special confinements, and prisoner processing. The plans must form part of the unit's SOP and be tailored to the operational environment where the FCF is located. Test the plans at least every six months, and record tests of emergency action plans in the facility blotter. The EEI are as follows:

- Alarm, notification, and escape validation procedures
- The manning of critical points outside the facility, for example, crowd control procedures, likely escape routes, observation points, and defensive positions
- Procedures to secure the prisoner population while executing an emergency action plan
- Prisoner and cadre recall procedures and a means for organizing forces, for example, search parties and riot control teams
- Procedures to terminate the plan and follow-up actions
- The mass casualty plan, including how to secure prisoners

8-43 The facility commander organizes a reactionary force that is trained in the use of force, riot control procedures, and other emergency actions. The size of the reactionary force depends on the personnel assets available and the nature of the emergency.

8-44 Where appropriate or legally required, use AR 15-6 to investigate reported incidents of misconduct, breaches of discipline, or violations of the UCMJ. Before interviewing prisoners suspected or accused of violations, advise them of their rights under Article 31, UCMJ, against self-incrimination. Any statement made may be used as evidence against them in a criminal trial or disciplinary-and-adjustment board proceeding. They have the right to consult with counsel and to have counsel present during questioning. A request to consult with counsel at this point does not automatically result in the case being referred to a three-member board. If requested, make arrangements for the prisoner to meet with an attorney as soon as practical. Interview relevant witnesses, including those identified by the prisoner, as deemed appropriate, and obtain written, sworn statements when possible. Complete the investigation expeditiously, and submit a disciplinary report to the facility commander.

8-45 Upon receipt of the disciplinary-and-adjustment board report, the facility commander reduces the report to a memorandum for record. He refers the case for counseling or reprimand, refers it to the disciplinary-and-adjustment board, or takes other appropriate action. (See AR 190-47 for more information.)

## RULES OF INTERACTION

8-46 The facility commander establishes and enforces the ROI that allow humane treatment and care of prisoners, despite the reason they are incarcerated. The ROI are established by the facility commander, and some include—

- Remaining professional and serving as positive role models for prisoners
- Being firm, fair, and decisive in actions concerning prisoners
- Refraining from being too familiar or too belligerent with prisoners
- Avoiding becoming emotionally or personally involved with prisoners
- Not gambling, fraternizing, or engaging in any commercial activities with prisoners
- Not showing favoritism to any prisoners

## USE OF FORCE

8-47 Guidance on the use of force is incorporated in orders, plans, SOPs, and instructions at FDFs and FCFs. Using firearms or other means of deadly force is justified only under conditions of extreme necessity and as a last resort. Do not use physical force against a prisoner except in self-defense, to prevent escape, to prevent injury to others, to prevent damage to property, to quell a disturbance, to move an unruly prisoner, or as otherwise authorized in AR 190-47.

8-48 In the event of an imminent group or mass breakout from the FCF or another general disorder, ensure that prisoners know authority prevails, order will be restored, and means are available to restore order by force if necessary. Before applying force, try to reason with prisoners if the situation permits. If reasoning fails or if the existing situation does not permit reasoning, issue prisoners a direct order to terminate the disorder. Do not give the order until it can be enforced effectively by applying force as the situation requires. Before escalating beyond a show of force, allow uninvolved prisoners to voluntarily assemble in a controlled area away from the disturbance.

8-49 When force is necessary, apply it according to the priorities of force and limit it to the minimum degree necessary. The use of deadly force is prescribed by AR 190-14. The application of the priorities of force, or the application of a higher numbered priority without first employing a lower numbered one, depends on and is consistent with the situation encountered during any particular disorder. The priorities of force for an FCF are as follows:

- First Verbal persuasion
- Second Show of force
- Third Chemical aerosol irritant projectors (subject to local and HN restrictions)
- Fourth Use of physical force other than weapons fire
- Fifth Presentation of deadly force capability
- Sixth Deadly force

8-50 The facility commander coordinates with the higher echelon commander and the SJA. He designates representatives who are authorized to direct the use of firearms and riot control agents in the event of a riot or other disturbance. Orders, plans, SOPs, and instructions include use-of-force rules and specify the types of weapons to be used.



## ESCAPE

8-51 Provide each guard with a whistle or other suitable alarm. Per AR 190-14, using firearms to prevent an escape is justified only when there is no other reasonable means available. If a prisoner tries to escape from the facility, the guard—

- Alerts other guards of the attempted escape by blowing three short blasts on a whistle or delivering the signal with another alarm
- Orders the prisoner to halt three times in a loud voice
- Fires only when the prisoner has passed all barriers of the facility and is continuing to escape. (The location of a barrier is determined by the physical arrangement of the facility. It normally includes fences or walls enclosing athletic, drill, recreation, housing, and administrative areas.)

8-52 Do not fire on an escapee if it endangers others. When firing is necessary, aim shots to disable the prisoner rather than kill him. Guidance for the use of firearms by guards escorting prisoners outside the facility are the same as those for using firearms in the facility. (See AR 190-47 for more information.)

8-53 The facility commander ensures that guards are trained in the use of their assigned weapons. Orient all personnel on policies regarding the use of force and the provisions of AR 190-14. Issue 12-gauge shotguns with cylinder (unchoked) barrels to facility guards, and ensure that barrels do not exceed 20 inches in length. Authorized ammunition for armed guards (perimeter and escort) is number 9 shot in trap loads of 2 3/4 grams of powder and 1 1/8 ounces of shot. Tower guards use number 00 buckshot ammunition.

8-54 Instruct tower and escort guards not to fire at less than 20 meters to prevent prisoner escapes. Ensure that these instructions appear in training programs and special instructions for guards.

8-55 Guards use a 9-millimeter pistol when escorting prisoners. Do not use rifles, machine guns, or submachine guns when guarding prisoners. Do not take weapons inside the controlled areas of an FCF except as directed by the facility commander.

## TRANSPORTATION

8-56 The facility commander maintains safety and security for prisoners under his control. He is also responsible for transportation requirements when prisoners are in his custody. Ensure that guard and escort personnel are familiar with the use-of-force guidelines above and the movement tasks outlined in STP 19-95C14-SM-TG. Some of the tasks are as follows:

- **Motor vehicle transport.** Escort guards—
  - Know the type of vehicle, the departure time, the number of prisoners and their status, the number of assigned escorts, and the type of weapon and restraint (if applicable), and the release procedures at the final destination.
  - Know the actions to take in case of a disorder or an escape attempt.

- Conduct a thorough vehicle search and remove or secure all items that can be used as weapons
- Do not handcuff two escape risk prisoners together or handcuff prisoners to any part of the vehicle
- Sign DD Form 2708 for each prisoner escorted out of the facility and frisk him before he enters the vehicle
- Follow the loading procedures for the vehicle
- **Aircraft transport** Escort guards—
  - Know the type of aircraft, the departure time, the number of prisoners and their status, the number of assigned escorts, and the type of weapon and restraint (if applicable), and the release procedures at the final destination
  - Follow the procedures outlined in AR 190-47 for transporting prisoners via a commercial aircraft
  - Sign for each prisoner on DD Form 2708
  - Do not secure prisoners to any part of the aircraft
  - Know latrine, beverage, meal, loading, and unloading procedures as outlined in AR 190-47
- **Rail transport** Use two escort guards (one armed and one unarmed) when transporting prisoners by rail. If possible, transport prisoners in enclosed accommodations or compartments (day and night). If they are unavailable, use coach class or standard sleeping cars. Escort guards seat themselves in such a way that they block avenues of escape. The unarmed guard accompanies prisoners who use latrine facilities and remains in visual contact with them.

## TRANSFER AND DISPOSITION OF PRISONERS

8-57 The FCF commander is prepared to transfer US military prisoners from his facility to other confinement facilities outside the TO or back to their units. He releases prisoners from confinement with proper authorization. He coordinates with the SJA and the next higher commander to determine release authority and for authentication of DD Form 2718. (See Chapter 7 and AR 190-47 for detailed guidance on transferring prisoners.)

## PART FOUR

# Military Police Support to Civil-Military Operations

The CMO establish, maintain, influence, or exploit relations between the civilian populace and military forces or government and nongovernment civilian organizations and authorities. Operations are conducted in friendly, neutral, and hostile AOs to facilitate military operations and to consolidate and achieve US objectives. Military forces may perform activities and functions that a local, regional, or national government normally performs. Activities may occur before, during, or after military operations or, if directed, in the absence of military operations. The CMO may be performed by designated CA forces and/or other military forces.

The CA forces help plan, coordinate, and supervise CA activities to support CMO. The activities are mission-dependent and are determined after careful evaluation of mission requirements and the force mix and time available. Under the umbrella of CMO, CA forces perform FN support, civil-administration support, PRC, HA, and ES.

If required, I/R units are deployed and employed to support CMO in CONUS and OCONUS. The I/R units provide an array of significant capabilities by performing their wartime mission in peace and during conflicts. The MP must understand the intent of CMO because SA and the correct mind-set are critical. Since forces may be called upon to relieve human suffering, such as that encountered after a natural disaster, strict discipline measures and control may not be appropriate.

In Parts Two and Three, this manual addressed MP units' capabilities during internment and confinement operations. Part Four expands on these capabilities and addresses resettlement operations in support CMO.

---

## Chapter 9

# Populace and Resource Control

Civilian and military authorities exercise PRC to provide security for the populace, deny personnel and materiel to an enemy, mobilize population and materiel resources, and detect and reduce the effectiveness of enemy agents. Populace control includes curfews, movement restrictions, travel permits, registration cards, and resettlement operations. Resource control includes licenses, regulations, guidelines, checkpoints, ration controls, amnesty programs, and facility inspections. This chapter addresses MP support to DC operations conducted under the umbrella of PRC operations.

## DISLOCATED-CIVILIAN OPERATIONS

9-1 The DC operations are a special category of PRC, and they are the most basic collective tasks performed by CA personnel. The DC operations minimize civilian interference with military operations and protect civilians from combat operations. They are normally performed with minimal military resources. Nonmilitary international-aid organizations, NGOs, and IHOs are the primary resources used by CA forces. However, CA forces may depend on other military units, such as I/R MP units, to assist with a particular category of civilians.

9-2 Controlling civilians is essential during military operations because uncontrolled masses of people can seriously impair the military mission. Commanders plan measures to protect civilians in the AO and to prevent their interference with the mission.

### CATEGORIES

9-3 During military operations, US forces must consider two distinct categories of civilians—those who remained in place and those who are dislocated. The first category includes civilians who are indigenous to the area and the local populace, including civilians from other countries. They may or may not need help, and if they can take care of themselves, they should remain in place.

9-4 The second category includes civilians who leave their homes for various reasons. They are categorized as DCs, and their movement and physical presence can hinder military operations. They probably require some degree of aid (medicine, food, clothing, water, and shelter) and may not be native to the area or the country. The term *DC* is generic, and it is further subdivided into categories (see Chapter 1).

### LEGAL OBLIGATIONS

9-5 All commanders are under the legal obligation imposed by international law, including the Geneva Conventions and other applicable international humanitarian laws. In particular, commanders must comply with the principles and spirit of the law of land warfare during armed conflicts (and other operations unless directed otherwise by competent authorities), regardless of how they are characterized. (See FM 27-10 and the SJA for additional information.)

### OBJECTIVES AND PRINCIPLES

9-6 The primary objective of DC operations is to minimize civilian interference with military operations. They also—

- Protect DCs from combat operations
- Prevent and control the outbreak of disease
- Relieve human suffering
- Centralize masses of DCs

9-7 Although the Assistant Chief of Staff, G5 (Civil Affairs) (G5) or the Civil Affairs Officer (US Army) (S5) is the primary planner of DC operations, all

military planners consider DC operations. The G5 or the S5, in conjunction with supporting CA units, assesses the needs of DCs to ensure that they receive adequate and proper help. He considers the cultural background of DCs and the cultural background of the country where DCs are located. The planning of DC operations differs at each level of command. All commands and national and international agencies involved in DC operations have clearly defined responsibilities within a single overall program. The following principles apply to DC operations:

- Coordinate with the DOS, the UNOCHA, and FN civil and military authorities to determine the appropriate levels and types of aid required and available.
- Minimize outside contributions to meet basic needs as DCs become self-sufficient, and encourage DCs to become as independent as possible.
- Review the effectiveness of humanitarian responses, and adjust relief activities as necessary.
- Coordinate with CA units to use US, HN, international, and third-nation organizations such as the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF) and the Cooperative for American Relief Everywhere, Incorporated (CARE). Their use not only capitalizes on experience but also reduces requirements placed on US military forces.
- Restrict the rights of DCs as required. Under international law, DCs have the right to freedom of movement, but in the event of a mass influx, security considerations may require restrictions.

## PLANNING DISLOCATED-CIVILIAN OPERATIONS

9-8 The planning scope for DC operations and the actual task implementation differ, depending on the command level and the TO. Before describing how MP units support DC operations, MP leaders must have a basic understanding of how CA forces plan DC operations. Except as specifically noted, planning considerations discussed in this manual are applicable to all tactical scenarios, including logistics operations for units in the COMMZ.

## POLICES AND PROCEDURES

9-9 Based on national policy directives and other political efforts, the theater commander provides directives on the care, control, and disposition of DCs. The corps commander integrates the theater commander's guidance with the corps ground tactical plan. The driving force for DC planning must be generated at corps level. At division, COSCOM, and other subordinate command levels, the DC plan must—

- Allow the accomplishment of tasks assigned by higher command echelons.
- Be within the restrictions imposed by higher headquarters.
- Guide subordinate commands in handling and routing DCs.
- Ensure that all concerned parties—including the fire support coordination center and the Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans) (G3), or the Operations and Training Officer (US Army)

(S3)—receive information on DC plans, routes, and areas of concentration

- Help DCs by alleviating their suffering while awaiting status determination
- Provide security and safety for DCs and soldiers by maintaining proper order and discipline within the facility
- Provide an aggressive information program by using support agencies and DC leadership

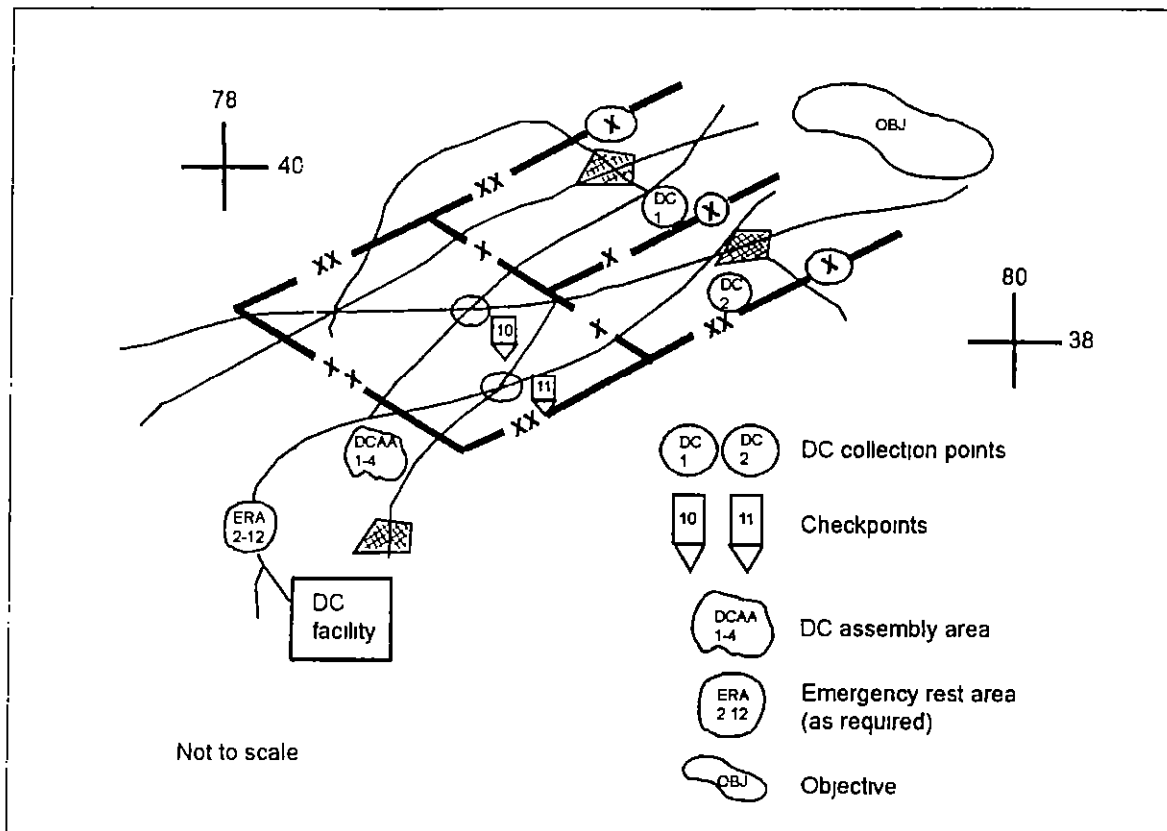
9-10 The DC plans support the OPLAN. As a minimum, DC plans must address the—

- Authorized extent of migration and evacuation
- Minimum standards of care
- Status and disposition of DCs
- Designation of routes and movement control measures
- Cultural and dietary considerations
- Designation and delegation of responsibilities

## HANDLING CONSIDERATIONS

9-11 The care and control of DCs fulfill a dual purpose—to ensure that DCs receive the minimum essentials to subsist (food, water, clothing, shelter, and emergency medical aid) and to maximize the mobility of tactical forces and minimize civilian interference with military operations. The CA and MP forces coordinate and establish movement control early. Major considerations include a stay-put policy, collection points, and assembly areas (see Figure 9-1)

- **Stay-put policy** Civilians remain near their homes and under controlled movement. The policy assumes the capability for enforcement, information dissemination, and ES. The HN may have a policy that US forces support, but US forces do not have the authority or the right to enforce the policy. It is not within the authoritative capability of US forces.
- **Collection points** A collection point establishes control and direction over the movement of the civilian populace, and it is the primary measure for gaining initial control over DCs. It is a temporary area for small numbers of DCs until they can return to their homes or move to a safer area. It is as far forward as possible during the flow of battle. Because a collection point is temporary, screening by CA forces, MI, or MP is quick and may include screening for intelligence information and emergency assistance. Screening takes place to segregate EPWs, CIs, and allied soldiers from DCs. Local civilians or civilian agencies can operate collection points under the supervision of tactical or support troops or CA personnel. The MP become involved in DC operations when civilian congestion along MSR threatens the mobility of the maneuver force. They may be the first US elements to address DC problems and initiate actions to restore force mobility.
- **Assembly areas** Assembly areas are temporary holding areas for civilians before they return to their homes or move to a more secure area. Detailed screening or segregation of DC categories takes place at



**Figure 9-1 Sample DC Overlay**

assembly areas. They are usually located in a secure, stable environment and may include schools, churches, hotels, and warehouses. When selecting a specific area, consider the ability to provide overnight accommodations for several days. Local civilians can operate assembly areas under the supervision of tactical or support troops or CA personnel.

## EVACUATION

9-12 Evacuation creates serious problems and is only considered as a last resort. Per US doctrine, a division or higher commander can order an evacuation. When the decision is made to evacuate a community, CA and MP make detailed plans to prevent uncontrolled groups from disrupting the movement of military units and supplies. Consider the following when planning a mass evacuation:

- **Transportation** The CA plans for the maximum use of civilian transportation.
- **Security** The CA helps the Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2) with security screening and documentation of evacuees. Since the civilians are being removed from the area where they can best take care of themselves, the military provides security for them after

evacuation. They also provide security for property left behind, including farm animals and pets.

- **Documentation** Evacuees may need ID documents showing their name and the locality from which they were evacuated. As a control technique, CA personnel prepare a manifest that lists evacuees for movement.
- **Briefing** The MCO briefs evacuees before movement. He uses leaflets, loudspeakers, posters, and other means available. The briefing explains details of the move, such as restrictions on personal belongings and the organization and schedule for the movement.
- **Rations** For a movement lasting no more than 2 days, supply personnel issue rations to each evacuee at the time of departure or at designated points en route.
- **Health care** The public health team makes maximum use of civilian medical personnel, equipment, and supplies to provide health care to evacuees. Use military medical personnel, equipment, and supplies as supplements if necessary. Take proper steps to prevent the spread of infectious diseases before movement.
- **Return** Evacuation plans provide for evacuees' return and the criteria for determining the duration of their absence.

## MOVEMENT

9-13 Directing and controlling movement are vital when handling masses of DCs. The G5 and HN authorities are responsible for mass DC operations, and the MP may help direct DCs to alternate routes. If possible, incorporate HN assets in planning and implementation. Consider the following:

- **Route selection** When selecting routes for civilian movement, CA personnel consider the types of transportation common to the area. They coordinate the proposed traffic circulation plan with the transportation officer and the PM. All DC movements take place on designated civilian evacuation routes.
- **Route ID** After designating movement routes, CA personnel mark them in languages and symbols that civilians, US forces, and allied forces understand. The PSYOP units, MP, HN military forces, and other allied military units can help mark routes.
- **Control and assembly points** After selecting and marking movement routes, CA and HN authorities establish control and assembly points at selected key intersections. The G5 or S5 coordinates locations with the PM, the movement control center, and the Assistant Chief of Staff, G4 (Logistics) (G4) to include control and assembly points in the traffic circulation plan.
- **Emergency rest areas** The CA personnel set up emergency rest areas at congested points to provide immediate needs (water, food, fuel, maintenance, and medical services). Notify the PM to ensure that these areas are included in MP area security operations.
- **Local and national agencies** Using local and national agencies conserves military resources and reduces the need for interpreters and translators. Civilian authorities normally have legal status and are best equipped to handle their own people.



## FACILITIES

9-14 When large groups of civilians are quartered temporarily (less than 6 months) or semipermanently (more than 6 months), the commander may task CA units to establish a DC facility. If existing facilities (HN, NGO, IHO, or IO) are suitable for DC facilities and HN personnel are available to administer and operate the facility, MP units may not be required to establish I/R facilities. Under this scenario, CA units provide the HN with technical advice, support, and assistance, depending on the requirements. They may also furnish additional detachments and functional teams or specialists to resolve public health, welfare, and safety problems at the facility.

9-15 If the commander deploys MP units to the TO or tasks them to support DC operations, MP help set up, administer, and operate facilities in close coordination with CA forces, the HN, PSYOP units, NGOs, IHO, IOs, and other interested agencies. The MP unit commander becomes the I/R facility commander.

## MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT TO DISLOCATED-CIVILIAN OPERATIONS

9-16 The support of DC operations begins before an MP unit arrives in the TO or is tasked with the mission. The I/R facility commander has a thorough understanding of international law, the concept of DC operations, and how they apply to the mission. If time permits, he contacts the in-country G5/S5, CA units, and other organizations that may have a role in DC operations (see Chapter 1). The CA forces provide MP leaders and soldiers with expertise on factors that directly affect DC operations. Some of the factors include—

- The availability of HN agencies and the status of infrastructure
- Ethnic differences and resentments
- Social structures (family and regional)
- Religious and symbolic systems (beliefs and behaviors)
- Political structures (distribution of power)
- Economic systems (sources and distribution of wealth)
- Links among social, religious, political, and economic dynamics
- The cultural history of the area
- Attitudes toward US military forces
- Logistical requirements

9-17 When deployed to the TO, MP leaders coordinate with higher headquarters G5/S5, CA, PSYOP, HN, NGOs, IHO, and IOs before setting up and operating the I/R facility. After a clear understanding of the mission, the concept of operations, and other available information, the I/R facility commander uses the MDMP to determine specific tasks the MP unit performs to accomplish the mission. Some considerations include—

- Location
- Construction
- Setup
- Processing
- Screening

- Classification
- ID
- Clothing and equipment
- Subsistence
- Dining facilities
- Medical and sanitation
- Self-government
- Discipline
- Control
- Administration
- L&O
- ROI
- ROE
- Transportation
- Disposition

## LOCATION

9-18 The I/R facility commander coordinates with CA, the G5/S5, and other military and nonmilitary organizations when selecting a site for DC operations. The location depends on the availability of supply routes, food, water, power, and waste disposal. Avoid sites near vital communications centers, large military installations, or other potential military targets. Also consider the susceptibility of the area to natural and man-made disasters (floods, pollution, and fire) and the use of facility personnel as a source of local labor support.

## CONSTRUCTION

9-19 The DCs, local agencies, or government employees construct facilities when possible. The supporting command's logistics and transportation assets acquire and transport materials to build or modify existing facilities. Local sources may provide materials within legal limitations. The supporting command also furnishes medical, subsistence, and other supporting assets to establish DC facilities. Engineer support and military construction materials may be necessary when I/R facilities are set up in areas where local facilities are unavailable, for example, hotels, schools, halls, theaters, vacant warehouses, and unused factories.

9-20 The TCMS contains basic plans, specifications, and material requirements for building EPW/CI facilities based on population. The plans can be easily modified for DC operations in temperate, frigid, tropic, and desert climates.

9-21 If necessary, CS MP units and I/R MP units set up the facility using acquisitioned tentage and additional materials. The I/R facility commander considers the type of construction necessary to satisfy the needs of the DC operation. Some considerations are the—

- Local climate
- Anticipated permanency of the facility

- Number of facilities to be constructed
- Availability of local materials
- Extent of available military resources and assistance

## SETUP

9-22 Subdivide the facility into sections or separate compounds to ease administration and DC tension. Each section can serve as an administrative subunit for transacting facility business. Major sections normally include facility headquarters, hospital, dining facility, and sleeping areas. Subdivide sleeping areas for families, unaccompanied children, unattached females, and unattached males. Consider cultural and religious practices, and try to keep families together. Figure 9-2, page 9-10, shows a sample DC I/R facility. Additional facilities, fencing, and other requirements are based on the—

- Number of civilians
- Diversity of the population
- Resources available
- Need for a reactionary force
- Need to establish an animal compound
- Need to establish a vehicle-parking area

## PROCESSING

9-23 The initial reception of DCs begins with their transport from the assembly area to the inprocessing center of the I/R facility. Conduct processing in a positive manner because DCs are fearful. Ensure that DCs clearly understand why they are being processed and know what to expect at each station. The facility commander, a HN representative, or another official conducts an entrance briefing to DCs upon their arrival.

9-24 While the EPW/CI processing procedures discussed in previous chapters provide a foundation, I/R personnel must be aware of unique aspects when processing DCs. Military personnel provide training and support, while NGOs, IHOs, and IOs actually process DCs. The number and type of processing stations vary from operation to operation. Table 9-1, page 9-11, shows stations that may be required during DC operations.

9-25 The I/R facility commander determines the accountability procedures and requirements necessary for DC operations. Translators are present throughout processing. A senior person greets new arrivals and makes them feel welcome. Brief DCs on facility policies and procedures and screen them to identify security and medical concerns. Offer them the use of personal-hygiene facilities, and always maintain family integrity.

9-26 Conduct pat-down searches to ensure that weapons are not introduced into the compound. Conduct same-gender searches when possible, and do not conduct strip searches. Speed and security considerations may require mixed-gender searches. If so, perform them in a respectful manner, using all possible measures to prevent any action that could be interpreted as sexual molestation or assault. The on-site supervisor carefully controls soldiers doing mixed-gender searches to prevent allegations of sexual misconduct. Using HN, NGO, or IHO assets to conduct searches may prevent an intense situation from developing.

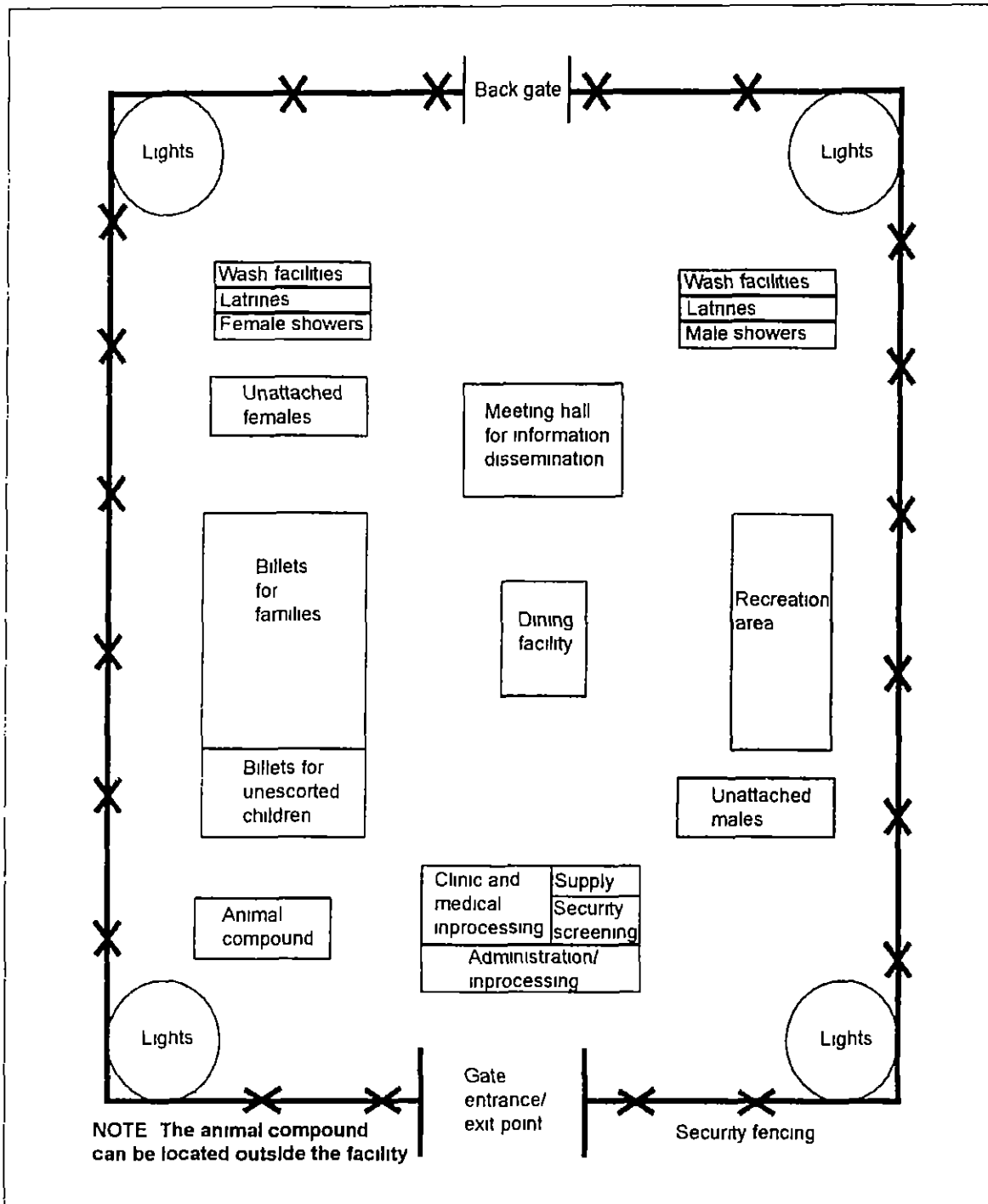


Figure 9-2. Sample DC I/R Facility

Table 9-1. Actions During Inprocessing

Station	Purpose	Responsible Individuals*	Actions
1	Search and screening	I/R staff, MI, NGOs, IHOs, and IOs	Conduct a pat-down search to ensure that weapons are not introduced into the facility Ensure that the facility is not infiltrated by insurgents
2	Accountability	I/R staff	Prepare forms and records to maintain accountability of DCs Use forms and records provided by HN, CA, or those used for EPW/CI operations that may apply to DCs
3	ID card or band	I/R staff	Issue an ID card or band to each DC if required to ease facility administration and control
4	Medical evaluation	Medical personnel	Evaluate DCs for signs of illness or injury, and treat them as necessary
5	Assignment	I/R staff	Assign a sleeping area to each DC
6	Personal items	I/R staff	Issue personal-comfort items and clothing if available

\*The number of people performing these tasks depends on the number of DCs and the time available When possible, allow HN authorities to conduct most of the inprocessing

## SCREENING

9-27 Screening may be necessary to prevent infiltration by insurgents, enemy agents, or escaped members of hostile armed forces Although intelligence and other units may screen DCs, friendly and reliable local civilians can perform this function under the supervision of MP and CA personnel Screeners carefully apply administrative controls to prevent infiltration and preclude alienation of people who are sympathetic to US objectives The screening process also identifies technicians and professionals to help administer the facility, for example, policemen, schoolteachers, doctors, dentists, nurses, lawyers, mechanics, carpenters, and cooks

## CLASSIFICATION

9-28 The MP classify DCs during processing They coordinate with CA, NGOs, IHOs, and IOs to determine proper classifications Expect a continuing need for reclassification and reassignment of DCs Statements made by a DC and the information on his ID papers determine his initial classification Agitators, enemy plants, and individuals who should be classified as EPWs or CIs will be identified by their activities Reclassify them according to their identity or ideology

## IDENTIFICATION

9-29 Identifying DCs may or may not be necessary, it depends on guidance from higher headquarters, CA, the HN, and other agencies The need for ID varies from operation to operation, and it is used to—

- Verify rosters against the actual population

- Provide timely reunification of family members
- Match DCs with their medical records in case of a medical emergency or evacuation
- Check identities of DCs against the transfer roster

9-30 An ID card can be used to facilitate ID. It contains the DC's name, photograph, and control number. The control number may be an ISN or a sequenced control number specific to the DC. Color-coded IDs permit ID by categories (see Chapter 1). An ID band permits rapid, reliable ID of an individual and may also be used in DC operations. While DCs cannot be prevented from removing or destroying ID bands, most will accept their use for ID purposes. When ID bands or cards deteriorate, replace them immediately.

### CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT

9-31 Supply DCs with adequate, suitable clothing and sleeping equipment if they do not have supplies with them. Requisition clothing and equipment through NGOs, IHOs, IOs, and HN sources when possible. In a combat environment, use available captured clothing and equipment. Ensure that DCs wear clothing until it is unserviceable, and replace it as necessary.

### SUBSISTENCE

9-32 Ensure that food rations are sufficient in quantity, quality, and variety to maintain health and prevent weight loss and nutritional deficiencies. Consider the habitual diet of the DC population, and be aware that DCs may bring their own rations and cooking utensils. Allow DCs to prepare their own meals after coordination with CA, the HN, and NGOs, IHOs, IOs who support the facility.

9-33 Ensure that expectant and nursing mothers and children under the age of 15 receive additional food in proportion to their needs. Increase the rations of workers based on the type of labor performed. Provide plenty of fresh water. A good planning factor is 20 gallons per individual per day.

9-34 Make minimal menu and feeding-schedule changes to prevent unrest among the DC population. Inform the DC leadership when changes must be made.

### DINING FACILITIES

9-35 Dining-facility requirements vary depending on the number of DCs and the availability of equipment. If deemed necessary, the I/R facility commander can authorize local procurement of cooking equipment. Consult with SJA to determine the purchasing mechanism and the legality of items being purchased. Coordinate with NGOs, IHOs, and IOs for food service support. Train selected DCs to perform food service operations, and ensure that they are constantly supervised by US food service personnel.

### MEDICAL AND SANITATION CONSIDERATIONS

9-36 Due to the temporary nature of an I/R facility, the need for medical care and sanitation intensifies. If possible, locate a sick call tent adjacent to each

major compound inside the facility to ensure prompt medical screening and treatment. Enforcement and education measures ensure that the facility population complies with basic sanitation measures. Provide medical care via organic I/R medical personnel or coordinate with the appropriate HN medical authorities. To prevent communicable diseases, follow the guidance in FM 21-10 and other applicable publications. Conduct routine, preplanned health, comfort, and welfare inspections that appear to be random. Inspections ensure that the facility is safe, sanitary, and hazard-free. When conducting inspections—

- Ensure that their purpose is conveyed and emphasized to DC leaders
- Respect cultural beliefs such as religious tenets and shrines. The INS, international support groups, community leaders, CA, and DC leaders are good sources for information regarding cultural sensitivities
- Treat DCs and their possessions with respect

## SELF-GOVERNMENT

9-37 One of the best ways to ensure DC cooperation in a facility is to establish a form of self-government. It minimizes the impression that DCs are under the control of a foreign government and allows them to feel a degree of control over their lives. Chapter 5 and AR 190-8 contain procedures for establishing a CI committee. Use the procedures as a model for establishing a DC self-government, and coordinate with CA for assistance.

9-38 Self-government leaders can help solve problems before they become major events. The infrastructure of self-government promotes a stable environment where rapport is built between the facility commander, the DC leadership, and the DC population. This, in turn, reduces tension and provides an effective means of communicating reliable information to the facility population.

9-39 The DCs can submit complaints and requests to the I/R facility commander via—

- An elected DC internment committee
- A written complaint
- A visiting representative of the UNHRC or a similar agency

## DISCIPLINE

9-40 Facility commanders establish and strictly enforce measures to maintain discipline and security. Establish rules that can be easily followed by everyone, and coordinate the rules with SJA and HN authorities. Determine how to enforce rules and how to deal with DCs who violate noncriminal rules. Establish daily or periodic routines and responses that are conducive to good discipline and control. Ensure that facility personnel—

- Enforce policies and procedures to control DCs
- Give reasonable orders decisively and in a language that DCs understand
- Post copies of the UN mandate relating to the situation in every compound where DCs can easily read them

- Post facility rules, regulations, instructions, notices orders, and announcements that DCs are expected to obey in an easily accessed area Ensure that the information is printed in a language that DCs understand, and provide a copy to DCs who do not have access to posted copies
- Ensure that DCs obey orders, rules, and directives
- Report DCs who refuse or fail to obey an order or a regulation to DC leaders and HN authorities
- Do not fraternize with DCs
- Do not donate or receive gifts or engage in any commercial activity with DCs

9-41 Discipline and control also apply to I/R facility personnel They—

- Observe rigorous self-discipline
- Maintain a professional, impersonal attitude
- Follow ROI and ROE guidelines
- Cope with hostile or unruly behavior and incidents calmly
- Take fair, immediate, decisive action

## CONTROL

9-42 Controlling personnel is the key to successful facility operations The I/R facility commander ensures efficient, effective control that meets US obligations under international law Facility control includes measures to reduce waste and avoid duplication of effort The commander—

- Establishes and maintains discipline quickly and fairly
- Publishes and enforces rules of conduct and updates them as necessary
- Serves as the single POC, coordinating all matters within the facility and with outside organizations and agencies
- Establishes and posts barracks rules such as those shown in Figure 9-3

9-43 Use HN civilians as cadre for facility administration, and encourage DCs to become involved in facility administration Past experience shows that about 6 percent of DCs should be employed on a full-time basis If possible, I/R facility and CA personnel organize and train cadre before the facility opens The HN civilians come from public and private welfare organizations and are under military supervision

9-44 Problems might stem from DCs' state of mind The difficulties they experienced may affect their acceptance of authority They may have little initiative or may be uncooperative because of an uncertain future They may be angry because of their losses, or they may resort to looting and general lawlessness because of their destitution The I/R facility commander can minimize difficulties through careful administration and—

- Maintaining different national and cultural groups in separate facilities or sections
- Keeping families together



<b>Barracks Rules</b>	
1	Do not move from assigned barracks without permission
2	Maintain the sanitary and physical condition of barracks
3	Empty and wash trash cans daily
4	Do not bring food or cooking utensils in barracks
5	Do not take food, except baby food and fruit, from the dining facility
6	Do not have weapons in barracks or surrounding facilities
7	Do not have pets in the dining facility
8	Turn off indoor lights in barracks by 2300
9	Do not play radios, record players, or tape recorders in barracks after 2300
10	Do not allow children to play on fire escapes
11	Watch children carefully, and do not allow them to wander out of residential areas
12	Do not throw diapers or sanitary napkins in toilets. Place these items in trash cans
13	Do not allow children to chase or play with wild animals because they bite and carry diseases
14	Obtain barracks supplies from the barracks chief
15	Do not smoke, use electrical appliances for heating or cooking, or have open fires in barracks

**Figure 9-3 Sample Barracks Rules**

- Separating unaccompanied males, females, and children under the age of 18 (based on HN laws as to when a child becomes an adult)
- Furnishing DCs with information about their status and future
- Allowing DCs to speak freely to facility officials
- Involving DCs in facility administration, work, and recreation
- Establishing quick contact with agencies for aid and family reunification

## ADMINISTRATION

9-45 Disseminating instructions and information to the facility population is vital. Communications may be in the form of notices on bulletin boards, posters, public address systems, loudspeakers, facility meetings and assemblies, or a facility radio station. The CA teams and area PSYOP units can help disseminate information.

9-46 Another tool for effective administration is using liaison personnel. Liaison involves coordination with all interested agencies. The US government and military authorities, allied liaison officers, and representatives of local governments and international agencies can provide assistance. Implement the following standards related to DC treatment:

- Do not penalize or expose them to unfavorable treatment because their presence in the country is considered unlawful

- Do not restrict their movement except when necessary for public health and order
- Allow them to enjoy their fundamental rights
- Treat them as persons whose plight requires special understanding and sympathy Provide necessary assistance, and do not subject them to cruel, inhumane, or degrading treatment
- Do not discriminate because of race, religion, political opinion, nationality, or country of origin
- Recognize that they are persons before the law who enjoy free access to the courts of law and other competent administrative authorities
- Base the I/R facility's location on the safety needs and well-being of DCs and the security needs of the receiving state
- Provide them with necessities (food, shelter, and basic sanitary and health facilities)
- Maintain family units when possible
- Provide assistance for tracing relatives
- Protect minors and unaccompanied children
- Allow them to send and receive mail

## LAW AND ORDER

9-47 The I/R facility commander is also the safety and security officer. He deals with crimes against persons and property, performs security patrols, and conducts reaction team operations. If an L&O team is attached to the organization, it performs L&O-related functions. Otherwise, the commander uses organic resources such as an MP guard company, to establish an MP desk and blotter and perform other specific functions. The location of the MP station depends on the facility's layout and the commander's needs.

9-48 Some other sources for security officers include local police forces, HN paramilitary and military forces, and the facility population. Police personnel within the population can supplement security teams or constitute a facility police force if necessary. Internal and external patrols are necessary, however, ensure that security does not give the impression that the facility is a prison. Base patrol areas and distribution plans on the size of the facility and the number of DCs in each subdivision. If a DC is apprehended for committing a crime, coordinate with SJA and HN authorities to determine the disposition and the status of the subject and the disposition of the case paperwork, evidence (including crime lab analysis results), and recovered property. Also obtain information on items, procedures, and agreements unique to the supported HN.

9-49 Be prepared to perform civil-disturbance operations to restore L&O. Identify a reactionary force that can be immediately deployed and employed inside the facility to control a disturbance. The size of the reactionary force depends on the facility population and the available military forces. The reactionary force is well trained, well organized, and knowledgeable of applicable ROE, the use-of-force policy, and the use of NLWs and civil-disturbance measures. (See Appendix B and FM 19-15 for more information.)

9-50 Basic guidelines and the foundation for I/R facility L&O are provided in FMs 19-10 and 19-20. The I/R facility commander tailors the forms and procedures to his specific mission.

## RULES OF INTERACTION

9-51 The ROI provide soldiers with a guide for interacting with the DC population. The following points may be included in the ROI:

- Avoid discussing politics or immigration policies with DCs
- Avoid making promises to DCs. If cornered, reply with, "I will see what I can do."
- Refrain from making obscene gestures at DCs because they may understand the meaning.
- Avoid making derogatory remarks or political comments about DCs. Local linguists understand English, and DCs might understand it.
- Treat DCs equally. They may become offended if they do not receive the same treatment or resources others receive.
- Respect religious articles and materials.
- Treat medical problems seriously.
- Treat DCs with respect.
- Greet DCs in their own language.
- Clear phrases that DCs teach to soldiers through a linguist to ensure that they do not contain obscene language.

## RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

9-52 The DC ROE vary from operation to operation. The CINC establishes ROE in conjunction with SJA and upon joint staff approval. The CINC approves special ROE developed for use in DC facilities that are controlled and secured by MP. The ROE may evolve to fit the changing environment, ensuring continued protection and safety for the DC population and US personnel. Ensure that ROE remain simple and understandable so that soldiers are not confused and do not have to memorize extensive checklists. Key definitions are—

- **Deadly force** Force that is likely to cause death or serious bodily harm. An attack with an edged weapon and the use of a firearm are examples of deadly force.
- **Hostile act** An attack or the use of deadly force against a person.
- **Hostile intent** A threat of deadly force against a person. This term is used to anticipate a hostile act or to react to a threat before it occurs by applying graduated levels of nondeadly force.

9-53 Design ROE around escalating use of force. Resolve a conflict with the minimum force necessary, but allow leaders and soldiers to escalate the level of force as necessary to retain control. For example—

- First Give a verbal warning.
- Second Present a show of force, such as pepper spray, a stun gun, or a shotgun.
- Third Use pepper spray or a stun gun.

- Fourth Use a riot baton
- Fifth Fire a shotgun using nonlethal rounds or bird shot

9-54 Nonlethal measures can be authorized by the ROE anytime during an operation to protect soldiers and DCs from injury. The NLWs include riot batons, pepper spray, stun guns, and shotguns loaded with nonlethal munitions or bird shot. The ROE may include nondeadly force to protect mission-essential equipment from damage or destruction. Mission-essential equipment includes tactical and nontactical vehicles, communications equipment, weapons, computers, and office and personal equipment.

9-55 The ROE normally authorize the use of deadly force only in extreme situations, such as—

- When there is an immediate or imminent threat of death or serious bodily harm to US personnel, civilians, or DCs
- When its use would not significantly increase the risk of death or serious bodily harm to innocent persons
- When lesser, nondeadly force fails or is impractical
- When it is a last resort

## TRANSPORTATION

9-56 The DC facility requires adequate transportation assets. Since MP units have limited organic transportation assets, the unit MCO or the CA transportation specialist coordinates and determines the types and numbers of vehicles required and makes provisions to have them on hand. The I/R facility commander uses civilian or captured enemy vehicles when possible.

## DISPOSITION

9-57 The final step in DC operations is the disposition of DCs. Allowing DCs to return to their homes as quickly as tactical considerations permit lessens the burden on military and civilian economies. It also reduces the danger of diseases that are common among people in confined areas. When DCs return home, they can help restore their towns and can better contribute to their own support. If DCs cannot return home, they may resettle elsewhere in their country or in a country that accepts them. Guidance on the disposition of DCs comes from higher authority upon coordination with US forces, national authorities, and international agencies.

9-58 The most important step in the disposition of DCs is the final handling of personnel and property. Before the DC operation is terminated, the I/R facility commander consults with higher headquarters, the SJA, and other pertinent agencies to determine the proper disposition of records.

## Chapter 10

# Humanitarian Assistance and Emergency Services

The HA operations encompass short-range programs aimed at ending or alleviating human suffering. They are usually conducted in response to natural or man-made disasters. The HA operations are designed to supplement or complement the efforts of HN civil authorities or agencies that have primary responsibility to provide relief. This type of assistance must not duplicate other forms of assistance provided by the US government. Government agencies are primarily responsible for ES operations (police, fire, rescue, and disaster preparedness). The effectiveness of ES plans and organization has a direct impact on CMO, and support to ES agencies can be provided as civil-military assistance. Although HA and ES operations can be conducted OCONUS, they are primarily conducted in CONUS.

### SECTION I - HUMANITARIAN ASSISTANCE

10-1 Military forces provide a secure environment for humanitarian-relief efforts. The HA mission covers a broad range of tasks, and specific requirements are situation-dependent. The HA operations have different meanings to different people, based on their perspective. The operation can encompass reactive programs (disaster relief) and proactive programs (humanitarian and civic assistance [H/CA]).

10-2 The HA operations present a different set of challenges to US military forces. While civilian and military authorities exercise PRC, they may not know the magnitude of the situation requiring HA. In addition, US forces may be tasked to perform HA operations in numerous and complex environments. As with MP support to PRC operations, the MP commander has a clear understanding of the operational environment, the ROE, and legal considerations before setting up an I/R facility to support HA operations.

### OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT

10-3 The US force commander coordinates with other responding organizations and assesses the environment where US forces will conduct HA operations. The operational environment includes the political situation, physical boundaries, the potential threat to forces, global visibility, and the media interest climate.

10-4 After the US force commander confirms the operational environment, he determines the types and numbers of forces required to meet the mission.

The operational environment also determines the ROE to be used within the AO. The more permissive the environment, the more predictable the outcome of the mission. The HA operational environments are categorized as permissive, uncertain, and hostile. The distinction between HA conducted in a permissive environment versus a hostile environment is clear. Failure to make this distinction results in inadequate planning and unrealistic expectations.

### PERMISSIVE ENVIRONMENT

10-5 A permissive environment is normally associated with relief operations following a natural disaster or an economic collapse. Assistance is provided at the request of the host government. A permissive environment is conducive to HA operations, and little or no opposition or resistance to military forces is expected. Nonhostile, anti-US interests may try to disrupt US military activities. The physical-security environment may be permissive, however, other nonthreatening means (demonstrations) may be employed to impair credibility or to reduce the effectiveness of US military activities. A permissive environment is characterized by—

- A commonality of purpose for all parties
- A quantifiable problem (often a single, natural disaster)
- Clear objectives (providing support until normalcy returns)
- HN cooperation

### UNCERTAIN ENVIRONMENT

10-6 In an uncertain environment, FN forces do not have effective control of the territory and population in the intended AO. They may or may not be receptive to HA operations.

### HOSTILE ENVIRONMENT

10-7 A hostile environment includes conditions, circumstances, and influences ranging from a civil disorder or a terrorist act to full-scale combat. Forces conducting HA must be prepared for a full range of contingencies. Commanders can employ forces to safeguard the populace, defend the perimeter, provide escort convoys, screen the local populace, and assist in personnel recovery operations. A hostile environment is characterized by—

- Multiple conflicting parties
- Imminent danger to all parties
- Relief as a weapon manipulated by combatants for political gain

10-8 The more hostile the environment, the less predictable the outcome of the mission. The HA forces must be prepared to counter actions by hostile forces attempting to disrupt the HA mission and to counter actions by a previously friendly populace. Commanders do not depend on their humanitarian mission to shield them from hostile acts. The joint forces commander (JFC) coordinates with higher authorities and determines the appropriateness of the use of force. The effects of the environment on HA activities are shown in Figure 10-1. As the environment becomes more hostile, the requirement for security increases and the capability for HA (such as food distribution and medical assistance) decreases. (See FM 100-23-1 for more information on HA operations.)

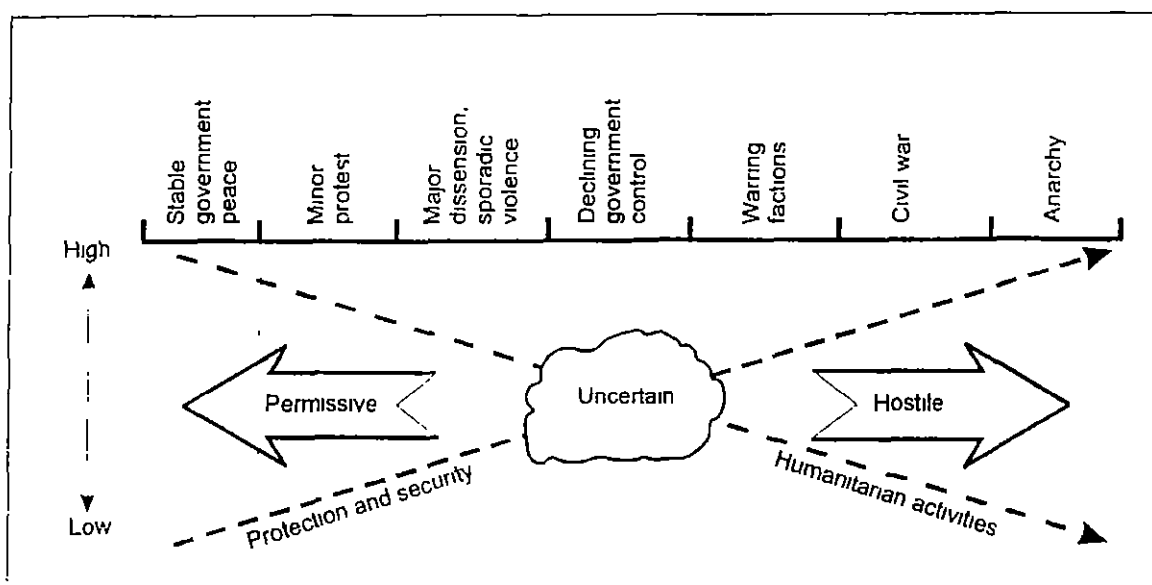


Figure 10-1. HA Environment

## RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

10-9 The sensitive political and international nature of HA operations means that the CINC must coordinate the ROE details (which may change as the operation evolves) with the JFC. Under normal circumstances, the joint chief of staff's (JCS's) standing ROE apply to all military operations. The CINC requests supplemental measures to deal with the specifics of the mission. Actual ROE established for each HA mission depend on the individual situation and the operational environment.

10-10 The ROE development for forces participating in HA operations is essential to mission success and is characterized by restraint. The levels of force, tactics, and weaponry are evaluated and addressed. For multinational operations, all participating military forces establish common HA ROE to provide consistency within the force. Individual nations using separate ROE respond differently to the same situation. The following precepts are essential to the ROE for US military forces:

- The right of self-defense is never prohibited. The two elements of self-defense are necessity and proportionality.
- A unit commander defends against a hostile act or intent. A hostile act must occur or a hostile intent must be apparent. The use of force must be reasonable in intensity, duration, and magnitude to ensure the safety of forces.

## LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS

10-11 Regardless of the circumstances under which US forces are employed, international law obligates the commander with respect to civilians, governments, and economics. Agreements or the law of land warfare usually specify the requirements. The Hague and Geneva Conventions and similar

documents set forth treaty obligations, and FM 27-10 and other service publications explain the commander's legal obligations

10-12 The JFC must be aware of existing international agreements that may limit the flexibility of the HA mission. Existing agreements may not be shaped to support HA operations. Military HA commanders dealing with HNs and IOs should anticipate the difficulties that international agreements can impose on HA operations.

10-13 Normally, the law of land warfare does not apply to HA operations. However, it is used in conjunction with the Geneva and Hague Conventions, protocols, and custom laws that may provide guidance to the JFC. Commanders, unless otherwise directed by competent authorities, comply with the principles and spirit of the law of land warfare during HA operations. Mission imperatives and tasks must have a sound legal basis, and commanders ensure that personnel conform to internationally accepted standards of behavior and actions—especially as they relate to the humane treatment of civilians, the respect for private property, and the use of force.

## MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT

10-14 There are some key differences between MP support to DC operations and MP support to HA. Since HA operations are usually conducted in response to a disaster, the level of property devastation and human suffering may require special attention and planning considerations. One of the special considerations may be the need for temporary shelter. If the JFC determines that the availability of HN shelters or other services is inadequate, he may request the assistance and deployment of CS or I/R units to accomplish the HA mission. When the decision is made to employ an MP unit, the MP commander becomes the I/R facility commander.

10-15 The MP support to HA operations begins before the unit arrives in the TO or is tasked with the mission. The I/R facility commander has a thorough understanding of the legal considerations and the concept of operations, including how they apply to the MP mission. If time permits, the I/R facility commander contacts the JFC G5/S5, SJA, CA, and other organizations that may have a role in HA operations. The CA forces can provide expertise on factors that affect HA operations, such as—

- The availability of HN agencies and the status of infrastructure
- Ethnic differences and resentments
- Social structures (family and regional)
- Religious and symbolic systems (beliefs and behaviors)
- Political structures (distribution of power)
- Economic systems (sources and distribution of wealth)
- Links among social, religious, political, and economic dynamics
- The cultural history of the area
- Attitudes toward US military forces

10-16 When deployed to the TO, an I/R facility commander coordinates with and receives updated information from higher headquarters G5/S5, CA, and PSYOP, the HN, and applicable NGOs, IHOs, and IOs before setting up and



operating an I/R facility. He uses the MDMP to determine the specific tasks the MP unit performs to accomplish the HA mission. Some considerations include—

- Location
- Construction
- Setup
- Processing
- Screening
- ID
- Clothing and equipment
- Subsistence
- Dining facilities
- Medical and sanitation
- Self-government
- Control and discipline
- Administration
- L&O
- ROI
- Transportation
- Disposition

## LOCATION

10-17 The location of the I/R facility is extremely important, especially when responding to a disaster. Consider METT-TC, the susceptibility of the area to natural or man-made disasters (flood, pollution, and fire), and the use of HN personnel as a source of local labor support. The location also depends on the availability of supply routes, food, water, power, and waste disposal. The I/R facility commander selects the location of the facility after coordinating with JFC, CA, G5/S5, the HN, and other military and nonmilitary organizations.

## CONSTRUCTION

10-18 Try to construct the facility using local agencies or government employees. The goal is to have the facility fully constructed and operational before accepting any civilians. This is important because the civilian population may have suffered total family or property loss and may not be in the best psychological or physical condition to help with construction efforts. Within legal limitations, use local sources and materials if they are available. Otherwise, use the supporting command's logistics and transportation assets to acquire and transport the resources required to build or modify existing facilities for HA operations. The supporting command and the HN also furnish medical, subsistence, and other supporting assets to establish I/R facilities. Engineer support and military construction materials may be necessary when I/R facilities are set up in areas where local facilities are unavailable or destroyed, for example, hotels, schools, halls, theaters, vacant warehouses, unused factories, or workers' camps. The TCMS can be used for HA operations. If necessary, MP units set up a facility using acquisitioned tentage and additional materials. The I/R facility commander considers the type of

construction necessary to satisfy the needs of the HA operation. Some considerations are—

- The local climate
- The anticipated permanency of the facility
- The number of facilities to be constructed
- Local materials available
- Military resources and assistance available

## SETUP

10-19 Subdivide the facility into sections or separate compounds to ease administration and alleviate stress among civilians. Each section can serve as an administrative subunit for transacting facility business. Major sections normally include facility headquarters, a hospital, a dining facility, and sleeping areas. Subdivide sleeping areas for families, unaccompanied children, unattached females, and unattached males. Consider cultural and religious practices, and try to keep families together. Figure 10-2 shows a sample HA I/R facility. Additional facilities, fencing, and other requirements are based on—

- The number of civilians
- The diversity of the population
- Resources available
- The need for a reactionary force
- Guidance from higher headquarters, CA, and the HN
- The need for temporary storage
- The duration of the operation
- The number of animals to be housed
- The number of vehicles

## PROCESSING

10-20 Processing may or may not be required. Coordinate the decision to process civilians with NGOs, IHOs, IOs, the HN, CA, and other interested agencies. The initial reception begins with the transport of civilians from their neighborhoods or other places to the inprocessing center of the I/R facility. The HN (in coordination with NGOs, IHOs and IOs) normally arranges transportation. Civilians may be fearful and in a state of shock, so conduct processing in a positive manner. In most situations, they should clearly understand why they are being processed and know what to expect at each station. The facility commander, an HN representative, or another official conducts an entrance briefing to civilians upon their arrival.

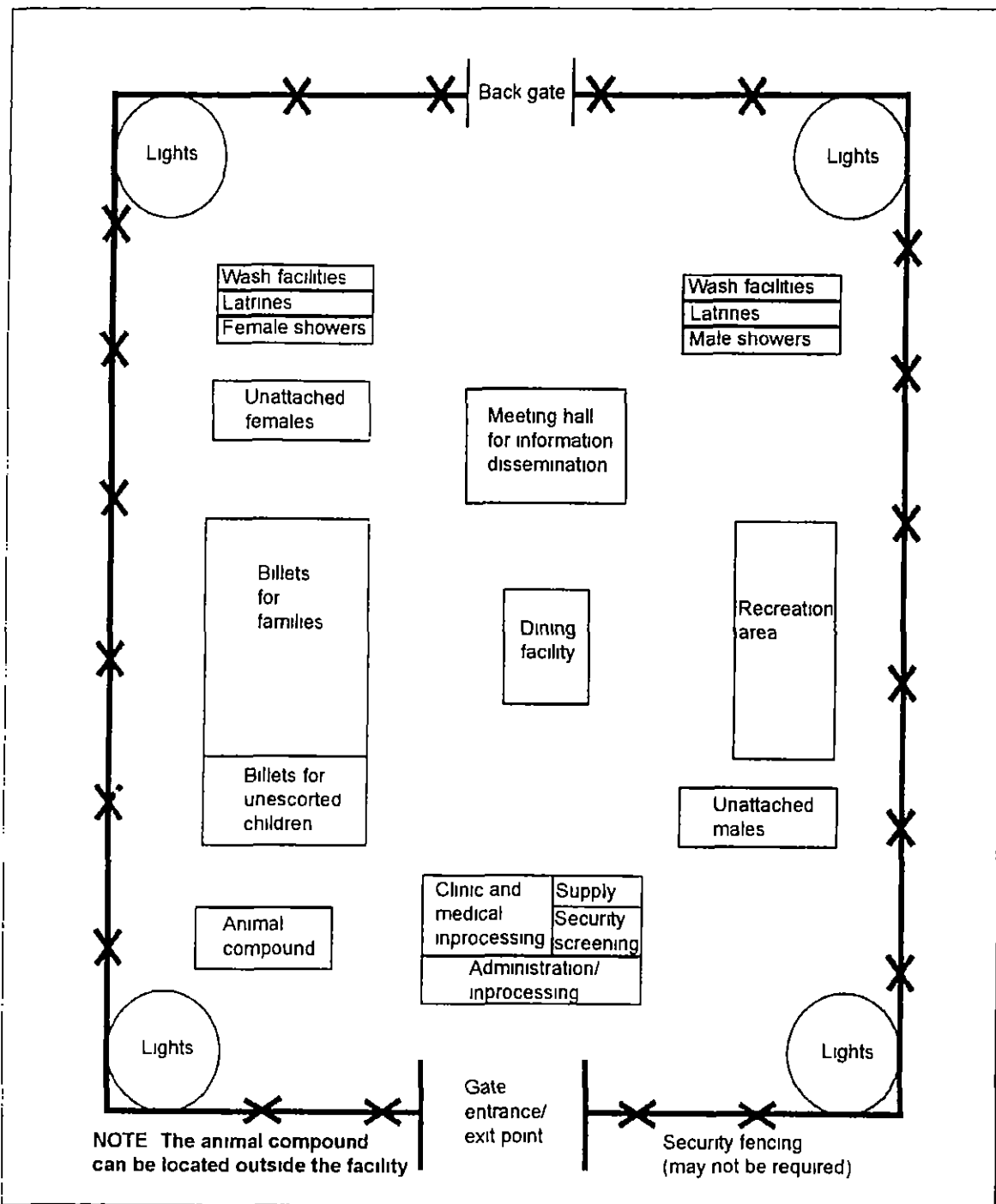


Figure 10-2 Sample HA I/R Facility

10-21 While DC processing procedures in Chapter 9 provide a foundation, I/R facility personnel must be aware of unique aspects when conducting HA operations. Military personnel normally provide training and support, and HN authorities do the actual processing. The number and type of processing stations vary from operation to operation. Table 10-1 shows stations that are required for HA operations.

**Table 10-1. Actions During Inprocessing**

Station	Purpose	Responsible Individuals*	Actions
1	Accountability	HN and I/R staff	Prepare forms and records to maintain accountability of civilians. Use forms and records provided by the HN, CA, or those used for EPW/CI operations that may apply to HA operations.
2	ID card or band	HN and I/R staff	Issue ID cards or bands to facilitate administration and control of the facility if necessary.
3	Medical evaluation	HN, I/R staff, and medical personnel	Evaluate civilians for signs of illness or injury.
4	Assignment	HN and I/R staff	Assign each civilian a sleeping area.
5	Personal items	HN and I/R staff	Issue personal-comfort items and, if available, clothing.

\*The number of people performing these tasks depends on the number of civilians and the time available. Allow HN authorities to conduct most of the inprocessing.

10-22 The I/R facility commander determines the accountability procedures and requirements necessary for HA operations. Translators are present throughout processing. A senior person greets new arrivals and makes them feel welcome. Brief civilians on facility policies and procedures and screen them to identify security and medical concerns. Offer them the use of personal-hygiene facilities, and always maintain family integrity.

10-23 Conduct pat-down searches to ensure that weapons are not introduced into the compound. Conduct same-gender searches when possible, and do not conduct strip searches. Speed and security considerations may require mixed-gender searches. If so, perform them in a respectful manner, using all possible measures to prevent any action that could be interpreted as sexual molestation or assault. The on-site supervisor carefully controls soldiers doing mixed-gender searches to prevent allegations of sexual misconduct.

## SCREENING

10-24 Depending on the environment, screening may or may not be necessary. The screening process also identifies technicians and professionals to help administer the facility, for example, policemen, schoolteachers, doctors, dentists, nurses, lawyers, mechanics, carpenters, and cooks.

## IDENTIFICATION

10-25 Identifying DCs may or may not be necessary, and it depends on guidance from higher headquarters, CA, and the HN. The need for ID varies from operation to operation, and it is used to—

- Verify rosters against the actual population

- Provide timely reunification of family members
- Match civilians with their medical records in case of a medical emergency or evacuation
- Check identities of civilians against the transfer roster

10-26 An ID card can be used to facilitate ID. It contains the civilian's name, photograph, and control number. The control number may be an ISN or a sequenced control number specific to the civilian. Color-coded IDs may be necessary to permit ID. An ID band permits rapid, reliable ID of an individual and may also be used in HA operations. While civilians cannot be prevented from removing or destroying bands, most will accept their use for ID purposes. When ID bands or cards deteriorate, replace them immediately.

## CLOTHING AND EQUIPMENT

10-27 Supply civilians with adequate, suitable clothing and sleeping equipment if they do not have supplies with them. Requisition clothing and equipment through NGOs, IHOs, and IOs when possible. In a hostile environment, use available captured clothing and equipment. Ensure that civilians wear clothing until it is unserviceable, and replace it as necessary.

## SUBSISTENCE

10-28 Ensure that food rations are sufficient in quantity, quality, and variety to maintain health and prevent weight loss and nutritional deficiencies. Consider the habitual diet of the civilian population. Ensure that expectant and nursing mothers and children under the age of 15 receive additional food in proportion to their needs. Increase the rations of workers based on the type of labor performed. Provide plenty of fresh potable water. Make minimal menu and feeding-schedule changes to prevent unrest among the population, and inform civilians when changes must be made.

## DINING FACILITIES

10-29 Dining-facility requirements for HA operations are similar to those for DC operations. If deemed necessary, the I/R facility commander can authorize local procurement of cooking equipment. Consult with SJA to determine the purchasing mechanism and the legality of items being purchased. Coordinate with NGOs, IHOs, and IOs for food service support. A qualified food service person is authorized in each 19547AB I/R detachment, and a food operations sergeant and a first cook provide food service support for each compound. Train selected civilians to perform food service operations, and ensure that they are constantly supervised by US food service personnel.

## MEDICAL AND SANITATION CONSIDERATIONS

10-30 The need for medical care and sanitation intensifies in an I/R environment due to its temporary nature, the lack of proper sanitation facilities, and the lack of basic community services (potable water and sewer). Enforcement and education measures ensure that the facility population complies with basic sanitation measures. Provide medical care via organic I/R medical personnel or coordinate with the appropriate HN medical authorities. To prevent communicable diseases, follow the guidance in FM 21-10 and other

applicable publications. Conduct routine, preplanned health, comfort, and welfare inspections that appear to be random. Ensure that inspections cause minimal disruption of space and privacy. Inspections ensure that the facility is safe, sanitary, and hazard-free. When conducting inspections—

- Ensure that their purpose is conveyed and emphasized to the civilian population
- Respect cultural beliefs such as religious tenets and shrines. The INS, international support groups, community leaders, CA, and HN authorities are good sources for information regarding cultural sensitivities
- Treat civilians and their possessions with respect

### SELF-GOVERNMENT

10-31 The I/R facility commander determines whether self-government is required and appropriate. If responding to a natural disaster, such as an earthquake, the civilian government may not be affected and the I/R facility may be used as shelter only. However, if the civilian government cannot be established or is nonoperational, self-government may be appropriate. Chapter 5 and AR 190-8 contain procedures for establishing a CI committee. Use the procedures as a model for establishing a CA self-government, and coordinate with CA for assistance.

10-32 Self-government leaders can help solve problems before they become major events. The infrastructure of self-government promotes a stable environment where rapport is built between the facility commander, the civilian leadership, and the civilian population. This, in turn, reduces tension and provides an effective means of communicating reliable information to the facility population.

10-33 Civilians can submit complaints and requests to the I/R facility commander via—

- An elected civilian internment committee
- A written complaint
- A visiting representative of the UNHRC or a similar agency

### CONTROL AND DISCIPLINE

10-34 Controlling people is the key to successful facility operations. Civilians housed in I/R facilities during HA are not prisoners. Consider this fact when drafting rules and guidelines. Establish, maintain, and enforce discipline and security to avoid unstable conditions that may further affect civilians during HA operations. Establish and explain rules that can be easily followed by everyone in the facility. Coordinate with SJA and HN authorities to determine how to enforce rules and how to deal with civilians who violate noncriminal rules. Publish and enforce rules of conduct and update them as necessary. The I/R facility commander serves as the single POC and coordinates all matters with outside organizations or agencies. Keep barracks rules brief and to a minimum (see Figure 9-3, page 9-15).

10-35 Discipline and control also apply to I/R facility personnel. They—

- Observe rigorous self-discipline

- Maintain a professional, impersonal attitude
- Follow the ROI and the ROE
- Cope with hostile or unruly behavior and incidents calmly
- Take fair, immediate, decisive action

10-36 The I/R facility commander takes positive action to establish daily or periodic routines and responses that are conducive to good discipline and control. He ensures that I/R facility personnel—

- Enforce policies and procedures
- Give reasonable orders decisively and in a language that residents understand
- Post facility rules, regulations, instructions, notices, orders, and announcements that residents are expected to obey in an easily accessed area. Ensure that the information is printed in a language that residents understand, and provide a copy to residents who do not have access to posted copies
- Ensure that residents obey orders, rules, and directives
- Report residents who refuse or fail to obey an order or a regulation
- Do not fraternize with residents
- Do not donate or receive gifts or engage in any commercial activity with residents

## ADMINISTRATION

10-37 Due to the large number of civilians requiring control and care, use HN civilians as cadre for facility administration when possible. The HN civilians should come from public and private welfare organizations and be under military supervision. Also encourage residents to become involved in facility administration. If possible, CA and I/R facility personnel organize and train cadre before the facility opens.

10-38 Problems might stem from civilians' state of mind. The difficulties they experienced may affect their acceptance of authority. They may have little initiative or may be uncooperative because of an uncertain future. They may be angry because of their losses, or they may resort to looting and general lawlessness because of their condition. The I/R facility commander can minimize difficulties through careful administration and—

- Maintaining different national and cultural groups in separate facilities or sections
- Keeping families together
- Separating unaccompanied males, females, and children under the age of 18 (based on HN laws as to when a child becomes an adult)
- Allowing civilians to speak freely to facility officials
- Involving civilians in facility administration, work, and recreation
- Establishing quick contact with agencies for aid and family reunification

10-39 The I/R facility commander administers the facility to ensure that civilians are treated according to the following basic standards:

- Do not restrict their movement except when necessary for public health and order
- Allow them to enjoy their fundamental rights
- Treat them as persons whose plight requires special understanding and sympathy Provide necessary assistance, and do not subject them to cruel, inhumane, or degrading treatment
- Do not discriminate because of race, religion, political opinion, nationality, or country of origin
- Recognize that they are persons before the law who enjoy free access to the courts of law and other competent administrative authorities
- Provide them with necessities (food, shelter, and basic sanitary and health facilities)
- Maintain family units when possible
- Provide assistance for tracing relatives
- Protect minors and unaccompanied children
- Allow them to send and receive mail
- Permit material assistance from friends and relatives
- Arrange for the registration of births, deaths, and marriages if possible
- Grant them the means necessary to obtain a satisfactory, durable solution
- Permit them to transfer assets to the country where they obtain a durable solution
- Take steps to facilitate voluntary repatriation
- Provide humane treatment and protect them against violence, intimidation, insults, and public curiosity

10-40 Disseminating instructions and information to the facility population is vital Communications may be in the form of notices on bulletin boards, posters, public address systems, loudspeakers, camp meetings and assemblies, or a facility radio station The CA teams and area PSYOP units can help disseminate information

10-41 Another tool for effective administration is using liaison personnel Liaison involves coordination with all interested agencies The US government and military authorities, allied liaison officers, and representatives of local governments and international agencies can provide assistance

## LAW AND ORDER

10-42 The I/R facility commander is also the safety and security officer He deals with crimes against persons and property, performs security patrols, and conducts reaction team operations If an L&O team is attached to the organization, it performs L&O-related functions Otherwise, the commander uses organic resources, such as an MP guard company, to establish an MP desk and blotter and perform other specific functions The location of the MP station depends on the facility's layout and the commander's needs



10-43 Some other sources for security officers include local police forces, HN paramilitary and military forces, and the facility population. Police personnel within the population can supplement security teams or constitute a facility police force if necessary. Internal and external patrols are necessary, however, ensure that security does not give the impression that the facility is a prison. Base patrol areas and distribution plans on the size of the facility and the number of civilians in each subdivision. Before apprehending a civilian, the commander coordinates with SJA and HN authorities to determine his jurisdiction and authority. He determines the disposition and the status of the subject and the disposition of the case paperwork, evidence (including crime lab analysis results), and recovered property. The commander also obtains information on items, procedures, and agreements unique to the supported HN.

10-44 Be prepared to perform civil-disturbance operations to restore L&O if HN reactionary forces are unavailable. Identify a reactionary force that can be immediately deployed and employed inside the facility to control a disturbance. The size of the reactionary force depends on the facility population and the available military forces. The reactionary force is well trained, well organized, and knowledgeable of applicable ROE, the use-of-force policy, and the use of NLWs and civil-disturbance measures. (See Appendix B and FM 19-15 for more information.)

10-45 Basic guidelines and the foundation for I/R facility L&O are provided in FMs 19-10 and 19-20. The I/R facility commander tailors the forms and procedures to his specific mission.

## RULES OF INTERACTION

10-46 The ROI provide soldiers with a guide for interacting with the civilian population. The following points may be included in the ROI:

- Avoid discussing politics or other policies with civilians.
- Avoid making promises. If cornered, reply with, "I will see what I can do."
- Refrain from making obscene gestures because civilians may understand the meaning.
- Avoid making derogatory remarks. Local linguists understand English and civilians might.
- Treat civilians equally. They may become offended if they do not receive the same treatment or resources others receive.
- Respect religious articles and materials.
- Treat medical problems seriously.
- Treat civilians with respect.
- Greet civilians in their own language.
- Clear phrases that civilians teach to soldiers through a linguist to ensure that they do not contain obscene language.

## TRANSPORTATION

10-47 The I/R facility requires adequate transportation assets. Since MP units have limited organic transportation assets, the unit MCO, the CA

transportation specialist, the HN, NGOs, and IHOs coordinate and determine the types and numbers of vehicles required and make provisions to have them on hand

## DISPOSITION

10-48 The final step in HA operations is the disposition of civilians. Allowing civilians to return to their homes as quickly as conditions permit lessens the burden on military and civilian economies. It also reduces the danger of diseases that are common among people in confined areas. When civilians return home, they can help restore their towns and can better contribute to their own support. If civilians cannot return home, they may resettle elsewhere in their country. Guidance on the disposition of civilians comes from higher authority upon coordination with US forces, national authorities, and international agencies.

## SECTION II - EMERGENCY SERVICES

10-49 Government agencies are primarily responsible for ES (police, fire, rescue, and disaster preparedness). Military support to ES agencies can be provided as civil-military assistance. The ES operations are normally conducted in CONUS, but they can be conducted OCONUS.

### IN CONTINENTAL UNITED STATES

10-50 In the US, the federal government is responsible for ES at all levels. It provides planning advice and coordinates research, equipment, and financial aid. State and local governments determine the allocation of these resources. In the event of an emergency, US forces are prepared to help civil authorities restore essential services, repair essential facilities and, if necessary, ensure national survival. Federal statutes and military regulations govern conditions for employing active component (AC) and United States Army Reserve (USAR) military forces. (See FM 100-19 for more information.)

10-51 The DOD components develop appropriate contingency plans for disaster assistance and ensure coordination with the appropriate federal, state, and local civil authorities. When a disaster is so serious that waiting for instructions from higher authority causes unwarranted delays, a military commander can take action under DOD Directive 3025.1. The directive authorizes military forces to respond immediately to save lives, prevent human suffering, and mitigate great property damage. This support cannot exceed 72 hours without DOD approval. The commander promptly reports the action to higher authority and requests guidance if continued support is necessary or beyond his capability.

10-52 The AC and USAR forces used in disaster relief are under the command of their military superiors. Other military participation and the use of military resources occur on a mission-by-mission basis and end at the earliest practicable time. Commanders ensure that personnel participating in domestic assistance are not in violation of the Posse Comitatus Act. This act prohibits the use of federal military personnel to enforce federal, state, or local

laws unless expressly authorized by the Constitution or by an act of Congress. The act does not apply to state national guard (NG) forces unless they have been federalized. When placed on state active duty, NG forces (Army and Air) are under the C<sup>2</sup> of state authorities, not federal forces.

10-53 Measures to ensure the continuity of operations, troop survival, and the rehabilitation of essential military bases take precedence over military support of local communities. Consider requests for support on a mission-by-mission basis. With the exception of support directed in response to a nationally declared emergency, the military commander decides the necessity, amount, duration, and employment method of support rendered.

10-54 When committing USAR units or individual reservists to disaster relief operations, ensure that—

- The President's reserve call-up allows CONUS deployment of USAR troops
- The commitment of USAR volunteers is consistent with Army policy for military assistance and is coordinated with the proper Corps of Engineer district or division to avoid duplication of effort. (The authority to commit USAR volunteers can be delegated no lower than CONUS Army.)
- Civil authorities make a firm commitment to repay active-duty tour (ADT) costs.
- State and local assets (including the NG) are committed if the requested assistance is within their capabilities.

10-55 A USAR commander can approve immediate-response, voluntary USAR participation during imminently serious conditions in a nondrill, nonpay status per DOD Directive 3025.1. The USAR members taking part in such support are performing official duty. The USAR commander—

- Does not order members to participate.
- Approves voluntary participation only when time or conditions do not permit seeking guidance from higher headquarters.
- Ensures that state and local assets are fully committed if the requested assistance is within their capabilities.
- Provides support on a mission-by-mission basis.
- Discontinues support when adequate state and local assets become available.

10-56 The MP units assisting ES operations in CONUS involve DOD-sponsored military programs that support the people and the government at all levels within the US and its territories. These programs and operations are classified as domestic support, and civil law and military regulations closely regulate a commander's authority and responsibilities.

10-57 Protecting life and property within the territorial jurisdiction of a community is the primary responsibility of state and local governments and civil authorities. Federal armed forces can be employed when—

- The situation is beyond state and local capabilities.
- State and local authorities do not take appropriate action.

## FEDERAL EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT AGENCY

10-58 The FEMA serves as the single POC within the US government for all emergency planning and management. It establishes and maintains a comprehensive, coordinated emergency management capability in the US. The FEMA plans and prepares for, responds and recovers from, and most importantly, mitigates the effects of emergencies, disasters, and hazards that range from safety and protection in the home to a nuclear attack. Within FEMA, two primary departments provide civil-defense plans and guidance.

### Plans and Preparedness Department

10-59 The Plans and Preparedness Department develops and implements overall concepts and policy guidance. It directs activities for nationwide plans and preparedness for emergencies during peace and war. The department develops guidance for federal emergency plans and state and local response capabilities, including tests and exercises for communications, warning, and damage assessment systems. It also develops policy guidance for stockpiling strategic materiel and develops plans, systems, and capabilities—

- To protect the US populace, government, and industry
- For resource management and stabilization of the economy during emergencies

### Disaster Response and Recovery Department

10-60 The Disaster Response and Recovery Department provides direction and overall policy coordination for federal disaster assistance programs. It advises the FEMA director on the mission, organization, and operation of the agency's disaster assistance program and the federal response and recovery capabilities. It administers federal disaster assistance and provides overall direction and management of federal response and recovery activities. The department develops summaries of existing situations to support the director's recommendation to the President on a state governor's request for a Presidential declaration of a major disaster or an emergency.

## MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT

10-61 The MP can be extremely valuable to civil authorities during ES. The CS and I/R MP units can operate an I/R-type facility that may become essential during ES. The MP units may be called upon to provide shelter to people whose community has been struck by a powerful disaster, such as a tornado or a hurricane. When civil authorities request assistance, MP units may be deployed and employed as part of a JTF anywhere in CONUS or its territories.

10-62 The MP support to ES in CONUS varies significantly from other I/R operations. The basic difference is that local and state governments and the federal government and its agencies have a greater impact and role in supporting and meeting the needs of an affected community. In CMO for disaster relief, MP receive missions from the FEMA through the DOMS and the chain of command. The MP commander uses the MDMP to determine the specific tasks necessary to accomplish the mission. Using the same format as

used in HA operations, the commander modifies and tailors the tasks as necessary

10-63 If tasked to set up and operate an I/R facility, the MP commander retains control of military forces under his command. Depending on the situation, overall control of the facility may or may not be maintained by FEMA or the DOJ. Coordinate the location of the I/R facility with local authorities. The city chief of police, mayor, or ES director may have already selected a site that has easy access, is located on high ground, or is adjacent to other services.

10-64 The I/R facility commander may or may not be able to depend on local labor to help set up the facility. The victims' state of mind and their physical conditions may prevent them from participating in construction efforts. However, assistance may not be required if the Engineer Corps uses the TCMS to build shelters or if other shelters are available. Discuss the facility's setup with local, state, and federal relief agencies. Although the basic setup for HA operations may be adequate, the I/R facility commander can modify the setup to meet local needs. As a minimum, the facility should have stations for processing, medical screening, and distribution of personal-hygiene items.

10-65 Screening, classification, and ID requirements may not be needed in CONUS ES operations. Discuss these capabilities with local authorities to determine the need for them. As with HA operations, clothing requirements may exceed supply. This will be the case during destructive disasters such as tornadoes, fires, and hurricanes. Coordinate clothing, subsistence, medical, and dining-facility requirements with local, state, and federal relief agencies responding to the disaster.

10-66 Since the Posse Comitatus Act prohibits MP from enforcing civilian laws, local, state, and federal law enforcement officials perform discipline, control, and L&O of the facility. The MP can be used in conjunction with local, state, and federal law enforcement officials, but they cannot be directly involved in law enforcement functions such as search, seizure, and arrest. A facility staff member who observes a violation of criminal law reports the incident to civilian law enforcement officials. The ROI, if applicable, are provided by the JFC.

## OUTSIDE CONTINENTAL UNITED STATES

10-67 The FNs are responsible for providing ES for their citizens. When requirements exceed their capabilities, they may request assistance through the US Embassy.

10-68 The DOD components support or participate in foreign disaster relief operations when the DOS determines that disaster relief will be provided to the requesting country. Military commanders at the immediate scene of a foreign disaster may provide prompt relief operations to preserve lives and prevent injuries when time is of the essence and when humanitarian considerations make it advisable. Commanders taking such action immediately report operations according to the provisions of DOD Directive 5100.46.

10-69 The Assistant Secretary of Defense (ASD) for Democracy and Peacekeeping is the approval authority for committing DOD resources or services to foreign disaster relief operations. The DASD for H&RA (Global Affairs) is the DOD coordinator for foreign disaster relief operations. The Logistics Directorate (J4) is the joint staff's POC for the DOD Foreign Disaster Relief and Humanitarian Assistance Program.

10-70 The ASD for International Security Affairs approves DOD supplies and services for disaster and humanitarian purposes. He provides supplies and services from the most expedient source, which is normally the geographic command from whose theater the request emanates.

10-71 The geographic CINC assumes the primary coordinating role for providing DOD supplies and services. The military departments and the joint staff support the designated commander of a unified command as required, primarily by coordinating interdepartmental approval and funding processes through the DASD for H&RA (Global Affairs).

10-72 When a request emanates from a country not assigned to a geographic CINC under the Unified Command Plan, the joint staff or the J4 assumes the primary coordinating role in conjunction with the DASD for H&RA. Requests for DOD assistance are received from the DOS or the USAID through the OFDA.

#### UNITED STATES AGENCY FOR INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT

10-73 The USAID administers the President's authority to coordinate assistance in response to disasters, as declared by the ambassador within the country or a higher DOS authority. The USAID is authorized to provide assistance, notwithstanding any other provision of law. This authority allows the USAID to expedite interventions at the operational and tactical levels using NGOs and other relief sources. The USAID—

- Organizes and coordinates the US disaster relief response
- Responds to requests for disaster assistance
- Initiates procurement of supplies, services, and transportation

10-74 The Foreign Assistance Act is the authority for providing disaster relief to—

- Preserve life and minimize suffering by providing sufficient warning of natural events that cause disasters
- Preserve life and minimize suffering by responding to natural and man-made disasters
- Foster self-sufficiency among disaster-prone nations by helping them achieve some measure of preparedness
- Alleviate suffering by providing rapid, appropriate responses to requests for aid
- Enhance recovery through rehabilitation programs

10-75 The USAID coordinates with the DOD on matters concerning defense equipment and personnel provided to the affected nation and to arrange DOD transportation. DOD Directive 5100.46 establishes the relationship between the DOD and the USAID. The DASD for H&RA is the primary POC. When the

USAID requests specific services from the DOD, typically airlift, it pays for the services. The CINC coordinates with the OFDA to arrange military and civilian assistance efforts. The USAID provides an excellent means for military and civilian operational-level coordination.

10-76 The USAID has operational links and grants relationships with many NGOs and IOs that have relief programs outside the US. These include the ICRC, the IFRC, the UNICEF, and the WFP. The USAID also coordinates with other governments responding to disasters through donor country coordination meetings to solve operational and political problems. The USAID can deploy a disaster assistance response team (DART) into the AOR to manage US relief efforts.

### DISASTER ASSISTANCE RESPONSE TEAM

10-77 The DART concept was developed to provide rapid response to international disasters. A DART provides specialists trained in a variety of disaster relief skills who assist US Embassies and the USAID in managing the US government's response to disasters.

10-78 The activities of a DART vary depending on the type, size, and complexity of the disaster. The DARTs coordinate with the affected country, other assisting countries, NGOs, IOs, and US military assets deployed to the disaster. During rapid-onset disasters, DARTs—

- Coordinate the needs assessment
- Recommend US government response actions
- Manage US government on-site relief activities

During long-term, complex disasters, DARTs—

- Gather information on the disaster situation
- Monitor the effectiveness of current US government-funded relief activities
- Review proposals of relief activities for future funding
- Recommend follow-on strategies and actions to the OFDA

10-79 The number of people assigned to a DART depends on the activities needed to meet the strategic objectives. A DART consists of five functional areas—management, operations, planning, logistics, and administration.

- **Management** It includes the oversight of DART activities, NGOs, IOs, other assisting countries, and the US military. It also involves the development and implementation of plans to meet strategic objectives.
- **Operations** It includes all operational activities carried out by a DART, such as search, rescue, and aerial operations, technical support, and medical response. This function is most active during rapid-onset disasters.
- **Planning** It includes collecting, evaluating, tracking, and disseminating information on the disaster. It also includes reviewing activities, recommending future actions, and developing operational (tactical) plans.
- **Logistics** It includes providing support to the OFDA and DARTs by managing supplies, equipment, and services and by ordering,

receiving, distributing, and tracking people and US government-provided relief supplies

- **Administration** It includes the management of contracts, the procurement of goods and services required by the OFDA and DARTs, and the fiscal activities of DARTs

10-80 The DART team leader organizes and supervises the DART. He is delegated authority from and works for the Assistant Director for Disaster Response or his designee. The delegation lists the objectives, priorities, constraints, and reporting requirements for the DART.

10-81 Before the DART departs, the team leader contacts the USAID or the US Embassy (if present in the affected country) to discuss the situation, review the structure, size, objectives, and capabilities of the DART, and identify the areas of support needed by the DART. Upon arriving in the affected country, he reports to the senior US official or the appropriate country official to discuss DART objectives and capabilities and to receive additional instructions and authority.

10-82 While in the affected country, the team leader advises the USAID or the US Embassy and receives periodic instructions from the agency. The DART follows instructions unless they conflict with OFDA policies, authorities, and procedures. Throughout the operation, the team leader maintains direct LOC with the OFDA.

10-83 The USAID or the US Embassy and the OFDA determine the duration of a DART operation after reviewing the disaster situation and the progress in meeting operational objectives. The DART is a highly flexible, mobile organization that is capable of adjusting its size and mission to satisfy the changing needs of the disaster situation.

10-84 A DART normally tailors its capabilities to the particular situation. It assesses the damage to the civil infrastructure, helps operate temporary shelters, and manages a CMO center. The CA units serve as liaison between military and local relief organizations, NGOs, IOs, and DARTs.

## MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT

10-85 The I/R unit support to ES OCONUS is similar to MP support during HA operations. The location, setup, construction, and tasks are based on the nature of the emergency and the needs of the HN.



## Appendix A

# Metric Conversions

This appendix complies with current Army directives which state that the metric system will be incorporated into all new publications. *Table A-1* is a conversion chart.

**Table A-1 Metric Conversion Chart**

US Units	Multiplied By	Metric Units
Cubic feet	0.0283	Cubic meters
Feet	0.305	Meters
Inches	2.54	Centimeters
Square yards	0.836	Square meters
Metric Units	Multiplied By	US Units
Centimeters	0.0394	Inches
Cubic meters	35.3	Cubic feet
Meters	3.28	Feet
Square meters	1.196	Square yards

## Appendix B

# Use of Force and Riot Control Measures

The I/R facility commander provides guidance to all MP guard forces in the appropriate use of force to protect internees and internment facilities and to control unruly and rebellious internee populations. This includes establishing uniform procedures that govern the use of force, weapons, and restraining devices. He ensures that a QRF is organized and trained to respond to disturbances inside and outside the facility—whether prisoners are creating a disturbance or there is a Level I threat against the facility. Supporting MP units train squad- to platoon-sized QRFs and squad-sized elements for extraction and apprehension teams. (See FM 19-15 for more information on civil disturbances.)

## USE OF FORCE

B-1 When force is necessary, use it according to the priorities of force and limit it to the minimum degree necessary. (See AR 190-14 for the use of deadly force.) The application of any or all of the priorities of force, or the application of a higher numbered priority without first employing a lower numbered one, depends on and will be consistent with the situation encountered. Per AR 190-47, the priorities of force are—

- First Verbal persuasion
- Second Show of force
- Third Chemical aerosol irritant projectors (subject to local and HN restrictions)
- Fourth Use of physical force (other than weapons fire)
- Fifth Presentation of deadly force
- Sixth Deadly force

B-2 The I/R commander coordinates with the higher echelon commander and the SJA. He designates representatives who are authorized to direct the use of firearms and riot control agents during riots or disturbances. He includes the rules for using these means in appropriate plans, orders, SOPs, and instructions. He specifies the types of weapons to be used, which are not limited to shotguns and pistols for guarding prisoners.

## DEADLY FORCE

B-3 Deadly force causes death or serious bodily harm. It is a destructive physical force against a person using a weapon or equipment that exerts deadly force. Use deadly force in extreme situations, when all lesser means have failed or cannot be used reasonably. Deadly force is authorized for the following reasons:

- **Self-defense and the defense of others** Deadly force is authorized to protect an MP, a guard, or any person who believes he or others are in imminent danger of death or serious bodily harm
- **Protection of assets involving national security** Deadly force is authorized to prevent the theft or sabotage of assets vital to national security
- **Protection of assets inherently dangerous to others** Deadly force is authorized to prevent the theft or sabotage of resources, such as operable weapons or ammunition, that are inherently dangerous to others
- **Serious offenses against persons** Deadly force is authorized to prevent a serious offense involving violence or a threat of death or serious bodily harm
- **Arrests and apprehensions** Deadly force is authorized to arrest or apprehend a person who has committed an offense as specified in bullets 2 through 4 above
- **Escapes** The law of land warfare permits deadly force to prevent an EPW or an RP from escaping if he poses a threat of serious bodily harm to security personnel or others. If a CI tries to escape, force can only be used when the ROE authorizes it (see AR 190-8)

**NOTE:** See AR 190-14 for more information on the use of deadly force

B-4 The I/R facility commander ensures that soldiers understand the ROE, including the use of the term *halt*, the use of deadly force, and the ban on using physical or imaginary deadlines. He also ensures that EPWs and RPs understand the meaning of the English word *halt*.

B-5 When a prisoner tries to escape, the guard shouts *HALT* three times. He then uses the least amount of force necessary to stop the escape. If there is no other effective means of preventing escape, deadly force can be used. **Do not** fire on a prisoner unless he has cleared the outside fence (barrier, concertina wire or razor tape) and is making a further effort to escape. **Do not** fire on a prisoner attempting to escape outside a fenced enclosure unless he does not halt after the third command. An escape is successful if a prisoner—

- Reaches the lines of a force of which he is a member or the allies of that power
- Leaves a territory that is not controlled by the US or its allies

## RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

B-6 Commanders balance the physical security of forces with mission accomplishment and the ROE issued for the mission. The unified commander develops ROE for his forces. They are based on guidance from the national command authority, operational, political, diplomatic, and legal considerations, mission requirements, threat assessments, the law of land warfare, and HN or third-country constraints on deployed forces.

B-7 The political situation may influence the ROE and conflict with physical-security needs. In these cases, commanders weigh the political gains against the risk to the force. They clearly state their objectives with defined

operational limits that allow mission accomplishment and protect deployed forces

B-8 Restrictions on combat operations and the use of force are clearly explained in the ROE and understood and obeyed at all levels. Soldiers study and train in the use of the ROE and discuss the ROE for their mission. Misunderstandings and actions, no matter how minor, may have far-reaching repercussions because friendly and enemy media can exploit incidents rapidly.

B-9 The ROE address specific distinctions between internee categories and the instruments of control available for each. Use the following issues to develop guidelines:

- What is considered deadly force?
- Under what conditions—
  - Will deadly force be used?
  - Will nonlethal technology be used?
- What are the required warnings (see ARs 190-8 and 190-14) before using force (nonlethal or lethal)?

## NONLETHAL WEAPONS

B-10 The DOD defines NLWs as weapons that are explicitly designed and primarily employed to incapacitate personnel or material, while minimizing fatalities, permanent injury to personnel, and undesired damage to property and the environment. Unlike conventional weapons that destroy their targets through blast, penetration, and fragmentation, NLWs employ other means to prevent the target from functioning.

B-11 The NLW doctrine and concepts of operation are designed to reinforce deterrence and expand the range of options available to commanders. They enhance the capability of US forces to accomplish the following objectives:

- Discourage, delay, and prevent hostile actions
- Limit escalation
- Take military action in situations where the use of lethal force is not the preferred option
- Protect US forces
- Disable equipment, facilities, and personnel

B-12 The zero probability of producing fatalities or permanent injuries is not a requirement of NLWs. Complete avoidance of these effects is not guaranteed or expected; however, NLWs significantly reduce them as compared to lethal weapons. When drafting the ROE, clearly articulate that using NLWs is an additional means of employing force for the particular purpose of limiting the probability of death or serious injury to noncombatants or belligerents. However, the use of deadly force is an inherent right of individuals when they, their fellow soldiers, or personnel in their charge are threatened with death or serious bodily harm. The use of NLWs adds flexibility when controlling disturbances in an I/R facility by providing an environment where guard forces can permissively engage threatening targets with limited risk of noncombatant casualties and collateral damage (see FM 90-40) Table B-1, page B-4, shows lethal, nonlethal, and ineffective zones of NLWs.

Table B-1 Range of NLWs

NLW	Meters												
	0	5	15	20	25	30	35	50	55	65	95	100	120
MCCM	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█
Stun hand grenade	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█
12-gauge point	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█
12-gauge area	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█
40-millimeter point	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█
66-millimeter sting ball	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█
66-millimeter flash bang	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█
66-millimeter CS grenade	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█	█

Lethal zone  
 Nonlethal zone  
 Ineffective zone

B-13 The use of lethal force under the standing ROE is never denied. Never deploy forces without giving them the ability to defend themselves against a lethal threat. Ensure that they are trained, armed, and equipped for combat. Nonlethal force is a complement to, not a replacement for, lethal force. Expand a proactive response across the range of military operations. Delegate the decision to use NLWs against an adversary during a confrontation to the lowest possible level, preferably to the platoon or the squad. Ensure that all personnel, not just leaders, have a clear understanding of the ROE and the commander's intent (see FM 90-40).

B-14 Facility commanders consider the use-of-force options discussed in this appendix and AR 190.14 when dealing with disruptions. They substitute nonlethal devices for firearms when they are adequate for MP to safely perform their duties. Currently, MP have the following nonlethal options available for crowd control:

- Riot control agents
  - O-chlorobenzylidene malonitrile (CS)
  - Oleoresin capsicum (OC)
- MWDs
- MP clubs
- Riot batons

B-15 Commanders and public affairs officers are prepared to address media questions and concerns regarding the use and role of NLWs. They make it clear that the presence of NLWs in no way indicates abandoning the option to employ deadly force in appropriate circumstances.

## ADVANTAGES

B-16 The NLWs provide the flexibility to favorably influence a situation with reduced risk of noncombatant fatalities and collateral damage. They are more humane, which is consistent with the political and social intent of humanitarian and peacekeeping missions. The force that properly employs NLWs gains an advantage over forces who rely on lethal options alone because the degree of provocation required to employ these options is substantially less. This advantage provides a proactive posture and a quicker response. It also diminishes the likelihood of a situation escalating to a point where deadly force is required.

B-17 The NLWs are less likely to provoke others, however, they may provoke a negative response. Demonstrated restraint greatly diminishes feelings of anger and remorse when deadly force is required after nonlethal options fail. The NLWs facilitate postincident stabilization by reducing internee alienation and collateral damage.

## TRAINING

B-18 Soldiers and leaders are trained in the correct employment of NLWs. They understand the limited use of these systems in environments with restrictive ROE. Their training is continuous at all levels so that they understand when and how to effectively and properly employ NLWs. The incorrect application of NLWs can have significant operational and political ramifications. Well-trained MP leaders who provide timely, clear guidance to soldiers ensure mission accomplishment.

B-19 Many NLWs have maximum-effective and minimum-safety ranges. Individuals struck short of the minimum safety range often suffer severe injuries or death, while the effects of most nonlethal devices are greatly mitigated at longer ranges. Engage the threat within the nonlethal zone, which is beyond the lethal zone and short of the ineffective zone (see Table B-1).

B-20 When training with and planning for the use of NLWs—

- Never apply them in situations where deadly force is appropriate
- Never apply them in situations that will place troops in undue danger
- Always cover them with deadly force

## TACTICS

B-21 Establish riot control teams that have a minimum response time. Due to the physical nature of riot control, individuals in riot control formations do not carry long rifles. Lethal attachments follow closely behind riot control formations to provide lethal coverage for the entire formation.

B-22 During a nonlethal engagement, a designated marksman supplies lethal overwatch to provide confidence and safety to those facing a riot. The marksman is in an overwatch position and armed with a standard infantry rifle, mounted with a high-powered scope. If a lethal threat is presented, he can scan the crowd to identify agitators and riot leaders for apprehension. He can also fire lethal rounds if warranted. Designated marksmen are ideally suited for flank security and countersniper operations.

**NOTE** See FM 90-40 for an in-depth discussion on the tactics associated with employing NLWs.

## **CROWD DYNAMICS**

B-23 A commander considers crowd control and the dynamics caused by several people living in close quarters. Generally, he is concerned with two types of disturbances—riots and disorders. Prisoners may organize disturbances within an I/R facility to wear down the guard force.

B-24 Simply being a part of a crowd affects a person. Each person is open to actions that are different from his usual behavior. For example, crowds provide a sense of anonymity because they are large, often temporary, congregations. Crowd members often feel that their moral responsibility has shifted from themselves to the crowd as a whole. Large numbers of people discourage individual behavior, and the urge to imitate is strong in humans. People look to others for cues and disregard their own background and training. Only well-disciplined persons with strong convictions can resist conforming to crowd behavior. Crowd behavior influences the actions of disorderly participants and the authorities tasked to control them.

B-25 Under normal circumstances, a crowd is orderly and does not present a problem to authorities. However, when crowd behavior violates laws or threatens life or property, a disturbance ensues.

## **CROWD BEHAVIOR**

B-26 The presence or absence of social factors (leadership, moral attitudes, and social uniformity) may influence crowd behavior. Leadership has a profound effect on the intensity and direction of crowd behavior. When blocked from expressing its emotions in one direction, a crowd's frustration and hostility may be redirected elsewhere. The first person to give clear orders in an authoritative manner may become the leader. Agitators can exploit the crowd's mood and convert a group of frustrated, resentful people into a vengeful mob. Skillful agitators, using clandestine communications within an I/R facility, can reach large portions of the population and incite them to unlawful acts without having direct personal contact. In an I/R environment, any crowd can be a threat to L&O because it is open to manipulation.

B-27 Crowd behavior may be affected by panic or emotional contagion, which provides psychological unity. The unity is usually temporary, but it may be long enough to push a crowd to mob action. When emotional contagion prevails, normal L&O are suppressed, increasing the potential for violence. Panic can occur during a disturbance when—

- Crowd members perceive that their safety is at risk and they attempt to flee the area.
- Crowd members cannot disperse quickly after exposure to riot control agents.
- Escape routes are limited, blocked, or congested.

B-28 Members of the control force are also susceptible to crowd behavior. They may become emotionally stimulated during a tense confrontation and must exercise individual and collective restraint. Rigorous training, firm and

---

effective leadership, and complete awareness and understanding of the ROE and the ROI are necessary to offset the effect of crowd contagion on the control force

## CROWD TACTICS

B-29 In disturbances, crowds employ any number of tactics to resist control and achieve their goals. Tactics may be planned or unplanned and violent or nonviolent. The more purposeful the disturbance, the more likely the possibility of well-planned tactics.

### Nonviolent Tactics (Disorders)

B-30 Nonviolent tactics include name calling, conducting demonstrations, refusing to work or eat, participating in a work slowdown, damaging or destroying property, and building barricades. Demonstrators may converse with control force members to distract them or gain their sympathy. They may use verbal abuse such as obscene remarks, taunts, ridicules, and jeers. Crowd members want to anger and demoralize the opposition, and they want authorities to take actions that can later be exploited as acts of brutality.

B-31 In compounds where women, children, and elders are interned, they may be placed in the front ranks of the demonstration to discourage countermeasures by the control force. When countermeasures are taken, agitators try to stir public displeasure and embarrass the control force through the media. Internees may form human blockades to impede movement by sitting down in footpaths or entrances to buildings within the compound. This disrupts normal activity and forces control personnel to remove demonstrators physically. Demonstrators may lock arms, making it hard for the control force to separate and remove them, so that it appears the control force is using excessive force.

B-32 Nonviolent tactics include the following types of disorders:

- **Demonstrations** Demonstrations are actions by groups of people whose behavior, while not violent, is in conflict with those in authority. They are characterized by unruliness and vocal expressiveness without violence. Demonstrations may be organized in celebration of national holidays or as protests against food, clothing, living conditions, or treatment.
- **Refusal to work or eat** Housed personnel may refuse to work or eat, collectively or individually, as a means of harassing the detaining power or in an attempt to gain concessions from the detaining power. This type of disorder can normally be controlled by promptly isolating and segregating offenders and ringleaders.
- **Work slowdown** Housed personnel may initiate a deliberate work slowdown to delay the completion of projects, thereby harassing the detaining power. Disorders of this nature can also be controlled by promptly isolating and segregating offenders and ringleaders.
- **Damage or destruction of property** Housed personnel often damage or destroy property to harass the detaining power, to impede or prevent normal operation of the facility, or for tactical purposes.



This type of disorder can normally be controlled by identifying, isolating, and segregating offenders

- **Unorganized disorders** Unorganized disorders are spontaneous and are started by the actions of a single individual. Like all disturbances, their prompt control is essential.

### Violent Tactics (Riots)

B-33 Violent crowd tactics can be extremely destructive. They include attacking other internees, guards, or government property and setting fires or bombings for escape, grievance, tactical, or political advantages. The attitude and ingenuity of crowd members, the training of their leaders, and the materials available are the only limits to violent crowd tactics. Crowd or mob members may commit violence with crude, homemade weapons or anything else that is available. If violence is planned, crowd members conceal makeshift weapons or tools for vandalism.

B-34 Crowd members can erect barricades to impede movement or to prevent the control force from entering an area or a building. They may use vehicles, trees, furniture, fences, or other material to build barricades. In an effort to breach barriers, rioters may throw grapples into wire barricades and drag them. They may use grapples, chains, wires, or ropes to pull down gates or fences to effect a mass escape. They may use long poles or homemade spears (tent poles) to keep control forces back while removing barricades or to prevent the use of bayonets.

B-35 Rioters can be expected to vent their emotions on individuals, troop formations, and control force equipment. They may throw rotten fruits and vegetables, rocks, bricks, bottles, or improvised bombs. They may direct dangerous objects (vehicles, carts, barrels, or liquids) at troops located on or at the bottom of a slope. They may drive commandeered vehicles toward troops to scatter the control force formation and jump out of vehicles before reaching roadblocks and barricades. Rioters may set fire to buildings or vehicles to block the advance of the control force formation, create confusion and diversion, destroy property, and mask escapes. Types of riots include—

- **Organized riots** Leaders of housed personnel reorganize the internee population into quasi-military groups. The groups are capable of developing plans and tactics for riots and disorders. Riots can be instigated for—
  - **Escapes** Leaders organize a riot as a diversion for an escape attempt by selected individuals or small groups or for a mass escape attempt.
  - **Political purposes** Riots are often organized for propaganda or to embarrass the detaining power in its relations with protecting powers and other nations. They may also be organized to intimidate individuals or groups that may have been cooperative with the detaining power.
  - **Grievance protests** A grievance protest can be organized as a riot. Under normal circumstances, this type of riot is not extremely violent in nature. It may turn violent when leaders try

to exploit the successes of the riot or the weaknesses of the detaining power

- **Tactical purposes** Riots are often organized for the sole purpose of diverting the detaining power, thereby limiting its ability to perform the mission
- **Unorganized riots** Unorganized riots are spontaneous, although they can be exploited and diverted by leaders into different types of riots. They may begin as a holiday celebration, a group singing, or a religious gathering. Under determined leadership, the pattern of these gatherings can change to an organized riot.
- **Multiple riots** When housed personnel in one compound start rioting, personnel in other compounds may also riot. To meet this situation with only one riot control force available, the force commander first subdues the most riotous compound. He also employs riot control teams to contain the other compounds where rioting is taking place until the riot control force is free to subdue offenders. If another alert force is available, it channels additional rioters to a different area than the original rioters.

## RECORD OF EVENTS

B-36 Initiate a record of events to provide a basis for preparing and submitting a formal report to higher headquarters. Include the—

- Time the incident was reported and by whom
- Time the enclosure commander reported to his commander
- Time the riot control force was alerted
- Time the riot control force commander reported to the affected enclosure
- Time the riot control force entered the enclosure
- Weather conditions as they relate to the use of riot control munitions, the types and amounts used, and their results and effects
- Number of US personnel injured or killed, a description of how they were injured or killed, and the medical attention they received
- Number of housed personnel injured or killed, a description of how they were injured or killed, and the medical attention they received
- Time the operation was completed and when the riot control force cleared the enclosure

## RIOT CONTROL MEASURES

B-37 The commander exercises effective control of internees by quickly restoring order. Have a well-developed, well-rehearsed plan for defusing tense situations, handling unruly captives, and quelling riots. Because of the differences in I/R facilities, consider the—

- Terrain features
- Types of structures
- Number of internees
- Size of control forces

B-38 Restore order using the least amount of force possible. The PSYOP resources often play an effective role in restoring order to the compound. If necessary, use riot control agents (CS and OC) and NLWs to incapacitate rioters.

B-39 Preplan riot control measures before a crisis occurs. Control forces will be prepared to react in an emergency and can successfully contain and neutralize the situation. The preplanning process includes training, planning, and intelligence gathering.

## TRAINING

B-40 Train the QRF and associated teams in the five basic riot control formations—line, wedge, echelon, diamond, and circle—on a regular basis. Establish a continuous training program that includes—

- Law of land warfare principles, specifically the provisions of the Geneva Conventions
- Supervisory and human relations techniques
- Self-defense methods
- The use of force (riot batons, M16 with and without bayonet, and fatal areas of the body to avoid when using them)
- Weapons familiarization and qualification
- Public relations
- First aid
- Emergency plans
- Compound regulations
- Intelligence and counterintelligence techniques
- Cultural customs, habits, and religious practices
- Simple training in internees' language
- The use of riot control agents and the various methods of dispersing them
- The use of NLWs

B-41 Ensure that personnel assigned or attached to I/R facilities are oriented and specially trained in the custody and control of EPWs and CIs. Everyone working in the compound must be fully cognizant of the provisions of the Geneva Conventions as they apply to EPWs, CIs, and soldiers who are guarding prisoners.

## PLANNING

B-42 The planning process begins during the preplanning process. When the QRF is alerted of a riot situation, leaders and members further develop preplans to fit the situation. This planning process is essential to successfully contain and neutralize a riot. When using riot control agents, ensure that plans are flexible enough to accommodate changes in the situation and weather. Consider the strict accountability and control required when employing riot control agents. They can be employed only when the commander specifically authorizes their use, and their use must be reported.

B-43 Other planning factors to consider are the weather, the cause, nature, and extent of the disturbance, and the demeanor and intent of the gathered EPWs. Based on an analysis of these factors, the commander makes an estimate (as thorough as time permits) of the situation. He considers a course of action, selects riot control agents, and determines munition needs.

B-44 Plans also address the security of riot control agents during storage, transportation, and employment. The wind direction, the size of the area, and the proximity of civilian communities may preclude the use of large quantities of riot control agents. In such cases, it may be necessary to use low concentrations to break up a crowd into smaller groups.

B-45 When dealing with a large group of rioting EPWs, plans should indicate how the control force channels and controls EPW movement in a specific direction. This is usually to an area where another force is waiting to receive, hold, and search them. Include information on how riot control agents are employed to cover the target area with a cloud of sufficient strength to produce desired results. Once the proper concentration is reached, the control force maintains the concentration until rioters are channeled into the predetermined area. When dispersers are used, the dispersal team maintains the concentration by moving along the release line at an even rate and repeating the application as necessary.

B-46 During a riot, another riot may start in a neighboring compound, so ensure that contingency plans are in place to subdue it also. Quell the most riotous compound first, and then move to the next. Employ riot control teams to contain other compounds where rioting is taking place until a riot control force is free to subdue them.

B-47 Include serious-incident reporting procedures in riot control plans. Initiate a record of events to provide a basis for preparing and submitting a formal report to higher headquarters. (See paragraph B-36.)

## INTELLIGENCE GATHERING

B-48 The preplanning process also includes intelligence gathering. It includes maintaining updated drawings of the I/R compound and identifying potential threats from within the EPW population. (See Chapter 3.)

## RIOT CONTROL AGENTS

B-49 There are two riot control agents used to quell riots and disperse crowds. They are CS and OC.

### O-CHLOROBENZYLIDINE-MALONITRILE

B-50 The CS is effective in very small quantities, and its effect on eyes and respiratory systems are realized within seconds. It causes an extreme burning sensation in eyes, an abundant flow of tears, coughing, breathing difficulty, tightness in chest, involuntary closing of eyes, stinging sensation on moist-skin areas, and sinus and nasal drip. High concentrations also cause nausea and vomiting, especially when ingested. The effects last 5 to 10 minutes after individuals are removed from the contaminated area and placed

in a clean area. Exposure to CS makes individuals incapable of executing organized or concerted actions.

B-51 Administer first aid to victims by moving them to uncontaminated areas and facing them into the wind. Caution them not to rub their eyes, and keep affected people well apart. Have victims shower with cool water for 3 to 5 minutes and then proceed with normal showering. For gross contamination, flush victims' bodies with large amounts of cool water, wash them with a 5 percent sodium bisulfite solution (except in and around their eyes), and flush them again with water. (A 1 percent sodium carbonate or sodium bicarbonate solution can be substituted for the sodium bisulfite solution.)

B-52 The CS is delivered by a variety of means—bursting, aerosol, 37-millimeter and 12-gauge projectiles, and fogging. It has the greatest effect when there is little or no wind, and effectiveness is greatly diminished by rain. The persistency of CS varies according to wind conditions. The powder form persists longer in still air and in wooded terrain, and it should not be used in areas where lingering contamination could cause problems.

#### OLEORESIN CAPSICUM

B-53 The OC provides a safe, effective alternative to traditionally employed riot control agents. When used properly, it turns the most violent offender into a docile, cooperative individual who no longer poses a threat to others. It diverts the threat's attention from making or continuing an assault. **NOTE: HN laws may prohibit or restrict the use of certain chemical compounds, such as OC.**

B-54 The OC is not a chemical agent, but it is 750 times more powerful than CS. It is an organic, naturally occurring, inflammatory compound that is derived from a blend of 300 varieties of pepper plants. As an inflammatory agent, OC causes swelling of eyes and breathing passages almost immediately. When inhaled, the respiratory tract is inflamed and breathing is restricted to short, shallow breaths. However, it does not shut down the respiratory system. The physiological response increases OC's effectiveness, regardless of the subject's emotional or physical state. It is effective against emotionally disturbed individuals, persons under the influence of drugs or alcohol, and domestic and wild animals.

B-55 The OC causes intense burning of exposed skin, dilation of capillaries, swelling of eyelids, burning and involuntary closing of eyes, uncontrollable coughing, gagging, gasping for air, temporary loss of strength and coordination, and a change in skin color (slight to bright red). The effects of OC last 30 to 40 minutes after removal to fresh air. There is no permanent damage to the respiratory system, eyes, or skin.

B-56 There is a risk of fatalities in persons with preexisting respiratory or cardiac conditions. Ensure that medical support is readily available when using OC in a civilian/refugee situation to prevent injury or death if an individual fails to recover.

B-57 Disadvantages of OC include—

- Canisters will depressurize over time if they are not checked regularly.
- Criminals have access to OC and may use it against the control force.

- Canisters must be shaken on a regular basis
- Individuals from cultures that use cayenne pepper on a regular basis may become immune to OC
- Rain decreases the effectiveness and requires a longer spray duration
- Strong winds decrease effectiveness and can result in blowback that might contaminate control forces

## DISSEMINATION OF CHEMICAL IRRITANTS

B-58 There are five methods of dissemination for chemical irritants. They are pyrotechnic, bursting, aerosol, fogging, and a multipurpose grenade.

### Pyrotechnic

B-59 The irritant and an inert material are placed in a canister that is ignited when the device is activated. The irritant is carried into the air on smoke particles of the inert material. This method of dissemination has the following disadvantages:

- May cause a fire
- Has a very slow saturation time
- Takes 40 to 45 seconds to completely burn
- Can be thrown back even while burning

### Bursting

B-60 The irritant and an inert powder are contained in a serrated canister. After a small detonation, the canister splits and expels the irritant in the form of a cloud. This method of dissemination has the following advantages and disadvantages:

- **Advantages**
  - Has no risk of fire
  - Cannot be thrown back
  - Disseminates quickly
  - Is very effective, easy to carry, and easy to control
- **Disadvantages**
  - The canister may fragment when detonated
  - The fuse head may separate from the canister
  - The percentage of irritant disseminated is 50 to 90 percent
  - The direction of the cloud formation depends on where the device is detonated

### Aerosol

B-61 The irritant is suspended in an inert liquid located in the rear of a projectile. When the projectile strikes a structure and penetrates, the rear portion splits open and the irritant is disseminated in the form of a mist. The aerosol device is the most appropriate for tactical operations when chemical irritants are used before entry. This method of dissemination has the following advantages and disadvantages:

- **Advantages**

- Is easy to carry and control
- Can be deployed with 40-millimeter, 37-millimeter, or 12-gauge ammunition
- Disperses contents quickly
- Is accurate (fin-stabilized), but practice firing is necessary
- **Disadvantages**
  - May cause injury if fired from close range
  - May strike a weak portion of a structure

### Fogging

B-62 The irritant is suspended in a fogging solution and dispersed with a fogging machine. It is used for riot control and crowd dispersal. This method of dissemination has the following advantages and disadvantages:

- **Advantages**
  - Is capable of producing enough irritant to cover 100,000 cubic feet of an enclosed area in 26 seconds
  - Disseminates very quickly
  - Has high-volume capabilities
- **Disadvantages**
  - Is too noisy for a close-in tactical situation
  - Is cumbersome and not recommended for tactical operations

### Multipurpose Grenade

B-63 A multipurpose grenade can be hand-thrown or launched from a shotgun with an adapter. It has an extended shelf life of 6 years and an adjustable fuse delay of 2 to 5 seconds. The irritant is located in the cylinder portion of the device and is forced out the bottom of the grenade upon detonation.

<p><b>WARNING</b> Injury to your hand may result if a multipurpose grenade is deployed incorrectly. Observe all safety rules.</p>
---

### POSITIONS

B-64 Riot control formations are usually equipped with riot batons, rifles (with or without bayonets), or shotguns. All personnel use the right hand grip when holding a baton or a weapon. This presents a uniform, formidable appearance to rioters, eliminates weak spots in the formation caused by inconsistent weapon positions, and is safer for soldiers in close movements. (See STP 19-95B1-SM for more information on individual movements and positions.)

## BATONS

B-65 Three steps are necessary to obtain a secure grip on the riot baton. This method of gripping the baton provides a secure grasp, and the baton can be released quickly by simply relaxing your hand.

**Step 1** Place the thong of the baton around your right thumb.

**Step 2** Hold the baton so that the thong hangs over the back of your hand.

**Step 3.** Roll your hand into the baton handle so that the thong is pressed against the back of your hand.

B-66 There are three baton positions used in riot control. They are parade rest, port, and on guard.

- **Parade rest position** The parade rest position is a relaxed, ready position. Your feet are shoulder width apart, both arms hang naturally in front of your body, and the baton is horizontal. Your left palm is facing out, and your right palm is facing in toward your body. Your hands are about 6 inches from the ends of the baton.
- **Port position** The port position is a ready position. It is particularly well suited for individual defense. Your right hand and forearm are parallel to the ground, and your left hand is level with your left shoulder. The striking end of the baton bisects the angle between your neck and left shoulder. The baton is held about 8 inches from your body, and your feet are shoulder width apart.
- **On-guard position** The on-guard position is a ready position. Do not maintain it for long periods of time, because it is tiring. Your left foot is placed forward of your right foot. Your feet are spread apart, and your knees are slightly bent. Your right hand and the butt end of the baton are placed snugly against your hip. Your body is bent slightly forward at your waist. Your left arm is bent so that your forearm protects your throat area, yet allows a thrust to be made. From the on-guard position, soldiers can execute a—
  - **Short thrust** Rapidly step forward with your left foot, and drive the striking end of the baton into a vulnerable point of the opponent's body. Return to the on-guard position after delivery.
  - **Long thrust** Rapidly step forward with your right foot, and thrust the striking end of the baton into a vulnerable point of the opponent's body. Return to the on-guard position after delivery.
  - **Butt stroke** Advance your body rapidly off your right foot, and snap the butt end of the baton to the left, striking the opponent's shoulder or jaw. Return to the on-guard position after delivery.

### Baton Smash

B-67 A baton smash can be delivered from a parade rest, port, or on-guard position. Hold the baton horizontal to the ground, about chest height. Advance your left foot rapidly, snap both arms straight, and smash the length of the baton across the opponent's chest. Return to the on-guard position after delivery.



## Fatal Areas

B-68 Do not use a riot baton to strike a fatal area (the head, the side of the neck, the throat, the heart area, or the armpit) Do not raise a riot baton above your head to strike an adversary in club fashion It is likely to cause permanent injury and also projects an unfavorable image of the control force

B-69 Soldiers use riot batons to defend themselves against armed and unarmed attackers Use the baton to block or deflect an opponent's blow, then counter with a thrust, a butt stroke, or a baton smash These defensive techniques can be performed from any position

**NOTE:** See FM 19-15 for detailed information on using a riot baton

## WEAPONS

B-70 There are three weapon positions used in riot control—safe-port, safeguard, and on-guard positions

- **Safe-port position** The safe-port position is quite effective when making a show of force It is similar to the port arms position in FM 22-5, except the weapon is raised until your left, upper arm is parallel with the ground In this elevated position, participants in the rear of the crowd can see bayonets The sight of bayonets creates an impression of strength and numerical superiority Do not keep troops in this position long because it is very tiring The control force moves into and assembles from all riot control formations with weapons in the safe-port position Upon receiving the preparatory command to move into or assemble from a riot control formation, soldiers assume the safe-port position
- **Safeguard position** This is a position of semireadiness It is less tiring than the on-guard position and is used to rest troops when circumstances permit As troops advance, they maintain the safeguard position until contact is made or resistance is expected The safeguard position is also used when troops are pursuing a crowd that is withdrawing without resistance In the safeguard position, your right hand is against the right side of your waist, and the weapon is pivoted forward until the bayonet is at the crowd's throat level
- **On-guard position** This is a position of complete readiness It is used when troops are in contact with a group that is showing resistance or hesitation to withdraw Assume the on-guard position from the safeguard position Place your feet a comfortable distance apart, and align your left heel with your right toe Bend your knees slightly and lean forward at your waist, keeping the bayonet at throat level Do not keep troops in this position long because it is very tiring Rest troops when circumstances permit

## FORMATIONS

B-71 The five basic formations for riot control operations are line, wedge, echelon, diamond, and circle Apprehension teams normally use diamond and circle formations Small teams, squad-sized elements, and augmented squads

are not used for crowds, but they are used by larger riot control forces to snatch or protect

B-72 Line, wedge, and echelon formations are trained at squad level and above, but they are normally used by platoon- and company-sized units. Squad line, echelon left, echelon right, and wedge formations are the basis for platoon and company formations. Each squad must be adept in the basic formations before practicing in platoon-sized or larger formations. Any size unit can be employed, and a riot control formation can be adapted to fit a unit's organization. (See STP 19-95B1-SM for more information on formations.)

B-73 The platoon headquarters for riot control formations consists of a platoon leader, a platoon sergeant, a selected marksman, and a radio operator or messenger. Figure B-1 shows symbols for a formation element. When directed by the platoon leader, disperser operators, firefighters, and others may augment the platoon headquarters.

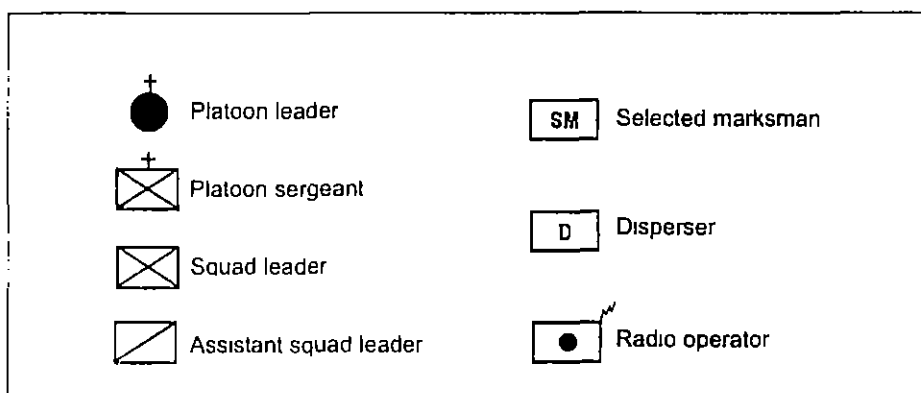


Figure B-1 Symbols for a Formation Element

B-74 The control force moves to the site of a disturbance in a column formation and then executes a riot control formation on site. To form a riot control formation from a column formation, the platoon leader moves to the right of the platoon and faces troops when giving commands. He gives the arm-and-hand signal and the preparatory command. On the execution command *MOVE*, he points to the approximate location where he wants the platoon to form. The platoon leader pauses between the preparatory command and the execution command to allow each squad leader to issue a preparatory command to his squad.

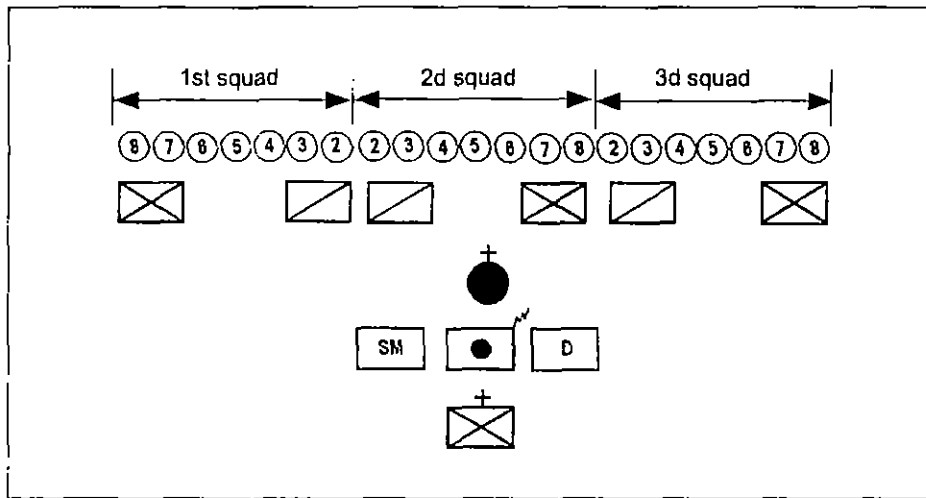
B-75 In a three-squad platoon, the first and third squads are usually the lead elements in formations when one squad provides general or lateral support. The support squad, when held in general support, may be in a single column or a column of twos. The following examples presume that the second squad is the support squad.

B-76 When the support squad moves from general support to lateral support or to extend the existing formation, the even-numbered members move to the right and the odd-numbered members move to the left. The squad leader

usually controls the even-numbered members, and the assistant squad leader controls the odd-numbered members. To assemble the support squad from any position to general support, the platoon leader commands *SECOND SQUAD IN SUPPORT, MOVE*. The second squad then returns to a column behind the line formed by the other two squads.

**LINE FORMATION**

B-77 The line formation (Figure B-2) is used the most because of its offensive and defensive applications. As an offensive formation, it is used to push or drive crowds straight back, across an open area, or up a city street. As a defensive formation, it is used to hold crowds or deny access to restricted streets or areas.



**Figure B-2. Line Formation**

B-78 The command for forming a platoon line is *PLATOON AS SKIRMISHERS, MOVE*. The second squad moves forward to the point designated by the platoon leader. The number two man of the second squad is the baseman for the platoon formation. The—

- Second squad forms a squad line to the right of the baseman
- First squad forms a squad line to the left of the second squad
- Third squad forms a squad line to the right of the second squad
- First and third squads dress on the second squad

B-79 When assembling a platoon from the line formation, the platoon leader and headquarters personnel take a position to the rear of the platoon. The platoon leader gives the command *PLATOON ASSEMBLE, MOVE*. He raises his right arm and makes a circular motion above his head. The squad leader of the second squad commands *FOLLOW ME* and double-times to the designated spot. Other squad members follow the squad leader. As the second squad clears the line formation, the first and third squad leaders command *FOLLOW ME* and double-time toward the platoon leader, dressing on either

side of the second squad. All squads halt automatically behind the platoon headquarters and dress.

### WEDGE FORMATION

B-80 The wedge formation (Figure B-3) is an offensive formation that is used to penetrate and split crowds. The command for forming the platoon wedge is *PLATOON WEDGE, MOVE*. The second squad executes a squad wedge at the point designated by the platoon leader. The squad wedge consists of an echelon left of the odd-numbered members and an echelon right of the even-numbered members, with the baseman at the apex of the wedge. The first and third squads form echelons left and right, respectively, of the second squad.

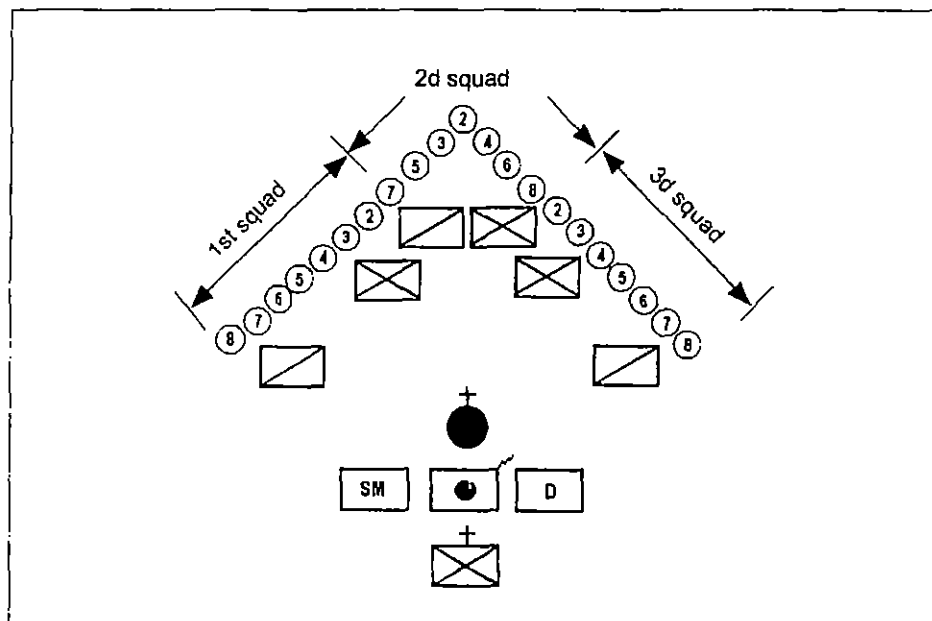


Figure B-3 Wedge Formation

B-81 Assembling from a wedge formation is similar to assembling from a platoon echelon. The second squad assembles first. On the command *PLATOON ASSEMBLE, MOVE*, the second squad leader moves to the point designated by the platoon leader. The second squad assembles behind the squad leader in numerical order. The first and third squads move into column formation to the left and right of the second squad, respectively, and dress on the second squad.

### ECHELON FORMATION

B-82 The echelon formation (Figure B-4, page B-20) is an offensive formation. It is used to turn or divert groups in open or built-up areas and to move crowds away from buildings, fences, and walls. An echelon formation can be an echelon right or an echelon left, depending on the direction in which the crowd is to be moved.

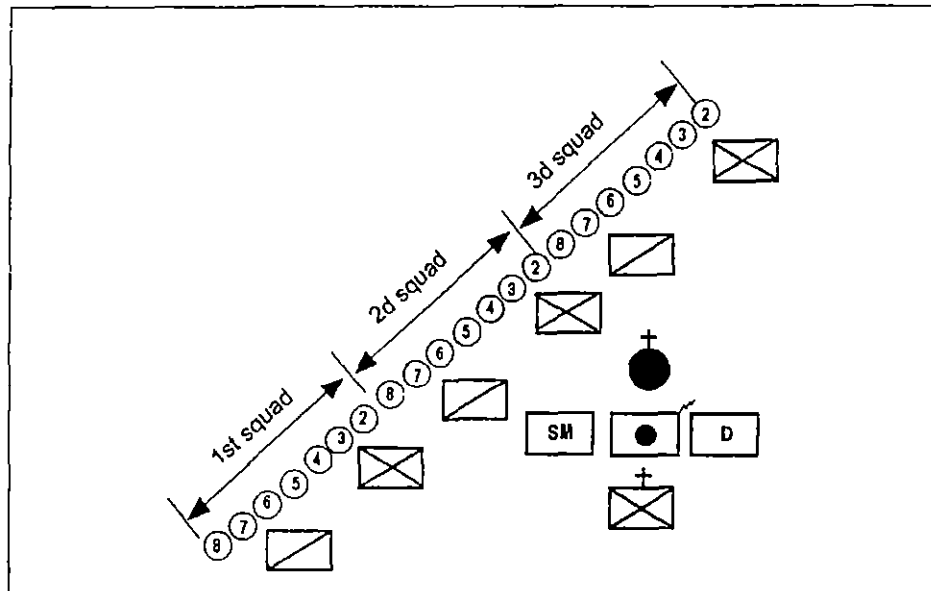


Figure B-4. Echelon Left Formation

### Platoon Echelon Left

B-83 The command for forming a platoon echelon left is *PLATOON ECHELON LEFT, MOVE*. The third squad baseman posts himself at the location designated by the platoon leader. Remaining squad members position themselves one step back and one step to the left of the preceding soldier. As each squad clears the column, the next successive squad moves out and extends the echelon that has been formed.

B-84 To assemble the platoon from an echelon left, the commander takes his position to the rear of the formation with the platoon headquarters. On the command *PLATOON ASSEMBLE, MOVE*, the third squad moves and forms a column at the point designated by the platoon leader. The first and second squads assemble in column formation to the left of and dressed on the third squad.

### Platoon Echelon Right

B-85 The command for forming a platoon echelon right is *PLATOON ECHELON RIGHT, MOVE*. The first squad baseman posts himself at the location designated by the platoon leader. Remaining squad members position themselves one step back and one step to the right of the preceding soldier. As each squad clears the column, the next successive squad moves out and extends the echelon that has been formed.

B-86 To assemble a platoon from an echelon right, the commander takes his position to the rear of the formation with the platoon headquarters. On the command *PLATOON ASSEMBLE, MOVE*, the first squad moves and forms a column at the point designated by the platoon leader. The second and third squads assemble in column formation to the right of and dressed on the first squad.

## DIAMOND FORMATION

B-87 The diamond formation (Figure B-5) can be used as an offensive formation or a defensive formation. It is used by riot control forces when they enter a crowd to apprehend ringleaders. The diamond formation is also useful when 360-degree security is needed.

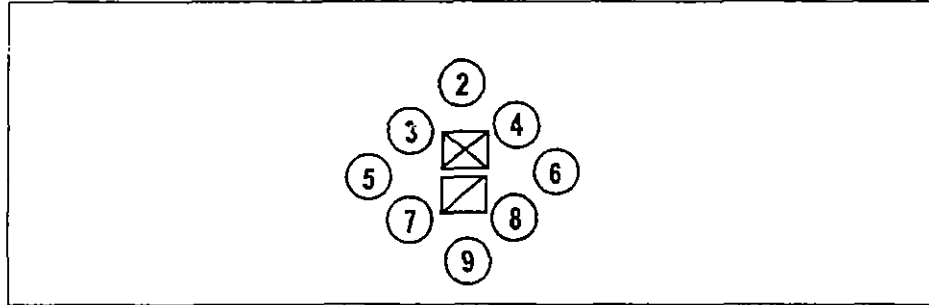


Figure B-5. Diamond Formation

## CIRCLE FORMATION

B-88 The circle formation (Figure B-6) is used for the same purposes as a diamond formation. It is used for dispersed and nonviolent crowds, where the diamond formation is used when the formation must break into or out of a crowd.

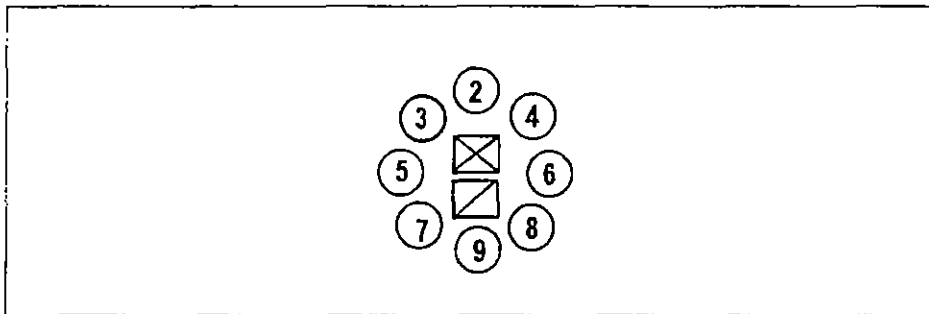


Figure B-6 Circle Formation

## VARIATIONS

B-89 Many suitable variations of riot control formations can be employed. Ensure that appropriate commands and signals are devised to execute the formations. Due to their complicated nature and the coordination required, practice the formations extensively before actually using them in a riot.

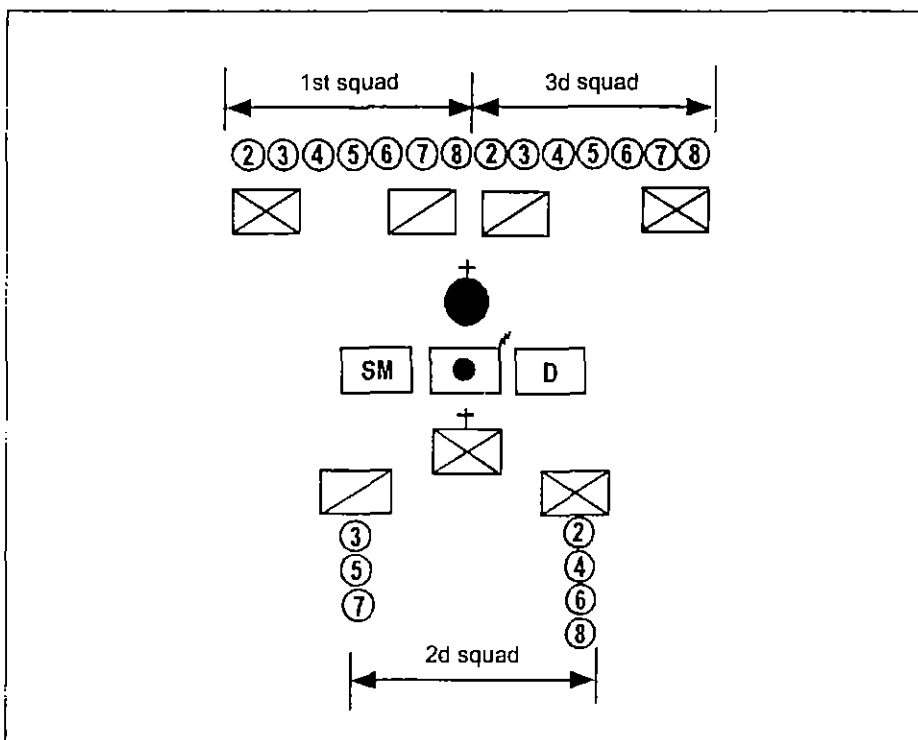
## FORMATION ENHANCEMENTS

B-90 Riot control formations may require enhancement. They can be very tiring and stressful for troops on line, especially when faced with a hostile crowd. The crowd may try to break through the control force to reach a protected facility or to disrupt the efforts of the control force. Likewise, a

determined crowd may refuse to give way to an advancing control force if they believe the line is not solid. Other elements of the control force can be positioned in general, lateral, or close support of the main line as needed. When all the troops in the unit are not required on line at the same time, the remaining elements can be kept in general support. Elements in general support are immediately available to provide lateral or close support as the situation changes.

**Platoon Formation With General Support**

B-91 The command for forming a platoon formation with a squad in general support (Figure B-7) is *PLATOON AS SKIRMISHERS (ECHELON LEFT, ECHELON RIGHT, WEDGE), SECOND SQUAD IN SUPPORT, MOVE*. The first and third squads execute the formation, and the second squad remains in column formation. The number two man of the third squad is the baseman for the formation.



**Figure B-7 Platoon Line, 2d Squad in General Support**

B-92 The command for forming a platoon formation with one squad in general support in a column of twos is *PLATOON AS SKIRMISHERS (ECHELON LEFT, ECHELON RIGHT, WEDGE), SECOND SQUAD IN SUPPORT IN COLUMN OF TWOS, MOVE*. The first and third squads execute the formation. The second squad, at the command of its squad leader, executes a column of twos to the right.

B-93 To assemble a platoon with a squad in general support, the procedure is the same as for a formation without support, except the second squad does a countercolumn. The third squad then dresses on the right of the second squad, and the first squad dresses on the left of the second squad.

### Platoon Formation With Lateral Support

B-94 Troops deployed in lateral support (Figure B-8) extend the sides of a formation and prevent access to the rear of the formation. The command for forming a platoon formation with lateral support is *PLATOON AS SKIRMISHERS-(ECHELON LEFT, ECHELON RIGHT, WEDGE), SECOND SQUAD IN LATERAL SUPPORT, MOVE*. The first and third squads execute the formation, while the second squad stands fast. When the formation is formed, the odd-numbered members of the second squad form in column formation behind the last man of the first squad and the even-numbered members form in column formation behind the last man of the third squad.

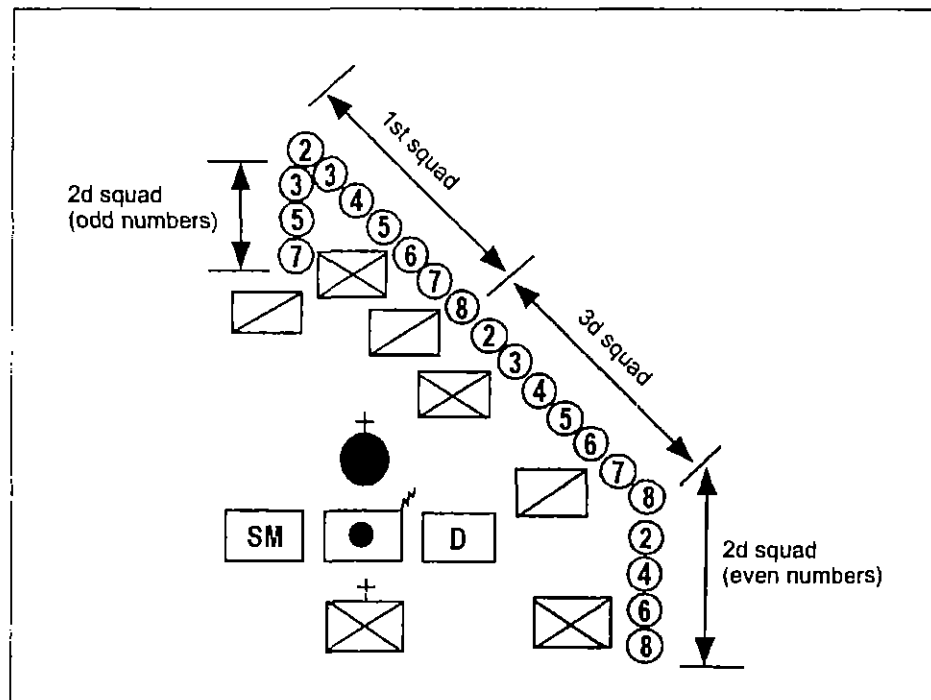


Figure B-8 Platoon Echelon Right, 2d Squad in Lateral Support

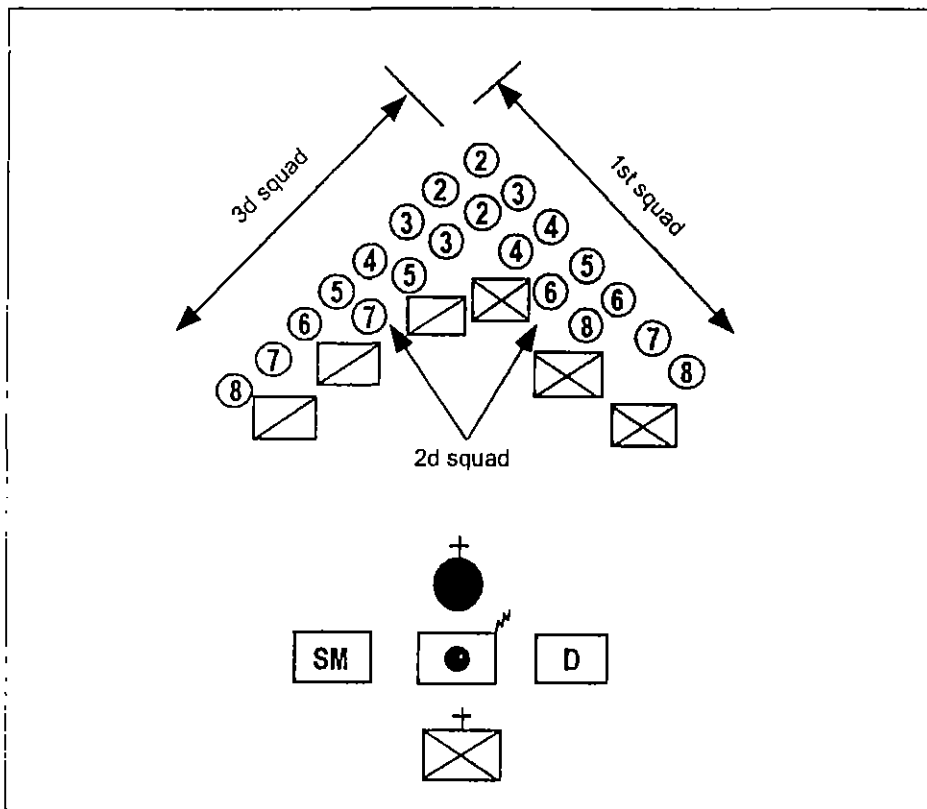
B-95 To move the second squad from general support to lateral support, the platoon leader commands *SECOND SQUAD, LATERAL SUPPORT, MOVE*. To have the second squad join the formation from general or lateral support, the platoon leader commands *SECOND SQUAD, EXTEND THE LINE (WEDGE), MOVE*. The second squad moves out—odd-numbered members to the left and even-numbered members to the right—to extend the formation of the first and third squads.



B-96 To assemble the platoon from a platoon formation with lateral support is nearly the same as for the platoon line. However, the number two men of the second and third squads do a right face and a left face, respectively, toward their squad leaders. On the execution command, the first and third squads move to the point designated by the platoon leader. As the first and third squads clear the formation, the second squad moves

**Platoon Formation With Close Support**

B-97 Troops in close support (Figure B-9) reinforce the line to prevent the crowd from breaking through the control force. This is done by putting a second line of soldiers at a close interval behind the lead element, covering the interval between the soldiers in the lead formation



**Figure B-9 Platoon Wedge, 2nd Squad in Close Support**

B-98 The command for forming a platoon formation with a squad in close support is *PLATOON AS SKIRMISHERS (ECHELON LEFT, ECHELON RIGHT, WEDGE), SECOND SQUAD IN CLOSE SUPPORT, MOVE*. The first and third squads execute the primary formation. After the first and third squads are in position, the second squad executes the same formation to the rear of the first formation and closes in on it. The soldiers in the supporting formation shift to cover the intervals between soldiers in the first formation

## Vehicles

B-99 When a control force encounters large riot groups, they can employ vehicles and troops on foot in riot control formations. Employ armored vehicles when practical because they have a strong psychological effect and offer protection for occupants. Consider the following when using vehicles in riot control formations:

- A windshield with safety glass offers some protection in the upright position and minimizes the danger of injury from glass fragments. However, if paint or other obscuring materials strike the glass, the operator may be unable to see well enough to operate the vehicle safely.
- A wooden or metal frame strung with razor wire and mounted across the front of a vehicle enhances the vehicle's usefulness as a mobile barrier and increases its psychological impact.
- A dismounted formation walking alongside the vehicle may be needed to keep rioters from reaching the sides and rear of the vehicle.

## Formation Variations

B-100 During riot control operations, the platoon leader may rotate squads in the lead elements of the formation to give them a rest. He is not limited to using only the squads specified in the preceding examples as the lead elements. By changing the preparatory command, he can choose other squads to lead the unit. For example, if he wants the first and second squads to lead a platoon wedge, he issues the command *PLATOON WEDGE, THIRD SQUAD IN SUPPORT, MOVE*. By designating the support squad in the preparatory command, the platoon leader tells the remaining squads that they will lead the formation.

B-101 The platoon leader may also relieve squads in the lead element by forming the same formation with support squads. The support element then passes through the lead element. This procedure is often necessary when soldiers don protective masks to employ riot control agents.

## COMMANDS

B-102 Commands can be given to riot control units in formation orally or with hand signals. Normally, both verbal and nonverbal commands are given. All formation commands are given in two counts—a preparatory command followed by an execution command. All movements into or recovering from riot control formations are performed at the halt.

B-103 The formation commander faces the troops and gives the preparatory oral command, accompanied by the appropriate visual command. On the execution command, the leader drops both arms and points to the position where he wants the element to form. The formation commander gives the following visual commands:

- **Echelon left** Extends left arm upward at a 45-degree angle and right arm downward at a 45-degree angle, simulating the intended formation.

- **Echelon right** Extends right arm upward at a 45-degree angle and left arm downward at a 45-degree angle, simulating the intended formation
- **Line formation** Extends both arms parallel to the ground
- **Wedge formation** Extends both arms downward at a 45-degree angle, forming a wedge
- **Diamond formation** Extends both arms above his head, bending elbows slightly and touching fingertips together
- **Circle formation** Extends both arms above his head, bending elbows slightly and touching fingertips together, then makes a circular motion with his right hand
- **Assemble from a riot control formation** Extends right arm upward and makes a circular motion

B-104 The oral rifle commands for safe port, safeguard, and on guard and the baton commands for parade rest, port, and on guard are given in one count. Do not rely on oral commands completely, especially with the added noise from vehicles, helicopters, and crowds. Plan to use alternate methods for relaying commands.

B-105 While in the assembly area, each squad leader has his squad count off. The squad leader is always number 1, and the baseman for the formation is number 2. The number each soldier is assigned during the count off determines his position in his unit's control formation. The unit marches in column formation from the assembly area to the disturbance site. It halts a reasonably safe distance from the crowd, within plain view of it. The on-site commander decides the riot control formation to use and the size of the element to commit.

B-106 On the preparatory command, troops assume the safe-port position. On the execution command, troops form the formation with the baseman posting himself at the location pointed to by the element leader. As troops reach their proper positions, they face the direction of the unit's intended advance and come to a halt. They remain halted in the safe-port position and await further orders. Once the troops are in the riot control formation, the commander commands *SAFEGUARD* and issues the proclamation. Following the proclamation, the commander informs disturbance participants that they have a specific time in which to comply with the order to disperse. If participants fail to disperse within the given time, the commander employs measures needed to disperse the crowd.

B-107 When a rifle-equipped formation is commanded to safeguard or on guard, the commands are for the lead element only and the support elements come to port arms. Similarly, when a baton-equipped formation is commanded to port or on guard, the general or lateral support elements assume the port position. Members of support elements give a resounding stomp with their left feet when the lead element goes to on guard. On the command *FORWARD, MARCH*, the support element maintains the same half step as the lead element.

## CADENCE

B-108 The usual cadence for moving troops is as follows

- **Into and out of a riot control formation** Double time (180 steps per minute) Troops are at safe port with a rifle or at port with a baton when performing these maneuvers
- **Safeguard position** Quick time (120 steps per minute)
- **On-guard position** Cadence is 60 steps per minute For psychological effect, troops usually accentuate each left step with a stomp

B-109 The commander may increase or decrease cadence depending on the situation For example, he may order quick time to keep pressure on a crowd that is withdrawing He halts a formation moving in the on-guard position by commanding *PLATOON (SQUAD/COMPANY), HALT* The command of execution is given on the left foot On the command *HALT*, each soldier in the formation brings his right foot forward, even with his left foot, then takes one more half step with his left foot He stomps his left foot as he comes to a halt and remains in the on-guard position

## INTERVAL DISTANCE

B-110 The usual interval distance between soldiers in riot control formations is one pace or 30 inches but it can be adjusted for particular situations A 30-inch interval may not be sufficient in some situations and may have to be lengthened Some police forces have found that a greater interval makes formation members less vulnerable to thrown objects

## COMMANDER AND LEADER POSITIONS

B-111 When a unit is in a column formation, each echelon commander usually takes a position at the head of the column In riot control formations, the element leader takes a position where he can best direct and control the unit The senior formation commander normally centers himself and his staff behind the formation Subordinate leaders position themselves where they can best control their soldiers within the formation For diamond and circle formations, the squad leader and the assistant squad leader place themselves in the center of the formation These are only guidelines, and leaders can adjust positions with respect to their units as they see fit

B-112 In column formations, messengers, radio operators, marksmen, disperser operators and other platoon headquarters members usually take positions at the front of the column In riot control formations, headquarters personnel can be positioned near the commander at his discretion If the situation does not allow this, headquarters personnel can be positioned behind the control element

## Appendix C

# Equipment Guide

Table C-1 lists equipment that may be issued to EPWs when their clothing becomes unserviceable (See CTA 50-900 when determining what clothing to issue EPWs) Sundry packs and recreation equipment are also needed, and the facility commander arranges for them through supply or local purchase

**Table C-1 Individual Equipment**

Line Item No	Item, Basis of Issue, and Remarks	Unit	Allowances by Zone						
			I <sup>1</sup>	II <sup>2</sup>	III <sup>3</sup>	IV <sup>4</sup>	V <sup>5</sup>	VI <sup>6</sup>	VII <sup>7</sup>
B60252	Belt, trousers, cotton webbing, 1 1/4", per EPW	EA	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
C06886	Boot, combat, men's, leather, black, 8 1/2" high, per EPW	PR	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
C32182	Buckle, belt, trousers, brass, lacquered finish, per EPW	EA	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
C03750	Cap, hot weather, polyester/rayon, OG 106, per EPW	EA	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
NA	Cap, wool, knit, per EPW	EA	0	0	1	1	1	1	1
G48939	Drawers, men's, cotton, thigh length, white, with elastic waistband, per EPW	PR	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
G49213	Drawers, men's, wool knit, ankle length, silver gray, per EPW	PR	0	0	2	2	2	2	2
J62858	Glove inserts, wool and nylon knit, OG 108, per EPW	PR	0	0	1	1	1	1	1
J63269	Glove shells, leather, black, per EPW	PR	0	0	1	1	1	1	1
K35007	Helmet, sun, adjustment chin strap, adjustment head size, per EPW	EA	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
L70789	Liner, wet weather, poncho, camouflage color, per EPW	EA	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
P17415	Poncho, coated, nylon, OG 207, per EPW	EA	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
T03520	Shirt, men's, cotton sateen, OG 107, per EPW	EA	0	0	2	2	2	2	2
T04205	Shirt, men's, wool, nylon flannel, OG 108, per EPW	EA	0	0	2	2	2	2	2
T93335	Sock, men's, wool, cushion sole, OG 408, stretch type, per EPW	PR	4	4	4	4	4	4	4

**Table C-1. Individual Equipment (continued)**

Line Item No.	Item, Basis of Issue, and Remarks	Unit	Allowances by Zone						
			I <sup>1</sup>	II <sup>2</sup>	III <sup>3</sup>	IV <sup>4</sup>	V <sup>5</sup>	VI <sup>6</sup>	VII <sup>7</sup>
X36358	Trousers, men's, cotton sateen, OG 107, per EPW	PR	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
X37180	Trousers, men's, wool serge, OG 108, per EPW/RP	PR	0	0	2	2	2	2	2
B72225	Blanket, bed, wool, OG, per EPW	EA	1	1	2	2	3	3	3
NA	Brassard, Red Cross, per RP	EA	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
F54817	Cup, water, canteen, steel, per EPW	EA	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
N53095	Pan, mess kit, per EPW	EA	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
<sup>1</sup> Zone I—Warm or hot all year <sup>2</sup> Zone II—Warm or hot summers, mild winters <sup>3</sup> Zone III—Warm or hot summers, cold winters <sup>4</sup> Zone IV—Mild summers, cool winters <sup>5</sup> Zone V—Warm or hot summers, cold or very cold winters <sup>6</sup> Zone VI—Mild summers, cold winters <sup>7</sup> Zone VII—Mild summers, very cold winters									

## Appendix D

### Military Police Internment/Resettlement Units

Table D-1 provides a synopsis of the various MP I/R units that may be assigned to the TO

**Table D-1. MP I/R Units**

Unit	TOE	Assigned To	Duties
HHC, MP command (I/R)	19641L000	FORSCOM in CONUS and TSC OCONUS	Provides C <sup>2</sup> , staff planning, and supervision of I/R operations performed by assigned and attached MP elements
HHC, MP brigade (I/R)	19762L000	TSC	Provides command, staff planning, and supervision of I/R operations performed by assigned and attached I/R MP elements
MP detachment, I/R team (C <sup>2</sup> )	19543LH	I/R brigade	Provides C <sup>2</sup> , staff planning, and supervision of two or three I/R battalions that process and intern 12,000 or fewer people
MP detachment, I/R team (I/R brigade liaison team)	19543LD	MP brigade (I/R)	Provides the following when the brigade's span of control is exceeded <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Extends the capability of the MP brigade (I/R) to plan and supervise collection, internment, and evacuation operations of EPWs, CIs, DCs, and US military prisoners</li> <li>• Acts as a coordination link to allied and indigenous organizations to ensure that they are complying with the Geneva Conventions concerning EPWs and CIs</li> <li>• Ensures that EPW operations in the TO follow US policies and directives, international agreements, and US policies implementing international law</li> <li>• Is an essential link with HN forces securing EPWs, CIs, and DCs. Ensures that policies favorably consider the intent of the US to comply with international treaties pertaining to the care and handling of EPWs, CIs, and DCs</li> </ul>
MP detachment, I/R information center	19643L000	I/R command, I/R brigade, or MP brigade	Receives, processes, maintains, disseminates, and transmits required information and data relating to EPWs, American PWs, CIs, and DCs within the TO

Table D-1. MP I/R Units (continued)

Unit	TOE	Assigned To	Duties
MP detachment, I/R team (EPW/CI branch camp liaison)	19543LE	One per camp (northeast Asia only)	Provides a coordination link to allied and indigenous I/R facilities Helps maintain proper custody and control of internees Ensures that the provisions of US policies, publications, and directives, international agreements, US policies implementing international law, and the Geneva Conventions are fulfilled
MP detachment, I/R team (EPW/CI processing liaison team)	19543LG	MP detachment, I/R team (I/R brigade liaison team)	Provides a coordination link to allied and indigenous forces Establishes, organizes, and operates an I/R processing element within an I/R facility or, with an I/R battalion support team, at a location other than an I/R facility
MP detachment I/R team (I/R processing squad)	19543LC	MP detachment, I/R team (I/R brigade liaison team) (for C <sup>2</sup> )	Provides processing capabilities for 8 internees per hour One squad is assigned for every 200 internees requiring processing per day within a separate/independent corps, division, or brigade force as required
HHC, MP battalion (I/R) (EPW/CI/DC)	19646L400 or 19546A and 19547AB(4)	I/R brigade in an AO	Provides C <sup>2</sup> , administrative, and logistics support to operate an I/R facility Provides OPCON of attached units Is capable of interning and supporting 4,000 EPWs and CIs or 8,000 DCs
HHC, MP battalion (I/R)	19546A000	MP brigade	Provides command staff planning, administration, and logistical support to operate an I/R facility for EPWs, CIs, or US military prisoners Provides OPCON of assigned and attached units Supervises battalion functions (personnel, medical, supply, and food services)
HHC, MP battalion (confinement)	19656L000	MP brigade	Provides command, staff planning, administration, and logistical support for a confinement facility for US military prisoners
MP detachment (I/R) (confinement)	19547AA00	HHC, MP battalion (I/R)	Provides supervision, administration, health services, and logistical support for US military prisoners



Table D-1. MP I/R Units (continued)

Unit	TOE	Assigned To	Duties
MP company (guard)	19667L000	I/R battalion	<p>Provides guards for EPWs, CIs, US military prisoners, DCs, and installations and facilities at an I/R facility</p> <p>Is capable of securing 500 US military prisoners, 2,000 EPWs, 2,000 CIs, or 4,000 DCs in an I/R facility</p> <p>Provides static guards at rail terminals and sensitive-material facilities (maximum 240,000 square yards)</p> <p>Provides food support for assigned personnel and collocated units</p>
MP company (escort guard)	19647L000	I/R MP brigade	<p>Provides supervision and security for evacuating and moving EPWs, CIs, DCs, US military prisoners, and other detained persons via vehicles, trains, planes, and road marches</p>

## Glossary

<b>AA</b>	Alcoholics Anonymous
<b>AC</b>	active component
<b>ACCP</b>	Army contingency communications package
<b>ACCP</b>	Army Correspondence Course Program
<b>ACS</b>	Army Corrections System
<b>ACT</b>	active duty
<b>admin</b>	administrative
<b>ADT</b>	active-duty tour
<b>AFJI</b>	Armed Forces Journal International
<b>AFR</b>	Air Force regulation
<b>AG</b>	adjutant general
<b>AICS</b>	Army Inmate Correction System
<b>AMEDD</b>	Army Medical Department
<b>AMS</b>	Army management structure
<b>AO</b>	area of operations
<b>AOR</b>	area of responsibility
<b>AR</b>	Army regulation
<b>ASD</b>	Assistant Secretary of Defense
<b>ATTN</b>	attention
<b>AWOL</b>	absent without leave
<b>BDU</b>	battle dress uniform
<b>BLD</b>	brigade liaison detachment
<b>BSA</b>	brigade support area
<b>BTOC</b>	brigade tactical operations center
<b>C<sup>2</sup></b>	command and control
<b>CA</b>	civil affairs

<b>CARE</b>	Cooperative for American Relief Everywhere, Incorporated
<b>CHA</b>	corps holding area
<b>CHS</b>	combat health support
<b>CI</b>	civilian internee
<b>CID</b>	criminal investigation division
<b>CINC</b>	commander in chief
<b>CMO</b>	civil-military operations
<b>co</b>	company
<b>COL</b>	colonel
<b>COMMZ</b>	communications zone
<b>CONUS</b>	continental United States
<b>COS</b>	civilian occupational specialty
<b>COSCOM</b>	Corps Support Command (US Army)
<b>CP</b>	collecting point
<b>CPT</b>	captain
<b>CRS</b>	Catholic Relief Services
<b>CRS</b>	Correctional-Reporting System
<b>CS</b>	<i>o</i> -chlorobenzylidene malonitrile
<b>CS</b>	combat support
<b>CSB</b>	correctional-supervision branch
<b>CSS</b>	combat service support
<b>CTA</b>	common table of allowance
<b>CTF</b>	correctional-treatment file
<b>CZ</b>	combat zone
<b>D</b>	disperser
<b>D</b>	day
<b>DA</b>	Department of the Army
<b>DART</b>	disaster assistance response team
<b>DASD</b>	Deputy Assistant Secretary of Defense
<b>DC</b>	District of Columbia

---

<b>DC</b>	dislocated civilian
<b>DCAA</b>	dislocated-civilian assembly area
<b>DCSOPS</b>	Deputy Chief of Staff for Operations and Plans
<b>DD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>DFAS-IN</b>	Defense Finance and Accounting Service—Indianapolis
<b>DNBI</b>	disease and nonbattle injuries
<b>DOD</b>	Department of Defense
<b>DOJ</b>	Department of Justice
<b>DOMS</b>	Director of Military Support
<b>DOS</b>	Department of State
<b>DOT</b>	Department of Transportation
<b>DP</b>	displaced person
<b>DS</b>	direct support
<b>DSA</b>	division support area
<b>ea</b>	each
<b>EAC</b>	echelons above corps
<b>EBC</b>	echelons below corps
<b>EEI</b>	essential elements of information
<b>EGA</b>	electronically generated form
<b>EGCT</b>	extra good-conduct time
<b>EHP</b>	emergency home patrol
<b>EPW</b>	enemy prisoner of war
<b>ERA</b>	emergency rest area
<b>ES</b>	emergency services
<b>ESF</b>	emergency support function
<b>eval</b>	evaluation
<b>FBI</b>	Federal Bureau of Investigation
<b>FCF</b>	field confinement facility
<b>FDF</b>	field detention facility
<b>FEMA</b>	Federal Emergency Management Agency

<b>Five Ss and T</b>	search, segregate, silence, speed, safeguard, and tag
<b>FM</b>	field manual
<b>FMFM</b>	Fleet Marine Force manual
<b>FMFRP</b>	Fleet Marine Force reference publication
<b>FN</b>	foreign nation
<b>FORSCOM</b>	United States Army Forces Command
<b>FSB</b>	forward support battalion
<b>ft</b>	foot, feet
<b>G2</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence)
<b>G3</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, G3 (Operations and Plans)
<b>G4</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, G4 (Logistics)
<b>G5</b>	Assistant Chief of Staff, G5 (Civil Affairs)
<b>gal</b>	gallon(s)
<b>GC</b>	Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War, 12 August 1949
<b>gd</b>	guard
<b>GO</b>	general officer
<b>GP</b>	general purpose
<b>GPW</b>	Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War, 12 August 1949
<b>GWS</b>	Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field, 12 August 1949
<b>GWS (SEA)</b>	Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick, and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea, 12 August 1949
<b>H&amp;RA</b>	Humanitarian and Refugee Affairs
<b>H/CA</b>	humanitarian and civic assistance
<b>HA</b>	humanitarian assistance
<b>HHC</b>	headquarters and headquarters company
<b>HIV</b>	human immunodeficiency virus
<b>HM</b>	hazardous material
<b>HN</b>	host nation

---

<b>HQ</b>	headquarters
<b>HQDA</b>	Headquarters, Department of the Army
<b>ht</b>	height
<b>I/R</b>	internment/resettlement
<b>ICRC</b>	International Committee of the Red Cross
<b>ID</b>	identification
<b>IDP</b>	internally displaced person
<b>IFRC</b>	International Federation of Red Cross and Red Crescent Societies
<b>IG</b>	inspector general
<b>IHO</b>	international humanitarian organization
<b>IMC</b>	International Medical Corps
<b>INS</b>	Immigration and Naturalization Service
<b>IO</b>	international organization
<b>IOM</b>	International Organization for Migration
<b>IR</b>	information requirements
<b>IRIC</b>	internment/resettlement information center
<b>IRIS</b>	Internment/Resettlement Information System
<b>IRS</b>	Internal Revenue Service
<b>ISN</b>	internment serial number
<b>J4</b>	Logistics Directorate
<b>Jan</b>	January
<b>JCS</b>	joint chief of staff
<b>JFC</b>	joint forces commander
<b>JTF</b>	joint task force
<b>JTR</b>	joint travel regulation
<b>L&amp;O</b>	law and order
<b>LOC</b>	lines of communication
<b>LP</b>	listening post
<b>LRA</b>	local reproduction authorized
<b>LTC</b>	lieutenant colonel

LZ	landing zone
M	month
MAJ	major
MANSCEN	Maneuver Support Center
MARKS	Modern Army Recordkeeping System
MBA	main battle area
MCCM	modular crowd control munition
MCO	Marine Corps order
MCO	movement control officer
MCRP	Marine Corps reference publication
MDMP	military decision-making process
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations
MI	military intelligence
misc	miscellaneous
MOOTW	military operations other than war
MOS	military occupational specialty
MP	military police
MRE	meal, ready-to-eat
MRO	medical regulating officer
MSCA	military support to civil authorities
MSF	Medecin Sans Frontieres (Doctors Without Borders)
MSR	main supply route
MWD	military working dog
NA	not applicable
NA	Narcotics Anonymous
NATL	national
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NBC	nuclear, biological, or chemical
NCCB	National Council of Catholic Bishops
NCO	noncommissioned officer

---

<b>NCOIC</b>	noncommissioned officer in charge
<b>NDC TACNOTE</b>	National Disaster Coalition tactical note
<b>NG</b>	national guard
<b>NGO</b>	nongovernmental organization
<b>NLW</b>	nonlethal weapon
<b>No</b>	number
<b>NOK</b>	next of kin
<b>NWP</b>	Naval warfare publication
<b>obj</b>	objective
<b>OC</b>	oleoresin capsicum
<b>OCONUS</b>	outside continental United States
<b>OD</b>	other detainee
<b>OFDA</b>	Office of Foreign Disaster Assistance
<b>OG</b>	olive green
<b>OIC</b>	officer in charge
<b>OIP</b>	organization inspection policy
<b>OP</b>	observation post
<b>OPCON</b>	operational control
<b>OPLAN</b>	operation plan
<b>OPNAVINST</b>	Office of the Chief of Naval Operations instruction
<b>OPORD</b>	operation order
<b>OSD</b>	Office of the Secretary of Defense
<b>PA</b>	physician's assistant
<b>PACAFP</b>	Pacific Air Forces pamphlet
<b>pam</b>	pamphlet
<b>PAO</b>	public affairs officer
<b>PHS</b>	Public Health Service
<b>PIR</b>	priority intelligence requirements
<b>PM</b>	provost marshal
<b>POC</b>	point of contact



<b>pr</b>	pair
<b>PRC</b>	populace and resource control
<b>PSB</b>	prisoner services branch
<b>PSYOP</b>	psychological operations
<b>pub</b>	publication
<b>PVNTMED</b>	preventive medicine
<b>PW</b>	prisoners of war
<b>QRF</b>	quick-reaction force
<b>qty</b>	quantity
<b>RCF</b>	regional corrections facility
<b>RCM</b>	rules for courts-martial
<b>reg</b>	regimental
<b>ROE</b>	rules of engagement
<b>ROI</b>	rules of interaction
<b>RP</b>	retained person
<b>S2</b>	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
<b>S3</b>	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
<b>S4</b>	Supply Officer (US Army)
<b>S5</b>	Civil Affairs Officer (US Army)
<b>SA</b>	situational awareness
<b>SCF</b>	Save the Children Foundation
<b>SECDEF</b>	Secretary of Defense
<b>SGT</b>	sergeant
<b>SJA</b>	staff judge advocate
<b>SM</b>	selected marksman
<b>SOP</b>	standing operating procedure
<b>SSN</b>	social security number
<b>STANAG</b>	Standardization Agreement
<b>STD</b>	sexually transmitted disease
<b>STP</b>	soldier testing program

---

<b>STP</b>	soldier training publication
<b>STRESS</b>	search, tag, report, evacuate, segregate, and safeguard
<b>TB</b>	tuberculosis
<b>TCMS</b>	Theater Construction Management System
<b>THP</b>	temporary home patrol
<b>TO</b>	theater of operations
<b>TOC</b>	tactical operations center
<b>TOE</b>	table(s) of organization and equipment
<b>TRADOC</b>	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
<b>TSC</b>	Theater Support Command
<b>TTP</b>	tactics, techniques, and procedures
<b>UCMJ</b>	Uniform Code of Military Justice
<b>UIC</b>	unit identification code
<b>UN</b>	United Nations
<b>UNDP</b>	United Nations Development Program
<b>UNDRC</b>	United Nations Disaster Relief Coordinator
<b>UNHCR</b>	United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees
<b>UNICEF</b>	United Nations Children's Fund
<b>UNOCHA</b>	United Nations Office for the Coordination of Humanitarian Affairs
<b>US</b>	United States
<b>USACIC</b>	United States Army Criminal Investigation Command
<b>USAFEP</b>	United States Air Forces Europe pamphlet
<b>USAID</b>	United States Agency for International Development
<b>USAR</b>	United States Army Reserve
<b>USCG</b>	United States Coast Guard
<b>USD</b>	Under Secretary of Defense
<b>USDA</b>	United States Department of Agriculture
<b>USDB</b>	United States Disciplinary Barracks
<b>USIA</b>	United States Information Agency
<b>WFP</b>	World Food Program

**WO**     *warrant officer*

**wt**     *weight*

**Y**     *year*

## Bibliography

- AR 15-6 *Procedures for Investigating Officers and Boards of Officers* 11 May 1988
- AR 15-130 *Army Clemency and Parole Board* 23 October 1998
- AR 20-1 *Inspector General Activities and Procedures* 15 March 1994
- AR 25-400-2 *The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS)* 26 February 1993
- AR 27-10 *Legal Services Military Justice* 24 June 1996
- AR 40-3 *Medical, Dental, and Veterinary Care* 30 July 1999
- AR 40-5 *Preventive Medicine* 15 October 1990
- AR 190-8 *Enemy Prisoners of War Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees, and Other Detainees (OPNAVINST 3461 6, AFJI 31-304, MCO 3461 1)* 1 October 1997
- AR 190-12 *Military Police Working Dogs* 30 September 1993
- AR 190-14 *Carrying of Firearms and Use of Force for Law Enforcement and Security Duties* 12 March 1993
- AR 190 22 *Searches Seizures and Disposition of Property* 1 January 1983
- AR 190-40 *Serious Incident Report* 30 November 1993
- AR 190-47 *The Army Corrections System* 15 August 1996
- AR 210-130 *Laundry and Dry Cleaning Operations* 15 April 1993
- AR 210-174 *Accounting Procedures for Prisoners' Personal Property and Funds* 17 September 1986
- AR 385-10 *The Army Safety Program* 23 May 1988
- AR 600-13 *Army Policy for the Assignment of Female Soldiers* 27 March 1992
- AR 630-10 *Absence Without Leave, Desertion and Administration of Personnel Involved in Civilian Court Proceedings* 10 June 1992
- AR 633-30 *Military Sentences to Confinement (AFR 125-30)* 6 November 1964
- AR 670-1 *Wear and Appearance of Army Uniforms and Insignia* 1 September 1992
- AR 700-84 *Issue and Sale of Personal Clothing* 15 May 1983
- AR 710-2 *Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level* 31 October 1997
- CTA 50-900 *Clothing and Individual Equipment* 1 September 1994
- CTA 50-970 *Common Items of Nonexpendable Material* 21 September 1990
- DA Form 1124 *Individual Receipt Voucher Personal Deposit Fund* October 1952

- DA Form 1125-R *Summary Receipt and Disbursement Voucher Personal Fund* April 1986
- DA Form 1128 *Petty Cash Voucher—Personal Deposit Fund* 1 September 1960
- DA Form 1129-R *Record of Prisoners' Personal Deposit Fund (LRA)* April 1986
- DA Form 1130-R *Statement of Prisoner's Personal Deposit Fund and Request for Withdrawal of Personal Funds (LRA)* April 1986
- DA Form 1131-R *Prisoner's Cash Account—Personal Deposit Fund (LRA)* April 1986
- DA Form 1132-R *Prisoner's Personal Property List—Personal Deposit Fund (LRA)* April 1936
- DA Form 1134-R *Request for Withdrawal of Personal Property (LRA)* April 1986
- DA Form 1135-R *Personal Property Permit (LRA)* April 1986
- DA Form 2028 *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms* 1 February 1974
- DA Form 2662-R *United States Army EPW Identity Card (LRA)* May 1982
- DA Form 2663-R *Fingerprint Card (LRA)* May 1982
- DA Form 2664-R *Weight Register (Prisoner of War) (LRA)* May 1982
- DA Form 2665-R *Capture Card for Prisoner of War (LRA)* May 1982
- DA Form 2666-R *Prisoner of War Notification of Address (LRA)* May 1982
- DA Form 2667-R *Prisoner of War Mail (Letter) (LRA)* May 1982
- DA Form 2668-R *Prisoner of War (Post Card) (LRA)* May 1982
- DA Form 2674-R *Enemy Prisoner of War/Civilian Internee Strength Report (LRA)* May 1982
- DA Form 2677-R *United States Army Civilian Internee Identity Card (LRA)* November 1986
- DA Form 2678-R *Civilian Internee NATL-Internment Card (LRA)* November 1986
- DA Form 2679-R *Civilian Internee Letter (LRA)* November 1986
- DA Form 2680-R *Civilian Internee NATL Post Card (LRA)* November 1986
- DA Form 3078 *Personal Clothing Request* May 1993
- DA Form 3955 *Change of Address and Directory Card* 1 February 1979
- DA Form 3997 *Military Police Desk Blotter* 1 December 1998
- DA Form 4137 *Evidence/Property Custody Document* 1 July 1976
- DA Form 4237-R *Detainee Personnel Record (LRA)* August 1995
- DA Pam 27-1 *Treaties Governing Land Warfare* 7 December 1956
- DA Pam 37-100-95 *The Army Management Structure (AMS), Fiscal Year 1995* 1 July 1994
- DA Pam 350-38 *Standards in Weapons Training* 3 July 1997

- DD Form 2 (ACT) *Armed Forces of the United States Geneva Convention Identification Card (Active) (EGA)* October 1993
- DD Form 499 *Prisoner's Mail and Correspondence Record* 1 October 1967
- DD Form 503 *Medical Examiner's Report* 1 December 1955
- DD Form 504 *Request and Receipt for Health and Comfort Supplies* 1 April 1976
- DD Form 506 *Daily Strength Record of Prisoners* 1 February 1968
- DD Form 509 *Inspection Record of Prisoners in Segregation* 1 July 1970
- DD Form 515 *Roster of Prisoners* December 1955
- DD Form 2707 *Confinement Order* November 1999
- DD Form 2708 *Receipt for Inmate or Detained Person* November 1999
- DD Form 2710 *Inmate Background Summary* November 1999
- DD Form 2718 *Inmate's Release Order* November 1999
- DD Form 2745 *Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag* May 1996
- DFAS-IN 37-1 *Finance and Accounting Policy Implementation* January 2000
- DOD 4160 21-M *Defense Reutilization and Marketing Manual* August 1997
- DOD Directive 1030 1 *Victim and Witness Assistance* 23 November 1994
- DOD Directive 1325 4 *Confinement of Military Prisoners and Administration of Military Correctional Programs and Facilities* 28 September 1999
- DOD Directive 3025 1 *Military Support to Civil Authorities (MSCA)* 15 January 1993
- DOD Directive 5100 46 *Foreign Disaster Relief* 4 December 1975
- DOD Instruction 1030 2 *Victim and Witness Assistance Procedures* 23 December 1974
- FBI Form FD-249 *Arrest and Institutional Fingerprint Card* 11 May 1999
- FM 3-0 *Operations* To be published within 6 months
- FM 3-05 30 *Psychological Operations* 19 June 2000
- FM 5-34 *Engineer Field Data* 30 August 1999
- FM 8-51 *Combat Stress Control in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures* 29 September 1994
- FM 14-100 *Financial Management Operations* 7 May 1997
- FM 19-10 *The Military Police Law and Order Operations* 30 September 1987
- FM 19-15 *Civil Disturbances* 25 November 1985
- FM 19-20 *Law Enforcement Investigations* 25 November 1985

- FM 21-10 *Field Hygiene and Sanitation* 11 June 2000
- FM 22-5 *Drill and Ceremonies* 8 December 1986
- FM 22-6 *Guard Duty* 17 September 1971
- FM 22-100 *Army Leadership* 31 August 1999
- FM 27-10 *The Law of Land Warfare* 18 July 1956
- FM 33-1-1 *Psychological Operations Techniques and Procedures* 5 May 1994
- FM 90-40 *Multiservice Procedures for the Tactical Employment of Nonlethal Weapons (NLW) (MCRP 3-15 8, NWP 3-07-31, USCG Pub 3-07 31)* 6 October 1998
- FM 100-5 *Engineer Operations* 27 February 1996
- FM 100-19 *Domestic Support Operations (FMFM 7-10)* 1 July 1993
- FM 100-23-1 *Multiservice Procedures for Humanitarian Assistance Operations (FMFRP 7-16 NDC TACNOTE 3-07 6, ACCP 50-56, PACAFP 50-56, USAFEP 50-56)* 31 October 1994
- FM 101-5 *Staff Organization and Operations* 31 May 1997
- Foreign Assistance Act, US Code (1994)*
- Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field (GWS), 12 August 1949*
- Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick, and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea (GWS [SEA]), 12 August 1949*
- Geneva Convention Protocol Relative to the Status of Refugees 1967*
- Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War (GC), 12 August 1949*
- Geneva Convention Relative to the Status of Refugees 1951*
- Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War (GPW), 12 August 1949*
- Geneva Conventions for the Protection of War Victims, 12 August 1949*
- Misc Pub 27-7 *Manual for Courts-Martial, United States, 2000 Edition*
- Posse Comitatus Act, US Code (1994)*
- STANAG 2033 *Interrogation of Prisoners of War (PW) (Edition 6)* 6 December 1994
- STANAG 2044 *Procedures for Dealing With Prisoners of War (PW) (Edition 5)* 28 June 1994
- STANAG 2084 *Handling and Reporting of Captured Equipment and Documents (Edition 6)* 6 April 1999
- STP 19-95B1-SM *Soldier's Manual, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Level 1* 21 February 1997
- STP 19-95C14-SM-TG *Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for MOS 95C Internment/Resettlement Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4* 26 March 1999

STP 21-24-SMCT *Soldier Testing Program (STP)* 1 October 1992

TC 27-10-1 *Selected Problems in the Law of War* 26 June 1979

*UCMJ*

*UNHCR Handbook for the Military on Humanitarian Operations, First Edition* 1995



# Index

## A

ACS See Army Corrections System (ACS)  
adjudged prisoner, 7-4  
adjutant general (AG), 2-9  
administration  
    CI facility, 5-2  
    DC facility, 9-15  
    FCF, 8-11  
    HA facility, 10-11  
administrative segregation, 7-5  
AG See adjutant general (AG)  
agencies involved in I/R operations, 1-6  
agitators, 4-10  
agriculture program  
    CIs, 5-16  
    EPWs, 4-20  
air assault operations, 3-19  
airborne operations, 3-18  
aircraft transport, 8-19  
amphibious operations, 3-18  
apprehension of escaped prisoners, 8-16  
approved-adjudged prisoner, 7-4  
armored operations, 3-18  
Army Corrections System (ACS), 7-1  
assembly area, DC, 9-4  
assignment to internment facility  
    CIs, 5-4  
    EPWs, 4-9

## B

backhaul system, 3-10  
barracks rules, 9-15  
baton positions, B-14  
battlefield confinement, US military prisoners, 8-1  
briefing DCs, 9-6

## C

cadence, B-27  
canteens, 4-18  
captives, 1-11  
capture tag, 3-2  
captured supplies and equipment, 6-5  
capturing power, 1-6  
casual prisoner, 7-4

categories of civilians, 9-2  
central CP, 3-12  
CHA See corps holding area (CHA)  
chapels, 6-7  
chaplain, 2-10  
chaplain captive, 4-14  
chemical irritants, B-13  
CI See civilian internee (CI)  
circle formation, B-21  
civil rights, 1-13  
civilian interference, 9-2  
civilian internee (CI), 1-3, 5-1  
civilian lead agency, 1-9  
civilian organizations, 1-8  
civil-military operations (CMO), 9-1  
clandestine activities, 4-23  
classification  
    captives, 3-7  
    DCs, 9-11  
    EPWs, 4-9  
    US military prisoners, 8-7  
classification reduction, 8-9  
clear zones, 6-2  
clemency, 7-11  
close confinement, 7-6  
close support, B-24  
clothing  
    CIs, 5-5  
    civilians, 10-9  
    DCs, 9-12  
    EPWs, 4-15  
    US military prisoners, 8-7  
CMO officer, 2-9  
CMO See civil-military operations (CMO)  
coercion, 3-7  
collecting point (CP), 3-1, 3-10  
collection point, DCs, 9-4  
combat zone (CZ), 1-2  
commander responsibilities, 2-1  
commands, B-25  
communications, 6-3  
compensation  
    CIs, 5-16  
    EPWs, 4-20  
    US military prisoners, 7-11  
complaints, 5-13  
confinement

    CIs, 5-12  
    US military prisoners, 7-1  
confiscated items, 3-5  
constitutional rights, US military prisoners, 7-3  
constructing I/R facilities, 6-1  
control  
    CIs, 5-10, 5-17  
    civilians, 10-10  
    DCs, 9-2, 9-14  
    EPWs, 4-12  
    US military prisoners, 7-5, 8-10  
control force, B-6  
controlled flow, 4-1  
corps holding area (CHA), 3-1, 3-15  
correctional facilities, 7-3  
correctional staff, 7-12  
correctional system, 7-1  
correctional treatment programs, 7-8  
correctional treatment, US military prisoners, 7-1  
correspondence  
    CIs, 5-13  
    EPWs, 4-17  
    US military prisoners, 7-19, 8-14  
counseling, 7-8  
CP See collecting point (CP)  
crowd  
    behavior, B-6  
    control, B-6  
    tactics, B-8  
currency, 3-5  
custody grade, US military prisoners, 7-5, 8-9  
custody, US military prisoners, 7-5, 8-10  
CZ See combat zone (CZ)  

## D

DART See disaster assistance response team (DART)  
database, 4-5  
DC facility, 9-7  
DC operations, 9-1, 9-2  
DC See dislocated civilian (DC)  
deadly force, 9-17, B-1

definitions, 1-2  
 dependent children of CIs, 5-4  
 deprivation, 8-9  
 detained prisoner, 7-4  
 detainees, 1-11  
 detaining power, 5-12  
 diamond formation, B-21  
 disaster assistance response team (DART), 10-19  
 disciplinary  
   *action*, 8-9  
   *measures*, 7-6  
   *punishment*, 5-3  
 disciplinary-and-adjustment board, 8-16  
 discipline  
   CIs, 5-11  
   civilians, 10-10  
   DCs, 9-14  
   EPWs, 4-15  
   US military prisoners, 8-9  
 dislocated civilian (DC), 1-4  
 disorder, 2-8, B-7  
 displaced person (DP), 1-4  
*disposition of DCs*, 9-18  
 dissident actions, 4-21, 5-17  
 disturbance, 2-8, 5-17, 5-18  
 documentation, DCs, 9-6  
 DP See displaced person (DP)

**E**

echelon formation, B-19  
 education program  
   CIs, 5-15  
   EPWs, 4-18  
   US military prisoners, 7-10  
 EGCT See extra good-conduct time (EGCT)  
 emergency action plan, 2-2, 7-7  
 emergency services (ES), 10-14  
   CONUS, 10-14  
   OCONUS, 10-17  
 employment  
   CIs, 5-16  
   EPWs, 4-19  
   US military prisoners, 7-10  
 enemy plants, 4-10  
 enemy prisoner of war (EPW), 1-2, 4-1  
 engineer officer, 2-10  
 EPW leaders, 4-10  
 EPW See enemy prisoner of war (EPW)  
 equipment guide, C-1  
 ES See emergency services (ES)  
 escapes

CIs, 5-14  
 EPWs, 4-24  
 US military prisoners, 7-7  
 escapes, preventing, 8-18  
 escort guard company, 4-11  
 evacuation  
   captives, 3-7  
   DCs, 9-5  
   EPWs, 4-1  
 evacuee, 1-5  
*evacuees, return of*, 9-6  
 evaluation board, 7-8  
 expellee, 1-5  
 extra duty, 8-9  
 extra good-conduct time (EGCT), 7-11

**F**

facility guard force, 2-6  
 FCF See field confinement facility (FCF)  
 FDF See field detention facility (FDF)  
 Federal Response Plan, 1-7  
 female  
   CIs, 5-11  
   EPWs, 4-9  
 field confinement facility (FCF), 7-1, 8-3  
 field detention facility (FDF), 7-1, 8-3  
 field processing captives, 3-2  
 finance officer, 2-9  
 Five S and T procedure (search, segregate, silence, speed, safeguard, and tag), 3-4  
 forfeiture, US military prisoners, 8-9  
 formation enhancement, B-21  
 formations, B-16  
 forms  
   ACS, 7-17  
   FCF, 8-13  
 forward CP, 3-10  
*fraternization*  
   CIs, 5-11  
   EPWs, 4-15  
 frisking US military prisoners, 7-7  
 full processing, 4-8

**G**

general orders, 2-6  
 general support, B-22  
 Geneva Conventions, 1-12, 1-13  
 good-conduct time, 7-18, 8-9  
 guard towers, 6-2

guards, 7-13, 8-11

**H**

HA See humanitarian assistance (HA)  
 halt, B-2  
 hostile  
   *act*, 9-17  
   *environment*, 10-2  
   *intent*, 9-17  
 housed personnel, care and control, 2-13  
 housekeeping supplies, 6-7  
 humanitarian assistance (HA), 10-1

**I**

ID band  
   CIs, 5-4  
   EPWs, 4-6  
 identifying  
   CIs, 5-5  
   DCs, 9-11, 10-8  
   US military prisoners, 8-7  
 IDP See internally displaced person (IDP)  
 IG See inspector general (IG)  
 IHO See international humanitarian organization (IHO)  
 impounded items, 3-5  
 information flow, 4-7  
 initial processing, 4-7  
*inspections*, 2-8  
 inspector general (IG), 2-12  
 intelligence gathering, 4-22, B-11  
*intermediate processing*, 4-8  
 internally displaced person (IDP), 1-5  
 international humanitarian organization (IHO), 1-9  
 international organization (IO), 1-8  
 internee committee, 5-12  
 internment  
   dependent children, 5-2  
   protected civilians, 5-2  
 internment serial number (ISN), 4-6  
 interpreters, 4-2, 5-6  
 interrogation, 3-17  
 interservice transfer, 4-11  
 IO See international organization (IO)  
 ISN See internment serial number (ISN)  
 isolation, 4-9

**L**

L&O See law and order (L&O)  
lateral support, B-23  
law and order (L&O), 9-16, 10-12  
layout

central CP, 3-13  
CHA, 3-15  
DC facility, 9-10  
DC overlay, 9-5  
FCF, 8-5  
forward CP, 3-11  
HA facility, 10-7  
I/R facility, 6-3  
processing center, 6-5  
legal considerations, 10-3  
legal obligations, 9-2  
lethal force, B-4  
lights, 6-3  
line formation, B-18  
location of I/R facilities, 6-1

**M**

mandated organization, 1-9  
marking CI facilities, 5-18  
marking outer garments  
CIs, 5-5  
EPWs, 4-16  
marksman, B-5  
MCO See movement control  
officer (MCO)  
medical captive, 4-14  
medical care  
captives, 2-4  
CIs, 5-13  
civilians, 10-9  
DCs, 9-6, 9-12  
EPWs, 4-17  
internees, 6-7  
US military prisoners, 7-23,  
8-8  
medical evacuation, 3-8  
medical officer, 4-17, 5-9  
medical operations, 2-11  
medical support, 3-10, 3-12  
metric conversions, A-1  
MI interrogation team, 3-2, 3-17  
migrant, 1-5  
military working dog (MWD), 2-7,  
4-23, 5-18  
misconduct, 8-16  
mitigation, 7-11  
motor vehicle transport, 8-18  
movement control officer (MCO),  
2-12  
movement of captives, 3-9

**MP support**

DC operations, 9-7  
ES operations, 10-20

MWD See military working dog  
(MWD)

**N**

NGO See nongovernmental  
organization (NGO)  
NLW See *nonlethal weapon*  
(NLW)  
nongovernmental organization  
(NGO), 1-8  
nonlethal measures, 9-18  
nonlethal weapon (NLW), B-3  
nonmandated organization, 1-9  
*nonviolent tactics*, B-7  
notice of protection, 2-3, 5-11

**O**

objectives, I/R operations, 1-5  
OD See other detainee (OD)  
officer prisoner, 7-4  
operational environment, 10-2  
other detainee (OD), 1-4, 5-1

**P**

PAO See public affairs officer  
(PAO)  
parole, 7-12  
patrol roads, 6-3  
perimeter security, 2-7  
permanent transfer, 4-11  
permissive environment, 10-2  
personal property  
CIs, 5-14  
EPWs, 4-11  
US military prisoners, 7-18  
personnel file  
CIs, 5-4  
EPWs, 4-5  
US military prisoners, 7-8  
petty-cash fund, 7-19  
photographs  
CIs, 5-8  
EPWs, 4-4  
US military prisoners, 8-7  
planning considerations, central  
CP, 3-14  
platoon echelon left, B-20  
platoon echelon right, B-20  
policies, DCs, 9-3  
populace and resource control  
(PRC), 9-1  
positions, B-27

PRC See populace and resource  
control (PRC)

pretrial confinement, 7-3

principles

CI facilities, 5-3

I/R facilities, 2-2

I/R operations, 1-5

priorities of force, 8-17, B-1

prisoner status, 7-4

privileged mail, 7-20

privileges, US military prisoners,  
8-9

proactive programs, 10-1

procedures

DC operations, 9-3

I/R facility operations, 2-1

processing

captives, 3-2

CIs, 5-6

civilians, 10-6, 10-8

DCs, 9-9

EPWs, 4-1

US military prisoners, 8-5

processing centers, 6-5

processing stations

CIs, 5-7

DCs, 9-11

EPWs, 4-2

US military prisoners, 8-6

property accountability, 3-5

protected CI status, 5-4

protected civilian, 5-2

protecting power, 1-11, 4-14, 5-12

*protection*

captives and detainees, 1-11

EPWs and CIs, 1-12

refugees, 1-13

psychological operations

(PSYOP), 2-12

PSYOP See psychological  
*operations (PSYOP)*

public affairs officer (PAO), 2-10

punishment, 8-9, 8-10

punitive measures, prohibited, 7-6

**R**

rail transport, 8-19

rations

DCs, 9-6

EPWs, 4-17

reactionary force, 8-16

reactive programs, 10-1

reassignment, EPWs, 4-10

receipts, 3-6

receiving

CIs, 5-6

EPWs, 4-1  
 receiving centers, 6-5  
 reclassification  
     DCs, 9-11  
     EPWs, 4-10  
 record of events, B-9  
 records  
     CI facility, 5-4  
     I/R facility, 2-4  
 recreation program  
     captives, 2-5  
     CIs, 5-16  
     I/R facility, 6-7  
     US military prisoners, 7-10  
 refugee, 1-5, 1-13  
 regulations  
     ACS, 7-17  
     FCF, 8-13  
 releasing CIs, 5-15  
 relief agencies, 1-10  
 religious materials, I/R facilities,  
     6-7  
 remission, 7-11  
 repatriating EPWs, 4-11  
 reports  
     captives, 3-6  
     CI facility, 5-4  
     EPWs, 4-11  
     I/R facility, 2-4  
 representatives, EPW, 4-13  
 reprimand, 8-9  
 requests, 5-13  
 responsibilities  
     commander, 2-1  
     staff officers, 2-9  
 restraining devices, 7-6  
 restrictions, employing EPWs, 4-19  
 retained items, 3-4  
 retained person (RP), 1-3  
 not, 2-8, 5-17, B-8  
 not control agents, B-11  
 not control measures, B-9  
 river-crossing operations, 3-18  
 ROE. See rules of engagement  
     (ROE)  
 ROI. See rules of interaction (ROI)  
 RP. See retained person (RP)  
 rules of engagement (ROE), 2-8,  
     4-15, 5-18, 9-17, 10-3, B-2  
 rules of interaction (ROI), 4-14,  
     8-16, 9-17, 10-13

**S**

safeguard, 3-8  
 safety, 2-5, 5-2  
 sally ports, 6-3

sanitation, 2-4, 4-17, 5-13, 6-7, 8-8,  
     9-12, 10-9  
 schedule of calls, 2-2  
 screening, 3-17, 9-11, 10-8  
 searches, 3-4, 5-11, 9-9, 10-8  
 security, 2-5, 3-9, 4-7, 4-15, 4-21,  
     5-11, 5-17, 9-5, 9-13, 10-2,  
     B-11  
 security measures, prohibited,  
     8-10  
 security requirements, I/R facilities,  
     6-2  
 segregation  
     at CPs and CHAs, 3-7  
     EPWs, 4-9  
     US military prisoners, 7-4, 8-9  
 self-government  
     civilians, 10-10  
     DCs, 9-13  
 sentence computation, 7-18, 8-14  
 signal officer, 2-10  
 SJA. See staff judge advocate  
     (SJA)  
 social programs, 2-4  
     CIs, 5-15  
     EPWs, 4-18  
 special orders, 2-6  
 staff judge advocate (SJA), 2-10  
 staff responsibilities, 2-9  
 standby guards, 2-7  
 standing orders, 2-2, 5-3  
 stateless person, 1-5  
 stay-put policy, 9-4  
 strength report, 4-7  
 STRESS (search, tag, report,  
     evacuate, segregate, and  
     safeguard), 3-2  
 subsistence  
     at I/R facilities, 6-5  
     CIs, 5-5  
     civilians, 10-9  
     DCs, 9-12  
     EPWs, 4-17  
     US military prisoners, 8-8  
 supplies, 7-22  
 supply services, 8-15  
 support personnel  
     ACS, 7-16, 7-20  
     MP unit, 8-15  
 suspension, 7-11

**T**

tactics, B-5  
 tagging captives, 3-6  
 temporary custody, 8-1  
 temporary transfer, 4-11

tower guards, 2-7  
 training  
     ACS, 7-15  
     I/R personnel, 2-13  
     NLWs, B-5  
     not control, B-10  
 transfer  
     CIs, 5-14  
     EPWs, 4-10  
     US military prisoners, 7-21,  
     8-19  
 transporting  
     civilians, 10-13  
     DCs, 9-5, 9-6, 9-18  
     US military prisoners, 7-7,  
     8-18  
 treatment  
     CIs, 5-1  
     detainees, 1-12  
     EPWs, 4-13  
 tribunal, 4-10

**U**

uncertain environment, 10-2  
 units in a TO, D-1  
 US military prisoner, 1-5  
 US policy, 1-12  
 use of force, 2-8, 8-17, 9-17, 10-2

**V**

violations of the UCMJ, 8-16  
 visits, 5-16

**W**

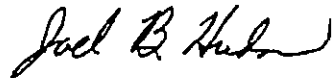
walking patrols, 2-7  
 war victim, 1-5  
 warning, 8-9  
 weapon positions, B-16  
 wedge formation, B-19  
 work detail guards, 4-23  
 worship  
     captives, 2-5  
     CIs, 5-16  
     EPWs, 4-18  
     US military prisoners, 7-20

**FM 3-19.40**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army

ERIC K SHINSEKI  
*General, United States Army*  
*Chief of Staff*

Official



JOEL B HUDSON  
*Administrative Assistant to the*  
*Secretary of the Army*

**DISTRIBUTION**

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve* To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number 110143 requirements for FM 3-19 40

- Presence of swamps, mosquitoes, and other factors (including water drainage) that affect human health
- Existence of an adequate, satisfactory source of potable water The supply should meet the demands for consumption, food sanitation, personal hygiene, and sewage disposal
- Availability of electricity Portable generators can be used as standby and emergency sources of electricity
- Distance to work if internees are employed outside the facility
- Availability of construction material
- Soil drainage

## CONSTRUCTION

6-4 The type of construction necessary depends on the—

- Climate
- Anticipated permanency of the facility
- Number of facilities to be established
- Availability of labor and materials
- Conditions under which the detaining power billets its forces in the same area

6-5 Use local, vacant buildings to reduce the requirements for engineer construction materials and personnel Use internees and local sources of materials to modify and construct structures In the absence of existing structures, tents are the most practical means for housing internees

6-6 The Engineer Corps' Theater Construction Management System (TCMS) contains basic plans, specifications, and material requirements for I/R facilities based on the anticipated internee population The plans can be easily modified for temperate, frigid, tropic, and desert climates The TCMS also provides specifications and material requirements for the facilities when dimension and/or population requirements are supplied

## SECURITY REQUIREMENTS

6-7 Separate the compounds from each other to prevent communication between internees Take advantage of irregular terrain features as obstacles to communication Locating compounds in close proximity increases efficiency and security, however, distances of a mile may be required between compounds on level terrain Minimal security requirements include—

- **Clear zones** A 12-foot clear zone surrounds each facility housing EPWs or CIs The clear zone is free of vegetation and shrubbery between the inside and outside perimeter fences, and it is constructed around the circumference of the facility
- **Guard towers** Locate guard towers on the perimeter of each facility Place them immediately outside the wall or, in case of double fencing, where they permit an unobstructed view of the lane between the fences The space between towers must allow overlapping observation and fields of fire During adverse weather, it may be necessary to augment security by placing fixed guard posts between towers on the

outside of the fence. Ensure that towers are high enough to permit an unobstructed view of the compound and low enough to permit an adequate field of fire. Tower platforms should have retractable ladders and be wide enough to mount crew-served weapons.

- **Lights** Provide adequate lighting, especially around compound perimeters. Illuminating walls and fences discourages escapes, and illuminating inner strategic points expedites the handling of problems caused by internees. Protect lights from breakage with an unbreakable-glass shield or a wire mesh screen. Ensure that lights on walls and fences do not interfere with guards' vision. Provide secondary emergency lighting.
- **Patrol roads** Construct patrol roads for vehicle and foot patrols. They should be adjacent to outside perimeter fences or walls.
- **Sally ports** A sally port (a series of gates) is required to search vehicles and personnel entering or leaving the main compound. Consider placing a sally port at the back entrance to the facility.
- **Communications** Ensure that communication between towers and operation headquarters is reliable. Telephones are the preferred method, however, ensure that alternate forms of communication (radio and visual or sound signals) are available in case telephones are inoperable.

## LAYOUT

6-8 The facility layout depends on the nature of the operation, the terrain, building materials, and HN support. A standard 4,000-man I/R facility consists of eight 500-man compounds. A sample 500-man compound is shown in Figure 6-1, page 6-4. Each compound has—

- Barracks (may be general purpose [GP] medium tents in the early stages of an operation)
- Kitchen facilities (may include providing internees with culinary equipment and provisions or using military cooks)
- Bath houses
- Latrines
- A recreation area

6-9 The administrative area of each facility has—

- A command post
- An administrative building
- Religious and educational buildings
- A dispensary and an infirmary to treat minor illnesses and injuries
- A supply building for storage and issue of expendable supplies
- Latrines
- Parking areas
- Trash collection points
- Potable-water points
- Storage areas (open and covered)
- Generator and fuel areas

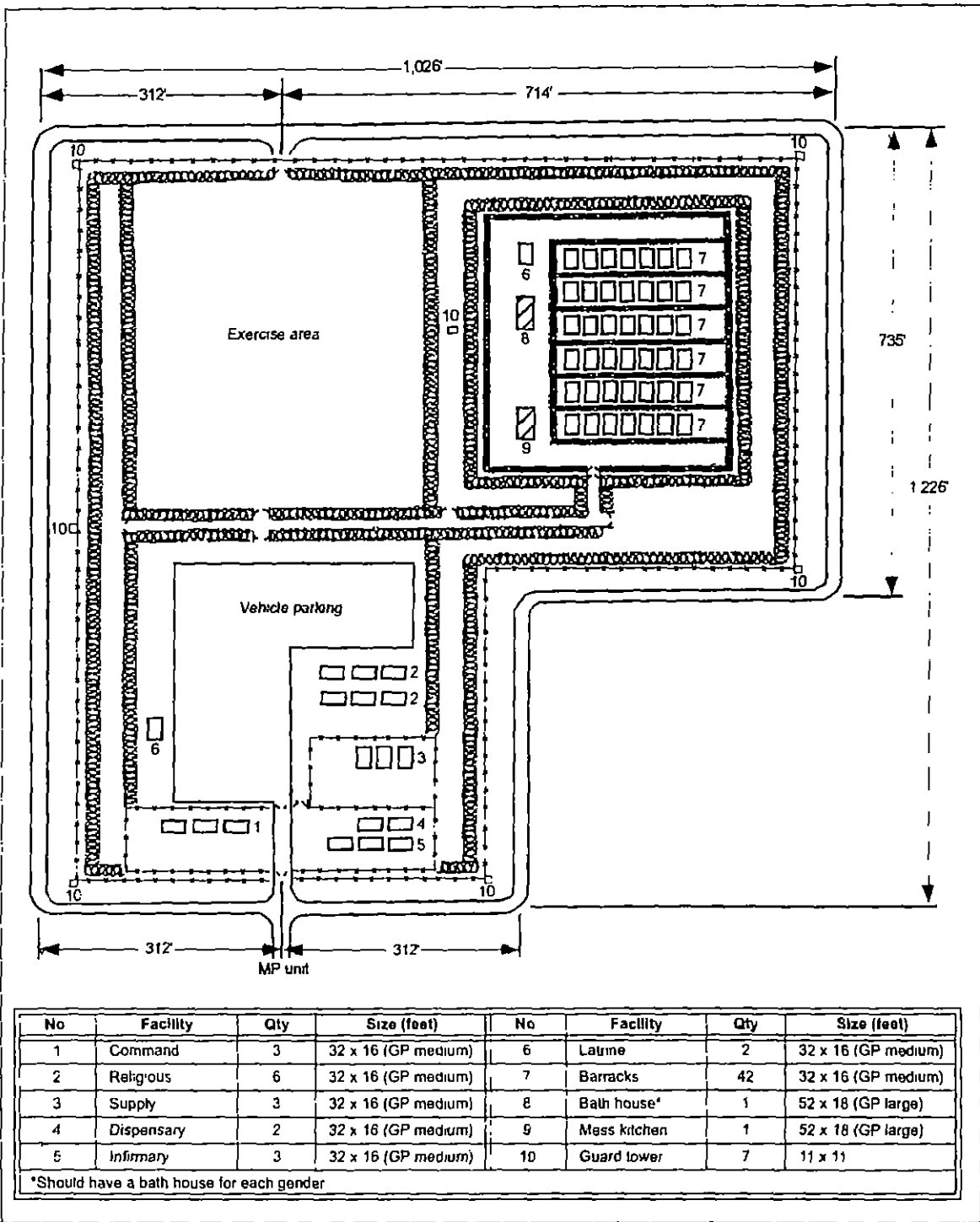


Figure 6-1. Sample 500-Man Enclosure With One Compound



## RECEIVING AND PROCESSING CENTERS

6-10 Captives must be fully processed before being interned, evacuated, or repatriated. The size of a processing center depends on the anticipated number of internees. It may be set up near overseas terminals, international transfer points, and medical facilities. There is no set design for a processing center (Figure 6-2), and a processing center may also have minimal internment capabilities (Figure 6-3, page 6-6).

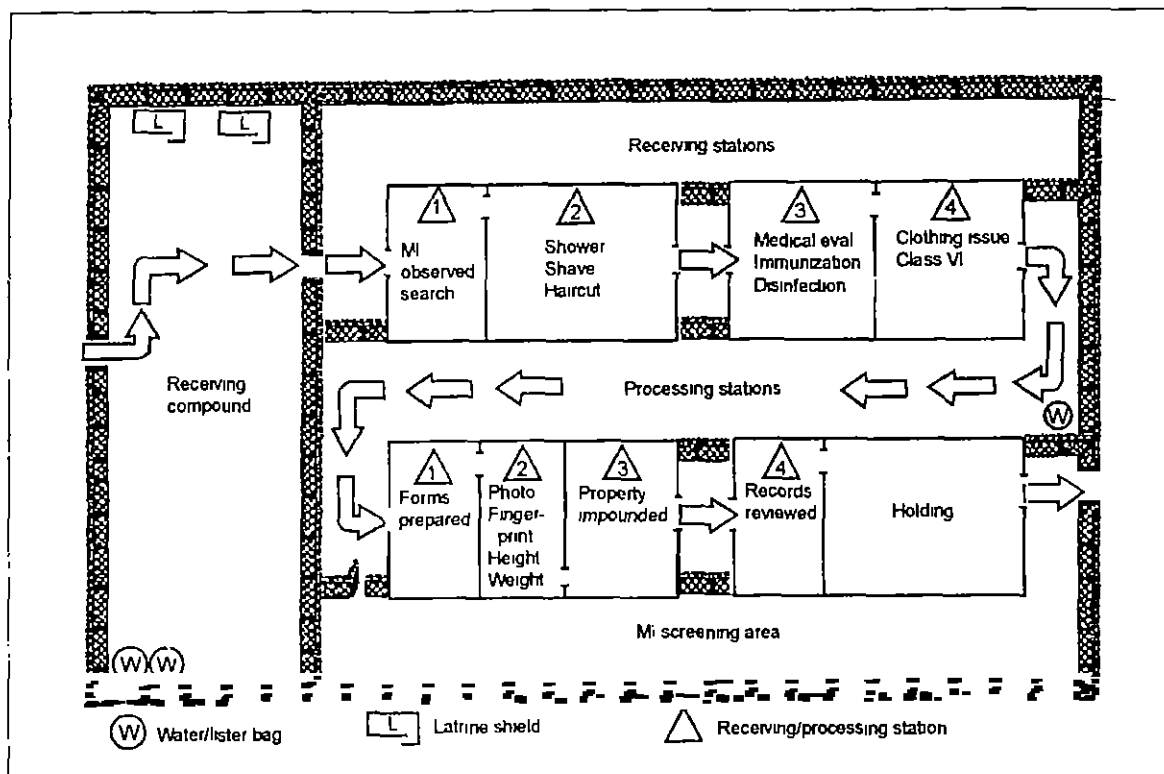


Figure 6-2. Sample Processing Center (Theater)

6-11 When establishing a processing center, coordinate with engineers for construction. If structures are available, use them; otherwise, use tents. Ensure that shelter, water, and latrines are available and that the processing center is equal in quality to facilities used by US forces. Arrange the processing center so that internees are not aware of what is taking place in the next station.

6-12 The prescribed standards of treatment and care place a great demand on the logistical system. When possible, use captured supplies and equipment and ensure that internees wear captured clothing. Properly secure and account for all supplies and equipment to avoid exploitation by internees.

## SUBSISTENCE

6-13 Ensure that daily food rations are sufficient in quantity, quality, and variety to maintain good health and prevent weight loss and nutritional

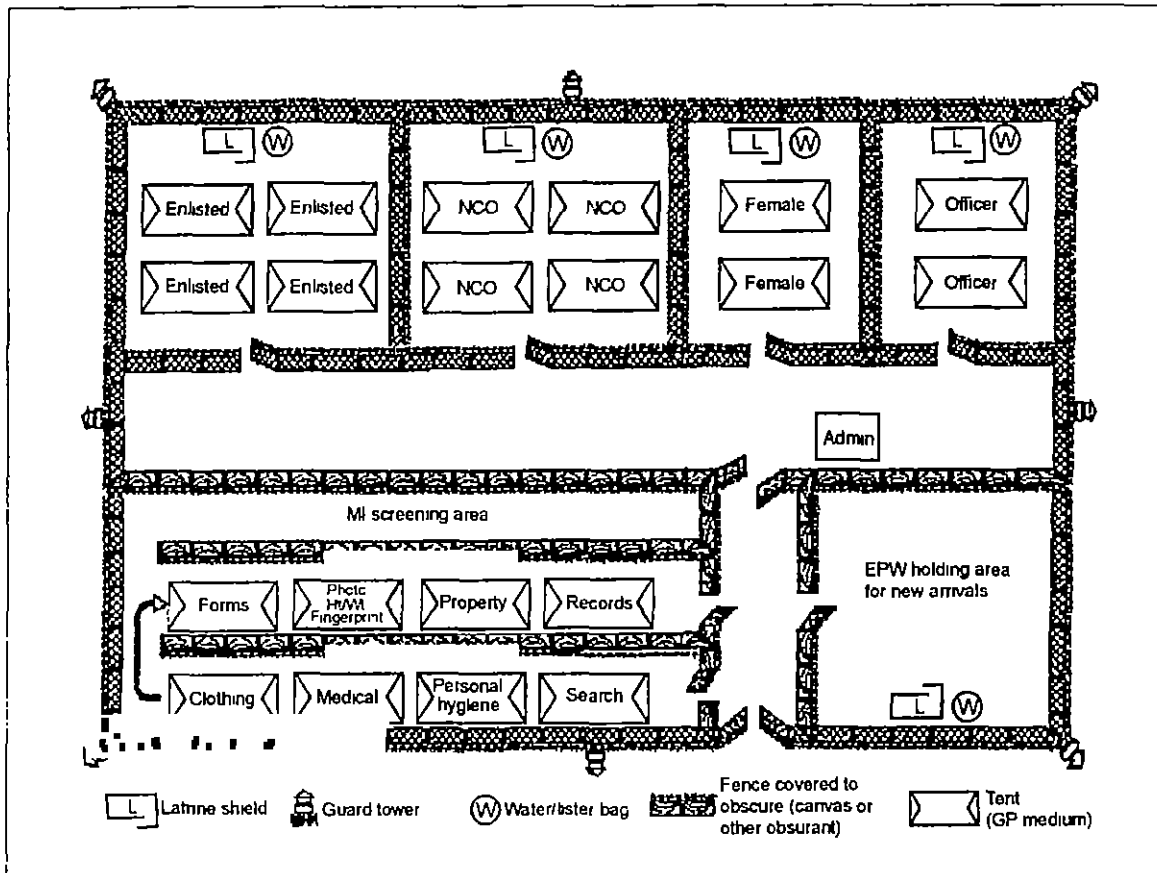


Figure 6-3 Sample Processing Center with Internment Capability

deficiencies. Medical personnel apprise the commander of situational needs and the nutritional health of the internee population. Provide working internees with additional rations when required. Ensure that internees have sufficient drinking water and latrine facilities. Sustain the health of internees at a level that is equal to that of guarding US forces.

6-14 If dining facilities are unavailable, feed internees MREs. They can be stored easily and require no additional dietary supplements. If fresh fruits and vegetables are available, substitute them for nonperishable items. Consider the habitual diet of internees, and allow them to prepare their own meals under the supervision of US personnel (see AR 190-8). Ensure that internees do not stockpile rations to use for escapes.

6-15 Food service equipment requirements vary depending on internees' habitual diets and customs. The commander may authorize local procurement of cooking equipment instead of requiring internees to use standard-issue kitchen equipment. One food operations sergeant and one first cook will be assigned to each 19547AB MP detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI). Food service personnel train and supervise selected internees to perform food service operations.

## CHAPEL FACILITIES

6-16 Provide chapels and religious materials in I/R facilities. Allow internees to make chapel fixtures from available material or, if necessary, obtain material through supply channels.

## RECREATION EQUIPMENT

6-17 Obtain recreation equipment through supply channels if possible. If necessary, secure equipment through local purchase.

## CLEANING SUPPLIES

6-18 Each I/R facility requires housekeeping supplies. The types and quantities required vary depending on the environment, the housing, and the food service facility. Common Table of Allowance (CTA) 50-970 contains an extensive list of housekeeping supplies. Use it as a guide to develop allowances for janitorial and cleaning supplies. Ensure that there is plenty of potable water available in each compound.

## MEDICAL AND SANITATION CONSIDERATIONS

6-19 Ensure that medical treatment is available for all internees. Each I/R facility has an infirmary where internees with contagious diseases, mental conditions, or other illnesses can be isolated from other patients. Internees have 24-hour access to latrines, which are clean and conform to the rules of hygiene. Provide separate latrines for male and female internees. Provide internees with facilities, soap, and water for their personal needs and laundry. Consider the following sanitation standards to prevent disease and ensure cleanliness of the facility:

- Distributing information to internees (in their language) on the importance of proper hygiene, sanitation, and food sanitation
- Teaching food sanitation procedures and ensuring that they are observed and practiced
- Disposing of human waste properly to protect the health of everyone associated with the facility according to the guidelines established by PVNTMED
- Providing—
  - Adequate space to prevent overcrowding
  - Sufficient showers and latrines and ensuring that they are cleaned and sanitized daily
  - Enough potable water for drinking, bathing, doing laundry, and conducting food service operations
  - Personal-hygiene materials

## **PART THREE**

# **United States Military Prisoners**

The US military prisoner operations are conducted under the umbrella of the Army Corrections System (ACS). The ACS is an integral part of the military justice system, which provides incarceration and correctional services for US military personnel. The ACS provides custody and control of military offenders, while providing access to basic education, offense-related counseling, selected academic courses, and training necessary for return to military duty or the civilian community. Specific use-of-force guidelines and the ROI apply to US military prisoner operations. On the battlefield, US military prisoner operations parallel the internment and evacuation systems for EPWs, CIs, RPs, ODs, and DCs. However, US military prisoners are not treated as or confined with them.

*Chapter 7 contains information on the ACS and provides the foundation and guidance for conducting US military prisoner operations during wartime. Chapter 8 discusses the short-term confinement of US military prisoners abroad during wartime, the field detention facility (FDF), and the field confinement facility (FCF).*

---

## **Chapter 7**

### **Army Corrections System**

The ACS provides confinement and correctional treatment for US military prisoners. It operates on a corrective basis, rather than a punitive basis, and its goal is to help prisoners become responsible, productive citizens. The ACS facilities are staffed with carefully selected, well-trained, professional personnel. Prisoners have access to programs that provide education and rehabilitation. The staff and the programs are dedicated to helping prisoners recognize and resolve their problems, correct their behavior, and improve their attitudes.

#### **LEVELS OF CONFINEMENT**

7-1 The Army maintains a three-tiered correctional system to meet the needs of prisoners. Although the mission at all levels is to confine and provide correctional treatment, the mission emphasis differs at each level. These differences are based on the length of time prisoners are confined and the facilities and services required by the confinement.

## LEVEL I—CONFINEMENT FACILITIES

7-2 Confinement facilities provide—

- Pretrial confinement
- Short-term posttrial confinement (normally 90 days or less)
- Custody
- Control
- Administrative support
- Limited counseling

7-3 Installations without ACS facilities can contract to incarcerate pretrial prisoners in federally approved civilian jails. Agreements must provide for segregation of prisoners by rank (officer, NCO, and enlisted), sex, and posttrial status. Forward copies of agreements with civilian jurisdictions to HQDA (DAMO-ODL-C). A sentenced prisoner who is pending transfer to an ACS facility cannot be confined in a civilian jail for more than 10 days. However, an installation commander can notify HQDA (DAML-ODL-C) and authorize exceptions for prisoners sentenced to 30 days or less.

## LEVEL II—REGIONAL CORRECTIONS FACILITIES

7-4 Regional corrections facilities (RCFs) provide—

- Pretrial confinement support
- *Multifaceted correctional-treatment programs*
- Vocational and military training to prepare prisoners for return to duty or, if determined suitable, return to civilian society
- Administrative support
- Basic educational opportunities
- *Employment*
- Selected mental-health programs
- Custody
- Control

## LEVEL III—UNITED STATES DISCIPLINARY BARRACKS

7-5 The United States Disciplinary Barracks (USDB) is a maximum-custody facility that provides long-term incarceration for prisoners. It is the only ACS facility authorized to permanently incarcerate posttrial prisoners who are sentenced to death.

7-6 Although federal civilian penal institutions are not a part of the ACS, they may be used to confine prisoners. The Federal Bureau of Prisons administers and operates the federal penal system. Military prisoners whose disciplinary and adjustment records indicate a need for treatment that is available in a federal penal institution may be transferred to that system. Those scheduled for incarceration in a federal institution are first confined at the USDB and then transferred to the federal institution. (See AR 190-47 for more information.)

---

## CORRECTIONAL FACILITIES

7-7 Based on operational requirements and programs, HQDA (DAMO-ODL-C) determines where prisoners are incarcerated if they are sentenced to more than 30 days. The RCF provides short- and medium-term confinements, and the USDB provides long-term confinement.

7-8 The facility commander is responsible for the administration and operation of specialized correctional programs. The programs provide the professional evaluation, counseling, education, and administration needed to prepare prisoners for return to military or civilian life. Chapter 8 discusses procedures and guidelines for establishing FDFs and FCFs.

## LEGAL RIGHTS AND REQUIREMENTS

7-9 The UCMJ and local and service regulations govern the restraint and confinement of military personnel. The ACS provides legal, humane, and just treatment of prisoners throughout the confinement process, from pretrial confinement to sentence expiration.

## PRISONERS' RIGHTS

7-10 Soldiers do not automatically forfeit all of their rights upon confinement. Prisoners retain most of the rights guaranteed by the US Constitution, although perhaps to a lesser degree. The most important constitutional rights for prisoners are

- First Amendment (freedom of speech and religion)
- Fourth Amendment (freedom against unreasonable search and seizure)
- Fifth Amendment (right against self-incrimination [Miranda Rights])
- Sixth Amendment (right to counsel)
- Eighth Amendment (prohibition of cruel and unusual punishment)

## CONFINEMENT REQUIREMENTS

7-11 Prisoners in pretrial confinement are informed of the charges causing their confinement. Within 48 hours of their confinement (via their chain of command), a US magistrate reviews the circumstances of the confinement and determines whether continued pretrial confinement is necessary.

7-12 Individuals are accepted for confinement only on receipt of a court-martial order, a report of the trial results, or a confinement order. The convening authority ordering the execution of the sentence must issue the court-martial order. If a commissioned or warrant officer is placed in pretrial confinement, the confinement order originates with his commander. The confinement order is read to the soldier by a commissioned officer. An enlisted soldier may be pretrial confined by order of his commanding officer or any commissioned officer who has personal knowledge of the offense or has made inquiry into it.

7-13 Specific procedures for pretrial confinement are contained in local SOPs and local supplements to AR 27-10. A new confinement order is not needed to reconfine a soldier who is convicted at trial by court-martial following pretrial

confinement. A commander or the trial counsel, if such authority is delegated to him, can order the soldier into posttrial confinement with a report of the trial results.

## PRISONER STATUS

7-14 A prisoner or a pretrial detainee is informed of his status upon arrival at a confinement facility. His status is necessary in response to judicial proceedings and other actions. The following statuses pertain to US military prisoners:

- **Casual** A casual prisoner is confined awaiting—
  - Further instructions from another command or military service
  - Transfer to another facility
  - Return to his unit
- **Detained** A *detained prisoner (pretrial detainee)* is an enlisted service member who is confined awaiting—
  - Charges to be filed
  - The disposition of charges
  - A trial by court-martial
  - A trial by a foreign court
- **Adjudged** An adjudged prisoner has been sentenced in open court, but the convening authority has not approved the sentence.
- **Approved-adjudged** An approved-adjudged prisoner's sentence has been approved and adjudged, but it has not been ordered into execution.
- **Sentenced** A sentenced prisoner is serving a sentence that has been ordered into execution.
- **Officer** An officer prisoner or an officer pretrial detainee is a commissioned or warrant officer on active duty who has been placed in confinement, but his sentence has not been ordered into execution.

## SEGREGATION

7-15 Segregate prisoners as follows:

- **Pretrial detainee** A pretrial detainee is not treated the same as a posttrial prisoner whose status is adjudged, approved-adjudged, or sentenced. He has not been proven guilty of an offense. His confinement is not a punishment, but it ensures his presence for trial and prevents further misconduct. If possible, segregate his living and working areas from all other prisoners.
- **Officer** An officer prisoner whose sentence has not been ordered into execution is entitled to certain rights and privileges. These privileges end when an officer's sentence begins and his status changes from an officer prisoner to a sentenced prisoner. House a posttrial officer prisoner in the general prisoner population.
- **Female** A female prisoner or a female pretrial detainee is confined in a facility that is approved for housing women. If an on-post facility is unavailable, coordinate confinement with local officials who have a federally approved detention facility for women. A civilian facility may

---

only be used for pretrial or short-term, posttrial confinement. Segregate female prisoners from male prisoners except when they are participating in supervised classes, vocational education, or group counseling. Female correctional personnel supervise and control female prisoners in administration or disciplinary segregation. If two female guards are unavailable, use precautions when escorting a female prisoner. For example, use two male guards or one male guard and one female guard. Female prisoners are incarcerated in ACS facilities when directed by HQDA (DAMO-ODL-C).

## **CUSTODY AND CONTROL**

7-16 Custody and control are basic functions for every confinement or correctional facility. Facility personnel achieve and maintain custody and control by subjecting prisoners to a structured schedule of calls 24 hours a day.

### **CUSTODY MEASURES**

7-17 Custody is restricting a prisoner's freedom of movement by placing physical barriers on or around him. It is maintained within a facility by the presence of guards, walls, fences, protective lighting, alarms, and locking devices. Outside a facility, custody is maintained by the presence of supervisors and guards. Prisoners designated as trustees are afforded custody and control by the conditions placed on their parole agreement.

### **CUSTODY GRADES**

7-18 Each prisoner is assigned a custody grade (trustee, minimum, medium, or maximum) that designates the degree of supervision required to control his movements. The facility commander assigns custody grades to prisoners based on signs of emotional disturbance and instability, history of escape, drug addiction, violence, and access to sensitive material.

7-19 Custody grades are assigned based on the minimum level of control necessary. A custody grade can be changed at any time, and reclassification is based on continual observation and evaluation of the prisoner. Each prisoner is promptly advised of his custody grade.

7-20 For example, each incoming RCF prisoner is assigned a maximum custody grade for the first 72 hours of confinement. During that time, the correctional staff observes and evaluates the prisoner's behavior. At the end of the evaluation period, the staff reviews the prisoner's behavior and assigns the appropriate custody grade.

### **ADMINISTRATIVE SEGREGATION**

7-21 Sometimes, prisoners must be separated from the larger population for more intense custodial supervision. Facility commanders may authorize the segregation of prisoners individually or by groups. Administrative segregation is imposed for the benefit of the segregated prisoner(s) or the prisoner population. Prisoners may be placed in administrative segregation while awaiting the results of an investigation or for protective measures, medical reasons, or homosexual behavior.



7-22 Segregated prisoners requiring increased supervision are placed in close confinement and are escorted when they leave their cells. Privileges for administratively segregated prisoners are the same as those of prisoners not in close confinement. However, exceptions to this requirement are suicidal and disciplinary segregated prisoners (see the facility SOP for details).

7-23 Prisoners placed in administrative segregation can be kept in close confinement 24 hours a day or only at night. They must receive at least 60 minutes of exercise daily and can be employed if the work is consistent with the purpose of the segregation. A qualified mental-health professional interviews and prepares a written report on each inmate who is segregated more than 30 days.

### CONTROL MEASURES

7-24 Control is placing limitations on a prisoner's actions and behaviors. It is invoked by the correctional staff's insistence on a state of order and military discipline among the prisoners. Control is sustained by a consistent routine in daily lives. For example, prisoners are routinely required to provide a daily display of their clothing, equipment, and health and comfort supplies. Control is reflected in the disciplined appearance, bearing, and conduct of the prisoners and by their prompt obedience to rules, regulations, and orders.

### DISCIPLINARY MEASURES

7-25 Disciplinary measures are imposed on prisoners to correct deviant behavior and to protect other prisoners, the staff, and government property. Abusive measures are not imposed in the ACS. Prisoners are medically cleared before being placed in disciplinary segregation, which may not exceed 60 consecutive days. Prisoners undergoing disciplinary measures are not employed, except to clean their own quarters. They must receive at least 30 minutes of exercise each day if their behavior is manageable. Hand and leg irons or other restraining devices are used during movement outside the cell. Guards inspect prisoners in close confinement according to the facility SOP.

7-26 The imposition of disciplinary measures often begins with an objective disciplinary report. The report presents a detailed summary that addresses the who, what, when, where, why, and how of an incident. The facility commander has several options when he receives a disciplinary report. He may reduce the report to a memorandum of record, refer the prisoner for counseling, refer the case to a discipline and adjustment board, or recommend action under the UCMJ.

### PROHIBITED PUNITIVE MEASURES

7-27 The following punitive measures are prohibited:

- Clipping a prisoner's hair excessively close
- Ordering the lockstep
- Requiring silence at meals
- Requiring a prisoner to break rocks

- Using hand or leg irons, restraining straps or jackets, or shackles as punishment (The FCF SOP gives authority for the use of these devices and specifies the circumstances warranting their use)
- Removing a prisoner's underclothing or clothing or using other debasing practices
- Flogging, branding, tattooing, or using any other cruel or unusual punishment
- Requiring domicile in a tent as punishment
- Ordering strenuous physical activity or body positions designed to place undue stress on a prisoner
- Using hand or leg irons or belly chains that give the appearance of a chain gang

## EMERGENCIES

7-28 Confinement facilities provide custody and control of prisoners during emergencies (fires, escape attempts, and other disturbances) Develop a formal emergency action plan and periodically review it to ensure that it is complete and current Properly training custodial personnel and reviewing facilities and restraints can prevent or greatly reduce the possibility of escapes Escapes result in emergency actions being executed and guards and prisoners taking immediate action according to the facility SOP

7-29 Disturbances among prisoners may be a minor disorder, a major disorder or a full-scale riot Disorders and riots may be spontaneous disturbances or organized diversions for escape attempts How a facility staff handles a minor disorder determines whether it is brought under control or escalates to major proportions Disperse prisoners who are involved in a disturbance so that they cannot organize as a cohesive group Once dispersed, prevent participants from rejoining the disturbance Identify, isolate, and remove ringleaders from the disturbance as soon as possible

## MOVEMENT

7-30 Prisoners have the best opportunity for escape while being moved from one place to another (outside the facility) Established and stringent custody and control measures reduce the likelihood of escapes Procedures and techniques for moving prisoners can be modified as needed by the facility commander or the commander directing the movement

7-31 When a prisoner is in pretrial confinement, his unit is responsible for escorting him to the confinement facility unless custody and control become integrity issues The unit coordinates with the RCF for a briefing on custody and control procedures, future escort requirements, and the use of force

7-32 Frisk each prisoner before he leaves the facility Complete a DD Form 2708 (hard copy or electronic) for each prisoner escorted out of the facility Move prisoners by motor vehicle, rail, air, or foot (if the distance is short enough to justify it and when other means of transportation are unavailable) (see STP 19-95C14-SM-TG)

## CORRECTIONAL-TREATMENT PROGRAMS

7-33 Correctional-treatment programs are based on and tailored to the custody, employment, education, and treatment needs of prisoners. Each prisoner and his treatment is professionally monitored. The goal of correctional-treatment programs is to return prisoners to civilian life as productive citizens or to the Army as productive soldiers.

7-34 Correctional-treatment programs provide a professional evaluation and study of each prisoner and his background. They provide for prisoners' health and welfare, include constructive work that teaches work skills, and administer individual and group counseling and therapy.

7-35 Each program specifies the custody grade and disciplinary requirements needed to achieve goals. The goals can be achieved by receiving no disciplinary reports, being involved in an established correctional-treatment plan, or obtaining other program objectives.

## EVALUATION

7-36 The facility commander, in conjunction with an evaluation board, determines a prisoner's custody grade and treatment program by a two-phase system. The first phase is to identify the needs that require immediate intervention, and the second phase is an ongoing evaluation of the prisoner while he is in confinement.

7-37 The board uses the following tools to begin its initial evaluation:

- The guard's observation report
- The mental health's evaluation
- The chaplain's evaluation
- The medical officer's evaluation
- The prisoner's personnel file

7-38 The prisoner's custody grade and treatment program may change as additional information becomes available during his incarceration. The following aspects are considered and closely monitored during his entire confinement period:

- Employment
- Education
- Medical condition
- Religious participation
- Family and financial problems

## COUNSELING

7-39 Counseling is a process in which behavioral problems are observed and guidance is provided to induce productive, useful behavior. Counseling programs are based on the type, size, and mission of a confinement facility, its staffing abilities, and AR 190-47. At a minimum, counseling is available for problem solving and crisis intervention. The ACS regional facilities and the USDB provide the following:

- Chemical abuse treatment

FM 34-52  
HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
Washington, DC, 8 May 1987  
FM 34-52  
INTELLIGENCE INTERROGATION

Table of Contents

PREFACE

CHAPTER 1 INTERROGATION AND THE INTERROGATOR

PRINCIPLES OF INTERROGATION

SOURCES OF INFORMATION

PERSONAL QUALITIES

SPECIALIZED SKILLS AND KNOWLEDGE

CHAPTER 2 ROLE OF THE INTERROGATOR

COMMANDER'S MISSION UNDER AIR-LAND BATTLE

MILITARY INTELLIGENCE AND INTELLIGENCE PREPARATION OF THE BATTLEFIELD

INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE OPERATIONS

COUNTERINTELLIGENCE

ELECTRONIC WARFARE

CAPABILITIES AND LIMITATIONS OF INTERROGATORS

CHAPTER 3 INTERROGATION PROCESS

SCREENING SOURCES

INTERROGATING PROCEDURES

CHAPTER 4 PROCESSING CAPTURED ENEMY DOCUMENTS

DOCUMENT HANDLING

DOCUMENT EXPLOITATION

EVACUATION PROCEDURES

DOCUMENTS CAPTURED WITH A SOURCE

CHAPTER 5 DIRECT AND SUPERVISED INTERROGATION OPERATIONS

ADVICE AND ASSISTANCE

PREPARE AND MOVE TO THE DEPLOYMENT SITE

SUPERVISE THE INTERROGATION PROCESS

SUPERVISE THE CED PROCESSING CYCLE

SUPERVISE ADMINISTRATIVE TASKS

CHAPTER 6 OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT

COMMAND RELATIONSHIPS

TASKING RELATIONSHIPS

SUPPORT RELATIONSHIPS

INTERROGATOR TRAINING

CHAPTER 7 STRATEGIC DEBRIEFING

DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

NOTIFICATION

PLANNING AND PREPARATION

CONTACT AND INTERVIEW

COMPONENTS OF STRATEGIC INTELLIGENCE

INTELLIGENCE CYCLE

CHAPTER 8 JOINT INTERROGATION FACILITIES

FORMATION

USE

CHAPTER 9 LOW INTENSITY CONFLICT

TERMINOLOGY

OPERATIONAL CONCEPT FOR LOW-INTENSITY CONFLICT

INTERROGATION SUPPORT TO LOW-INTENSITY CONFLICT

THE SOURCE

INTERROGATION OPERATIONS

APPENDIX A STANAG EXTRACTS

APPENDIX B SAMPLE DETAINEE PERSONNEL RECORD

APPENDIX C SAMPLE ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR IDENTITY CARD

APPENDIX D SAMPLE ENEMY PRISONER OF WAR CAPTIVE TAG

APPENDIX E SAMPLE JINTACCS SALUTE PREPORT FORMAT AND REPORT

APPENDIX F SAMPLE SCREENING REPORT FORMAT AND REPORT

APPENDIX G SAMPLE TACTICAL INTERROGATION REPORT FORMAT AND REPORT

APPENDIX H APPROACHES

APPENDIX I INTERROGATION GUIDES

APPENDIX J 1949 GENEVA CONVENTIONS

GLOSSARY

REFERENCES

AUTHORIZATION LETTER

## PREFACE

This manual sets forth the basic principles of interrogation doctrine and establishes procedures and techniques applicable to Army intelligence interrogations, applies to the doctrine contained in FM 34-1, and follows operational procedures outlined in FM 105. It provides general guidance for commanders, staff officers, and other personnel in the use of interrogation elements of Army intelligence units. It outlines procedures for the handling of the sources of interrogations, the exploitation and processing of documents, and the reporting of intelligence gained through interrogation. It covers directing and supervising interrogation operations, conflict scenarios and their impact on interrogation operations, and peacetime interrogation operations. These principles, procedures, and techniques apply to operations in low-, mid-, and high-intensity conflicts, to the use of electronic warfare (EW) or nuclear, biological, or chemical (NBC) weapons, to the CI operations contained in FMs 34-6 and A (S/NOFORN), and to the psychological operations (PSYOP) contained in FM 33-1.

The provisions of this publication are the subject of international agreements 189 (National Distinguishing Letters for Use by NATO Forces), 203 (Interrogation of Prisoners of War), 204 (Procedures for Dealing with Prisoners of War), and 20 (Handling and Reporting of Captured Enemy Equipment and Documents).

These principles and techniques of interrogation are to be used within the constraints established by FM 27-10, the Hague and Geneva Conventions, and the Uniform Code of Military Justice (UCMJ).

Sources for tactical interrogations may be civilian internees, insurgents, enemy prisoners of war (EPWs), defectors, refugees, displaced persons, and agents or suspected agents. Sources in strategic debriefings are emigres, refugees, resettlers, and selected US sources.

Unless otherwise stated, whenever the masculine gender is used, both men and women are included.

The proponent of this publication is HQTRADOC. Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 208 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) and forward it to Commander, United States Army Intelligence Center and School, ATTN ATSI-TD-PAL, Fort Huachuca, Arizona 853-70. Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

## Chapter 1

### Interrogation and the Interrogator

Interrogation is the art of questioning and examining a source to obtain the maximum amount of usable information. The goal of any interrogation is to obtain usable and reliable information, in a lawful manner and in the least amount of time, which meets intelligence requirements of any echelon of command. Sources may be civilian internees, insurgents, EPWs, defectors, refugees, displaced persons, and agents or suspected agents. A successful interrogation produces needed information which is timely, complete, clear, and accurate. An interrogation involves the interaction of two personalities: the source and the interrogator. Each contact between these two differs to some degree because of their individual characteristics and capabilities, and because the circumstances of each contact and the physical environment vary.

### PRINCIPLES OF INTERROGATION

Intelligence interrogations are of many types, such as the interview, debriefing, and elicitation. However, the principles of objective, initiative, accuracy, prohibitions against the use of force, and security apply to all types.

### OBJECTIVE

The objective of any interrogation is to obtain the maximum amount of usable information possible in the least amount of time. Each interrogation has a definite purpose: to obtain information to satisfy the assigned requirement which contributes to the successful accomplishment of the supported unit's mission. The interrogator must keep this purpose firmly in mind as he obtains the information. The objective may be specific, establishing the exact location of a minefield, or it may be general, seeking order of battle (OB) information about a specific echelon of the enemy forces. In either case, the interrogator uses the objective as a basis for planning and conducting the interrogation. He should not concentrate on the objective to the extent that he overlooks or fails to recognize and exploit other valuable information extracted from the source. For example, during an interrogation, he learns of an unknown, highly destructive weapon. Although this information may not be in line with his specific objective, he develops this lead to obtain all possible information concerning this weapon. It is then obvious that the objective of an interrogation can be changed as necessary or desired.

### INITIATIVE

Achieving and maintaining the initiative is essential to a successful interrogation just as the offense is the key to success in combat operations. The interrogator must remain in charge throughout the interrogation. He has certain advantages at the beginning of an interrogation, such as the psychological shock the source receives when becoming a prisoner of war, which enable him to grasp the initiative and assist him in maintaining it. An interrogator may lose control during the interrogation by allowing the source to take control of the interrogation. If this occurs, he must postpone the interrogation and reassess the situation. To resume the interrogation, a different interrogator should conduct the interrogation. In addition, the interrogator must identify and exploit leads developed during the interrogation.

### ACCURACY

The interrogator makes every effort to obtain accurate information from the source. He assesses the source correctly by repeating questions at varying intervals. The interrogator, however, is not the final analyst and should not reject or degrade information because it conflicts with previously obtained information. The interrogator's primary mission is the collection of information, not evaluation. Conversely, the interrogator should not accept all information as the truth; he views all information obtained with a degree of



doubt. If possible, and when time permits, he should attempt to confirm information received and annotate less credible or unproven information. It is of great importance to report accurate information to the using elements. The interrogator checks his notes against the finished report to ensure that the report contains and identifies the information as heard, seen, or assumed by the source.

#### PROHIBITION AGAINST USE OF FORCE

The use of force, mental torture, threats, insults, or exposure to unpleasant and inhumane treatment of any kind is prohibited by law and is neither authorized nor condoned by the US Government. Experience indicates that the use of force is not necessary to gain the cooperation of sources for interrogation. Therefore, the use of force is a poor technique, as it yields unreliable results, may damage subsequent collection efforts, and can induce the source to say whatever he thinks the interrogator wants to hear. However, the use of force is not to be confused with psychological ploys, verbal trickery, or other nonviolent and noncoercive ruses used by the interrogator in questioning hesitant or uncooperative sources.

The psychological techniques and principles outlined should neither be confused with, nor construed to be synonymous with, unauthorized techniques such as brainwashing, mental torture, or any other form of mental coercion to include drugs. These techniques and principles are intended to serve as guides in obtaining the willing cooperation of a source. The absence of threats in interrogation is intentional, as their enforcement and use normally constitute violations of international law and may result in prosecution under the UCMJ. Additionally, the inability to carry out a threat of violence or force renders an interrogator ineffective should the source challenge the threat. Consequently, from both legal and moral viewpoints, the restrictions established by international law, agreements, and customs render threats of force, violence, and deprivations useless as interrogator techniques.

#### SECURITY

The interrogator, by virtue of his position, possesses a great deal of classified information. He is aware constantly that his job is to obtain information, not impart it to the source. He safeguards military information at all times as well as the source of information. This becomes very clear when one considers that among those persons with whom the interrogator has contact, there are those attempting to collect information for the enemy. The interrogator is alert to detect any attempt made by the source to elicit information.

#### SOURCES OF INFORMATION

The interrogator is concerned primarily with two sources of information in his intelligence collection effort: human sources and material sources (mainly captured enemy documents (CEDs)). The senior interrogator, depending on the supported commander's priority intelligence requirements (PIR) and information requirements (IR), decides which of these sources will be more effective in the intelligence collection effort.

#### HUMAN SOURCES

The interrogator encounters many sources who vary greatly in personality, social class, civilian occupation, military specialty, and political and religious beliefs. Their physical conditions may range from near death to perfect health, their intelligence levels may range from well below average to well above average, and their security consciousness may range from the lowest to the highest. Sources may be civilian internees, insurgents, EPWs, defectors, refugees, displaced persons, and agents or suspected agents. Because of these variations, the interrogator makes a careful study of every source to evaluate his mental, emotional, and physical state and uses it as a basis for interrogation. He deals mainly with three categories of sources: cooperative and friendly, neutral and nonpartisan, and hostile and antagonistic. Cooperative and Friendly

A cooperative and friendly source offers little resistance to the interrogation and normally speaks freely on almost any topic introduced, other than that which will tend to incriminate or degrade him personally. To obtain the maximum amount of information from cooperative and friendly sources, the interrogator takes care to establish and to preserve a friendly and cooperative atmosphere by not inquiring into those private affairs which are beyond the scope of the interrogation. At the same time, he must avoid becoming overly friendly and losing control of the interrogation.

#### Neutral and Nonpartisan

A neutral and nonpartisan source is cooperative to a limited degree. He normally takes the position of answering questions asked directly, but seldom volunteers information. In some cases, he may be afraid to answer for fear of reprisals by the enemy. This often is the case in low-intensity conflict (LIC) where the people may be fearful of insurgent reprisals. With the neutral and nonpartisan source, the interrogator may have to ask many specific questions to obtain the information required.

#### Hostile and Antagonistic

A hostile and antagonistic source is most difficult to interrogate. In many cases, he refuses to talk at all and offers a real challenge to the interrogator. An interrogator must have self-control, patience, and tact when dealing with him. As a rule, at lower echelons, it is considered unprofitable to expend excessive time and effort in interrogating hostile and antagonistic sources. When time is available and the source appears to be an excellent target for exploitation, he should be isolated and repeatedly interrogated to obtain his cooperation. A more concentrated interrogation effort can be accomplished at higher levels, such as corps or echelons above corps (EAC), where more time is available to exploit hostile and antagonistic sources.

#### CAPTURED ENEMY DOCUMENTS

CEDs include any piece of recorded information which has been in the possession of a foreign nation and comes into US possession. This includes US documents which the foreign nation may have possessed. There are numerous ways to acquire a document, some of the most common ways are found in the possession of human sources, on enemy dead, or on the battlefield. There are two types of documents: (1) official (government or military) documents such as overlays, field orders, maps, and codes; (2) personal (private or commercial) documents such as letters, diaries, newspapers, and books.

#### PERSONAL QUALITIES

An interrogator should possess an interest in human nature and have a personality which will enable him to gain the cooperation of a source. Ideally, these and other personal qualities would be inherent in an interrogator, however, in most cases, an interrogator can correct some deficiencies in these qualities if he has the desire and is willing to devote time to study and practice. Some desirable personal qualities in an interrogator are motivation, alertness, patience and tact, credibility, objectivity, self-control, adaptability, perseverance, and personal appearance and demeanor.

#### MOTIVATION

An interrogator may be motivated by several factors, for example, an interest in human relations, a desire to react to the challenge of personal interplay, an enthusiasm for the collection of information, or just a profound interest in foreign languages and cultures. Whatever the motivation, it is the most significant factor used by an interrogator to achieve success. Without motivation, other qualities lose their significance. The stronger the motivation, the more successful the interrogator.

#### ALERTNESS

The interrogator must be constantly aware of the shifting attitudes which normally characterize a source's reaction to interrogation. He notes the source's every gesture, word, and voice inflection. He determines why the source

is in a certain mood or why his mood suddenly changed. It is from the source's mood and actions that the interrogator determines how to best proceed with the interrogation. He watches for any indication that the source is withholding information. He must watch for a tendency to resist further questioning, for diminishing resistance, for contradictions, or other tendencies, to include susceptibility.

#### PATIENCE AND TACT

The interrogator must have patience and tact in creating and maintaining rapport between himself and the source, thereby, enhancing the success of the interrogation. Additionally, the validity of the source's statements and the motives behind these statements may be obtainable only through the exercise of tact and patience. Displaying impatience encourages the difficult source to think that if he remains unresponsive for a little longer, the interrogator will stop his questioning. The display of impatience may cause the source to lose respect for the interrogator, thereby, reducing his effectiveness. An interrogator, with patience and tact, is able to terminate an interrogation and later continue further interrogation without arousing apprehension or resentment.

#### CREDIBILITY

The interrogator must maintain credibility with the source and friendly forces. Failure to produce material rewards when promised may adversely affect future interrogations. The importance of accurate reporting cannot be overstressed, since interrogation reports are often the basis for tactical decisions and operations.

#### OBJECTIVITY

The interrogator must maintain an objective and a dispassionate attitude, regardless of the emotional reactions he may actually experience, or which he may simulate during the interrogation. Without this required objectivity, he may unconsciously distort the information acquired. He may also be unable to vary his interrogation techniques effectively.

#### SELF-CONTROL

The interrogator must have an exceptional degree of self-control to avoid displays of genuine anger, irritation, sympathy, or weariness which may cause him to lose the initiative during the interrogation. Self-control is especially important when employing interrogation techniques which require the display of simulated emotions or attitudes.

#### ADAPTABILITY

An interrogator must adapt himself to the many and varied personalities which he will encounter. He should try to imagine himself in the source's position. By being able to adapt, he can smoothly shift his techniques and approaches during interrogations. He must also adapt himself to the operational environment. In many cases, he has to conduct interrogations under a variety of unfavorable physical conditions.

#### PERSEVERANCE

A tenacity of purpose, in many cases, will make the difference between an interrogator who is merely good and one who is superior. An interrogator who becomes easily discouraged by opposition, non-cooperation, or other difficulties will neither aggressively pursue the objective to a successful conclusion nor seek leads to other valuable information.

#### PERSONAL APPEARANCE AND DEMEANOR

The interrogator's personal appearance may greatly influence the conduct of the interrogation and the attitude of the source toward the interrogator. Usually a neat, organized, and professional appearance will favorably influence the source. A firm, deliberate, and businesslike manner of speech and attitude may create a proper environment for a successful interrogation. If the interrogator's personal manner reflects fairness, strength, and efficiency, the source may prove cooperative and more receptive to questioning. However,

depending on the approach techniques, the interrogator can decide to portray a different (for example, casual, sloven) appearance and demeanor to obtain the willing cooperation of the source

#### SPECIALIZED SKILLS AND KNOWLEDGE

The interrogator must be knowledgeable and qualified to efficiently and effectively exploit human and material sources which are of potential intelligence interest. He is trained in the techniques and proficiency necessary to exploit human and material sources. His initial training is in foreign language, and his entry-level training is in the exploitation of documents and human sources. The interrogator must possess, or acquire through training and experience, special skills and knowledge.

#### WRITING AND SPEAKING SKILLS

The most essential part of the interrogator's intelligence collection effort is reporting the information obtained. Hence, he must prepare and present both written and oral reports in a clear, complete, concise, and accurate manner. He must possess a good voice and speak English and a foreign language idiomatically and without objectionable accent or impediment.

Knowledge of a foreign language is necessary since interrogators work primarily with non-English speaking people. Language ability should include a knowledge of military terms, foreign idioms, abbreviations, colloquial and slang usages, and local dialects. Although a trained interrogator who lacks a foreign language skill can interrogate successfully through an interpreter, the results obtained by the linguistically proficient interrogator will be more timely and comprehensive. Language labs, tapes, or instructors should be made available wherever possible to provide refresher and enhancement training for interrogator linguists.

#### KNOWLEDGE OF THE US ARMY'S MISSION, ORGANIZATION, AND OPERATIONS

Interrogation operations contribute to the accomplishment of the supported commander's mission. The interrogator must have a working knowledge of the US Army's missions, organizations, weapons and equipment, and methods of operation. This knowledge enables him to judge the relative significance of the information he extracts from the source.

#### KNOWLEDGE OF THE TARGET COUNTRY

Every interrogator should be knowledgeable about his unit's target country, such as armed forces uniforms and insignia, OB information, and country familiarity. Armed Forces Uniforms and Insignia

Through his knowledge of uniforms, insignia, decorations, and other distinctive devices, the interrogator may be able to determine the rank, branch of service, type of unit, and military experience of a military or paramilitary source.

During the planning and preparation and the approach phases, later discussed in this manual, the identification of uniforms and insignia is very helpful to the interrogator.

#### Order of Battle Information

OB is defined as the identification, strength, command structure, and disposition of personnel, units, and equipment of any military force. OB elements are separate categories by which detailed information is maintained. They are composition, disposition, strength, training, combat effectiveness, tactics, logistics, electronic technical data, and miscellaneous data. During the questioning phase, OB elements assist the interrogator in verifying the accuracy of the information obtained and can be used as an effective tool to gain new information. Aids which may be used to identify units are names of units, names of commanders, home station identifications, code designations and numbers, uniforms, insignia, guidons, documents, military postal system data, and equipment and vehicle markings.

#### Country Familiarity

The interrogator should be familiar with the social, political, and economic institutions, geography, history, and culture of the target country. Since many

sources will readily discuss nonmilitary topics, the interrogator may induce reluctant prisoners to talk by discussing the geography, economics, or politics of the target country. He may, then, gradually introduce significant topics into the discussion to gain important insight concerning the conditions and attitudes in the target country. He should keep abreast of major events as they occur in the target country. By knowing the current events affecting the target country, the interrogator will better understand the general situation in the target country, as well as the causes and repercussions.

#### KNOWLEDGE OF COMMON SOLDIER SKILLS

Interrogators must be proficient in all common soldier skills. However, map reading and enemy material and equipment are keys to the performance of interrogator duties.

##### Map Reading

Interrogators must read maps well enough to map track using source information obtained about locations of enemy activities. Through the use of his map tracking skills, the interrogator can obtain information on the locations of enemy activities from sources who can read a map. Furthermore, his map reading skills are essential to translate information into map terminology from sources who cannot read a map. Map reading procedures are outlined in FM 21-26.

##### Enemy Material and Equipment

The interrogator should be familiar with the capabilities, limitations, and employment of standard weapons and equipment so that he may recognize and identify changes, revisions, and innovations. Some of the more common subjects of interest to the interrogator include small arms, infantry support weapons, artillery, aircraft, vehicles, communications equipment, and NBC defense. FM 100-2-3 provides information on enemy material and equipment.

##### Specialized Training

The interrogator requires specialized training in international regulations, security, and neurolinguistics.

##### International Agreements

The interrogator should know international regulations on the treatment of prisoners of war and the general principles of the Law of Land Warfare and The Hague and Geneva Conventions.

##### Security

Interrogators must know how to identify, mark, handle, and control sensitive material according to AR 380-5. He should have received special training on Subversion and Espionage Directed Against the Army (SAEDA).

##### Neurolinguistics

Neurolinguistics is a behavioral communications model and a set of procedures that improve communication skills. The interrogator should read and react to nonverbal communications. An interrogator can best adapt himself to the source's personality and control his own reactions when he has an understanding of basic psychological factors, traits, attitudes, drives, motivations, and inhibitions.

## Chapter 2

### The Role of the Interrogator

An interrogation element does not operate on its own. It conducts operations in response to an assigned collection mission and reports the information it collects back into the system to help support combat commanders in fighting the air/land battle. The intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process is the framework in which intelligence and electronic warfare (IEW) operations take place. Interrogation assets operate within that framework to support the commander.

#### COMMANDER'S MISSION UNDER AIR-LAND BATTLE

All combat commanders have the same basic responsibility. They must destroy the enemy's capability to conduct further operations within their assigned areas of operation. To accomplish this mission, commanders must locate, identify, engage, and defeat enemy units. A commander can only engage the enemy after that enemy has entered the commander's area of operations. The depth of this area is determined by the maximum range of the weapon systems controlled by the commander. High technology battlefields of the future will be characterized by high mobility, devastating firepower, and tactics which take maximum advantage of both. On such battlefields, a commander whose sole interest is his area of operations is a commander who has lost the initiative. Losing the initiative on a battlefield means losing the battle. Air-land battle doctrine projects a way for commanders to preserve the initiative. It requires commanders to expand their outlook on the battlefield to another area, the area of interest. This area contains those enemy elements which may be close enough to effect the outcome of combat operations in the immediate future. If commanders can locate, identify, and accurately predict the intentions of enemy units while they are in the area of interest, it may be possible to inhibit or destroy their ability to conduct future combat operations. In combat operations against the enemy, air-land battle doctrine concentrates on deep, close, and rear operations. Air-land battle doctrine requires all commanders to have a mental and emotional commitment to the offensive. They must set primary and secondary objectives in terms of enemy formations, not terrain features. They must attack units and areas critical to coherent enemy operations, not just the enemy's lead formations. Commanders must possess the spirit of offensive determination. They must direct powerful initial blows against the enemy, placing him at an immediate disadvantage. These initial blows must be rapidly followed by additional strikes to keep the enemy off balance. To successfully implement the air-land battle doctrine, commanders must-

- Hold the initiative

- Operate across the entire width and depth of the battlefield

- React rapidly to changes in the enemy's intentions

- Synchronize the operations of their subordinates

The air-land battle doctrine places an extremely heavy burden on all commanders. However, these burdens must be borne, if commanders expect to win against heavy odds on the battlefield of the future.

#### MILITARY INTELLIGENCE AND INTELLIGENCE PREPARATION OF THE BATTLEFIELD

Like all other intelligence assets, interrogators serve the commander. Interrogation operations are of no value unless they contribute to the accomplishment of the supported commander's mission. To understand the interrogator's role in mission accomplishment, the overall contribution made by military intelligence must be understood. Military intelligence is responsible for providing commanders with an accurate and timely estimate of the enemy's capabilities and probable courses of action. This estimate must consider the terrain features in the area of operations, the number and type of enemy units in this area, and the prevailing weather conditions. Intelligence assets collect and analyze information to develop this estimate, then, give the estimate to commanders in sufficient time for use in their decision making.

Commanders request the information they need. These information requests are translated into collection requirements. The collection requirements are consolidated into collection missions and assigned to specific collection assets. Collection assets conduct operations to obtain information that satisfies their assigned collection missions. As collection assets gather information, they report it. The reported information is consolidated and analyzed to determine its reliability and validity. Valid information is collated and used to produce intelligence, which is then provided to the commanders, and simultaneously to collection assets to provide immediate feedback to assist in collection operations. This process is continuous, since commanders must react to a constantly changing battlefield. The following illustration shows the overall process followed by intelligence personnel in producing this estimate.

Analysis is the heart or center of the intelligence process. The collection effort is driven by an analysis of the commander's mission and the information needs this analysis identifies. The information collected is analyzed to determine how well it fills the commander's needs. IPB is the initial step in performing this analysis. IPB integrates enemy doctrine with the weather and terrain as they relate to a specific battlefield environment. This integration allows enemy capabilities, vulnerabilities, and probable courses of action to be determined and evaluated. On the battlefield, IPB is dynamic. It produces graphic estimates that portray the enemy probable courses of action in the immediate situation. Commanders and their staff elements use IPB products to help them determine how to achieve decisive results with limited resources.

**INTELLIGENCE AND ELECTRONIC WARFARE OPERATIONS**  
IEW operations are conducted to satisfy the aggregate intelligence, counterintelligence (CI), and EW requirements of the commander. IEW operations include both situation and target development activities. They are collectively oriented on the collection, processing, analysis, and reporting of all information regarding the enemy, weather, and terrain. IEW operations generate combat information, direct targeting data, all-source intelligence, and correlated targeting information. CI supports OPSEC, deception, rear operations, and EW. CI support to OPSEC and deception protects friendly, command, control, and communications (C3) programs. These are integral to IEW operations performed in support of the commander's combat objectives.

#### **SITUATION DEVELOPMENT**

Situation development requires the collection of information that accurately describes the enemy, weather, and terrain within the supported commander's area of interest. The following questions exemplify the types of information required:

- How will the terrain features and current weather affect the enemy's men and equipment? How will these effects change his operational timetables?
- What tactics will the enemy employ to achieve his objectives? What equipment will he employ? How will he organize his forces?
- Where will the enemy fight? What are his current unit locations? What are the strengths and weaknesses of those dispositions?
- What are the enemy's intentions? Where will he move next? What will he do when he gets there? Will he attack, defend, or withdraw? Where, When, How?
- Who, exactly, is the enemy? What are the capabilities, limitations, and operational patterns of specific enemy units and their commanders?
- Where is the enemy vulnerable? What are his technical, operational, and human weaknesses?

#### **TARGET DEVELOPMENT**

Target development requires the collection of combat information, targeting data, and correlated targeting information. Its objective is to accurately predict where and when the enemy will establish dispositions that will yield the

most decisive results when struck by a minimum of firepower. The following questions exemplify the types of information required:

Where, exactly, are the high value targets? Where are the locations of enemy weapons systems, units, and activities that may impact on combat operations? What, exactly, is at these locations? How much equipment? How many personnel? To what units do they belong?

How long will these locations be targets? When did the units, equipment, and personnel arrive? Where will they locate?

#### Specific Information Requirements

Tactical intelligence operations begin with the commander. He conveys his information needs to the intelligence staff who converts them into PIR and IR for the commander's approval or modification. The intelligence officer translates PIR and IR into specific collection missions for subordinate, attached, and supporting units and requests information from the next higher echelon. He receives and evaluates information from all sources, develops and nominates high-payoff targets (HPTs), and reports intelligence results to higher, lower, and adjacent units.

#### Battalion Specific Information Requirements

Battalion commanders need specific information and accurate intelligence from the brigade and higher headquarters to plan their operations. They need timely combat information and targeting data from subordinate, adjacent, and supporting units to refine their plan and to win their offensive and defensive battles. Their specific information requirements (SIR) for attacking and defending are consolidated, due to the speed with which they must react on the extremely dynamic and volatile air-land battlefield. They must know-

Location, direction, and speed of platoon and company-sized elements within the enemy's first-echelon battalions

Location, direction, and speed of enemy second-echelon battalions which indicate the first-echelon regiment's main effort

Disposition and strength of enemy defensive positions and fortifications

Location of anti-tank positions, crew-served weapons, individual vehicle positions, and dismounted infantry

Locations of barriers, obstacles, minefields, and bypass routes

Effects of terrain and prevailing weather conditions throughout the course of combat operations

Capability of enemy to employ air assets

Availability and probability of use of enemy radio electronic combat (REC) assets to disrupt friendly C3

Possibility of special weapons

Probability of enemy use of NBC weapons

#### Brigade Specific Information Requirements

Brigade commanders need and use specific information to plan, direct, coordinate, and support the operations of the division against enemy first-echelon regiments, their battalions, companies, and combat support units the sustainers. They also need accurate intelligence about enemy second-echelon regiments within first-echelon divisions and any follow-on forces which can close on their area of operation before the current engagement can be decisively concluded.

Brigades strive to attack enemy first-echelon forces while they are on the move and before they can deploy into combat formations. The brigade commander needs specific information about-

Composition, equipment, strengths, and weaknesses of advancing enemy forces

Location, direction, and speed of enemy first-echelon battalions and their subordinate companies

Locations and activities of enemy second and follow-on echelons capable of reinforcing their first-echelon forces in the operations area

Location of enemy indirect fire weapon systems and units



Locations of gaps, assailable flanks, and other tactical weaknesses in the enemy's OB and operations security (OPSEC) posture

Air threat

Enemy use of NBC

Effects of weather and terrain on current and projected operations

Anticipated timetable or event schedule associated with the enemy's most likely courses of action

Should the enemy succeed in establishing his defensive positions, then, brigade commanders' SIR increase. They must then know the specific types, locations, and organization of enemy first- and second-echelon defensive positions and fortifications. These include-

Barriers, obstacles, fire sacks, and antitank strong points

Locations of antiaircraft and missile artillery units

Locations of surface-to-air missile units

Location of REC units

Location of reserve maneuver forces

Enemy ability to conduct deep attack into friendly rear area

Brigade commanders given defensive missions, or forced to defend given sectors, require specific information about assaulting enemy companies, battalions, regiments, and divisions—generally, their strength, composition, and direction of attack. The same information is required about enemy follow-on units that can affect brigade combat operations. Of specific concern are the locations, size, activities, direction, and speed of enemy air assault, heliborne, and tactical air units capable of dealing lethal and decisive blows to brigade units and which could potentially be used to thwart any counterattack.

Specific information about enemy first- and second-echelon regimental C3 facilities is of paramount concern to the brigade commander, whether on the offense or defense. He must know the specific locations of enemy-

Division forward and main command posts (CPs)

Regimental and battalion CPs

Fire direction control centers

Command observation posts

Radar and radar reconnaissance sites

REC sites

Target acquisition sites

The suppression, neutralization, and destruction of enemy C3 systems and facilities are critical to the success of close operations. Brigade commanders, in concert with supporting division and corps IEW, and maneuver and fire support units use all available means to identify, locate, disrupt, and destroy these extremely HPTs. Their objective is to neutralize the enemy commanders' capability to command troops and control weapon and combat support systems. Thus, to degrade or deny the ability of the enemy commander to conduct his attack as planned, this is done by systematically attacking key nodes and information links in the enemy commanders' command and control (C2) system, which supports their decision-making process. This form of C2 warfare is founded upon the basic tenets of command control, and communications countermeasures (C3CM) strategy and is defined as-

The integrated use of OPSEC, military deception, jamming, and physical destruction, supported by INTELLIGENCE, to deny information, influence, degrade, or destroy enemy C3 capabilities and to protect friendly C3.

The protection of friendly C3—protect C3—is the number one priority under C3CM strategy. Intelligence supports the protection of friendly C3 primarily through CI support to OPSEC and deception.

#### COUNTERINTELLIGENCE

The mission of CI is to detect, evaluate, counteract, or prevent hostile intelligence collection, subversion, sabotage, and international terrorism conducted by or on behalf of any foreign power, organization, or person.

operating to the detriment of the US Army. CI personnel identify the hostile intelligence collection threat. They, together with operations personnel, develop friendly force profiles, identify vulnerabilities, and make recommendations to reduce those vulnerabilities. CI operations support OPSEC, deception, and rear operations.

#### COUNTERINTELLIGENCE SUPPORT TO OPERATIONS SECURITY

CI support to OPSEC is the principal role of CI at echelons division and below. It includes-

- The identification and analysis of enemy reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition (RSTA) capabilities, personnel, units, and activities.
- The identification and analysis of enemy REC units, locations, and activities.

- Assisting in the development of friendly force profiles.

- Determining friendly vulnerabilities to enemy RSTA and REC activities.

- Recommending and evaluating appropriate OPSEC and deception measures.

#### COUNTERINTELLIGENCE SUPPORT TO DECEPTION

Military deception operations are planned, controlled, directed, and conducted by commanders at echelons above division. They are designed to mislead enemy senior military and political leaders regarding our true military objectives, our combat capabilities and limitations, and the composition and disposition of our combat forces. Battlefield deception is deliberate action to achieve surprise on the air-land battlefield. Its purpose is to mislead enemy ground force commanders as to our true combat objectives, tactical OE, major axis of advance, and the disposition of our reserve and combat support units, defensive positions, fortifications, and C3 facilities.

#### COUNTERINTELLIGENCE SUPPORT TO REAR OPERATIONS

CI support to rear operations includes identifying and analyzing the enemy threat to brigade trains and both division support command (DISCOM) and corps support command (COSCOM) operations. CI personnel recommend steps to neutralize enemy agents, saboteurs, terrorists, sympathizers, and special purpose forces. Brigade and battalion commanders, their staffs, and all subordinate personnel must be trained and prepared to identify and report enemy units or activities which may pose a threat to brigade trains, DISCOM, and COSCOM operations. The potential impact on close operations from the rear cannot be overlooked. Black, gray, and white lists identify personnel of CI interest. CI teams conduct operations that provide data used to compile these lists. Black lists contain the names of persons who are hostile to US interests and whose capture or nullification of their effectiveness are of prime importance. Gray lists contain names of persons whose inclinations or attitudes toward US interests are certain. White lists contain names of persons who are favorably inclined toward US interests and need to be protected from enemy targeting.

#### INTERROGATION SUPPORT TO CI

Interrogation and CI personnel must interact to defeat the enemy's collection effort and the threat posed to our rear areas. The interrogator must work in close coordination with CI personnel to keep abreast of CI targets in the event he encounters a source that possesses information of CI interest. The following questions exemplify the types of information required by CI.

- What specific intelligence collection operations are being conducted by the enemy?

- What aspects of the enemy's plans have been successfully concealed from our collection efforts?

- What aspects of friendly plans have been discovered by the enemy, and how were they discovered?

- Does the enemy plan to conduct sabotage operations?

- Does the enemy plan to conduct subversive operations?

- How effective are our OPSEC measures?

- How effective are our attempts at military deception?

## ELECTRONIC WARFARE

EW is an essential element of combat power. It can provide commanders both a passive and an active means to protect their C3 systems and a passive and an active means to attack the enemy commanders' C3 systems as well. Protecting C3 is the number one priority for EW in accordance with C3CM strategy. Action taken to deny, influence, and degrade or destroy enemy C3 capabilities and counter-C3 is equally important. EW, like other elements of combat power on the air-land battlefield, is waged by employing a combination of both offensive and defensive operations, tactics, and procedures. Air-land battle doctrine and the spirit of the offense are the overriding considerations in planning and conducting EW operations (see FM 34-1).

The following questions exemplify types of information that the interrogator provides to EW operations:

Will the enemy employ jammers?

Will the enemy augment heavy electronic equipment?

What specific means of C3 are being used by the enemy?

What problem has the enemy experienced when using each of these means?

What has been the effect of our attempts to influence, degrade, or destroy these means of C3?

## CAPABILITIES AND LIMITATIONS OF INTERROGATOR

Interrogators are trained as linguists to question sources and to exploit CEDs. They collect and report information that pertains to the IEW tasks. Reportable information is determined by comparing the information obtained to the PIR and IR contained in the interrogation element's collection, mission. Interrogators collect information on political, economic, and a wide range of military topics. In doing this, they organize their collection effort according to the OB elements used by the intelligence analyst. However, at the tactical level, commanders and intelligence staff will generate requests for specific intelligence and combat information PIR and IR that will allow them to better conduct the war. Therefore, the collector effort should be limited to obtaining information that responds to the PIR and IP.

**Missions** Information that describes the present, future, or past missions of specific enemy units. Each unit for which mission information was obtained is identified.

**Compositions** Information that identifies specific enemy units. This identification should include the type of unit (artillery, transportation, armor, and so forth) and a description of the unit's organizational chain of command.

**Strength** Information that describes the size of enemy units in terms of personnel, weapons, and equipment. A unit identification must accompany each description.

**Dispositions** Information that establishes locations occupied by the enemy units or activities. The information will identify the military significance of the disposition, other enemy units there, and any security measures.

**Tactics** Information that describes the tactics in use, or planned for use, by specific enemy units. The doctrine governing the employment of these tactics will be included in the description.

**Training** Information that identifies and describes the types of individual and collective training being conducted by the enemy. The description will include all information on the thoroughness, degree, and quality of the training.

**Combat effectiveness** Information that describes the ability and fighting quality of specific enemy units. The description will provide unit identification and information about personnel and equipment losses and replacements, reinforcements, morale, and combat experiences of its members.

**Logistics** Information that describes the means by which the enemy moves and sustains his forces. This includes any information on the types and amounts of

supply required, procured, stored, and distributed by enemy units in support of current and future operations

**Electronic technical data** Information that describes the operational parameters of specific enemy electronic equipment This includes both communications and noncommunications systems

**Miscellaneous data** Information that supports the development of any of the other OB elements Examples are personalities, passwords, unit histories, radio call signs, radio frequencies, unit or vehicle identification numbers, and PSYOP

The degree of success achieved by interrogation operations is limited by the environment in which the operations are performed Interrogators depend on the IEW process to give direction to their collection efforts They rely on the conduct of combat operations to provide them with collection targets sources and CED

Interrogation operations are also limited by the very nature of human intelligence (HUMINT) collection The source or CED must actually have the desired information before the interrogators can collect it With respect to sources, there is always the possibility that knowledgeable individuals may refuse to cooperate The Geneva and Hague Conventions and the UCMJ set definite limits on the measures which can be used to gain the willing cooperation of prisoners of war

## Chapter 3

### Interrogation Process

The interrogation process involves the screening and selection of sources for interrogation and the use of interrogation techniques and procedures. Both screening and interrogation involve complex interpersonal skills, and many aspects of their performance are extremely subjective. Each screening and interrogation is unique because of the interaction of the interrogator with the source. There are five interrogation phases: planning and preparation, approach, questioning, termination, and reporting.

#### SCREENING SOURCES

Screening is the selection of sources for interrogation. It must be conducted at every echelon to determine the cooperativeness and the knowledgeability of sources and to determine which sources can best satisfy the commander's PIR and IR in a timely manner.

#### CONDUCT PRESCREENING

##### Observe the Source

Screeners should personally observe the source. During this observation, the screener should first examine the EPW captive tag (Appendix D). The EPW captive tag will provide the screener information regarding the source's circumstances of capture (when, where, how, by whom, and so forth). This information can assist the interrogator in the conduct of the screening and most importantly can show immediately if the source has the potential of possessing information which could answer the supported commander's PIR and IR. The screeners should pay particular attention to rank insignia, condition of uniforms and equipment, and behavior demonstrated by the source. Screeners should look for things like attempts to talk to the guards, intentionally joining placement in the wrong segregation group, or any signs of nervousness, anxiety, or fear. Any source whose appearance or behavior indicates that he is willing to talk should be noted by the screeners. During the observation, the screener should look for signs (such as the source's branch insignia or other identifiable features) to indicate that the source could have knowledge of information related to the supported commander's PIR and IR.

##### Question Guards

Screeners should question guards about the source. Since the guards are in constant contact with the source, they can provide the information on the source's behavior. The guards can provide information on how the source has responded to orders, what requests have been made by the source, what behavior has been demonstrated by the source, and so forth. In addition, the guards can help screeners with specific items of interest to identify sources who might answer the supported commander's PIR and IR.

##### Examine Documents

Screeners should examine the documents captured with the source and any documents pertaining to the source. Documents captured with the source (identification card, letters, map sections, and so forth) can provide information that identifies the source, his organization, his mission, and other personal background (family, knowledge, experience, and so forth). Available documents pertaining to the source (screening reports, interrogation reports, and administrative documents, such as detainee personnel record (see Appendix E)) prepared by the military police can help the screener by providing information on the source's physical and emotional status, knowledge, experience, and other background information. This information can be used to verify information from documents captured with the source and further assess his willingness to cooperate. When examining documents, screeners should look for items that will indicate whether the source is cooperative or willing to cooperate based on any specific personal interest. In addition, the screener should examine the documents to determine if the source has information which answers the supported commander's PIR and IR.

If the source has information pertaining to new foreign material, contact the technical intelligence element, and if the source has information of target exploitation interest, contact the target exploitation element

#### COORDINATION WITH CI ELEMENT

Before initiating the interrogation and screening process, the interrogator establishes close liaison with the supporting CI agents. The CI element provides PIR of CI interest. During the interrogation and screening process, interrogators identify sources of CI interest. After these sources have been interrogated for any information of immediate tactical value, (as needed) they are turned over to CI personnel as quickly as possible. For example, CI is interested in sources that the following conditions apply

Have no identification documents

Have excessive identification documents

Have modified identification documents

Possess unusually large amounts of cash or valuables

Possess knowledge of critical interest (for example, nuclear power plant operations, chemical plant operations, weapons test and development, and so forth)

Are illegal border crossers

Attempt to avoid checkpoints

Are on the black, gray, or white list

Request to see CI or US Army intelligence

Have family in the denied area

Screeners should always consider cooperative, knowledgeable sources first. These sources are identified through the screeners' review of documents, questioning of the guards, and their own personal observations. Based on their notes, the screeners establish the order in which these sources will be screened. The guards are then told to bring these sources, in a specified sequence, to the screening site one at a time.

Screeners ask each source about the circumstances of his capture, his personal background, his military job, and his unit of assignment. The goal is to get the source to talk. Once the source is talking, the screeners try to identify any strong emotions and the reasons for them. This will indicate how susceptible the source may be to interrogation and may identify the approach techniques which have the greatest chance of success. Screeners also inject questions designed to identify those topical areas in which the source possesses pertinent information.

#### RECORD INFORMATION

A screener must record information as it is obtained from the source on a screening report form. An example of this form is shown in Appendix F. All of the information shown is rarely obtained from any one source. The blocks are there to save the screeners as much additional writing as possible. If size, activity, location, unit, time and equipment (SALUTE) reportable information is obtained during the screening, it must be explicated fully and reported as soon as possible.

#### ASSIGN CATEGORY

The screening of a source ends when the screener is sure that he can make an accurate assessment of the source's potential cooperation and pertinent knowledge. At this time, the source is returned to the control of the guards, and the screener records his assessment on the screening report form. The assessment is recorded by means of a screening code. The screening code is a number-letter designation which reflects the level of cooperation to be expected from the source and the level of knowledgeability the source may possess. The number "1" represents a source who responds to direct questions. The number "2" represents a source who responds hesitantly to questioning. The number "3" represents a source who does not respond to questioning. The letter "A" represents a source who is very likely to possess information pertinent to the

supported commander's PIR. The letter "B" represents a source who might have information pertinent to the supported commander's IR. The letter "C" represents a source who does not appear to have pertinent information. Those sources who have been assigned to the same category may be interrogated in any order deemed appropriate by the senior interrogator. Category 1A sources should normally be the first to be interrogated. Category 1B sources are next, followed by those assigned to categories 2A, 1C, 2B, 3A, 2C, and 3B. Category 3C sources are normally interrogated last. This order of priorities ensures the highest probability of obtaining the greatest amount of pertinent information within the time available for interrogations. Screening codes may change with the echelon. The higher the echelon, the more time is available to conduct an approach. The following illustration depicts the order in which sources will be interrogated.

NOTE: The term "screening category" should not be confused with EPW- or source-assigned category that is assigned according to their intelligence value (see Appendix A).

#### INTERROGATING PROCEDURES PLANNING AND PREPARATION

Once the senior interrogator has assigned specific sources to his subordinates, the interrogators develop a plan for their interrogations. These plans reflect the current situation and the supported commanders' PIR and IR. If they do not, the subsequent interrogations will not help the element to satisfy its assigned collection mission, and information needed by the supported unit will be missed. Each interrogator, where feasible, begins his preparation by examining the situation map (SITMAP), the OB data base, and pertinent information contained in the interrogation element's files.

##### Interrelation of Planning and Preparation and Approach

The planning and preparation phase and the approach phase are interrelated. In the planning and preparation phase, the interrogator gathers information on the source's circumstances of capture, comments from others who have been with the source, information on the source's observed behavior, and information on some of the source's personal traits and peculiarities from the screening sheet. This information helps the interrogator develop a picture of the source and enables him to select approaches most likely to work. There are four primary factors that must be taken into consideration in selecting tentative approaches:

The source's mental and physical state. Is the source injured, angry, crying, arrogant, cocky, or frightened? If so, how can this state be best exploited in the interrogation effort?

The source's background. What is the source's age and level of military or civilian experience?

The objective of the interrogation. How much time is available for the interrogation? Is the commander interested only in specific areas (PIR and IR)? Is this source knowledgeable enough to require a full OB interrogation?

The interrogator himself. What abilities does he have that can be brought into play? What weaknesses does he have that may interfere with the interrogation of the source? Can his personality adapt to the personality of the source?

##### Questioning Guards

Interrogators should question guards as part of their preparations. The guards are in constant contact with the sources and may be able to provide the following types of information:

Physical condition

Demonstrated attitude and behavior

Contact made with other guards or sources

How the source has been handled since his capture

Hearsay information from others who have handled the source

Confirmation of capture data, especially, the circumstances under which the

source was captured

Each interrogator will unobtrusively observe the source to personally confirm his identity and to check his personal appearance and behavior

#### Analyze Information

After the interrogator has collected all information available about his assigned source, he analyzes it. He looks for indicators of any psychological or physical weakness that might make the source susceptible to one or more approach techniques. The interrogator formulates a strategy to conduct his analysis. He also uses the information he collected to identify the type and level of knowledge possessed by the source that is pertinent to the element's collection mission.

#### Modify Sequences of Questioning

The interrogator uses his estimate of the type and extent of knowledge possessed by the source to modify the basic topical sequence of questioning. He selects only those topics in which he believes the source has pertinent knowledge. In this way, the interrogator refines his element's overall objective into a set of specific topics for his interrogation. The major topics that can be covered in an interrogation are shown below in their normal sequence. The interrogator is, however, free to modify this sequence as he deems necessary.

Mission

Organization

Personnel strength

Weapons and equipment strength

Dispositions

Tactics

Training

Combat effectiveness

Logistics

Electronic technical data

Miscellaneous

#### Finalize Interrogation Plan

As a result of the planning and preparation phase, the interrogator develops a plan for conducting his assigned interrogation. He must review this plan with the senior interrogator when possible. Whether written or oral, the interrogation plan must contain at least the following items of information:

Identity of the source

Interrogation serial number

Topics, in sequence, that will be covered

Reasons why the interrogator selected only specific topics from the basic questioning sequence

Approach strategy selected

Means selected for recording the information obtained

The senior interrogator reviews each plan and makes any changes that he feels necessary based on the commander's PIR and IF. After the plan is approved, the holding compound is notified to have a guard bring the source to the interrogation site. The interrogator collects all available interrogation aids needed (maps, charts, writing tools, reference materials, and so forth) and proceeds to the interrogation site.

#### APPROACH

The approach phase actually begins when the interrogator first comes in contact with the source and continues until the prisoner begins answering questions pertinent to the objective of the interrogator effort. Interrogators do not "run" an approach by following a set pattern or routine. Each interrogation is different, but all approaches in interrogations have the following purposes in common:

Establish and maintain control over the source and the interrogation

Establish and maintain rapport between the interrogator and the source



Manipulate the source's emotions and weaknesses to gain his willing cooperation

The successful application of approach techniques eventually induces the source to willingly provide accurate intelligence information to the interrogator. The term "willingly" refers to the source answering the interrogator's questions, not necessarily his cooperation. The source may or may not be aware that he is actually providing the interrogator with information about enemy forces. Some approaches may be complete when the source begins to answer questions. Others may have to be constantly maintained or reinforced throughout the interrogation. The techniques used in an approach can best be defined as a series of events, not just verbal conversation between the interrogator and the source. The exploitation of the source's emotion can be either harsh or gentle in application (hand and body movements, actual physical contact such as a hand on the shoulder for reassurance, or even silence are all useful techniques that the interrogator may have to bring into play).

#### Basic Concepts of Approaches

The manipulative techniques within each approach are different, but there are some factors common to all approaches which affect the success or failure of the approach itself. The interrogator should establish and maintain control, establish and develop rapport, assess the source, make smooth transitions, appear sincere, be convincing, and recognize the breaking point.

**Establish and Maintain Control** The interrogator should appear to be the one who controls all aspects of the interrogation to include the lighting, heating, and configuration of the interrogation room, as well as the food, shelter, and clothing given to the source. The interrogator must always be in control, he must act quickly and firmly. However, everything that he says and does must be within the limits of the Geneva and Hague Conventions, as well as the standards of conduct outlined in the UCMJ.

**Establish and Develop Rapport** Rapport between the interrogator and the source is really nothing more than a two-way flow of communication. It can involve showing kindness and humanity in an otherwise harsh situation, or it can mean badgering the source. Rapport is established when the source reacts to the interrogator's statement. Rapport must be maintained throughout the interrogation, not only just in the approach phase. If the interrogator has established good rapport initially and then abandons the effort, the source would rightfully assume that the interrogator cares less and less about him as the information is being obtained. If this occurs, rapport is lost and the source may cease answering questions. Rapport may be developed by-  
Asking about the circumstances of capture. By asking about the source's circumstances of capture, the interrogator can gain insight into the prisoner's actual state of mind and more importantly, he can ascertain his possible breaking points.

**Asking background questions** After asking about the source's circumstances of capture, the interrogator can further gain rapport by asking questions about his background. Apparent interest can be built by asking about his family, civilian life, friends, likes, dislikes, and so forth. The main point in asking about the source's background is to develop rapport, but nonpertinent questions may open new avenues for the approach and help determine whether or not the tentative approaches chosen in the planning and preparation phase will be effective. If nonpertinent questions show that the tentative approaches chosen will not be effective, a flexible interrogator can easily shift the direction of his approach without the source being aware of the change.

Depending on the situation, circumstances, and any requests the source may have made, the following can also be used to develop rapport.

Offering realistic incentives such as immediate (coffee, cigarettes, and so forth), short-term (a meal, shower, send a letter home, and so forth), and long-term (repatriation, political asylum, and so forth).

Feigning experience similar to those of the source  
Showing concern for the prisoner through the use of voice vitality and body language  
Helping the source to rationalize his guilt  
Showing kindness and understanding toward the source's predicament  
Exonerating the source from guilt  
Flattering the source

**Assess the Source** After having established control of the source and having established rapport, the interrogator continually assesses the prisoner to see if the approaches, and later the questioning techniques, chosen in the planning and preparation phase will indeed work. Remember that the approaches chosen in planning and preparation are only tentative and are based on the sometimes scanty information available from documents, the guards, and personal observation. This may lead the interrogator to select approaches which may be totally incorrect for obtaining this source's willing cooperation. A careful assessment of the source is absolutely necessary to avoid wasting valuable time in the approach phase. Make assessment by asking background and nonpertinent questions which will indicate whether or not the approaches chosen will be effective. The questions can be mixed or they can be separate. If, for example, the interrogator had chosen a love of comrades approach, he should ask the source questions like "How did you get along with your fellow squad members?" If the source answers that they were all very close and worked well as a team, then the interrogator can go right into his love of comrades approach and be reasonably sure of its success. However, if the source answers, "They all hated my guts and I couldn't stand any of them!" then the interrogator should abandon that approach and ask some quick nonpertinent questions to give himself some time to work out a new approach.

**Make Smooth Transitions** The interrogator must guide the conversation smoothly and logically, especially if he needs to move from one approach technique to another. "Poking and hoping" in the approach may alert the prisoner of ploys and will make the job more difficult. Tie-ins to another approach can be made logically and smoothly by using transitional phrases. Logical tie-ins can be made by the inclusion of simple sentences which connect the previously used approach with the basis for the next one. Transitions can also be smoothly covered by leaving the unsuccessful approach and going back to nonpertinent questions. By using nonpertinent conversation, the interrogator can more easily move the conversation in the desired direction and as previously stated, sometimes obtain leads and hints as to source's stresses or weaknesses or other approach strategies that may be more successful.

**Be Sincere and Convincing** All professional interrogators must be convincing and appear sincere in working their approaches. If an interrogator is using argument and reason to get the source to cooperate, he must be convincing and appear sincere. All inferences of promises, situations, and arguments, or other invented material must be believable. What a source may or may not believe depends on his level of knowledge, experience, and training. A good assessment of the source is the basis for the approach and is vital to the success of the interrogator effort.

**Recognize the Breaking Point** Every source has a breaking point, but an interrogator never knows what it is until it has been reached. There are, however, some good indicators that the source is near his breaking point or has already reached it. For example, if during the approach, the source leans forward with his facial expression indicating an interest in the proposal or is more hesitant in his argument, he is probably nearing the breaking point. The interrogator must be alert and observant to recognize these signs in the approach phase. Once the interrogator determines that the source is breaking, he should interject a question pertinent to the objective of the interrogation. If the source answers it, the interrogator can move into the questioning phase. If

the source does not answer or balks at answering it, the interrogator must realize that the source was not as close to the breaking point as was thought. In this case, the interrogator must continue with his approach or switch to an alternate approach or questioning technique and continue to work until he again feels that the source is near breaking. The interrogator can tell if the source has broken only by interjecting pertinent questions. This process must be followed until the prisoner begins to answer pertinent questions. It is entirely possible that the prisoner may cooperate for a while and then balk at answering further questions. If this occurs, the interrogator can either reinforce the approaches that initially gained the source's cooperation or move into a different approach before returning to the questioning phase of the interrogation. At this point, it is important to note that the amount of time that is spent with a particular source is dependent on several factors, that is, the battlefield situation, the expediency with which the supported commander's PIR and IR requirements need to be answered, and so forth.

#### Approach Techniques

Interrogation approach techniques are usually performed by one interrogator working alone. However, sometimes interrogators work together. He must also remember that the tactical situation is very fluid and that the commander needs information in the shortest period of time. This means that the tactical interrogator has little time to waste, especially during the approach phase. Obviously, the more complicated an approach technique is, the more preparation time is required for it and its successful use. For this reason, the approach techniques discussed are those that take the least amount of time to produce the most usable information possible.

The number of approaches used is limited only by the interrogator's imagination and skill. Almost any ruse or deception is usable as long as the provisions of the Geneva Conventions are not violated. The Geneva Conventions do not permit an interrogator to pass himself off as a medic, chaplain, or as a member of the Red Cross (Red Crescent or Red Lion). To every approach technique, there are literally hundreds of possible variations, each of which can be developed for a specific situation or source. The variations are limited only by the interrogator's personality, experience, ingenuity, and imagination. With the exception of the direct approach, no other approach is effective by itself. Interrogators use different approach techniques or combine them into a cohesive, logical technique. Smooth transitions, logic, sincerity, and conviction can almost always make a strategy work. The lack of will undoubtedly dooms it to failure. Some examples of combinations are-

Direct/futility/incentive

Direct/futility/love of comrades

Direct/fear up (mild)/incentive

The actual number of combinations is limited only by the interrogator's imagination and skill. Great care must be exercised by the interrogator in choosing the approach strategy in the planning and preparation phase of interrogation and in listening carefully to what the source is saying (verbally or nonverbally) for leads that the strategy chosen will not work. When this occurs, the interrogator must adapt himself to approaches that he now believes will work in gaining the source's cooperation.

#### QUESTIONING

Although there is no fixed point at which the approach phase ends and the questioning phase begins, generally the questioning phase commences when the source begins to answer questions pertinent to the specific objectives of the interrogation. Questions should be comprehensive enough to ensure that the topic of interest is thoroughly explored. Answers should establish the who, what, when, where, how, and when possible why. Questions should be presented in a logical sequence to be certain that significant topics are not neglected. A series of questions following a chronological sequence of events is frequently

employed, but this is by no means the only logical method of asking questions. Adherence to a sequence should not deter the interrogator from exploiting informational leads as they are obtained. The interrogator must consider the probable response of the source to a particular question or line of questioning and should not, if at all possible, ask direct questions likely to evoke a refusal to answer or to antagonize the source. Experience has shown that in most tactical interrogations, the source is cooperative. In such instances, the interrogator should proceed with direct questions.

#### Questioning Techniques

Use good questioning techniques throughout the questioning phase. An interrogator must know when to use the different types of questions. With good questioning techniques, the interrogator can extract the most information in the shortest amount of time. There are many types of questioning techniques.

- Uses only properly formed, direct questions

- Properly uses follow-up questions for complete information

- Properly uses repeated, controlled, prepared, and nonpertinent questions to control interrogation and assess source

- Avoids confusing, ambiguous, and time-consuming questions

- Uses a proper, logical sequence of topics or questions

Characteristics of direct questions are?

- Basic interrogatives (who, what, when, where, and how, plus qualifier)

- Brief, concise, simply worded, and address the looked-for information

- Asks for a narrative response (cannot be answered by just yes or no)

- Produces the maximum amount of usable information and gives a greater number of leads to new avenues of questioning

Follow-up questions are used to exploit a topic of interest. Questions usually flow one-from-another based on the answer to previous questions. Interrogators ask a basic question and then based on the answer from the source, use follow-up questions to completely exploit all available information about the topic.

Follow-up questions are also used to fully exploit a lead given by the source in his response.

Nonpertinent questions are used to conceal the interrogation's objectives or to strengthen rapport with the source. They may also be used to break the source's concentration, particularly, if the interrogator suspects that the source is lying. It is hard for a source to be a convincing liar if his concentration is frequently interrupted.

Repeated questions ask the source for the same information obtained in response to earlier questions. They may be exact repetitions of the previous question, or the previous question may be rephrased or otherwise disguised. Repeated questions may be used to check the consistency of the source's previous responses. They may also be used to ensure the accuracy of important details such as place names, dates, and component parts of technical equipment. The use of repeated questions may develop a topic that the source had refused to talk about earlier.

They may also be used as a means of returning to a topical area for further questioning.

Control questions are developed from information which the interrogator believes to be true. Control questions are based on information which has been recently confirmed and which is not likely to have changed. They are used to check the truthfulness of the source's response and should be mixed in with other questions throughout the interrogation.

Prepared questions are developed in advance of an interrogation to gain precise wording or the most desirable questioning sequence. They are used primarily for interrogations which are technical in nature, require legal precision, or cover a number of specific topics. Interrogators must not allow the use of prepared questions to restrict the scope and flexibility of their interrogations.

Leading questions may prompt the source to answer with the response he believes

the interrogator wishes to hear. As a result, the response may be inaccurate or incomplete. Leading questions are generally avoided during interrogations, but they can be used by experienced interrogators to verify information. This is especially true during map tracking.

Avoid vague questions as they do not have enough information for the source to understand exactly what is being asked by the interrogator. They may be incomplete, "blanket" or otherwise nonspecific, and create doubt in the source's mind. Vague questions tend to confuse the source, waste time, are easily evaded, and result in answers that may confuse or mislead the interrogator.

The interrogator must use the different types of questions effectively. Active listening and maximum eye-to-eye contact with the source will provide excellent indicators for when to use follow-up, repeated, control, and nonpertinent questions. The interrogator uses direct and follow-up questions to fully exploit subjects pertinent to his interrogation objectives. He periodically includes control, repeated, and nonpertinent questions to check the sincerity and consistency of the source's responses and to strengthen rapport. A response which is inconsistent with earlier responses or the interrogator's available data is not necessarily a lie. When such a response is obtained, the interrogator reveals the inconsistency to the source and asks for an explanation. The source's truthfulness should, then, be evaluated based on the plausibility of his explanation.

There are two types of questions that an interrogator should not use. These are compound and negative questions. Compound questions are questions which ask for at least two different pieces of information. They are, in effect, two or more questions combined as one. They require the source to supply a separate answer to each portion of the question. Compound questions should not be used during interrogations because they allow the source to evade a part of the question or to give an incomplete answer. They may confuse the source or cause the interrogator to misunderstand the response. Negative questions are questions which are constructed with words like "no," "none," or "not." They should be avoided because they may confuse the source and produce misleading or false information. They usually require additional questions to clarify the source's responses.

#### SALUTE Reportable Information

SALUTE reportable information is any information that is critical to the successful accomplishment of friendly courses of action. SALUTE reportable information is reported by the interrogator in a SALUTE report format, written or oral (see Appendix E for an example). Information may be SALUTE reportable even when an interrogator cannot determine its immediate intelligence value. SALUTE reportable information is always time sensitive and answers the supported, higher, or adjacent unit's FIR and IR. SALUTE reportable information is identified by its potential value. If the information indicates a change in the enemy's capabilities or intentions, it is SALUTE reportable. If an interrogator cannot decide whether or not a piece of information is SALUTE reportable, he should act as though it is. This means that he should exploit it fully and record all pertinent information. The interrogator should then consult the senior interrogator for a final determination of the information's value.

#### Hot and Cold Leads

Leads are signs which tell an interrogator that the source has additional pertinent information that can be obtained through further questioning. Leads are provided by a source's response to the interrogator's questions. There are two types of leads that concern interrogators: hot and cold. A hot lead, when exploited, may obtain information that is SALUTE reportable. A cold lead, when exploited, may obtain information that is not SALUTE reportable but is still of intelligence value. The use of follow-up questions to fully exploit hot and cold leads may require an interrogator to cover topics that he did not list in his interrogation plan. An interrogator must exploit hot leads as soon as he

identifies them. Once the interrogator is sure that he has obtained and recorded all the details known to the source, he issues a SALUTE report. The interrogator then resumes his questioning of the source at the same point where the hot lead was obtained. An interrogator should note cold leads as they are obtained and exploit them fully during his questioning on the topics to which the cold leads apply. Cold leads may expand the scope of the interrogation because they may indicate that the source possesses pertinent information in areas not previously selected for questioning. If the interrogator does not fully exploit all of the cold leads he obtains, he must include information on all the leads he did not exploit in his interrogation report.

#### Hearsay Information

Hearsay information must include the most precise information possible of its source. This will include the name, duty position, full unit designation of the person who provided the information, and the date-time group of when the source obtained the information.

#### Questioning Sequence

An interrogator begins his questioning phase with the first topic in the sequence he tentatively established as part of his interrogation plan. He obtains all of the source's pertinent knowledge in this topical area before moving on to the next topic in his sequence. He maintains his established sequence of questioning to ensure that no topics are missed. The only exception is to exploit a hot lead immediately. Even then, however, he must resume his questioning at the same point in the same area at which the hot lead was first identified.

#### Map Tracking

The interrogator obtains information concerning the location of enemy activities through the use of map tracking. Map tracking is performed in the order in which they are described. By following the sequence below, an interrogator ensures that all required details are obtained for each disposition known to the source.

Establish an initial common point of reference (ICPR). The first location the interrogator should try to establish as the ICPR is the source's point of capture (POC), because it is the most recent in his memory.

Establish a destination common point of reference (DCPR). The DCPR can be the reference point furthest back in time, distance, or higher echelon. This could be forward or to the rear of the ICPR. In any case, you must establish a route using the procedures, in the sequence shown in the following illustration.

#### ESTABLISHING THE ROUTE

Obtain the direction in which the source would travel when leaving the ICPR.

Obtain a description of the surface or which the source would be traveling.

Obtain the distance the source would travel in this direction.

Obtain a description of the prominent terrain features the source would remember while traveling in this direction.

Repeat the questions and plot the responses until the entire route between the ICPR and the DCPR has been plotted.

The interrogator can follow the same sequence when establishing the route actually traveled by the source by beginning with the DCPR. Each sequence establishes a CPR.

Exploit the DCPR. Upon determining the DCPR, the interrogator must obtain the exact location and description of each enemy disposition the source knew about at the DCPR. Methods of obtaining this information are shown in the following illustration. Until he obtains all dispositions known by the source in the vicinity of the DCPR, the interrogator must repeat these questions and plot or record the information as it is provided by the source.

Segment and exploit the route segments. The interrogator begins exploiting the source's route with the segment closest to either the ICPR or the DCPR. The preferred segment is the segment closest to the DCPR, but either can be used.

The interrogator will exploit each segment of the route by asking the question "From (description of common point of reference (CPR)) to (description of next CPR) back along your route of travel, what of military significance do you know or have seen or heard?" The interrogator will continue from segment to segment, fully exploiting each, until he has exploited the entire route traveled

Exploit dispositions not on route If the interrogator obtains a disposition which is not located on the established route, he must establish the route the source would have taken to that disposition. The interrogator then treats this new route the same way he does any other route segment, exploiting it fully before moving on to the next segment of the original route

The sequence, above, organizes map tracking so that information obtained from the source can be plotted and recorded accurately. Correct performance of this task results in the map used by the interrogator. The description of each disposition must be recorded preferably near the site of the disposition on the map

#### EXPLOITATION OF DISPOSITIONS

Identify and describe items of military significance belonging to his forces which are located at each disposition. Provide the full unit designation of the enemy units to which these items belong

Describe the security measures deployed at each identified disposition

Identify the source of his information

Provide the date and time when he obtained his information

Provide the name, rank, duty position and full unit designation of each person who provided hearsay information to the source

#### Recording Information

There are several reasons for recording information obtained during interrogations. The most important of these is to ensure that all information can be reported completely and accurately. Recorded information may also be used to?

Refresh the interrogator's memory of a topic covered earlier, such as when returning to a topic after exploiting a hot lead

Check responses to repeated questions

Point out inconsistencies to the source

Gain the cooperation of other sources

Compare with information received from other sources

There are several methods of recording information that can be used during interrogations. Two are listed below and their advantages and disadvantages are described. These methods may be used separately or in combination with each other

**Taking Notes** The interrogator's own notes are the primary method of recording information. When the interrogator takes his own notes, he has a ready reference to verify responses to repeated questions or to refresh his memory. They also provide him with the means to record cold leads for later exploitation.

Using his own notes expedites the interrogator's accurate transferral of information into a report format. When taking his own notes, however, he cannot observe the source continually. This may cause him to miss leads or fail to detect losses in rapport or control that are detectable only through clues provided by the source's behavior.

It is possible to lose control and the source's willing cooperation by devoting too much of his concentration to note taking. The interrogator must avoid distracting the source while taking notes. Notes should be taken in such a way that the maximum amount of eye-to-eye contact with the source is maintained. The interrogator will not have enough time to record every word that the source says. He must be able to condense or summarize information into a few words. He must use his past experiences to decide which items of information should be recorded. He should organize his materials to avoid having to flip back and

forth between references

The only information that should be recorded during the approach phase is that required by part 1 of the interrogation report (format is shown in Appendix G) All other information should not be recorded until after the source's cooperation has been obtained

**Using a Sound Recorder** The use of a sound recorder allows the interrogator to continually observe the source. When compared with note taking, this method allows more information to be obtained in less time. However, more time is required for report writing because the entire tape must be replayed to transfer information to the report. Place names, numbers, and other pertinent, detailed information may be unclear on the recording. Sound recorders cannot provide a ready reference that can be used to compare answers to a repeated question, and the equipment may malfunction.

#### TERMINATION

Although the termination phase is only the fourth phase of the five phases, it is the last phase in which the interrogator will actually deal with the source. The interrogator must leave the source ready to continue answering questions in the future if necessary. The termination of the interrogation must be conducted properly. If the interrogator mishandles the termination phase and he later finds that the source has lied or he needs to question the source further, he must start again from scratch.

#### Need to Terminate

A number of circumstances can cause an interrogation to be terminated. An interrogator must be able to identify such circumstances as soon as they occur. Some circumstances that require an interrogation to be terminated are-

- The source remains uncooperative throughout the approach phase.

- Either the source or the interrogator becomes physically or mentally unable to continue.

- All pertinent information has been obtained from the source.

- The source possesses too much pertinent information for all of it to be exploited during the interrogation session.

- Information possessed by the source is of such value that his immediate evacuation to the next echelon is required.

- The interrogator's presence is required elsewhere.

- The interrogator loses control of the interrogation and cannot recover it.

#### Termination Procedures

Whatever the reason for terminating the interrogation, the interrogator must remember that there is a possibility that someone may want to question the source at a later date. For that reason, he should terminate the interrogation without any loss of rapport whenever possible. The interrogator reinforces his successful approach techniques to facilitate future interrogations. He tells the source that he may be talked to again. When appropriate, he tells the source that the information he provided will be checked for truthfulness and accuracy. He offers the opportunity for the source to change or add to any information he has given.

During termination, the interrogator must make proper disposition of any documents captured with the source. A source's military identity document must be returned to him. If a source does not hold an identity card issued by his government, the source will be issued a completed DA Form 2662-R (see Appendix C) by the military police. The identity card will be in the possession of the source at all times. Some captured documents will contain information that must be exploited at higher echelons. Any such documents may be impounded by the interrogator and evacuated through intelligence channels. The interrogator must issue a receipt to the source for any personal documents he decides to impound. He must comply with the accounting procedures established for captured documents by the military police, according to AR 190-8. The accounting procedures required for impounding documents captured with a source are time-consuming but



necessary. The interrogator can save time by preparing receipts and document tags during the planning and preparation phase. He completes the termination phase by instructing the escort guard to return the source to the holding compound and to keep him away from any sources who have not yet been interrogated.

#### REPORTING

Reports are submitted on all information of intelligence value that is obtained. Initial reports are submitted electronically whenever possible to ensure that the information reaches the intelligence analysts in the least amount of time. Written reports are prepared to document electronic reports. They are used as the initial means of reporting only when electronic reporting is impossible. Any information of intelligence value that will diminish with the passage of time must be SALUTE reported. Electronic SALUTE reports are formatted and submitted according to the procedures established during the senior interrogator's initial coordination. Written SALUTE reports are prepared according to the format in Appendix E. Information that is not SALUTE reportable is electronically reported with a lower priority. The aim of any interrogation is to obtain information which will help satisfy a commander's intelligence requirements. Since these requirements will differ in scope at each level, when conducting PIR or IR interrogations, nonapplicable paragraphs may be deleted. Part 1 must always be included and distribution made according to STANAG 2033 (see Appendix A).

#### INTERROGATION WITH AN INTERPRETER

Interrogating through an interpreter is more time consuming because the interpreter must repeat everything said by both the interrogator and the source, and the interpreter must be briefed by the interrogator before the interrogation can begin. An interrogation with an interpreter will go through all five phases of the interrogation process. After the interrogation is over, the interrogator will evaluate the interpreter.

#### Methods of Interpretation

During the planning and preparation phase, the interrogator selects a method of interpretation. There are two methods: the simultaneous and the alternate. The interrogator obtains information about his interpreter from the senior interrogator. He analyzes this information and talks to the interpreter before deciding which method to use. With the simultaneous method, the interpreter listens and translates at the same time as the person for whom he is interpreting, usually just a phrase or a few words behind. With the alternate method, the interpreter listens to an entire phrase, sentence, or paragraph. He then translates it during natural pauses in the interrogation. The simultaneous method should only be selected if all of the following criteria are met:

- The sentence structure of the target language is parallel to English.

- The interpreter can understand and speak both English and the target language with ease.

- The interpreter has any required special vocabulary skills for the topics to be covered.

- The interpreter can easily imitate the interrogator's tone of voice and attitude for the approaches selected.

- Neither the interrogator nor the interpreter tends to get confused when using the simultaneous method of interpretation.

- If any of the criteria listed above cannot be met, the interrogator must use the alternate method. The alternate method should also be used whenever a high degree of precision is required.

#### Interpreter Briefing

Once the interrogator has chosen a method of interpretation, he must brief his interpreter. This briefing must cover the:

- Current tactical situation

- Background information obtained on the source

- Specific interrogation objectives

Method of interpretation to be used

Conduct of the interrogator in that statements made by the interpreter and the source should be interpreted in the first person, using the same content, tone of voice, inflection, and intent. The interpreter must not inject any of his own personality, ideas, or questions into the interrogation.

Selected approach techniques and how they are to be applied

Conduct of interrogation in that the interpreter should inform the interrogator if there are any inconsistencies in the language used by the source. The interrogator will use this information in his assessment of the source. One example is a source who claims to be an officer but who uses excessive slang and profanity.

Physical arrangements of the interrogation site. The best layout is to have the interrogator and the source facing each other with the interpreter behind the source. This enhances the interrogator's control by allowing him to simultaneously observe the source and the interpreter.

Need for the interpreter to assist with report preparation

Throughout the briefing, the interrogator must answer all questions that the interpreter may have as fully and clearly as possible. This helps ensure that the interpreter completely understands his role in the interrogation.

Conduct the Interrogation

During the interrogation, the interrogator corrects the interpreter if he violates any of the standards or which he was briefed. For example, if the interpreter injects his own ideas into the interrogation, he must be corrected. Corrections should be made in a low-key manner. At no time should the interrogator rebuke his interpreter sternly or loudly while they are with the source. The interrogator should never argue with the interpreter in the presence of the source. If a major correction must be made, and only when it is necessary, the interrogator and interpreter should leave the interrogation site temporarily.

When initial contact is made with the source, the interpreter must instruct him to maintain eye contact with the interrogator. Since both rapport and control must be established, the interpreter's ability to closely imitate the attitude, behavior, and tone of voice used by both the interrogator and the source is especially important. The questioning phase is conducted in the same way that it would be if no interpreter was used.

During the termination phase, the interpreter's ability to closely imitate the interrogator and the source is again very important. The approaches used are reinforced here, and the necessary sincerity and conviction must be conveyed to the source.

The interpreter assists the interrogator in preparing reports. He may be able to fill in gaps and unclear areas in the interrogator's notes. He may also assist in transliterating, translating, and explaining foreign terms.

Following the submission of all reports, the interrogator evaluates the performance of his interpreter. The evaluation must cover the same points of information that the interrogator receives from the senior interrogator. The interrogator submits the results of his evaluation to the senior interrogator. The senior interrogator uses this evaluation to update the information he has about the interpreter. This evaluation may also be used in developing training programs for interpreters.

## Chapter 4

### Processing Captured Enemy Documents

The information contained in CEDs can prove to be of intelligence value to commanders at all levels. CEDs are important because they can provide information directly from the enemy. Only on rare occasions will a single document or group of documents provide vitally important information. Usually, each document provides a small bit of a larger body of information. Each CED, much like a single piece of a puzzle, contributes to the whole. In addition to their tactical intelligence value, technical data and political indicators can be extracted from CEDs that are important to strategic and national-level agencies. CEDs can also be helpful in exploiting sources.

STANAG 2084 defines a document as any piece of recorded information, regardless of form, obtained from the enemy and that subsequently comes into the hands of a friendly force. CEDs can be US or allied documents that were once in the hands of the enemy. Types of CEDs are typed, handwritten, printed, painted, engraved or drawn materials, sound or voice recordings, imagery such as videotapes, movies, or photographs, computer storage media including, but not limited to floppy disks, and reproductions of any of the items listed above.

CEDs are mainly acquired two ways. Some are taken from sources. Most documents, however, are captured on the battlefield from former enemy locations and from enemy dead.

Generally, CEDs are of two types: official and personal. Official documents are of government or military origin. Examples of official documents are, but are not limited to, overlays, field orders, maps, codes, field manuals, identification cards, reports, sketches, photographs, log books, maintenance records, shipping and packing slips, war and field diaries, and written communications between commands. Personal documents are of a private or nongovernment origin. Examples of personal documents are letters, personal diaries, newspapers, photographs, books, magazines, union dues payment books, and political party dues payment books.

Interrogators are, from time-to-time, required to handle and translate a wide variety of nonmission-related documents. Some include identity and other documents associated with working and residing in a foreign country.

#### DOCUMENT HANDLING

The accountability phase begins at the time the document is captured. Documents must be clearly tagged. The capturing unit attaches a captured document tag to each document. The capture data is always written on a captured document tag (see the following illustration of a captured document tag). When a captured tag is not available, the same information recorded on any piece of paper is acceptable. Nothing is to be written directly on the CED. The captured document tag should be assigned a sequential number at the first formal exploitation point, showing the nationality of the capturing force by national letters prescribed in STANAG 1059. Furthermore, the capturing unit will report the following information:

- Time the document was captured, recorded as a date-time group (DTG)

- Place the document was captured, including the six- or eight-digit coordinate and a description of the location of capture

- Identity of the source from whom the document was taken, if applicable

- Summary of the circumstances under which the document was found

- Identity of the capturing unit

#### ACCOUNTABILITY

At each echelon, starting with the capturing unit, steps are taken to ensure that CED accountability is maintained during document evacuation. To establish accountability, the responsible element inventories all incoming CEDs. Thorough accountability procedures at each echelon ensure that CEDs are not lost. To record each processing step as it occurs helps correct mistakes in CED

processing Accountability is accomplished by anyone who captures, evacuates, processes, or handles CEDs. All CEDs should have captured document tags, and all captured document tags should be completely filled out. An incoming batch of documents includes a transmittal document (see the illustration 4-2). When a batch is received without a transmittal, the interrogation element contacts the forwarding unit and obtains a list of document serial numbers. The interrogation element records all trace actions in its journal. Accountability includes inventorying the CEDs as they arrive, initiating any necessary trace actions, and maintaining the captured document log. Whenever intelligence derived from a CED is included in a unit or information intelligence reports, the identification letters and number of the document concerned are quoted to avoid false confirmation. All CEDs are shipped with any associated documents.

#### Inventory

An inventory of incoming CEDs is conducted initially by comparing the CED to the captured document tag and to accompanying transmittal documents. This comparison identifies any-

- Transmittals that list missing CEDs
- Document tags not attached to CEDs
- CEDs not attached to document tags
- CEDs not listed on the accompanying transmittal documents

#### Trace Actions

When necessary, the receiving unit initiates a CED trace action. Trace actions are initiated on all missing CEDs, captured document tags, and on all information missing from the captured document tag. Trace actions are initiated by first contacting the element from which the documents were received. This corrective action can be completed swiftly if that unit's captured document log was filled out completely. If necessary, the trace action continues to other elements that have handled the document. If a captured document tag is unavailable from elements that have previously handled the CED, the document examiner fills out a captured document tag for the document using whatever information is available. Attempts to obtain missing CEDs are critical because of the information those CEDs might contain.

#### Log

The captured document log is a record of what an element knows about a CED (see the following illustration of a captured document log). After trace actions are initiated, the CEDs are entered in the captured document log. The captured document log, in general, must contain the entries listed below.

- File number (a sequential number to identify the order of entry)
- DTG the CED was received at this element
- Document serial number of the captured document tag
- Identification number of the transmittal document accompanying the CED
- Full designation of the unit that forwarded the CED
- Name and rank of individual that received the CED
- DTG and place of capture (as listed on the captured document tag)
- Identity of the capturing units (as listed on the captured document tag)
- Document category (after screening)
- Description of the CED (at a minimum the description includes the original language, number of pages, type of document such as map, letter, photograph, and so forth, and the enemy's identification number for the CED, if available)
- Destination and identification number of the outgoing transmittal
- Remarks (other information that can assist the unit in identifying the CED to include processing codes. These are set up by local SOP to denote all actions taken with the document while at the element, including SALUTE reports, translations, reproductions, or return of the CED to the source from whom it was taken)

Accountability for the CED should be established at each echelon once the

actions described above have been accomplished

#### DOCUMENTS REQUIRING SPECIAL HANDLING

##### Technical Documents

A technical document (TECHDOC) is a document that pertains to equipment of any type. A captured TECHDOC should be evacuated with the equipment with which it was captured. If this is not possible, a cover sheet should be attached, with the word "TECHDOC" written in large letters across the top. The capture data is listed the same as other CEDs, and the TECHDOC cover sheet should contain a detailed description of the equipment captured with the document. If possible, photographs of the equipment should be taken, including a measurement guide, and evacuated with the TECHDOC.

##### Communications and Cryptographic Documents

CEDs containing communications or cryptographic information are handled as secret material and are evacuated through secure channels to the technical control and analysis element (TCAE).

#### DOCUMENT EXPLOITATION

As incoming CEDs are accounted for, the exploitation phase for intelligence information begins. Exploitation includes-

- CED screening to determine potential intelligence value

- Extracting pertinent information from the CED

- Reporting the extracted information

CEDs are processed and exploited as soon as possible within the constraints of the unit's mission. The main mission of some units is the exploitation of human sources rather than the translation of CEDs, therefore, manpower constraints may limit the time that can be devoted to translation. However, the translation of CEDs is necessary at any echelon where interrogators and translators are assigned. It is important, therefore, that interrogation elements possess qualified personnel to provide the translation support required. Intelligence units ensure that there is no delay in the exploitation of CEDs. Qualified personnel or document copying facilities should be available to handle CEDs, and personnel should be available to exploit the volume or type of documents concerned. If not, the documents are forwarded immediately to the next higher echelon. Copying availability is determined by the echelon in question, as well as mission and mobility considerations.

#### CED SCREENING

Document exploitation begins when personnel are available for document exploitation operations. CEDs are screened for information of immediate intelligence interest, and as each document is screened, it is assigned one of the four following category designations. The category assigned determines the document's priority for exploitation and evacuation.

##### Document Categories

Category A. Category A documents contain SALUTE-reportable information, are time sensitive, contain significant intelligence information, and may be critical to the successful accomplishment of friendly courses of action. Significant intelligence topics include the enemy's OE, new weapons or equipment on the battlefield, and may contain information that indicates a significant change in the enemy's capabilities or intentions. When a document is identified as category A, the document examiner immediately ceases screening operations and submits a SALUTE report of the critical information from the document. The examiner then resumes screening operations.

Category B. Category B documents contain information pertaining to enemy cryptographic or communications systems. Once a document is identified as category B, it is considered to be classified secret. This is done to limit the number of people having knowledge of either the capture or its contents. A category B document may contain SALUTE reportable information, thereby requiring immediate exploitation.

In every case, category B documents will be transferred through secure channels to the TCAE as soon as possible

Category C Category C documents contain no SALUTE-reportable or timesensitive information but do contain information that is of general intelligence value that does not indicate significant changes in the enemy's capabilities or intentions. A category C document may be of interest or of value to other agencies. When identified as category C, it requires exploitation, regardless of the content.

Category D Category D documents appear to contain only information that is of no intelligence value. Documents are not identified as category D until after a thorough examination by document translation specialists at the highest command interested. This is accomplished at EAC. Category D documents are to be disposed of as directed by the appropriate authority.

#### Special Document Handling

Technical Documents TECHDOCs, containing information associated with specific items of enemy equipment, are given special handling to expedite their exploitation and evacuation. TECHDOCs are handled as category A CEDs until screened by technical intelligence personnel. Generally, TECHDOCs accompany the captured equipment until the intelligence exploitation is completed. TECHDOCs include maintenance handbooks, operational manuals, and drawings.

Air Force-Related Documents Documents of any category that are captured from crashed enemy aircraft, particularly if they are related to enemy antiaircraft defense or enemy air control and reporting systems, are transmitted to the nearest Air Force headquarters without delay.

Maps and Charts of Enemy Forces Captured maps and charts, containing any operational graphics, are evacuated immediately to the supporting all-source analysis center. Captured maps and charts without graphics may be transmitted to the topographical intelligence section attached to corps.

Navy-Related Documents Documents taken from ships (code books, call signs, frequency tables, identification symbols, and so forth) are forwarded without delay to the nearest Navy headquarters.

#### Recording Document Category

The category assigned to each CED is recorded as part of the captured document log entry for that CED. The entry includes a brief description of the CED. This description-

- Identifies the CED by type (sound recording, written material, painting, engraving, imagery, and so forth);

- Identifies the language used in the CED;

- Specifies the physical construction of the CED (typed, printed, handwritten, tape cassette, photographs, film, and so forth);

- Gives some indication of the size (number of pages, rolls of film, cassette, and so forth).

#### Screening at Higher Echelons

CEDs can be recategorized during screening conducted at higher echelons. The information may have become outdated, or the echelon currently exploiting the document may have different intelligence requirements.

#### TRANSLATING

Once a CED has been screened, the document must be exploited. The translator must be able to translate the document. For anyone else to gain benefit from the document translation, it must be clearly and accurately written (typed or handwritten). Also, as part of interrogation duties, the interrogator may have previously translated a document by sight to help gain a source's cooperation.

#### Types of Translations

Full Translation A full translation is one in which the entire document is translated. It is very manpower- and time-intensive, especially for lengthy or technical documents. It is unlikely that many full translations will be performed at corps or below. Even when dealing with category A documents, it may

not be necessary to translate the entire document to gain the information it contains

**Extract Translation** An extract translation is one in which only a portion of the document is translated. For instance, a technical intelligence analyst may decide that a few paragraphs in the middle of a 600-page helicopter maintenance manual merit translation and a full translation of the manual is not necessary. Therefore, he would request an extract translation of the portion of the text in which he has an interest.

**Summary Translation** A translator begins a summary translation by reading the entire document. The translator then summarizes the main points of information instead of rendering a full translation or an extract translation. This type of translation requires that a translator have more analytical abilities. The translator must balance the need for complete exploitation of the document against the time available in combat operations. A summary translation may also be used by translators working in languages in which they have not been formally trained. For instance, a Russian linguist may not be able to accurately deliver a full translation of a Bulgarian language document. However, he can probably render a usable summary of the information it contains.

#### Translation Reports

Except for SALUTE reports, all information resulting from document exploitation activities will be reported in a translation report (see the following illustration for a sample translator report). After all required SALUTE reports have been submitted, the translator will prepare any required translation reports. CEDs that contain information of intelligence value that was not SALUTE reported are the subject of translator reports. Translation reports are prepared on all category C CEDs and include portions of category A, TECHDOCs, and category B CEDs not SALUTE reported.

**Priorities** The priority for the preparation of translation reports is-

- Category A
- TECHDOCs
- Category B
- Category C

**Format** A translation report should contain the following information:

- Destination: The element to which the report will be forwarded.
- Originator: The element which prepared the report.
- Date of preparation.
- Report number as designated by local SOP.
- Document number taken from the captured document tag.
- Document description including number of pages, type of document, and enemy identification number.
- Original language of the CED.
- DTG document was received at the element preparing the report.
- DTG document was captured.
- Place document was captured.
- Circumstances under which the document was captured.
- Identity of capturing unit.
- Rank and full name of the translator.
- Remarks for clarification or explanation including the identification of the portions of the document translated in an extract translation.
- Classification and downgrading instructions, according to AR 380-5.

#### Dissemination and Records

**Recording in Captured Document Log** The translator records each exploitation step taken in the captured document log. Transmitter of SALUTE and translation reports is entered in the element's journal.

**Reports Dissemination and Records** At least two copies are prepared for each SALUTE and translation report. One copy is placed in the interrogation element's

files. The other accompanies the CED when it is evacuated. When the CED cannot be fully exploited, a copy of the CED should be made and retained. The original CED is forwarded through evacuation channels. Even when copies of an unexploited CED cannot be made, the original CED is still forwarded through evacuation channels without delay.

#### EVACUATION PROCEDURES

For friendly forces to benefit from a document to the greatest extent possible, send CEDs to the element most qualified to exploit them as quickly as possible. Information gained from a CED is frequently time sensitive. If a document is not sent to the element most capable of exploiting it, time will be lost. Any time lost in exploiting the document may reduce or even negate the value of the information. The CED evacuation procedures in use at any element must ensure that documents are shipped to their proper destinations in a timely manner.

#### NORMAL EVACUATION

CEDs are normally evacuated from echelon to echelon through the intelligence organizational chain. The capturing unit evacuates the CEDs to the first intelligence section, usually the battalion S2. The battalion evacuates them to brigade, brigade to division, division to corps, and then, to EAC. Depending on the type of documents they may, they be evacuated to the National Center for Document Exploitation. Take care to protect the document from weather, soil, and wear. Interrogators and translators can exploit CEDs at every echelon and will make an attempt to exploit CEDs within their expertise and technical support constraints.

#### DIRECT EVACUATION

Some CEDs are evacuated to different elements based upon the information contained and the type of document concerned. Direct evacuation to an element outside the chain of command takes place at the lowest practical echelon. The previous guidelines, discussed in evacuation procedures, are followed when dealing with documents requiring special handling.

#### EVACUATION PRIORITIES

When transportation assets are limited, CEDs are evacuated according to priority. The priority is the category assigned to the CED. All category A CEDs will be evacuated first, TECHDOCS will be considered category A CEDs until examined by the captured material exploitation center (CMEC), followed in order by categories B, C, and D.

Category B documents are evacuated to the TCAD, which maintains a signals intelligence (SIGINT) and EW data base. Category B documents, pertaining to communications equipment, are duplicated if possible, and the duplicate documents are sent to the CMEC.

CEDs that are not evacuated are held until the next transportation arrives. These remaining CEDs are combined with any other CEDs of the same category that have arrived and have been processed in the meantime. When determining evacuation priorities, interrogators consider all CEDs that are ready for evacuation. Lower priority CEDs, no matter how old, are never evacuated ahead of those with higher priority. A package of documents contains documents of only one category. All unscreened CEDs are handled as category C documents, but they are not packaged with screened category C documents. CEDs in a single package must have the same destination.

#### TRANSMITTAL DOCUMENTS

When CEDs are evacuated from an echelon, a document transmittal is used (see the following illustration for a sample CED transmittal). A separate document transmittal is prepared for each group of CEDs to be evacuated. When second copies of category B CEDs are being sent to a technical intelligence element, a separate document transmittal is required. The transmittal identification number is recorded in the captured document log as part of the entry for each CED. The exact format for a document transmittal is a matter of local SOP, but it should contain the information listed below.



The identity of the element to which the CEDs are to be evacuated  
The identity of the unit forwarding the CEDs  
Whether or not the CEDs in the package have been screened and the screening category (If not screened, NA is circled )  
Whether or not the CEDs in the package have been screened and the screening category (If not screened, NA is circled )  
A list of the document serial numbers of the CEDs in the package

#### COVER SHEETS AND ATTACHED DOCUMENTS

All CEDs being evacuated must be accompanied with the appropriate-  
TECHDOC cover sheet  
SECRET cover sheet on category B documents  
Translation reports and hard-copy SALUTE reports accompanying translated documents  
Translation reports and hard-copy SALUTE reports accompanying translated documents

#### ASSOCIATED DOCUMENTS

The preparations for further CED evacuation begin with verifying the document serial numbers by comparing the entry in the captured document log with the entry on the captured document tag attached to each CED. Once all CEDs are present, copies of all reports derived from the CEDs are assembled. A copy of all SALUTE and translation reports is placed with the CEDs that were the sources of those reports. Whenever possible, all category B CEDs and their captured document tags should be copied.

#### GROUP DOCUMENTS

CEDs are first grouped according to their assigned screening code. Personnel must be careful when sorting the CEDs to ensure that no CED is separated from its associated documents. These large groupings can then be broken down into smaller groups. Each of these smaller groupings consists of CEDs that were-  
Captured by the same unit  
Captured in the same place  
Captured on the same day at the same time  
Received at the interrogation element at the same time

#### H2>DOCUMENTS CAPTURED WITH A SOURCE

The documents captured with a source play a very important role in the interrogation process and can contain reportable information the same as with a CED obtained on the battlefield. During source screening operations, for instance, documents can indicate that a specific source may have information pertaining to the commander's intelligence requirements. The interrogator uses various pieces of information in forming his interrogation plan. Documents captured with the source may provide the key to the approach necessary to gain the source's cooperation.

Guidelines for the disposition of the source's documents and valuables are set by international agreement and discussed in more detail in AR 190-8 and FM 19-40. Additionally, one way the source's trust and continued cooperation can be gained is through fair and equitable handling of his personal possessions. In some instances, such treatment can make it more likely that the source will cooperate during interrogation questioning. Furthermore, fair treatment by the interrogator and the holding area personnel can ease tensions in the confinement facility.

Guidelines for the disposition of the source's documents and valuables are set by international agreement and discussed in more detail in AR 190-8 and FM 19-40. Additionally, one way the source's trust and continued cooperation can be gained is through fair and equitable handling of his personal possessions. In some instances, such treatment can make it more likely that the source will cooperate during interrogation questioning. Furthermore, fair treatment by the interrogator and the holding area personnel can ease tensions in the confinement

facility

#### DISPOSAL OF DOCUMENTS

The disposition of documents captured with a source is normally a function of the military police and other holding area personnel. Because of their language capabilities, the interrogators at the compound will probably be required to provide assistance and guidance. The military police sign for all documents taken from sources, and to ensure proper handling and most expeditious disposition of these documents, the interrogation element should sign for any documents captured with a source. When the interrogation element assumes control of documents, they process them according to established procedures. When documents are captured with a source, the immediate reaction is to take them away from him so that he cannot destroy them. In general, this is good, but there is one major exception. Under no circumstances is a source's identification card to be taken from him.

When documents are taken from a source, it is necessary to ensure the source from whom they were taken can be identified. The easiest way to accomplish this is with the source's captive tag (see standardized captive tag in Appendix D). The bottom portion of the tag is designed to be used for marking equipment or documents. Three possible actions may be taken with documents captured with a source. The documents may be confiscated, impounded, or returned to the source.

**Confiscation**  
Documents confiscated from a source are taken away with no intention of returning them. Official documents, except identification documents, are confiscated and appropriately evacuated. The intelligence value of the document should be weighed against the document's support in the interrogation of the source. Category A documents require exploitation and should be copied. One copy should be translated and exploited separately, and the other copy should be evacuated with the source. If copying facilities are not available, a decision should be made on whether to evacuate the document with the source or evacuate it separately. Category B CEDs should be evacuated to the TCAE for appropriate exploitation. Category C official documents can best be used in the interrogation of the source. Therefore, these CEDs and category D official documents should be evacuated with the source.

#### Impounded

Impounded CEDs are taken away with the intention of returning them at a later time. When a document is impounded, the source must be given a receipt. The receipt must contain a list of the items impounded and the legible name, rank, and unit of the person issuing the receipt. All personal effects, including monies and other valuables, will be safeguarded. An inventory of personal effects that have been impounded will be entered on DA Form 4237-R (Appendix B). Also, DA Form 1132 will be completed and signed by the officer in charge or authorized representative. A copy will be provided the source. Further procedures for the handling of personal effects are provided in AR 190-8.

#### Returned

Returned CEDs are usually personal in nature, taken only for inspection and information of interest, and immediately given back to the source. Personal documents belonging to a source will be returned to the source after examination in accordance with the Geneva Convention. Copies of such papers may be made and forwarded if considered appropriate. An identification document must be returned to the source.

#### RECOGNITION AND EVACUATION OF DOCUMENTS

In a fast-moving tactical situation, it is possible that documents captured with sources will not be handled expeditiously. Final disposition of these documents may not be made until the source is evacuated at least as far as the corps holding area. Some documents captured with a source will aid in the interrogation of the source. Others, particularly category A documents, should be copied and evacuated separately. One copy can then remain with the source to

aid in the interrogation, and the other can be translated and exploited separately. This makes it particularly important for the capturing unit to correctly identify the documents captured with the source. This is more easily done when the interrogation element rather than the military police element signs for the documents captured with sources element rather than the military police element signs for the documents captured with sources.

#### EVACUATION OF SIGNIFICANT DOCUMENTS

For more efficient exploitation of CEDs and sources, documents captured with a source are normally evacuated with the source. A document of great significance may be evacuated ahead of the source, but a reproduction should be made and kept with the source. If reproduction is not possible, the captured document tags should be annotated as to where the document was sent. Significant documents such as category A documents and TECHDOCs, Category B documents, maps, charts, and Air Force- and Navy-related documents are evacuated directly.

#### ACCOUNTABILITY OF DOCUMENTS

The evacuation of documents captured with a source follows the same accountability procedures as with documents found on the battlefield. The capturing unit prepares a captive tag listing details pertaining to the source and the place and circumstances of capture. The bottom portion is used to list documents captured with the source.

Documents captured with a source are subject to the same screening and exploitation procedures as those found on the battlefield. These documents are categorized as category A, B, C, or D. Category A documents have SALUTE reportable information extracted and are copied, if possible. A copy can then be used to aid in the exploitation of the source, and the other copy is sent forward for prompt exploitation and translation. Category B documents should be treated as secret and evacuated to the TCAE. Category C documents are exploited. A category C document may also require copying and evacuation. Official documents should be evacuated through document evacuation channels. If they would aid in the interrogation of a source, personal documents may require similar copying.

## Chapter 5

### Direct and Supervise Interrogation Operations

The direction and supervision of interrogation operations are critical to the successful performance of the interrogation element's mission. Direction and supervision are the responsibility of the senior interrogator. These responsibilities fall into three categories: Advising, coordinating, and directing actual interrogation operations. FM 34-80 provides guidance for brigade and battalion IEW operations, and FM 34-25 provides guidance for corps IEW operations. The supervisory duties discussed in this chapter are-

- Advice and assistance

- Prepare and move to deployment site

- Establish a site for interrogation operations

- Supervise the interrogation process

- Supervise the CED exploitation cycle

- Supervise administrative tasks

#### ADVICE AND ASSISTANCE

The senior interrogator coordinates and provides input to both the parent MI unit's S2 and S3 and the supported echelon's intelligence staff. This includes reviewing source evacuation plans and estimates, as well as advising on the capabilities and limitations of the interrogation element. He must be able to discuss and provide advice on the interrogation element's deployment in order to most effectively support the intelligence collection effort. To accomplish this, the senior interrogator must be familiar with the intelligence annex to the supported echelon's operations order (OPORD). In addition, the senior interrogator must constantly coordinate with the division or corps G2, the interrogation teams, and the intelligence staffs of supported echelons. This is done preferably through liaison visits to these elements. This coordination is critical to ensure that information and information updates are passed to the interrogator teams and, in turn, are passed to OE personnel in an orderly, accurate, and timely manner. This ensures access to important information which may become available between liaison visits.

#### PREPARE AND MOVE TO THE DEPLOYMENT SITE

The intelligence annex of the supported unit's OPORD indicates the exact location of the holding area. Once this is known, the senior interrogator ensures the interrogation team moves to that location. Interrogation elements deploy with little more than their personal weapons and equipment. Assigned vehicles and radios may not be sufficient to move the entire element, especially, when the element is deploying to more than one site. The senior interrogator makes arrangements for transportation and determines when it will be provided. Interrogation elements are not equipped for small unit movements. Unaccompanied deployment is a dangerous procedure and should be avoided. When this cannot be done, the following steps must be considered to minimize danger during movement:

- Confirm the element's exact destination

- Obtain a safe route from the supported command, if this is not possible, then, select the route offering the best protective terrain

- Identify checkpoint locations along the route. If checkpoints are not available, radio contact on a periodic basis should be established with the parent MI unit

- Obtain current call signs, frequencies, and passwords for unit areas that will be crossed during the movement

- Coordinate with all affected units. The safest method for deploying the interrogation element is to have them accompany one or more of the supported echelon's subordinate units as they deploy. This method should be used whenever possible. When it is used, the senior interrogator must determine exactly when the element must arrive at the assembly area, the element's position within the march order, and what call signs, frequencies, and

passwords will be used during the movement  
ESTABLISH A SITE FOR INTERROGATION OPERATIONS

Once the interrogation element has arrived at the designated holding area, the senior interrogator establishes a site for interrogation operations. The senior interrogator coordinates with the military police to ensure that the site is set up to enable operations between the interrogation operations and the holding area. He also contacts the commander responsible for the operational area. This commander authorizes a specific location close to the holding area and within its secure perimeter as the site for interrogation operations. The interrogation element's mission does not include performing its own perimeter security. The senior interrogator also contacts the officer in charge of the holding area and coordinates the following:

**Screening site** A specific site for screening sources must be selected and agreed upon. The site must enable the screener to observe the sources while they are inprocessed and segregated. The site, however, must be shielded from the direct view of, and far enough away from the sources so they cannot see, hear, or overhear screening conversations.

**Medical support** Procedures must be established to verify that any sick or wounded personnel have been treated and released by authorized medical personnel for interrogation.

**Guards** Arrangements must be made for guards to escort each source selected for interrogation. The guard should accompany the source throughout the interrogation process.

**Movement** Routes and procedures for movement must be arranged for transportation of the source from the holding area to the interrogation operations area.

**Evacuation** Evacuation procedures should have been previously established. These procedures should be discussed so that all concerned are familiar with time constraints and procedures of exactly when and who should be evacuated.

**Communications** Arrangements for receiving and transmitting message traffic must be made with the C-E officer. These arrangements must provide for primary and alternate electrical and courier channels.

**Site preparation** An interrogation element must contain as a minimum, an operations and administrative area as well as specific areas to conduct interrogations. If the element will be exploiting CEDs, an area must also be designated for this activity.

The area, for the conduct of individual interrogations, is established in such a way as to ensure that interrogations taking place in one area cannot be heard by personnel in another area. At a minimum, the interrogations area, whether a tent or a building, must have enough space to accommodate the interrogator, source, guard, and an interpreter if needed. Each area should have a table and at least three chairs. A light is required for night operations. Field expedient replacements for this equipment are used as necessary.

#### SUPERVISE THE INTERROGATION PROCESS

The senior interrogator ensures that the interrogation process is started immediately upon receipt of the source. This process is continuous and can become confused if the senior interrogator does not closely supervise the timely and orderly conduct of each step in the process. The three steps in the process are screening, interrogation, and reporting.

#### SCREENING

Screening determines who will be interrogated on a priority basis and in many cases how many times a source will be interrogated. For this reason, the successful accomplishment of the intelligence collection effort depends on qualified screeners. The senior interrogator designates his most qualified interrogators as screeners. He should not assign himself to screening operations. This cannot always be avoided, however, but must be kept to a minimum. He is required to supervise all steps of the interrogation process.

## INTERROGATION

The senior interrogator ensures that sources are assigned for interrogation according to the screening results. This method of assigning assures that the highest probability of obtaining the maximum amount of pertinent information within the time available is chosen.

The senior interrogator, then, assigns his subordinates to interrogate screened sources. He does this by comparing information gained during the screening process to the abilities (linguistic skills, technical expertise, and special knowledge) of his subordinate interrogators. He then selects the interrogator best suited to conduct the interrogation of a particular source.

At times, a situation will occur in which none of the available interrogators speaks the target language well enough to conduct an interrogation. When this occurs the senior interrogator coordinates with S1/G1 for procurement of native interpreters. The senior interrogator maintains a list of available interpreters. He compares this list with the qualifications of his subordinate interrogators and the information listed on the screening report. Based on this comparison, the senior interrogator can then assign the best qualified interpreter and interrogator. Interrogators must monitor interpreters periodically to ensure their performance is according to the standards established by the senior interrogator.

## REPORTING

The senior interrogator ensures that all reports are prepared and submitted in an accurate and timely manner. SALUTE reports must be generated immediately upon identification of information which satisfies an intelligence requirement. Other reports which are generated by an interrogation must be correctly and accurately prepared and submitted upon completion of the interrogation.

The senior interrogator ensures that all reports generated in the interrogation process are transmitted within established time frames. Transmission procedures and time frames should have already been discussed and verified with the site communications officer upon arrival to the holding area.

## SUPERVISE THE CED PROCESSING CYCLE

The senior interrogator ensures that the three steps of CED processing: accountability, exploitation, and evacuation are correctly and rapidly conducted (see Chapter 4).

## SUPERVISE ADMINISTRATIVE TASKS

The senior interrogator ensures that three major functions are accurate and kept updated. These are maintaining the SITMAP, updating the collection mission, and maintaining the Army files.

## SITUATION MAP

He ensures that the SITMAP is kept updated by posting all known enemy units and activities within the supported unit's area of operations, according to the intelligence summary (INTSUM), intelligence report (INTREP), periodic intelligence report (PERINTREP), and other intelligence reports. In addition, he ensures any dispositions obtained through interrogations are posted to the SITMAP as accurately as the information will allow.

## COLLECTION MISSION UPDATE

Through previously discussed liaison visits and established communications, he ensures that all subordinate interrogators are kept abreast of any changes to the collection mission.

## MODERN ARMY BOOKKEEPING SYSTEM

He ensures that files have been established for any documents, reference materials, and blank forms that the interrogation element has in its possession. The same files must be generated for any documents, reference materials, and blank forms that may be acquired or generated during day-to-day interrogation operations. He ensures that these files are established, maintained, and disposed of according to AF 25-400-1.

## Chapter 6

### Operational Environment

Interrogation operations are conducted within the context of the supported unit's day-to-day combat operations. This chapter will describe the interaction of interrogation elements with the echelons they support.

#### COMMAND RELATIONSHIPS

Interrogation assets are not organic to echelons below division except armored cavalry regiments (ACRs) and separate brigades. At every echelon, division and higher, interrogators are assigned to the MI unit supporting that echelon. MI unit commanders are responsible for these assets and should become personally involved in two key decisions affecting interrogators:

Which collection target, sources, or CEDs will be given command priority.

Where interrogators will be deployed within the area of operations.

#### COLLECTION PRIORITY

As previously noted, interrogators are trained to exploit sources and CEDs. This allows the all-source collection manager three exploitation options for the interrogation assets. They may exploit sources alone, CED alone, or attempt to exploit both simultaneously. In the past it was assumed that interrogators could accomplish the dual collection mission no matter what type of combat operations were being supported. This may no longer be true. Unit manning, coupled with the amount of CEDs and sources, may prevent exploitation of both sources and CEDs simultaneously.

Combat since World War II indicates that the volume of CEDs alone will overwhelm an interrogation element the size of that being projected for a heavy division. A flow of CEDs similar to that encountered in Grenada will supply enough targets to keep a light division's interrogators busy around-the-clock just screening and categorizing the CEDs. Any attempt to conduct deeper exploitation would result in a tremendous evacuation delay and the end of timely reporting.

Experience indicates that a division involved in a high intensity conflict may have to process between 525 and 5,300 sources per week. While these figures are estimates, they demonstrate the inability of a division's own interrogators to simultaneously exploit both sources and CEDs. Divisions may receive additional interrogation assets from corps, depending on their mission. Prior planning must be conducted to establish the availability of these assets, and their deployment within the division.

The density of interrogation assets and command emphasis on the collection effort determines mission requirements. The feasibility of a dual collection mission may also be the result of initial IPE or the commander's intelligence staff. If an echelon cannot conduct a dual collection effort, interrogation of sources has traditionally received the priority for two important reasons:

The greater intelligence potential of a source.

The rate at which people forget detailed information.

An individual's value system is easier to bypass immediately after undergoing a significant traumatic experience. Capture, and the circumstances surrounding it, is significantly traumatic for most sources. Many former Vietnam prisoners of war indicated that a period of extreme disorientation occurred immediately after capture. Capture thrust them into a totally foreign environment over which they had no control. The standards of behavior and conduct which they had previously accepted and lived by were of no use to them during this period. Most of them survived this initial period by clinging to very basic values (love of family and loyalty to friends or comrades). Human beings are very adaptable, however, and this initial vulnerability passes rather quickly. An individual's established values begin to assert themselves again within a day or two. When this happens, much of an individual's susceptibility to interrogation is gone. Memory stores information in two areas. The five senses constantly transmit information to the brain's short-term memory. This data is stored there temporarily and then shifted to the brain's long-term memory. The time at which

this transfer takes place varies widely, but research shows that a great amount of detail is lost during that transfer. Studies conducted on classroom learning indicate that even though students know information stressed in class is important, by the next day most of the information is forgotten. The percentage of information lost beyond recall varies from study to study, but a 70-percent figure is a conservative estimate. Much of the information of value to the interrogator is information that the source is not even aware he has. Although no research data is available in this area, it is reasonable to assume that this type of information will be lost even faster than classroom learning. CEDs, while not affected by memory loss, are often time sensitive and are screened for possible exploitation as quickly as possible. Interrogators were given the CED exploitation mission because of their linguistic ability. This makes printed and typed material readily exploitable, but many handwritten documents are illegible. Information contained in undeveloped imagery and recordings is inaccessible to most interrogation elements. The intelligence value of painted, drawn, or engraved material cannot be exploited by many elements unless it is accomplished by explanatory information in writing. An example of this would be an overlay prepared without map data, registration points, or identifying terrain features. In spite of these limitations, an estimated 90 percent of all the information contained in CEDs can be exploited. The following illustration shows a comparison along a time line of the amounts of information available to the interrogator from the two collection targets. The comparison assumes that the CEDs and the sources initially had the same amount of information, and that it was of equal intelligence value. Bear in mind that the figures used are conservative estimates, and that the time between the two target types might be ever greater between 24 and 72 hours. The percentage of information available from sources drops sharply during the first 24 hours after capture. This represents the rapid loss of what sources would consider to be insignificant details. A slower drop in the percentage begins at 48 hours to represent the resurgence of established value systems. This resurgence makes it harder for interrogators to obtain what information the source still remembers. The supported echelon's intelligence officer determines the guidelines for priority of exploitation. The commander's intelligence needs and the G2's or S2's estimate of the enemy's intentions dictate the extent to which these guidelines can be applied. Exploitation priorities are reviewed and changed when needed.

#### DEPLOYMENT SITES

Interrogation assets are not mobile enough to be quickly shifted in response to new developments. The initial deployment of these assets are guided by the exploitation priority established by the commander. Operations are conducted at an echelon that will allow interrogators the best opportunity to satisfy their assigned collection mission. When making the deployment decision, the following should also be considered:

- Number of interrogators available

- Type and intensity of anticipated combat operations

- Support available at subordinate units

The number of interrogators available limit the number of deployment sites that can be used. MI commanders at corps consider how many interrogators will be available for interrogation operations after augmentation has been provided to subordinate divisions. The number of interrogators also plays a key role in deciding the level of intense or sustained collection operations they can conduct.

Intense collection employs all available interrogators with little or no provision for them to rest. The major disadvantage of intense collection is that these interrogators become exhausted quickly. Interrogations amount to prolonged conversations under extreme stress. Once the available interrogators are



exhausted, collection stops until they recover or additional assets arrive. A severe decrease in interrogation effectiveness can be expected to begin between 12 and 18 hours after the onset of intense collection. Eighteen hours should be considered the maximum period possible for intense collection. This kind of all-out effort can be justified when critical information must be obtained or confirmed quickly to forestall a major disaster. Similar problems can be expected during intense CED exploitation. Sustained operations can be maintained for indefinite periods of time. They also allow the commander some rested interrogators to use on a contingency basis in a different location. The disadvantage of sustained collection is that operations are slower, exploiting fewer sources over a given period of time. The last important factor that should be considered in making deployment decisions is the area in which operations are to be conducted. This area must be capable of providing the support required by the interrogation element. This support includes-

- Priority access to reliable means of secure communications

- Adequate shelter and security

- A flow of CEDs and sources to exploit

#### TASKING RELATIONSHIPS

The MI unit commander retains overall responsibility for the interrogators assigned to his unit. The manner in which these interrogators are tasked depends on how the MI unit is task organized for combat. If interrogators are deployed in general support (GS) of the division, the MI battalion commander tasks them through his S3 and the battalion tactical operations center (TOC). If interrogators are deployed in direct support (DS) of a division's subordinate units, they are tasked by the commander of that unit through his S2. If attached to an IEW company, team tasking is directed through the team commander. The officers responsible for tasking interrogation elements ensure that the following steps are accomplished:

- Collection missions that reflect the capabilities and limitations of interrogators are assigned.

- Interrogation reports are integrated with information provided by other collectors during the IPB process.

- Copies of the INTSUM, INTREP, PERINTREP, daily intelligence summary (DISUM), and supplementary intelligence report (SUPINTREP) are disseminated to the interrogation element as they are published.

- Close contact is maintained with the interrogation element.

#### COLLECTION MISSIONS

Once the IPB process has produced initial results, all identified intelligence gaps are addressed by detailed collection requirements. Any PIR and IR requesting information that interrogators can collect are identified. The PIR and IR are then consolidated into a collection mission and assigned to the interrogation element. The assigned collection mission is tailored according to the capabilities and limitations of interrogators (see Chapter 2). Tailoring collection missions ensures that all intelligence gaps are covered and avoids unnecessary duplication.

Collection missions are tailored and assigned by the collection management and dissemination (CM&D) section subordinate to the G2 at corps and division. The same functions are performed at brigade and battalion by the battlefield information control center (BICC). These elements ensure that the assigned collection mission is passed by secure means through established channels, to the interrogation element. In addition to PIR and IR, the assigned collection mission includes-

- Specific events about which information is required,

- Time frames during which the events must have occurred to be of value.

- The date or which the information will no longer be of value.

- Channels to be used to report the information collected.

Higher, lower, and adjacent units authorized to receive copies of reported information

#### INTELLIGENCE PREPARATION OF THE BATTLEFIELD INTEGRATION

The CM&D section or the BICC must ensure that information reported by the interrogation element is integrated with information collected by other intelligence disciplines during the IPB process. One major value of interrogation operations is that information obtained can cue other collection systems. Mission statements obtained from sources often identify general locations that imagery intelligence (IMINT) or SIGINT collectors can further exploit to produce targeting data.

#### INTELLIGENCE DISSEMINATION

Intelligence is used by interrogators as a source of prepared and control questions (see Chapter 3). The CM&D section or BICC ensures that current copies of the INTSUM, INTREP, PERINTREP, SUPINTREP, DISUM, and any other intelligence reports are provided to the interrogation element. Intelligence is also used to revise and refine the objectives of interrogation operations, to update the element's OB data base, and to keep the element's threat SITMAP current.

#### CONTACT

The CM&D section (through the MI battalion TOC) or the BICC maintains close contact with the interrogation element. This contact allows a two-way flow of communication. The CM&D section or BICC needs the contact to accomplish the collection mission, IPB interrogation, and intelligence dissemination. They also use the contact to revise the interrogation element's collection mission as required. The interrogation element requires the contact to ensure that it receives current guidance, direction, and assistance in solving collection problems.

#### SUPPORT RELATIONSHIPS

Successful interrogation operations require support from a number of elements within their echelon of assignment, including all of the major staff organizations. These elements are collectively responsible for the planning that creates the overall environment for interrogators. The intelligence staff's (G2 or S2) direct contribution to interrogation operations has already been discussed. Its general responsibilities are outlined below, along with those of other staff and support elements.

The G1 and S1 are responsible for supervising the medical support furnished to sources, maintaining a list (by language and proficiency) of qualified linguists within their command, and coordinating with the G5 for procurement and payment of other interpreters and translators needed to perform both intelligence and nonintelligence duties. The G1 and S1 ensure that the echelon's operations plan contains complete provisions for source handling and evacuation. This plan must satisfy the interests of all other staff officers, as well as STANAG 2044 (see Appendix A for an extract). Its provisions must cover the following principles:

- Humane treatment of all sources

- Prompt evacuation from the combat zone

- Opportunities to interrogate sources

- Integration of procedures for the evacuation, control, and administration of sources with other combat support and combat service support (CSS) operations (through the provost marshal)

- Training for all troops on the provisions of international agreements and regulations relating to sources

#### INTELLIGENCE (G2 AND S2)

The G2 and S2 are responsible for supervising appropriate censorship activities relating to sources. They are also responsible for:

- Projecting source capture flows

- Determining the number of interpreters and translators needed to perform intelligence duties

- Controlling the procedures used to process and grant clearances to the

interpreters and translators who need them  
OPERATIONS (G3 AND S3)

The G3 and S3 are responsible for operations, plans, organization, and training. Where military police assets are not available, or not sufficient, they are responsible for obtaining, organizing, and supervising the employment of additional personnel as guards. It is also responsible for

Training of military police and guard personnel

Providing G2 and S2 with details of planned operations

Planning and supervising all PSYOP activities in support of tactical operations

Evaluating, in coordination with the G2 and the G5, enemy PSYOP efforts and the effectiveness of friendly PSYOP on target groups

SUPPLY (G4 AND S4)

The G4 and S4 are responsible for the storage and maintenance of supplies and equipment needed by subordinate units to conduct source handling operations. They are responsible for delivering supplies and equipment to subordinate units as they are needed. They also supervise-

Acquisition of real estate and the construction of source holding area facilities in the communications zone (COMMZ)

Collection and distribution of captured enemy supplies. This is coordinated with the intelligence and operations staffs

Procurement and distribution of rations to source holding areas. Captured enemy rations will be used to the greatest extent possible

Determination of requirements for use of source labor for the logistical support needed in source handling operations

Provide logistical support to interpreter personnel

CIVIL-MILITARY OPERATIONS (G5 AND S5)

The G5 and S5 are responsible for civil affairs (CA). They are also responsible for-

Advising, assisting, and making recommendations that relate to civil-military operations (CMO) and CA aspects of current or proposed operations

Preparing estimates and conducting studies and analyses for CMO activities

Preparing the portions of operations, administrative, and logistics plans and orders concerning CMO activities

Determining the requirements for resources to accomplish the CMO activities of the command, including CA units and personnel

Maintaining a list of native linguists for interpreter support

Coordinating with local US Government representatives and host-nation armed forces for the procurement of native linguists for interpreter support

Recommending command policy concerning obligations between civil and military authorities and policy concerning the population of the area of operations and its works and activities arising from treaties, agreements, international law, and US policy

Providing civil support for tactical and CSF operations and for preventing civilian interference with these operations

Coordinating military support of populace and resource control programs

Providing technical advice and assistance in the reorientation of sources and enemy defectors

Coordinating the MI aspects of CMO activities with the G2 or S2

ADDITIONAL SUPPORT

Besides the major staff elements an interrogator element requires support from several other elements in order to conduct operations. These elements include-

Communications. Secure, reliable communications must be available at or near the interrogator element's deployment site. Priority access to these communications must be arranged to support contact with collection management

Staff judge advocate. This element can provide legal support and advice on the

interpretation and application of international regulations and agreements concerning handling of sources. It is also a channel for reporting known or suspected war crimes.

**Health service support.** This element must clear all sick and wounded sources before they can be interrogated. Seriously sick and wounded sources are evacuated through medical channels. If adequate facilities are not available in EPW hospitals, EPWs are admitted to military or civilian medical facilities where the required treatment can be obtained. Medical inspections are made and the weight of each EPW is recorded at least once a month. Provisions are made for the isolation of communicable cases, for disinfection, and for inoculations. Retained medical personnel and EPWs with medical training are used to the fullest extent in caring for their own sick and wounded. FM 8-2 and FM 8-10 provide guidance for health service support.

**NBC protection.** All EPWs will be provided NBC protection. EPWs should be allowed to use their own NBC protection equipment or if not feasible, the detaining forces will exchange the EPWs' equipment for proper NBC gear. If EPWs do not have their own NBC protection equipment, the detaining forces must provide them with proper NBC gear.

**Chaplain support.** The unit ministry team, chaplain, and chaplain assistant provide for religious support. Coordination is made with the S5 and G5 for religious support for refugees, displaced persons, and indigenous civilians. The unit ministry team provides for services for EPWs or assists by supporting detained clergy of enemy forces, supporting other detained clergy and providing for burial rites (combatants are granted, where possible, the right to be buried according to the rites of their religion). Religious preference of EPWs will be obtained from their detainee personnel record form (see Appendix B).

**Inspector general.** This element is a channel for reporting known or suspected war crimes.

#### INTERROGATOR TRAINING

Commanders and supervisors must take a deep interest in the quality and quantity of training given to the interrogators assigned to their units. Commanders cannot wait for the start of hostilities to begin a comprehensive training program. Interrogators require a high degree of proficiency in several complex skills that are difficult to master. These skills fade rapidly if not practiced. The value and versatility of a commander's interrogator assets can be continually enhanced by a training program within his unit. An individual interrogator's contributions to the unit's overall collection effort are directly dependent on the degree of exposure he has had to-

- Language training that emphasizes continuous improvement in military and technical vocabulary, dialects spoken in the target countries, and slang or idiomatic expressions.

- Area studies of the target countries that emphasize the inhabitants and the economic, social, religious, and political systems which shape the behavior of those inhabitants.

- Principles of human behavior that emphasize the social and cultural characteristics of behavior considered acceptable in the target countries. As often as possible, training in these areas should be integrated with individual and collective training. This gives the unit the best return for the training time expended and gives the individual interrogator the most realistic training possible.

Innovative training methods are devised and implemented in garrison as part of the scheduled training cycle. This training is based on the results of periodic evaluations of individual and collective performance. Army Training and Evaluating Programs are being developed which set the standards for collective performance by interrogation element- of various sizes.

## Chapter 7

### Strategic Debriefing

Strategic debriefing is the art of interviewing an individual in a strategic environment, that is, voluntary sources of information to obtain usable information in response to command and national-level intelligence needs. Strategic intelligence provides support to national-level planners and operational commanders across the entire spectrum of conflict and is especially useful for long-range planning purposes. Strategic intelligence is collected in peacetime as well as wartime and often fills intelligence gaps on extremely sensitive topics or from sensitive areas.

The objective of the strategic debriefing process is to obtain information of the highest degree of credibility to satisfy outstanding intelligence requirements. This avoids surprises of strategic nature and consequences. Strategic debriefing operations will be discussed further in FM 34-5 (S). The types of sources encountered in strategic debriefing are emigres, refugees, resettlers, and selected US sources. While there are other types, these represent the vast majority. Doctrine for strategic debriefing is provided in DIAM 58-13.

### DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

Due to the diverse nature of the various operations using debriefers, both outside the continental United States (CONUS) and within the continental United States (CONUS), specific duties and responsibilities peculiar to a particular operation will be detailed in unit SOPs. However, there are certain duties and responsibilities to debriefers regardless of assignment.

### NOTIFICATION

Proper response to notification of the availability of a source will depend upon unit operations. The debriefer may have to respond spontaneously as in the case of walk-in sources. He may have the luxury of advance notice as in the case of an invitational interview.

### PLANNING AND PREPARATION

Planning and preparation for the strategic debriefer are similar to that process already described in Chapter 3 with the following considerations peculiar to the strategic environment.

Prior intelligence reports pertaining to a particular source may not be readily available and the source's area of knowledgeability, personality traits, and potential intelligence value should be determined by the debriefer.

Pertinent intelligence requirements should be reviewed in an attempt to assess the source's potential to answer them.

Necessary maps, technical reference manuals, etc. plans, photographs, handbooks, and so forth should be assembled and organized in the anticipated sequence of the interview.

An appropriate debriefing site may need to be selected with considerations given to legal agreements with host countries or particular directives within unit SOPs.

### CONTACT AND INTERVIEW

#### APPROACH AND INITIAL CONTACT

In the approach and initial contact, basically the same process is used as described before except that the sources for strategic debriefing are in a different legal status than EPWs.

#### QUESTIONING

The debriefer uses good questioning techniques and rapport and effective follow-up leads to ensure the answering of specific requirements.

#### RECORDING AND REPORTING

Comprehensive and logical note taking is translated into comprehensible, logical, and objective reporting within the parameters of the intelligence report procedures outlined in DIAM 58-13.

#### TERMINATION

An interview is terminated in a manner which enables any debriefer to recontact a source at a later date and resume the debriefing process. The debriefer ensures that the source receives all promised incentives. It is often necessary to provide transportation and lodging for sources. Such considerations demand that the debriefer be familiar with the procedures for use of Intelligence Contingency Fund monies.

#### OPERATIONAL SECURITY

There is an obvious need for OPSEC before, during, and after any debriefing. Source confidentiality and the handling of classified materials demand constant and special attention.

#### LANGUAGE ABILITY

Maintaining a language proficiency is a basic requirement, and improvement of dialects, slang, and technical terminology is a must.

#### LIAISON

A debriefer may have the added responsibility of maintaining local liaison with host-government agencies while OCONUS. Unit SOPs usually dictate the necessary and proper procedures.

#### SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL ENHANCEMENT

The debriefer keeps up with new scientific and technical development of target countries. Intelligence agencies publish numerous reports and summaries which are readily available to the strategic debriefer.

#### COMPONENTS OF STRATEGIC INTELLIGENCE

Information gathered as strategic intelligence may be categorized into eight components. An easy way to remember these components is through the use of the acronym BEST MAPS:

- B--biographic intelligence
- E--economic intelligence
- S--sociological intelligence
- T--transportation and telecommunications intelligence
- M--military geographical intelligence
- A--armed forces intelligence
- P--political intelligence
- S--scientific and technical intelligence

Each of these components can further be divided into a number of subcomponents. These components and subcomponents are not all-encompassing nor mutually exclusive. This approach is merely a means to enhance familiarization with the types of information included in strategic intelligence.

#### BIOGRAPHIC INTELLIGENCE

Biographic intelligence is the study of individuals of actual or potential importance through knowledge of their personalities and backgrounds. This component can be divided into a number of subcomponents:

- Educational and occupational history--including civilian and military backgrounds of individuals
- Individual accomplishment--notable accomplishments of an individual in professional or private life
- Idiosyncrasies and habits--including mannerisms and unusual life styles
- Position, influence and potential--present and future positions of power or influence
- Attitudes and hobbies--significant interests that may affect an individual's accessibility

Such biographic information is reported by preparing a message intelligence report in accordance with the format in DIAM 58-13.

#### ECONOMIC INTELLIGENCE

Economic intelligence studies the economic strengths and weaknesses of a country. Its subcomponents are--

- Economic warfare--information on the diplomatic or financial steps a country

may take to induce neutral countries to cease trading with its enemies  
Economic vulnerabilities-the degree to which a country's military would be hampered by the loss of materials or facilities  
Manufacturing-information on manufacturing processes, facilities, logistics, and so forth

Source of economic capability-ary means a country has to sustain its economy.

#### SOCIOLOGICAL INTELLIGENCE

Sociological intelligence deals with people, customs, behaviors, and institutions. The subcomponents are-

- Population-rates of increase, decrease, or migrations
- Social characteristics-customs, mores, and values
- Manpower-divisions and distribution within the workforce
- Health, education, and welfare
- Public information-information services within the country

#### TRANSPORTATION AND TELECOMMUNICATIONS INTELLIGENCE

Transportation and telecommunications intelligence studies the role of transportation and telecommunications systems during military emergencies and during peacetime. The subcomponents of this topic are too varied and numerous to cover.

#### MILITARY GEOGRAPHIC INTELLIGENCE

Military geographic intelligence studies all geographic factors (physical and cultural).

#### ARMED FORCES INTELLIGENCE

Armed forces intelligence is the integrated study of the ground, sea, and air forces of a country-often referred to as OB. It is concerned with-

- Strategy-military alternatives in terms of position, terrain, economics, politics, and so forth
- Tactics-military deployments and operations doctrine
- OB-location, organization, weapons strengths
- Equipment-analysis of all military materiel
- Logistics-procurement, storage, and distribution
- Training-as carried out at all echelons to support doctrine
- Organization-detailed analysis of command structures
- Manpower-available resources and their conditioning

#### POLITICAL INTELLIGENCE

Political intelligence studies all political aspects which may affect military operations. Its subcomponents are-

- Government structure-organization of departments and ministries
- National policies-government actions and decisions
- Political dynamics-government views and reactions to events
- Propaganda-information and disinformation programs
- Policy and intelligence services- organizations and functions
- Subversion-subversive acts sponsored by the government

#### SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL INTELLIGENCE

Scientific and technical intelligence studies the country's potential and capability to support objectives through development of new processes, equipment, weapons systems and so forth. The subcomponents are-

- Weapons and weapon systems
- Missile and space program
- Nuclear energy and weapons technology
- NBC developments
- Basic applied science
- Research and development systems

#### INTELLIGENCE CYCLE

Equally important to the components of strategic intelligence is an awareness of the strategic intelligence cycle and the debriefer's role within that cycle. The first step is the identification of intelligence gaps. Analysts translate these

gaps into intelligence requirements-the second step. In the third step, the strategic debriefer fulfills those requirements. The fourth step involves preparation of an intelligence report. The fifth and last step is the preparation of an intelligence report evaluation by the originator of the requirement. These evaluations measure the quality of the information as well as the quality of the report writing.



## Chapter 8

### Joint Interrogation Facilities

A conceptual void exists concerning the formation and use of a joint interrogation facility (JIF). This chapter provides general guidance to an EAC interrogation and exploitation (I&E) battalion commander on how to form a JIF (information on the organization of an EAC I&E battalion can be found in FC 34-124). STANAG 2033 provides the authority for the use of a JIF.

Many contingencies exist worldwide under which the use of US forces could become necessary. These procedures are in general terms and allow the I&E battalion commander the latitude necessary to form a JIF under those contingencies.

#### FORMATION

The JIF is not a TOE organization, but it is formed to meet specific requirements. It is task organized using I&E battalion assets. The personnel provided by other services and agencies will depend upon theater requirements. Combined interrogation centers (CICs) are interrogation facilities which are manned by more than one nation and are not addressed. CICs, in the European theater, are established according to STANAG 2033. The operation of a CIC is determined by international agreement.

#### REQUIREMENT

In the constantly changing environment of today's world, our military forces could be called upon to enter into armed conflict in any level of intensity, anywhere on the globe. Unified and specified commands are totally prepared and react as necessary to multilevel threats of combat involvement. An intelligence collection facility is required to provide support to these joint commands.

#### MISSION

The JIF provides support to joint commands for collection, analysis, and reporting of intelligence information. The JIF provides this support through the interrogation of category A sources and exploitation of CEDs based on theater and national level intelligence requirements.

#### ORGANIZATION

The intelligence collection facility is comprised of interrogators, CI personnel, and analysts from the US Army, Air Force, Navy, Marine Corps, and from various other US national agencies as required. They are established under one commander to operate as a JIF in the exploitation of documents and personnel. The JIF is a field activity of the joint command organized to meet theater requirements during crises or contingency deployments.

The organization of a JIF is tailored to meet the specific requirements of crises, contingency deployments, or military assistance operations to host nations. The Army component commander is designated as the executive agent for the establishment, organization, and functioning of the JIF. The EAC MI brigade commander, associated with the theater in question, will exercise command and control of the JIF.

#### RESPONSIBILITIES

The JIF, in meeting the specific requirements of crises, contingency deployment, or military assistance operations to host nations, is responsible for the following functions:

- Develop guidance and operational procedures for the conduct and management of all JIF functions.

- Coordinate with participating agencies and units to develop personnel selection criteria and assignment procedures necessary for partial or complete activation of the JIF.

- Organize, direct, manage, and control resources assigned to or included within the JIF.

- Supervise and direct full or partial activation of the JIF for the conduct of screenings and interrogation of sources, translation and exploitation of CEDs, and debriefing of captured or detained US personnel released or escaped from enemy control.

Coordinate through the Army component with the theater J2 to ensure compatibility of other service components' plans and actions pertinent to the establishment and operation of the JIF

Coordinate through the Army component with the theater J2 the selection of suitable JIF operational sites

Coordinate with the provost marshal for all site operations

Coordinate and satisfy the intelligence collection requirements of theater and service components from available sources

Perform liaison to theater, service components, and other agencies and organizations as deemed appropriate

As directed, provide personnel as replacement, backup, or augmentation for service component interrogation organizations destroyed or depleted

Develop contingency plans for the evacuation of the JIF and the destruction of classified material. Selected sources, documents, and equipment will be evacuated with US forces

#### USE

During crisis, contingency deployments, or military assistance to host nations, components will forward collection requirements to the theater command J2. The J2 serves as the requirements control authority and is responsible for the registration, validation, and establishment of priorities for JIF collection requirements. The J2 exercises staff cognizance over JIF operations. The JIF deploys mobile interrogator teams (MIT) to identify, screen, and interrogate category A sources to satisfy theater collection requirements and support service component interrogation operations. MIT interrogation reports are forwarded to the JIF, theater J2, and service components. In response to these interrogation reports, the theater J2 prioritizes and forwards additional collection requirements for specific sources to the JIF. The JIF directs the MIT to conduct further interrogations or coordinate evacuation of the source to the JIF for further interrogation.

Vital information derived by MIT through interrogation of sources or exploitation of CEDs is reported via secure communications to JIF and theater J2.

Based on collection requirements and MIT screening reports and interrogations, the JIF identifies EPWs for circuit evacuation to the theater camp for JIF exploitation. The JIF prepares and disseminates source knowledgeability briefs (KB) to theater and national-level agencies. The JIF continually reviews the requirement to exploit these selected sources.

MIT assist lower echelon interrogators and intelligence specialists in the examination and categorization of CEDs for evacuation to the JIF. Reports are submitted on all information of intelligence value. Initial reports are submitted electronically wherever possible to ensure that the information reaches the analysts in the least amount of time. Written reports are prepared according to the format contained in Appendix G. Copies of SALUTE and interrogation reports pertaining to specific category A sources accompany them when they are evacuated to the JIF. In situations where time-critical data is involved, secure voice SALUTE reports to the theater J2 may be used to supplement procedures.

Initial MIT reporting includes the interrogator's assessment of the category A source intelligence value. This assessment addresses the category A source's intelligence, experience, cooperation, and reliability. Any areas of special knowledge possessed by the category A source is also identified.

Effective coordination between the JIF and numerous component, theater, and national and host-government assets is necessary to ensure the success of JIF operations.

Theater J2 and service components' intelligence staffs require interface and coordination with the JIF to ensure collection requirements are satisfied accurately and in a timely manner. The success of JIF operations depends in part

upon the screening, interrogation, and debriefing operations of division and corps interrogation and CI elements. The JIF establishes and maintains working relationships with service component HUMINT collection managers and interrogation and document exploitation units at all echelons. Service component members attached to the JIF facilitate this interface.

Interface and coordination with component security and military police elements are required to ensure the timely evacuation and proper safeguarding and exploitation of sources.

The JIF is located in the immediate vicinity of the theater EPW camp. The location of the EPW camp is the responsibility of the military police EPW camp commander. Army component G2s and provost marshal staffs coordinate all EPW planning about location.

Security arrangements for the EPW camp and planning for the segregation and safeguarding of JIF sources are the responsibility of the EPW camp commander. Sources are identified, classified, and segregated according to their status, sex, nationality, languages, and intelligence category. JIF sources are segregated and safeguarded from other sources. Security of the JIF and control over the sources within the JIF are under the direction of the JIF commander. Component security and military police units are responsible for the evacuation, safeguarding, and control of sources. JIF MIT at lower echelons coordinate with these units for access to a source and the source's subsequent evacuation to the JIF.

JIF coordination and interface with theater and service component CI elements are necessary at all times. CI teams located at the JIF and with the MIT facilitate this interface and coordination. The JIF and MIT assist CI elements in the identification and exploitation of all sources of CI interest.

JIF coordination and interface with PSYOP and CA units are facilitated by direct access to members of these units conducting operations in support of military police EPW camps. PSYOP analysis concerning motivational and cultural factors of sources is of direct benefit to JIF operations.

JIF coordination and interface with legal, medical, and chaplain activities and authorities supporting EPW camps are required to ensure compliance with the Geneva Convention concerning the treatment and care of sources.

National agency access and participation in debriefings and interrogations conducted by the JIF are coordinated in advance through the theater J2. National agencies may establish liaison officers at the JIF.

Access to or knowledge of JIF operations and activities by host governments is coordinated through the theater J2.

#### COMMUNICATIONS

To effect required interface and coordination, the JIF requires secure communications with the theater J2, service components, and the MIT. Secure record and voice communications circuits and telephone switchboard trunks are used. Interface and compatibility with service component interrogation and CI team communications are required.

## Chapter 9

### Low-Intensity Conflict

This chapter provides concepts and doctrine concerning interrogation assets in LIC operations. Before discussing the use of interrogation assets in a LIC, we must understand the terminology and the US Army operational concept for LIC.

#### TERMINOLOGY

LIC is a limited politico-military struggle to achieve political, social, economic, military, or psychological objectives. It is often protracted and ranges from diplomatic, economic, and psycho-social pressures through terrorism and insurgency. LIC is generally confined to a geographic area and is often characterized by constraints on the weaponry, tactics, and level of violence. The definitions of mid- and high-intensity conflict limit their use to war between nations. These terms, defined here, will not be further discussed.

Mid-intensity conflict -- war between two or more nations and their respective allies, if any, in which the belligerents employ the most modern technology and all resources in intelligence, mobility, firepower (excluding nuclear, chemical, and biological weapons), command, control, and communications, and service support for limited objectives under definitive policy limitations as to the extent of destructive power that can be employed or the extent of geographic area that might be involved.

High-intensity conflict -- war between two or more nations and their respective allies, if any, in which the belligerents employ the most modern technology and all resources in intelligence, mobility, firepower (including nuclear, chemical, and biological weapons), command, control and communications, and service support.

#### OPERATIONAL CONCEPT FOR LOW-INTENSITY CONFLICT

LIC involves the actual or contemplated use of military capabilities up to, but not including, sustained combat between regular forces. The factors which lead to LIC are complex and in many cases, cannot be resolved by short-term actions. Success in this environment is dependent upon the effective application of all elements of national power and clearly defined goals and objectives. Political objectives establish the limits and constraints for military operations as well as other social, political, and economic programs. The difference between military operations in LIC and the war, as found in mid- or high-intensity levels, lies in the measure of military success. In the latter, military success is measured in terms of winning campaigns and battles. In LIC, however, success will consist of achieving US national objectives without the protracted commitment of US forces in a combat role. It must be noted that, should military intervention be necessary, a premature commitment of US soldiers to combat in a low-intensity situation may result in the loss of strategic initiative. Political, economic, social, and psychological initiatives are necessary to achieve lasting success in the LIC arena. The US Army's mission in LIC can be divided into four general categories: peacekeeping operations, foreign internal defense (FID), peacetime contingency operations, and terrorism counteraction.

Increasing world tension, continuing conflicts, scarce resources, and general distrust have created environments in which a military force may be employed to achieve, restore, or maintain peace. A peacekeeping mission may present situations that are often ambiguous and may require forces to deal with extreme tension and violence in the form of terrorism, sabotage, and minor military conflicts from known and unknown belligerents.

Given the worldwide nature of US national interests, it is vital to US security to maintain not only the capability to employ force, but also the ability to assist in the peaceful resolution of conflicts. US Army participation in peacekeeping operations may be multinational in nature or may be conducted unilaterally.

Multinational peacekeeping operations are military operations conducted for the

purpose of restoring or maintaining peace. They may be undertaken in response to a request for assistance made to either a multinational organization or to the US directly. Historically, the United Nations has been the most frequent sponsor of multinational peacekeeping operations, though regional organizations have acted in a similar fashion to prevent, halt, or contain conflict in their respective regions.

Although unilateral peacekeeping operations are possible, they are inherently sensitive and require tacit international approval. Unilateral peacekeeping operations conducted by the US require clear humanitarian justifications.

The two common missions in peacekeeping operations are cease fire supervision and law and order maintenance.

#### Cease Fire Supervision

Peacekeeping forces can be deployed to observe and report on compliance with diplomatically arranged cease fires. The force will require the capability for rapid deployment to perform its peacekeeping function and must be initially self-sufficient, have self-defense capability, and possess effective internal and external communications. The terms of the cease fire agreement may call for the peacekeeping force to supervise the withdrawals and disengagements of the belligerents, supervise the exchange of prisoners of war, or monitor demobilization.

#### Law and Order Maintenance

Peacekeeping operations also include restoration or maintenance of law and order. Traditional civilian law enforcement functions are generally not performed by US military personnel. However, situations may arise which require limited support to duly authorized law enforcement authorities of a receiving state.

#### FOREIGN INTERNAL DEFENSE

FID encompasses those actions taken by civilian and military agencies of one government in any program taken by another government to preclude or defeat insurgency. Insurgencies cannot be overcome by military measures alone but by military support to national programs.

US Army forces operate in concert with other services, both US and host nation and with other US Government agencies. Operations are conducted in support of plans developed by the host nation and the US Government.

US forces involved in FID must have an appreciation of the culture into which they are employed and should be selected, educated, and prepared to ensure that US involvement and goals are understood and complied with. Language capabilities are important and must be developed to the maximum extent possible. Units should be prepared for the FID mission prior to deployment and arrive in the host country established as an effective, cohesive group, prepared to begin operations immediately.

US Army forces can assume various relationships with the host nation's military forces in FID operations. They can serve as advisors or instructors at all levels. Special forces units are specifically trained for this mission. Combat support of CSS units may augment the host nation's efforts and serve to prepare the battlefield for US combat forces, if required. US forces must assume an unobtrusive support role to maintain credibility of the host government.

The manner in which US combat forces are employed will vary with the situation. Because of their familiarity with local communities and population, it is generally better to use indigenous military assets in more populated areas and to employ US combat assets in remote areas.

When US Army combat troops are required for FID operations, planning for their withdrawal begins at the time of deployment. The withdrawal of Army units depends on the capability of the host nation forces to regain and maintain control.

#### PEACETIME CONTINGENCY OPERATIONS

In certain environments, peacetime contingency operations become necessary when

diplomatic initiatives have been, or are expected to be, ineffective in achieving extremely time-sensitive, high-value objectives. Failure to influence a belligerent nation or activity through diplomatic means may necessitate the use of military forces to protect US national interests, rescue US citizens, or defend US assets.

Intelligence is a particularly critical part of all peacetime contingency operations. The rapid and tightly controlled introduction of US combat forces is a part of contingency operations which requires precision planning. Accurate, detailed, and timely intelligence determines the success or failure of these operations. Time for planning and execution is typically short, and intelligence assets must be able to anticipate requirements and provide comprehensive products on extremely short notice. City plans with complete detail of utilities, personality profiles of local officials, and details of specific ports, airports, roads, and bridges are examples of information which must be made readily available. Intelligence gathering missions into sensitive areas are also conducted as required.

#### TERRORISM COUNTERACTION

Terrorism, employed worldwide, may be sponsored by political or other terrorist groups within a nation, sponsored by an external source, or employed as a tactic of insurgents. It is clearly a dimension of warfare which pays high dividends with minimum risk. Population areas, public transport conveyances, industrial facilities, and individuals are high-probability targets for terrorist activities. Terrorist groups increasingly threaten US interests throughout the world.

Terrorism counteraction consists of those actions taken to counter the terrorist threat. Antiterrorism refers to defensive measures taken to reduce vulnerability to terrorist attack. Counterterrorism refers to offensive measures taken against terrorists. Specially trained US Army forces are the main element used in counterterrorism operations.

Intelligence is essential to implementing effective antiterrorism and counterterrorism measures. Its purpose in terrorism counteraction is to identify and quantify the threat and provide timely threat intelligence. This includes the evaluation of terrorist capabilities, tactics, targets, and the dissemination of this information.

Terrorism counteraction varies according to the type of terrorist organization involved. Autonomous terrorist groups, for example, are vulnerable to intelligence and police-type operations. In a different arena, the actions of state-supported and state-directed groups would certainly be sensitive to measures taken against the supporting states.

#### INTERROGATION SUPPORT TO LOW-INTENSITY CONFLICT

The principles and techniques of interrogation discussed elsewhere in this manual apply with equal validity to interrogations conducted in LIC operations. Specific applications of the general principles and techniques must be varied to meet local peculiarities. However, because of these peculiarities of LIC operations, this chapter provides additional guidelines for the conduct of interrogations in support of such operations. Intelligence interrogations play a significant role in ascertaining the development of an insurgency in the latent or initial stage, the intentions, attitudes, capabilities, and limitations of the insurgents, their underground organizations, and their support systems. In addition to the traditional military concepts of intelligence concerning the enemy, terrain, and weather, LIC operations have added a new dimension—the population. The major aim of both the threatened government and the insurgents is to influence the population favorably and win its support.

#### LIMITATIONS TO UNITED STATES ASSISTANCE

US military or civilian participation in intelligence interrogations during LIC operations is generally limited to that permitted by the host government concerned. This limitation places certain restrictions on US military and

civilian personnel engaged in such operations. The degree of participation will, therefore, be determined by combined US and host-country policies. Normally, the interrogator is asked to advise, assist, and train host-country personnel who are members of the armed forces, paramilitary forces, police, and other security agencies (FM 100-20). The interrogator may also provide intelligence interrogation support to committed US or allied forces during LIC operations. This will require effective, close coordination of the combined effort with host-country agencies. In this respect, coordination problems can be avoided by conducting a combined interrogator effort with interrogators of the host country. Further advantages of such a measure are the language capability and the intimate knowledge of the area personalities, customs, ethnic differences and geography possessed by the host country's interrogation personnel.

#### INTERROGATOR SKILLS AND ABILITIES

LIC operations intelligence requirements demand detailed familiarity with the military, political, and front organizations of the insurgent enemy and the environment in which he operates.

The interrogator's familiarity with the areas of operations must include an understanding and appreciation of the insurgency, its objectives, history, successes, and failures. This understanding and appreciation is required not only on a general countrywide basis, but also on an expanded basis within the interrogator's particular area of operation. Therefore, it is essential that the intelligence interrogator fully grasps the importance that the insurgent organization places on the accomplishment of political objectives as opposed to military successes.

One measure of the interrogator's effectiveness is his ability to apply the appropriate interrogator techniques to the personality of the source. Interrogations associated with LIC operations dictate the need for skill in the full range of interrogator techniques so that the interrogator can conduct the many types of interrogations demanded.

#### ADVISOR AND INTERROGATOR RELATIONSHIPS

In some instances, US Army interrogators are assigned to a host country to assist in developing interrogator capabilities of host-country forces. FM 100-20 contains detailed information on advisor duties, techniques, and procedures. However, the operations and relationship of the advisor to host-country interrogators require special mention and are discussed below.

##### Advisor Qualifications

The advisor must be a qualified, experienced interrogator with an extensive intelligence background. He requires area orientation and must have language ability, and a personality favorable for working with indigenous peoples. The following are normal functions of an interrogator advisor:

- Establish a working relationship with his counterparts through development of mutual respect and confidence.
- Provide advice for effective collection through interrogation.
- Assist in establishing combined interrogator centers.
- Provide on-the-job training for indigenous interrogators.
- Assist in the establishment of necessary file systems to support interrogation operations.
- Conduct appropriate liaison with all units participating in the combined interrogation center.
- Keep the senior Army intelligence advisor informed of operations and activities within his area.
- Provide the financial support, as authorized, for interrogation operations to his counterpart.
- Conduct appropriate coordination with other US intelligence advisors.

##### Counterpart Relationship

The advisor's accomplishments depend upon the relationship established with his counterpart. This relationship is influenced by the personalities of each.

Ideally, this relationship should develop as the counterpart's knowledge of the area combines with the professional knowledge of the advisor. Before he provides advice to his counterpart, the advisor should observe the operation of the unit and become familiar with the area and the local situation. For convenience, his office should be adjacent to that of his counterpart. However, the advisor should not interfere with the routine administrative duties that must be accomplished by his counterpart.

Above all, the advisor must remember that his is an advisory role and not that of a supervisor or commander. He advises the counterpart rather than individuals within the unit. This is important, for advising individuals could result in advice which would be contrary to the orders of the counterpart. In reality, advice is totally accepted only when the counterpart is convinced that the advice is sound and appropriate of the situation.

In cases where the advisor may observe brutal methods in handling and interrogating captives and other detainees, he must not participate in these acts and, further, should remove himself and any other US personnel for whom he is responsible from the scene. Local theater policies and directives normally assign other specified actions for the advisor in a situation of this sort. Such policies and directives may include advising the counterpart of the undesirability of such action and the reporting of the incident through US channels. The advisor must comply with any such theater (or other command) policies and directives.

#### Advisor Operations

The advisor must emphasize that development of a combined interrogation effort is of the utmost importance to successful operations. This combined capability is achieved by uniting the interrogation resources of all intelligence forces (except tactical) within a specific geographic area of responsibility (that is, national, province, district). Most likely, the advisor will find that in many host countries, interrogation responsibilities will be assigned as follows:

- Civilian police-suspects and insurgent political cadre

- Military interrogators-captured military insurgents and those military insurgents who have rallied to the legally constituted government

- Indigenous military counterintelligence-insurgent infiltrators and deserters from host-country forces

The advisor must stress the integration of all interrogator resources to achieve economy of force and unity of effort. Often this task will be complicated by personalities of the host country military, and civilian officials. But if harmonious working relationships are established with the key personalities involved, the advisor can succeed in integrating all available resources. The interrogator (advisor) should establish liaison with US advisors working with host-country tactical forces operating within his area. From these advisors he can be constantly informed of insurgents captured by these tactical forces. The interrogator (advisor) and tactical unit advisor, working together with their respective counterparts, can ensure effective interrogation of these captured insurgents. Further, the advisors can assist in achieving the required coordination between host-country tactical units and area forces to improve handling and exploiting interrogator sources.

#### THE SOURCE

The status of insurgents in LIC operations differs from that of recognized belligerents, the field of interrogation will encompass a wider variety of sources involved in operations.

#### LEGAL STATUS OF INSURGENTS

EPW interrogations are conducted in support of wartime military operations and are governed by the guidelines and limitations provided by the Geneva Conventions and FM 27-10. However, insurgent subversive underground elements who are seeking to overthrow an established government in an insurgency do not hold legal status as belligerents (see DA Pam 27-161-1). Since these subversive



activities are clandestine or covert in nature, individuals operating in this context seek to avoid open involvement with host-government police and military security forces. Hence, any insurgent taken into custody by host-government security forces may not be protected by the Geneva Conventions beyond the basic protections in Article 3. The insurgent will be subject to the internal security laws of the country concerning subversion and lawlessness. Action of US forces, however, will be governed by existing agreements with the host country and by the provisions of Article 3 of the 1949 Geneva Conventions.

#### POPULATION

LIC operations place the population in the position of a prime target. Therefore, the population becomes a principal source of intelligence. The population with which the interrogator will have to deal may be composed of friendly, hostile, or completely indifferent elements. In dealing with these population elements, as well as with the insurgents, the desires of the host country must be considered. There is a need to gain the support of the population to deprive the insurgents of their primary sources of support. Such a need places a burden upon the interrogator to learn more about the people -- their customs and taboos (by ethnic groups, if appropriate), distrust and fear of foreigners, fear of insurgent reprisal, philosophy or outlook on life, and other facets of their political, economic, and social institutions. Since CI elements are tasked with the mission of countersubversion, the primary responsibility of identifying insurgent operations within the population is placed upon CI personnel. Therefore, it is essential that the intelligence interrogator maintain close and continuous coordination with CI personnel to ensure complete exploitation of the population.

#### INSURGENT VULNERABILITY TO INTERROGATION

The individual insurgent may lack many of the conventional psychological supports which are helpful in resisting interrogation. Often he is in conflict with his own people, perhaps of the same ethnic group, religion, environment, or even, in some cases, his family. Further, the insurgent has no legal status as an EPW and, therefore, realizes he may be considered a common criminal. The insurgent often expects to receive harsh and brutal treatment after capture. If he does not receive this harsh treatment, the psychological effect may make him amenable to the interrogator. In addition, the shock effect normally induced by capture will further increase his susceptibility to interrogation. Therefore, the individual insurgent may rationalize cooperation with the interrogator as the best course of action for his survival.

Although the insurgent often lacks conventional psychological support, as previously discussed, the interrogator should realize that other support may have been furnished him through intensive political and psychological indoctrination and training to resist interrogation. Indoctrination sessions using such techniques as self and group criticism can give insurgents a strong group identification and fanatical belief in the insurgent cause.

The entire range of insurgent activity is vulnerable to mass interrogation of the populace. Since the insurgent's operations are often contingent on the support of the populace, members of the populace inevitably learn the identities and activities of the insurgent. With large numbers of people knowing him, the insurgent is vulnerable to mass screening and interrogation programs. Success of such programs may be enhanced by the insurgent's previously committed acts of terror, tax collection, and forced recruitment, which will have alienated some members of the population.

#### HANDLING OF INSURGENT CAPTIVES AND SUSPECTS

Insurgency is identified as a condition resulting from a revolt or insurrection against a constituted government which falls short of civil war. It is not usually a conflict of international character and it is not a recognized belligerency. Therefore, insurgent captives are not guaranteed full protection under the articles of the Geneva Conventions relative to the handling of EPWs.

However, Article 3 of the Conventions requires that insurgent captives be humanely treated and forbids violence to life and person -- in particular murder, mutilation, cruel treatment, and torture. It further forbids commitment of outrages upon personal dignity, taking of hostages, passing of sentences, and execution without prior judgment by a regularly constituted court. Humane treatment of insurgent captives should extend far beyond compliance with Article 3, if for no other reason than to render them more susceptible to interrogation. The insurgent is trained to expect brutal treatment upon capture. If, contrary to what he has been led to believe, this mistreatment is not forthcoming, he is apt to become psychologically softened for interrogation. Furthermore, brutality by either capturing troops or friendly interrogators will reduce defections and serve as grist for the insurgent's propaganda mill. Special care must be taken in handling insurgent suspects, for their degree of sympathy with the insurgency usually is not readily apparent. Improper handling of such persons may foster sympathies for the insurgency or induce them to remain passive at a time when the host country requires active support from its citizens.

#### INSURGENT METHODS OF RESISTANCE

Recognizing vulnerability to interrogation, the insurgent counters by taking any of the following actions:

- Keeps his forces ignorant of future operations, unit designations, and true names of leaders.

- Assigns multiple designations to units, frequently changes them, and uses aliases for names of leaders.

- Hires informants to watch and report on the people and commits reprisals against those who provide information to the government.

- Instructs his forces to remain silent upon capture for a given period of time. This lapse in time tends to decrease the value of the information which is ultimately revealed to hostile interrogators.

- Provides plausible cover stories to hide true information.

- Indoctrinates his forces with ideological training.

- Publicizes cases where captives have been killed or mistreated by capturing forces.

- Screens his recruits carefully.

- Uses cellular structure to restrict knowledge of personnel and operations.

#### COMMON CHARACTERISTICS AND KNOWLEDGEABILITY OF SOURCES

The characteristics and knowledge of interrogation sources vary widely, based upon the position, status, and mission of the insurgent within his organization. The interrogator's appraisal of these factors, coupled with his own knowledge of the source and the organization to which he belongs, will assist in quickly evaluating the informational potential of each source. Interrogation sources vary and include the combatant, terrorist, propagandist, courier, political cadre, and intelligence agent. They may be young or old, male or female, educated or illiterate. General characteristics and knowledgeability of the more common types are discussed below.

##### Main and Local Forces

The main force combatant is the best indoctrinated, trained, led, disciplined, and equipped of all insurgent forces. He will know more but may be inclined to reveal less than a local force insurgent or a member of the village militia. When properly interrogated, however, he can be expected to be a fruitful source of information on his unit and its personnel, current and past military operations, supply and base areas, status of training and morale, some information of higher, lower, and adjacent units, routes of infiltration and exfiltration, tactics and general information on his area of operations. In short, he may be likened to the more conventional prisoner of war and will be knowledgeable on topics akin to that type of individual. He will differ, however, in that his knowledge of units other than his own will be far less than

that of the conventional prisoner of war. Generally speaking, the local force insurgent soldier (the second component of the insurgent regular armed forces) will be almost as valuable as a main force soldier for interrogation purposes. His knowledge will depend primarily upon the methods of operation used by the insurgent movement in the employment of its regular armed forces.

#### Militia

Compared to the main and local force insurgent, the local village militia member is often poorly trained, disciplined, and equipped. While he is not likely to be a profitable source of information on regular force units, his native familiarity with the area in which he operates makes him a most valuable source on local terrain, insurgent infrastructure, food and weapons caches, lines of communications and logistics, intelligence operations, and OB information on his own militia unit. When cooperative, he, likewise, can be used to identify local insurgent sympathizers within his area.

#### Political Cadre

This individual is a profitable interrogation source for obtaining information on the composition and operation of the insurgent's political structure. At the lowest level (hamlet and village) he normally wears "two hats," one as the political leader, the other as the commander of the militia. At higher levels the individual is more political in orientation and can provide information on cell members, front organizations, sympathizers, and nets. He is also knowledgeable on the military units within his area, their lines and methods of communications, and future plans and operations of both the political and military organizations.

#### Sympathizer

This individual may be a sympathizer in fact or one of circumstance—that is, through blackmail, terror, or relatives being held hostage. In either event, if skillfully interrogated, the sympathizer can become the most fruitful source of information or one of the greatest and most perplexing questions of insurgency—"How do you tell the difference between friend and foe?" The sympathizer coerced into assisting the insurgent is, of course, the most useful type of individual, but care must be taken to protect him after he has revealed useful information.

#### Defectors

These individuals are perhaps the best source of information available during LIC. They are usually cooperative and easily susceptible to direct approach interrogation techniques. The most important feature of interrogating defectors is the capability to exploit physically the individual who voluntarily agrees to accompany friendly personnel into tactical operations areas. The primary methods of exploiting defectors are to use them as tactical guides and advisors, as informants, as aides in interrogation and document analysis, and as advisors on enemy agent net modus operandi. It should be noted, however, that some of these techniques involve personal danger for the defector, and for that reason, he should be provided appropriate protective equipment. Coercion cannot be used to induce his cooperation. However, when defectors are employed to accomplish objectives, as discussed in FM 34-60, they will be controlled only by qualified CI personnel.

### INTERROGATION OPERATIONS

#### SCREENING TECHNIQUES

The screening of insurgent captives and suspects is the key to productive interrogation by CI personnel. Screening is a twofold operation conducted to identify insurgents or their sympathizers in the population and, of these, to find the most knowledgeable individuals for interrogation. Techniques for accomplishing these functions are varied and depend mainly upon the imagination and ingenuity of screening personnel. For this reason, only the most resourceful interrogators should be selected as screeners. Examples of successful screening aids and techniques are discussed below.

#### Local Leader

The local leader, whether a government official, religious personage, teacher or village elder, is a useful screening assistant. This individual knows the people, their habits and activities. He knows the legitimate resident from the stranger and can often point out insurgents and their sympathizers in his area. However, since the local leader is vulnerable to insurgent terror or reprisals, his overt use in screening may be sometimes limited. When employed in an overt capacity, he will always require protection later. The mere fact that a man is a constituted local leader should never be viewed as prima facie evidence of loyalty to the host-country government. A leader may be secretly or tacitly supporting the insurgency or may, for personal political reasons, discredit political rivals with false accusations.

#### Insurgent Captive

The insurgent captive can be used as a "finger man" in a police-type line-up, an excellent means of mass screening. As the entire population of a community files past, the captive points out those individuals loyal to the insurgency. A police "mug file" is a useful variant of this technique. Here the captive reviews photographs taken from family registries.

#### Agent or Friendly Civilian

The line-up or the "mug file," described above, is most productive when friendly agents and civilians are used as screening assistants. However, care should be taken to hide the identity of these individuals by placing them behind a barrier or covering their faces. An excellent source for employment of this technique is the individual who has close relatives within the government or its military forces.

#### Area Cordon

A good method to screen a community is to cordon off the area and restrict the inhabitants to their homes. All movement thereafter must be strictly controlled and regulated. With this accomplishment, each member of the community is questioned regarding the identities of party members and sympathizers for the same length of time and with the same questions. If the desired information is not obtained after completion of all questioning, the process should begin again and continue until people start to talk. Once information is obtained, the members of the local insurgent infrastructure are apprehended simultaneously and removed from the community for intensive, detailed interrogation.

#### Informant Technique

This technique involves placement of a friendly individual among a group of suspects or captives. The individual acts out the role of an insurgent sympathizer to gain the confidence of the group and to learn the identity of the true insurgents and their leaders.

#### INTERROGATION OF ILLITERATES

The interrogation of illiterate sources requires special questioning techniques. The interrogator is after facts, and eliciting such simple data from illiterates as "size" or "how many" is often difficult. The interrogator must agree on common terminology with his source so that he can communicate and obtain the information he desires. He can use a system of holding up fingers on his hands, marking on a piece of paper, or using matchsticks, pieces of wood, or other materials to determine numerical facts. In determining types of weapons, the interrogator can show actual weapons, photographs, or drawings of weapons from which the source can make a comparison with what he actually saw. Description of colors can be made from pieces of materials or color charts. Direction of movement may be found out by location of the sun, stars, or landmarks familiar to the source. Time can be determined by the position of the sun, locating a traveled route and then computing how rapidly the source walked, or finding out how often he stopped and how many meals he ate. The methods discussed are examples of common terminology or reference points which an interrogator employs. Additionally, knowledge of the specific habits of the populace and of

the area allows the interrogator to select a definite term of reference

## Appendix H

### Approaches

#### DIRECT APPROACH

The direct approach is the questioning of a source without having to use any type of approach. The direct approach is often called no approach at all, but it is the most effective of all the approaches. Statistics tell us that in World War II, it was 85 percent to 9 percent effective. In Vietnam, it was 8 percent to 9 percent effective. The direct approach works best on lower enlisted personnel as they have little or no resistance training and have had minimal security training. Due to its effectiveness, the direct approach is always to be tried first. The direct approach usually achieves the maximum cooperation in the minimum amount of time and enables the interrogator to quickly and completely exploit the source for the information he possesses. The advantages of this technique are its simplicity and the fact that it takes little time. For this reason, it is frequently used at the tactical echelons where time is limited.

#### INCENTIVE APPROACH

The incentive approach is a method of rewarding the source for his cooperation, but it must reinforce positive behavior. This is done by satisfying the source's needs. Granting incentives to an uncooperative source leads him to believe that rewards can be gained whether he cooperates or not. Interrogators may not withhold a source's rights under the Geneva Conventions, but they can withhold a source's privileges. The granting of incentives must not infringe on the Geneva Conventions, but they can be things to which the source is already entitled to. This can be effective only if the source is unaware of his rights or privileges.

Incentives must seem to be logical and possible. An interrogator must not promise anything that cannot be delivered. Interrogators do not make promises, but usually infer them while still sidestepping guarantees. If an interrogator made a promise that he could not keep and he or another interrogator had to talk with the source again, the source would not have any trust and would most probably not cooperate. Instead of promising unequivocally that a source will receive a certain thing, such as political asylum, an interrogator will offer to do what he can to help achieve the source's desired goal, as long as the source cooperates.

The incentive approach can be broken down into the incentive short term (received immediately) and incentive long term (received within a period of time). The determination rests on when the source expects to receive the incentive offered.

#### EMOTIONAL APPROACH

The emotional approach overrides the source's rationale for resisting by using and manipulating his emotions against him. The main emotions of any source at the time of capture might be either love or fear. Love or fear for one person may be exploited or turned into hate for someone else. For example, the person who caused the source to be in the position in which he now finds himself. The source's fear can be built upon, or increased so as to override his rational side. If the situation demands it and the source's fear is so great that he cannot communicate with the interrogator, the interrogator may find that he has to decrease the source's fear in order to effectively collect information from him. There are two variations of the emotional approaches: emotional love, emotional hate.

#### EMOTIONAL LOVE APPROACH

For the emotional love approach to be successful, the interrogator must focus on the anxiety felt by the source about the circumstances in which he finds himself. The interrogator must direct the love the source feels toward the appropriate object: family, homeland, comrades, and so forth. If the interrogator can show the source what the source himself can do to alter or improve his situation, the approach has a chance of success. This approach

usually involves some incentive, such as communication with the source's family, a quicker end to the war to save his comrades' lives, and so forth. A good interrogator will usually orchestrate some futility with an emotional love approach to hasten the source's reaching the breaking point. Sincerity and conviction are extremely important in a successful attempt at an emotional love approach as the interrogator must show genuine concern for the source and for the object to which the interrogator is directing the source's emotion. If the interrogator ascertains that the source has great love for his unit and fellow soldiers, he can effectively exploit the situations by explaining to the source that his providing information may shorten the war or battle in progress, thus saving many of his comrades' lives. But, his refusal to talk may cause their deaths. This places a burden on the source and may motivate him to seek relief through cooperation with the interrogator.

#### EMOTIONAL HATE APPROACH

The emotional hate approach focuses on any genuine hate, or possibly a desire for revenge, the source may feel. The interrogator must correctly pick up on exactly what it is that the source may hate so that the emotion can be exploited to override the source's rational side. The source may have negative feelings about his country's regime, his immediate superiors, officers in general, or his fellow soldiers. This approach is usually most effective on a member of racial or religious minorities who has suffered discrimination in both service and civilian life. If a source feels that he has been treated unfairly in his unit, the interrogator can point out that if the source cooperates and divulges the location of that unit, the unit can be destroyed, thus affording the source an opportunity for revenge. By using a conspiratorial tone of voice, the interrogator can enhance the value of this technique. Phrases, such as "You owe them no loyalty for the way they have treated you," when used appropriately, can expedite the success of this technique.

One word of caution, do not immediately begin to berate a certain facet of the source's background or life until your assessment indicates that the source feels a negative emotion toward it. The emotional hate approach can be much more effectively used by drawing out the source's negative emotions with questions that elicit a thought-provoking response. For example, "Why do you think they allowed you to be captured?" or "Why do you think they left you to die?" Do not berate the source's farces or homeland unless you are certain of his negative emotions. Many sources may have great love for their country, but still may hate the regime in control. The emotional hate approach is most effective with the immature or timid source who may have no opportunity up to this point for revenge, or never had the courage to voice his feelings.

#### INCREASED FEAR UP APPROACH

The increased fear up approach is most effective on the younger and more inexperienced source or on a source who appears nervous or frightened. It is also effective on a source who appears to be the silent, confident type. Sources with something to hide, such as the commission of a war crime, or having surrendered while still having ammunition in his weapon or breaking his military oath are particularly easy to break with this technique. There are two distinct variations of this approach: the fear up (harsh) and the fear up (mild).

#### FEAR UP (HARSH)

In the fear up (harsh) approach, the interrogator behaves in a heavy, overpowering manner with a loud and threatening voice. The interrogator may even feel the need to throw objects across the room to heighten the source's implanted feelings of fear. Great care must be taken when doing this so that any actions taken would not violate the Geneva Conventions. This technique is to convince the source that he does indeed have something to fear and that he has no option but to cooperate. A good interrogator will implant in the source's mind that the interrogator himself is not the object to be feared, but is a

possible way out of the trap. The fear can be directed toward reprisals by international tribunals, the government of the host country, or the source's own forces. Shouting can be very effective in this variation of the fear up approach.

#### FEAR UP (MILD)

The fear up (mild) approach is better suited to the strong, confident type of interrogator as there is generally no need to raise the voice or resort to heavy-handed, table banging violence. It is a more correct form of blackmail when the circumstances indicate that the source does indeed have something to fear. It may be a result of coincidence, the soldier was caught on the wrong side of the border before hostilities actually commenced (he was armed, he could be a terrorist), or a result of his actions (he surrendered contrary to his military oath and is now a traitor to his country, and his own forces will take care of the disciplinary action). The fear up (mild) approach must be a credible distortion of the truth. A distortion that the source will believe. It usually involves some incentive, the interrogator can intimate that he might be willing to alter the circumstances of the source's capture, as long as the source cooperates and answers the questions.

In most cases, shouting is not necessary. The actual fear is increased by helping the source to realize the unpleasant consequences that the facts may cause and then presenting an alternative, which of course can be effected by answering some simple questions. The fear up approach is deadend, and a wise interrogator may want to keep it in reserve as a trump card. After working to increase the source's fear, it would be difficult to convince him that everything will be all right if the approach is not successful.

#### DECREASED FEAR DOWN APPROACH

The decreased fear down approach is used primarily on a source who is already in a state of fear due to the horrible circumstances of his capture, or on a source who is in fear for his life. This technique is really nothing more than calming the source and convincing him that he will be properly and humanely treated, or that for him the war is mercifully over and he need not go into combat again. When used with a soothing, calm tone of voice, this often creates rapport and usually nothing else is needed to get the source to cooperate. While calming the source, it is a good idea to start initially with nonpertinent conversation and to carefully avoid the subject which has caused the source's fear. This works quickly in developing rapport and communication as the source will readily respond to kindness.

When using this approach, it is important that the interrogator meets the source at the source's perspective level and not expect the source to come up to the interrogator's perspective level. If a prisoner is so frightened that he has withdrawn into a shell or regressed back to a less threatening state of mind, the interrogator must break through to him. This may be effected by the interrogator putting himself on the same physical level as the source and may require some physical contact. As the source relaxes somewhat and begins to respond to the interrogator's kindness, the interrogator can then begin asking pertinent questions.

This approach technique may backfire if allowed to go too far. After convincing the source that he has nothing to fear, he may cease to be afraid and may feel secure enough to resist the interrogator's pertinent questions. If this occurs, reverting to a harsher approach technique usually will rapidly bring the desired result to the interrogator.

#### PRIDE AND EGO APPROACH

The pride and ego approach concentrates on tricking the source into revealing pertinent information by using flattery or abuse. It is effective with a source who has displayed weaknesses or feelings of inferiority which can be effectively exploited by the interrogator. There are two techniques in this approach: the pride and ego up approach and the pride and ego down approach.



A problem with the pride and ego approach techniques is that since both variations rely on trickery, the source will eventually realize that he has been tricked and may refuse to cooperate further. If this occurs, the interrogator can easily move into a fear up approach and convince the source that the questions he has already answered have committed him, and it would be useless to resist further. The interrogator can mention that it will be reported to the source's forces that he has cooperated fully with the enemy, and he or his family may suffer possible retribution when this becomes known, and the source has much to fear if he is returned to his forces. This may even offer the interrogator the option to go into a love-of-family approach in that the source must protect his family by preventing his forces from learning of his duplicity or collaboration. Telling the source that you will not report the fact that the prisoner talked or that he was a severe discipline problem is an incentive that may enhance the effectiveness of the approach.

#### PRIDE AND EGO UP APPROACH

The pride and ego up approach is most effective on sources with little or no intelligence or on those who have been looked down upon for a long time. It is very effective on low ranking enlisted personnel and junior grade officers as it allows the source to finally show someone that he does indeed have some brains. The source is constantly flattered into providing certain information in order to gain credit. The interrogator must take care to use a flattering somewhat-ir-awe tone of voice and to speak highly of the source throughout the duration of this approach. This quickly engenders positive feelings on the source's part as he has probably been looking for this type of recognition all his life. The interrogator may blow things out of proportion using items from the source's background and making them seem noteworthy or important. As everyone is eager to hear themselves praised, the source will eventually rise to the occasion and in an attempt to solicit more laudatory comments from the interrogator, reveal pertinent information.

Effective targets for a successful pride and ego up approach are usually the socially accepted reasons for flattery: appearance, good military bearing, and so forth. The interrogator should closely watch the source's demeanor for indications that the approach is getting through to him. Such indications include, but are not limited to, a raising of the head, a look of pride in the eyes, a swelling of the chest, or a stiffening of the back.

#### PRIDE AND EGO DOWN APPROACH

The pride and ego down approach is based on the interrogator attacking the source's sense of personal worth. Any source who shows any real or imagined inferiority or weakness about himself, his loyalty to his organization, or his capture in embarrassing circumstances can be easily broken with this approach technique. The objective is for the interrogator to bounce on the source's sense of pride by attacking his loyalty, intelligence, abilities, leadership qualities, slovenly appearance, or any other perceived weakness. This will usually goad the source into becoming defensive, and he will try to convince the interrogator that he is wrong. In his attempt to redeem his pride, the source will usually involuntarily provide pertinent information in attempting to vindicate himself. The source who is susceptible to this approach is also prone to make excuses and give reasons why he did or did not do a certain thing, often shifting the blame to others. Possible targets for the pride and ego down approach are the source's loyalty, technical competence, leadership abilities, soldierly qualities, or appearance. If the interrogator uses a sarcastic, caustic tone of voice with appropriate expressions of distaste or disgust, the source will readily believe him.

One word of caution, the pride and ego down approach is also a dead end in that, if it is unsuccessful, it is very difficult for the interrogator to recover and move to another approach and reestablish a different type of rapport without losing all credibility.

#### FUTILITY TECHNIQUE APPROACH

The futility approach is used to make the source believe that it is useless to resist and to persuade him to cooperate with the interrogator. The futility approach is most effective when the interrogator can play on doubts that already exist in the source's mind. There are really many different variations of the futility approach. There is the futility of the personal situation you are not finished here until you answer the questions, "futility in that everyone talks sooner or later," futility of the battlefield situation, and futility in the sense that if the source does not mind talking about history, why should he mind talking about his missions, they are also history.

If the source's unit had run out of supplies (ammunition, food, fuel, and so forth), it would be relatively easy to convince him that all of his forces are having the same logistical problems. A soldier who has been ambushed may have doubts as to how he was attacked so suddenly and the interrogator should be able to easily talk him into believing that the NATO forces knew where he was all the time.

The interrogator might describe the source's frightening recollections of seeing death on the battlefield as an everyday occurrence for his forces all up and down the lines. Factual or seemingly factual information must be presented by the interrogator in a persuasive, logical manner and in a matter-of-fact tone of voice.

Making the situation appear hopeless allows the source to rationalize his actions, especially if that action is cooperating with the interrogator. When employing this technique, the interrogator must not only be fortified with factual information, but he should also be aware of, and be able to exploit, the source's psychological, moral, and sociological weaknesses.

Another way of using the futility approach is to blow things out of proportion. If the source's unit was low on, or had exhausted, all food supplies, he can be easily led to believe that all of his forces had run out of food. If the source is hinging on cooperating, it may aid the interrogator's effort if he is told that all the other sources have already cooperated. A source who may want to help save his comrades' lives may need to be convinced that the situation on the battlefield is hopeless, and that they all will die without his assistance. The futility approach is used to paint a bleak picture for the prisoner, but it is not effective in and of itself in gaining the source's cooperation. The futility approach must be orchestrated with other approach techniques.

#### "WE KNOW ALL" APPROACH

The "we know all" approach convinces the source that we already know everything. It is a very successful approach for sources who are naive, in a state of shock, or in a state of fear. The interrogator must organize all available data on the source including background information, knowledge about the source's immediate tactical situation, and all available OB information on the source's unit. Upon initial contact with the source, the interrogator asks questions, pertinent and nonpertinent, from his specially prepared list. When the source hesitates, refuses to answer, provides an incomplete response, or an incorrect response, the interrogator himself supplies the detailed answer. Through the careful use of the limited number of known details, the interrogator must convince the source that all information is already known, therefore, his answers are of no consequence. It is by repeating this procedure that the interrogator convinces the source that resistance is useless as everything is already known. When the source begins to give accurate and complete information to the questions to which the interrogator has the answers, the interrogator begins interjecting questions for which he does not have the answers. After gaining the source's cooperation, the interrogator still tests the extent of that cooperation by periodically using questions for which he has the answers. This is very necessary, if the interrogator does not challenge the source when he is lying, the source will then know that everything is not known, and that he has been

tricked. He may then provide incorrect answers to the interrogator's questions. There are some inherent problems with the use of the "we know all" approach. The interrogator is required to prepare everything in detail which is very time consuming. He must commit much of the information to memory as working from notes may show the limits of the information actually known.

#### ESTABLISH YOUR IDENTITY"APPROACH

The "establish your identity" approach was very effective in Viet Nam with the Viet Cong, and it can be used at tactical echelons. The interrogator must be aware, however, that if used in conjunction with the file and dossier approach, it may exceed the tactical interrogator's preparation resources. In this technique, the interrogator insists that the source has been identified as an infamous criminal wanted by higher authorities on very serious charges, and he has finally been caught posing as someone else. In order to clear himself of these allegations, the source will usually have to supply detailed information on his unit to establish or substantiate his true identity. The interrogator should initially refuse to believe the source and insist that he is the criminal wanted by the ambiguous higher authorities. "This will force the source to give even more detailed information about his unit in order to convince the interrogator that he is indeed who he says he is. This approach works well when combined with the futility or "we know all" approach.

#### REPETITION APPROACH

Repetition is used to induce cooperation from a hostile source. In one variation of this technique the interrogator listens carefully to a source's answer to a question, and then repeats both the question and answer several times. He does this with each succeeding question until the source becomes so thoroughly bored with the procedure that he answers questions fully and candidly to satisfy the interrogator and to gain relief from the monotony of his method of questioning. The repetition technique must be used carefully, as it will generally not work when employed against introverted sources or those having great self-control. In fact, it may provide an opportunity for a source to regain his composure and delay the interrogator. In employing this technique, the use of more than one interrogator or a tape recorder has proven to be effective.

#### FILE AND DOSSIER APPROACH

The file and dossier approach is when the interrogator prepares a dossier containing all available information obtained from records and documents concerning the source or his organization. Careful arrangement of the material within the file may give the illusion that it contains more data than what is actually there. The file may be padded with extra paper, if necessary. Index tabs with titles such as education, employment, criminal record, military service, and others are particularly effective. The interrogator confronts the source with the dossiers at the beginning of the interrogation and explains to him that intelligence has provided a complete record of every significant happening in the source's life, therefore, it would be useless to resist interrogation. The interrogator may read a few selected bits of known data to further impress the source. If the technique is successful, the source will be impressed with the voluminous file, conclude that everything is known, and resign himself to complete cooperation during the interrogation. The success of this technique is largely dependent on the naivete of the source, the volume of data on the subject, and the skill of the interrogator in convincing the source.

#### MUTT AND JEFF"(FRIEND AND FOE" APPROACH

The "Mutt and Jeff" (friend and foe" approach involves a psychological ploy which takes advantage of the natural uncertainty and guilt which a source has as a result of being detained and questioned. Use of this technique necessitates the employment of two experienced interrogators who are convincing actors. Basically, the two interrogators will display opposing personalities and attitudes toward the source. For example, the first interrogator is very formal and displays an unsympathetic attitude toward the source. He might be strict and

order the source to follow all military courtesies during questioning. The goal of the technique is to make the source feel cut off from his friends. At the time the source acts hopeless and alone, the second interrogator appears (having received his cue by a hidden signal or by listening and observing out of view of the source), scolds the first interrogator for his harsh behavior, and orders him from the room. He then apologizes to soothe the source, perhaps offering him coffee and a cigarette. He explains that the actions of the first interrogator were largely the result of an inferior intellect and lack of human sensitivity. The inference is created that the second interrogator and the source have, in common, a high degree of intelligence and an awareness of human sensitivity above and beyond that of the first interrogator. The source is normally inclined to have a feeling of gratitude toward the second interrogator, who continues to show a sympathetic attitude toward the source in an effort to increase the rapport and control the questioning which will follow. Should the source's cooperation begin to fade, the second interrogator can hint that since he is of high rank, having many other duties, he cannot afford to waste time on an uncooperative source. He may broadly infer that the first interrogator might return to continue his questioning. When used against the proper source, this trick will normally gain the source's complete cooperation.

#### RAPID FIRE APPROACH

The rapid fire approach involves a psychological ploy based upon the principles that everyone likes to be heard when he speaks, and it is confusing to be interrupted in midsentence with an unrelated question. This technique may be used by an individual interrogator or simultaneously by two or more interrogators in questioning the same source. In employing this technique the interrogator asks a series of questions in such a manner that the source does not have time to answer a question completely before the next question is asked. This tends to confuse the source, and he is apt to contradict himself, as he has little time to prepare his answers. The interrogator then confronts the source with the inconsistencies, causing further contradictions. In many instances, the source will begin to talk freely in an attempt to explain himself and deny the inconsistencies pointed out by the interrogator. In attempting to explain his answers, the source is likely to reveal more than he intends, thus creating additional leads for further interrogation.

The interrogator must have all his questions prepared before approaching the source, because long pauses between questions allow the source to complete his answers and render this approach ineffective. Besides extensive preparation, this technique requires an experienced, competent interrogator, who has comprehensive knowledge of his case and fluency in the language of the source. This technique is most effective immediately after capture, because of the confused state of the source.

#### SILENCE APPROACH

The silence approach may be successful when employed against either the nervous or the confident-type source. When employing this technique, the interrogator says nothing to the source, but looks him squarely in the eye, preferably with a slight smile on his face. It is important not to look away from the source, but force him to break eye contact first. The source will become nervous, begin to shift around in his chair, cross and recross his legs, and look away. He may ask questions, but the interrogator should not answer until he is ready to break the silence. The source may blurt out questions such as, "Come on now, what do you want with me?" When the interrogator is ready to break the silence, he may do so with some nonchalant question such as, "You planned this operation a long time, didn't you? Was it your idea?" The interrogator must be patient when employing this technique. It may appear for a while that the technique is not succeeding, but it usually will when given a reasonable chance.

## Appendix I

### Interrogation Guides

#### EXAMPLE 1, QUESTION GUIDE FOR SUPPORT OF TACTICAL INTERROGATION

##### RIFLEMEN

Some of the specific topics on which a captured enemy rifleman may be questioned are-

- Identification of source's squad, platoon, company, battalion, regiment, and division

- Organization, strength, weapons, and disposition of squad, platoon, and company

- Number of newly assigned personnel in unit within last 30 days

- Location and strength of men and weapons at strongholds, outposts, and observation posts in the source's immediate area

- Mission of the source immediately before capture as well as mission of source's squad, platoon, company, and higher echelons

- Location and description of defensive installations, such as missile sites, antitank ditches and emplacements, minefields, roadblocks, and barbed wire entanglements in source's area before capture Description of weapons with which these locations are covered

- Names and personality information of small unit commanders known to the source

- Possible identifications of support mortar, artillery, and armored units

- Status of food, ammunition, and other supplies

- Morale of troops

- Casualties

- Defensive and protective items of NBC equipment, status of NBC training and defensive NBC instructions, and offensive capability of NBC operations

- Status of immunizations, new shots, booster shots more frequently than normal

- Stress on care and maintenance of NBC protective equipment

- Issuance of new or different NBC protective equipment

- Morale and esprit de corps of civilians

- Civilian supply

- Health of civilians and availability of medicine

- Night maneuvers, rehearsals unit size, night vision devices, and special equipment

##### MESSENGERS

Messengers are frequently chosen on the basis of above average intelligence and the ability to observe well and remember oral messages and instructions

Messengers, who have an opportunity to travel about within the immediate combat zone, generally, will have a good picture of the current situation and are excellent prospects for tactical interrogation The following topics should be included when questioning a messenger source

- Nature and exact contents of messages he has been carrying over a reasonable period of time, as well as the names of persons who originated these messages, and the names of persons to whom messages were directed Description of duty positions of such personalities

- Information as to the extent to which messengers are used in the applicable enemy unit, routes of messengers, and location of relay posts

- Location of message centers and communication lines

- Condition of roads, bridges and alternate routes

- Location of CPs and the names of commanders and staff officers

- Location of artillery, mortars, and armor seen during messenger's movement through the combat area

- Location of minefields and other defensive installations

- Location of supply and ammunition dumps

- Description of terrain features behind the enemy's front lines

NBC weapons, installations, and units  
Morale and esprit de corps of civilians  
Relocation or movement of civilians  
Civilian supply  
Health of civilians and availability of medicine  
Use of radio equipment in applicable enemy units

#### SQUAD AND PLATOON LEADERS AND COMPANY COMMANDERS

Squad and platoon leaders, as well as company commanders, generally will possess information on a broader level than that discussed up to this point. In addition to the information possessed by the riflemen, they may be able to furnish information on the following subjects:

Plans and mission of their respective units  
Organization of their units as well as their regiment and battalion  
Number of newly assigned personnel in unit within last 30 days  
Disposition of companies, regiments, and reserves of each  
Identifications and general organization of supporting units such as artillery, armor, and engineer units  
Location, strength, and mission of heavy weapons units  
Offensive and defensive tactics of small units  
Quality and morale of subordinate troops  
Doctrine for employment of NBC weapons  
Doctrine for defense against NBC weapons  
Status of NBC defense SOP and current NBC training  
Communications procedures and communications equipment  
Issuance of NBC detector equipment and detector paints or paper  
Morale of civilians  
Relocation or movement of civilians  
Civilian supply  
Health of civilians and availability of medicine  
Instructions on handling and evacuation of US and allied prisoners  
Night maneuvers, rehearsals, unit size, night vision devices, and special equipment

#### RADIO AND TELEPHONE OPERATORS

Radio and telephone operators, like messengers, are frequently familiar with the plans and instructions of their commanders. In general, they can be expected to know the current military situation even more thoroughly because of the greater volume of information which they normally transmit. Topics to be covered when questioning communications personnel are:

Nature and exact contents of messages sent and received during a given tactical situation  
Code names or numbers of specific enemy units, such as those appearing in enemy telephone directories, and in other SOI such as unit identification panel codes  
Major enemy units to your front and their code names  
Units and individuals in radio nets: their call signs, call words, and operating frequencies  
Names and code names of commanders and their staff officers  
Types, numbers, and basic characteristics of radios and telephone equipment used at company, regiment, and division level  
Identification and location of units occupying front line positions  
Location of artillery and mortar positions  
Information on enemy codes and ciphers  
Code names given to operations or to specially designated supply points such as supply points for special weapons  
Names and signals designating various types of alerts

#### DRIVERS

Questions directed by the tactical interrogator to captured drivers should

concern the aspects of the enemy situation which the prisoner would know because of his driving assignments. In dealing with EPW drivers of command and staff vehicles, supply vehicles, and vehicles drawing weapons, the following topics should be examined:

Identification and location of command posts of higher, lower, and supporting units

Names and personal character traits of commanders and staff officers

Plans, instructions, orders, and conversations of commanders and staff officers

Attitudes of commanders and staff officers toward each other, civilians, units under their command, and the general military situation

Routes of communications and their condition

Tactical doctrines of commanders

Command and staff organization

Supply routes and road conditions

Location of supply points and types of military and civilian supplies

Sufficiency or lack of both civilian and military supplies

Types, numbers, and condition of military and civilian supply-carrying vehicles

Location of artillery and mortar positions

Troop movements and troop assembly areas

Location of truck parks and motor pools

Organization of antitank and air defense artillery units, weapons, and strength

Location of antitank and air defense artillery positions

Names of commanders of antitank and air defense artillery units

Mission of antitank and air defense artillery

Types and status of ammunition

Voluntary or forced evacuation or movement of civilians

Morale and health of civilians

#### PATROL LEADERS AND PATROL MEMBERS

The degree of patrol activity on the part of the enemy is often a good indicator of enemy plans. Topics for questioning patrol leaders and members of enemy patrols upon their capture include:

Specific mission of the patrol

Exact routes used and time of departure and return of patrol

Location of enemy forward edge of the battle area, general outpost, combat outpost, and outposts

Location of platoon, company, regiment, or division headquarters

Routes of approach and enemy positions

Enemy strongholds and fields of fire

Machine gun and mortar positions of the enemy

Observation posts and listening posts

Condition of bridges and location of fords

Description of key terrain features

Location and description of defensive positions such as antitank weapons, roadblocks, mines, barbed wire entanglements, gaps in wire and safe lines, trip flares, booby traps, tank traps, and ambushes

Other reconnaissance objectives, agencies, and patrols

Organization and equipment of tactical reconnaissance agencies in regiments and divisions

Passwords and counter signs of patrols and line units

Patrol communication system and range of radios

Names of commanders, staff officers, and particularly of intelligence officers of enemy unit

Coordination of patrol activities with other units such as rifle companies, mortar units, and artillery units

Morale and esprit de corps of civilians  
Morale and esprit de corps of civilians  
Civilian supply  
Health of civilians and availability of medicine

#### MEMBERS OF MACHINE GUN AND MORTAR UNITS

Members of machine gun and mortar units can be expected to know, on the basis of their experience or observation, the following

Location of their own, as well as other, machine gun and mortar positions and projected alternate positions  
Organization, strength, casualties, and weapons of the source's unit  
Targets for machine guns and mortars  
Names of small unit leaders  
Status of weapons crew training  
Disposition of small rifle units squads, and platoons  
Supply of ammunition to include type of ammunition in the basic load or on hand, for example, chemical and biological ammunition  
Location of forward ammunition points  
Characteristics of weapons used  
Food and other supplies  
Morale  
Effect of our own firepower upon their positions  
Availability of nuclear capability  
Number of newly assigned personnel in unit within last 30 days

#### LIAISON OFFICERS

The liaison officer is the commander's agent for accomplishing coordination among the headquarters of lower, adjacent, and higher units. The liaison officer also may be called upon to effect coordination between infantry units and supporting or supported armor and artillery, engineer, and reconnaissance units. Topics to be covered when questioning a captured liaison officer are as follows

Contents of field orders, such as composition of attacking forces, location and direction of attack, missions of individual units, objectives, plans for attack, defense, or withdrawals, and plans for communication and coordination among units  
Location of lower, adjacent, higher and supporting unit CPs as well as location of supply and communications installations  
Locations of observation posts and outposts  
Assembly areas for troops and supplies  
Disposition of regiments, battalions, and companies of a division  
Identification and disposition of reserves  
Status of supplies of all types  
Civilian social and economic conditions  
Evacuation or movement of civilians

#### ARMORED TROOPS

Topics to be covered when questioning captured armored troops are as follows

Unit identifications  
Designation and strength of supporting or supported infantry units  
Types and characteristics of tanks employed  
Mechanical and tactical weaknesses of these tanks  
Means of communications between tanks and between tanks and infantry  
Missions and objectives  
Routes of approach  
Armored units in reserve  
Location of tank parks and assembly areas  
Location of impassable terrain features  
Methods of mortar, artillery, and tank coordination  
Location of tank repair depots and PCL dumps (to include resupply and



refueling techniques)  
Effect of weather on tank operations  
Armored reconnaissance missions  
Number of newly assigned personnel in unit within last 30 days  
Morale and esprit de corps of civilians  
Relocation or movement of civilians  
Civilian supply  
Health of civilians and availability of medicine  
Status of ammunition and POL resupply  
Location of ammunition supply points  
Ammunition supply to include type in the basic load or on hand, for example, chemical ammunition  
Measures for defense against NBC and radiological attack to include type of NBC defensive equipment installed in the tank  
Night maneuvers, rehearsals, unit size, night vision devices, and special equipment

#### ARTILLERYMEN

Topics to be covered when questioning captured artillerymen are as follows  
Forward Observers

Topics for interrogation of forward observers include-

Location, organization, and number of guns of the battery or battalion whose fire the source was observing and directing  
Location of front lines, outposts, and observation posts  
Location of alternate observation posts  
Location and probable time of occupation of present or alternate gun positions  
Deployment of artillery  
Characteristics of guns, including caliber and range  
Targets for the various types of fire during different phases of combat  
Nature of the infantry-artillery communications net  
Type and location of artillery fire requested by infantry units  
Identification of corps or other supporting artillery units  
Plan of attack, defense, or withdrawal of enemy units  
Methods of coordinating artillery fire with infantry maneuver  
Mission and objectives of source's unit as well as of supported units  
Routes of approach and their condition Characteristics of terrain features  
Methods of observing and directing artillery fire, including information such as types of aircraft employed  
Methods of counterbattery fire and methods of protecting enemy positions from counterbattery fire  
Use and location of dummy artillery positions  
Types of artillery ammunition used for various targets, new types of ammunition, and conservation of fires and reasons for conservation  
Location of artillery and infantry unit command posts  
Trafficability of routes appropriate for movement of heavy artillery  
Names of commanders, staff officers and their attitudes toward each other and toward infantry commanders  
Number of newly assigned personnel in unit within last 30 days  
Effect of our artillery upon the enemy units  
Location and numbering of defensive concentrations  
Location of ammunition supply points Radio channels used for fire control nets  
Identification and location of supporting battalions  
Availability of nuclear fire support Morale and esprit de corps of civilians.  
Relocation or movement of civilians Civilian supply Health of civilians and availability of medicine

#### Artillery Firing Battery Personnel

Interrogation of a source from a firing battery should cover the following topics

- Measures of defense against friendly artillery fire
- Counterbattery protection for artillery installations
- Effect of friendly counterbattery fire
- Location of battery ammunition points

- Disposition of local security weapons
- Direction and elevation of fire
- Instructions concerning the use of ammunition
- Names of battery and other commanders
- Detailed description of artillery weapons used
- Status of weapons crew training
- Information on food supplies and morale of military and civilians
- Measures for defense against NBC attack
- Types and amount of ammunition, to include chemical and nuclear ammunition, in the basic load or on hand
- Location of chemical and biological ammunitions
- Location of targets marked for chemical and biological fires

#### Air Defense Artillerymen

Interrogation of a source from an air defense unit should cover the following

- Location and number of air defense weapons
- Detailed description and characteristics of air defense guns and missiles used
- Shape, size, and location of ground radars
- Organization of air defense units
- Types of areas defended
- Nuclear capability
- Methods of attack against friendly aircraft, by type of aircraft
- Avenues of approach and altitudes most and least advantageous to enemy air defense
- Methods of identifying unknown aircraft

#### MEDICAL CORPSMEN

Although medical personnel are entitled to special protective measures under the provisions of international agreements, they can be, and are, interrogated without infringement of any existing laws or rules of warfare. Topics to be covered when interrogating enemy medical personnel are as follows:

- Number of casualties over a given phase of combat operations
- Weapons accounting for most casualties
- Key personnel who have been casualties
- Conditions of health and sanitation in enemy units
- Ratio of dead to wounded
- Commander's tactics in relation to the number of casualties
- Adequacy and efficiency of casualty evacuation
- Weapons most feared by the enemy
- Location and staffing of aid stations and hospitals
- Organization of division, regiment and battalion medical units
- Status and types of medical supplies
- Use and characteristics of newly developed medicine or drugs
- Data on your wounded, sick, or dead in the hands of the enemy
- Skill of enemy medical personnel
- Information on mass sickness or epidemics in the enemy forces
- Types of treatment and medication for NBC casualties
- Supply and availability of materials used in the treatment of NBC casualties
- Special training or treatment of NBC casualties
- New or recent immunizations
- Morale and esprit de corps of civilians

Relocation or movement of civilians  
Civilian supply  
Health of civilians and availability of medicine  
Location and present condition of civilian hospitals, factories producing medical supplies, and warehouses and stores containing medical supplies

#### ENGINEER TROOPS

Topics for questioning of captured engineer troops are as follows

Mission of supported unit  
Exact location and pattern of existing minefields, location of bridges, buildings, airfields, and other installations prepared for demolition, and types of mines or explosives used  
Doctrine pertaining to the use of mines and booby traps to include types of mines, characteristics of firing devices, and minefield patterns  
Location of roadblocks and tank traps and how constructed  
Condition of roads, bridges, and streams or rivers for trafficability of personnel, vehicles, and armor Weight-carrying capacity of bridges and location and description of fords  
Location of engineer materials and equipment such as road material, bridge timber, lumber, steel, explosives, quarries, rock crushers, sawmills, and machine shops  
Location of dummy vehicles and tank and gun positions  
Location of camouflaged positions and installations  
Water supply and locations of water points  
Organization, strength, and weapons of engineer units  
Presence of other than organic engineer units at the front and mission of such units  
Number of organic trucks, tractors, and other engineer vehicles  
Location of new or repaired bridges  
Use of demolitions  
Morale and esprit de corps of civilians  
Relocation or movement of civilians  
Civilian supply  
Health of civilians and availability of medicine  
Location and present condition of civilian power plants, water works, and sewage disposal plants  
Night maneuvers, rehearsals, unit size, night vision devices, and special equipment

#### RECONNAISSANCE TROOPS

Topics for questioning captured reconnaissance troops are as follows

The reconnaissance plan, march order, time schedule, and specific missions of all elements, means of coordination and communication between elements, and the unit headquarters and higher headquarters  
Nature of orders received from higher headquarters  
Identification, organization, composition, strength, means of transportation, and weapons of the unit  
Routes of approach used by the unit  
Identification, composition, organization, strength, and disposition of the main body of troops and reinforcements Routes to be used  
General quality of troops of the reconnaissance unit and of the main body  
Radio communication equipment and frequencies used  
Night maneuvers, rehearsals, unit size, night vision devices, and special equipment

#### LOCAL CIVILIANS

Civilians who have recently left enemy-held areas normally have important information and often give this information readily This information is usually of particular importance to the CA and PSYOP personnel of the unit The following topics should be included when questioning local civilians

- Location of enemy front lines and major defensive positions
- Location of artillery positions
- Location and nature of minefields in enemy rear area
- Description of key terrain
- Condition of roads, bridges, and major buildings
- Enemy policy and attitude toward local civilians
- Human and material resources of the area
- Morale and esprit de corps of local civilians
- Data on important civilian personalities remaining in enemy areas
- Health and medical status of local populace
- Effect of friendly operations on civilian populace
- Instructions to prepare for defensive measures against NBC attack
- Recent immunizations

#### POLITICAL AND PROPAGANDA PERSONNEL

Personnel recently acquired through combat operations and who are identified as being involved with political and PSYOP should be questioned. As a minimum, the following topics should be included:

- Policy, plans, and objectives
- Organization and training
- Current and past activities, to include themes of any propaganda programs
- Enemy analysis of our weaknesses and strengths
- Target audiences for propaganda, including priorities
- Effects of friendly PSYOP
- Analysis of enemy weaknesses and strengths
- Enemy counterpropaganda activities

#### GUERRILLA PERSONNEL

Topics for interrogation of captured guerrilla personnel are as follows:

- Area of activities
- Nature of activities
- Strength
- Equipment
- Motivation
- Leadership
- Reliability
- Contacts
- External direction or support

#### EXAMPLE 2, QUESTION GUIDE FOR NUCLEAR BIOLOGICAL AND CHEMICAL OPERATIONS

Some specific questions for information on NBC operations are as follows:

- What items of NBC protective equipment have been issued to enemy troops? Is there any differentiation in issue of items for particular areas? If so, what items for what areas?
- Are there any new or recent immunizations indicated by sources during interrogations?
- What immunizations have enemy troop units received, as indicated in captured immunization records?
- Are enemy troops equipped with protective masks? Is the individual required to carry the mask on his person? Are there any sectors where the mask is not required equipment for the individual? What accessory equipment is issued with the mask?
- Is protective clothing issued to enemy troops? If so, what type of clothing or articles? If special clothing is used, is it for any particular geographic area?
- Have enemy troop units constructed NBC protective shelters? If so, what type? Are enemy fortifications, individual and collective, provided with overhead cover?
- Are enemy troops issued any protective footwear or other means to provide protection against penetration by liquid agents?

Are enemy tanks or armored vehicles provided with specially installed protective equipment to protect the crew in case of chemical attack?

Are enemy troops issued any type of individual protective items, including antidotes or protective ointment, for first aid?

Are there any areas for which additional or unusual NBC safety precautions have been established?

What is the size and composition of enemy NBC specialist troop units? Where are they located? Why?

Have enemy troops been issued any special precautionary instructions concerning consumption of food and water or handling of livestock in areas that may be overrun by enemy forces?

What training, if any, have enemy troops received in the use of incapacitating-type agents and their dissemination?

What items of chemical detector equipment have been issued to enemy troops? Are the items operated constantly, irregularly, or not at all? Is there any differentiation made regarding their use in certain areas?

What type of radiation-measuring instruments are issued to enemy troop units and what is their range or limit? How are they distributed?

How many hours of training with radiation measuring instruments have enemy monitoring and survey personnel received?

How many hours of NBC training have enemy troops received? How many hours training are devoted individually to chemical, biological, and radiological operations? Have enemy troops received any special or accelerated training as opposed to what is considered routine?

How many hours of NBC training have enemy troops received? How many hours training are devoted individually to chemical, biological, and radiological operations? Have enemy troops received any special or accelerated training as opposed to what is considered routine?

Have sources observed decontamination stations or installations established in enemy areas? If so, what is their location and composition?

Are enemy troop units issued biological sampling kits or devices? If so, what is their type and composition?

Have sources observed any cylinders or containers which might contain bulk chemical agents?

Have sources observed any tactical aircraft equipped with accessory tanks which indicate a spray capability? Are sources aware of location of dumps of chemical-filled ammunition, bombs, clusters and bulk chemical agents?

Do enemy artillery, mortar, or rocket units have chemical ammunition on hand?

At what radiological exposure or dose are troops required to relocate?

Are there any problem areas or shortcomings in NBC material?

The following PIR and IR are applicable for internal defense operations in appropriate theaters of operations?

What types of tunnels and caves and modifications are used in defense against riot control agents and explosive gases?

What defensive material and instructions are issued for defense against riot control agents?

What defensive measures are taken against defoliation and anticrop agents?

## Appendix J

### 1949 Geneva Conventions

1 The United States is a party to the following Geneva Conventions of 1949  
Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of 12 August 1949, cited herein as GWS  
Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick, and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea of 12 August 1949, cited herein as GWS Sea

Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of 12 August 1949, cited herein as GPW

Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War of 12 August 1949, cited herein as GC

2 These treaties will be strictly observed and enforced by United States forces without regard to whether they are legally binding upon this country and its specific relations with any other specified country. Military commanders will be instructed which, if any, of these treaties, or component parts thereof, are not legally binding in a given situation. On 10 August 1965, the US Secretary of State notified the International Committee of the Red Cross that the Geneva Conventions as a whole would apply to the Vietnam conflict. Future armed conflict involving the United States will most likely be subjected to the same laws on a unilateral basis.

3 Those articles of the above-referenced treaties directly applicable to this manual are quoted below. (See FM 27-10 for full explanation of these treaties.)  
GWS, GWS Sea, GPW, GC, Art. 2) SITUATIONS TO WHICH LAW OF WAR ARE APPLICABLE

In addition to the provisions which shall be implemented in peacetime, the present Convention shall apply to all cases of declared war or of any other armed conflict which may arise between two or more of the High Contracting Parties, even if the State of War is not recognized by one of them. The Convention shall also apply to all cases of partial or total occupation of the territory of a High Contracting Party, even if the said occupation meets with no armed resistance. Although one of the Powers in conflict may not be a party to the present Convention, the Powers who are parties thereto shall remain bound by it in their mutual relations. They shall furthermore be bound by the Convention in relation to the said Power, if the latter accepts and applies the provisions thereof.

(GWS, GPW, GWS Sea, GC, Art. 3) INSURGENCY

In the case of armed conflict not of an international character occurring in the territory of one of the High Contracting Parties, each Party to the conflict shall be bound to apply, as a minimum, the following provisions:

Persons taking no active part in the hostilities, including members of armed forces who have laid down their arms and those placed hors de combat by sickness, wounds, detention, or any other cause, shall in all circumstances be treated humanely, without any adverse distinction founded on race, color, religion or faith, sex, birth or wealth, or any other similar criteria.

To this end, the following acts are and shall remain prohibited at any time and in any place whatsoever with respect to the above-mentioned persons: violence to life and person, in particular, murder of all kinds, mutilation, cruel treatment and torture,

taking of hostages,

outrages upon personal dignity, in particular, humiliating and degrading treatment,

the passing of sentences and the carrying out of executions without previous judgment pronounced by a regularly constituted court, affording all the judicial guarantees which are recognized as indispensable by civilized peoples.

The wounded and sick shall be collected and cared for. An impartial humanitarian body, such as the International Committee of the Red Cross, may

offer its services to the Parties to the conflict  
The Parties to the conflict should further endeavour to bring into force, by means of special agreements, all or part of the other provisions of the present Convention

The application of the preceding provisions shall not affect the legal status of the Parties to the conflict

GPW, Art 4) PRISONERS OF WAR DEFINED

A Prisoners of war, in the sense of the present Convention, are persons belonging to one of the following categories, who have fallen into the power of the enemy

Members of the armed forces of a Party to the conflict, as well as members of militias or volunteer corps forming part of such armed forces

Members of other militias and members of other volunteer corps, including those of organized resistance movements, belonging to a Party to the conflict and operating in or outside their own territory, even if this territory is occupied, provided that such militias or volunteer corps, including such organized resistance movements, fulfill the following conditions

that of being commanded by a person responsible for his subordinates,

that of having a fixed distinctive sign recognizable at a distance,

that of carrying arms openly,

that of conducting their operations in accordance with the laws and customs of war

Members of regular armed forces who profess allegiance to a government or an authority not recognized by the Detaining Power

Persons who accompany the armed forces without actually being members thereof, such as civilian members of military aircraft crews, war correspondents, supply contractors, members of labour units or of services responsible for the welfare of the armed forces, provided that they have received authorization from the armed forces which they accompany, who shall provide them for that purpose with an identity card similar to the annexed model

Members of crews, including masters, pilots and apprentices, of the merchant marine and the crews of civil aircraft of the Parties to the conflict, who do not benefit by more favorable treatment under any other provisions of international law

Inhabitants of a nonoccupied territory, who on the approach of the enemy spontaneously take up arms to resist the invading forces, without having had time to form themselves into regular armed units, provided they carry arms openly and respect the laws and customs of war

B The following shall likewise be treated as prisoners of war under the present Convention

Persons belonging, or having belonged, to the armed forces of the occupied country, if the occupying Power considers it necessary by reason of such allegiance to intern them, even though it has originally liberated them while hostilities were going on outside the territory it occupies, in particular where such persons have made an unsuccessful attempt to rejoin the armed forces to which they belong and which are engaged in combat, or where they fail to comply with a summons made to them with a view to internment

The persons belonging to one of the categories enumerated in the present Article, who have been received by neutral or nonbelligerent Powers on their territory and whom these Powers are required to intern under international law, without prejudice to any more favourable treatment which these Powers may choose to give and with the exceptions of Article 8, 10, 15, 30, fifth paragraph, 58-67, 92, 126 and, where diplomatic relations exist between the Parties to the conflict and the neutral or nonbelligerent Power concerned, those Articles concerning the Protecting Power. Where such diplomatic relations exist, the Parties to a conflict on whom these persons depend shall be allowed to perform towards them the functions of a Protecting Power as provided in the present

Convention, without prejudice to the functions which these Parties normally exercise in conformity with diplomatic and consular usage and treaties

C This Article shall in no way affect the status of medical personnel and chaplains as provided for in Article 33 of the present Convention

(GPW, Art 13) HUMANE TREATMENT OF PRISONERS

Prisoners of war must at all times be humanely treated. An unlawful act or omission by the Detaining Power causing death or seriously endangering the health of a prisoner of war in its custody is prohibited, and will be regarded as a serious breach of the present Convention. In particular, no prisoner of war may be subjected to physical mutilation or to medical or scientific experiments of any kind which are not justified by the medical, dental or hospital treatment of the prisoner concerned and carried out in his interest.

Likewise, prisoners of war must at all times be protected, particularly against acts of violence or intimidation and against insults and public curiosity.

Measures of reprisal against prisoners of war are prohibited.

(GPW, Art 17) QUESTIONING OF PRISONERS

Every prisoner of war, when questioned on the subject, is bound to give only his surname, first names and rank, date of birth, and army, regimental, personal or serial number, or failing this, equivalent information.

If he willfully infringes this rule, he may render himself liable to a restriction of the privileges accorded to his rank or status.

Each Party to a conflict is required to furnish the persons under its jurisdiction who are liable to become prisoners of war, with an identity card showing the owner's surname, first names, rank, army, regimental, personal or serial number or equivalent information, and date of birth. The identity card may, furthermore, bear the signature or the fingerprints, or both, of the owner, and may bear, as well, any other information the Party to the conflict may wish to add concerning persons belonging to its armed forces. As far as possible the card shall measure 6.5 x 10 cm and shall be issued in duplicate. The identity card shall be shown by the prisoner of war upon demand, but may in no case be taken away from him.

No physical or mental torture, nor any other form of coercion, may be inflicted on prisoners of war to secure from them information of any kind whatever.

Prisoners of war who refuse to answer may not be threatened, insulted, or exposed to unpleasant or disadvantageous treatment of any kind.

Prisoners of war who, owing to their physical or mental condition, are unable to state their identity, shall be handed over to the medical service. The identity of such prisoners shall be established by all possible means, subject to the provisions of the preceding paragraph.

The questioning of prisoners of war shall be carried out in a language which they understand.

(GC, Art 31) PROHIBITION OF COERCION

No physical or moral coercion shall be exercised against protected persons, in particular to obtain information from them or from third parties.



## Glossary

abn airborne  
ACR armored cavalry regiment  
AF Air Force  
AG Adjutant General  
AKM designation of a type of Soviet rifle  
amph amphibious  
amt amount  
AOE Army of Excellence  
approx approximately  
armd armored  
at antitank  
ATGL antitank grenade launcher  
Aug August  
BEST MAPS  
    B - biographic intelligence  
    E - economic intelligence  
    S - sociological intelligence  
    T - transportation and telecommunications intelligence  
    M - military geographic intelligence  
    A - armed forces intelligence  
    P - political intelligence  
    S - scientific and technical intelligence  
BICC battlefield information control center  
BMP designation of a type of Soviet armored personnel carrier  
br battalion  
C2 command and control  
C3 command, control, and communications  
C3CM command, control, communications countermeasures  
CA civil affairs  
C-E Communicator-Electronics  
CED captured enemy document  
CEE captured enemy equipment  
CEWI combat electronic warfare and intelligence  
CINAFMED Commander in Chief, United States Air Forces, Mediterranean  
CI counterintelligence  
CIC combined interrogator center  
CINCENT Commander in Chief, Allied Forces, Central Europe  
CINCAN Allied Commander in Chief Channel  
CINCNORTH Commander in Chief, Allied Forces, Northern Europe  
CINC SOUTH Commander in Chief, Allied Forces, Southern Europe  
CM&D collection management and dissemination  
CMEC captured material exploitation center  
CMO civil-military operations  
co company  
COMMZ communications zone  
CONUS continental United States  
COSCOM corps support command  
CP command post  
CPR common point of reference  
CSS combat service support  
DCPR destination common point of reference  
decon decontaminator  
det detachment  
DIAM Defense Intelligence Agency Manual  
DISCOM division support command  
DISUM daily intelligence summary

div division  
DOI date of information  
DS direct support  
dsg designated  
DTG date-time group  
E east  
ea each  
EAC echelons above corps  
em enlisted man  
EPW enemy prisoner of war  
evac evacuation  
FID foreign internal defense  
fl fluent  
FM field manual  
FNU first name unknown  
FRG Federal Republic of Germany  
FUD full unit designation  
G1 Assistant Chief of Staff, G1, Personnel  
G2 Assistant Chief of Staff, G2, Intelligence  
G3 Assistant Chief of Staff, G3, Operations  
G4 Assistant Chief of Staff, G4, Logistics  
G5 Assistant Chief of Staff, G5, Civil Affairs  
GDR German Democratic Republic  
GS general support  
H/S hearsay  
HPT high-payoff target  
HD headquarters  
HUMINT human intelligence  
IAW in accordance with  
ID identification  
ICPR initial common point of reference  
i e that is  
I&E interrogation and exploitation  
IEW intelligence and electronic warfare  
IMINT imagery intelligence  
intel intelligence  
intg interrogation  
INTREP intelligence report  
INTSUM intelligence summary  
IPB intelligence preparation of the battlefield  
IPW prisoner of war interrogator  
IR information requirements  
J2 Intelligence Directorate  
JIF joint interrogation facilities  
JrLt junior lieutenant  
JrSgt junior sergeant  
KB knowledgeability briefs  
KIA killed in action  
ldr leader  
LIC low-intensity conflict  
MARSTA martial status  
mbr member  
MHz megahertz  
MI military intelligence  
MIT mobile interrogation teams  
MN/I middle name/initial  
MOSC military occupational specialty code

MR motorized rifle  
MRC motorized rifle battalion  
MRC motorized rifle company  
MRD motorized rifle division  
MRP motorized rifle platoon  
MRR motorized rifle regiment  
MRS motorized rifle squad  
N north/nc  
NATO North Atlantic Treaty Organization  
NBC nuclear, biological, chemical  
no number  
OB order of battle  
OCONUS outside continental United States  
off officer  
OPORD operation order  
OPSEC operations security  
PERINTREP periodic intelligence report  
pers personnel  
FIR priority intelligence requirements  
PKM designation of a type of Soviet weapon  
PKT designation of a type of Soviet weapon  
plt platoon  
PO political officer  
POC point of capture  
POL petroleum, oil, and lubricants  
pos position  
PSYOP psychological operations  
REC radio electronic combat  
recon reconnaissance  
regt regiment  
RPG-7 designation of a type of Soviet antitank grenade launcher  
RSTA reconnaissance, surveillance, and target acquisition  
S south  
S1 Adjutant (US Army)  
S2 Intelligence Officer (US Army)  
S3 Operations and Training Officer (US Army)  
S4 Supply Officer (US Army)  
S5 Civil Affairs Officer (US Army)  
SACEUR Supreme Allied Commander Europe  
SACLANT Supreme Allied Commander Atlantic  
SAEDA Subversion and Espionage Directed Against US Army and Deliberate Security Violations  
SALUTE size, activity, location, unit time, and equipment  
SFC sergeant first class  
SIGINT signals intelligence  
SIF specific information requirements  
SITMAP situation map  
Sol signal operating instructions  
SOP standing operating procedure  
sqd squad  
sqdrn squadron  
SrSgt senior sergeant  
STANAG standardization agreement  
SUPINTREP supplemental intelligence report  
Svc service  
SVD designation of a type of Soviet rifle  
SW southwest

TCAE technical control and analysis element  
TECHDOC technical document  
TOC tactical operations center  
TOE table of organization  
UCMJ Uniform Code of Military Justice  
UIC unit identification code  
UKSSR Ukrainian Soviet Socialist Republic  
U/I unidentified  
unk unknown  
US United States  
USA United States Army  
USACGSC United States Army Command and General Staff College  
USSR Union of Soviet Socialist Republic  
UTM Universal Transverse Mercator (grid)  
W would not answer  
WNA  
Yyes

## References

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication

### Army Regulations

25-400-2 The Modern Army Recordkeeping System

190-8 Army Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, and Detained Persons

380-5 Department of the Army Information Security Program

### Field Manuals (FMs)

19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, and Detained Persons

21-26 Map Reading

27-10 The Law of Land Warfare

34-1 Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations

34-60 Counterintelligence

### Department of Army Pamphlet (DA Pams)

34-60A (S/NOFORN) Counterintelligence Operations (U)

100-2-3 The Soviet Army Troops Organization and Equipment

100-5 Operations

100-20 Low Intensity Conflict

### Department of Army Pamphlets (DA Pams)

27-161-1 International Law Vol 1

### Defense Intelligence Agency Manuals (DIAMs)

58-13 (S) Defense Human Resources Intelligence Collection Procedures (U)

### Miscellaneous Publications

The Hague and Geneva Conventions Uniform Code of Military Justice

### Department of Army Forms (DA Forms)

1132 Prisoners Personal Property List-Personal Deposit Funds

### Command

Command publications cannot be obtained through Armywide resupply channels

Determine availability by contacting the address shown. Field circulars expire three years from the date of publication unless sooner rescinded

### Field Circulars (FCs)

8-2 Medical Intelligence in the Anbar Battle 31 Mar 86 Academy of Health Sciences, US Army, Fort Houston, Texas 78234-1600

34-124 MI Br/Co Interrogation and Exploitation (EAC), Oct 85 United States Army Intelligence Center and School, ATTN ATSI-TD-PAL, Fort Huachuca, Arizona 85613-7000

### Projected Publications

Projected publications are sources of additional information that are scheduled for printing but are not yet available. Upon print, they will be distributed automatically via pinpoint distribution. They may not be obtained from the USAAG Publications Center until indexed in DA Pamphlet 310-1

### Field Manuals

34-5 (S) Human Intelligence Operations (U)

34-25 Corps Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations

### Related Publications

Related publications are sources of additional information. They are not required in order to understand this publication.

### Field Manuals (FMs)

8-10 Health Service Support in Theater of Operations

33-1 Psychological Operations

34-80 Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations

**FM 34-52**  
**8 MAY 1987**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

**JOHN A. WICKHAM, JR.**  
*General, United States Army*  
*Chief of Staff*

Official

**R. L. DILWORTH**  
*Brigadier General, United States Army*  
*The Adjutant General*

**DISTRIBUTION:**

*Active Army, USAF, and ARNG: To be distributed in accordance with DA Form 12-11A, Requirements for Intelligence Interrogation (Qty rqr block no. 278).*

# The Fourth Geneva Convention

(August 12, 1949)

---

UNTS No 973, vol 75, p 287

## CONVENTION (IV) RELATIVE TO THE PROTECTION OF CIVILIAN PERSONS IN TIME OF WAR

Signed at Geneva. 12 August 1949

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

Articles

#### PART I

General Provisions

ANNEX 34

Respect for the Convention	1
Application of the Convention	2
Conflicts not of an international character	3
Definition of protected persons	4
Derogations	5
Beginning and end of application	6
Special agreements	7
Non-renunciation of rights	8
Protecting Powers	9
Activities of the International Committee of the Red Cross	10
Substitutes for Protecting Powers	11
Conciliation procedure	12

## PART II

General Protection of Populations against certain consequences of war	
Field of application of Part II	13
Hospital and safety zones and localities	14
Neutralized zones	15
Wounded and sick	16



I General protection

II Evacuation 17

III Protection of hospitals 18

IV Discontinuance of protection of hospitals 19

V Hospital staff 20

VI Land and sea transport 21

VII Air transport 22

Consignments of medical supplies, food and clothing 23

Measures relating to child welfare 24

Family news 25

Dispersed families 26

### PART III

#### Status and Treatment of Protected Persons

##### Section I Provisions common to the Territories of the Parties to the Conflict and to Occupied Territories

Treatment 27

I General observations

II Danger zones 28

III Responsibilities 29

Applications to Protecting Powers and relief organizations 30

Prohibition of coercion 31

Prohibition of corporal punishment, torture, etc

Individual responsibility, collective penalties

pillage, reprisals 33

Hostages 34

## Section II Aliens in the Territory of a Party to the Conflict

Right to leave the territory 35

Method of repatriation 36

Persons in confinement 37

Non-repatriated persons 38

I General observations

II Means of existence 39

III Employment 40

IV Assigned residence Internment 41

V Grounds for internment or assigned residence

Voluntary internment 42

VI Procedure 43

VII Refugees 44

VIII Transfer to another Power 45

Cancellation of restrictive measures 46

### Section III Occupied Territories

Inviolability of rights 47

Special cases of repatriation 48

Deportations, transfers, evacuations 49

Children 50

Enlistment Labour 51

Protection of workers 52

Prohibited destruction 53

Judges and public officials 54

Food and medical supplies for the population 55

Hygiene and public health 56

Requisition of hospitals 57

Spiritual assistance 58

Relief 59

I Collective relief

II Responsibilities of the Occupying Power 60

III Distribution 61

IV Individual relief 62

National Red Cross and other relief societies 63

Penal legislation 64

I General observations

II Publication 65

III Competent courts 66

IV Applicable provisions 67

V. Penalties. Death penalty 68

VI Deduction from sentence of period spent under arrest 69

VII Offences committed before occupation 70

Penal procedure 71

I General observations

II Right of defence 72

III Right of appeal 73

IV Assistance by the Protecting Power 74

V Death sentence 75

Treatment of detainees 76

Handing over of detainees at the close of occupation 77

Security measures Internment and assigned residence Right of appeal 78

Section IV Regulations for the Treatment of Internees

Chapter I General provisions

Cases of internment and applicable provisions 79

Civil capacity 80

Maintenance 81

Grouping of internees 82

## Chapter II Places of internment

Location of places of internment Marking of camps 83

Separate internment 84

Accommodation, hygiene 85

Premises for religious services 86

Canteens 87

Air raid shelters Protective measures 88

## Chapter III Food and clothing

Food 89

Clothing 90

## Chapter IV Hygiene and medical attention

Medical attention 91

Medical inspections 92

## Chapter V Religious, intellectual and physical activities

Religious duties 93

Recreation, study, sports and games 94

Working conditions 95

Labour detachments 96

## Chapter VI Personal property and financial resources

Valuables and personal effects 97

Financial resources and individual accounts 98

## Chapter VII Administration and discipline

Camp administration Posting of the Convention and of orders 99

General discipline 100

Complaints and petitions 101

Internee committees 102

I Election of members

II Duties 103

III Prerogatives 104

## Chapter VIII Relations with the exterior

Notification of measure taken

Internment card 106

Correspondence 107

Relief shipments 108

I General principles 108

II Collective relief 109

III. Exemption from postal and transport charges 110

Special means of transport 111

Censorship and examination 112

Execution and transmission of legal documents 113

Management of property 114

Facilities for preparation and conduct of cases 115

Visits 116

## Chapter IX Penal and disciplinary sanctions

General provisions Applicable legislation 117

Penalties 118

Disciplinary punishments 119

Escapes 120

Connected offences 121

Investigations Confinement awaiting hearing 122

Competent authorities Procedure 123

Premises for disciplinary punishments 124

Essential safeguards 125

Provisions applicable to judicial proceedings 126

## Chapter X Transfers of internees

Conditions 127

Method 128

## Chapter XI. Deaths

Wills Death certificates 129

Burial Cremation 130

Internees killed or injured in special circumstances 131

## Chapter XII Release, repatriation and accommodation in Neutral Countries

During hostilities or occupation 132

After the close of hostilities 133

Repatriation and return to last place of residence 134

Costs 135

### Section V Information Bureaux and Central Agency

National Bureaux 136

Transmission of information 137

Particulars required 138

Forwarding of personal valuables 139

Central Agency 140

Exemption from charges 141

## PART IV



## Execution of the Convention

### Section I General Provisions

Relief societies and other organizations 142

Supervision 143

Dissemination of the Convention 144

Translations Rules of application 145

Penal sanctions 146

I General observations

II Grave breaches 147

III Responsibilities of the Contracting Parties 148

Enquiry procedure 149

### Section II Final Provisions

Languages 150

Signature 151

Ratification 152

Coming into force 153

Relation with The Hague Conventions 154

Accession 155

Notification of accessions 156

Immediate effect 157

Denunciation 158

Registration with the United Nations 159

Annex I

Draft Agreement relating to Hospital and Safety Zones and Localities

Annex II

Draft Regulations concerning Collective Relief

Annex III

Internment Card

Letter

Correspondence Card

-----\*\*\*\*\*-----

The undersigned Plenipotentiaries of the Governments represented at the Diplomatic Conference held at Geneva from 21 April to 12 August 1949, for the purpose of establishing a Convention for the Protection of Civilians in Time of War, have agreed as follows

## PART I

### GENERAL PROVISIONS

Article 1 The High Contracting Parties undertake to respect and to ensure respect for the present Convention in all circumstances

Art 2 In addition to the provisions which shall be implemented in peace-time, the present Convention shall apply to all cases of declared war or of any other armed conflict which may arise between two or more of the High Contracting Parties, even if the state of war is not recognized by one of them

The Convention shall also apply to all cases of partial or total occupation of the territory of a High Contracting Party, even if the said occupation meets with no armed resistance

Although one of the Powers in conflict may not be a party to the present Convention, the Powers who are parties thereto shall remain bound by it in their mutual relations. They shall furthermore be bound by the Convention in relation to the said Power, if the latter accepts and applies the provisions thereof

Art 3 In the case of armed conflict not of an international character occurring in the territory of one of the High Contracting Parties, each Party to the conflict shall be bound to apply, as a minimum, the following provisions:

(1) Persons taking no active part in the hostilities, including members of armed forces who have laid down their arms and those placed hors de combat by sickness, wounds, detention, or any other cause, shall in all circumstances be treated humanely, without any adverse distinction founded on race, colour, religion or faith, sex, birth or wealth, or any other similar criteria

To this end the following acts are and shall remain prohibited at any time and in any place whatsoever with respect to the above-mentioned persons

(a) violence to life and person, in particular murder of all kinds, mutilation, cruel treatment and torture,

(b) taking of hostages,

(c) outrages upon personal dignity, in particular humiliating and degrading treatment,

(d) the passing of sentences and the carrying out of executions without previous judgment pronounced by a regularly constituted court, affording all the judicial guarantees which are recognized as indispensable by civilized peoples

(2) The wounded and sick shall be collected and cared for

An impartial humanitarian body, such as the International Committee of the Red Cross, may offer its services to the Parties to the conflict

The Parties to the conflict should further endeavour to bring into force, by means of special agreements, all or part of the other provisions of the present Convention

The application of the preceding provisions shall not affect the legal status of the Parties to the conflict

Art 4 Persons protected by the Convention are those who, at a given moment and in any manner whatsoever, find themselves, in case of a conflict or occupation, in the hands of a Party to the conflict or Occupying Power of which they are not nationals

Nationals of a State which is not bound by the Convention are not protected by it  
Nationals of a neutral State who find themselves in the territory of a belligerent State, and nationals of a co-belligerent State, shall not be regarded as protected persons while the State of which they are nationals has normal diplomatic representation in the State in whose hands they are

The provisions of Part II are, however, wider in application, as defined in Article 13

Persons protected by the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of 12 August 1949, or by the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea of 12 August 1949, or by the Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of 12 August 1949, shall not be considered as protected persons within the meaning of the present Convention

Art 5 Where in the territory of a Party to the conflict, the latter is satisfied that an individual protected person is definitely suspected of or engaged in activities hostile to the security of the State, such individual person shall not be entitled to claim such rights and privileges under the present Convention as would, if exercised in the favour of such individual person, be prejudicial to the security of such State

Where in occupied territory an individual protected person is detained as a spy or saboteur, or as a person under definite suspicion of activity hostile to the security of the Occupying Power, such person shall, in those cases where absolute military security so requires, be regarded as having forfeited rights of communication under the present Convention

In each case, such persons shall nevertheless be treated with humanity and, in case of trial, shall not be deprived of the rights of fair and regular trial prescribed by the present Convention. They shall also be granted the full rights and privileges of a protected person under the present Convention at the earliest date consistent with security of State or Occupying Power " </P" as case may be >

Art 6 The present Convention shall apply from the outset of any conflict or occupation mentioned in Article 2

In the territory of Parties to the conflict, the application of the present Convention shall cease on the general close of military operations

In the case of occupied territory, the application of the present Convention shall cease one year after the general close of military operations, however, the Occupying Power shall be bound, for the duration of the occupation, to the extent that such Power exercises the functions of government in such territory, by the provisions of the following Articles

of the present Convention 1 to 12, 27, 29 to 34, 47, 49, 51, 52, 53, 59, 61 to 77, 143

Protected persons whose release, repatriation or re-establishment may take place after such dates shall meanwhile continue to benefit by the present Convention

Art 7 In addition to the agreements expressly provided for in Articles 11, 14, 15, 17, 36, 108, 109, 132, 133 and 149, the High Contracting Parties may conclude other special

agreements for all matters concerning which they may deem it suitable to make separate provision. No special agreement shall adversely affect the situation of protected persons, as defined by the present Convention, not restrict the rights which it confers upon them.

Protected persons shall continue to have the benefit of such agreements as long as the Convention is applicable to them, except where express provisions to the contrary are contained in the aforesaid or in subsequent agreements, or where more favourable measures have been taken with regard to them by one or other of the Parties to the conflict.

Art 8 Protected persons may in no circumstances renounce in part or in entirety the rights secured to them by the present Convention, and by the special agreements referred to in the foregoing Article, if such there be.

Art 9 The present Convention shall be applied with the cooperation and under the scrutiny of the Protecting Powers whose duty it is to safeguard the interests of the Parties to the conflict. For this purpose, the Protecting Powers may appoint, apart from their diplomatic or consular staff, delegates from amongst their own nationals or the nationals of other neutral Powers. The said delegates shall be subject to the approval of the Power with which they are to carry out their duties.

The Parties to the conflict shall facilitate to the greatest extent possible the task of the representatives or delegates of the Protecting Powers.

The representatives or delegates of the Protecting Powers shall not in any case exceed their mission under the present Convention.

They shall, in particular, take account of the imperative necessities of security of the State wherein they carry out their duties.

Art 10. The provisions of the present Convention constitute no obstacle to the humanitarian activities which the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other impartial humanitarian organization may, subject to the consent of the Parties to the conflict concerned, undertake for the protection of civilian persons and for their relief

Art 11 The High Contracting Parties may at any time agree to entrust to an international organization which offers all guarantees of impartiality and efficacy the duties incumbent on the Protecting Powers by virtue of the present Convention

When persons protected by the present Convention do not benefit or cease to benefit, no matter for what reason, by the activities of a Protecting Power or of an organization provided for in the first paragraph above, the Detaining Power shall request a neutral State, or such an organization, to undertake the functions performed under the present Convention by a Protecting Power designated by the Parties to a conflict

If protection cannot be arranged accordingly, the Detaining Power shall request or shall accept, subject to the provisions of this Article, the offer of the services of a humanitarian organization, such as the International Committee of the Red Cross, to assume the humanitarian functions performed by Protecting Powers under the present Convention

Any neutral Power or any organization invited by the Power concerned or offering itself for these purposes, shall be required to act with a sense of responsibility towards the Party to the conflict on which persons protected by the present Convention depend, and shall be required to furnish sufficient assurances that it is in a position to undertake the appropriate functions and to discharge them impartially

No derogation from the preceding provisions shall be made by special agreements between Powers one of which is restricted, even temporarily, in its freedom to negotiate with the other Power or its allies by reason of military events, more particularly where the whole, or a substantial part, of the territory of the said Power is occupied



Whenever in the present Convention mention is made of a Protecting Power, such mention applies to substitute organizations in the sense of the present Article

The provisions of this Article shall extend and be adapted to cases of nationals of a neutral State who are in occupied territory or who find themselves in the territory of a belligerent State in which the State of which they are nationals has not normal diplomatic representation

Art 12 In cases where they deem it advisable in the interest of protected persons, particularly in cases of disagreement between the Parties to the conflict as to the application or interpretation of the provisions of the present Convention, the Protecting Powers shall lend their good offices with a view to settling the disagreement

For this purpose, each of the Protecting Powers may, either at the invitation of one Party or on its own initiative, propose to the Parties to the conflict a meeting of their representatives, and in particular of the authorities responsible for protected persons, possibly on neutral territory suitably chosen. The Parties to the conflict shall be bound to give effect to the proposals made to them for this purpose. The Protecting Powers may, if necessary, propose for approval by the Parties to the conflict a person belonging to a neutral Power, or delegated by the International Committee of the Red Cross, who shall be invited to take part in such a meeting

## PART II

### GENERAL PROTECTION OF POPULATIONS AGAINST CERTAIN CONSEQUENCES OF WAR

Art 13 The provisions of Part II cover the whole of the populations of the countries in conflict, without any adverse distinction based, in particular, on race, nationality, religion or political opinion, and are intended to alleviate the sufferings caused by war

Art 14 In time of peace, the High Contracting Parties and, after the outbreak of hostilities, the Parties thereto, may establish in their own territory and, if the need arises, in occupied areas, hospital and safety zones and localities so organized as to protect from the effects of war, wounded, sick and aged persons, children under fifteen, expectant mothers and mothers of children under seven

Upon the outbreak and during the course of hostilities, the Parties concerned may conclude agreements on mutual recognition of the zones and localities they have created They may for this purpose implement the provisions of the Draft Agreement annexed to the present Convention, with such amendments as they may consider necessary

The Protecting Powers and the International Committee of the Red Cross are invited to lend their good offices in order to facilitate the institution and recognition of these hospital and safety zones and localities

Art 15 Any Party to the conflict may, either direct or through a neutral State or some humanitarian organization, propose to the adverse Party to establish, in the regions where fighting is taking place, neutralized zones intended to shelter from the effects of war the following persons, without distinction

(a) wounded and sick combatants or non-combatants,

(b) civilian persons who take no part in hostilities, and who, while they reside in the zones, perform no work of a military character

When the Parties concerned have agreed upon the geographical position, administration, food supply and supervision of the proposed neutralized zone, a written agreement shall be concluded and signed by the representatives of the Parties to the conflict. The agreement shall fix the beginning and the duration of the neutralization of the zone.

Art 16 The wounded and sick, as well as the infirm, and expectant mothers, shall be the object of particular protection and respect.

As far as military considerations allow, each Party to the conflict shall facilitate the steps taken to search for the killed and wounded, to assist the shipwrecked and other persons exposed to grave danger, and to protect them against pillage and ill-treatment.

Art 17 The Parties to the conflict shall endeavour to conclude local agreements for the removal from besieged or encircled areas, of wounded, sick, infirm, and aged persons, children and maternity cases, and for the passage of ministers of all religions, medical personnel and medical equipment on their way to such areas.

Art 18 Civilian hospitals organized to give care to the wounded and sick, the infirm and maternity cases, may in no circumstances be the object of attack but shall at all times be respected and protected by the Parties to the conflict.

States which are Parties to a conflict shall provide all civilian hospitals with certificates showing that they are civilian hospitals and that the buildings which they occupy are not used for any purpose which would deprive these hospitals of protection in accordance with Article 19.

Civilian hospitals shall be marked by means of the emblem provided for in Article 38 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of 12 August 1949, but only if so authorized by the State

The Parties to the conflict shall, in so far as military considerations permit, take the necessary steps to make the distinctive emblems indicating civilian hospitals clearly visible to the enemy land, air and naval forces in order to obviate the possibility of any hostile action

In view of the dangers to which hospitals may be exposed by being close to military objectives, it is recommended that such hospitals be situated as far as possible from such objectives

Art 19 The protection to which civilian hospitals are entitled shall not cease unless they are used to commit, outside their humanitarian duties, acts harmful to the enemy. Protection may, however, cease only after due warning has been given, naming, in all appropriate cases, a reasonable time limit and after such warning has remained unheeded

The fact that sick or wounded members of the armed forces are nursed in these hospitals, or the presence of small arms and ammunition taken from such combatants which have not yet been handed to the proper service, shall not be considered to be acts harmful to the enemy

Art 20 Persons regularly and solely engaged in the operation and administration of civilian hospitals, including the personnel engaged in the search for, removal and transporting of and caring for wounded and sick civilians, the infirm and maternity cases shall be respected and protected

In occupied territory and in zones of military operations, the above personnel shall be recognizable by means of an identity card certifying their status, bearing the photograph of the holder and embossed with the stamp of the responsible authority, and also by

means of a stamped, water-resistant armlet which they shall wear on the left arm while carrying out their duties. This armlet shall be issued by the State and shall bear the emblem provided for in Article 38 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of 12 August 1949

Other personnel who are engaged in the operation and administration of civilian hospitals shall be entitled to respect and protection and to wear the armlet, as provided in and under the conditions prescribed in this Article, while they are employed on such duties. The identity card shall state the duties on which they are employed

The management of each hospital shall at all times hold at the disposal of the competent national or occupying authorities an up-to-date list of such personnel

Art 21 Convoys of vehicles or hospital trains on land or specially provided vessels on sea, conveying wounded and sick civilians, the infirm and maternity cases, shall be respected and protected in the same manner as the hospitals provided for in Article 18, and shall be marked, with the consent of the State, by the display of the distinctive emblem provided for in Article 38 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of 12 August 1949

Art 22 Aircraft exclusively employed for the removal of wounded and sick civilians, the infirm and maternity cases or for the transport of medical personnel and equipment, shall not be attacked, but shall be respected while flying at heights, times and on routes specifically agreed upon between all the Parties to the conflict concerned

They may be marked with the distinctive emblem provided for in Article 38 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of 12 August 1949

Unless agreed otherwise, flights over enemy or enemy occupied territory are prohibited

Such aircraft shall obey every summons to land. In the event of a landing thus imposed, the aircraft with its occupants may continue its flight after examination, if any

Art 23 Each High Contracting Party shall allow the free passage of all consignments of medical and hospital stores and objects necessary for religious worship intended only for civilians of another High Contracting Party, even if the latter is its adversary. It shall likewise permit the free passage of all consignments of essential foodstuffs, clothing and tonics intended for children under fifteen, expectant mothers and maternity cases

The obligation of a High Contracting Party to allow the free passage of the consignments indicated in the preceding paragraph is subject to the condition that this Party is satisfied that there are no serious reasons for fearing

(a) that the consignments may be diverted from their destination,

(b) that the control may not be effective, or

(c) that a definite advantage may accrue to the military efforts or economy of the enemy through the substitution of the above-mentioned consignments for goods which would otherwise be provided or produced by the enemy or through the release of such material, services or facilities as would otherwise be required for the production of such goods

"</P">

The Power which allows the passage of the consignments indicated in the first paragraph of this Article may make such permission conditional on the distribution to the persons benefited thereby being made under the local supervision of the Protecting Powers

Such consignments shall be forwarded as rapidly as possible, and the Power which permits their free passage shall have the right to prescribe the technical arrangements under which such passage is allowed

Art 24 The Parties to the conflict shall take the necessary measures to ensure that children under fifteen, who are orphaned or are separated from their families as a result of the war, are not left to their own resources, and that their maintenance, the exercise of their religion and their education are facilitated in all circumstances Their education shall, as far as possible, be entrusted to persons of a similar cultural tradition

The Parties to the conflict shall facilitate the reception of such children in a neutral country for the duration of the conflict with the consent of the Protecting Power, if any, and under due safeguards for the observance< of the principles stated in first paragraph "</P">

They shall, furthermore, endeavour to arrange for all children under twelve to be identified by the wearing of identity discs, or by some other means

Art 25 All persons in the territory of a Party to the conflict, or in a territory occupied by it, shall be enabled to give news of a strictly personal nature to members of their families, wherever they may be, and to receive news from them This correspondence shall be forwarded speedily and without undue delay

If as a result of circumstances, it becomes difficult or impossible to exchange family correspondence by the ordinary post. the Parties to the conflict concerned shall apply to a neutral intermediary, such as the Central Agency provided for in Article 140, and shall decide in consultation with it how to ensure the fulfilment of their obligations under the best possible conditions, in particular with the cooperation of the National Red Cross (Red Crescent, Red Lion and Sun) Societies

If the Parties to the conflict deem it necessary to restrict family correspondence, such restrictions shall be confined to the compulsory use of standard forms containing twenty-five freely chosen words, and to the limitation of the number of these forms despatched to one each month

Art 26. Each Party to the conflict shall facilitate enquiries made by members of families dispersed owing to the war, with the object of renewing contact with one another and of meeting, if possible. It shall encourage, in particular, the work of organizations engaged on this task provided they are acceptable to it and conform to its security regulations

### PART III

## STATUS AND TREATMENT OF PROTECTED PERSONS

### SECTION I

#### Provisions Common to the Territories of the Parties to the Conflict and to Occupied Territories

Art 27 Protected persons are entitled, in all circumstances, to respect for their persons, their honour, their family rights, their religious convictions and practices, and their manners and customs. They shall at all times be humanely treated, and shall be protected especially against all acts of violence or threats thereof and against insults and public curiosity

Women shall be especially protected against any attack on their honour, in particular against rape, enforced prostitution, or any form of indecent assault



Without prejudice to the provisions relating to their state of health, age and sex, all protected persons shall be treated with the same consideration by the Party to the conflict in whose power they are, without any adverse distinction based, in particular, on race, religion or political opinion

However, the Parties to the conflict may take such measures of control and security in regard to protected persons as may be necessary as a result of the war

Art 28 The presence of a protected person may not be used to render certain points or areas immune from military operations

Art 29 The Party to the conflict in whose hands protected persons may be, is responsible for the treatment accorded to them by its agents, irrespective of any individual responsibility which may be incurred

Art 30 Protected persons shall have every facility for making application to the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross, the National Red Cross (Red Crescent, Red Lion and Sun) Society of the country where they may be, as well as to any organization that might assist them

These several organizations shall be granted all facilities for that purpose by the authorities, within the bounds set by military or security considerations

Apart from the visits of the delegates of the Protecting Powers and of the International Committee of the Red Cross, provided for by Article 143, the Detaining or Occupying Powers shall facilitate, as much as possible, visits to protected persons by the representatives of other organizations whose object is to give spiritual aid or material relief to such persons

Art. 31 No physical or moral coercion shall be exercised against protected persons, in particular to obtain information from them or from third parties

Art 32 The High Contracting Parties specifically agree that each of them is prohibited from taking any measure of such a character as to cause the physical suffering or extermination of protected persons in their hands. This prohibition applies not only to murder, torture, corporal punishments, mutilation and medical or scientific experiments not necessitated by the medical treatment of a protected person, but also to any other measures of brutality whether applied by civilian or military agents

Art 33 No protected person may be punished for an offence he or she has not personally committed. Collective penalties and likewise all measures of intimidation or of terrorism are prohibited

Pillage is prohibited

Reprisals against protected persons and their property are prohibited

Art 34 The taking of hostages is prohibited

## SECTION II

## Aliens in the Territory of a Party to the Conflict

Art 35 All protected persons who may desire to leave the territory at the outset of, or during a conflict, shall be entitled to do so, unless their departure is contrary to the national interests of the State. The applications of such persons to leave shall be decided in accordance with regularly established procedures and the decision shall be taken as rapidly as possible. Those persons permitted to leave may provide themselves with the necessary funds for their journey and take with them a reasonable amount of their effects and articles of personal use.

If any such person is refused permission to leave the territory, he shall be entitled to have refusal reconsidered, as soon as possible by an appropriate court or administrative board designated by the Detaining Power for that purpose.

Upon request, representatives of the Protecting Power shall, unless reasons of security prevent it, or the persons concerned object, be furnished with the reasons for refusal of any request for permission to leave the territory and be given, as expeditiously as possible, the names of all persons who have been denied permission to leave.

Art 36 Departures permitted under the foregoing Article shall be carried out in satisfactory conditions as regards safety, hygiene, sanitation and food. All costs in connection therewith, from the point of exit in the territory of the Detaining Power, shall be borne by the country of destination, or, in the case of accommodation in a neutral country, by the Power whose nationals are benefited. The practical details of such movements may, if necessary, be settled by special agreements between the Powers concerned.

The foregoing shall not prejudice such special agreements as may be concluded between Parties to the conflict concerning the exchange and repatriation of their nationals in enemy hands

Art 37 Protected persons who are confined pending proceedings or subject to a sentence involving loss of liberty, shall during their confinement be humanely treated

As soon as they are released, they may ask to leave the territory in conformity with the foregoing Articles

Art 38 With the exception of special measures authorized by the present Convention, in particularly by Article 27 and 41 thereof, the situation of protected persons shall continue to be regulated, in principle, by the provisions concerning aliens in time of peace. In any case, the following rights shall be granted to them

(1) they shall be enabled to receive the individual or collective relief that may be sent to them

(2) they shall, if their state of health so requires, receive medical attention and hospital treatment to the same extent as the nationals of the State concerned

(3) they shall be allowed to practise their religion and to receive spiritual assistance from ministers of their faith

(4) if they reside in an area particularly exposed to the dangers of war, they shall be authorized to move from that area to the same extent as the nationals of the State concerned

(5) children under fifteen years, pregnant women and mothers of children under seven years shall benefit by any preferential treatment to the same extent as the nationals of the State concerned

Art 39 Protected persons who, as a result of the war, have lost their gainful employment, shall be granted the opportunity to find paid employment. That opportunity shall, subject

to security considerations and to the provisions of Article 40, be equal to that enjoyed by the nationals of the Power in whose territory they are

Where a Party to the conflict applies to a protected person methods of control which result in his being unable to support himself, and especially if such a person is prevented for reasons of security from finding paid employment on reasonable conditions, the said Party shall ensure his support and that of his dependents

Protected persons may in any case receive allowances from their home country, the Protecting Power, or the relief societies referred to in Article 30

Art 40 Protected persons may be compelled to work only to the same extent as nationals of the Party to the conflict in whose territory they are

If protected persons are of enemy nationality, they may only be compelled to do work which is normally necessary to ensure the feeding, sheltering, clothing, transport and health of human beings and which is not directly related to the conduct of military operations

In the cases mentioned in the two preceding paragraphs, protected persons compelled to work shall have the benefit of the same working conditions and of the same safeguards as national workers in particular as regards wages, hours of labour, clothing and equipment, previous training and compensation for occupational accidents and diseases.

If the above provisions are infringed, protected persons shall be allowed to exercise their right of complaint in accordance with Article 30

Art 41 Should the Power, in whose hands protected persons may be, consider the measures of control mentioned in the present Convention to be inadequate, it may not have recourse to any other measure of control more severe than that of assigned residence or internment, in accordance with the provisions of Articles 42 and 43

In applying the provisions of Article 39, second paragraph, to the cases of persons required to leave their usual places of residence by virtue of a decision placing them in assigned residence, by virtue of a decision placing them in assigned residence, elsewhere, the Detaining Power shall be guided as closely as possible by the standards of welfare set forth in Part III, Section IV of this Convention

Art 42 The internment or placing in assigned residence of protected persons may be ordered only if the security of the Detaining Power makes it absolutely necessary

If any person, acting through the representatives of the Protecting Power, voluntarily demands internment, and if his situation renders this step necessary, he shall be interned by the Power in whose hands he may be

Art 43 Any protected person who has been interned or placed in assigned residence shall be entitled to have such action reconsidered as soon as possible by an appropriate court or administrative board designated by the Detaining Power for that purpose. If the internment or placing in assigned residence is maintained, the court or administrative board shall periodically, and at least twice yearly, give consideration to his or her case, with a view to the favourable amendment of the initial decision, if circumstances permit

Unless the protected persons concerned object, the Detaining Power shall, as rapidly as possible, give the Protecting Power the names of any protected persons who have been interned or subjected to assigned residence, or who have been released from internment

or assigned residence. The decisions of the courts or boards mentioned in the first paragraph of the present Article shall also, subject to the same conditions, be notified as rapidly as possible to the Protecting Power.

Art 44 In applying the measures of control mentioned in the present Convention " <P" the Detaining Power shall not treat as enemy aliens exclusively on basis of their nationality de jure an State refugees who do in fact enjoy protection any government >

Art 45 Protected persons shall not be transferred to a Power which is not a party to the Convention.

This provision shall in no way constitute an obstacle to the repatriation of protected persons, or to their return to their country of residence after the cessation of hostilities.

Protected persons may be transferred by the Detaining Power only to a Power which is a party to the present Convention and after the Detaining Power has satisfied itself of the willingness and ability of such transferee Power to apply the present Convention. If protected persons are transferred under such circumstances, responsibility for the application of the present Convention rests on the Power accepting them, while they are in its custody. Nevertheless, if that Power fails to carry out the provisions of the present Convention in any important respect, the Power by which the protected persons were transferred shall, upon being so notified by the Protecting Power, take effective measures to correct the situation or shall request the return of the protected persons. Such request must be complied with.

In no circumstances shall a protected person be transferred to a country where he or she may have reason to fear persecution for his or her political opinions or religious beliefs.

The provisions of this Article do not constitute an obstacle to the extradition, in pursuance of extradition treaties concluded before the outbreak of hostilities, of protected persons accused of offences against ordinary criminal law

Art 46 In so far as they have not been previously withdrawn, restrictive measures taken regarding protected persons shall be cancelled as soon as possible after the close of hostilities

Restrictive measures affecting their property shall be cancelled, in accordance with the law of the Detaining Power, as soon as possible after the close of hostilities

### SECTION III

#### Occupied Territories

Art 47 Protected persons who are in occupied territory shall not be deprived, in any case or in any manner whatsoever, of the benefits of the present Convention by any change introduced, as the result of the occupation of a territory, into the institutions or government of the said territory, nor by any agreement concluded between the authorities of the occupied territories and the Occupying Power, nor by any annexation by the latter of the whole or part of the occupied territory

Art 48 Protected persons who are not nationals of the Power whose territory is occupied, may avail themselves of the right to leave the territory subject to the provisions of Article 35, and decisions thereon shall be taken in accordance with the procedure which the Occupying Power shall establish in accordance with the said Article



Art 49 Individual or mass forcible transfers, as well as deportations of protected persons from occupied territory to the territory of the Occupying Power or to that of any other country, occupied or not, are prohibited, regardless of their motive

Nevertheless, the Occupying Power may undertake total or partial evacuation of a given area if the security of the population or imperative military reasons so demand. Such evacuations may not involve the displacement of protected persons outside the bounds of the occupied territory except when for material reasons it is impossible to avoid such displacement. Persons thus evacuated shall be transferred back to their homes as soon as hostilities in the area in question have ceased.

The Occupying Power undertaking such transfers or evacuations shall ensure, to the greatest practicable extent, that proper accommodation is provided to receive the protected persons, that the removals are effected in satisfactory conditions of hygiene, health, safety and nutrition, and that members of the same family are not separated.

The Protecting Power shall be informed of any transfers and evacuations as soon as they have taken place.

The Occupying Power shall not detain protected persons in an area particularly exposed to the dangers of war unless the security of the population or imperative military reasons so demand.

The Occupying Power shall not deport or transfer parts of its own civilian population into the territory it occupies.

Art 50 The Occupying Power shall, with the cooperation of the national and local authorities, facilitate the proper working of all institutions devoted to the care and education of children

The Occupying Power shall take all necessary steps to facilitate the identification of children and the registration of their parentage. It may not, in any case, change their personal status, nor enlist them in formations or organizations subordinate to it

Should the local institutions be inadequate for the purpose, the Occupying Power shall make arrangements for the maintenance and education, if possible by persons of their own nationality, language and religion, of children who are orphaned or separated from their parents as a result of the war and who cannot be adequately cared for by a near relative or friend "

A special section of the Bureau set up in accordance with Article 136 shall be responsible for taking all necessary steps to identify children whose identity is in doubt. Particulars of their parents or other near relatives should always be recorded if available

The Occupying Power shall not hinder the application of any preferential measures in regard to food, medical care and protection against the effects of war which may have been adopted prior to the occupation in favour of children under fifteen years, expectant mothers, and mothers of children under seven years

Art 51 The Occupying Power may not compel protected persons to serve in its armed or auxiliary forces. No pressure or propaganda which aims at securing voluntary enlistment is permitted

The Occupying Power may not compel protected persons to work unless they are over eighteen years of age, and then only on work which is necessary either for the needs of the army of occupation, or for the public utility services, or for the feeding, sheltering,

clothing, transportation or health of the population of the occupied country. Protected persons may not be compelled to undertake any work which would involve them in the obligation of taking part in military operations. The Occupying Power may not compel protected persons to employ forcible means to ensure the security of the installations where they are performing compulsory labour.

The work shall be carried out only in the occupied territory where the persons whose services have been requisitioned are. Every such person shall, so far as possible, be kept in his usual place of employment. Workers shall be paid a fair wage and the work shall be proportionate to their physical and intellectual capacities. The legislation in force in the occupied country concerning working conditions, and safeguards as regards, in particular, such matters as wages, hours of work, equipment, preliminary training and compensation for occupational accidents and diseases, shall be applicable to the protected persons assigned to the work referred to in this Article.

In no case shall requisition of labour lead to a mobilization of workers in an organization of a military or semi-military character.

Art 52 No contract, agreement or regulation shall impair the right of any worker, whether voluntary or not and wherever he may be, to apply to the representatives of the Protecting Power in order to request the said Power's intervention.

All measures aiming at creating unemployment or at restricting the opportunities offered to workers in an occupied territory, in order to induce them to work for the Occupying Power, are prohibited.

Art 53 Any destruction by the Occupying Power of real or personal property belonging individually or collectively to private persons, or to the State, or to other public authorities, or to social or cooperative organizations, is prohibited, except where such destruction is rendered absolutely necessary by military operations.

Art 54 The Occupying Power may not alter the status of public officials or judges in the occupied territories, or in any way apply sanctions to or take any measures of coercion or discrimination against them, should they abstain from fulfilling their functions for reasons of conscience

This prohibition does not prejudice the application of the second paragraph of Article 51 It does not affect the right of the Occupying Power to remove public officials from their posts

Art 55 To the fullest extent of the means available to it, the Occupying Power has the duty of ensuring the food and medical supplies of the population, it should, in particular, bring in the necessary foodstuffs, medical stores and other articles if the resources of the occupied territory are inadequate

The Occupying Power may not requisition foodstuffs, articles or medical

occupation forces and administration personnel, and then only if the requirements of the civilian population have been taken into account

Subject to the provisions of other international Conventions, the Occupying Power shall make arrangements to ensure that fair value is paid for any requisitioned goods

The Protecting Power shall, at any time, be at liberty to verify the state of the food and medical supplies in occupied territories, except where temporary restrictions are made necessary by imperative military requirements

Art 56 To the fullest extent of the means available to it, the public Occupying Power has the duty of ensuring and maintaining, with the cooperation of national and local

authorities, the medical and hospital establishments and services, public health and hygiene in the occupied territory, with particular reference to the adoption and application of the prophylactic and preventive measures necessary to combat the spread of contagious diseases and epidemics. Medical personnel of all categories shall be allowed to carry out their duties.

If new hospitals are set up in occupied territory and if the competent organs of the occupied State are not operating there, the occupying authorities shall, if necessary, grant them the recognition provided for in Article 18. In similar circumstances, the occupying authorities shall also grant recognition to hospital personnel and transport vehicles under the provisions of Articles 20 and 21.

In adopting measures of health and hygiene and in their implementation, the Occupying Power shall take into consideration the moral and ethical susceptibilities of the population of the occupied territory.

Art. 57. The Occupying Power may requisition civilian hospitals only temporarily and only in cases of urgent necessity for the care of military wounded and sick, and then on condition that suitable arrangements are made in due time for the care and treatment of the patients and for the needs of the civilian population for hospital accommodation.

The material and stores of civilian hospitals cannot be requisitioned so long as they are necessary for the needs of the civilian population.

Art. 58. The Occupying Power shall permit ministers of religion to give spiritual assistance to the members of their religious communities.

The Occupying Power shall also accept consignments of books and articles required for religious needs and shall facilitate their distribution in occupied territory

Art 59 If the whole or part of the population of an occupied territory is inadequately supplied, the Occupying Power shall agree to relief schemes on behalf of the said population, and shall facilitate them by all the means at its disposal

Such schemes, which may be undertaken either by States or by impartial humanitarian organizations such as the International Committee of the Red Cross, shall consist, in particular, of the provision of consignments of foodstuffs, medical supplies and clothing

All Contracting Parties shall permit the free passage of these consignments and shall guarantee their protection

A Power granting free passage to consignments on their way to territory occupied by an adverse Party to the conflict shall, however, have the right to search the consignments, to regulate their passage according to prescribed times and routes, and to be reasonably satisfied through the Protecting Power that these consignments are to be used for the relief of the needy population and are not to be used for the benefit of the Occupying Power

Art 60 Relief consignments shall in no way relieve the Occupying Power of any of its responsibilities under Articles 55, 56 and 59 The Occupying Power shall in no way whatsoever divert relief consignments from the purpose for which they are intended, except in cases of urgent necessity, in the interests of the population of the occupied territory and with the consent of the Protecting Power

Art 61 The distribution of the relief consignments referred to in the foregoing Articles shall be carried out with the cooperation and under the supervision of the Protecting Power This duty may also be delegated, by agreement between the Occupying Power and the Protecting Power, to a neutral Power, to the International Committee of the Red Cross or to any other impartial humanitarian body

Such consignments shall be exempt in occupied territory from all charges, taxes or customs duties unless these are necessary in the interests of the economy of the territory The Occupying Power shall facilitate the rapid distribution of these consignments

All Contracting Parties shall endeavour to permit the transit and transport, free of charge, of such relief consignments on their way to occupied territories

Art 62 Subject to imperative reasons of security, protected persons in occupied territories shall be permitted to receive the individual relief consignments sent to them

Art 63 Subject to temporary and exceptional measures imposed for urgent reasons of security by the Occupying Power

(a) recognized National Red Cross (Red Crescent, Red Lion and Sun) Societies shall be able to pursue their activities in accordance with Red Cross principles, as defined by the International Red Cross Conferences Other relief societies shall be permitted to continue their humanitarian activities under similar conditions,

(b) the Occupying Power may not require any changes in the personnel or structure of these societies, which would prejudice the aforesaid activities

The same principles shall apply to the activities and personnel of special organizations of a non-military character, which already exist or which may be established, for the purpose of ensuring the living conditions of the civilian population by the maintenance of the essential public utility services, by the distribution of relief and by the organization of rescues

Art 64 The penal laws of the occupied territory shall remain in force, with the exception that they may be repealed or suspended by the Occupying Power in cases where they constitute a threat to its security or an obstacle to the application of the present Convention

Subject to the latter consideration and to the necessity for ensuring the effective administration of justice, the tribunals of the occupied territory shall continue to function in respect of all offences covered by the said laws

The Occupying Power may, however, subject the population of the occupied territory to provisions which are essential to enable the Occupying Power to fulfil its obligations under the present Convention, to maintain the orderly government of the territory, and to ensure the security of the Occupying Power, of the members and property of the occupying forces or administration, and likewise of the establishments and lines of communication used by them

Art 65 The penal provisions enacted by the Occupying Power shall not come into force before they have been published and brought to the knowledge of the inhabitants in their own language. The effect of these penal provisions shall not be retroactive

Art 66 In case of a breach of the penal provisions promulgated by it by virtue of the second paragraph of Article 64 the Occupying Power may hand over the accused to its properly constituted, non-political military courts, on condition that the said courts sit in the occupied country. Courts of appeal shall preferably sit in the occupied country



Art 67 The courts shall apply only those provisions of law which were applicable prior to the offence, and which are in accordance with general principles of law, in particular the principle that the penalty shall be proportionate to the offence. They shall take into consideration the fact the accused is not a national of the Occupying Power.

Art 68 Protected persons who commit an offence which is solely intended to harm the Occupying Power, but which does not constitute an attempt on the life or limb of members of the occupying forces or administration, nor a grave collective danger, nor seriously damage the property of the occupying forces or administration or the installations used by them, shall be liable to internment or simple imprisonment, provided the duration of such internment or imprisonment is proportionate to the offence committed.

Furthermore, internment or imprisonment shall, for such offences, be the only measure adopted for depriving protected persons of liberty. The courts provided for under Article 66 of the present Convention may at their discretion convert a sentence of imprisonment to one of internment for the same period.

The penal provisions promulgated by the Occupying Power in accordance with Articles 64 and 65 may impose the death penalty on a protected person only in cases where the person is guilty of espionage, of serious acts of sabotage against the military installations of the Occupying Power or of intentional offences which have caused the death of one or more persons, provided that such offences were punishable by death under the law of the occupied territory in force before the occupation began.

The death penalty may not be pronounced on a protected person unless the attention of the court has been particularly called to the fact that since the accused is not a national of the Occupying Power, he is not bound to it by any duty of allegiance.

In any case, the death penalty may not be pronounced on a protected person who was under eighteen years of age at the time of the offence.

Art 69 In all cases the duration of the period during which a protected person accused of an offence is under arrest awaiting trial or punishment shall be deducted from any period of imprisonment of awarded

Art 70 Protected persons shall not be arrested, prosecuted or convicted by the Occupying Power for acts committed or for opinions expressed before the occupation, or during a temporary interruption thereof, with the exception of breaches of the laws and customs of war

Nationals of the occupying Power who, before the outbreak of hostilities, have sought refuge in the territory of the occupied State, shall not be arrested, prosecuted, convicted or deported from the occupied territory, except for offences committed after the outbreak of hostilities, or for offences under common law committed before the outbreak of hostilities which, according to the law of the occupied State, would have justified extradition in time of peace

Art 71 No sentence shall be pronounced by the competent courts of the Occupying Power except after a regular trial

Accused persons who are prosecuted by the Occupying Power shall be promptly informed, in writing, in a language which they understand, of the particulars of the charges preferred against them, and shall be brought to trial as rapidly as possible. The Protecting Power shall be informed of all proceedings instituted by the Occupying Power against protected persons in respect of charges involving the death penalty or imprisonment for two years or more, it shall be enabled, at any time, to obtain information regarding the state of such proceedings. Furthermore, the Protecting Power shall be entitled, on request, to be furnished with all particulars of these and of any other proceedings instituted by the Occupying Power against protected persons "</P">

The notification to the Protecting Power, as provided for in the second paragraph above, shall be sent immediately, and shall in any case reach the Protecting Power three weeks before the date of the first hearing. Unless, at the opening of the trial, evidence is submitted that the provisions of this Article are fully complied with, the trial shall not proceed. The notification shall include the following particulars:

- (a) description of the accused,
- (b) place of residence or detention,
- (c) specification of the charge or charges (with mention of the penal provisions under which it is brought),
- (d) designation of the court which will hear the case,
- (e) place and date of the first hearing.

Art 72. Accused persons shall have the right to present evidence necessary to their defence and may, in particular, call witnesses. They shall have the right to be assisted by a qualified advocate or counsel of their own choice, who shall be able to visit them freely and shall enjoy the necessary facilities for preparing the defence.

Failing a choice by the accused, the Protecting Power may provide him with an advocate or counsel. When an accused person has to meet a serious charge and the Protecting Power is not functioning, the Occupying Power, subject to the consent of the accused, shall provide an advocate or counsel.

Accused persons shall, unless they freely waive such assistance, be aided by an interpreter, both during preliminary investigation and during the hearing in court. They shall have at any time the right to object to the interpreter and to ask for his replacement.

Art 73. A convicted person shall have the right of appeal provided for by the laws applied by the court. He shall be fully informed of his right to appeal or petition and of the time limit within which he may do so.

The penal procedure provided in the present Section shall apply, as far as it is applicable, to appeals. Where the laws applied by the Court make no provision for appeals, the convicted person shall have the right to petition against the finding and sentence to the competent authority of the Occupying Power.

Art 74 Representatives of the Protecting Power shall have the right to attend the trial of any protected person, unless the hearing has, as an exceptional measure, to be held in camera in the interests of the security of the Occupying Power, which shall then notify the Protecting Power. A notification in respect of the date and place of trial shall be sent to the Protecting Power.

Any judgement involving a sentence of death, or imprisonment for two years or more, shall be communicated, with the relevant grounds, as rapidly as possible to the Protecting Power. The notification shall contain a reference to the notification made under Article 71 and, in the case of sentences of imprisonment, the name of the place where the sentence is to be served. A record of judgements other than those referred to above shall be kept by the court and shall be open to inspection by representatives of the Protecting Power. Any period allowed for appeal in the case of sentences involving the death penalty, or imprisonment of two years or more, shall not run until notification of judgement has been received by the Protecting Power.

Art 75 In no case shall persons condemned to death be deprived of the right of petition for pardon or reprieve.

No death sentence shall be carried out before the expiration of a period of at least six months from the date of receipt by the Protecting Power of the notification of the final judgment confirming such death sentence, or of an order denying pardon or reprieve.

The six months period of suspension of the death sentence herein prescribed may be reduced in individual cases in circumstances of grave emergency involving an organized threat to the security of the Occupying Power or its forces, provided always that the Protecting Power is notified of such reduction and is given reasonable time and opportunity to make representations to the competent occupying authorities in respect of such death sentences

Art 76 Protected persons accused of offences shall be detained in the occupied country, and if convicted they shall serve their sentences therein. They shall, if possible, be separated from other detainees and shall enjoy conditions of food and hygiene which will be sufficient to keep them in good health, and which will be at least equal to those obtaining in prisons in the occupied country

They shall receive the medical attention required by their state of health

They shall also have the right to receive any spiritual assistance which they may require  
"/P">

Women shall be confined in separate quarters and shall be under the direct supervision of women

Proper regard shall be paid to the special treatment due to minors

Protected persons who are detained shall have the right to be visited by delegates of the Protecting Power and of the International Committee of the Red Cross, in accordance with the provisions of Article 143

Such persons shall have the right to receive at least one relief parcel monthly

Art 77. Protected persons who have been accused of offences or convicted by the courts in occupied territory, shall be handed over at the close of occupation, with the relevant records, to the authorities of the liberated territory

Art 78 If the Occupying Power considers it necessary, for imperative reasons of security, to take safety measures concerning protected persons, it may, at the most, subject them to assigned residence or to internment

Decisions regarding such assigned residence or internment shall be made according to a regular procedure to be prescribed by the Occupying Power in accordance with the provisions of the present Convention This procedure shall include the right of appeal for the parties concerned Appeals shall be decided with the least possible delay In the event of the decision being upheld, it shall be subject to periodical review, if possible every six months, by a competent body set up by the said Power

Protected persons made subject to assigned residence and thus required to leave their homes shall enjoy the full benefit of Article 39 of the present Convention

#### SECTION IV

Regulations for the Treatment of Internees

## CHAPTER I

### General Provisions

Art 79 The Parties to the conflict shall not intern protected persons, except in accordance with the provisions of Articles 41, 42, 43, 68 and 78

Art 80 Internees shall retain their full civil capacity and shall exercise such attendant rights as may be compatible with their status

Art 81 Parties to the conflict who intern protected persons shall be bound to provide free of charge for their maintenance, and to grant them also the medical attention required by their state of health

No deduction from the allowances, salaries or credits due to the internees shall be made for the repayment of these costs

The Detaining Power shall provide for the support of those dependent on the internees, if *such dependents are without adequate means of support or are unable to earn a living*

Art 82 The Detaining Power shall, as far as possible, accommodate the internees according to their nationality, language and customs. Internees who are nationals of the same country shall not be separated merely because they have different languages

Throughout the duration of their internment, members of the same family, and in particular parents and children, shall be lodged together in the same place of internment, except when separation of a temporary nature is necessitated for reasons of employment or health or for the purposes of enforcement of the provisions of Chapter IX of the present Section

Internees may request that their children who are left at liberty without parental care shall be interned with them

Wherever possible, interned members of the same family shall be housed in the same premises and given separate accommodation from other internees, together with facilities for leading a proper family life

## CHAPTER II

### Places of Internment

Art 83 The Detaining Power shall not set up places of internment in areas particularly exposed to the dangers of war

The Detaining Power shall give the enemy Powers, through the intermediary of the Protecting Powers, all useful information regarding the geographical location of places of internment



Whenever military considerations permit, internment camps shall be indicated by the letters IC, placed so as to be clearly visible in the daytime from the air. The Powers concerned may, however, agree upon any other system of marking. No place other than an internment camp shall be marked as such.

Art 84. Internees shall be accommodated and administered separately from prisoners of war and from persons deprived of liberty for any other reason.

Art 85. The Detaining Power is bound to take all necessary and possible measures to ensure that protected persons shall, from the outset of their internment, be accommodated in buildings or quarters which afford every possible safeguard as regards hygiene and health, and provide efficient protection against the rigours of the climate and the effects of the war.

In no case shall permanent places of internment be situated in unhealthy areas or in districts, the climate of which is injurious to the internees.

In all cases where the district, in which a protected person is temporarily interned, is an unhealthy area or has a climate which is harmful to his health, he shall be removed to a more suitable place of internment as rapidly as circumstances permit.

The premises shall be fully protected from dampness, adequately heated and lighted, in particular between dusk and lights out. The sleeping quarters shall be sufficiently spacious and well ventilated, and the internees shall have suitable bedding and sufficient blankets, account being taken of the climate, and the age, sex, and state of health of the internees.

Internees shall have for their use, day and night, sanitary conveniences which conform to the rules of hygiene, and are constantly maintained in a state of cleanliness. They shall be provided with sufficient water and soap for their daily personal toilet and for washing their personal laundry, installations and facilities necessary for this purpose shall be

granted to them Showers or baths shall also be available The necessary time shall be set aside for washing and for cleaning

Whenever it is necessary, as an exceptional and temporary measure, to accommodate women internees who are not members of a family unit in the same place of internment as men, the provision of separate sleeping quarters and sanitary conveniences for the use of such women internees shall be obligatory

Art 86 The Detaining Power shall place at the disposal of interned persons, of whatever denomination, premises suitable for the holding of their religious services

Art 87 Canteens shall be installed in every place of internment, except where other suitable facilities are available Their purpose shall be to enable internees to make purchases, at prices not higher than local market prices, of foodstuffs and articles of everyday use, including soap and tobacco, such as would increase their personal well-being and comfort

Profits made by canteens shall be credited to a welfare fund to be set up for each place of internment, and administered for the benefit of the internees attached to such place of internment The Internee Committee provided for in Article 102 shall have the right to check the management of the canteen and of the said fund

When a place of internment is closed down, the balance of the welfare fund shall be transferred to the welfare fund of a place of internment for internees of the same nationality, or, if such a place does not exist, to a central welfare fund which shall be administered for the benefit of all internees remaining in the custody of the Detaining Power In case of a general release, the said profits shall be kept by the Detaining Power, subject to any agreement to the contrary between the Powers concerned

Art 88. In all places of internment exposed to air raids and other hazards of war, shelters adequate in number and structure to ensure the necessary protection shall be installed. In case of alarms, the internees shall be free to enter such shelters as quickly as possible, excepting those who remain for the protection of their quarters against the aforesaid hazards. Any protective measures taken in favour of the population shall also apply to them.

All due precautions must be taken in places of internment against the danger of fire.

### CHAPTER III

#### Food and Clothing

Art 89. Daily food rations for internees shall be sufficient in quantity, quality and variety to keep internees in a good state of health and prevent the development of nutritional deficiencies. Account shall also be taken of the customary diet of the internees.

Internees shall also be given the means by which they can prepare for themselves any additional food in their possession.

Sufficient drinking water shall be supplied to internees. The use of tobacco shall be permitted.

Internees who work shall receive additional rations in proportion to the kind of labour which they perform

Expectant and nursing mothers and children under fifteen years of age, shall be given additional food, in proportion to their physiological needs

Art 90 When taken into custody, internees shall be given all facilities to provide themselves with the necessary clothing, footwear and change of underwear, and later on, to procure further supplies if required. Should any internees not have sufficient clothing, account being taken of the climate, and be unable to procure any, it shall be provided free of charge to them by the Detaining Power

The clothing supplied by the Detaining Power to internees and the outward markings placed on their own clothes shall not be ignominious nor expose them to ridicule

Workers shall receive suitable working outfits, including protective clothing, whenever the nature of their work so requires

## CHAPTER IV

### Hygiene and Medical Attention

Art 91 Every place of internment shall have an adequate infirmary, under the direction of a qualified doctor, where internees may have the attention they require, as well as appropriate diet. Isolation wards shall be set aside for cases of contagious or mental diseases.

Maternity cases and internees suffering from serious diseases, or whose condition requires special treatment, a surgical operation or hospital care, must be admitted to any institution where adequate treatment can be given and shall receive care not inferior to that provided for the general population.

Internees shall, for preference, have the attention of medical personnel of their own nationality.

Internees may not be prevented from presenting themselves to the medical authorities for examination. The medical authorities of the Detaining Power shall, upon request, issue to every internee who has undergone treatment an official certificate showing the nature of his illness or injury, and the duration and nature of the treatment given. A duplicate of this certificate shall be forwarded to the Central Agency provided for in Article 140.

Treatment, including the provision of any apparatus necessary for the maintenance of internees in good health, particularly dentures and other artificial appliances and spectacles, shall be free of charge to the internee.

Art 92 Medical inspections of internees shall be made at least once a month. Their purpose shall be, in particular, to supervise the general state of health, nutrition and cleanliness of internees, and to detect contagious diseases, especially tuberculosis, malaria, and venereal diseases. Such inspections shall include, in particular, the checking of weight of each internee and, at least once a year, radioscopic examination.

## CHAPTER V

### Religious, Intellectual and Physical

#### Activities

Art 93 Internees shall enjoy complete latitude in the exercise of their religious duties, including attendance at the services of their faith, on condition that they comply with the disciplinary routine prescribed by the detaining authorities

Ministers of religion who are interned shall be allowed to minister freely to the members of their community. For this purpose the Detaining Power shall ensure their equitable allocation amongst the various places of internment in which there are internees speaking the same language and belonging to the same religion. Should such ministers be too few in number, the Detaining Power shall provide them with the necessary facilities, including means of transport, for moving from one place to another, and they shall be authorized to visit any internees who are in hospital. Ministers of religion shall be at liberty to correspond on matters concerning their ministry with the religious authorities in the country of detention and, as far as possible, with the international religious organizations of their faith. Such correspondence shall not be considered as forming a part of the quota mentioned in Article 107. It shall, however, be subject to the provisions of Article 112.

When internees do not have at their disposal the assistance of ministers of their faith, or should these latter be too few in number, the local religious authorities of the same faith may appoint, in agreement with the Detaining Power, a minister of the internees' faith or, if such a course is feasible from a denominational point of view, a minister of similar religion or a qualified layman. The latter shall enjoy the facilities granted to the ministry he has assumed. Persons so appointed shall comply with all regulations laid down by the Detaining Power in the interests of discipline and security.

Art 94 The Detaining Power shall encourage intellectual, educational and recreational pursuits, sports and games amongst internees, whilst leaving them free to take part in them or not. It shall take all practicable measures to ensure the exercise thereof, in particular by providing suitable premises.

All possible facilities shall be granted to internees to continue their studies or to take up new subjects. The education of children and young people shall be ensured, they shall be allowed to attend schools either within the place of internment or outside.

Internees shall be given opportunities for physical exercise, sports and outdoor games. For this purpose, sufficient open spaces shall be set aside in all places of internment. Special playgrounds shall be reserved for children and young people.

Art 95 The Detaining Power shall not employ internees as workers, unless they so desire. Employment which, if undertaken under compulsion by a protected person not in internment, would involve a breach of Articles 40 or 51 of the present Convention, and employment on work which is of a degrading or humiliating character are in any case prohibited.

After a working period of six weeks, internees shall be free to give up work at any moment, subject to eight days' notice.

These provisions constitute no obstacle to the right of the Detaining Power to employ interned doctors, dentists and other medical personnel in their professional capacity on behalf of their fellow internees, or to employ internees for administrative and maintenance work in places of internment and to detail such persons for work in the kitchens or for other domestic tasks, or to require such persons to undertake duties connected with the protection of internees against aerial bombardment or other war risks.

No internee may, however, be required to perform tasks for which he is, in the opinion of a medical officer, physically unsuited

The Detaining Power shall take entire responsibility for all working conditions, for medical attention, for the payment of wages, and for ensuring that all employed internees receive compensation for occupational accidents and diseases. The standards prescribed for the said working conditions and for compensation shall be in accordance with the national laws and regulations, and with the existing practice, they shall in no case be inferior to those obtaining for work of the same nature in the same district. Wages for work done shall be determined on an equitable basis by special agreements between the internees, the Detaining Power, and, if the case arises, employers other than the Detaining Power to provide for free maintenance of internees and for the medical attention which their state of health may require. Internees permanently detailed for categories of work mentioned in the third paragraph of this Article, shall be paid fair wages by the Detaining Power. The working conditions and the scale of compensation for occupational accidents and diseases to internees, thus detailed, shall not be inferior to those applicable to work of the same nature in the same district.

Art 96 All labour detachments shall remain part of and dependent upon a place of internment. The competent authorities of the Detaining Power and the commandant of a place of internment shall be responsible for the observance in a labour detachment of the provisions of the present Convention. The commandant shall keep an up-to-date list of the labour detachments subordinate to him and shall communicate it to the delegates of the Protecting Power, of the International Committee of the Red Cross and of other humanitarian organizations who may visit the places of internment.

## CHAPTER VI

### Personal Property and Financial Resources



Art 97 Internees shall be permitted to retain articles of personal use Monies, cheques, bonds, etc , and valuables in their possession may not be taken from them except in accordance with established procedure Detailed receipts shall be given therefor

The amounts shall be paid into the account of every internee as provided for in Article 98 Such amounts may not be converted into any other currency unless legislation in force in the territory in which the owner is interned so requires or the internee gives his consent

Articles which have above all a personal or sentimental value may not be taken away

A woman internee shall not be searched except by a woman

On release or repatriation, internees shall be given all articles, monies or other valuables taken from them during internment and shall receive in currency the balance of any credit to their accounts kept in accordance with Article 98, with the exception of any articles or amounts withheld by the Detaining Power by virtue of its legislation in force If the property of an internee is so withheld, the owner shall receive a detailed receipt

Family or identity documents in the possession of internees may not be taken away without a receipt being given At no time shall internees be left without identity documents If they have none, they shall be issued with special documents drawn up by the detaining authorities, which will serve as their identity papers until the end of their internment

Internees may keep on their persons a certain amount of money, in cash or in the shape of purchase coupons, to enable them to make purchases

Art 98. All internees shall receive regular allowances, sufficient to enable them to purchase goods and articles, such as tobacco, toilet requisites, etc. Such allowances may take the form of credits or purchase coupons.

Furthermore, internees may receive allowances from the Power to which they owe allegiance, the Protecting Powers, the organizations which may assist them, or their families, as well as the income on their property in accordance with the law of the Detaining Power. The amount of allowances granted by the Power to which they owe allegiance shall be the same for each category of internees (infirm, sick, pregnant women, etc.) but may not be allocated by that Power or distributed by the Detaining Power on the basis of discriminations between internees which are prohibited by Article 27 of the present Convention. "

The Detaining Power shall open a regular account for every internee, to which shall be credited the allowances named in the present Article, the wages earned and the remittances received, together with such sums taken from him as may be available under the legislation in force in the territory in which he is interned. Internees shall be granted all facilities consistent with the legislation in force in such territory to make remittances to their families and to other dependants. They may draw from their accounts the amounts necessary for their personal expenses, within the limits fixed by the Detaining Power. They shall at all times be afforded reasonable facilities for consulting and obtaining copies of their accounts. A statement of accounts shall be furnished to the Protecting Power, on request, and shall accompany the internee in case of transfer.

## CHAPTER VII

### Administration and Discipline

Art 99. Every place of internment shall be put under the authority of a responsible officer, chosen from the regular military forces or the regular civil administration of the

**Detaining Power** The officer in charge of the place of internment must have in his possession a copy of the present Convention in the official language, or one of the official languages, of his country and shall be responsible for its application. The staff in control of internees shall be instructed in the provisions of the present Convention and of the administrative measures adopted to ensure its application.

The text of the present Convention and the texts of special agreements concluded under the said Convention shall be posted inside the place of internment, in a language which the internees understand, or shall be in the possession of the Internee Committee.

Regulations, orders, notices and publications of every kind shall be communicated to the internees and posted inside the places of internment, < in a language which they understand "</P">

Every order and command addressed to internees individually must, likewise, be given in a language which they understand.

**Art 100** The disciplinary regime in places of internment shall be consistent with humanitarian principles, and shall in no circumstances include regulations imposing on internees any physical exertion dangerous to their health or involving physical or moral victimization.

Identification by tattooing or imprinting signs or markings on the body, is prohibited.

In particular, prolonged standing and roll-calls, punishment drill, military drill and manoeuvres, or the reduction of food rations, are prohibited.

**Art 101** Internees shall have the right to present to the authorities in whose power they are, any petition with regard to the conditions of internment to which they are subjected.

They shall also have the right to apply without restriction through the Internee Committee or, if they consider it necessary, direct to the representatives of the Protecting Power, in order to indicate to them any points on which they may have complaints to make with regard to the conditions of internment

Such petitions and complaints shall be transmitted forthwith and without alteration, and even if the latter are recognized to be unfounded, they may not occasion any punishment

Periodic reports on the situation in places of internment and as to the needs of the internees may be sent by the Internee Committees to the representatives of the Protecting Powers

Art 102 In every place of internment, the internees shall freely elect by secret ballot every six months, the members of a Committee empowered to represent them before the Detaining and the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross and any other organization which may assist them. The members of the Committee shall be eligible for

re-election

Internees so elected shall enter upon their duties after their election has been approved by the detaining authorities. The reasons for any refusals or dismissals shall be communicated to the Protecting Powers concerned

Art 103 The Internee Committees shall further the physical, spiritual and intellectual well-being of the internees

In case the internees decide, in particular, to organize a system of mutual assistance amongst themselves, this organization would be within the competence of the Committees in addition to the special duties entrusted to them under other provisions of the present Convention

Art 104 Members of Internee Committees shall not be required to perform any other work, if the accomplishment of their duties is rendered more difficult thereby

Members of Internee Committees may appoint from amongst the internees such assistants as they may require All material facilities shall be granted to them, particularly a certain freedom of movement necessary for the accomplishment of their duties (visits to labour detachments, receipt of supplies. etc )

All facilities shall likewise be accorded to members of Internee Committees for communication by post and telegraph with the detaining authorities, the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross and their delegates, and with the organizations which give assistance to internees Committee members in labour detachments shall enjoy similar facilities for communication with their Internee Committee in the principal place of internment Such communications shall not be limited, nor considered as forming a part of the quota mentioned in Article 107

Members of Internee Committees who are transferred shall be allowed a reasonable time to acquaint their successors with current affairs

## CHAPTER VIII

## Relations with the Exterior

Art 105 Immediately upon interning protected persons, the Detaining Powers shall inform them, the Power to which they owe allegiance and their Protecting Power of the measures taken for executing the provisions of the present Chapter. The Detaining Powers shall likewise inform the Parties concerned of any subsequent modifications of such measures.

Art 106 As soon as he is interned, or at the latest not more than one week after his arrival in a place of internment, and likewise in cases of sickness or transfer to another place of internment or to a hospital, every internee shall be enabled to send direct to his family, on the one hand, and to the Central Agency provided for by Article 140, on the other, an internment card similar, if possible, to the model annexed to the present Convention, informing his relatives of his detention, address and state of health. The said cards shall be forwarded as rapidly as possible and may not be delayed in any way.

Art 107 Internees shall be allowed to send and receive letters and cards. If the Detaining Power deems it necessary to limit the number of letters and cards sent by each internee, the said number shall not be less than two letters and four cards monthly; these shall be drawn up so as to conform as closely as possible to the models annexed to the present Convention. If limitations must be placed on the correspondence addressed to internees, they may be ordered only by the Power to which such internees owe allegiance, possibly at the request of the Detaining Power. Such letters and cards must be conveyed with reasonable despatch, they may not be delayed or retained for disciplinary reasons.

Internees who have been a long time without news, or who find it impossible to receive news from their relatives, or to give them news by the ordinary postal route, as well as those who are at a considerable distance from their homes, shall be allowed to send telegrams, the charges being paid by them in the currency at their disposal. They shall likewise benefit by this provision in cases which are recognized to be urgent.

As a rule, internees' mail shall be written in their own language. The Parties to the conflict may authorize correspondence in other languages.

Art. 108. Internees shall be allowed to receive, by post or by any other means, individual parcels or collective shipments containing in particular foodstuffs, clothing, medical supplies, as well as books and objects of a devotional, educational or recreational character which may meet their needs. Such shipments shall in no way free the Detaining Power from the obligations imposed upon it by virtue of the present Convention.

Should military necessity require the quantity of such shipments to be limited, due notice thereof shall be given to the Protecting Power and to the International Committee of the Red Cross, or to any other organization giving assistance to the internees and responsible for the forwarding of such shipments.

The conditions for the sending of individual parcels and collective shipments shall, if necessary, be the subject of special agreements between the Powers concerned, which may in no case delay the receipt by the internees of relief supplies. Parcels of clothing and foodstuffs may not include books. Medical relief supplies shall, as a rule, be sent in collective parcels.

Art. 109. In the absence of special agreements between Parties to the conflict regarding the conditions for the receipt and distribution of collective relief shipments, the regulations concerning collective relief which are annexed to the present Convention shall be applied.

The special agreements provided for above shall in no case restrict the right of Internee Committees to take possession of collective relief shipments intended for internees, to undertake their distribution and to dispose of them in the interests of the recipients. Nor

shall such agreements restrict the right of representatives of the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross, or any other organization giving assistance to internees and responsible for the forwarding of collective shipments, to supervise their distribution to the recipients

Art 110 An relief shipments for internees shall be exempt from import, customs and other dues

All matter sent by mail, including relief parcels sent by parcel post and remittances of money, addressed from other countries to internees or despatched by them through the post office, either direct or through the Information Bureaux provided for in Article 136 and the Central Information Agency provided for in Article 140, shall be exempt from all postal dues both in the countries of origin and destination and in intermediate countries. To this effect, in particular, the exemption provided by the Universal Postal Convention of 1947 and by the agreements of the Universal Postal Union in favour of civilians of enemy nationality detained in camps or civilian prisons, shall be extended to the other interned persons protected by the present Convention. The countries not signatory to the above-mentioned agreements shall be bound to grant freedom from charges in the same circumstances

The cost of transporting relief shipments which are intended for internees and which, by reason of their weight or any other cause, cannot be sent through the post office, shall be borne by the Detaining Power in all the territories under its control. Other Powers which are Parties to the present Convention shall bear the cost of transport in their respective territories

Costs connected with the transport of such shipments, which are not covered by the above paragraphs, shall be charged to the senders

The High Contracting Parties shall endeavour to reduce, so far as possible, the charges for telegrams sent by internees, or addressed to them



Art 111 Should military operations prevent the Powers concerned from fulfilling their obligation to ensure the conveyance of the mail and relief shipments provided for in Articles 106, 107, 108 and 113, the Protecting Powers concerned, the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other organization duly approved by the Parties to the conflict may undertake to ensure the conveyance of such shipments by suitable means (rail, motor vehicles, vessels or aircraft, etc ) For this purpose, the High Contracting Parties shall endeavour to supply them with such transport, and to allow its circulation, especially by granting the necessary safe-conducts

Such transport may also be used to convey (a) correspondence, lists and reports exchanged between the Central Information Agency referred to in Article 140 and the National Bureaux referred to in Article 136,

(b) correspondence and reports relating to internees which the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other organization assisting the internees exchange either with their own delegates or with the Parties TO conflict  
"</P">

These provisions in no way detract from the right of any Party to the conflict to arrange other means of transport if it should so prefer, nor preclude the granting of safe-conducts, under mutually agreed conditions, to such means of transport

The costs occasioned by the use of such means of transport shall be borne, in proportion to the importance of the shipments, by the Parties to the conflict whose nationals are benefited thereby

Art 112 The censoring of correspondence addressed to internees or despatched by them shall be done as quickly as possible

The examination of consignments intended for internees shall not be carried out under conditions that will expose the goods contained in them to deterioration. It shall be done in the presence of the addressee, or of a fellow-internee duly delegated by him. The delivery to internees of individual or collective consignments shall not be delayed under the pretext of difficulties of censorship.

Any prohibition of correspondence ordered by the Parties to the conflict either for military or political reasons, shall be only temporary and its duration shall be as short as possible.

Art 113 The Detaining Powers shall provide all reasonable execution facilities for the transmission, through the Protecting Power or the Central Agency provided for in Article 140, or as otherwise required, of wills, powers of attorney, letters of authority, or any other documents intended for internees or despatched by them.

In all cases the Detaining Powers shall facilitate the execution and authentication in due legal form of such documents on behalf of internees, in particular by allowing them to consult a lawyer.

Art 114 The Detaining Power shall afford internees all facilities to enable them to manage their property, provided this is not incompatible with the conditions of internment and the law which is applicable. For this purpose, the said Power may give them permission to leave the place of internment in urgent cases and if circumstances allow.

Art 115 In all cases where an internee is a party to proceedings in any court, the Detaining Power shall, if he so requests, cause the court to be informed of his detention and shall, within legal limits, ensure that all necessary steps are taken to prevent him from being in any way prejudiced, by reason of his internment, as regards the preparation and conduct of his case or as regards the execution of any judgment of the court.

Art 116. Every internee shall be allowed to receive visitors, especially near relatives, at regular intervals and as frequently as possible

As far as is possible, internees shall be permitted to visit their homes in urgent cases, particularly in cases of death or serious illness of relatives

## CHAPTER IX

### Penal and Disciplinary Sanctions

Art 117 Subject to the provisions of the present Chapter, the laws in force in the territory in which they are detained will continue to apply to internees who commit offences during internment

If general laws, regulations or orders declare acts committed by internees to be punishable, whereas the same acts are not punishable when committed by persons who are not internees, such acts shall entail disciplinary punishments only

No internee may be punished more than once for the same act, or on the same count

Art 118 The courts or authorities shall in passing sentence take as far as possible into account the fact that the defendant is not a national of the Detaining Power. They shall be free to reduce the penalty prescribed for the offence with which the internee is charged and shall not be obliged, to this end, to apply the minimum sentence prescribed.

Imprisonment in premises without daylight, and, in general, all forms of cruelty without exception are forbidden.

Internees who have served disciplinary or judicial sentences shall not be treated differently from other internees.

The duration of preventive detention undergone by an internee shall be deducted from any disciplinary or judicial penalty involving confinement to which he may be sentenced.

Internee Committees shall be informed of all judicial proceedings instituted against internees whom they represent, and of their result.

Art. 119 The disciplinary punishments applicable to internees shall be the following:

(1) a fine which shall not exceed 50 per cent of the wages which the internee would otherwise receive under the provisions of Article 95 during a period of not more than thirty days.

(2) discontinuance of privileges granted over and above the treatment provided for by the present Convention.

(3) fatigue duties, not exceeding two hours daily, in connection with the maintenance of the place of internment.

(4) confinement.

In no case shall disciplinary penalties be inhuman, brutal or dangerous for the health of internees. Account shall be taken of the internee's age, sex and state of health.

The duration of any single punishment shall in no case exceed a maximum of thirty consecutive days, even if the internee is answerable for several breaches of discipline when his case is dealt with, whether such breaches are connected or not.

Art. 120. Internees who are recaptured after having escaped or when attempting to escape, shall be liable only to disciplinary punishment in respect of this act, even if it is a repeated offence.

Article 118, paragraph 3, notwithstanding, internees punished as a result of escape or attempt to escape, may be subjected to special surveillance, on condition that such surveillance does not affect the state of their health, that it is exercised in a place of internment and that it does not entail the abolition of any of the safeguards granted by the present Convention. "

Internees who aid and abet an escape or attempt to escape, shall be liable on this count to disciplinary punishment only.

Art. 121. Escape, or attempt to escape, even if it is a repeated offence, shall not be deemed an aggravating circumstance in cases where an internee is prosecuted for offences committed during his escape.

The Parties to the conflict shall ensure that the competent authorities exercise leniency in deciding whether punishment inflicted for an offence shall be of a disciplinary or judicial

nature, especially in respect of acts committed in connection with an escape, whether successful or not

Art 122 Acts which constitute offences against discipline shall be investigated immediately This rule shall be applied, in particular, in cases of escape or attempt to escape Recaptured internees shall be handed over to the competent authorities as soon as possible

In cases of offences against discipline, confinement awaiting trial shall be reduced to an absolute minimum for all internees, and shall not exceed fourteen days Its duration shall in any case be deducted from any sentence of confinement

The provisions of Articles 124 and 125 shall apply to internees who are in confinement awaiting trial for offences against discipline

Art 123 Without prejudice to the competence of courts and higher authorities, disciplinary punishment may be ordered only by the commandant of the place of internment, or by a responsible officer or official who replaces him, or to whom he has delegated his disciplinary powers

Before any disciplinary punishment is awarded, the accused internee shall be given precise information regarding the offences of which he is accused, and given an opportunity of explaining his conduct and of defending himself He shall be permitted, in particular, to call witnesses and to have recourse, if necessary, to the services of a qualified interpreter The decision shall be announced in the presence of the accused and of a member of the Internee Committee

The period elapsing between the time of award of a disciplinary punishment and its execution shall not exceed one month

When an internee is awarded a further disciplinary punishment, a period of at least three days shall elapse between the execution of any two of the punishments, if the duration of one of these is ten days or more

A record of disciplinary punishments shall be maintained by the commandant of the place of internment and shall be open to inspection by representatives of the Protecting Power

Art 124 Internees shall not in any case be transferred to penitentiary establishments (prisons, penitentiaries, convict prisons, etc ) to undergo disciplinary punishment therein

The premises in which disciplinary punishments are undergone shall conform to sanitary requirements they shall in particular be provided with adequate bedding Internees undergoing punishment shall be enabled to keep

Women internees undergoing disciplinary punishment shall be confined in separate quarters from male internees and shall be under the immediate supervision of women

Art 125 Internees awarded disciplinary punishment shall be allowed to exercise and to stay in the open air at least two hours daily

They shall be allowed, if they so request, to be present at the daily medical inspections They shall receive the attention which their state of health requires and, if necessary, shall be removed to the infirmary of the place of internment or to a hospital

They shall have permission to read and write, likewise to send and receive letters. Parcels and remittances of money, however, may be withheld from them until the completion of their punishment, such consignments shall meanwhile be entrusted to the Internee Committee, who will hand over to the infirmary the perishable goods contained in the parcels.

No internee given a disciplinary punishment may be deprived of the benefit of the provisions of Articles 107 and 143 of the present Convention.

Art 126 The provisions of Articles 71 to 76 inclusive shall apply, by analogy, to proceedings against internees who are in the national territory of the Detaining Power.

## CHAPTER X

### Transfers of Internees

Art 127 The transfer of internees shall always be effected humanely. As a general rule, it shall be carried out by rail or other means of transport, and under conditions at least equal to those obtaining for the forces of the Detaining Power in their changes of station. If, as an exceptional measure, such removals have to be effected on foot, they may not take place unless the internees are in a fit state of health, and may not in any case expose them to excessive fatigue.



The Detaining Power shall supply internees during transfer with drinking water and food sufficient in quantity, quality and variety to maintain them in good health, and also with the necessary clothing, adequate shelter and the necessary medical attention. The Detaining Power shall take all suitable precautions to ensure their safety during transfer and shall establish before their departure a complete list of all internees transferred.

Sick, wounded or infirm internees and maternity cases shall not be transferred if the journey would be seriously detrimental to them, unless their safety imperatively so demands.

If the combat zone draws close to a place of internment, the internees in the said place shall not be transferred unless their removal can be carried out in adequate conditions of safety, or unless they are exposed to greater risks by remaining on the spot than by being transferred.

When making decisions regarding the transfer of internees, the Detaining Power shall take their interests into account and, in particular, shall not do anything to increase the difficulties of repatriating them or returning them to their own homes.

Art 128 In the event of transfer, internees shall be officially advised of their departure and of their new postal address. Such notification shall be given in time for them to pack their luggage and inform their next of kin.

They shall be allowed to take with them their personal effects, and the correspondence and parcels which have arrived for them. The weight of such baggage may be limited if the conditions of transfer so require, but in no case to less than twenty-five kilograms per internee.

Mail and parcels addressed to their former place of internment shall be forwarded to them without delay

The commandant of the place of internment shall take, in agreement with the Internee Committee, any measures needed to ensure the transport of the internees' community property and of the luggage the internees are unable to take with them in consequence of restrictions imposed by virtue of the second paragraph

## CHAPTER XI

### Deaths

Art 129 The wills of internees shall be received for safe-keeping by the responsible authorities, and if the event of the death of an internee his will shall be transmitted without delay to a person whom he has previously designated

Deaths of internees shall be certified in every case by a doctor, and a death certificate shall be made out, showing the causes of death and the conditions under which it occurred

An official record of the death, duly registered, shall be drawn up in accordance with the procedure relating thereto in force in the territory where the place of internment is situated, and a duly certified copy of such record shall be transmitted without delay to the Protecting Power as well as to the Central Agency referred to in Article 140

Art 130 The detaining authorities shall ensure that internees who die while interned are honourably buried, if possible according to the rites of the religion to which they belonged and that their graves are respected, properly maintained, and marked in such a way that they can always be recognized

Deceased internees shall be buried in individual graves unless unavoidable circumstances require the use of collective graves. Bodies may be cremated only for imperative reasons of hygiene, on account of the religion of the deceased or in accordance with his expressed wish to this effect. In case of cremation, the fact shall be stated and the reasons given in the death certificate of the deceased. The ashes shall be retained for safe-keeping by the detaining authorities and shall be transferred as soon as possible to the next of kin on their request

As soon as circumstances permit, and not later than the close of hostilities, the Detaining Power shall forward lists of graves of deceased internees to the Powers on whom deceased internees depended, through the Information Bureaux provided for in Article 136. Such lists shall include all particulars necessary for the identification of the deceased internees, as well as the exact location of their graves

Art 131 Every death or serious injury of an internee, caused or suspected to have been caused by a sentry, another internee or any other person, as well as any death the cause of which is unknown, shall be immediately followed by an official enquiry by the Detaining Power

A communication on this subject shall be sent immediately to the Protecting Power. The evidence of any witnesses shall be taken, and a report including such evidence shall be prepared and forwarded to the said Protecting Power

If the enquiry indicates the guilt of one or more persons, the Detaining Power shall take all necessary steps to ensure the prosecution of the person or persons responsible

## CHAPTER XII

### Release, Repatriation and Accommodation in Neutral Countries

Art 132 Each interned person shall be released by the Detaining Power as soon as the reasons which necessitated his internment no longer exist

The Parties to the conflict shall, moreover, endeavour during the course of hostilities, to conclude agreements for the release, the repatriation, the return to places of residence or the accommodation in a neutral country of certain classes of internees, in particular children, pregnant women and mothers with infants and young children, wounded and sick, and internees who have been detained for a long time

Art 133 Internment shall cease as soon as possible after the close of hostilities

Internees in the territory of a Party to the conflict against whom penal proceedings are pending for offences not exclusively subject to disciplinary penalties, may be detained until the close of such proceedings and, if circumstances require, until the completion of the penalty. The same shall apply to internees who have been previously sentenced to a punishment depriving them of liberty

By agreement between the Detaining Power and the Powers concerned, committees may be set up after the close of hostilities, or of the occupation of territories, to search for dispersed internees

Art 134 *The High Contracting Parties shall endeavour, upon the Repatriation close of hostilities or occupation, to ensure the return of all internees to their last place of residence, or to facilitate their residence repatriation*

Art 135 *The Detaining Power shall bear the expense of returning released internees to the places where they were residing when interned, or, if it took them into custody while they were in transit or on the high seas, the cost of completing their journey or of their return to their point of departure*

*Where a Detaining Power refuses permission to reside in its territory to a released internee who previously had his permanent domicile therein, such Detaining Power shall pay the cost of the said internee's repatriation. If, however, the internee elects to return to his country on his own responsibility or in obedience to the Government of the Power to which he owes allegiance, the Detaining Power need not pay the expenses of his journey beyond the point of his departure from its territory. The Detaining Power need not pay the cost of repatriation of an internee who was interned at his own request*

*If internees are transferred in accordance with Article 45, the transferring and receiving Powers shall agree on the portion of the above costs to be borne by each*

*The foregoing shall not prejudice such special agreements as may be concluded between Parties to the conflict concerning the exchange and repatriation of their nationals in enemy hands*

## SECTION V

### Information Bureaux and Central Agency

Art 136 Upon the outbreak of a conflict and in all cases of occupation, each of the Parties to the conflict shall establish an official Information Bureau responsible for receiving and transmitting information in respect of the protected persons who are in its power

Each of the Parties to the conflict shall, within the shortest possible period, give its Bureau information of any measure taken by it concerning any protected persons who are kept in custody for more than two weeks, who are subjected to assigned residence or who are interned. It shall, furthermore, require its various departments concerned with such matters to provide the aforesaid Bureau promptly with information concerning all changes pertaining to these protected persons, as, for example, transfers, releases, repatriations, escapes, admittances to hospitals, births and deaths

Art 137 Each national Bureau shall immediately forward information concerning protected persons by the most rapid means to the Powers in whose territory they resided, through the intermediary of the Protecting Powers and likewise through the Central Agency provided for in Article 140. The Bureaux shall also reply to all enquiries which may be received regarding protected persons

Information Bureaux shall transmit information concerning a protected person unless its transmission might be detrimental to the person concerned or to his or her relatives. Even in such a case, the information may not be withheld from the Central Agency which, upon being notified of the circumstances, will take the necessary precautions indicated in Article 140

All communications in writing made by any Bureau shall be authenticated by a signature or a seal

Art 138 The information received by the national Bureau and transmitted by it shall be of such a character as to make it possible to identify the protected person exactly and to advise his next of kin quickly The information in respect of each person shall include at least his surname, first names, place and date of birth, nationality last residence and distinguishing characteristics, the first name of the father and the maiden name of the mother, the date, place and nature of the action taken with regard to the individual, the address at which correspondence may be sent to him and the name and address of the person to be informed

Likewise, information regarding the state of health of internees who are seriously ill or seriously wounded shall be supplied regularly and if possible every week

Art 139 Each national Information Bureau shall, furthermore, be responsible for collecting all personal valuables left by protected persons mentioned in Article 136, in particular those who have been repatriated or released, or who have escaped or died, it shall forward the said valuables to those concerned, either direct, or, if necessary, through the Central Agency Such articles shall be sent by the Bureau in sealed packets which shall be accompanied by statements giving clear and full identity particulars of the person to whom the articles belonged, and by a complete list of the contents of the parcel Detailed records shall be maintained of the receipt and despatch of all such valuables

Art 140. A Central Information Agency for protected persons, in particular for internees, shall be created in a neutral country The International Committee of the Red Cross shall, if it deems necessary, propose to the Powers concerned the organization of such an Agency, which may be the same as that provided for in Article 123 of the Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of 12 August 1949

The function of the Agency shall be to collect all information of the type set forth in Article 136 which it may obtain through official or private channels and to transmit it as rapidly as possible to the countries of origin or of residence of the persons concerned, except in cases where such transmissions might be detrimental to the persons whom the said information concerns, or to their relatives. It shall receive from the Parties to the conflict all reasonable facilities for effecting such transmissions.

The High Contracting Parties, and in particular those whose nationals benefit by the services of the Central Agency, are requested to give the said Agency the financial aid it may require.

The foregoing provisions shall in no way be interpreted as restricting the humanitarian activities of the International Committee of the Red Cross and of the relief Societies described in Article 142.

Art 141 The national Information Bureaux and the Central Information Agency shall enjoy free postage for all mail, likewise the exemptions provided for in Article 110, and further, so far as possible, exemption from telegraphic charges or, at least, greatly reduced rates.

#### PART IV

#### EXECUTION OF THE CONVENTION



## SECTION I

### General Provisions

Art 142 Subject to the measures which the Detaining Powers may consider essential to ensure their security or to meet any other reasonable need, the representatives of religious organizations, relief societies, or any other organizations assisting the protected persons, shall receive from these Powers, for themselves or their duly accredited agents, all facilities for visiting the protected persons, for distributing relief supplies and material from any source, intended for educational, recreational or religious purposes, or for assisting them in organizing

their leisure time within the places of internment. Such societies or organizations may be constituted in the territory of the Detaining Power, or in any other country, or they may have an international character.

The Detaining Power may limit the number of societies and organizations whose delegates are allowed to carry out their activities in its territory and under its supervision, on condition, however, that such limitation shall not hinder the supply of effective and adequate relief to all protected persons.

The special position of the International Committee of the Red Cross in this field shall be recognized and respected at all times.

Art 143 Representatives or delegates of the Protecting Powers shall have permission to go to all places where protected persons are, particularly to places of internment, detention and work.

They shall have access to all premises occupied by protected persons and shall be able to interview the latter without witnesses, personally or through an interpreter

Such visits may not be prohibited except for reasons of imperative military necessity, and then only as an exceptional and temporary measure. Their duration and frequency shall not be restricted

Such representatives and delegates shall have full liberty to select the places they wish to visit. The Detaining or Occupying Power, the Protecting Power and when occasion arises the Power of origin of the persons to be visited, may agree that compatriots of the internees shall be permitted to participate in the visits

The delegates of the International Committee of the Red Cross shall also enjoy the above prerogatives. The appointment of such delegates shall be submitted to the approval of the Power governing the territories where they will carry out their duties

Art 144 The High Contracting Parties undertake, in time of peace as in time of war, to disseminate the text of the present Convention as widely as

possible in their respective countries, and, in particular, to include the study thereof in their programmes of military and, if possible, civil instruction, so that the principles thereof may become known to the entire population

Any civilian, military, police or other authorities, who in time of war assume responsibilities in respect of protected persons, must possess the text of the Convention and be specially instructed as to its provisions

Art 145 The High Contracting Parties shall communicate to one another through the Swiss Federal Council and, during hostilities, through the Protecting Powers, the official translations of the present Convention, as well as the laws and regulations which they may adopt to ensure the application thereof

Art. 146 The High Contracting Parties undertake to enact any legislation necessary to provide effective penal sanctions for persons committing, or ordering to be committed, any of the grave breaches of the present Convention defined in the following Article

Each High Contracting Party shall be under the obligation to search for persons alleged to have committed, or to have ordered to be committed, such grave breaches, and shall bring such persons, regardless of their nationality, before its own courts. It may also, if it prefers, and in accordance with the provisions of its own legislation, hand such persons over for trial to another High Contracting Party concerned, provided such High Contracting Party has made out a prima facie case

Each High Contracting Party shall take measures necessary for the suppression of all acts contrary to the provisions of the present Convention other than the grave breaches defined in the following Article

In all circumstances, the accused persons shall benefit by safeguards of

proper trial and defence, which shall not be less favourable than those provided by Article 105 and those following of the Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of 12 August 1949. Art 147 Grave breaches to which the preceding Article relates shall be those involving any of the following acts, if committed against persons or property protected by the present Convention: wilful killing, torture or inhuman treatment, including biological experiments, wilfully causing great suffering or serious injury to body or health, unlawful deportation or transfer or unlawful confinement of a protected person, compelling a protected person to serve in the forces of a hostile Power, or wilfully depriving a protected person of the rights of fair and regular trial prescribed in the present Convention, taking of hostages and extensive destruction and appropriation of property, not justified by military necessity and carried out unlawfully and wantonly

Art 148 No High Contracting Party shall be allowed to absolve itself or any other High Contracting Party of any liability incurred by itself or by another High Contracting Party in respect of breaches referred to in the preceding Article

Art. 149. At the request of a Party to the conflict, an enquiry shall be instituted, in a manner to be decided between the interested Parties, concerning any alleged violation of the Convention

If agreement has not been reached concerning the procedure for the enquiry, the Parties should agree on the choice of an umpire who will decide upon the procedure to be followed

Once the violation has been established, the Parties to the conflict shall put an end to it and shall repress it with the least possible delay

## SECTION II

### Final Provisions

Art 150 The present Convention is established in English and in French Both texts are equally authentic

The Swiss Federal Council shall arrange for official translations of the Convention to be made in the Russian and Spanish languages

Art 151 The present Convention, which bears the date of this day, is open to signature until 12 February 1950, in the name of the Powers represented at the Conference which opened at Geneva on 21 April 1949

Art 152 The present Convention shall be ratified as soon as possible and the ratifications shall be deposited at Berne

A record shall be drawn up of the deposit of each instrument of ratification and certified copies of this record shall be transmitted by the Swiss Federal Council to all the Powers in whose name the Convention has been signed, or whose accession has been notified

Art 153 The present Convention shall come into force six months after not less than two instruments of ratification have been deposited

Thereafter, it shall come into force for each High Contracting Party six months after the deposit of the instrument of ratification

Art 154 In the relations between the Powers who are bound by the Hague Conventions respecting the Laws and Customs of War on Land, whether that of 29 July 1899, or that of 18 October 1907, and who are parties to the present Convention, this last Convention shall be supplementary to Sections II and III of the Regulations annexed to the above-mentioned Conventions of The Hague

Art 155 From the date of its coming into force, it shall be open to any Power in whose name the present Convention has not been signed, to accede to this Convention

Art 156 Accessions shall be notified in writing to the Swiss Federal Council, and shall take effect six months after the date on which they are received

The Swiss Federal Council shall communicate the accessions to all the Powers in whose name the Convention has been signed, or whose accession has been notified

Art 157 The situations provided for in Articles 2 and 3 shall have immediate effect to ratifications deposited and accessions notified by the Parties to the conflict before or after the beginning of hostilities or occupation The Swiss Federal Council shall communicate by the quickest method any ratifications or accessions received from Parties to the conflict

Art 158 Each of the High Contracting Parties shall be at liberty to  
denounce the present Convention

The denunciation shall be notified in writing to the Swiss Federal Council, which shall transmit it to the Governments of all the High Contracting Parties

The denunciation shall take effect one year after the notification thereof has been made to the Swiss Federal Council However, a denunciation of which notification has been made at a time when the denouncing Power is involved in a conflict shall not take effect until

peace has been concluded, and until after operations connected with release, repatriation and re-establishment of the persons protected by the present Convention have been terminated

The denunciation shall have effect only in respect of the denouncing Power. It shall in no way impair the obligations which the Parties to the conflict shall remain bound to fulfil by virtue of the principles of the law of nations, as they result from the usages established among civilized peoples, from the laws of humanity and the dictates of the public conscience

Art 159 The Swiss Federal Council shall register the present Convention with the Secretariat of the United Nations. The Swiss Federal Council shall also inform the Secretariat of the United Nations of all ratifications, accessions and denunciations received by it with respect to the present Convention

In witness whereof the undersigned, having deposited their respective full powers, have signed the present Convention

Done at Geneva this twelfth day of August 1949, in the English and French languages. The original shall be deposited in the Archives of the Swiss Confederation. The Swiss Federal Council shall transmit certified copies

thereof to each of the signatory and acceding States

ANNEX I

## Draft Agreement Relating to Hospital and Safety Zones and Localities

Art 1 Hospital and safety zones shall be strictly reserved for the persons mentioned in Article 23 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of 12 August 1949, and in Article 14 of the Geneva Convention relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War of 12 August 1949, and for the personnel entrusted with the organization and administration of these zones and localities, and with the care of the persons therein assembled

Nevertheless, persons whose permanent residence is within such zones shall have the right to stay there

Art 2 No persons residing, in whatever capacity, in a hospital and safety zone shall perform any work, either within or without the zone, directly connected with military operations or the production of war material

Art 3 The Power establishing a hospital and safety zone shall take all necessary measures to prohibit access to all persons who have no right of residence or entry therein

Art 4 Hospital and safety zones shall fulfil the following conditions (a) they shall comprise only a small part of the territory governed by the Power which has established them (b) they shall be thinly populated in relation to the possibilities of accommodation (c) they shall be far removed and free from all military objectives, or large industrial or administrative establishments

(d) they shall not be situated in areas which, according to every probability, may become important for the conduct of the war



Art 5 Hospital and safety zones shall be subject to the following obligations (a) the lines of communication and means of transport which they possess shall not be used for the transport of military personnel or material, even in transit (b) they shall in no case be defended by military means

Art 6 Hospital and safety zones shall be marked by means of oblique red bands on a white ground, placed on the buildings and outer precincts

Zones reserved exclusively for the wounded and sick may be marked by means of the Red Cross (Red Crescent, Red Lion and Sun) emblem on a white ground

They may be similarly marked at night by means of appropriate illumination

Art 7 The Powers shall communicate to all the High Contracting Parties in peacetime or on the outbreak of hostilities, a list of the hospital and safety zones in the territories governed by them They shall also give notice of any new zones set up during hostilities

As soon as the adverse party has received the above-mentioned notification, the zone shall be regularly established

If, however, the adverse party considers that the conditions of the present agreement have not been fulfilled, it may refuse to recognize the zone by giving immediate notice thereof to the Party responsible for the said zone, or may make its recognition of such zone dependent upon the institution of the control provided for in Article 8

Art 8 Any Power having recognized one or several hospital and safety zones instituted by the adverse Party shall be entitled to demand control by one or more Special Commissions, for the purpose of ascertaining if the

zones fulfil the conditions and obligations stipulated in the present agreement

For this purpose, members of the Special Commissions shall at all times have free access to the various zones and may even reside there permanently They shall be given all facilities for their duties of inspection

Art 9 Should the Special Commissions note any facts which they consider contrary to the stipulations of the present agreement, they shall at once draw the attention of the Power governing the said zone to these facts, and shall fix a time limit of five days within which the matter should be rectified They shall duly notify the Power which has recognized the zone

If, when the time limit has expired, the Power governing the zone has not complied with the warning, the adverse Party may declare that it is no longer bound by the present agreement in respect of the said zone

Art 10 Any Power setting up one or more hospital and safety zones, and the adverse Parties to whom their existence has been notified, shall nominate or have nominated by the Protecting Powers or by other neutral Powers, persons eligible to be members of the Special Commissions mentioned in Articles 8 and 9

Art 11 In no circumstances may hospital and safety zones be the object of attack They shall be protected and respected at all times by the Parties to the conflict

Art. 12. In the case of occupation of a territory, the hospital and safety zones therein shall continue to be respected and utilized as such

Their purpose may, however, be modified by the Occupying Power, on condition that all measures are taken to ensure the safety of the persons accommodated

Art 13 The present agreement shall also apply to localities which the Powers may utilize for the same purposes as hospital and safety zones

## ANNEX II

### Draft Regulations concerning Collective Relief

Article 1 The Internee Committees shall be allowed to distribute collective relief shipments for which they are responsible to all internees who are dependent for administration on the said Committee's place of internment, including those internees who are in hospitals, or in prison or other penitentiary establishments

Art 2 The distribution of collective relief shipments shall be effected in accordance with the instructions of the donors and with a plan drawn up by the Internee Committees The issue of medical stores shall, however, be

made for preference in agreement with the senior medical officers, and the latter may, in hospitals and infirmaries, waive the said instructions, if the needs of their patients so demand Within the limits thus defined, the distribution shall always be carried out equitably

Art 3 Members of Internee Committees shall be allowed to go to the railway stations or other points of arrival of relief supplies near their places of internment so as to enable them to verify the quantity as well as the quality of the goods received and to make out detailed reports thereon for the donors

Art 4 Internee Committees shall be given the facilities necessary for verifying whether the distribution of collective relief in all subdivisions and annexes of their places of internment has been carried out in accordance with their instructions

Art 5 Internee Committees shall be allowed to complete, and to cause to be completed by members of the Internee Committees in labour detachments or by the senior medical officers of infirmaries and hospitals, forms or questionnaires intended for the donors, relating to collective relief supplies (distribution, requirements, quantities, etc ) Such forms and questionnaires, duly completed, shall be forwarded to the donors without delay

Art 6 In order to secure the regular distribution of collective relief supplies to the internees in their place of internment, and to meet any needs that may arise through the arrival of fresh parties of internees, the Internee Committees shall be allowed to create and maintain sufficient reserve stocks of collective relief For this purpose, they shall have suitable warehouses at their disposal, each warehouse shall be provided with two locks, the Internee Committee holding the keys of one lock, and the commandant of the place of internment the keys of the other

Art 7 The High Contracting Parties, and the Detaining Powers in particular, shall, so far as is in any way possible and subject to the regulations governing the food supply of the population, authorize purchases of goods to be made in their territories for the distribution of collective relief to the internees They shall likewise facilitate the transfer of funds and other financial measures of a technical or administrative nature taken for the purpose of making such purchases

Art. 8 The foregoing provisions shall not constitute an obstacle to the right of internees to receive collective relief before their arrival in a place of internment or in the course of their transfer, nor to the possibility of representatives of the Protecting Power, or of the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other humanitarian organization giving assistance to internees and responsible for forwarding such supplies, ensuring the distribution thereof to the recipients by any other means they may deem suitable

;

[ANNEX III, illustrations of Internment Card, Letter, and Correspondence Card, not included]

;

;

Unit	Last Name	First Name	Rank	SSN	Start Date	Exp. Date
800 MP			SFC		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			MSG		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SSG		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			CPT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SFC		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		02/07/03	02/06/04
800 MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			SPC		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGM		07/25/03	7/24/2004
800 MP			MAJ		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			1LT		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			SFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			LTC		12/27/02	12/26/03
800 MP			SSG		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		02/03/03	02/02/04
800 MP			SPC		02/18/03	02/17/04
800 MP			CPT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			CPT		01/02/03	01/01/04
800 MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			SGT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			MAJ		01/02/03	01/01/04
800 MP			MAJ		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SSG		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			CW4		03/17/03	03/16/04
800 MP			MAJ		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			BG		05/21/03	05/20/04
800 MP			SGT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			1LT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			1LTC		01/02/03	01/01/03
800 MP			MSG		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			CPT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			CPT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			LTC		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			COL		12/18/03	12/17/04
800 MP			MAJ		01/02/03	01/01/03
800 MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			ISPC		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			LTC		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			MAJ		01/02/03	01/01/03
800 MP			SFC		03/17/03	03/16/04
800 MP			SPC		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
800 MP			SGT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			CPT		01/02/03	01/01/03
800 MP			SGT		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SPC		01/16/03	01/15/04
800 MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04

Unit	LAST	FIRST, MI	RANK		Start Date	End Date
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			1LT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			CPT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
822ND MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03





## 724th MP BN and 822nd, 267th, 190TH and 223rd MP CO's Roster

1/29/2004

Unit	LAST	FIRST, MI	RANK	SSN	Start Date	End Date
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			CPT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			CPL		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			COL		11/03/03	02/07/04
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			CPT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			MAJ		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			CPT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			PCW2		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			MSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGM		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			MAJ		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			PFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03

## 724th MP BN and 822nd, 267th, 190TH and 223rd MP CO's Roster

1/29/2004

Unit	LAST	FIRST MI	RANK	SSN	Start Date	End Date
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			MSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			PC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			PC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			PC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			LT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			PC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			PC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			LT		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
724th MP B			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			MSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			LT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03

## 724th MP BN and 822nd, 267th, 190TH and 223rd MP CO's Roster

1/29/2014

Unit	LAST	FIRST, MI	RANK	SSN	Start Date	End Date
267TH MP			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			MSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			ILT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SFC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			ISG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			CP1		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SSG		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03
190TH MP			ILT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SSG		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SSG		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SSG		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SFC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04

## 724th MP BN and 822nd, 267th, 190TH and 223rd MP CO's Roster

1/29/2004

Unit	LAST	FIRST, MI	RANK	SSN	Start Date	End Date
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SSG		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SSG		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SFC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SSG		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SSG		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			1LT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			PFC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SSG		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04

## 724th MP BN and 822nd, 267th, 190TH and 223rd MP CO's Roster

1/29/2004

Unit	LAST	FIRST, MI	RANK	SSN	Start Date	End Date
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SFC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			1LT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SFC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SFC		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SSG		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SGT		03/15/03	03/14/04
190TH MP			SPC		03/15/03	03/14/04
267TH MP			SPC		12/27/02	12/26/03
267TH MP			SGT		12/27/02	12/26/03

320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	CSM	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	CPT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	MAJ	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGM	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	ILT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	MSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/03
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	MSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	CPT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	MSG	10-Feb-03	9-Feb-04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	PFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	CW2	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
h			

Unit	Rank	Start Date	End Date
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	2LT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	LTC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	COL	12/12/03	12/12/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	PFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	MAJ	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	1LT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	MSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SGT	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	LTC	12/07/03	12/07/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SSG	02/10/03	02/09/04
320th MP BN	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
229th MP CO	1LT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004

Unit	Rank	Start Date	End Date
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	CPT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	2LT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	MSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SPC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	PFC	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	B SSG	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
229th MP CO	SGT	2/10/2003	2/9/2004
870th MP CO	SPC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	PFC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SGT	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SSG	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SGT	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SPC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SPC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SGT	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	1LT	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SGT	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SGT	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	PFC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SSG	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SPC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SPC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SFC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SGT	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	E04	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SGT	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SFC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SGT	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SPC	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04
870th MP CO	SSG	15-Mar-03	14-Mar-04













Unit	Rank	Start Date	End Date
320th MP CO	SGT	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	CPL	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SGT	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SSG	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SGT	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SFC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	PFC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SGT	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	PFC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SGT	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SSG	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	ILT	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SPC	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
320th MP CO	SSG	1/21/2003	5/25/2004
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SGT	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SSG	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SSG	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	ILT	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SGT	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SPC	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04
372nd MP CO	SGT	23-Feb-03	22-Feb-04

## 744th MP Bn Roster

1/29/2004 5 47 AM

Unit	LAST	FIRST, MI	RANK	Start Date	End Date
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			MSG	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			PFC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SSG	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SSG	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SSG	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	04/10/03	04/23/03
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	03/15/03	03/14/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			CSM	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SFC	02/15/03	02/14/03
744th MP			MAJ	09/02/03	09/01/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			LTC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SFC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SSG	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			1LT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			CPT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SSG	01/24/03	01/23/03
744th MP			PV2	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			PVT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			CPT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			1LT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			PFC		
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			LTC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SFC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SSG	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SGT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SSG	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SSG	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			CPT	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			PFC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SFC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SPC	01/21/03	01/20/04
744th MP			SSG	01/21/03	01/20/04
186th MP			PFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PFC	02/10/03	02/09/04

Unit	LAST	FIRST MI	RANK	SSN	Start Date	End Date
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PV2		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PV2		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			MSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PV2		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			1SG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PV2		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PV2		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			CPT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PV2		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04



Unit	LAST	FIRST MI	RANK	SSN	Start Date	End Date
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SSG		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PV2		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			2LT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PV2		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PV2		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			PFC		02/10/03	02/09/04
186th MP			SGT		02/10/03	02/09/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			1SG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			1LT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPL		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			MSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPL		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SFC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPL		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			PFC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04

Unit	LAST	FIRST, MI	RANK	SSN	Start Date	End Date
79th MP			SFC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPL		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPL		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPL		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPL		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SFC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SSG		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SFC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPL		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SPC		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			SGT		01/24/03	01/23/04
79th MP			CPL		01/24/03	01/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			PFC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SSG		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SSG		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04

Unit	LAST	FIRST MI	RANK	SSN	Start Date	End Date
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			1LT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SSG		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			CPT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			PFC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			PFC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SFC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SSG		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			PV1		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SGT		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/24/04
770TH			SPC		02/24/03	02/23/04
770TH			SSG		02/24/03	02/23/04
186th MP			SPC		02/10/03	02/09/04
770TH			SFC		02/24/03	02/23/04

310TH MP BN

Unit	Serial	Rank	Start Date	End Date
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	PFC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	CPT	0-Dec-03	
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	MSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	26-Nov-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SFC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SFC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	CPT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	CPT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SFC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	CPT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	MAJ	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	MSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	PFC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SFC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN	[REDACTED]	LTC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04

## 310TH MP BN

310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		MAJ	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	16-Oct-03	1-Nov-03
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		W01	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SFC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		PFC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		MSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SSG	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	16-Dec-03	29-Dec-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		PFC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SPC	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		SGT	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
310th MP BN		CSM	21-Jan-03	20-Jan-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	25-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	10-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	8-Aug-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	3-Oct-03	6-Apr-04

310TH MP BN

977th MP CO		SGT	6-Dec-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	8-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	12-Jun-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	10-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	3-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	7-Nov-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	3-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Dec-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	10-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		1LT	25-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	8-Aug-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	8-Aug-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	28-Nov-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	13-Nov-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	23-Dec-03	
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PVT	23-Dec-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	3-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	22-Jan-04	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04

310TH MP BN

977th MP CO		SSG	23-Dec-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	3-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	3-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	3-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	2-Jan-04	
977th MP CO		PVT	2-Jan-04	
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		CPL	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	13-Nov-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	8-Aug-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	8-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		1LT	27-Aug-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	6-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	28-Nov-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	8-Aug-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	23-Dec-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	10-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		MSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		1SG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	22-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	2-Jan-04	
977th MP CO		PV2	10-Oct-03	6-Apr-04

## 310TH MP BN

977th MP CO		1LT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SFC	12-Jun-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PVT	28-Nov-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	8-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	2-Jan-03	
977th MP CO		PV2	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		2LT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	25-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	13-Nov-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		CPT	27-Aug-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	3-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	25-Sep-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SSG	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PV2	18-Oct-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SPC	8-Aug-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		SGT	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
977th MP CO		PFC	6-Apr-03	6-Apr-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	17-Dec-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04



310TH MP BN

988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		CPL	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		1SG	21-May-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	28-Sep-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		1LT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SFC	23-Dec-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SFC	21-May-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		1LT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	28-Sep-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		1LT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	17-Dec-03	15-Mar-04

310TH MP BN

988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	28-Sep-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	11-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SFC	23-Dec-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	11-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SGT	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PV2	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	21-May-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	21-May-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	21-May-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PV2	6-Nov-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		PFC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SPC	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04
988th MP CO		SSG	5-Apr-03	15-Mar-04

Unit	Serial	Grade	Rank	Start Date	End Date
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	LTC	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	CPT	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	CPT	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	CPT	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	CPT	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	MSG	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	SSG	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	SPC	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	PFC	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	PFC	03/15/03	03/13/04
494th	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	MAJ	03/15/03	03/13/04

UIC	Basic	Initials	Grade	Start Date	End Date
381st	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	CPT	02/10/03	02/09/04
381st	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	CPT	02/10/03	02/09/04
381st	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	SFC	02/10/03	02/09/04
381st	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	SPC	02/10/03	02/09/04
381st	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	IPFC	02/10/03	02/09/04



724th MP BN and 822nd, 267th, and 223rd MP CO's Roster

1 29 2004

Unit	LAST	FIRST MI	RANK	SSN
998th QM C			SGT	
998th QM C			SSG	
998th QM C			SFC	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			SSG	
998th QM C			SSG	
998th QM C			SGT	
998th QM C			MSG	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			SGT	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			SGT	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			SGT	
998th QM C			PV2	
998th QM C			PFC	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			SGT	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			ISG	
998th QM C			PV2	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			SPC	
998th QM C			PV2	

Unit	Unit	LAST	FIRST, MI	RANK	SSN
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SGT	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SPC	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SSG	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SPC	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SFC	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SGT	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SSG	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SPC	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SSG	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SPC	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			LTC	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SPC	
310th MP BN	310th MP BN			SPC	
310th MP BN	870th MP CO			SGT	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SFC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SGT	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PV2	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SSG	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PV2	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			CPL	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SGT	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	977th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SGT	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			PFC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SSG	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SGT	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SSG	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SPC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO			SSG	

310th MP BN	988th MP CO		SPC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO		SPC	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO		CPT	
310th MP BN	988th MP CO		PFC	
320th MP BN	229th MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	229th MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	320th MP BN		SSG	
320th MP BN	320th MP BN		PFC	
320th MP BN	320th MP BN		SFC	
320th MP BN	320th MP BN		SPC	
320th MP BN	320th MP BN		MSG	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SFC	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		MSG	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SSG	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SSG	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SSG	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SSG	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	320th MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		CPT	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SFC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SSG	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SSG	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		CPL	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SSG	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		CPL	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		MSG	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SGT	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	372nd MP CO		SPC	
320th MP BN	870th MP CO		SGT	



320th MP BN	870th MP CO		SPC
320th MP BN	870th MP CO		SSG
320th MP BN	870th MP CO		SPC
320th MP BN	870th MP CO		SPC
320th MP BN	870th MP CO		SPC
320th MP BN	870th MP CO		SGT
320th MP BN	870th MP CO		SPC
320th MP BN	870th MP CO		MSG
381st BLD	381st		CPT
530th MP BN	211th MP		SGT
530th MP BN	211th MP		SSG
530th MP BN	211th MP		SFC
530th MP BN	211th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	530th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	530th MP		SGT
530th MP BN	530th MP		SSG
530th MP BN	530th MP		SFC
530th MP BN	530th MP		SSG
530th MP BN	530th MP		SGM
530th MP BN	530th MP		SFC
530th MP BN	530th MP		SSG
530th MP BN	530th MP		SGT
530th MP BN	530th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	530th MP		SFC
530th MP BN	530th MP		SSG
530th MP BN	530th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	530th MP		MSG
530th MP BN	530th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	530th MP		LTC
530th MP BN	530th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	530th MP		SSG
530th MP BN	530th MP		CPT
530th MP BN	530th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	530th MP		SGT
530th MP BN	530th MP		CW4
530th MP BN	530th MP		SGT
530th MP BN	530th MP		SGT
530th MP BN	530th MP		CPT
530th MP BN	649th MP		PFC
530th MP BN	649th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	649th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	649th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	649th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	649th MP		SSG
530th MP BN	649th MP		SPC
530th MP BN	649th MP		1LT
530th MP BN	649th MP		SSG
530th MP BN	649th MP		SGT
530th MP BN	649th MP		SSG
530th MP BN	649th MP		CPT
530th MP BN	649th MP		SSG

530th MP BN	670th MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	670th MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	670th MP CO		SSG
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SFC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		CPL
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SSG
530th MP BN	755TH MP CC		SFC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SSG
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SSG
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		CPT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SSG
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CC		SPC
530th MP BN	755TH MP CO		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CC		SGT
530th MP BN	755TH MP CC		SGT
724th MP BN	190TH MP		SGT
724th MP BN	190th MP CO		PFC
724th MP BN	190th MP CO		SGT
724th MP BN	190th MP CC		SPC
724th MP BN	190th MP CO		1SG
724th MP BN	267TH MP		SGT
724th MP BN	267TH MP		SPC
724th MP BN	267TH MP		1LT
724th MP BN	267TH MP		SPC
724th MP BN	267TH MP		SPC

724th MP BN	267TH MP		SGT
724th MP BN	724th MP BN		CSM
724th MP BN	724th MP BN		MSG
724th MP BN	724th MP BN		SPC
724th MP BN	724th MP BN		SGT
724th MP BN	724th MP BN		SPC
724th MP BN	822ND MP		SSG
744TH MP BN	186th MP		SPC
744TH MP BN	186th MP		SSG
744TH MP BN	186th MP		SFC
744TH MP BN	186th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	186th MP		PV2
744th MP BN	186th MP		SPC
744TH MP BN	186th MP		SSG
744TH MP BN	186th MP		2LT
744TH MP BN	186th MP		PFC
744th MP BN	744th MP		SPC
744th MP BN	744th MP		SPC
744th MP BN	744th MP		SPC
744th MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	744th MP		SPC
744TH MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	744th MP		SPC
744th MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744TH MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	744th MP		SPC
744th MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744TH MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	744th MP		SGT
744TH MP BN	770TH		SPC
744TH MP BN	770TH		SPC
744TH MP BN	770TH		SPC
744TH MP BN	770TH		SGT
744TH MP BN	770TH		SPC
744th MP BN	770TH		SPC
744th MP BN	770TH		SPC
744TH MP BN	770TH		SSG
744th MP BN	770TH		1LT
744th MP BN	770TH		PFC
744th MP BN	770TH		SPC
744th MP BN	79th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	79th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	79th MP		SSG
744th MP BN	79th MP		CPL
744TH MP BN	79th MP		SSG
744TH MP BN	79th MP		SGT
744th MP BN	79th MP		SPC
744TH MP BN	79th MP		SPC
744th MP BN	79th MP		CPL
744th MP BN	79th MP		SPC
744th MP BN	79th MP		SPC
744th MP BN	79th MP		SSG
744th MP BN	744th MP		SGT

744th MP BN	744th MP	[REDACTED]	SGT	[REDACTED]
744th MP BN	79th MP	[REDACTED]	SGT	[REDACTED]
744th MP BN	79th MP	[REDACTED]	SGT	[REDACTED]
800th MP HHC	800 MP	[REDACTED]	CSM	[REDACTED]
800th MP HHC	800 MP	[REDACTED]	SGT	[REDACTED]
800th MP HHC	800 MP	[REDACTED]	LTC	[REDACTED]
800th MP HHC	800 MP	[REDACTED]	MAJ	[REDACTED]
998th QM CO	998th QM CO	[REDACTED]	SSG	[REDACTED]
998th QM CO	998th QM	[REDACTED]	SSG	[REDACTED]
998th QM CO	998th QM CO	[REDACTED]	SPC	[REDACTED]
998th QM CO	998th QM CO	[REDACTED]	SPC	[REDACTED]
998th QM CO	998th QM CO	[REDACTED]	SPC	[REDACTED]
998th QM CO	998th QM CO	[REDACTED]	SGT	[REDACTED]
998th QM CO	998th QM CO	[REDACTED]	SPC	[REDACTED]

# INTERROGATION RULES OF ENGAGEMENT

## Approved approaches for

### All detainees:

- Direct
- Incentive
- Incentive Removal
- Emotional Love / Hate
- Fear Up Harsh
- Fear Up Mild
- Reduced Fear
- Pride & Ego Up
- Futility
- We Know All
- Establish Your Identity
- Repetition
- File & Dossier
- Rapid Fire
- Silence

### Require CG's Approval:

- Change of scenery down
- Dietary Manip (monitored by med)
- Environmental Manipulation
- Sleep Adjustment (reverse sched)
- Isolation for longer than 30 days
- Presence of Mill Working Dogs
- Sleep Management (72 hrs max)
- Sensory Deprivation (72 hrs max)
- Stress Positions (no longer than 45 min)

### Safeguards:

- ~ Techniques must be annotated in questioning strategy
- ~ Approaches must always be humane and lawful
- ~ Detainees will NEVER be touched in a malicious or unwanted manner
- ~ Wounded or medically burdened detainees must be medically cleared prior to interrogation
- ~ The Geneva Conventions apply within CJTF-7

**EVERYONE IS RESPONSIBLE FOR ENSURING COMPLIANCE TO THE IROE. VIOLATIONS MUST BE REPORTED IMMEDIATELY TO THE OIC.**

The use of the techniques are subjects to the general safeguards as provided as well as specific guidelines implemented by the 205<sup>th</sup> MI Cdr FM 34 52, and the Commanding General CJTF 7

UNITED STATES  
FEDERAL BUREAU OF INVESTIGATION  
WASHINGTON, D. C. 20535

# INTERNATIONAL

Individuals, Organizations, and

Companies of Interest and  
Policies and Procedures

Accompanying the Overall and  
Objectives of the CIA/IS

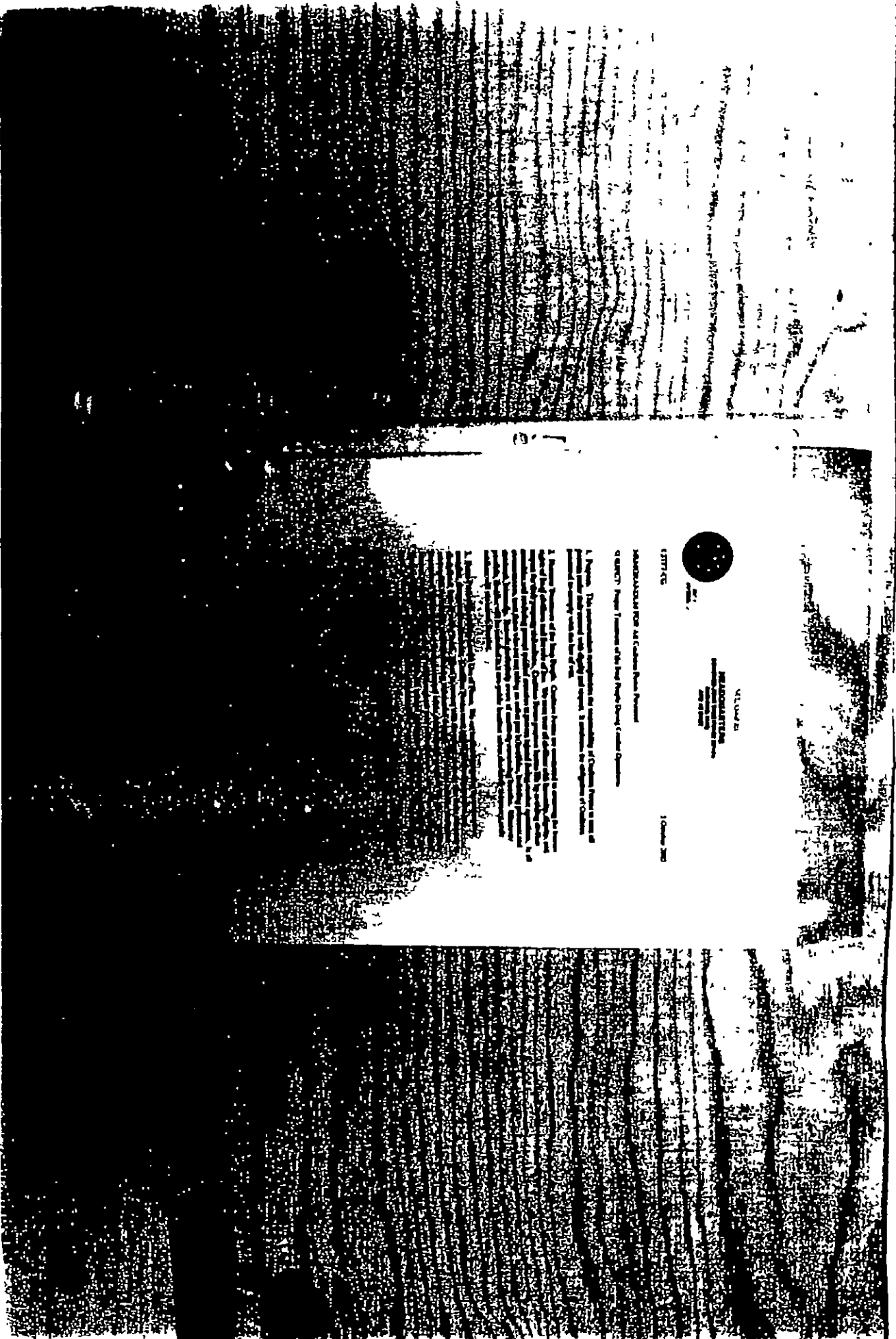
Reliability and Integrity of Reporting  
Matters

Reporting and Confidentiality of  
Organizations and Personnel

Safe guard and maintenance of  
equipment and facilities

Staffing, Policy

implemented by the 205th MI Cdr, FM 34-52, and t



CHAS  
1911  
1912  
1913  
1914  
1915  
1916  
1917  
1918  
1919  
1920  
1921  
1922  
1923  
1924  
1925  
1926  
1927  
1928  
1929  
1930  
1931  
1932  
1933  
1934  
1935  
1936  
1937  
1938  
1939  
1940  
1941  
1942  
1943  
1944  
1945  
1946  
1947  
1948  
1949  
1950  
1951  
1952  
1953  
1954  
1955  
1956  
1957  
1958  
1959  
1960  
1961  
1962  
1963  
1964  
1965  
1966  
1967  
1968  
1969  
1970  
1971  
1972  
1973  
1974  
1975  
1976  
1977  
1978  
1979  
1980  
1981  
1982  
1983  
1984  
1985  
1986  
1987  
1988  
1989  
1990  
1991  
1992  
1993  
1994  
1995  
1996  
1997  
1998  
1999  
2000  
2001  
2002  
2003  
2004  
2005  
2006  
2007  
2008  
2009  
2010  
2011  
2012  
2013  
2014  
2015  
2016  
2017  
2018  
2019  
2020  
2021  
2022  
2023  
2024  
2025

1  
1911  
1912  
1913  
1914  
1915  
1916  
1917  
1918  
1919  
1920  
1921  
1922  
1923  
1924  
1925  
1926  
1927  
1928  
1929  
1930  
1931  
1932  
1933  
1934  
1935  
1936  
1937  
1938  
1939  
1940  
1941  
1942  
1943  
1944  
1945  
1946  
1947  
1948  
1949  
1950  
1951  
1952  
1953  
1954  
1955  
1956  
1957  
1958  
1959  
1960  
1961  
1962  
1963  
1964  
1965  
1966  
1967  
1968  
1969  
1970  
1971  
1972  
1973  
1974  
1975  
1976  
1977  
1978  
1979  
1980  
1981  
1982  
1983  
1984  
1985  
1986  
1987  
1988  
1989  
1990  
1991  
1992  
1993  
1994  
1995  
1996  
1997  
1998  
1999  
2000  
2001  
2002  
2003  
2004  
2005  
2006  
2007  
2008  
2009  
2010  
2011  
2012  
2013  
2014  
2015  
2016  
2017  
2018  
2019  
2020  
2021  
2022  
2023  
2024  
2025



U.S. & USA  
Policy Board  
Read & Heed!

[Two pages of text, likely a memorandum or report, with several paragraphs of illegible text.]

[A page of text, possibly a list or table, with illegible content.]

[A page of text, possibly a list or table, with illegible content.]

[A page of text, possibly a list or table, with illegible content.]

[A page of text, possibly a list or table, with illegible content.]

[A page of text, possibly a list or table, with illegible content.]

[A page of text, possibly a list or table, with illegible content.]

COPY \_\_\_ OF \_\_\_ COPIES  
HQS, CJTF-7  
CAMP VICTORY, IRAQ  
012130CFEB04  
ROUTINE ~~SECRET~~

FRAGO 176 [MILITARY POLICE TASK ORG CHANGE AND OIF I TO OIF 2  
TRANSITION] TC CJTF-7 OPORD 04-01

FRAGO HAS BEEN REVIEWED AND APPROVED FOR RELEASE BY COL [REDACTED]  
40PS

SUBJECT MILITARY POLICE TASK ORGANIZATION CHANGE AND TRANSITION  
BETWEEN OIF I AND OIF 2

REFERENCE [NONE]

TIME ZONE USED THROUGHOUT THE PLAN CHARLIE

T.S. ORGANIZATION [CHANGE]

1<sup>st</sup> Armored Division

89th MILITARY POLICE BRIGADE (TACON)

494 CLD

52 MP BN

649 MP CO

755 MP CO

108 MP BN

527 MP CO

170 MP CO

1165 MP CO

214 MP CO

2175 MP CO

210 MP CO

269 MP CO

143 MP Co

1166 MP CO (ISG)

59 MP CO (CAMP VICTORY) (OPCON to 2-505)

382 L&O DET

519 MP BN

204 MP CO

233 MP CO

32 MP CO

549 MP CO

615 MP CO

571 MP CO -

143 L&O DET

744 MP BN

186 MP CO

770 MP CO

79 MP CO

439 CLD

16 MILITARY POLICE BRIGADE (ABN) (GS) (CJTF-7)

- 101 MP CO
- 102 MP CO
- 103 MP CO
- 104 MP CO
- 105 MP CO
- 106 MP CO
- 107 MP CO
- 108 MP CO
- 109 MP CO
- 110 MP CO
- 111 MP CO
- 112 MP CO
- 113 MP CO
- 114 MP CO
- 115 MP CO
- 116 MP CO
- 117 MP CO
- 118 MP CO
- 119 MP CO
- 120 MP CO

THE FOLLOWING MP COMPANIES REMAIN IN DIRECT SUPPORT (DS) TO THEIR RESPECTIVE DIVISION UNTIL REDEPLOYMENT. ROTATING UNITS ARE LISTED UNDER OIF II AND REMAIN IN DIRECT SUPPORT TO THE DIVISIONS AND MNB-N

- |                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 101 MP EN (DS TO 4ID) | OIF II UNITS              |
| 102 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 103 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) | 293 MP CO(-) (DS TO 1 ID) |
| 104 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 105 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 106 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 107 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 108 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 109 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 110 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 111 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 112 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 113 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 114 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 115 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 116 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 117 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 118 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 119 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 120 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 121 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 122 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 123 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 124 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 125 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 126 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 127 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 128 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 129 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 130 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 131 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 132 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 133 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 134 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 135 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 136 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 137 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 138 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 139 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 140 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 141 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 142 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 143 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 144 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 145 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 146 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 147 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 148 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 149 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 150 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 151 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 152 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 153 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 154 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 155 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 156 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 157 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 158 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 159 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 160 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 161 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 162 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 163 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 164 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 165 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 166 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 167 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 168 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 169 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 170 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 171 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 172 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 173 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 174 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 175 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 176 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 177 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 178 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 179 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 180 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 181 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 182 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 183 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 184 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 185 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 186 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 187 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 188 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 189 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 190 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 191 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 192 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 193 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 194 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 195 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 196 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 197 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 198 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 199 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |
| 200 MP CO (DS TO 4ID) |                           |

1. MP (DS TO 82ABN)  
2. MP (DS TO 82ABN)

USMC TOA WITH 82D ABN

3. ME

DS TO 13 COSCOM

#### 1. SITUATION

1. ENEMY FORCES [NO CHANGE]

2. FRIENDLY FORCES [CHANGE]

3. (S-REL/MCFI) MILITARY POLICE UNITS FOR OIF 2 ARE SOURCED AT WHAT OIF 2 MP UNITS WERE SOURCED. PRIORITY OF MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT IS DETAINEE OPERATIONS, JOINT POLICE OPERATIONS, AND MANEUVER AND MOBILITY SUPPORT OPERATIONS. CG, CJTF-7 DIRECTS ALL ECHELONS ABOVE OIF 2 TO LEAD MILITARY POLICE UNITS TO A GENERAL SUPPORT (GS) ROLE IOT FACILITATE CJTF-7 MISSION PRIORITIES.

4. (S-REL/MCFI) CONCEPT OF OPERATIONS [NO CHANGE]

#### 2. EXECUTION

5. (S-REL/MCFI) COMMANDER'S INTENT [CHANGE] MILITARY POLICE BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS WILL COORDINATE AND SYNCHRONIZE PLANNING AND EXECUTION IOT FACILITATE A SEAMLESS TRANSITION ACROSS CJTF-7 AO.

6. (S-REL/MCFI) CONCEPT OF OPERATIONS [CHANGE] AS CJTF-7 MP BRIGADES TRANSITION FROM A THREE BRIGADE SET (18 MP BDE, 220 MP BDE, 800 MP BDE) TO A TWO BRIGADE SET (89 MP BDE, 16 MP BDE (ABN)), ON 1 FEB 04, MP TASK ORGANIZATION CHANGES. THE TASK ORGANIZATION DEPICTS THE SET FOR OIF II AND 89<sup>TH</sup> MP BDE IS TACON TO 1 AD AND 16<sup>TH</sup> MP BDE (ABN) IN GENERAL SUPPORT TO CJTF-7. OIF I UNITS IN DIRECT SUPPORT REMAIN DS UNTIL REDEPLOYMENT. MILITARY POLICE AND MP ILO UNITS WILL SUPPORT PRIORITY MISSIONS DETERMINED BY COMMANDER, CJTF-7. CURRENT PRIORITIES ARE DETAINEE OPERATIONS WITH FOCUS ON HIGH VALUE DETAINEES, MEK, SECURITY DETAINEES, AND IRAQI JAIL AND PRISON MONITORING, JOINT POLICE OPERATIONS WITH FOCUS ON TRAINING, MONITORING, AND JOINT INTEL BASED OPERATIONS, AND MANEUVER MOBILITY SUPPORT OPERATIONS ON MSR TAMPA FROM SCANIA TO LSA ANACONDA. 89<sup>TH</sup> MP BRIGADE ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR US MILITARY POLICE OPERATIONS IN AO BAGHDAD TO INCLUDE THE HVC DETENTION FACILITY AND OF THE MEK COMPOUND IN AO NORTH CENTRAL. 16<sup>TH</sup> MP BRIGADE (ABN) ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR US MILITARY POLICE OPERATIONS IN AO WEST, MND-CS, AND MNC-BE. 16<sup>TH</sup> MP BRIGADE (ABN) IS RESPONSIBLE FOR MMSO ON MSR TAMPA FROM CSC JAVISTAR TO LSA ANACONDA, WITH PRIORITY OF SUPPORT FROM CSC SCANIA TO LSA ANACONDA. UPON TOA WITH THE 82<sup>ND</sup> ABN, I MEF WILL PROVIDE ORGANIC ASSETS AND ASSUME RESPONSIBILITY FOR MILITARY POLICE OPERATIONS IN AO WEST, WITH THE EXCEPTION OF THE OPERATION OF BCCF, WHICH WILL

REMAIN THE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE 16<sup>TH</sup> MF BRIGADE (ABN) 89 MP IS TACON  
TO 1 CAV UPON TOA WITH 1 AD AND 1 CAV AND EACH MSC RECEIVES DS MP IAW  
THE US ORGANIZATION

16<sup>TH</sup> MF BRIGADE (ABN) SUBORDINATE UNITS:

1. 89 MP BDE

a. UPON TOA ON 1 FEB 04 ACCEPT ATTACHMENT OF ALL EAD MP UNITS IN  
THE AREA

b. ASSUME RESPONSIBILITY OF MEK DETENTION OPERATIONS IN AO  
NORTH-CENTRAL

c. ASSUME RESPONSIBILITY OF HVD DETENTION OPERATIONS IN AO  
NORTH-CENTRAL

d. MONITOR IRAQI CORRECTIONS SERVICE (ICS) OPERATIONS AT THE  
SABEEL DAILS MONITOR ICS OPERATIONS ICW CPA MOJ CORRECTION ADVISORS

e. MONITOR IRAQI POLICE OPERATIONS IN AO BAGHDAD ICW CPA MOI  
POLICE ADVISORS

f. CONTINUE TO TRAIN IPS AT DIRECTED CJTF7 POLICE ACADEMIES AND  
TRAINING LOCATIONS IAW IPS ACCELERATION PLAN

g. PROVIDE AN MP COMPANY HEADQUARTERS AND 2 PLATOONS ISO THE  
EAST SECURITY GROUP (ESG) IN AO BAGHDAD

h. PROVIDE MP SUPPORT TO CPA WITH THE 170<sup>TH</sup> MP CO (-) AND ASSIST  
WITH US AUGMENTATION TO AMB BREMER'S SECURITY DETAIL AND CONTINUE TO  
PROTECT FOP OIF II WITH A COMPANY HEADQUARTERS AND THREE PLATOONS

i. PROVIDE MP SECURITY SUPPORT TO STB AT CAMP VICTORY WITH THE  
6<sup>TH</sup> MP BDE; RELIEF FROM THIS MISSION OCCURS UPON THE REDEPLOYMENT OF 59<sup>TH</sup>  
MP BDE ON 23 MARCH 04 WHEN 82<sup>ND</sup> ABN DRE ASSUMES SUPPORT OF THIS MISSION  
IAW FRACC 1B PARA 3 C 6 B

2. 16 MP BDE (ABN)

a. UPON TOA ON 1 FEB 04 ACCEPT ATTACHMENT OF ALL EAD US MP UNITS  
IN MND-CS AND MND-SE, AND MP UNITS CONDUCTING MMSO MISSIONS IN AO  
BAGHDAD AND AO NORTH-CENTRAL

b. UPON TOA BETWEEN 82ABN AND IMEF, IMEF ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY  
FOR AO WEST WITH EXCEPTION OF PARAGRAPH 3 C 3 D

c. CONDUCT MMSO ON MSR TAMPA WITH PRIORITY OF SUPPORT FROM CSC  
UNITS IN LSA ANACONDA

3.0 ASSUME RESPONSIBILITY FOR OPERATION OF BCCF IN AO WEST AND  
M - MOCA II IND-SE

4.0 MONITOR IRAQI POLICE OPERATIONS WITH PRIORITY OF EFFORT TO  
ELIMINATE TARGET CITIES MONITOR IPS OPERATIONS ICW CPA MOI  
CORRECTION ADVISOR

5.0 CONTINUE TO TRAIN IPS AT DIRECTED CJTF-7 POLICE ACADEMIES AND  
TRAINING LOCATIONS IAW IPS ACCELERATION PLAN

6.0 MONITOR IPS OPERATIONS ICW CPA MOI CORRECTION ADVISORS

7.0 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

8.0 RELIEFS IN PLACE WILL BE PLANNED AND EXECUTED UNDER THIS  
TASK ORGANIZATION WITH LEFT SEAT RIDES BEGINNING NLT 25 JAN 04

9.0 DILAUTE BETWEEN MSC'S AND MP BRIGADES IS AUTHORIZED AND  
APPLICABLE

10.0 MSC'S ARE RESPONSIBLE TO PROVIDE THEIR OWN MSR SECURITY

11.0 MSR WILL CONTINUE WITH NO CHANGES TO TASK ORGANIZATION OR  
RELATIONAL SET

12.0 COORDINATION FOR STAY BEHIND EQUIPMENT IAW DA AND CJTF7  
FRAGOC, AND ICW UP-ARMORED VEHICLE REALIGNMENT WILL BE COORDINATED  
DIRECTLY BETWEEN MP BRIGADES WITH CONFLICTS OR ISSUES SUBMITTED TO  
CJTF7 PWC AND C4 NLT 15 FEB 04

13.0 DILAUTE AUTHORIZED TO ENSURE SMOOTH TRANSITION WITH CPA  
MOI ADVISORS AS THEY INCREASE THEIR RESPONSIBILITY FOR MONITORING WITH  
THE TRANSITION TO IRAQI CONTROL

14.0 SERVICE SUPPORT [CHANGE]

15.0 16<sup>TH</sup> AND 89<sup>TH</sup> MP BRIGADES ARE RESPONSIBLE FOR MAINTAINING A RSOI  
TEXT THROUGHOUT THE OPERATION

16.0 COMMAND AND SIGNAL [CHANGE]

17.0 THE POC FOR THIS FRAGO IS MAJ [REDACTED] AT DSN 318-558-0710 OR  
[REDACTED]

18.0 THE POC FOR THE 89<sup>TH</sup> MP BDE IS MAJ [REDACTED] AT DNVT 302-559-  
1134 OR [REDACTED]

19.0 THE POC FOR 18<sup>TH</sup> MP BDE IS MAJ [REDACTED] AT DNVT 302-559-5130 OR  
[REDACTED]

20.0 THE POC FOR THE 16<sup>TH</sup> MP BDE (ABN) IS MAJ [REDACTED] AT  
DNVT 302-550-8220 OR [REDACTED]

THE POC FOR THE 220<sup>TH</sup> MF BDE IS MAJ [REDACTED] AT DNVT 302-550-

[REDACTED]

THE POC FOR 800<sup>TH</sup> MF BDE IS MAJ [REDACTED] AT DNVT 302-559-

[REDACTED]

4 10 12 7E

SANCHEZ

LTG

FF

1 40

100 415

3 C 2 C 5 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) PRIOR TO SITE EXPLOITATION EOD AND NBC WILL REPORT ALL FINDINGS RELATING TO THE SAFETY AND SECURITY OF THE SITE TO THE CID SITE OIC

3 C 2 C 6 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) BE PREPARED TO PROVIDE ONE TACTICAL HUMINT TEAM WITH TRANSLATOR TO ASSIST CID WITH INTERVIEWS OF LOCAL POPULATION

3 C 2 D (U) 10<sup>TH</sup> MP BN (CID)

3 C 2 D 1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) THE 10th MP BN (CID) WILL PROVIDE CID TEAMS AND A FORENSIC SCIENCE OFFICER (FSO) TO CONDUCT A MASS GRAVE SITE EXPLOITATION THE SENIOR CID TEAM MEMBER WILL BE IDENTIFIED AS THE OIC OF THE MISSION

3 C 2 D 2 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) BE PREPARED TO SUBMIT HUMINT COLLECTION REQUIREMENT (HRC) TO CJTF7 C2 COLLECTION MANAGEMENT AND DISSEMINATION OFFICE IN ORDER TO GATHER INFORMATION AND HISTORICAL STAT FROM THE COMMUNITY CONCERNING ATROCITIES COMMITTED BY THE FORMER REGIME IVC THE MASS GRAVE SITE

3 C 2 E (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) DIRLAUTH AT THE LOWEST POSSIBLE LEVEL IS GRANTED FOR ALL ELEMENTS TO COORDINATE LINK UP AND FOLLOW ON OPERATIONS

3 C 2 F (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) 251030CNOV03 IS THE NLT TIME FOR THE ASSESSMENT TO BEGIN

3 C 2 G (U) UNITS WILL USE THEIR OWN ORGANIC TRANSPORTATION

3 C 2 H (U) POC FOR CID IS [REDACTED] AT 584-9902 (DNVT) OR [REDACTED]

3 C 2 I (U) RADIO FREQUENCY IDENTIFICATION (RFID) TAG ORDERING FOR REDEPLOYING UNITS

3 C 2 J (U) SITUATION RADIO FREQUENCY IDENTIFICATION (RFID) IS CURRENTLY BEING UTILIZED WITHIN THE CJTF-7 AOR TO PROVIDE THE CAPABILITY TO IDENTIFY, POSITION, AND TRACK PROGRESS OF CONVOYS AND ALL CLASSES OF SUPPLY ACCORDING TO POC RFID POLICY, ALL LAYER 4 FREIGHT CONTAINERS (E G 20/40 FOOT SEA VANS, LARGE ENGINE CONTAINERS) AND PALLETIZED (463L AIR PALLETS) SUSTAINMENT AND UNIT MOVE SHIPMENTS, AS WELL AS ALL MAJOR ORGANIZATIONAL EQUIPMENT, MUST HAVE RFID TAGS WRITTEN WITH CONTENT LEVEL DETAIL AND APPLIED AT THE POINT OF ORIGIN BY ALL ACTIVITIES STUFFING CONTAINERS OR BUILDING AIR PALLETS

3 C 2 K (U) ALL MSCS

3 C 2 L (U) AT LEAST 60 DAYS PRIOR TO REDEPLOYING, ALL OIF UNITS WILL ORDER BATTERIES (STOCK #6135-01-495-3040) AND THE COMPATIBLE BATTERIES (STOCK #6135-01-495-3040) TO MEET THEIR REDEPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS

3 C 2 M (U) POINT OF CONTACT [REDACTED] CJTF-7 C4 LOG AUTO CHIEF, 318-822- [REDACTED]

3 C 2 N (U) RADIOLOGICAL SURVEY TO CONFIRM OR DENY THE PRESENCE OF POTENTIAL RADIOACTIVE LIGHTNING ARRESTORS

3 C 2 O (U) 82ABN



3.4.A (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) CONDUCT RADIOLOGICAL SURVEY TO CONFIRM OR DENY THE PRESENCE OF POTENTIAL RADIOACTIVE LIGHTNING ARRESTORS IVO ALTHEER, 38SME 24093 31737, AND MUTASIM, 38SME 23887 30221, NLT 28 NOV 03 REPORT RESULTS OF THE SURVEY TO CJTF-7 NBC AND TF D&E UPON COMPLETION OF THE MISSION IF RADIOLOGICAL SOURCES ARE LOCATED, TF D&E WILL CONDUCT A RECOVERY MISSION AT A LATER DATE

3.4.A.1 (U) DIRLAUTH WITH ISG FOR CALL SIGN AND FREQUENCY

3.4.B (U) 4ID

3.4.B.1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) CONDUCT RADIOLOGICAL SURVEY TO CONFIRM OR DENY THE PRESENCE OF POTENTIAL RADIOACTIVE LIGHTNING ARRESTORS IVO TAMIYRA, 38SMC 42693 20078, NLT 28 NOV 03 REPORT RESULTS OF THE SURVEY TO CJTF-7 NBC AND TF D&E UPON COMPLETION OF THE MISSION IF RADIOLOGICAL SOURCES ARE LOCATED, TF D&E WILL CONDUCT A RECOVERY MISSION AT A LATER DATE

3.4.B.1.1 (U) DIRLAUTH WITH ISG FOR CALL SIGN AND FREQUENCY

3.4.B.1.1.1 (U) CJTF-7 NBC POC IS [REDACTED] AT DSN 822-1631 OR DNVT 362-550-  
[REDACTED]-641-2088 EMAIL CENTRIX [REDACTED] OR SIPR. [REDACTED]

3.4.B.1.1.1.1 (U) ISG POC IS LTC NORTHUP OR MAJ [REDACTED] AT DSN 835-1101/1105

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1 MOD 1 TO FRAGO 1069 [11 NOV03 DTU] (BALAD SECURITY PLAN)

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1 3COSCOM

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1.1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7 B 4 RECEIVE WEEKLY THREAT ASSESSMENT FROM CJTF-7 C2/CACE FOR LSA ANACONDA

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7 B 5 SUPPORT THE 4ID OPERATIONAL PLANNING AT LSA ANACONDA WITH CJTF-7 C2/CACE THREAT ASSESSMENT

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1 C2

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [CHANGE] LINE 3 C.7 C 1 PROVIDE 3 COSCOM G2 WITH LSA ANACONDA WEEKLY THREAT ASSESSMENT NLT 1700 EVERY THURSDAY

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7 C 2 ENSURE WEEKLY ASSESSMENT ADDRESSES THREATS TO AIRCRAFT ON THE GROUND (SMALL ARMS, MORTAR, RPG, ETC) THREATS TO AIRCRAFT IN FLIGHT (SMALL ARMS, RPGS, AND MANPADS)

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7 C 3 POC IS CJTF-7 CACE [REDACTED] @ DNVT 559-4331 OR MAJ [REDACTED] @ DNVT 559-4340

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1 (U) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7 D CJTF-7 AT/FP

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3.C 7.D.1 BE PREPARED TO PROVIDE 3 COSCOM WITH UPDATED SECURITY VULNERABILITY ASSESSMENT-LSA ANACONDA, IRAQ

3.4.B.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1 DRIVERS AND SECURITY SUPPORT TO BG KEMMITT

7 1 4 (U) 1AD

3 C 6 A 1 (U) PROVIDE 4 SOLDIERS (1EA NCC and 3EA SPECIALIST) AS DRIVERS AND SECURITY SUPPORT TO BG KEMMITT FROM 20 NOV 03 TO 31 DEC 03 TASKER WILL END UPON ARRIVAL OF BG KEMMITT'S ASSIGNED DRIVERS AND SECURITY DETAIL FROM FORT BRAGG ON CP ABOUT 1 JAN 04

3 C 6 A 2 (U) SOLDIERS MUST BE ABLE TO DRIVE A SUV SOLDIERS WILL RECEIVE DEFENSIVE DRIVER'S TRAINING UPON ARRIVAL AT THE CJTF7 (FWD)

3 C 6 A 3 (U) SOLDIERS WILL RECEIVE ORIENTATION OF THE AOR FROM CJTF7 (FWD)

3 C 6 A 4 (U) SOLDIERS WILL RECEIVE ALL LIFE SUPPORT (BILLETING, RATIONS, ETC) FROM CJTF7 (FWD)

3 C 6 A 5 (U) DIRLAUTH AND DIRECTED BETWEEN STB AND THE CJTF7 (FWD) SGS OFFICE POC

3 C 6 B (U) CJTF7 JOC (FWD) POINT OF CONTACT CJTF7 (FWD) SGS IS SGM [REDACTED] AT DNVF 559-7011 OR 7013 (JOC FORWARD)

7 1 (U) **STANDING UP OF JORDANIAN TRAINING SITE FOR IRAQI POLICE**

3 C 7 A (U) **MISSION** CJTF-7 ASSEMBLES, PROCESSES AND TRANSPORTS 500 IRAQI POLICE CADETS TO JORDAN NLT 302300CNOV03 IN ORDER TO SUPPORT MINISTRY OF INTERIOR'S PLAN TO ACCELERATE IRAQI POLICE TRAINING

3 C 7 B (U) **COMMANDER'S INTENT** MY INTENT IS TO SUPPORT MINISTRY OF INTERIOR'S INITIATIVE TO ACCELERATE IRAQI POLICE TRAINING USING CJTF-7 ASSETS TO ASSIST IN RECRUITING, SCREENING AND TRANSPORTING

3 C 7 C (U) **CONCEPT OF THE OPERATION** IN ORDER TO CREATE A MORE STABLE AND SECURE ENVIRONMENT IN IRAQ AND TO FACILITATE TRANSITION TO LOCAL CONTROL, IT HAS BEEN DETERMINED THAT ADDITIONAL TRAINED IRAQI POLICE FORCES ARE REQUIRED TO PATROL SELECTED AREAS AND REDUCE THE RELIANCE ON COALITION FORCES AS PART OF THE ACCELERATION PLAN, A TRAINING ACADEMY FOR IRAQI POLICE WAS CREATED IN JORDAN THE FIRST CLASS OF 500 IRAQI POLICE CADETS WILL BEGIN TRAINING IN JORDAN ON 01DEC03 BAGHDAD HAS ONLY 361 OF ITS REQUIRED EFFECTIVE POLICE FORCE, SO IRAQIS FROM THE BAGHDAD AREA WHO WERE ATTENDING THE BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY PRIOR TO THE START OF OPERATION IRAQI FREEDOM WILL FILL THE CLASS DUE TO TRANSPORTATION LIMITATIONS, CADETS WILL HAVE TO BE TRANSPORTED OVER A PERIOD OF TWO DAYS ON COMPLETION OF THIS COURSE, THE POLICE WILL BE DISTRIBUTED TO POLICE DEPARTMENTS THROUGHOUT THE BAGHDAD AREA BY THE MSC WITH THE INTENT OF MEETING THE MOI DIRECTED EFFECTIVE IRAQI POLICE ENDSTATE IN EACH AREA

7 2 (U) 1AD

3 C 8 A (U) IDENTIFY 500 IRAQI POLICE CADETS TO ATTEND THE FIRST TRAINING CLASS IN JORDAN (J01-04) SUBMIT NAMES AND BADGE NUMBERS TO [REDACTED] PMO LNO T MCI DSN 318 239-6292, CELL PHONE 914 360-3228, EMAIL [REDACTED] CLASS J01-04 WILL START 01DEC03 AND GRADUATE 30JAN04

- 3 0 7 D 2 (U) ASSEMBLE AND PROVIDE MEALS AND BILLETING FOR 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS AT BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY NLT 281700CNOV03 TO 291100CNOV03
- 3 0 7 D 3 (U) ASSEMBLE AND PROVIDE MEALS AND BILLETING FOR 200 IRAQI POLICE CADETS AT BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY NLT 291700CNOV03 TO 301100CNOV03
- 3 0 7 D 4 (U) BPT TO PROVIDE A SECURITY DETACHMENT ON EACH FLIGHT TO JORDAN (MINIMUM OF ONE US PERSONNEL PER FLIGHT TO ACCOMPANY CADETS TO JORDAN UNTIL CADETS ARE TURNED OVER TO MOI REP IN JORDAN)
- 3 0 7 D 5 (U) RECEIVE 300 RETURNING CADETS AT THE BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY ON 31JAN04 ARRANGE FOR TRANSPORTATION TO THEIR HOME STATION
- 3 0 7 D 6 (U) RECEIVE 200 RETURNING CADETS AT THE BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY ON 01FEB04 ARRANGE FOR TRANSPORTATION TO THEIR HOME STATION
- 3 0 7 D 7 (U) INTEGRATE NEWLY GRADUATED IRAQI POLICE, INTO BAGHDAD POLICE STRUCTURE NLT 14 FEB 04
- 3 0 7 D 8 (U) COORDINATE FOR SECURITY ESCORT FOR 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS FROM BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY TO BIAP NLT 291100CNOV03
- 3 0 7 D 9 (U) COORDINATE FOR SECURITY ESCORT FOR 200 IRAQI POLICE CADETS FROM BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY TO BIAP NLT 301100CNOV03
- 3 0 7 D 10 (U) COORDINATE FOR SECURITY ESCORT FOR RETURNING IRAQI POLICE FROM BIAP TO BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY 31JAN04, TIME IS TBD, FOR 300PAX
- 3 0 7 D 11 (U) COORDINATE FOR SECURITY ESCORT FOR RETURNING IRAQI POLICE FROM BIAP TO BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY 1FEB04, TIME IS TBD, FOR 200PAX
- 3 0 7 E (U) CJTF-7 PMO
- 3 0 7 E 1 (U) COORDINATE MWD SUPPORT FOR SEARCHING 300 IRAQI POLICE CADET BAGS AND BINS AT BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY NLT 290900CNOV03
- 3 0 7 E 2 (U) COORDINATE MWD SUPPORT FOR SEARCHING 200 IRAQI POLICE CADET BAGS AND BINS AT BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY NLT 300900CNOV03
- 3 0 7 F (U) CJTF-7 C4
- 3 0 7 F 1 (U) COORDINATE TRANSPORT FOR 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS FROM BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY TO BIAP NLT 291100CNOV03
- 3 0 7 F 2 (U) COORDINATE TRANSPORT FOR 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS FROM BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY TO BIAP NLT 301100CNOV03
- 3 0 7 F 3 (U) COORDINATE WITH AMD TO SCHEDULE FLIGHTS TO JORDAN IN ORDER TO TRANSPORT 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS STARTING NET 291300CNOV03
- 3 0 7 F 4 (U) COORDINATE WITH AMD TO SCHEDULE FLIGHTS TO JORDAN IN ORDER TO TRANSPORT 200 IRAQI POLICE CADETS STARTING NET 301300CNOV03

3 C 7 B (U) COORDINATE WITH AMD TO SCHEDULE FLIGHTS FROM JORDAN TO BIAP IN ORDER TO RETURN GRADUATED IRAQI POLICE FROM JORDAN 31JAN04 (300PAX) AND 01FEB04 (300PAX)

3 C 7 C (U) COORDINATE TRANSPORT FOR RETURNING IRAQI POLICE FROM BIAP TO BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY 31JAN04 AND 01FEB04 (FLIGHT TIMES TBD)

3 C 7 D (U) COORDINATE WITH AMD TO ARRANGE FOR A STAGING AREA AT BIAP CAPABLE OF HOLDING UP TO 350 IRAQI POLICE CADETS WITH THE NECESSARY PROTECTION FROM WEATHER AND NECESSARY LIFE SUPPORT (MEALS, WATER, AND LATRINE FACILITY) WHILE SEGREGATING THEM FROM US PERSONNEL THIS STAGING AREA IS TO BE USED FOR BOTH DEPARTING AND ARRIVING FLIGHTS

3 C 7 E (U) IRAQI POLICE CADETS WILL BE PAID EVERY FOUR WEEKS IN JORDAN BY THE MINISTRY OF INTERIOR

3 C 7 F (U) IRAQI POLICE CADETS ARE REQUIRED TO TRAVEL IN SUITABLE CIVILIAN CLOTHING

3 C 7 G (U) ALL IRAQI POLICE CADETS TRAVELING TO JORDAN WILL HAVE A PHOTO ID IN THEIR POSSESSION

3 C 7 H (U) MINISTRY OF INTERIOR WILL PROVIDE TRANSLATORS AS NECESSARY TO SUPPORT DTF-7 OPERATIONS

3 C 7 I (U) POC FOR THIS DTU IS [REDACTED] AT DSN 822-1301 OR DNVT 302 4 3-1110

3 C 7 J (U) ASSIGNMENT OF 205 MI BDE CDR RESPONSIBILITIES FOR THE BAGHDAD CENTRAL CONFINEMENT FACILITY (BCCF)

3 C 7 K (U) 205 MI BDE

3 C 7 L (U) EFFECTIVE IMMEDIATELY COMMANDER 205 MI BDE ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE BAGHDAD CENTRAL CONFINEMENT FACILITY (BCCF) AND IS APPOINTED THE FOB COMMANDER UNITS CURRENTLY AT ABU GHURAYB (BCCF) ARE TACON TO 205 MI BDE FOR SECURITY OF DETAINEES AND FOB PROTECTION

3 C 7 M (U) MOD TO FRAGO 793 [IRAQI CURRENCY EXCHANGE]

3 C 7 N (U) 3COSCUM

3 C 7 O (U) S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [CHANGE] LINE 3 C 9 D PROVIDE RATIONS (MRE) AT 48 HRS NTM FOR 120 PERS TC MND SE AS REQUIRED THROUGHOUT PERIOD 15 JAN 04

3 C 7 P (U) MOD TO FRAGO 17NOV03 [DTU] (CENTCOM MOVING TACSAT CHANNELS)

3 C 7 Q (U) S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [CHANGE] LINE 5.B 1 A 3

3 C 7 R (U) (MSG PHILLIPS)

3 C 7 S (U) (U) 03/CH 33 UFO-3 15W B/W 5 KHZ

3 C 7 T (U) (U) 17 0 AZIMUTH = 252 4

3 C 7 U (U) (U) 33 = UPLINK 302 635

3 C 7 V (U) (U) DOWNLINK = 249 035

3 C 7 W (U) (U) TERMINAL CH# 152

1. (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [CHANGE] LINE 5 B 1 B THESE CHANNELS ARE REQUIRED TO BE CHANGED NLT 201300CNOV03 ANY AND ALL MOVES WILL REQUIRE COORDINATION WITH THE UNITS IN THE FIELD REFER ALL QUESTIONS TO THE POC

2. (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [CHANGE] LINE 5 B 1 C POC FOR THIS ACTION IS MSC [REDACTED], FMC CJTF-7/C6, AT DSN 94-318-822-1706 OR DNV 558-0662

3. (U) PLANNING, COORDINATION, AND LIAISON SUPPORT FOR THE IRAQI RAIL AND MINISTRY OF TRANSPORTATION (MOT)

4. (U) 3COSCOM

5. (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) NLT 22NOV03, PROVIDE MCT CAPABLE ELEMENT FOR RAIL TASK FORCE COMPOSED OF 2 CO GRADE OFFICERS, 4 NCOS, AND 8 ENLISTED SOLDIERS (2 X ADMIN, 1 X COMMUNICATIONS, DRIVERS AND SECURITY), AND EQUIPMENT TASK FORCE WILL PROVIDE EMERGENCY RESPONSE PLANNING, COORDINATION, AND LIAISON WITH THE IRAQI RAIL AND THE MINISTRY OF TRANSPORTATION

6. (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS INCLUDE 3HMVS WITH COMMUNICATIONS PACKAGE, 5 LAPTOPS (2 SIPR, 2 NIPR, 1 CENTRIX), 1 MOVEMENT TRACKING SYSTEM

7. (U) POC FOR THIS ACTION IS [REDACTED] AT DSN 836-1147, DNV 559-1159 [REDACTED]

COORDINATING INSTRUCTIONS [CHANGE]

CJTF7 SNIPER TTP 19NOV03 POSTED TO CENTRIX WEBSITE

8. (U) A NEW CJTF7 SNIPER TTP HAS BEEN ADDED TO THE CENTRIX WEBPAGE TO FIND THE ABOVE LISTED TTP GO TO THE CJTF7 CENTRIX WEBPAGE AND CLICK ON THE REFERENCES TAB IN THE CENTRIX PORTAL BOX, CLICK ON TTPS, AND CLICK ON THE FOLDER LABELED CJTF7 SNIPER TTP 19NOV03

9. (U) THE POC FOR THIS TTP IS [REDACTED] AT DSN 318 822-1612

SERVICE SUPPORT [NO CHANGE]

COMMAND AND SIGNAL [NO CHANGE]

10. REL F

[REDACTED]  
LTC

11. [REDACTED]

ATTACHMENTS

- 1 CJTF7 LOG POSTURE NORTH
- 2 CJTF7 LOG POSTURE SOUTH
- 3 CJTF7 MND SUSTAINMENT
- 4 CJTF7 SUSTAINMENT

Interviewee	Unit	Interview Date	Transcriber	Transcribed date	Type
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	14-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	in process	Verbatim
[REDACTED]	800th MP	15-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	in process	Verbatim
[REDACTED]	MI	21-Feb-04	[REDACTED]		Verbatim
[REDACTED]	320th MP Bn	9-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	18-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	372nd MP Co	10-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	18-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	372nd MP Co	21-Feb-04	[REDACTED]		Summarized
[REDACTED]	202nd MI Bn	12-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	18-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	202nd MI Bn	19-Feb-04	[REDACTED]		Summarized
[REDACTED]	MI	12-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	in process	Summarized
[REDACTED]	MI (Interpreter)	12-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	21-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]		12-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	17-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]		12-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	20-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]		12-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	18-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	530th MP Bn	13-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	21-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]		12-Feb-04	[REDACTED]		Summarized
[REDACTED]	310th MP Bn	15-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	in process	Summarized
[REDACTED]	372nd MP Co	10-Feb-04	tape no good	21-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	310th MP Bn		tape no good	21-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	HHC, 320th MP Bn	9-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	10-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	202nd MI Bn	9-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	10-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	320th MP Bn	9-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	10-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	320th MP Bn	10-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	11-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	320th MP Bn	12-Feb-04	[REDACTED]		Summarized
[REDACTED]	372nd MP Co	9-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	11-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	670th MP Co	10-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	11-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	229th MP Co	10-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	11-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	372nd MP Co	10-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	13-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	870th MP Co	10-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	18-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	229th MP Co	10-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	in progress	Summarized
[REDACTED]	320th MP Bn	12-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	20-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	CFLCC PMO	13-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	20-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	14-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	19-Feb-04	Summarized
[REDACTED]	310th MP Bn		[REDACTED]		Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	14-Feb-04	[REDACTED]		Summarized
[REDACTED]	165th MI Bn	14-Feb-04	[REDACTED]	21-Feb-04	Summarized

Interviewee	Unit	Interview Date	Transcriber	Transcribed date	Type
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	14-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	14-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	14-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	14-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	15-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	15-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	15-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	15-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	15-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	800th MP Bde	15-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	310th MP Bn	17-Feb-04			Summarized
[REDACTED]	320th MP Bn	18-Feb-04			Summarized



COPY    OF    COPIES  
HQ, CJTF-7  
CAMP VICTORY, IRAQ  
192355CNOV03  
ROUTINE (~~GREEN~~)

U. FRAGO 1108 [19NOV03 DTU] TO CJTF-7 OPORD 03-036

1. THIS FRAGO HAS BEEN REVIEWED AND APPROVED FOR RELEASE BY COL [REDACTED] CJTF-7  
C4OPS

(U) SUBJECT USAREUR SAFETY COUNCIL VTC - 1 DEC 03; MASS GRAVE SITE EXPLOITATION  
IN 82<sup>ND</sup> ABN AOR, RADIO FREQUENCY IDENTIFICATION (RFID) TAG ORDERING FOR  
REDEPLOYING UNITS; RADIOLOGICAL SURVEY TO CONFIRM OR DENY THE PRESENCE OF  
POTENTIAL RADIOACTIVE LIGHTNING ARRESTORS, MOD 1 TO FRAGO 1069 [11 NOV03 DTU]  
(BALAD SECURITY PLAN); DRIVERS AND SECURITY SUPPORT TO BG KEMMITT; STANDING UP  
OF JORDANIAN TRAINING SITE FOR IRAQI POLICE; ASSIGNMENT OF 205 MI BDE CDR  
RESPONSIBILITIES FOR THE BAGHDAD CENTRAL CONFINEMENT FACILITY (BCCF), MOD TO  
FRAGO 793 [IRAQI CURRENCY EXCHANGE], CJTF7 SNIPER TTP 19NOV03 POSTED TO CENTRIX  
WEBSITE, MOD TO FRAGO 17NOV03 [DTU] (CENTCOM MOVING TACSAT CHANNELS), PLANNING,  
COORDINATION, AND LIAISON SUPPORT FOR THE IRAQI RAIL AND MOT, LOG POSTURE /  
SUSTAINMENT SLIDES

2. REFERENCES

3. MAFS: [NO CHANGE]

4. TIME ZONE USED THROUGHOUT THIS OPDR CHARLIE

5. IAS: ORGANIZATION [NO CHANGE]

6. SITUATION [NO CHANGE]

7. MISSION [NO CHANGE]

8. EXECUTION [CHANGE]

9. I. COMMANDER'S INTENT [NO CHANGE]

10. II. CONCEPT OF THE OPERATION [NO CHANGE]

11. III. TASKS TO SUBORDINATE UNITS [CHANGE]

12. USAREUR SAFETY COUNCIL VTC - 1 DEC 03

13. A. I. GENERAL BELL, CG USAREUR, WILL CHAIR THE NEXT ARMY IN EUROPE SAFETY  
COUNCIL, WHICH WILL BE HELD AT CAMPBELL BARRACKS IN HEIDELBERG 0815-1015 ZULU, 1  
DEC 03. FOCUS OF THE MEETING WILL BE HOLIDAY SAFETY AND PREPARATION FOR THE  
NEW YEAR DEPLOYMENTS, REDEPLOYMENTS AND REINTEGRATION

14. B. I. V CORPS HQ AND V CORPS BRIGADE SEPARATES WILL ATTEND SAFETY  
COUNCIL VIA COMMAND GROUP VTC CONFERENCE ROOM, CAMP VICTORY, IRAQ LOCAL TIME  
FOR THE VTC IS 1115-1315, 1 DEC 03. BRIGADE LEVEL COMMANDERS AND COMMAND  
SERGEANT MAJORS WILL ATTEND. MG WOJDAKOWSKI WILL HOST

DECLASSIFIED

BY U.S. Central Command  
DATE 15 OCT 2004

3 0 1 1 (U) 1<sup>ST</sup> ARMOR DIVISION WILL COORDINATE TO PARTICIPATE IN THE VTC FROM THEIR HEADQUARTERS

3 0 1 2 (U) 173<sup>RD</sup> ABN BRIGADE WILL COORDINATE TO PARTICIPATE IN THE VTC FROM THEIR HEADQUARTERS

3 0 1 3 (U) UNITS MUST CONFIRM ATTENDANCE AND PROVIDE NAMES OF ATTENDEES TO [REDACTED] CJTF-7 SAFETY OFFICER, NO LATER THAN 25 NOV 03

3 0 1 4 (U) USAREUR VTC MANAGER IS [REDACTED], DSN 314-370-7965/5942, [REDACTED]

3 0 1 5 (U) CJTF-7 VTC POC IS MSG [REDACTED] DSN 822-1629, [REDACTED]

3 0 1 6 (U) POC THIS FRAGO IS MR. [REDACTED] AT DNVT 550-2644, OR EMAIL ADDRESS [REDACTED]

3 0 1 7 (U) MASS GRAVE SITE EXPLOITATION IN 82<sup>ND</sup> ABN AOR.

3 0 1 8 (S//REL TO USA AND MCFI) SITUATION PROBABLE MASS GRAVE SITES HAVE BEEN LOCATED IN THE 82<sup>ND</sup> ABN AOR. CID WILL CONDUCT SITE EXPLOITATIONS IN ORDER TO SECURE AND PRESERVE EVIDENCE OF ATROCITIES COMMITTED BY THE FORMER REGIME IAW FRAGO 322, CJTF-7 OPOD 03-036. ADDITIONAL RESOURCES WILL BE REQUIRED FROM 82<sup>ND</sup> ABN IN ORDER TO ACCOMPLISH THIS MISSION.

3 0 1 9 (S//REL TO USA AND MCFI) 82<sup>ND</sup> ABN WILL PROVIDE SECURITY ESCORT, EOD, NBC AND LOGISTICAL SUPPORT IN ORDER TO ENABLE CID TO CONDUCT THE MASS GRAVE SITE EXPLOITATIONS. THE MASS GRAVE SITES ARE LOCATED AT

RRSLR 4L164 99785  
38SLR 4L164 74657

3 0 2 0 (U) 82<sup>ND</sup> ABN

3 0 2 1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) PROVIDE ALL CLASSES OF NECESSARY LOGISTICAL SUPPORT THROUGHOUT THE OPERATION.

3 0 2 2 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) PROVIDE A SECURITY ELEMENT TO PROVIDE CONVOY SECURITY TO AND FROM THE SITE, PROVIDE SECURITY AT THE SITE DURING EXPLOITATION AND SECURITY FOR THE TACTICAL HUMINT TEAM WHO WILL ASSIST IN INTERVIEWING LOCAL RESIDENTS.

3 0 2 3 (U) NLT 251000CNOV03 PROVIDE EOD SUPPORT FOR SITE SURVEYS TO ID ANY TYPE OF UNEXPLODED ORDNANCE AND BOOBY TRAPS. EOD WILL REMAIN ON SITE UNTIL THE EXPLOITATION HAS COMMENCED IN ORDER TO CLEAR ANY ADDITIONAL AREAS VIC THE GRID THAT MAY CONTAIN FURTHER EVIDENCE SUPPORTING THE MASS GRAVE EFFORT. CID OIC WILL RELEASE THE EOD TEAM.

3 0 2 4 (U) NLT 251000CNOV03 PROVIDE NBC SUPPORT FOR SITE SURVEY TO ID ANY NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL OR CHEMICAL HAZARDS. THE NBC WILL REMAIN ON SITE UNTIL THE EXPLOITATION HAS COMMENCED IN ORDER TO CLEAR ANY ADDITIONAL AREAS VIC THE GRID THAT MAY CONTAIN FURTHER EVIDENCE SUPPORTING THE MASS GRAVE EFFORT. THE CID OIC WILL RELEASE THE NBC TEAM.

3 C 2 C 5 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) PRIOR TO SITE EXPLOITATION EOD AND NBC WILL REPORT ALL FINDINGS RELATING TO THE SAFETY AND SECURITY OF THE SITE TO THE CID SITE OIC

3 C 2 C 6 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) BE PREPARED TO PROVIDE ONE TACTICAL HUMINT TEAM WITH TRANSLATOR TO ASSIST CID WITH INTERVIEWS OF LOCAL POPULATION.

3 C 2 D (U) 10<sup>TH</sup> MP BN (CID)

3 C 2 D 1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) THE 10th MP BN (CID) WILL PROVIDE CID TEAMS AND A FORENSIC SCIENCE OFFICER (FSO) TO CONDUCT A MASS GRAVE SITE EXPLOITATION THE SENIOR C D TEAM MEMBER WILL BE IDENTIFIED AS THE OIC OF THE MISSION

3 C 2 D 2 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) BE PREPARED TO SUBMIT HUMINT COLLECTION REQUIREMENT (HRC) TO CJTF7 C2 COLLECTION MANAGEMENT AND DISSEMINATION OFFICE IN ORDER TO GATHER INFORMATION AND HISTORICAL STAT FROM THE COMMUNITY CONCERNING ATROCITIES COMMITTED BY THE FORMER REGIME IVC THE MASS GRAVE SITE.

3 C 2 D (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) DIRLAUTH AT THE LOWEST POSSIBLE LEVEL IS GRANTED FOR ALL ELEMENTS TO COORDINATE LINK UP AND FOLLOW ON OPERATIONS

3 C 2 D (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) 251030CNOV03 IS THE NLT TIME FOR THE ASSESSMENT TO BEGIN

3 C 2 D (U) UNITS WILL USE THEIR OWN ORGANIC TRANSPORTATION

3 C 2 D (U) POC FOR CID IS [REDACTED] AT 584-9902 (DNVT) OR [REDACTED]

3 C 2 D (U) RADIO FREQUENCY IDENTIFICATION (RFID) TAG ORDERING FOR REDEPLOYING UNITS

3 C 2 D (U) SITUATION RADIO FREQUENCY IDENTIFICATION (RFID) IS CURRENTLY BEING UTILIZED WITHIN THE CJTF-7 AOR TO PROVIDE THE CAPABILITY TO IDENTIFY, POSITION, AND TRACK PROGRESS OF CONVOYS AND ALL CLASSES OF SUPPLY ACCORDING TO PCD RFID POLICY, ALL LAYER 4 FREIGHT CONTAINERS (E G 20/40 FOOT SEA VANS, LARGE ENGINE CONTAINERS) AND PALLETIZED (463L AIR PALLETS) SUSTAINMENT AND UNIT MOVE SHIPMENTS, AS WELL AS ALL MAJOR ORGANIZATIONAL EQUIPMENT, MUST HAVE RFID TAGS APPLIED WITH CONTENT LEVEL DETAIL AND APPLIED AT THE POINT OF ORIGIN BY ALL ACTIVITIES STUFFING CONTAINERS OR BUILDING AIR PALLETS

3 C 2 D (U) ALL MSCS

3 C 2 D (U) AT LEAST 60 DAYS PRIOR TO REDEPLOYING, ALL OIF UNITS WILL ORDER RFID TAGS (STOCK #6350-01-495-3040) AND THE COMPATIBLE BATTERIES (STOCK #6135-01-01-0000) TO MEET THEIR REDEPLOYMENT REQUIREMENTS

3 C 2 D (U) POINT OF CONTACT [REDACTED] CJTF-7 C4 LOG AUTO CHIEF, 318-822- [REDACTED]

3 C 2 D (U) RADIOLOGICAL SURVEY TO CONFIRM OR DENY THE PRESENCE OF POTENTIAL RADIOACTIVE LIGHTNING ARRESTORS.

3 C 2 D (U) 82ABN

3 C 4 A 1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) CONDUCT RADIOLOGICAL SURVEY TO CONFIRM OR DENY THE PRESENCE OF POTENTIAL RADIOACTIVE LIGHTNING ARRESTORS IVC ALTHEER, 38SMB 24093 31737, AND MUTASIM, 38SMB 23887 30221, NLT 28 NOV 03 REPORT RESULTS OF THE SURVEY TO CJTF-7 NBC AND TF D&E UPON COMPLETION OF THE MISSION. IF RADIOLOGICAL SOURCES ARE LOCATED, TF D&E WILL CONDUCT A RECOVERY MISSION AT A LATER DATE

3 C 4 A 2 (U) DIRLAUTH WITH ISG FOR CALL SIGN AND FREQUENCY

3 C 4 B (U) 4ID

3 C 4 B 1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) CONDUCT RADIOLOGICAL SURVEY TO CONFIRM OR DENY THE PRESENCE OF POTENTIAL RADIOACTIVE LIGHTNING ARRESTORS IVO TAMIYRA, 38SMC 43693 20078, NLT 28 NOV 03 REPORT RESULTS OF THE SURVEY TO CJTF-7 NBC AND TF D&E UPON COMPLETION OF THE MISSION IF RADIOLOGICAL SOURCES ARE LOCATED, TF D&E WILL CONDUCT A RECOVERY MISSION AT A LATER DATE

3 C 4 B 2 (U) DIRLAUTH WITH ISG FOR CALL SIGN AND FREQUENCY.

3 C 4 C (U) CJTF-7 NBC POC IS [REDACTED] AT DSN 822-1631 OR DNVT 302-550-3493/00-641-2088 EMAIL CENTRIXS [REDACTED] OR SIPR: [REDACTED]

3 C 4 D (U) ISG POC IS LTC NORTHUP OR MAJ [REDACTED] AT DSN 835-1101/1105  
SIPR [REDACTED]

3 C 4 E (U) MOD 1 TO FRAGO 1069 [11 NOV03 DTU] (BALAD SECURITY PLAN)

3 C 4 F (U) 3COSCOM

3 C 7 B 1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7.B 4 RECEIVE WEEKLY THREAT ASSESSMENT FROM CJTF-7 C2/CACE FOR LSA ANACONDA

3 C 7 B 2 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7.B.5 SUPPORT THE 4ID SFC RPT. PLANNING AT LSA ANACONDA WITH CJTF-7 C2/CACE THREAT ASSESSMENT

3 C 7 C (U) C2

3 C 7 C 1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [CHANGE] LINE 3 C.7.C 1 PROVIDE 3 COSCOM G2 WITH LSA ANACONDA WEEKLY THREAT ASSESSMENT NLT 1700 EVERY THURSDAY

3 C 7 C 2 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7.C 2 ENSURE WEEKLY ASSESSMENT ADDRESSES THREATS TO AIRCRAFT ON THE GROUND (SMALL ARMS, MORTAR, RPG, ETC) THREATS TO AIRCRAFT IN FLIGHT (SMALL ARMS, RPGS, AND MANPADS)

3 C 7 C 3 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7 C 3 POC IS CJTF-7 CACE [REDACTED] @ DNVT 559-4331 OR MAJ [REDACTED] @ DNVT 559-4340

3 C 7 D (U) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7 D CJTF-7 AT/FP

3 C 7 D 1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [ADD] LINE 3 C 7.D.1 BE PREPARED TO PROVIDE 3 COSCOM WITH UPDATED SECURITY VULNERABILITY ASSESSMENT-LSA ANACONDA, IRAQ

3 C 7 E (U) DRIVERS AND SECURITY SUPPORT TO BG KEMMITT

3 C 6 A 1 (U) 1AD

3 C 6 A 1 (U) PROVIDE 4 SOLDIERS (1EA NCC and 3EA SPECIALIST) AS DRIVERS AND SECURITY SUPPORT TO BG KEMMITT FROM 20 NOV 03 TO 31 DEC 03 TASKER WILL END UPON ARRIVAL OF BG KEMMITT'S ASSIGNED DRIVERS AND SECURITY DETAIL FROM FORT BRAGG ON 01 JAN 04

3 C 6 A 2 (U) SOLDIERS MUST BE ABLE TO DRIVE A SUV SOLDIERS WILL RECEIVE DEFENSIVE DRIVER'S TRAINING UPON ARRIVAL AT THE CJTF7 (FWD)

3 C 6 A 3 (U) SOLDIERS WILL RECEIVE ORIENTATION OF THE AOR FROM CJTF7 (FWD)

3 C 6 A 4 (U) SOLDIERS WILL RECEIVE ALL LIFE SUPPORT (BILLETING, RATIONS, ETC) FROM CJTF7 (FWD)

3 C 6 A 5 (U) DIRLAUTH AND DIRECTED BETWEEN STB AND THE CJTF7 (FWD) SGS OFFICE POC

3 C 6 B (U) CJTF7 JOC (FWD) POINT OF CONTACT CJTF7 (FWD) SGS IS SGM [REDACTED] AT DNVF 559-7011 OR 7013 (JOC FORWARD)

3 C 7 (U) STANDING UP OF JORDANIAN TRAINING SITE FOR IRAQI POLICE

3 C 7 A (U) MISSION. CJTF-7 ASSEMBLES, PROCESSES AND TRANSPORTS 500 IRAQI POLICE CADETS TO JORDAN NLT 302300CNOV03 IN ORDER TO SUPPORT MINISTRY OF INTERIOR'S PLAN TO ACCELERATE IRAQI POLICE TRAINING

3 C 7 B (U) COMMANDER'S INTENT MY INTENT IS TO SUPPORT MINISTRY OF INTERIOR'S INITIATIVE TO ACCELERATE IRAQI POLICE TRAINING USING CJTF-7 ASSETS TO ASSIST IN RECRUITING, SCREENING AND TRANSPORTING

3 C 7 C (U) CONCEPT OF THE OPERATION IN ORDER TO CREATE A MORE STABLE AND SECURE ENVIRONMENT IN IRAQ AND TO FACILITATE TRANSITION TO LOCAL CONTROL, IT HAS BEEN DETERMINED THAT ADDITIONAL TRAINED IRAQI POLICE FORCES ARE REQUIRED TO PATROL SELECTED AREAS AND REDUCE THE RELIANCE ON COALITION FORCES AS PART OF THE ACCELERATION PLAN, A TRAINING ACADEMY FOR IRAQI POLICE WAS CREATED IN JORDAN THE FIRST CLASS OF 500 IRAQI POLICE CADETS WILL BEGIN TRAINING IN JORDAN ON 01DEC03 BAGHDAD HAS ONLY 36% OF ITS REQUIRED EFFECTIVE POLICE FORCE, SO IRAQIS FROM THE BAGHDAD AREA WHO WERE ATTENDING THE BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY PRIOR TO THE START OF OPERATION IRAQI FREEDOM WILL FILL THE CLASS DUE TO TRANSPORTATION LIMITATIONS, CADETS WILL HAVE TO BE TRANSPORTED OVER A PERIOD OF TWO DAYS ON COMPLETION OF THIS COURSE, THE POLICE WILL BE DISTRIBUTED TO POLICE DEPARTMENTS THROUGHOUT THE BAGHDAD AREA BY THE MSC WITH THE INTENT OF MEETING THE MOI DIRECTED EFFECTIVE IRAQI POLICE ENDSTATE IN EACH AREA

3 C 7 D (U) 1AD

3 C 7 D (U) IDENTIFY 500 IRAQI POLICE CADETS TO ATTEND THE FIRST TRAINING CLASS IN JORDAN (J01-04) SUBMIT NAMES AND BADGE NUMBERS TO [REDACTED] PMO LNO T. MCI [REDACTED] DSN 318 239-6292, CELL PHONE 914 360-3228, EMAIL [REDACTED] CLASS J01-04 WILL START 01DEC03 AND GRADUATE 30JAN04

- 3007D2 (U) ASSEMBLE AND PROVIDE MEALS AND BILLETING FOR 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS AT BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY NLT 281700CNOV03 TO 291100CNOV03
- 3007D3 (U) ASSEMBLE AND PROVIDE MEALS AND BILLETING FOR 200 IRAQI POLICE CADETS AT BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY NLT 291700CNOV03 TO 301100CNOV03
- 3007D4 (U) BPT TO PROVIDE A SECURITY DETACHMENT ON EACH FLIGHT TO JORDAN (MINIMUM OF ONE US PERSONNEL PER FLIGHT TO ACCOMPANY CADETS TO JORDAN UNTIL CADETS ARE TURNED OVER TO MGI REP IN JORDAN)
- 3007D5 (U) RECEIVE 300 RETURNING CADETS AT THE BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY ON 31JAN04 ARRANGE FOR TRANSPORTATION TO THEIR HOME STATION
- 3007D6 (U) RECEIVE 200 RETURNING CADETS AT THE BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY ON 01FEB04 ARRANGE FOR TRANSPORTATION TO THEIR HOME STATION
- 3007D7 (U) INTEGRATE NEWLY GRADUATED IRAQI POLICE, INTO BAGHDAD POLICE STRUCTURE NLT 14 FEB 04
- 3007D8 (U) COORDINATE FOR SECURITY ESCORT FOR 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS FROM BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY TO BIAP NLT 291100CNOV03.
- 3007D9 (U) COORDINATE FOR SECURITY ESCORT FOR 200 IRAQI POLICE CADETS FROM BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY TO BIAP NLT 301100CNOV03
- 3007D10 (U) COORDINATE FOR SECURITY ESCORT FOR RETURNING IRAQI POLICE FROM BIAP TO BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY 31JAN04, TIME IS TBD, FOR 300PAX
- 3007D11 (U) COORDINATE FOR SECURITY ESCORT FOR RETURNING IRAQI POLICE FROM BIAP TO BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY 1FEB04, TIME IS TBD, FOR 200PAX
- 3007E (U) CJTF-7 PMO
- 3007E1 (U) COORDINATE MWD SUPPORT FOR SEARCHING 300 IRAQI POLICE CADET BAGS AND BUSHES AT BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY NLT 290900CNOV03
- 3007E2 (U) COORDINATE MWD SUPPORT FOR SEARCHING 200 IRAQI POLICE CADET BAGS AND BUSHES AT BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY NLT 300900CNOV03
- 3007F (U) CJTF-7 C4
- 3007F1 (U) COORDINATE TRANSPORT FOR 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS FROM BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY TO BIAP NLT 291100CNOV03
- 3007F2 (U) COORDINATE TRANSPORT FOR 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS FROM BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY TO BIAP NLT 301100CNOV03
- 3007F3 (U) COORDINATE WITH AMD TO SCHEDULE FLIGHTS TO JORDAN IN ORDER TO TRANSPORT 300 IRAQI POLICE CADETS STARTING NET 291300CNOV03
- 3007F4 (U) COORDINATE WITH AMD TO SCHEDULE FLIGHTS TO JORDAN IN ORDER TO TRANSPORT 200 IRAQI POLICE CADETS STARTING NET 301300CNOV03

3 C 7 E 2 (U) COORDINATE WITH AMD TO SCHEDULE FLIGHTS FROM JORDAN TO BIAP IN  
-DEP TO RETURN GRADUATED IRAQI POLICE FROM JORDAN 31JAN04 (300PAX) AND 01FEB04  
(0044)

3 C 7 E 3 (U) COORDINATE TRANSPORT FOR RETURNING IRAQI POLICE FROM BIAP TO  
BAGHDAD POLICE ACADEMY 31JAN04 AND 01FEB04 (FLIGHT TIMES TBD)

3 C 7 E 7 (U) COORDINATE WITH AMD TO ARRANGE FOR A STAGING AREA AT BIAP CAPABLE  
OF HOLDING UP TO 350 IRAQI POLICE CADETS WITH THE NECESSARY PROTECTION FROM  
WEATHER AND NECESSARY LIFE SUPPORT (MEALS, WATER, AND LATRINE FACILITY) WHILE  
SEGREGATING THEM FROM US PERSONNEL THIS STAGING AREA IS TO BE USED FOR BOTH  
DEPARTING AND ARRIVING FLIGHTS

3 C 7 G (U) IRAQI POLICE CADETS WILL BE PAID EVERY FOUR WEEKS IN JORDAN BY THE  
MINISTRY OF INTERIOR

3 C 7 H (U) IRAQI POLICE CADETS ARE REQUIRED TO TRAVEL IN SUITABLE CIVILIAN  
CLOTHING

3 C 7 I (U) ALL IRAQI POLICE CADETS TRAVELING TO JORDAN WILL HAVE A PHOTO ID IN  
THEIR POSSESSION

3 C 7 J (U) MINISTRY OF INTERIOR WILL PROVIDE TRANSLATORS AS NECESSARY TO  
SUPPORT JTF-7 OPERATIONS

3 C 7 K (U) POC FOR THIS DTU IS [REDACTED] AT DSN 822-1301 OR DNVT 302  
519-1711

3 C 8 (U) ASSIGNMENT OF 205 MI BDE CDR RESPONSIBILITIES FOR THE BAGHDAD CENTRAL  
CONFINEMENT FACILITY (BCCF)

3 C 8 A (U) 205 MI BDE

3 C 8 B (U) EFFECTIVE IMMEDIATELY COMMANDER 205 MI BDE ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY  
FOR THE BAGHDAD CENTRAL CONFINEMENT FACILITY (BCCF) AND IS APPOINTED THE FOB  
COMMANDER UNITS CURRENTLY AT ABU GHURAYB (BCCF) ARE TACON TO 205 MI BDE FOR  
SECURITY OF DETAINEES AND FOB PROTECTION

3 C 8 C (U) MOD TO FRAGO 793 [IRAQI CURRENCY EXCHANGE]

3 C 8 D (U) 3COSCOM

3 C 8 E (U) [CHANGE] REL TO USA and MCFI [CHANGE] LINE 3 C 9 D PROVIDE RATIONS (MRE  
AT 48 HRS NTM FOR 120 PERS TO MNC SE AS REQUIRED THROUGHOUT PERIOD 30  
15 JAN 04

3 C 8 F (U) MOD TO FRAGO 17NOV03 [DTU] (CENTCOM MOVING TACSAT CHANNELS)

3 C 8 G (U) [CHANGE] REL TO USA and MCFI [CHANGE] LINE 5 B 1 A 3  
MSG PHILLIPS)  
U3/CH 33 UFO-3 15W B/W 5 KHZ  
ELEVATION = 17.0 AZIMUTH = 252.4  
PARALLEL 33 = UPLINK 302 635  
DOWNLINK = 249 035  
TERMINAL CH# 152

1.1. E (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [CHANGE] LINE 5 B 1 B THESE CHANNELS ARE REQUIRED TO BE CHANGED NLT 201300CNOV03 ANY AND ALL MOVES WILL REQUIRE COORDINATION WITH THE UNITS IN THE FIELD REFER ALL QUESTIONS TO THE POC

1.1. C (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) [CHANGE] LINE 5.B 1.C POC FOR THIS ACTION IS MSC [REDACTED], FMO CJTF-7/C6, AT DSN 94-318-822-1706 OR DNVT 558-0662

3.1.1 (U) PLANNING, COORDINATION, AND LIAISON SUPPORT FOR THE IRAQI RAIL AND MINISTRY OF TRANSPORTATION (MOT)

3.1.1 A (U) 3COSCOM

3.1.1 A 1 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) NLT 22NOV03, PROVIDE MCT CAPABLE ELEMENT FOR RAIL TASK FORCE COMPOSED OF 2 CO GRADE OFFICERS, 4 NCOS, AND 8 ENLISTED SOLDIERS (2 X ADMIN, 1 X COMMUNICATIONS, DRIVERS AND SECURITY), AND EQUIPMENT. TASK FORCE WILL PROVIDE EMERGENCY RESPONSE PLANNING, COORDINATION, AND LIAISON WITH THE IRAQI RAIL AND THE MINISTRY OF TRANSPORTATION

3.1.1 A 2 (S//REL TO USA and MCFI) EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS INCLUDE 3HMVS WITH COMMUNICATIONS PACKAGE, 5 LAPTOPS (2 SIPR, 2 NIPR, 1 CENTRIX), 1 MOVEMENT TRACKING SYSTEM

3.1.1 B (U) POC FOR THIS ACTION IS [REDACTED] AT DSN 836-1147, DNVT 559- [REDACTED]

COORDINATING INSTRUCTIONS [CHANGE]

CJTF7 SNIPER TTP 19NOV03 POSTED TO CENTRIX WEBSITE.

3.1.1 B (U) A NEW CJTF7 SNIPEF TTP HAS BEEN ADDED TO THE CENTRIX WEBPAGE. TO FIND THE ABOVE LISTED TTP GO TO THE CJTF7 CENTRIX WEBPAGE AND CLICK ON THE REFERENCES TAB IN THE CENTRIX PORTAL BOX, CLICK ON TTPS, AND CLICK ON THE FOLDER LABELED CJTF7 SNIPER TTP 19NOV03

3.1.1 B (U) THE POC FOR THIS TTP IS [REDACTED] AT DSN 318 822-1612

3.1.1 B (U) SERVICE SUPPORT [NO CHANGE]

3.1.1 B (U) COMMAND AND SIGNAL [NO CHANGE]

3.1.1 B (U) [REDACTED]

[REDACTED]  
LTG

3.1.1 B (U) [REDACTED]



ATTACHMENTS

- 1 CJTF7 LOG POSTURE NORTH
- 2 CJTF7 LOG POSTURE SOUTH
- 3 CJTF7 MND SUSTAINMENT
- 4 CJTF7 SUSTAINMENT



DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
800<sup>th</sup> MILITARY POLICE BRIGADE (I/R)  
CAMP VICTORY, IRAQ  
AE 09302



REPLY TO  
ATTENTION OF


AFRC-CNY-AI-CG

18 January 2004

MEMORANDUM FOR [REDACTED]

SUBJECT Suspension from Current Duties

Pending further notice you are suspended from your duties as the Company Commander of the 372<sup>nd</sup> Military Police Company. You will be assigned grade appropriate duties at another location until a final decision is made regarding your status.

  
JANIS L. KARPINSKI  
Brigadier General, USA  
Commanding

ANNEX 32



DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
800<sup>th</sup> MILITARY POLICE BRIGADE (L/R)  
CAMP VICTORY, IRAQ  
AE 09302



REPLY TO  
ATTENTION OF


AFRC-CNY-AI-CG

19 January 2004

MEMORANDUM FOR First Sergeant [REDACTED]

SUBJECT Suspension from Current Duties

Pending further notice you are suspended from your duties as the First Sergeant of the 372<sup>nd</sup> Military Police Company. You will be assigned grade appropriate duties at another location until a final decision is made regarding your status.

  
JANIS L. KARPINSKI  
Brigadier General, USA  
Commanding

800. BDE  
OFFICER RATING SCHEME

RATED OFFICER

Bde Cdr  
Deputy  
XO  
Attle

Cdr

RATER

SENIOR RATER

REDEPLOYED, DETAILED TO 800TH FROM 400TH  
DETAILED TO 800TH FROM 724TH

REDEPLOYED

REDEPLOYED

REDEPLOYED  
REDEPLOYED

ACTING XO FORWARD

REDEPLOYED

800 BDE  
OFFICER RATING SCHEME

RATED OFFICER

Bde Cdr  
Deputy  
XO  
Aide  
Cdr

RATER

SENIOR RATER

REDEPLOYED, DETAILED TO 800TH FROM 400TH  
DETAILED TO 800TH FROM 724TH

REDEPLOYED

REDEPLOYED

REDEPLOYED  
REDEPLOYED

ACTING XO FORWARD

REDEPLOYED

800TH MP BDE  
OFFICER / G SCHEME

MEDICAL

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

NOT ENOUGH RATING TIME  
REDEPLOYED

CHAPLAIN

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

DETAILED FROM 110TH CHAP DET/CFLCC

FINANCE OFF

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

DETAILED TO 530TH AT CAMP BUCCA

310th MP Bn

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

CDR  
XO  
CHAP  
977th Co  
988th Co

NOT ENOUGH RATING TIME  
NOT ENOUGH RATING TIME

320th MP Bn

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

CDR  
XO  
S3  
S4  
HHC Bn  
229th Co  
320th Co  
372nd Co  
670th Co  
870th Co

SUSPENDED  
DETAILED FROM 800TH

SUSPENDED

530th MP Bn

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

CDR  
XO  
S3  
S4  
HHC Bn  
211th Co  
648th Co  
755th Co

OPCON TO 4ID

800 P BDE  
OFFICER TRAINING SCHEME

724th MP Bn

[REDACTED]

CDR  
XO  
HHC Bn  
190th Co  
267th Co  
822nd Cp  
998th QM

[REDACTED]

REDEPLOYED, DETAILED FROM 143RD TRANS

744th MP Bn

[REDACTED]

CDR  
XO  
S3  
CHAP  
HHC Bn  
186th Co  
770th Co  
79th Co

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

800TH MP BDE  
OFFICER / G SCHEME

MEDICAL	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	NOT ENOUGH RATING TIME REDEPLOYED
CHAPLAIN	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	DETAILED FROM 110TH CHAP DET/CFLCC
FINANCE OFF	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	DETAILED TO 530TH AT CAMP RUJCCA
310th MP Bn	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]
	[REDACTED]	CDR XO CHAP 977th Co 988th Co	[REDACTED]	NOT ENOUGH RATING TIME NOT ENOUGH RATING TIME
320th MP Bn	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]
	[REDACTED]	CDR XO S3 S4 HHC Bn 229th Co 320th Co 372nd Co 670th Co 870th Co	[REDACTED]	SUSPENDED DETAILED FROM 800TH
530th MP Bn	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]
	[REDACTED]	CDR XO S3 S4 HHC Bn 211th Co 649th Co 755th Co	[REDACTED]	SUSPENDED  OPCON TO 4ID



80C P BDE  
OFFICER TRAINING SCHEME

724th MP Bn

[REDACTED]

CDR  
XO  
HHC Bn  
190th Co  
267th Co  
822nd Co  
998th QM

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

REDEPLOYED, DETAILED FROM 143RD TRANS

744th MP Bn

[REDACTED]

CDR  
XO  
S3  
CHAP  
HHC Bn  
186th Co  
770th Co  
79th Co

[REDACTED]

[REDACTED]

## FOREWORD

A list of the treaties relating to the conduct of land warfare which have been ratified by the United States, with the abbreviated titles used in this Manual, is set forth on page iii. The official English texts or a translation of the principal treaty provisions are quoted *verbatim* in bold type in the relevant paragraphs throughout the Manual. It should be noted, however, that the official text of the Hague Conventions of 18 October 1907 is the French text which must be accepted as controlling in the event of a dispute as to the meaning of any provision of these particular conventions. (See TM 27-251.)

The 1949 Geneva Conventions for the Protection of War Victims have been ratified by the United States and came into force for this country on 2 February 1956. The effect of these four conventions upon previous treaties to which the United States is a party is discussed in detail in paragraph 5 of the text. Each of the Hague Conventions of 1899 and 1907 and each of the Geneva Conventions of 1864, 1906, and 1929 will, of course, continue in force as between the United States and such of the other parties to the respective conventions as have not yet ratified or adhered to the later, superseding convention(s) governing the same subject matter. Moreover, even though States may not be parties to, or strictly bound by, the 1907 Hague Conventions and the 1929 Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War, the general principles of these conventions have been held declaratory of the customary law of war to which all States are subject. For this reason, the United States has adopted the policy of observing and enforcing the terms of these conventions in so far as they have not been superseded by the 1949 Geneva Conventions which necessarily govern the relations between the parties to the latter (see pars. 6 and 7 of the text).

The essential provisions of each of the earlier conventions mentioned above have been substantially incorporated into the more recent and more comprehensive conventions on the same subject matter, so that observance of the latter will usually include observance of the former. For this reason, only the more recent 1949 Geneva Conventions and the relevant provisions of the 1907 Hague Conventions are quoted in this Manual.

Pertinent information concerning the current status of ratifications, adherences, reservations, and denunciations (withdrawals) will be transmitted by higher authority to commanders in the field, as occasions arise, thus rendering unnecessary the inclusion of such data in this Manual, and avoiding the frequent changes that such inclusion would entail.

Whenever possible, this Manual should be used in conjunction with TM 27-251, *Treaties Governing Land Warfare*.

FM 27-5, *Civil Affairs/Military Government*, which deals with military government policy and administration, should be consulted in connection with chapter 6 of the present Manual.

## ABBREVIATIONS

GWS.....	Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field, 12 August 1949
GWS Sea... ..	Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea, 12 August 1949
GPW . . . . .	Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War, 12 August 1949.
GC.....	Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War, 12 August 1949.
GPW 1929 . . . . .	Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War, 27 July 1929
GWS 1929 . . . . .	Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick of Armies in the Field, 27 July 1929
H III . . . . .	Hague Convention No. III Relative to the Opening of Hostilities, 18 October 1907.
H IV. . . . .	Hague Convention No. IV Respecting the Laws and Customs of War on Land, 18 October 1907.
HR . . . . .	Annex to Hague Convention No. IV, 18 October 1907, embodying the Regulations Respecting the Laws and Customs of War on Land
H V . . . . .	Hague Convention No V Respecting the Rights and Duties of Neutral Powers and Persons in Case of War on Land, 18 October 1907
H IX. . . . .	Hague Convention No IX concerning Bombardment by Naval Forces in Time of War, 18 October 1907
H X . . . . .	Hague Convention No X for the Adaptation to Maritime Warfare of the Principles of the Geneva Convention, 18 October 1907
Roerich Pact . . . . .	Treaty on the Protection of Artistic and Scientific Institutions and Historic Monuments, 15 April 1935
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice (64 Stat 108, 50 U.S.C. 551-736)

CHANGE }  
No. 1 }

HEADQUARTERS  
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY  
WASHINGTON, D. C., 15 July 1976

## THE LAW OF LAND WARFARE

FM 27-10, 18 July 1956, is changed as follows

Page 5. Paragraph 5 a (13) is added:

- (13) Geneva protocol for the Prohibition of the Use in War of Asphyxiating, Poisonous, or Other Gases, and of Bacteriological Methods of Warfare of 17 June 1925 (*T. I.A. S —*), cited herein as Geneva Protocol of 1925.

Page 18. Paragraph 37 b is superseded as follows.

*b Discussion of Rule* The foregoing rule prohibits the use in war of poison or poisoned weapons against human beings. Restrictions on the use of herbicides as well as treaty provisions concerning chemical and bacteriological warfare are discussed in paragraph 38

Page 18 Paragraph 38 is superseded as follows

### 38 Chemical and Bacteriological Warfare

*a Treat Provision* Whereas the use in war of asphyxiating, poisonous or other gases, and of all analogous liquids, materials or devices, has been justly condemned by the general opinion of the civilized world, and

Whereas the prohibition of such use has been declared in Treaties to which the majority of Powers of the world are Parties; and

To the end that this prohibition shall be universally accepted as a part of International Law, binding alike the conscience and the practice of nations

\* \* \* the High Contracting Parties, so far as they are not already Parties to Treaties prohibiting such use, accept this prohibition, agree to extend this prohibition to the use of bacteriological methods of

warfare and agree to be bound as between themselves according to the terms of this declaration (Geneva Protocol of 1925)

*b United States Reservation to the Geneva Protocol of 1925.* [T] he said Protocol shall cease to be binding on the government of the United States with respect to the use in war of asphyxiating, poisonous or other gases, and of all analogous liquids, materials, or devices, in regard to an enemy State if such State or any of its allies fails to respect the prohibitions laid down in the Protocol.

*c Renunciation of Certain Uses in War of Chemical Herbicides and Riot Control Agents.* The United States renounces, as a matter of national policy, first use of herbicides in war except use, under regulations applicable to their domestic use, for control of vegetation within US bases and installations or around their immediate defensive perimeters, and first use of riot control agents in war except in defensive military modes to save lives such as

(1) Use of riot control agents in riot control situations in areas under direct and distinct US military control, to include controlling rioting prisoners of war

(2) Use of riot control agents in situations in which civilians are used to mask or screen attacks and civilian casualties can be reduced or avoided

(8) Use of riot control agents in rescue missions in remotely isolated areas, of downed aircrews and passengers, and escaping prisoners

(4) Use of riot control agents in rear echelon areas outside the zone of immediate combat to protect convoys from civil disturbances, terrorists and paramilitary organizations

\* \* \* \* \*

NOW, THEREFORE, by virtue of the authority vested in me as President of the United States of America by the Constitution and laws of the United States and as Commander-in-Chief of the Armed Forces of the United States, it is hereby ordered as follows

SECTION 1 The Secretary of Defense shall take all necessary measures to ensure that the use by the Armed Forces of the United States of any riot control agents and chemical herbicides in war is prohibited unless such use has Presidential approval, in advance.

SECTION 2 The Secretary of Defense shall prescribe the rules and regulations he deems necessary to ensure that the national policy herein announced shall be observed by the Armed Forces of the United States (*Exec Order No 11850, 40 Fed. Reg. 16187 (1975).*)

*d. Discussion* Although the language of the 1925 Geneva Protocol appears to ban unqualifiedly the use in war of the chemical weapons within the scope of its prohibition, reservations submitted by most of the Parties to the Protocol, including the United States, have, in effect, rendered the Protocol a prohibition only of the first use in war of materials within its scope. Therefore, the United States, like many other Parties, has reserved the right to use chemical weapons against a state if that state or any of its allies fails to respect the prohibitions of the Protocol.

The reservation of the United States does not, however, reserve the right to retaliate with bacteriological methods of warfare against a state if that state or any of its allies fails to respect the prohibitions of the Protocol. The prohibition concerning bacteriological methods of warfare which the United States has accepted under the Protocol, therefore, proscribes not only the initial but also any retaliatory use of bacteriological methods of warfare. In this connection, the United States considers bacteriological methods of warfare to include not only biological weapons but also toxins, which, although not living organisms and therefore susceptible of being characterized as chemical agents, are generally produced from biological agents. All toxins, however, regardless of the manner of production, are regarded by the United States as bacteriological methods of warfare within the meaning of the proscription of the Geneva Protocol of 1925.

Concerning chemical weapons, the United States considers the Geneva Protocol of 1925 as applying to both lethal and incapacitating chemical agents. Incapacitating agents are those producing symptoms that persist for hours or even days after exposure to the agent has terminated. It is the position of the United States that the Geneva Protocol of 1925 does not prohibit the use in war of either chemical herbicides or riot control agents, which are those agents of a type widely used by governments for law enforcement purposes because they produce, in all but the most unusual circumstances, merely transient effects that disappear within minutes after exposure to the agent has terminated. In this connection, however, the United States has unilaterally renounced, as a matter of national policy, certain uses in war of chemical herbicides and riot control agents (*see Exec. Order No 11850 above*). The policy and provisions of Executive Order No

11850 do not, however, prohibit or restrict the use of chemical herbicides or riot control agents by US armed forces either (1) as retaliation in kind during armed conflict or (2) in situations when the United States is not engaged in armed conflict. Any use in armed conflict of herbicides or riot control agents, however, requires Presidential approval in advance

*The use in war of smoke and incendiary materials is not prohibited or restricted by the Geneva Protocol of 1925.*

Page 19 Paragraphs 39, 40, and 41 are superseded as follows.

### **39. Bombardment of undefended places forbidden**

*a Treaty Provision* The attack or bombardment, by whatever means, of towns, villages, dwellings, or buildings which are undefended is prohibited. (HR, art 25)

*b Interpretation.* An undefended place, within the meaning of Article 25, HR, is any inhabited place near or in a zone where opposing armed forces are in contact which is open for occupation by an adverse party without resistance. In order to be considered as undefended, the following conditions should be fulfilled

- (1) Armed forces and all other combatants, as well as mobile weapons and mobile military equipment, must have been evacuated, or otherwise neutralized,
- (2) no hostile use shall be made of fixed military installations or establishments;
- (3) no acts of warfare shall be committed by the authorities or by the population, and,
- (4) no activities in support of military operations shall be undertaken

The presence, in the place, of medical units, wounded and sick, and police forces retained for the sole purpose of maintaining law and order does not change the character of such an undefended place

### **40. Permissible objects of attack or bombardment**

*a. Attacks Against the Civilian Population as Such Prohibited.* Customary international law prohibits the launching of attacks (including bombardment) against either the civilian population as such or individual civilians as such



*b Defended Places* Defended places, which are outside the scope of the proscription of Article 25, HR, are permissible objects of attack (including bombardment). In this context, defended places include—

(1) A fort or fortified place

(2) A place that is occupied by a combatant military force or through which such a force is passing. The occupation of a place by medical units alone, however, is not sufficient to render it a permissible object of attack.

(3) A city or town surrounded by detached defense positions, if under the circumstances the city or town can be considered jointly with such defense positions as an indivisible whole.

*c Military Objectives.* Military objectives— i.e, combatants, and those objects which by their nature, location, purpose, or use make an effective contribution to military action and whose total or partial destruction, capture or neutralization, in the circumstances ruling at the time, offers a definite military advantage—are permissible objects of attack (including bombardment) Military objectives include, for example, factories producing munitions and military supplies, military camps, warehouses storing munitions and military supplies, ports and railroads being used for the transportation of military supplies, and other places that are for the accommodation of troops or the support of military operations Pursuant to the provisions of Article 25, HR, however, cities, towns, villages, dwellings, or buildings which may be classified as military objectives, but which are undefended (para 39 *b*), are not permissible objects of attack

#### 41 Unnecessary Killing and Devastation

Particularly in the circumstances referred to in the preceding paragraph, loss of life and damage to property incidental to attacks must not be excessive in relation to the concrete and direct military advantage expected to be gained. Those who plan or decide upon an attack, therefore, must take all reasonable steps to ensure not only that the objectives are identified as military objectives or defended places within the meaning of the preceding paragraph but also that these objectives may be attacked without probable losses in lives and damage to property disproportionate to the military advantage anticipated. Moreover, once a fort or defended locality has surrendered, only such further damage is permitted as is demanded by the exigencies of war, such as the removal of fortifications, demolition of military buildings, and destruction of military stores (HR, art 23, par (g), GC, art 53)

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

**FRED C. WEYAND**  
*General, United States Army*  
*Chief of Staff*

Official:

**PAUL T. SMITH**  
*Major General, United States Army*  
*The Adjutant General*

Distribution:

*Active Army, ARNG, USAR* To be distributed in accordance  
with DA Form 12-11B, requirements for the Law of Land Warfare.

## THE LAW OF LAND WARFARE

	Paragraphs	Page
<b>CHAPTER 1. BASIC RULES AND PRINCIPLES</b>		
Section I. General.....	1-14	3
II. Protecting Powers.....	15-19	12
<b>CHAPTER 2. HOSTILITIES</b>		
Section I. Commencement of hostilities.....	20-27	15
II. Forbidden conduct with respect to persons.....	28-32	17
III. Forbidden means of waging warfare.....	33-38	17
IV. Bombardments, assaults, and sieges.....	39-47	19
V. Stratagems.....	48-55	22
VI. Treatment of property during combat.....	56-59	23
<b>CHAPTER 3. PRISONERS OF WAR</b>		
Section I. Persons entitled to be treated as prisoners of war; retained medical personnel.....	60-71	25
II. Persons not entitled to be treated as prisoners of war.....	72-83	31
III. General protection of prisoners of war.....	84-92	34
IV. Beginning of captivity.....	93-98	37
V. Internment of prisoners generally.....	97-100	39
VI. Quarters, food, and clothing.....	101-105	40
VII. Hygiene and medical attention.....	106-109	42
VIII. Religious, intellectual, and physical activities.....	110-114	44
IX. Discipline.....	115-118	45
X. Rank of prisoners of war.....	119-121	46
XI. Transfer of prisoners of war.....	122-124	47
XII. Labor of prisoners of war.....	125-133	48
XIII. Financial resources of prisoners of war.....	134-144	51
XIV. Relations of prisoners of war with the exterior.....	145-153	55
XV. Relations of prisoners of war and the authori- ties.....	154-157	60
XVI. Penal and disciplinary sanctions.....	168-184	62
XVII. Termination of captivity.....	185-202	72
XVIII. Information bureaus and relief societies for pris- oners of war.....	203-207	79
<b>CHAPTER 4. THE WOUNDED AND SICK</b>		
Section I. General provisions.....	208-214	83
II. Wounded and sick.....	215-219	84
III. Medical units, establishments, personnel and transfers.....	220-237	87
IV. The Red Cross emblem.....	238-245	95

\* This manual supersedes FM 27-10, 1 October 1940, including C 1, 15 November 1944.

	Paragraphs	Page
<b>CHAPTER 5. CIVILIAN PERSONS</b>		
Section I. General provisions.....	246-251	98
II. General protection of populations against certain consequences of war.....	252-265	100
III. Provisions common to the territories of the parties to the conflict and to occupied territories.....	266-273	106
IV. Aliens in the territory of a party to the conflict.....	274-285	108
V. Regulations for the treatment of internees.....	286-342	112
VI. Information bureaus, central agency, and relief societies.....	343-350	124
<b>CHAPTER 6. OCCUPATION</b>		
Section I. General.....	351-361	138
II. Administration of occupied territory.....	362-378	141
III. Rights of the population of occupied territory.....	379-387	144
IV. Relief.....	388-392	147
V. Treatment of enemy property.....	393-417	148
VI. Services of inhabitants and of officials.....	418-424	154
VII. Public finance.....	425-431	156
VIII. Security of the occupant: penal legislation and procedure.....	432-448	158
<b>CHAPTER 7. NONHOSTILE RELATIONS OF BELLIGERENTS</b>		
Section I. General.....	449-453	165
II. Military passports, safe-conducts, and safeguards.....	454-457	165
III. Parlementsaires.....	458-468	167
IV. Cartels.....	469	169
V. Capitulations.....	470-478	169
VI. Armistices.....	479-494	172
<b>CHAPTER 8. REMEDIES FOR VIOLATION OF INTERNATIONAL LAW; WAR CRIMES</b>		
Section I. Remedies and reprisals.....	495-497	176
II. Crimes under international law.....	498-504	178
III. Punishment of war crimes.....	505-508	180
IV. Defenses not available.....	509-511	182
<b>CHAPTER 9. NEUTRALITY</b>		
Section I. General.....	512-521	184
II. Recruiting in neutral territory.....	522-524	186
III. Supplies and services from neutral territory.....	525-531	187
IV. Internment of belligerent forces and tending of wounded and sick in neutral territory.....	532-546	188
V. Neutral persons.....	547-551	191
VI. Railway material.....	552	192
<b>APPENDIX: INDEX OF ARTICLES OF THE 1949 GENEVA CONVENTIONS AND THE 1907 HAGUE CONVENTIONS.....</b>		<b>194</b>
<b>INDEX.....</b>		<b>198</b>

# CHAPTER 1

## BASIC RULES AND PRINCIPLES

---

### Section I. GENERAL

#### 1. Purpose and Scope

The purpose of this Manual is to provide authoritative guidance to military personnel on the customary and treaty law applicable to the conduct of warfare on land and to relationships between belligerents and neutral States. Although certain of the legal principles set forth herein have application to warfare at sea and in the air as well as to hostilities on land, this Manual otherwise concerns itself with the rules peculiar to naval and aerial warfare only to the extent that such rules have some direct bearing on the activities of land forces.

This Manual is an official publication of the United States Army. However, those provisions of the Manual which are neither statutes nor the text of treaties to which the United States is a party should not be considered binding upon courts and tribunals applying the law of war. However, such provisions are of evidentiary value insofar as they bear upon questions of custom and practice.

#### 2. Purposes of the Law of War

The conduct of armed hostilities on land is regulated by the law of land warfare which is both written and unwritten. It is inspired by the desire to diminish the evils of war by

a Protecting both combatants and noncombatants from unnecessary suffering,

b Safeguarding certain fundamental human rights of persons who fall into the hands of the enemy, particularly prisoners of war, the wounded and sick, and civilians, and

c Facilitating the restoration of peace

#### 3. Basic Principles

a *Prohibitory Effect* The law of war places limits on the exercise of a belligerent's power in the interests mentioned in paragraph 2 and requires that belligerents refrain from employing any kind or degree of violence which is not actually necessary for military purposes and that they conduct hostilities with regard for the principles of humanity and chivalry.

The prohibitory effect of the law of war is not minimized by "military necessity" which has been defined as that principle which justifies those measures not forbidden by international law which are indispensable for securing the complete submission of the enemy as soon as possible. Military necessity has been generally rejected as a defense for acts forbidden by the customary and conventional laws of war inasmuch as the latter have been developed and framed with consideration for the concept of military necessity.

*b Binding on States and Individuals* The law of war is binding not only upon States as such but also upon individuals and, in particular, the members of their armed forces

#### 4. Sources

The law of war is derived from two principal sources:

*a Lawmaking Treaties (or Conventions)*, such as the Hague and Geneva Conventions.

*b Custom* Although some of the law of war has not been incorporated in any treaty or convention to which the United States is a party, this body of unwritten or customary law is firmly established by the custom of nations and well defined by recognized authorities on international law

Lawmaking treaties may be compared with legislative enactments in the national law of the United States and the customary law of war with the unwritten Anglo-American common law.

#### 5 Lawmaking Treaties

*a Treaties to Which the United States Is a Party* The United States is a party to the following conventions pertinent to warfare on land.

- (1) Hague Convention No. III of 18 October 1907, Relative to the Opening of Hostilities (36 Stat ' 2259, Treaty Series 598), cited herein as *H. III*.
- (2) Hague Convention No IV of 18 October 1907, Respecting the Laws and Customs of War on Land (36 Stat 2277; Treaty Series 539), cited herein as *H. IV*, and the Annex thereto, embodying the Regulations Respecting the Laws and Customs of War on Land (36 Stat 2295; Treaty Series 539), cited herein as *HR*
- (3) Hague Convention No V of 18 October 1907, Respecting the Rights and Duties of Neutral Powers and Persons in Case of War on Land (36 Stat 2310, Treaty Series 540), cited herein as *H. V*.

---

<sup>1</sup>United States Statutes at Large

- (4) Hague Convention No. IX of 18 October 1907, Concerning Bombardment by Naval Forces in Time of War (36 Stat. 2351, Treaty Series 542), cited herein as *H. IX*.
- (5) Hague Convention No. X of 18 October 1907, for the Adaptation to Maritime Warfare of the Principles of the Geneva Convention (36 Stat. 2371; Treaty Series No 543), cited herein as *H. X*.
- (6) Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of 27 July 1929 (47 Stat. 2021; Treaty Series 846), cited herein as *GPW 1929*.
- (7) Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick of Armies in the Field of 27 July 1929 (47 Stat. 2074; Treaty Series 847), cited herein as *GWS 1929*.
- (8) Treaty on the Protection of Artistic and Scientific Institutions and Historic Monuments of 15 April 1954 (49 Stat. 3267; Treaty Series 899), cited herein as the *Roerich Pact*. Only the United States and a number of the American Republics are parties to this treaty.
- (9) Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of 12 August 1949 (T. I. A. S. 3362), cited herein as *GWS*.
- (10) Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea of 12 August 1949 (T. I. A. S. 3363), cited herein as *GWS Sea*.
- (11) Geneva Convention Relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of 12 August 1949 (T. I. A. S. 3364), cited herein as *GPW*.
- (12) Geneva Convention Relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons in Time of War of 12 August 1949 (T. I. A. S. 3365), cited herein as *GC*.

*b Effect of the Geneva Convention of 1949.* *GWS* replaces the previous Geneva Wounded and Sick Conventions of 22 August 1864, 6 July 1906, and 27 July 1929 in relations between parties to *GWS* (see *GWS*, art 59). *GWS Sea* replaces Hague Convention No X of 18 October 1907, for the Adaptation to Maritime Warfare of the Principles of the Geneva Convention of 1906 in relations between parties to *GWS Sea* (see *GWS Sea*, art 58). *GPW* replaces *GPW 1929* in relations between parties to *GPW* (see *GPW*, art 134), in relations between parties to *H IV* and the corresponding convention of 1899 and which are also parties to *GPW*, it is complementary

<sup>1</sup>Treaties and Other International Acts Series

to Chapter II of the *HR* (see *GPW*, art. 135). *GC*, in relations between parties to *H. IV* and the corresponding convention of 1899, is supplementary to Sections II and III of the *HR* (see *GC*, art. 154).

## 6. Custom

Evidence of the customary law of war, arising from the general consent of States, may be found in judicial decisions, the writings of jurists, diplomatic correspondence, and other documentary material concerning the practice of States. Even though individual States may not be parties to or otherwise strictly bound by *H. IV* and *GPW 1929*, the former convention and the general principles of the latter have been held to be declaratory of the customary law of war, to which all States are subject.

The Preamble to the *HR* specifically provides:

**Until a more complete code of the laws of war has been issued, the High Contracting Parties deem it expedient to declare that, in cases not included in the Regulations adopted by them, the inhabitants and the belligerents remain under the protection and the rule of the principles of the law of nations, as they result from the usages established among civilized peoples, from the laws of humanity, and the dictates of the public conscience.**

Similarly, a common article of the Geneva Conventions of 1949 (*GWS*, art 63; *GWS Sea*, art. 62, *GPW*, art 142; *GC*, art. 158) provides that the denunciation of (withdrawal from) any of the Geneva Conventions of 1949, \* \* \* shall in no way impair the obligations which the Parties to the conflict shall remain bound to fulfil by virtue of the principles of the law of nations, as they result from the usages established among civilized peoples, from the laws of humanity and the dictates of the public conscience.

## 7. Force of the Law of War

*a Technical Force of Treaties and Position of the United States*  
Technically, each of the lawmaking treaties regarding the conduct of warfare is, to the extent established by its terms, binding only between the States that have ratified or acceded to, and have not thereafter denounced (withdrawn from), the treaty or convention and is binding only to the extent permitted by the reservations, if any, that have accompanied such ratification or accession on either side. The treaty provisions quoted in this manual in bold-face type are contained in treaties which have been ratified without reservation, except as otherwise noted, by the United States.

These treaty provisions are in large part but formal and specific applications of general principles of the unwritten law. While solemnly obligatory only as between the parties thereto, they may be said also to represent modern international public opinion as to how



belligerents and neutrals should conduct themselves in the particulars indicated.

For these reasons, the treaty provisions quoted herein will be strictly observed and enforced by United States forces without regard to whether they are legally binding upon this country. Military commanders will be instructed which, if any, of the written rules herein quoted are not legally binding as between the United States and each of the States immediately concerned, and which, if any, for that reason are not for the time being to be observed or enforced

*b. Force of Treaties Under the Constitution* Under the Constitution of the United States, treaties constitute part of the "supreme Law of the Land" (art VI, clause 2). In consequence, treaties relating to the law of war have a force equal to that of laws enacted by the Congress. Their provisions must be observed by both military and civilian personnel with the same strict regard for both the letter and spirit of the law which is required with respect to the Constitution and statutes enacted in pursuance thereof.

*c Force of Customary Law.* The unwritten or customary law of war is binding upon all nations. It will be strictly observed by United States forces, subject only to such exceptions as shall have been directed by competent authority by way of legitimate reprisals for illegal conduct of the enemy (see par. 497). The customary law of war is part of the law of the United States and, insofar as it is not inconsistent with any treaty to which this country is a party or with a controlling executive or legislative act, is binding upon the United States, citizens of the United States, and other persons serving this country

## 8. Situations to Which Law of War Applicable

*a Types of Hostilities* War may be defined as a legal condition of armed hostility between States. While it is usually accompanied by the commission of acts of violence, a state of war may exist prior to or subsequent to the use of force. The outbreak of war is usually accompanied by a declaration of war (see par. 20).

Instances of armed conflict without declaration of war may include, but are not necessarily limited to, the exercise of armed force pursuant to a recommendation, decision, or call by the United Nations, in the exercise of the inherent right of individual or collective self-defense against armed attack, or in the performance of enforcement measures through a regional arrangement, or otherwise, in conformity with appropriate provisions of the United Nations Charter.

*b Customary Law* The customary law of war applies to all cases of declared war or any other armed conflict which may arise between the United States and other nations, even if the state of war is not recognized by one of them. The customary law is also applicable

to all cases of occupation of foreign territory by the exercise of armed force, even if the occupation meets with no armed resistance

c. *Treaties* Treaties governing land warfare are applicable to various forms of war and armed conflict as provided by their terms. The Hague Conventions apply to "war." Common Article 2 of the Geneva Conventions of 1949 states

***In addition to the provisions which shall be implemented in peacetime, the present Convention shall apply to all cases of declared war or of any other armed conflict which may arise between two or more of the High Contracting Parties, even if the state of war is not recognized by one of them.***

The Convention shall also apply to all cases of partial or total occupation of the territory of a High Contracting Party, even if the said occupation meets with no armed resistance.

Although one of the Powers in conflict may not be a party to the present Convention, the Powers who are parties thereto shall remain bound by it in their mutual relations. They shall furthermore be bound by the Convention in relation to the said Power, if the latter accepts and applies the provisions thereof. (GWS, GWS Sea, GPW, GC, art. 2.)

d *Special Case of Civil Wars*. See paragraph 11.

#### 9. Applicability of Law of Land Warfare in Absence of a Declaration of War

As the customary law of war applies to cases of international armed conflict and to the forcible occupation of enemy territory generally as well as to declared war in its strict sense, a declaration of war is not an essential condition of the application of this body of law. Similarly, treaties relating to "war" may become operative notwithstanding the absence of a formal declaration of war

#### 10 When Law of Land Warfare Ceases To Be Applicable

The law of land warfare generally ceases to be applicable upon:

a The termination of a war by agreement, normally in the form of a treaty of peace, or

b The termination of a war by unilateral declaration of one of the parties, provided the other party does not continue hostilities or otherwise decline to recognize the act of its enemy, or

c The complete subjugation of an enemy State and its allies, if prior to a or b, or

d The termination of a declared war or armed conflict by simple cessation of hostilities

However, certain designated provisions of the Geneva Conventions of 1949 (see GC, art 6, par 249 herein) continue to be operative, not-

withstanding the termination of any antecedent hostilities, during the continuance of a military occupation. Insofar as the unwritten law of war and the Hague Regulations extend certain fundamental safeguards to the persons and property of the populations of occupied territory, their protection continues until the termination of any occupation having its origin in the military supremacy of the occupant, notwithstanding the fact the Geneva Convention relative to the Protection of Civilian Persons may have ceased to be applicable.

## 11. Civil War

a. *Customary Law.* The customary law of war becomes applicable to civil war upon recognition of the rebels as belligerents.

b. *Geneva Conventions of 1949*

In the case of armed conflict not of an international character occurring in the territory of one of the High Contracting Parties, each Party to the conflict shall be bound to apply, as a minimum, the following provisions:

- (1) Persons taking no active part in the hostilities, including members of armed forces who have laid down their arms and those placed *hors de combat* by sickness, wounds, detention, or any other cause, shall in all circumstances be treated humanely, without any adverse distinction founded on race, colour, religion or faith, sex, birth or wealth, or any other similar criteria.

To this end, the following acts are and shall remain prohibited at any time and in any place whatsoever with respect to the above-mentioned persons:

- (a) violence to life and person, in particular murder of all kinds, mutilation, cruel treatment and torture;
- (b) taking of hostages,
- (c) outrages upon personal dignity, in particular, humiliating and degrading treatment;
- (d) the passing of sentences and the carrying out of executions without previous judgment pronounced by a regularly constituted court, affording all the judicial guarantees which are recognized as indispensable by civilized peoples.

(2) The wounded and sick shall be collected and cared for. An impartial humanitarian body, such as the International Committee of the Red Cross, may offer its services to the Parties to the conflict.

The Parties to the conflict should further endeavour to bring into force, by means of special agreements, all or part of the other provisions of the present Convention.

**The application of the preceding provisions shall not affect the legal status of the Parties to the conflict. (GWS, GPW, GWS, Sea, GC, art 3)**

## **12. Military Government and Martial Law Distinguished**

In the practice of the United States, military government is the form of administration which may be established and maintained for the government of areas of the following types that have been subjected to military occupation:

- a. Enemy territory.
- b. Allied territory recovered from enemy occupation, when that territory has not been made the subject of a civil affairs agreement (see par. 354)
- c. Other territory liberated from the enemy, such as neutral territory and areas unlawfully incorporated by the enemy into its own territory, when that territory has not been made the subject of a civil affairs agreement

d. Domestic territory recovered from rebels treated as belligerents.

Although military government is an accepted concept in the law of the United States, the limits placed upon its exercise are prescribed by the international law of belligerent occupation. Other countries exercise jurisdiction in occupied areas through types of administration analogous to military government even though they may be designated by other names

In the United States, martial law is the temporary government of the civil population of domestic territory through the military forces, without the authority of written law, as necessity may require. The most prominent distinction between military government, as that term is used herein, and martial law is that the former is generally exercised in the territory of, or territory formerly occupied by, a hostile belligerent and is subject to restraints imposed by the international law of belligerent occupation, while the latter is invoked only in domestic territory, the local government and inhabitants of which are not treated or recognized as belligerents, and is governed solely by the domestic law of the United States

So far as the United States forces are concerned, military government and martial law are exercised by the military commander under the direction of the President, as Commander in Chief of the Armed Forces

## **13 Military Jurisdiction**

Military jurisdiction is of two kinds first, that which is conferred by that branch of a country's municipal law which regulates its military establishment; second, that which is derived from international law, including the law of war

In the Army of the United States, military jurisdiction is exercised through the following military tribunals:

- a. Courts-martial.
- b. Military commissions
- c. Provost courts
- d. Other military tribunals.

While general courts-martial have concurrent jurisdiction with military commissions, provost courts, and other types of military tribunals to try any offender who by the law of war is subject to trial by military tribunals (*UCMJ, art 18*), it has generally been held that military commissions and similar tribunals have no jurisdiction of such purely military offenses specified in the Uniform Code of Military Justice as are expressly made punishable by sentence of court-martial (except where the military commission is also given express statutory authority over the offense (*UCMJ, arts. 104, 106*)). In practice, offenders who are not subject to the Uniform Code of Military Justice but who by the law of war are subject to trial by military tribunals, are tried by military commissions, provost courts, or other forms of military tribunals.

In areas occupied by United States forces, military jurisdiction over individuals, other than members of the Armed Forces, who are charged with violating legislation or orders of the occupant is usually exercised by military government courts. Although sometimes designated by other names, these tribunals are actually military commissions. They sit in and for the occupied area and thus exercise their jurisdiction on a territorial basis.

#### 14. Dissemination of the 1949 Geneva Conventions

a. *Wounded and Sick Convention, Wounded and Sick at Sea Convention*

The High Contracting Parties undertake, in time of peace as in time of war, to disseminate the text of the present Convention as widely as possible in their respective countries, and, in particular, to include the study thereof in their programmed of military and, if possible, civil instruction, so that the principles thereof may become known to the entire population, in particular to the armed fighting forces, the medical personnel and the chaplains. (*GWS, art 47, GWS Sea, art 48*)

b. *Prisoners of War Convention*

The High Contracting Parties undertake, in time of peace as in time of war, to disseminate the text of the present Convention as widely as possible in their respective countries, and, in particular, to include the study thereof in their programmed of military and, if possible, civil instruction, so that the principles thereof may become known to all their armed forces and to the entire population.

Any military or other authorities, who in time of war assume responsibilities in respect of prisoners of war, must possess the text of the Convention and be specially instructed as to its provisions (GPW, art. 127.)

*c. Civilians Convention*

The High Contracting Parties undertake, in time of peace as in time of war, to disseminate the text of the present Convention as widely as possible in their respective countries and, in particular, to include the study thereof in their programmed of military and, if possible, civil instruction, so that the principles thereof may become known to the entire population.

Any civilian, military, police or other authorities, who in time of war assume responsibilities in respect of-protected persons, must possess the text of the Convention and be specially instructed as to its provisions. (GC, art. 144.)

## Section II. PROTECTING POWERS

### 15. Protecting Powers

The Geneva Conventions of 1949 contain certain common provisions regarding the safeguarding of the interests of the belligerents by nations designated as "Protecting Powers " These provisions are set forth in the following paragraphs

### 16. Functions of Protecting Powers

*a Treaty Provision*

The present Convention shall be applied with the cooperation and under the scrutiny of the Protecting Powers whose duty it is to safeguard the interests of the Parties to the conflict. For this purpose, the Protecting Powers may appoint, apart from their diplomatic or consular staff, delegates from amongst their own nationals or the nationals of other neutral Powers. The said delegates shall be subject to the approval of the Power with which they are to carry out their duties.

The Parties to the conflict shall facilitate to the greatest extent possible, the task of the representatives or delegates of the Protecting Powers.

The representatives or delegates of the Protecting Powers shall not in any case exceed their mission under the present Convention. They shall, in particular, take account of the imperative necessities of security of the State wherein they carry out their duties (GWS, art. 8; GWS Sea, art 8, GPW, art 8; GC, art. 9 )

*b Article 8, GWS and GWS Sea, contains the following additional provision:*

Their activities shall only be restricted as an exceptional and temporary measure when this is rendered necessary by imperative military necessities.

Except as specifically provided otherwise by GPW and GC, the activities of representatives or delegates of the Protecting Powers under these conventions may not be restricted even in case of imperative military necessity

#### 17. Activities of the International Committee of the Red Cross

The provisions of the present Convention [s] constitute no obstacle to the humanitarian activities which the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other impartial humanitarian organization may, subject to the consent of the Parties to the conflict concerned, undertake for the protection of [persons protected by the convention] and for their relief. (GWS art. 9, GWS Sea, art. 9; GPW, art. 9, GC, art. 10.)

#### 18. Substitutes for Protecting Powers

The High Contracting Parties may at any time agree to entrust to an organization which offers all guarantees of impartiality and efficacy the duties incumbent on the Protecting Powers by virtue of the present Convention.

When \* \* \* [persons protected by the convention] do not benefit or cease to benefit, no matter for what reason, by the activities of a Protecting Power or of an organization provided for in the first paragraph above, the Detaining Power shall request a neutral State, or such, an organization, to undertake the functions performed under the present Convention by a Protecting Power designated by the Parties to a conflict

If protection cannot be arranged accordingly, the Detaining Power shall request or shall accept, subject to the provisions of this Article, the offer of the services of a humanitarian organization, such as the International Committee of the Red Cross, to assume the humanitarian functions performed by Protecting Powers under the present Convention.

Any neutral Power, or any organization invited by the Power concerned or offering itself for these purposes, shall be required to act with a sense of responsibility towards the Party to the conflict on which persons protected by the present Convention depend, and shall be required to furnish sufficient assurances that it is in a position to undertake the appropriate functions and to discharge them impartially

No derogation from the preceding provisions shall be made by special agreements between Powers one of which is restricted, even temporarily, in its freedom to negotiate with the other Power or its allies by reason of military events, more particularly where the whole, or a substantial part, of the territory of the said Power is occupied.

Whenever, in the present Convention, mention is made of a Protecting Power, such mention also applies to substitute organizations in the sense of the present Article. (*GWS, art. 10; GWS Sea, art. 10; GPW, art. 10, GC, art. 11.*)

#### 19. Conciliation Procedure

In cases where they deem it advisable in the interest of protected persons, particularly in cases of disagreement between Parties to the conflict as to the application or interpretation of the provisions of the present Convention, the Protecting Powers shall lend their good offices with a view to settling the disagreement.

For this purpose, each of the Protecting Powers may, either at the invitation of one Party or on its own initiative, propose to the Parties to the conflict a meeting of their representatives, in particular of the authorities responsible for \* \* \* [persons protected by the convention] possibly on neutral territory suitably chosen. The Parties to the conflict shall be bound to give effect to the proposals made to them for this purpose. The Protecting Powers may, if necessary, propose for approval by the Parties to the conflict, a person belonging to a neutral Power or delegated by the International Committee of the Red Cross, who shall be invited to take part in such a meeting. (*GWS, art. 11; GWS Sea, art. 11; GPW, art. 11, GC, art. 12*)



## CHAPTER 2 HOSTILITIES

---

### Section I. COMMENCEMENT OF HOSTILITIES

#### 20. Declaration of War Required

##### *a. Treaty Provision.*

**The Contracting Powers recognize that hostilities between themselves must not commence without previous and explicit warning, in the form either of a reasoned declaration of war or of an ultimatum with conditional declaration of war. (H. III, art. 1.)**

*b Surprise Still Possible* Nothing in the foregoing rule requires that any particular length of time shall elapse between a declaration of war and the commencement of hostilities

#### 21. Notification to Neutrals

**The existence of a state of war must be notified to the neutral Powers without delay, and shall not take effect in regard to them until after the receipt of a notification, which may, however, be given by telegraph. Neutral Powers, nevertheless, cannot rely on the absence of notification if it is clearly established that they were in fact aware of the existence of a state of war. (H. III, art. 2.)**

#### 22. When Articles of Hague Convention No. III Effective Between Parties

**Article I of the present Convention shall take effect in case of war between two or more of the Contracting Powers**

**Article II is binding as between a belligerent Power which is a party to the Convention and neutral Powers which are also parties to the Convention. (H III, art 3.)**

#### 23. Present Effect of Foregoing Rules

The Charter of the United Nations makes illegal the threat or use of force contrary to the purpose of the United Nations. It requires members of the organization to bring about by peaceful means adjustment or settlement of international disputes or situations which might lead to a breach of the peace. However, a nonmember nation or a member nation which violates these provisions of the Charter commits a further breach of international law by commencing hostilities without a declaration of war or a conditional ultimatum as required by the foregoing articles of Hague Convention No. III. Conversely,

a State which resorts to war in violation of the Charter will not render its acts of aggression or breach of the peace any the less unlawful by formally declaring war.

#### **24. Constitutional Provision**

Article 1, section 8, clause 11, of the United States Constitution provides that "The Congress shall have power \* \* \* to declare War." The law of war may, however, be applicable to an international conflict, notwithstanding the absence of a declaration by the Congress. (See pars. 8 and 9, concerning the situations to which the law of war has application.)

#### **25. Enemy Status of Civilians**

Under the law of the United States, one of the consequences of the existence of a condition of war between two States is that every national of the one State becomes an enemy of every national of the other. However, it is a generally recognized rule of international law that civilians must not be made the object of attack directed exclusively against them

#### **26. Effect on Enemy Aliens**

Enemy aliens located or resident in United States territory are not necessarily made prisoners or interned *en masse* on the breaking out of hostilities. Such persons may be allowed to leave the United States if their departure is consistent with national interest (*GC*, art. 35, par. 274 herein). If the security of the United States makes it absolutely necessary, enemy aliens may be placed in assigned residence or internment (*GC*, art. 42, par. 281 herein). Measures of control are normally taken with respect to at least persons known to be active or reserve members of a hostile army, persons who would be liable to service in the enemy forces, and persons who it is expected would furnish information or other aid to a hostile State. (See ch. V, sec. IV, concerning the treatment of aliens in the territory of a party to the conflict.)

#### **27. Expulsion**

In modern practice at the outbreak of hostilities the expulsion of the citizens or subjects of the enemy is generally decreed from seaports, the area surrounding airbases, airports, and fortified places, areas of possible attack, and the actual or contemplated theaters of operation. When expulsion is decreed, the persons expelled should be given such reasonable notice, consistent with public safety, as will enable them to arrange for the collection, disposal, and removal of their goods and property and for the settlement of their personal affairs. Such persons do not, however, benefit from the provisions of Articles 41 through 45, *GC* (pars. 280-284)

## Section II. FORBIDDEN CONDUCT WITH RESPECT TO PERSONS

### 28. Refusal of Quarter

It is especially forbidden \* \* \* to declare that no quarter will be given. (HR, art. 23, par. (d).)

### 29. Injury Forbidden After Surrender

It is especially forbidden \* \* \* to kill or wound an enemy who, having laid down his arms, or having no longer means of defense, has surrendered at discretion. (HR, art 23, par (c).)

### 30. Persons Descending by Parachute

The law of war does not prohibit firing upon paratroops or other persons who are or appear to be bound upon hostile missions while such persons are descending by parachute. Persons other than those mentioned in the preceding sentence who are descending by parachute from disabled aircraft may not be fired upon

### 31. Assassination and Outlawry

HR provides

It is especially forbidden \* \* \* to kill or wound treacherously individuals belonging to the hostile nation or army. (HR, art. 23, par. (b).)

This article is construed as prohibiting assassination, proscription, or outlawry of an enemy, or putting a price upon an enemy's head, as well as offering a reward for an enemy "dead or alive". It does not, however, preclude attacks on individual soldiers or officers of the enemy whether in the zone of hostilities, occupied territory, or elsewhere

### 32. Nationals Not To Be Compelled to Take Part in Operations Against Their Own Country

A belligerent is likewise forbidden to compel the nationals of the hostile party to take part in the operations of war directed against their own country, even if they were in the belligerent's service before the commencement of the war. (HR, art 23, 2d par )

## Section III FORBIDDEN MEANS OF WAGING WARFARE

### 33. Means of Injuring the Enemy Limited

#### a Treaty Provision

The right of belligerents to adopt means of injuring the enemy is not unlimited. (HR, art 22 )

b The means employed are definitely restricted by international declarations and conventions and by the laws and usages of war

### 34. Employment of Arms Causing Unnecessary Injury

#### *a Treaty Provision.*

It is especially forbidden \* \* \* to employ arms, projectiles, or material calculated to cause unnecessary suffering. (*HR, art. 23, par (e).*)

*b Interpretation* What weapons cause "unnecessary injury" can only be determined in light of the practice of States in refraining from the use of a given weapon because it is believed to have that effect. The prohibition certainly does not extend to the use of explosives contained in artillery projectiles, mines, rockets, or hand grenades. Usage has, however, established the illegality of the use of lances with barbed heads, irregular-shaped bullets, and projectiles filled with glass, the use of any substance on bullets that would tend unnecessarily to inflame a wound inflicted by them, and the scoring of the surface or the filing off of the ends of the hard cases of bullets

### 35. Atomic Weapons

The use of explosive "atomic weapons," whether by air, sea, or land forces, cannot as such be regarded as violative of international law in the absence of any customary rule of international law or international convention restricting their employment

### 36. Weapons Employing Fire

The use of weapons which employ fire, such as tracer ammunition, flamethrowers, napalm and other incendiary agents, against targets requiring their use is not violative of international law. They should not, however, be employed in such a way as to cause unnecessary suffering to individuals

### 37. Poison

#### *a Treaty Provision*

It is especially forbidden \* \* \* to employ poison or poisoned weapons (*HR, art 23, par (a) )*

*b Discussion of Rule* The foregoing rule does not prohibit measures being taken to dry up springs, to divert rivers and aqueducts from their courses, or to destroy, through chemical or bacterial agents harmless to man, crops intended solely for consumption by the armed forces (if that fact can be determined)

### 38. Gases, Chemicals, and Bacteriological Warfare

The United States is not a party to any treaty, now in force, that prohibits or restricts the use in warfare of toxic or nontoxic gases, of smoke or incendiary materials, or of bacteriological warfare. A treaty signed at Washington, 6 February 1922, on behalf of the United States, the British Empire, France, Italy, and Japan (*3 Malloy, Treaties 3116*) contains a provision (art V) prohibiting "The use in

war of asphyxiating, poisonous or other gases, and all analogous liquids, materials, or devices," but that treaty was expressly conditioned to become effective only upon ratification by all of the signatory powers, and, not having been ratified by all of the signatories, has never become effective. The Geneva Protocol "for the prohibition of the use in war of asphyxiating, poisonous, or other gases, and of bacteriological methods of warfare," signed on 17 June 1925, on behalf of the United States and many other powers (*94 League of Nations Treaty Series 65*), has been ratified or adhered to by and is now effective between a considerable number of States. However, the United States Senate has refrained from giving its advice and consent to the ratification of the Protocol by the United States, and it is accordingly not binding on this country.

#### Section IV. BOMBARDMENTS, ASSAULTS, AND SIEGES

##### 39. Bombardment of undefended places forbidden

The attack or bombardment, by whatever means, of towns, villages, dwellings, or buildings which are undefended is prohibited. (*HR, art. 25.*)

##### 40. Defended place defined

Investment, bombardment, assault, and siege have always been recognized as legitimate means of land warfare. Defended places in the sense of Article 25, HR, include:

a. A fort or fortified place.

b. A city or town surrounded by detached defense positions, which is considered jointly with such defense positions as an indivisible whole.

c. A place which is occupied by a combatant military force or through which such a force is passing. The occupation of such a place by medical units alone is not sufficient to make it a defended place.

Factories producing munitions and military supplies, military camps, warehouses storing munitions and military supplies, ports and railroads being used for the transportation of military supplies, and other places devoted to the support of military operations or the accommodation of troops may also be attacked and bombarded even though they are not defended.

##### 41. Unnecessary killing and devastation

Particularly in the circumstances referred to in the preceding paragraph, loss of life and damage to property must not be out of proportion to the military advantage to be gained. Once a fort or defended locality has surrendered, only such further damage is permitted as is demanded by the exigencies of war, such as the removal

of fortifications, demolition of military buildings, and destruction of stores (*GC*, art 147; par. 502 herein).

#### 42. Aerial Bombardment

There is no prohibition of general application against bombardment from the air of combatant troops, defended places, or other legitimate military objectives.

#### 43. Notice of Bombardment

##### *a Treaty Provision.*

**The officer in command of an attacking force must, before commencing a bombardment, except in cases of assault, do all in his power to warn the authorities. (*HR*, art. 26.)**

*b Application of Rule* This rule is understood to refer only to bombardments of places where parts of the civil population remain

*c When Warning is To Be Given* Even when belligerents are not subject to the above treaty, the commanders of United States ground forces will, when the situation permits, inform the enemy of their intention to bombard a place, so that the noncombatants, especially the women and children, may be removed before the bombardment commences

#### 44. Treatment of Inhabitants of Invested Area

*a General Population.* The commander of the investing force has the right to forbid all communications and access between the besieged place and the outside. However, Article 17, *GC* (par. 256), requires that belligerents endeavor to conclude local agreements for the removal from besieged or encircled areas of wounded, sick, infirm, and aged persons, children and maternity cases, and for the passage of ministers of all religions, medical personnel and medical equipment on their way to such areas. Provision is also made in Article 23 of the same Convention (par 262) for the passage of consignments of medical and hospital stores and objects necessary for the religious worship of civilians and of essential foodstuffs, clothing, and tonics intended for children under 15, expectant mothers, and maternity cases

Subject to the foregoing exceptions, there is no rule of law which compels the commander of an investing force to permit noncombatants to leave a besieged locality. It is within the discretion of the besieging commander whether he will permit noncombatants to leave and under what conditions. Thus, if a commander of a besieged place expels the noncombatants in order to lessen the logistical burden he has to bear, it is lawful, though an extreme measure, to drive them back, so as to hasten the surrender. Persons who attempt to leave or enter a besieged place without obtaining the necessary permission are liable to be fired upon, sent back, or detained.

*b. Diplomatic and Consular Personnel.* Diplomatic and consular personnel of a neutral State should not be prevented from leaving a besieged place before hostilities commence, but this privilege cannot be claimed while hostilities are in progress. Should they voluntarily decide to remain, they must undergo the same risks as other inhabitants.

#### 45. Buildings and Areas To Be Protected

##### *a. Buildings To Be Spared.*

**In sieges and bombardments all necessary measures must be taken to spare, as far as possible, buildings dedicated to religion, art, science, or charitable purposes, historic monuments, hospitals, and places where the sick and wounded are collected, provided they are not being used at the time for military purposes.**

**It is the duty of the besieged to indicate the presence of such buildings or places by distinctive and visible signs, which shall be notified to the enemy beforehand.** (*HR, art. 27.*) (See also *GC, arts 18 and 19, pars 257 and 258* herein, dealing with the identification and protection of civilian hospitals.)

*b. Areas To Be Protected.* In order to protect buildings used for medical purposes from being accidentally hit, it is desirable that the wounded and sick should, if possible, be concentrated in an area remote from military objectives or in an area neutralized by arrangement with the enemy. (See *GC, arts 14, 18, and 19, pars. 253, 257, and 258* herein, concerning the establishment of hospital and safety zones and localities.)

#### 46. Such Buildings to Display Sign Specified in Naval Treaty

##### *a. Treaty Provision*

**It is the duty of the inhabitants to indicate such monuments, edifices, or places by visible signs, which shall consist of large stiff rectangular panels divided diagonally into two coloured triangular portions, the upper portion black, the lower portion white.** (*H IX, art 5, 2d par*)

*b. Application of Rule* The foregoing rule adopted in this convention for naval warfare may be adopted for protecting buildings under bombardment in land warfare.

*c. Use of Foregoing for Military Purposes* The besieging forces are not required to observe the signs indicating inviolability of buildings that are known to be used for military purposes, such as quarters, warehouses, observation posts, or signal installations.

#### 47. Pillage Forbidden

The pillage of a town or place, even when taken by assault, is prohibited (*HR, art 28*)

## Section V. STRATAGEMS

### 48. Stratagems Permissible

Ruses of war and the employment of measures necessary for obtaining information about the enemy and the country are considered permissible. (*HR, art 24.*)

### 49. Good Faith

Absolute good faith with the enemy must be observed as a rule of conduct; but this does not prevent measures such as using spies and secret agents, encouraging defection or insurrection among the enemy civilian population, corrupting enemy civilians or soldiers by bribes, or inducing the enemy's soldiers to desert, surrender, or rebel. In general, a belligerent may resort to those measures for mystifying or misleading the enemy against which the enemy ought to take measures to protect himself.

### 50. Treachery or Perfidy

Ruses of war are legitimate so long as they do not involve treachery or perfidy on the part of the belligerent resorting to them. They are, however, forbidden if they contravene any generally accepted rule.

The line of demarcation between legitimate ruses and forbidden acts of perfidy is sometimes indistinct, but the following examples indicate the correct principles. It would be an improper practice to secure an advantage of the enemy by deliberate lying or misleading conduct which involves a breach of faith, or when there is a moral obligation to speak the truth. For example, it is improper to feign surrender so as to secure an advantage over the opposing belligerent thereby. So similarly, to broadcast to the enemy that an armistice had been agreed upon when such is not the case would be treacherous. On the other hand, it is a perfectly proper ruse to summon a force to surrender on the ground that it is surrounded and thereby induce such surrender with a small force.

Treacherous or perfidious conduct in war is forbidden because it destroys the basis for a restoration of peace short of the complete annihilation of one belligerent by the other.

### 51. Legitimate Ruses

Among legitimate ruses may be counted surprises, ambushes, feigning attacks, retreats, or flights, simulating quiet and inactivity, use of small forces to simulate large units, transmitting false or misleading radio or telephone messages, deception of the enemy by bogus orders purporting to have been issued by the enemy commander, making use of the enemy's signals and passwords, pretending to communicate with troops or reinforcements which have no existence, de-



ceptive supply movements, deliberate planting of false information use of spies and secret agents, moving landmarks, putting up dummy guns and vehicles or laying dummy mines, erection of dummy installations and airfields, removing unit identifications from uniforms, use of signal deceptive measures, and psychological warfare activities

#### **52. Improper Use of Identifying Devices**

It is especially forbidden \* \* \* to make improper use of a flag of truce, of the national flag, or of the military insignia and uniform of the enemy, as well as the distinctive badges of the Geneva Convention. (*HR, art 23, par. (f).*)

#### **53. Flags of Truce**

Flags of truce must not be used surreptitiously to obtain military information or merely to obtain time to effect a retreat or secure reinforcements or to feign a surrender in order to surprise an enemy. An officer receiving them is not on this account absolved from the duty of exercising proper precautions with regard to them

#### **54. National Flags, Insignia, and Uniforms as a Ruse**

In practice, it has been authorized to make use of national flags, insignia, and uniforms as a ruse. The foregoing rule (*HR, art. 23, par (f)*) does not prohibit such employment, but does prohibit their improper use. It is certainly forbidden to employ them during combat, but their use at other times is not forbidden


#### **55. Improper Use of Distinctive Emblem of Geneva Convention**

The use of the emblem of the Red Cross and other equivalent insignia must be limited to the indication or protection of medical units and establishments, the personnel and material protected by GWS and other similar conventions. The following are examples of the improper use of the emblem: Using a hospital or other building accorded such protection as an observation post or military office or depot; firing from a building or tent displaying the emblem of the Red Cross, using a hospital train or airplane to facilitate the escape of combatants; displaying the emblem on vehicles containing ammunition or other nonmedical stores, and in general using it for cloaking acts of hostility

### **Section VI. TREATMENT OF PROPERTY DURING COMBAT**

#### **56. Devastation**

The measure of permissible devastation is found in the strict necessities of war. Devastation as an end in itself or as a separate measure of war is not sanctioned by the law of war. There must be some reasonably close connection between the destruction of property and

the overcoming of the enemy's army. Thus the rule requiring respect for private property is not violated through damage resulting from operations, movements, or combat activity of the army; that is, real estate may be used for marches, camp sites, construction of field fortifications, etc. Buildings may be destroyed for sanitary purposes or used for shelter for troops, the wounded and sick and vehicles and for reconnaissance, cover, and defense. Fences, woods, crops, buildings, etc., may be demolished, cut down, and removed to clear a field of fire, to clear the ground for landing fields, or to furnish building materials or fuel if imperatively needed for the army. (See  *GC, art. 53; par. 339b; herein, concerning the permissible extent of destruction in occupied areas.*)

#### 57. Protection of Artistic and Scientific Institutions and Historic Monuments

The United States and certain of the American Republics are parties to the so-called *Roetich Pact*, which accords a neutralized and protected status to historic monuments, museums, scientific, artistic, educational, and cultural institutions in the event of war between such States (For its text, see *49 Stat. 3267; Treaty Series No. 899*)

#### 58. Destruction and Seizure of Property

**It is especially forbidden \* \* \* to destroy or seize the enemy's property, unless such destruction or seizure be imperatively demanded by the necessities of war (*HR, art. 23, par. (g).*)**

#### 59. Booty of War

*a Public Property* All enemy public movable property captured or found on a battlefield becomes the property of the capturing State.

*b Private Property* Enemy private movable property, other than arms, military papers, horses, and the like captured or found on a battlefield, may be appropriated only to the extent that such taking is permissible in occupied areas (see pars. 405-411).

*c. Prisoners of War* The property which prisoners of war are to be allowed to retain is specified in Article 18, *GPW* (par. 94).

## CHAPTER 3

### PRISONERS OF WAR

---

#### Section I. PERSONS ENTITLED TO BE TREATED AS PRISONERS OF WAR; RETAINED MEDICAL PERSONNEL

##### 60. General Division of Enemy Population

The enemy population is divided in war into two general classes:

*a.* Persons entitled to treatment as prisoners of war upon capture, as defined in Article 4, *GPW* (par 61)

*b.* The civilian population (exclusive of those civilian persons listed in *GPW*, art 4), who benefit to varying degrees from the provisions of GC (see chs 5 and 6 herein).

Persons in each of the foregoing categories have distinct rights, duties, and disabilities. Persons who are not members of the armed forces, as defined in Article 4, *GPW*, who bear arms or engage in other conduct hostile to the enemy thereby deprive themselves of many of the privileges attaching to the members of the civilian population (see sec. II of this chapter)

##### 61. Prisoners of War Defined

A. Prisoners of war, in the sense of the present Convention, are persons belonging to one of the following categories, who have fallen into the power of the enemy:

- (1) Members of the armed forces of a Party to the conflict, as well as members of militias or volunteer corps forming part of such armed forces
- (2) Members of other militias and members of other volunteer corps, including those of organized resistance movements, belonging to a Party to the conflict and operating in or outside their own territory, even if this territory is occupied, provided that such militias or volunteer corps, including such organized resistance movements, fulfil the following conditions:
  - (a) that of being commanded by a person responsible for his subordinates,
  - (b) that of having a fixed distinctive sign recognizable at a distance;
  - (c) that of carrying arms openly;
  - (d) that of conducting their operations in accordance with the laws and customs of war.

- (3) Members of regular armed forces who profess allegiance to a government or an authority not recognized by the Detaining Power.
- (4) Persons who accompany the armed forces without actually being members thereof, such as civilian members of military aircraft crews, war correspondents, supply contractors, members of labour units or of services responsible for the welfare of the armed forces, provided that they have received authorization from the armed forces which they accompany, who shall provide them for that purpose with an identity card similar to the annexed model.
- (5) Members of crews, including masters, pilots and apprentices, of the merchant marine and the crews of civil aircraft of the Parties to the conflict, who do not benefit by more favorable treatment under any other provisions of international law.
- (6) Inhabitants of a nonoccupied territory, who on the approach of the enemy spontaneously take up arms to resist the invading force, without having had time to form themselves into regular armed units, provided they carry arms openly and respect the laws and customs of war.

B. The following shall likewise be treated as prisoners of war under the present Convention:

- (1) Persons belonging, or having belonged, to the armed forces of the occupied country, if the occupying Power considers it necessary by reason of such allegiance to intern them, even though it has originally liberated them while hostilities were going on outside the territory it occupies, in particular where such persons have made an unsuccessful attempt to rejoin the armed forces to which they belong and which are engaged in combat, or where they fail to comply with a summons made to them with a view to internment.
- (2) The persons belonging to one of the categories enumerated in the present Article, who have been received by neutral or non-belligerent Powers on their territory and whom these Powers are required to intern under international law, without prejudice to any more favorable treatment which these Powers may choose to give and with the exception of Articles 8, 10, 15, 30, fifth paragraph, 58-67, 92, 126 and, where diplomatic relations exist between the Parties to the conflict and the neutral or non-belligerent Power concerned, those Articles concerning

the Protecting Power. Where such diplomatic relations exist, the Parties to a conflict on whom these persons depend shall be allowed to perform towards them the functions of a Protecting Power as provided in the present Convention, without prejudice to the functions which these Parties normally exercise in conformity with diplomatic and consular usage and treaties.

C. This Article shall in no way affect the status of medical personnel and chaplains as provided for in Article 33 of the present Convention. (GPW, art. 4.)

#### 62. Combatants and Noncombatants

The armed forces of the belligerent parties may consist of combatants and noncombatants. In the case of capture by the enemy, both have a right to be treated as prisoners of war. (HR, art. 3.)

#### 63. Commandos and Airborne Troops

Commando forces and airborne troops, although operating by highly trained methods of surprise and violent combat, are entitled, as long as they are members of the organized armed forces of the enemy and wear uniform, to be treated as prisoners of war upon capture, even if they operate singly

#### 64. Qualifications of Members of Militias and Volunteer Corps

The requirements specified in Article 4, paragraphs A (2) (a) to (d), GPW (par 61) are satisfied in the following fashion:

a. *Command by a Responsible Person* This condition is fulfilled if the commander of the corps is a commissioned officer of the armed forces or is a person of position and authority or if the members of the militia or volunteer corps are provided with documents, badges, or other means of identification to show that they are officers, non-commissioned officers, or soldiers so that there may be no doubt that they are not persons acting on their own responsibility. State recognition, however, is not essential, and an organization may be formed spontaneously and elect its own officers

b. *Fixed Distinctive Sign.* The second condition, relative to the possession of a fixed distinctive sign recognizable at a distance is satisfied by the wearing of military uniform, but less than the complete uniform will suffice. A helmet or headdress which would make the silhouette of the individual readily distinguishable from that of an ordinary civilian would satisfy this requirement. It is also desirable that the individual member of the militia or volunteer corps wear a badge or brassard permanently affixed to his clothing. It is not necessary to inform the enemy of the distinctive sign, although it may be desirable to do so in order to avoid misunderstanding

*c Carrying Arms Openly.* This requirement is not satisfied by the carrying of weapons concealed about the person or if the individuals hide their weapons on the approach of the enemy.

*d. Compliance With Law of War.* This condition is fulfilled if most of the members of the body observe the laws and customs of war, notwithstanding the fact that the individual member concerned may have committed a war crime. Members of militias and volunteer corps should be especially warned against employment of treachery, denial of quarters, maltreatment of prisoners of war, wounded, and dead, improper conduct toward flags of truce, pillage, and unnecessary violence and destruction

#### 65. The *Levée en Masse*

If the enemy approaches an area for the purpose of seizing it, the inhabitants, if they defend it, are entitled to the rights of regular combatants as a *levée en masse* (see *GPW, art. 4, par. A (6)* ; par 61 herein), although they wear no distinctive sign. In such a case all the inhabitants of the area maybe considered legitimate enemies until the area is taken. Should some inhabitants of a locality thus take part in its defense, it might be justifiable to treat all the males of military age as prisoners of war. Even if inhabitants who formed the *levee en masse* lay down their arms and return to their normal activities, they may be made prisoners of war

#### 66. Wounded and Sick

Subject to the provisions of Article 12, the wounded and sick of a belligerent who fall into enemy hands shall be prisoners of war, and the provisions of international law concerning prisoners of war shall apply to them. (*GWS, art 14.*)

#### 67. Medical Personnel and Chaplains

Medical personnel exclusively engaged in the search for, or collection, transport or treatment of the wounded or sick, or in the prevention of disease, staff exclusively engaged in the administration of medical units and establishments, as well as chaplains attached to the armed forces, shall be respected and protected in all circumstances. (*GWS, art 24*)

Members of the medical personnel and chaplains while retained by the Detaining Power with a view to assisting prisoners of war, shall not be considered as prisoners of war. They shall, however, receive as a minimum the benefits and protection of the present Convention, and shall also be granted all facilities necessary to provide for the medical care of and religious ministration to prisoners of war.

They shall continue to exercise their medical and spiritual functions for the benefit of prisoners of war, preferably those

belonging to the armed forces upon which they depend, within the scope of the military laws and regulations of the Detaining Power and under the control of its competent services, in accordance with their professional etiquette. They shall also benefit by the following facilities in the exercise of their medical or spiritual functions:

- (a) They shall be authorized to visit periodically prisoners of war situated in working detachments or in hospitals outside the camp. For this purpose, the Detaining Power shall place at their disposal the necessary means of transport.
- (b) The senior medical officer in each camp shall be responsible to the camp military authorities for everything connected with the activities of retained medical personnel. For this purpose, Parties to the conflict shall agree at the outbreak of hostilities on the subject of the corresponding ranks of the medical personnel, including that of societies mentioned in Article 26 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of August 12, 1949. This senior medical officer, as well as chaplains, shall have the right to deal with the competent authorities of the camp on all questions relating to their duties. Such authorities shall afford them all necessary facilities for correspondence relating to these questions.
- (c) Although they shall be subject to the internal discipline of the camp in which they are retained, such personnel may not be compelled to carry out any work other than that concerned with their medical or religious duties.

During hostilities the Parties to the conflict shall agree concerning the possible relief of retained personnel and shall settle the procedure to be followed.

None of the preceding provisions shall relieve the Detaining Power of its obligations with regard to prisoners of war from the medical or spiritual point of view (*GPW, art 33.*)

(See also *GWS, arts 27 and 32, pars 229 and 233 herein*)

#### 68. Persons Temporarily Performing Medical Functions

Members of the armed forces specially trained for employment, should the need arise, as hospital orderlies, nurses, or auxiliary stretcher-bearers, in the search for or the collection, transport or treatment of the wounded and sick \* \* \* who have fallen into the hands of the enemy, shall be prisoners of war, but shall be employed on their medical duties in so far as the need arises. (*GWS, arts. 25 and 29*)

#### 69. Personnel of Aid Societies

The staff of National Red Cross Societies and that of other Voluntary Aid Societies, duly recognized and authorized by their Governments, who may be employed on the same duties as the personnel named in Article 24, are placed on the same footing as the personnel named in the said Article, provided that the staff of such societies are subject to military laws and regulations.

Each High Contracting Party shall notify to the other, either in time of peace, or at the commencement of or during hostilities, but in any case before actually employing them, the names of the societies which it has authorized, under its responsibility, to render assistance to the regular medical service of its armed forces. (GWS, art. 26.)

#### 70. Enumeration Not Exhaustive

The enumeration of persons entitled to be treated as prisoners of war is not exhaustive and does not preclude affording prisoner-of-war status to persons who would otherwise be subject to less favorable treatment

#### 71. Interim Protection

##### a. Treaty Provision.

The present Convention shall apply to the persons referred to in Article 4 from the time they fall into the power of the enemy and until their final release and repatriation.

Should any doubt arise as to whether persons, having committed a belligerent act and having fallen into the hands of the enemy, belong to any of the categories enumerated in Article 4, such persons shall enjoy the protection of the present Convention until such time as their status has been determined by a competent tribunal. (GPW, art 6)

b *Interpretation* The foregoing provision applies to any person not appearing to be entitled to prisoner-of-war status who has committed a belligerent act or has engaged in hostile activities in aid of the armed forces and who asserts that he is entitled to treatment as a prisoner of war or concerning whom any other doubt of a like nature exists

c *Competent Tribunal* A "competent tribunal" of the United States for the purpose of determining whether a person of the nature described in a above is or is not entitled to prisoner-of-war status is a board of not less than three officers acting according to such procedure as may be prescribed for tribunals of this nature

d *Further Proceedings.* Persons who have been determined by a competent tribunal not to be entitled to prisoner-of-war status may



not be executed, imprisoned, or otherwise penalized without further judicial proceedings to determine what acts they have committed and what penalty should be imposed therefore.

## Section II. PERSONS NOT ENTITLED TO BE TREATED AS PRISONERS OF WAR

### 72. Certain Persons in Occupied Areas

Persons in occupied areas not falling within the categories set forth in Article 4, *GPW* (par. 61), who commit acts hostile to the occupant or prejudicial to his security are subject to a special regime, concerning which see chapter 6, section VIII. The provisions of the present section must, in the case of offenses committed in occupied territory, be read subject to the qualifications set forth in chapter 6, section VIII (for example, the limitation on punishments prescribed by *GC*, art 68, par. 438 herein)

### 73. Persons Committing Hostile Acts Not Entitled To Be Treated as Prisoners of War

If a person is determined by a competent tribunal, acting in conformity with Article 5, *GPW* (par 71), not to fall within any of the categories listed in Article 4, *GPW* (par. 61), he is not entitled to be treated as a prisoner of war. He is, however, a "protected person" within the meaning of Article 4, *GC* (par. 247). (See pars. 247 and 248, concerning the status of such "protected persons" who have engaged in conduct hostile to the opposing belligerent )

### 74. Necessity of Uniform

Members of the armed forces of a party to the conflict and members of militias or volunteer corps forming part of such armed forces lose their right to be treated as prisoners of war whenever they deliberately conceal their status in order to pass behind the military lines of the enemy for the purpose of gathering military information or for the purpose of waging war by destruction of life or property. Putting on civilian clothes or the uniform of the enemy are examples of concealment of the status of a member of the armed forces.

### 75. Spies

#### *a Treaty Provision*

A person can only be considered a spy when, acting clandestinely or on false pretences, he obtains or endeavors to obtain information in the zone of operations of a belligerent, with the intention of communicating it to the hostile party.

Thus, soldiers not wearing a disguise who have penetrated into the zone of operations of the hostile army, for the purpose of

obtaining information, are not considered spies. Similarly, the following are not considered spies: Soldiers and civilians, carrying out their mission openly, intrusted with the delivery of despatches intended either for their own army or for the enemy's army. To this class belong likewise persons sent in balloons for the purpose of carrying despatches and, generally, of maintaining communications between the different parts of an army or a territory. (HR, art. 29.)

*b. American Statutory Definition.* The first paragraph of the foregoing Hague Regulation has been in effect somewhat modified, as far as American practice is concerned, by the subsequently enacted Article 106 of the Uniform Code of Military Justice (64 Stat. 138; 50 U S C. 700), as follows

ART 106. Spies.—Any person who in time of war is found lurking as a spy or acting as a spy in or about any place, vessel, or aircraft, within the control or jurisdiction of any of the armed forces of the United States, or in or about any shipyard, any manufacturing or industrial plant, or any other place or institution engaged in work in aid of the prosecution of the war by the United States, or elsewhere, shall be tried by a general court-martial or by a military commission and on conviction shall be punished by death.

*c Article 106 Governs.* Insofar as Article 29, HR, and Article 106, Uniform Code of Military Justice, are not in conflict with each other, they will be construed and applied together. Otherwise Article 106 governs American practice

#### 76. Who Included in Definition

The definition embodied in the Hague Regulations (par 75 a) and that contained in Article 106 of the Uniform Code of Military Justice (par 75 b) include persons of all classes, whether military or civilian, without regard to citizenship or sex. Both likewise apply only where the acts are committed in time of war. The Hague definition applies only where the information is obtained or sought "in the zone of operations," while the statutory definition is not so limited. The latter includes only persons "found lurking as a spy or acting as a spy" in those places specifically designated "or elsewhere." It has not been decided whether the phrase "or elsewhere" justifies trial by a military tribunal of any person who is not found in one of the places designated or in the field of military operations or territory under martial law and is not a member of the armed forces or otherwise subject to the Uniform Code of Military Justice. Persons charged with espionage committed in the United States outside military jurisdiction are nevertheless liable to trial and punishment by the civil courts under the espionage laws (18 U S C (chap 37))

### 77. Employment of Spies Lawful

The foregoing Article 29, *HR* (par. 75), and Article 24, *HR* (par. 48), tacitly recognize the well-established right of belligerents to employ spies and other secret agents for obtaining information of the enemy. Resort to that practice involves no offense against international law. Spies are punished, not as violators of the laws of war, but to render that method of obtaining information as dangerous, difficult, and ineffective as possible.

### 78. Punishment

#### *a Necessity of Trial*

**A spy taken in the act shall not be punished without previous trial. (*HR*, art. 30.)**

*b Attempts* The spy is punishable with death whether or not he succeeds in obtaining information or in conveying it to the enemy.

#### *c Immunity upon Rejoining Own Army*

**A spy who, after rejoining the army to which he belongs, is subsequently captured by the enemy, is treated as a prisoner of war, and incurs no responsibility for his previous acts of espionage. (*HR*, art. 31)**

### 79. Aiding the Enemy

#### *a American Statutory Definition.*

Any person who—

- (1) aids or attempts to aid, the enemy with arms, ammunition, supplies, money, or other thing; or
- (2) without proper authority, knowingly harbors or protects or gives intelligence to, or communicates or corresponds with or holds any intercourse with the enemy, either directly or indirectly; shall suffer death or such other punishment as a court-martial or military commission may direct. (*UCMJ*, Art 104; *64 Stat* 138; *50 U.S.C* 698.)

*b. Interpretation* In time of war, the rule of the above article is general in its application to all persons whether or not otherwise subject to military law and without regard to citizenship or military or civil status, who give aid to an enemy government or persons adhering to it. It may be that this statute, should it be subjected to judicial interpretation, would be held to authorize the trial of civilians by military tribunals only when the offense had been committed in territory under martial law or military government, or within the zone of military operations, or within areas invaded by the United States, or within or in the vicinity of a military installation, or in a place otherwise subject to military jurisdiction. Cases occurring in the United States outside military jurisdiction are triable by the civil

courts under the espionage laws mentioned above (par 76) and laws relating to treason (*18 U.S.C (chap. 115)*).

#### **80. Individuals Not of Armed Forces Who Engage in Hostilities**

Persons, such as guerrillas and partisans, who take up arms and commit hostile acts without having complied with the conditions prescribed by the laws of war for recognition as belligerents (see *GPW, art. 4; par. 61 herein*), are, when captured by the injured party, not entitled to be treated as prisoners of war and may be tried and sentenced to execution or imprisonment.

#### **81. Individuals Not of Armed Forces Who Commit Hostile Acts**

Persons who, without having complied with the conditions prescribed by the laws of war for recognition as belligerents (see *GPW, art 4; par. 61 herein*), commit hostile acts about or behind the lines of the enemy are not to be treated as prisoners of war and may be tried and sentenced to execution or imprisonment. Such acts include, but are not limited to, sabotage, destruction of communications facilities, intentional misleading of troops by guides, liberation of prisoners of war, and other acts not falling within Articles 104 and 106 of the Uniform Code of Military Justice and Article 29 of the Hague Regulations

#### **82. Penalties for the Foregoing**

Persons in the foregoing categories who have attempted, committed, or conspired to commit hostile or belligerent acts are subject to the extreme penalty of death because of the danger inherent in their conduct. Lesser penalties may, however, be imposed.

#### **83. Military Attachés and Diplomatic Representatives of Neutral States**

Military attachés and diplomatic representatives of neutral States who establish their identity as such and are accompanying an army in the field or are found within a captured fortress, whether within the territory of the enemy or in territory occupied by it, are not held as prisoners, provided that they take no part in hostilities. They may, however, be ordered out of the theater of war, and, if necessary, handed over by the captor to the ministers of their respective countries. Only if they refuse to quit the theater of war may they be interned.

### **Section III. GENERAL PROTECTION OF PRISONERS OF WAR**

#### **84. Duration of Protection**

##### *a Treaty Provision*

The present Convention shall apply to the persons referred to in Article 4 from the time they fall into the power of the enemy.

and until their final release and repatriation \* \* \*. (GPW, art. 5; see par. 71 herein)

*b. Power of the Enemy Defined.* A person is considered to have fallen into the power of the enemy when he has been captured by, or surrendered to members of the military forces, the civilian police, or local civilian defense organizations or enemy civilians who have taken him into custody

#### 85. Killing of Prisoners

A commander may not put his prisoners to death because their presence retards his movements or diminishes his power of resistance by necessitating a large guard, or by reason of their consuming supplies, or because it appears certain that they will regain their liberty through the impending success of their forces. It is likewise unlawful for a commander to kill his prisoners on grounds of self-preservation, even in the case of airborne or commando operations, although the circumstances of the operation may make necessary rigorous supervision of and restraint upon the movement of prisoners of war

#### 86. Special Agreements

In addition to the agreements expressly provided for in Articles 10, 23, 28, 33, 60, 65, 66, 67, 72, 73, 75, 109, 110, 118, 119, 122 and 132, the High Contracting Parties may conclude other special agreements for all matters concerning which they may deem it suitable to make separate provision. No special agreement shall adversely affect the situation of prisoners of war, as defined by the present Convention, nor restrict the rights which it confers upon them.

Prisoners of war shall continue to have the benefit of such agreements as long as the Convention is applicable to them, except where express provisions to the contrary are contained in the aforesaid or in subsequent agreements, or where more favorable measures have been taken with regard to them by one or other of the Parties to the conflict (GPW, art. 6.)

#### 87. Renunciation of Rights Prohibited

##### *a. Treaty Provision*

Prisoners of war may in no circumstances renounce in part or in entirety the rights secured to them by the present Convention, and by the special agreements referred to in the foregoing Article, if such there be. (GPW, art. 7.)

*b. Interpretation* Subject to the exception noted in paragraph 199, prisoners of war are precluded from renouncing not only their rights but also their status as prisoners of war, even if they do so voluntarily. The prohibition extends equally to prisoners renouncing their status in order to become civilians or to join the armed forces of the Detaining Power

#### 88. Responsibility for the Treatment of Prisoners

Prisoners of war are in the hands of the enemy Power, but not of the individuals or military units who have captured them. Irrespective of the individual responsibilities that may exist, the Detaining Power is responsible for the treatment given them.

Prisoners of war may only be transferred by the Detaining Power to a Power which is a party to the Convention and after the Detaining Power has satisfied itself of the willingness and ability of such transferee Power to apply the Convention. When prisoners of war are transferred under such circumstances, responsibility for the application of the Convention rests on the Power accepting them while they are in its custody.

Nevertheless, if that Power fails to carry out the provisions of the Convention in any important respect, the Power by whom the prisoners of war were transferred shall, upon being notified by the Protecting Power, take effective measures to correct the situation or shall request the return of the prisoners of war. Such requests must be complied with. (*GPW, art. 12.*)

#### 89 Humane Treatment of Prisoners

Prisoners of war must at all times be humanely treated. Any unlawful act or omission by the Detaining Power causing death or seriously endangering the health of a prisoner of war in its custody is prohibited, and will be regarded as a serious breach of the present Convention. In particular, no prisoner of war may be subjected to physical mutilation or to medical or scientific experiments of any kind which are not justified by the medical, dental or hospital treatment of the prisoner concerned and carried out in his interest.

Likewise, prisoners of war must at all times be protected, particularly against acts of violence or intimidation and against insults and public curiosity.

Measures of reprisal against prisoners of war are prohibited. (*GPW, art 13*)

#### 90 Respect for the Person of Prisoners

Prisoners of war are entitled in all circumstances to respect for their persons and their honour.

Women shall be treated with all the regard due to their sex and shall in all cases benefit by treatment as favorable as that granted to men.

Prisoners of war shall retain the full civil capacity which they enjoyed at the time of their capture. The Detaining Power may not restrict the exercise, either within or without its own territory, of the rights such capacity confers except in so far as the captivity requires. (*GPW, art 14*)

### 91. Maintenance of Prisoners

The Power detaining prisoners of war shall be bound to provide free of charge for their maintenance and for the medical attention required by their state of health. (*GPW, art. 15.*)

### 92. Equality of Treatment

#### *a. Treaty Provision*

Taking into consideration the provisions of the present Convention relating to rank and sex, and subject to any privileged treatment which may be accorded to them by reason of their state of health, age or professional qualifications, all prisoners of war shall be treated alike by the Detaining Power, without any adverse distinction based on race, nationality, religious belief or political opinions, or any other distinction founded on similar criteria. (*GPW, art. 16.*)

*b* The foregoing provision does not preclude the segregation of prisoners of war to maintain order in camps, to impose punishment, or for medical reasons (See *GPW, art. 79, 5th par.; par. 155* herein.)

## Section IV. BEGINNING OF CAPTIVITY

### 93. Questioning of Prisoners

Every prisoner of war, when questioned on the subject, is bound to give only his surname, first names and rank, date of birth, and army, regimental, personal or serial number, or failing this equivalent information

If he wilfully infringes this rule, he may render himself liable to a restriction of the privileges accorded to his rank or status.

Each Party to a conflict is required to furnish the persons under its jurisdiction who are liable to become prisoners of war, with an identity card showing the owner's surname, first names, rank, army, regimental, personal or serial number or equivalent information, and date of birth. The identity card may, furthermore, bear the signature or the fingerprints, or both, of the owner, and may bear, as well, any other information the Party to the conflict may wish to add concerning persons belonging to its armed forces. As far as possible the card shall measure 6.5 x 10 cm. and shall be issued in duplicate. The identity card shall be shown by the prisoner of war upon demand, but may in no case be taken away from him.

No physical or mental torture, nor any other form of coercion, may be inflicted on prisoners of war to secure from them information of any kind whatever. Prisoners of war who refuse to answer may not be threatened, insulted, or exposed to unpleasant or disadvantageous treatment of any kind.

Prisoners of war who, owing to their physical or mental condition, are unable to state their identity, shall be handed over to the medical service. The identity of such prisoners shall be established by all possible means, subject to the provisions of the preceding paragraph.

The questioning of prisoners of war shall be carried out in a language which they understand. (*GPW, art 17.*)

#### 94. Property of Prisoners

##### *a. Treaty Provision*

All effects and articles of personal use, except arms, horses, military equipment and military documents shall remain in the possession of prisoners of war, likewise their metal helmets and gas masks and like articles issued for personal protection. Effects and articles used for their clothing or feeding shall likewise remain in their possession, even if such effects and articles belong to their regulation military equipment.

At no time should prisoners of war be without identity documents. The Detaining Power shall supply such documents to prisoners of war who possess none.

Badges of rank and nationality, decorations and articles having above all a personal or sentimental value may not be taken from prisoners of war.

Sums of money carried by prisoners of war may not be taken away from them except by order of an officer, and after the amount and particulars of the owner have been recorded in a special register and an itemized receipt has been given, legibly inscribed with the name, rank and unit of the person issuing the said receipt. Sums in the currency of the Detaining Power, or which are changed into such currency at the prisoner's request, shall be placed to the credit of the prisoner's account as provided in Article 64.

The Detaining Power may withdraw articles of value from prisoners of war only for reasons of security; when such articles are withdrawn, the procedure laid down for sums of money impounded shall apply.

Such objects, likewise sums taken away in any currency other than that of the Detaining Power and the conversion of which has not been asked for by the owners, shall be kept in the custody of the Detaining Power and shall be returned in their initial shape to prisoners of war at the end of their captivity. (*GPW, art 18*)

*b. Transactions With Prisoners* It is not proper for members of the forces of the Detaining Power to engage in bartering and other transactions with prisoners of war concerning their personal effects



*c. Unexplained Possession of Large Sums of Money by Prisoners of War.* The unexplained possession by a prisoner of war of a large sum of money justifiably leads to the inference that such funds are not his own property and are in fact either property of the enemy government or property which has been looted or otherwise stolen

#### 95. Evacuation of Prisoners

**Prisoners of war shall be evacuated, as soon as possible after their capture, to camps situated in an area far enough from the combat zone for them to be out of danger.**

Only those prisoners of war who, owing to wounds or sickness, would run greater risks by being evacuated than by remaining where they are, may be temporarily kept back in a danger zone.

Prisoners of war shall not be unnecessarily exposed to danger while awaiting evacuation from a fighting zone. (*GPW, art. 19.*)

#### 96. Conditions of Evacuation

The evacuation of prisoners of war shall always be effected humanely and in conditions similar to those for the forces of the Detaining Power in their changes of station.

The Detaining Power shall supply prisoners of war who are being evacuated with sufficient food and potable water, and with the necessary clothing and medical attention. The Detaining Power shall take all suitable precautions to ensure their safety during evacuation, and shall establish as soon as possible a list of the prisoners of war who are evacuated.

If prisoners of war must, during evacuation, pass through transit camps, their stay in such camps shall be as brief as possible. (*GPW, art 20*)

### Section V. INTERNMENT OF PRISONERS GENERALLY

#### 97. Restriction of Liberty of Movement

The Detaining Power may subject prisoners of war to internment. It may impose on them the obligation of not leaving, beyond certain limits, the camp where they are interned, or if the said camp is fenced in, of not going outside its perimeter. Subject to the provisions of the present Convention relative to penal and disciplinary sanctions, prisoners of war may not be held in close confinement except where necessary to safeguard their health and then only during the continuation of the circumstances which make such confinement necessary. (*GPW, art. 21, 1st par.*)

#### 98 Places and Conditions of Internment

Prisoners of war maybe interned only in premises located on land and affording every guarantee of hygiene and healthfulness.

Except in particular cases which are justified by the interest of the prisoners themselves, they shall not be interned in penitentiaries.

Prisoners of war interned in unhealthy areas, or where the climate is injurious for them, shall be removed as soon as possible to a more favorable climate.

The Detaining Power shall assemble prisoners of war in camps or camp compounds according to their nationality, language and customs, provided that such prisoners shall not be separated from prisoners of war belonging to the armed forces with which they were serving at the time of their capture, except with their consent. (GPW, art 22.)

#### 99. Security of Prisoners

No prisoner of war may at any time be sent to, or detained in areas where he may be exposed to the fire of the combat zone, nor may his presence be used to render certain points or areas immune from military operations

Prisoners of war shall have shelters against air bombardment and other hazards of war, to the same extent as the local civilian population. With the exception of those engaged in the protection of their quarters against the aforesaid hazards, they may enter such shelters as soon as possible after the giving of the alarm. Any other protective measure taken in favor of the population shall also apply to them.

Detaining Powers shall give the Powers concerned, through the intermediary of the Protecting Powers, all useful information regarding the geographical location of prisoner of war camps.

Whenever military considerations permit, prisoner of war camps shall be indicated in the day-time by the letters PW or PG, placed so as to be clearly visible from the air. The Powers concerned may, however, agree upon any other system of marking. Only prisoner of war camps shall be marked as such. (GPW, art 23)

#### 100 Permanent Transit Camps

Transit or screening camps of a permanent kind shall be fitted out under conditions similar to those described in the present Section, and the prisoners therein shall have the same treatment as in other camps. (GPW, art 24 )

### Section VI. QUARTERS, FOOD, AND CLOTHING

#### 101. Quarters

Prisoners of war shall be quartered under conditions as favorable as those for the forces of the Detaining Power who are

billeted in the same area. The said conditions shall make allowance for the habits and customs of the prisoners and shall in no case be prejudicial to their health.

The foregoing provisions shall apply in particular to the dormitories of prisoners of war as regards both total surface and minimum cubic space, and the general installations, bedding and blankets.

The premises provided for the use of prisoners of war individually or collectively, shall be entirely protected from dampness and adequately heated and lighted, in particular between dusk and lights out. All precautions must be taken against the danger of fire.

In any camps in which women prisoners of war, as well as men, are accommodated, separate dormitories shall be provided for them. (GPW, art. 25)

### 102. Food

The basic daily food rations shall be sufficient in quantity, quality and variety to keep prisoners of war in good health and prevent loss of weight or the development of nutritional deficiencies. Account shall also be taken of the habitual diet of the prisoners.

The Detaining Power shall supply prisoners of war who work with such additional rations as are necessary for the labour on which they are employed.

Sufficient drinking water shall be supplied to prisoners of war. The use of tobacco shall be permitted.

Prisoners of war shall, as far as possible, be associated with the preparation of their meals; they may be employed for that purpose in the kitchens. Furthermore, they shall be given the means of preparing, themselves, the additional food in their possession.

Adequate premises shall be provided for messing.

Collective disciplinary measures affecting food are prohibited. (GPW, art. 26)

### 103. Clothing

Clothing, underwear and footwear shall be supplied to prisoners of war in sufficient quantities by the Detaining Power, which shall make allowance for the climate of the region where the prisoners are detained. Uniforms of enemy armed forces captured by the Detaining Power should, if suitable for the climate, be made available to clothe prisoners of war.

The regular replacement and repair of the above articles shall be assured by the Detaining Power. In addition, prisoners of war

who work shall receive appropriate clothing, wherever the nature of the work demands. (*GPW, art. 27.*)

#### 104. Canteens

Canteens shall be installed in all camps, where prisoners of war may procure foodstuffs, soap and tobacco and ordinary articles in daily use. The tariff shall never be in excess of local market prices.

The profits made by camp canteens shall be used for the benefit of the prisoners; a special fund shall be created for this purpose. The prisoners' representative shall have the right to collaborate in the management of the canteen and of this fund.

When a camp is closed down, the credit balance of the special fund shall be handed to an international welfare organization, to be employed for the benefit of prisoners of war of the same nationality as those who have contributed to the fund. In case of a general repatriation, such profits shall be kept by the Detaining Power, subject to any agreement to the contrary between the Powers concerned. (*GPW, art. 28.*)

#### 105. Cost of Quarters, Food, and Clothing

Prisoners, including officers, are furnished quarters, food, and clothing without cost to them

### Section VII. HYGIENE AND MEDICAL ATTENTION

#### 106. Hygiene

The Detaining Power shall be bound to take all sanitary measures necessary to ensure the cleanliness and healthfulness of camps and to prevent epidemics

Prisoners of war shall have for their use, day and night, conveniences which conform to the rules of hygiene and are maintained in a constant state of cleanliness. In any camps in which women prisoners of war are accommodated, separate conveniences shall be provided for them

Also, apart from the baths and showers with which the camps shall be furnished, prisoners of war shall be provided with sufficient water and soap for their personal toilet and for washing their personal laundry, the necessary installations, facilities and time shall be granted them for that purpose. (*GPW, art. 29.*)

#### 107. Medical Attention

Every camp shall have an adequate infirmary where prisoners of war may have the attention they require, as well as appropriate diet. Isolation wards shall, if necessary, be set aside for cases of contagious or mental disease.

Prisoners of war suffering from serious disease, or whose condition necessitates special treatment a surgical operation or hospital care, must be admitted to any military or civilian medical unit where such treatment can be given, even if their repatriation is contemplated in the near future. Special facilities shall be afforded for the care to be given to the disabled, in particular to the blind, and for their rehabilitation, pending repatriation.

Prisoners of war shall have the attention, preferably, of medical personnel of the Power on which they depend and, if possible, of their nationality.

Prisoners of war may not be prevented from presenting themselves to the medical authorities for examination. The detaining authorities shall, upon request, issue to every prisoner who has undergone treatment, an official certificate indicating the nature of his illness or injury, and the duration and kind of treatment received. A duplicate of this certificate shall be forwarded to the Central Prisoners of War Agency.

The costs of treatment, including those of any apparatus necessary for the maintenance of prisoners of war in good health, particularly dentures and other artificial appliances, and spectacles, shall be borne by the Detaining Power. (GPW, art. 30.)

#### 108. Medical Inspections

Medical inspections of prisoners of war shall be held at least once a month. They shall include the checking and the recording of the weight of each prisoner of war. Their purpose shall be, in particular, to supervise the general state of health, nutrition and cleanliness of prisoners and to detect contagious diseases, especially tuberculosis, malaria and venereal disease. For this purpose the most efficient methods available shall be employed, e. g., periodic mass miniature radiography for the early detection of tuberculosis. (GPW, art. 81.)

#### 109 Prisoners Engaged on Medical Duties

Prisoners of war who, though not attached to the medical service of their armed forces, are physicians, surgeons, dentists, nurses or medical orderlies, may be required by the Detaining Power to exercise their medical functions in the interests of prisoners of war dependent on the same Power. In that case they shall continue to be prisoners of war, but shall receive the same treatment as corresponding medical personnel retained by the Detaining Power. They shall be exempted from any other work under Article 49. (GPW, art. 32.)

## Section VIII. RELIGIOUS, INTELLECTUAL, AND PHYSICAL ACTIVITIES

### 110. Religious Freedoms

Prisoners of war shall enjoy complete latitude in the exercise of their religious duties, including attendance at the service of their faith, on condition that they comply with the disciplinary routine prescribed by the military authorities.

Adequate premises shall be provided where religious services may be held. (GPW, art. 34.)

### 111. Retained Chaplains

Chaplains who fall into the hands of the enemy Power and who remain or are retained with a view to assisting prisoners of war, shall be allowed to minister to them and to exercise freely their ministry amongst prisoners of war of the same religion, in accordance with their religious conscience. They shall be allocated among the various camps and labour detachments containing prisoners of war belonging to the same forces, speaking the same language or practicing the same religion. They shall enjoy the necessary facilities including the means of transport provided for in Article 33, for visiting the prisoners of war outside their camp. They shall be free to correspond, subject to censorship, on matters concerning their religious duties with the ecclesiastical authorities in the country of detention and with international religious organizations. Letters and cards which they may send for this purpose shall be in addition to the quota provided for in Article 71. (GPW, art 85)

### 112. Prisoners Who Are Ministers of Religion

Prisoners of war who are ministers of religion, without having officiated as chaplains to their own forces, shall be at liberty, whatever their denomination, to minister freely to the members of their community. For this purpose, they shall receive the same treatment as the chaplains retained by the Retaining Power. They shall not be obliged to do any other work (GPW, art 36.)

### 113. Prisoners Without a Minister of Their Religion

When prisoners of war have not the assistance of a retained chaplain or of a prisoner of war minister of their faith, a minister belonging to the prisoners' or a similar denomination, or in his absence a qualified layman, if such a course is feasible from a confessional point of view, shall be appointed, at the request of the prisoners concerned, to fill this office. This appointment, subject to the approval of the Detaining Power, shall take place with the agreement of the community of prisoners concerned and, wherever necessary, with the approval of the local religious

authorities of the same faith. The person thus appointed shall comply with all regulations established by the Detaining Power in the interests of discipline and military security. (GPW, art. 37.)

#### 114. Recreation, Study, Sports, and Games

While respecting the individual preferences of every prisoner, the Detaining Power shall encourage the practice of intellectual, educational, and recreational pursuits, sports and games amongst prisoners, and shall take the measures necessary to ensure the exercise thereof by providing them with adequate premises and necessary equipment.

Prisoners shall have opportunities for taking physical exercise, including sports and games, and for being out of doors. Sufficient open spaces shall be provided for this purpose in all camps. (GPW, art 38)

### Section IX. DISCIPLINE

#### 115. Administration

Every prisoner of war camp shall be put under the immediate authority of a responsible commissioned officer belonging to the regular armed forces of the Detaining Power. Such officer shall have in his possession a copy of the present Convention; he shall ensure that its provisions are known to the camp staff and the guard and shall be responsible, under the direction of his government, for its application

Prisoners of war, with the exception of officers, must salute and show to all officers of the Detaining Power the external marks of respect provided for by the regulations applying in their own forces.

Officer prisoners of war are bound to salute only officers of a higher rank of the Detaining Power; they must however, salute the camp commander regardless of his rank. (GPW, art 39.)

#### 116. Badges and Decorations

The wearing of badges of rank and nationality, as well as of decorations, shall be permitted (GPW, art 40.)

#### 117. Posting of the Convention and of Regulations and Orders Concerning Prisoners

In every camp the text of the present Convention and its Annexes and the contents of any special agreement provided for in Article 6, shall be posted, in the prisoners' own language, in places where all may read them. Copies shall be supplied, on request, to the prisoners who cannot have access to the copy which has been posted.

Regulations, orders, notices and publications of every kind relating to the conduct of prisoners of war shall be issued to them

in a language which they understand. Such regulations, orders and publications shall be posted in the manner described above and copies shall be handed to the prisoners' representative. Every order and command addressed to prisoners of war individually must likewise be given in a language which they understand. (GPW, art 41.)

#### 118. Use of Weapons

The use of weapons against prisoners of war, especially against those who are escaping or attempting to escape, shall constitute an extreme measure, which shall always be preceded by warnings appropriate to the circumstances. (GPW, art. 42.)

### Section X. RANK OF PRISONERS OF WAR

#### 119 Notification of Ranks

Upon the outbreak of hostilities, the Parties to the conflict shall communicate to one another the titles and ranks of all the persons mentioned in Article 4 of the present Convention, in order to ensure equality of treatment between prisoners of equivalent rank. Titles and ranks which are subsequently created shall form the subject of similar communications.

The Detaining Power shall recognize promotions in rank which have been accorded to prisoners of war and which have been duly notified by the Power on which these prisoners depend. (GPW, art. 43 )

#### 120. Treatment of Officers

Officers and prisoners of equivalent status shall be treated with regard due to their rank and age

In order to ensure service in officers' camps, other ranks of the same armed forces who, as far as possible, speak the same language, shall be assigned in sufficient numbers, account being taken of the rank of officers and prisoners of equivalent status. Such orderlies shall not be required to perform any other work.

Supervision of the mess by the officers themselves shall be facilitated in every way. (GPW, art. 44 )

#### 121 Treatment of Other Prisoners

Prisoners of war other than officers and prisoners of equivalent status shall be treated with the regard due to their rank and age.

Supervision of the mess by the prisoners themselves shall be facilitated in every way. (GPW, art 45 )



## Section XI. TRANSFER OF PRISONERS OF WAR

### 122. Conditions

The Detaining Power, when deciding upon the transfer of prisoners of war, shall take into account the interests of the prisoners themselves, more especially so as not to increase the difficulty of their repatriation.

The transfer of prisoners of war shall always be effected humanely and in conditions not less favorable than those under which the forces of the Detaining Power are transferred. Account shall always be taken of the climatic conditions to which the prisoners of war are accustomed and the conditions of transfer shall in no case be prejudicial to their health.

The Detaining Power shall supply prisoners of war during transfer with sufficient food and drinking water to keep them in good health, likewise the necessary clothing, shelter and medical attention. The Detaining Power shall take adequate precautions especially in case of transport by sea or by air, to ensure their safety during transfer, and shall draw up a complete list of all transferred prisoners before their departure. (GPW, art. 46)

### 123. Circumstances Precluding Transfer

Sick or wounded prisoners of war shall not be transferred as long as their recovery may be endangered by the journey, unless their safety imperatively demands it.

If the combat zone draws closer to a camp, the prisoners of war in the said camp shall not be transferred unless their transfer can be carried out in adequate conditions of safety, or unless they are exposed to greater risks by remaining on the spot than by being transferred (GPW, art. 47)

### 124. Procedure for Transfer

In the event of transfer, prisoners of war shall be officially advised of their departure and of their new postal address. Such notifications shall be given in time for them to pack their luggage and inform their next of kin

They shall be allowed to take with them their personal effects, and the correspondence and parcels which have arrived for them. The weight of such baggage may be limited, if the conditions of transfer so require, to what each prisoner can reasonably carry, which shall in no case be more than twenty-five kilograms [55 pounds] per head

Mail and parcels addressed to their former camp shall be forwarded to them without delay. The camp commander shall take, in agreement with the prisoners' representative, any measures needed to ensure the transport of the prisoners' community property and of the luggage they are unable to take with them in consequence of restrictions imposed by virtue of the second paragraph of this Article.

The costs of transfers shall be borne by the Detaining Power. (GPW, art. 48.)

## Section XII. LABOR OF PRISONERS OF WAR

### 125. General

The Detaining Power may utilize the labour of prisoners of war who are physically fit, taking into account their age, sex, rank and physical aptitude, and with a view particularly to maintaining them in a good state of physical and mental health.

Non-commissioned officers who are prisoners of war shall only be required to do supervisory work. Those not so required may ask for other suitable work which shall, so far as possible, be found for them.

If officers or persons of equivalent status ask for suitable work, it shall be found for them, so far as possible, but they may in no circumstances be compelled to work. (GPW, art 49)

### 126. Authorized Work

Besides work connected with camp administration, installation or maintenance, prisoners of war may be compelled to do only such work as is included in the following classes:

- (a) agriculture;
- (b) industries connected with the production or the extraction of raw materials, and manufacturing industries, with the exception of metallurgical, machinery and chemical industries; public works and building operations which have no military character or purpose,
- (c) transport and handling of stores which are not military in character or purpose,
- (d) commercial business, and arts and crafts;
- (e) domestic service;
- (f) public utility services having no military character or purpose.

Should the above provisions be infringed, prisoners of war shall be allowed to exercise their right of complaint, in conformity with Article 78. (GPW, art 50)

### 127. Working Conditions

Prisoners of war must be granted suitable working conditions, especially as regards accommodation, food, clothing and equipment; such conditions shall not be inferior to those enjoyed by nationals of the Detaining Power employed in similar work; account shall also be taken of climatic conditions.

The Detaining Power, in utilizing the labour of prisoners of war, shall ensure that in areas in which such prisoners are employed, the national legislation concerning the protection of labour, and, more particularly, the regulations for the safety of workers, are duly applied.

Prisoners of war shall receive training and be provided with the means of protection suitable to the work they will have to do and similar to those accorded to the nationals of the Detaining Power. Subject to the provisions of Article 52, prisoners may be submitted to the normal risks run by these civilian workers.

Conditions of labour shall in no case be rendered more arduous by disciplinary measures. (GPW, art. 51.)

### 128. Dangerous or Humiliating Labor

Unless he be a volunteer, no prisoner of war may be employed on labour which is of an unhealthy or dangerous nature.

No prisoner of war shall be assigned to labour which would be looked upon as humiliating for a member of the Detaining Power's own forces.

The removal of mines or similar devices shall be considered as dangerous labour (GPW, art 52)

### 129. Duration of Labor

The duration of the daily labour of prisoners of war, including the time of the journey to and fro, shall not be excessive, and must in no case exceed that permitted for civilian workers in the district, who are nationals of the Detaining Power and employed on the same work.

Prisoners of war must be allowed, in the middle of the day's work, a rest of not less than one hour. This rest will be the same as that to which workers of the Detaining Power are entitled, if the latter is of longer duration. They shall be allowed in addition a rest of twenty-four consecutive hours every week, preferably on Sunday or the day of rest in their country of origin. Furthermore, every prisoner who has worked for one year shall be granted a rest of eight consecutive days, during which his working pay shall be paid him.

If methods of labour such as piece work are employed, the length of the working period shall not be rendered excessive thereby. (GPW, art 53)

### 130. Working Pay and Occupational Accidents and Disease

The working pay due to prisoners of war shall be fixed in accordance with the provisions of Article 62 of the present Convention.

Prisoners of war who sustain accidents in connection with work, or who contract a disease in the course, or in consequence of their work, shall receive all the care their condition may require. The Detaining Power shall furthermore deliver to such prisoners of war a medical certificate enabling them to submit their claims to the Power on which they depend, and shall send a duplicate to the Central Prisoners of War Agency provided for in Article 123. (*GPW, art. 54.*)

### 131. Medical Supervision

The fitness of prisoners of war for work shall be periodically verified by medical examinations at least once a month. The examinations shall have particular regard to the nature of the work which prisoners of war are required to do.

If any prisoner of war considers himself incapable of working, he shall be permitted to appear before the medical authorities of his camp. Physicians or surgeons may recommend that the prisoners who are, in their opinion, unfit for work, be exempted therefrom. (*GPW, art. 65*)

### 132. Labor Detachments

The organization and administration of labour detachments shall be similar to those of prisoner of war camps.

Every labour detachment shall remain under the control of and administratively part of a prisoner of war camp. The military authorities and the commander of the said camp shall be responsible, under the direction of their government, for the observance of the provisions of the present Convention in labour detachments.

The camp commander shall keep an up-to-date record of the labour detachments dependent on his camp, and shall communicate it to the delegates of the Protecting Power, of the International Committee of the Red Cross, or of other agencies giving relief to prisoners of war, who may visit the camp. (*GPW, art. 56.*)

### 133. Prisoners Working for Private Employers

The treatment of prisoners of war who work for private persons, even if the latter are responsible for guarding and protecting them, shall not be inferior to that which is provided for by the present Convention. The Detaining Power, the military authorities and the commander of the camp to which such prisoners belong shall be entirely responsible for the maintenance, care,

treatment, and payment of the working pay of such prisoners of war.

Such prisoners of war shall have the right to remain in communication with the prisoners' representatives in the camps on which they depend. (*GPW, art 57.*)

### Section XIII. FINANCIAL RESOURCES OF PRISONERS OF WAR

#### 134. Ready Money

Upon the outbreak of hostilities, and pending an arrangement on this matter with the Protecting Power, the Detaining Power may determine the maximum amount of money in cash or in any similar form, that prisoners may have in their possession. Any amount in excess, which was properly in their possession and which has been taken or withheld from them, shall be placed to their account, together with any monies deposited by them, and shall not be converted into any other currency without their consent.

If prisoners of war are permitted to purchase services or commodities outside the camp against payment in cash, such payments shall be made by the prisoner himself or by the camp administration who will charge them to the accounts of the prisoners concerned. The Detaining Power will establish the necessary rules in this respect (*GPW, art 58.*)

#### 135. Amounts in Cash Taken From Prisoners

Cash which was taken from prisoners of war, in accordance with Article 18, at the time of their capture, and which is in the currency of the Detaining Power, shall be placed to their separate accounts, in accordance with the provisions of Article 64 of the present Section.

The amounts, in the currency of the Detaining Power, due to the conversion of sums in other currencies that are taken from the prisoners of war at the same time, shall also be credited to their separate accounts (*GPW, art 59.*)

#### 136. Advances of Pay

The Detaining Power shall grant all prisoners of war a monthly advance of pay, the amount of which shall be fixed by conversion, into the currency of the said Power, of the following amounts:

Category I : Prisoners ranking below sergeants: eight Swiss francs.

Category II · Sergeants and other non-commissioned officers, or prisoners of equivalent rank: twelve Swiss francs

Category III : Warrant officers and commissioned officers below the rank of major or prisoners of equivalent rank: fifty Swiss francs.

Category IV : Majors, lieutenant-colonels, colonels, or prisoners of equivalent rank: sixty Swiss francs.

Category V : General officers or prisoners of war of equivalent rank: seventy-five Swiss francs.

However, the Parties to the conflict concerned may by special agreement modify the amount of advances of pay due to prisoners of the preceding categories.

Furthermore, if the amounts indicated in the first paragraph above would be unduly high compared with the pay of the Detaining Power's armed forces or would, for any reason, seriously embarrass the Detaining Power, then, pending the conclusion of a special agreement with the Power on which the prisoners depend to vary the amounts indicated above, the Detaining Power:

(a) shall continue to credit the accounts of the prisoners with the amounts indicated in the first paragraph above;

(b) may temporarily limit the amount made available from these advances of pay to prisoners of war for their own use, to sums which are reasonable, but which, for Category I, shall never be inferior to the amount that the Detaining Power gives to the members of its own armed forces.

The reasons for any limitations will be given without delay to the Protecting Power. (GPW, art 60)

#### 137. Supplementary Pay

The Detaining Power shall accept for distribution as supplementary pay to prisoners of war sums which the Power on which the prisoners depend may forward to them, on condition that the sums to be paid shall be the same for each prisoner of the same category, shall be payable to all prisoners of that category depending on that Power, and shall be placed in their separate accounts, at the earliest opportunity, in accordance with the provisions of Article 64. Such supplementary pay shall not relieve the Detaining Power of any obligation under this Convention. (GPW, art 61)

#### 138. Working Pay

Prisoners of war shall be paid a fair working rate of pay by the detaining authorities direct. The rate shall be fixed by the said authorities, but shall at no time be less than one-fourth of one Swiss franc for a full working day. The Detaining Power shall inform prisoners of war, as well as the Power on which they depend, through the intermediary of the Protecting Power, of the rate of daily working pay that it has fixed

Working pay shall likewise be paid by the detaining authorities to prisoners of war permanently detailed to duties or to a skilled or semi-skilled occupation in connection with the administration, installation or maintenance of camps, and to the prisoners who are required to carry out spiritual or medical duties on behalf of their comrades.

The working pay of the prisoners' representative, of his advisers, if any, and of his assistants, shall be paid out of the fund maintained by canteen profits. The scale of this working pay shall be fixed by the prisoners' representative and approved by the camp commander. If there is no such fund, the detaining authorities shall pay these prisoners a fair working rate of pay. (GPW, art 62.)

### 139. Transfer of Funds

Prisoners of war shall be permitted to receive remittances of money addressed to them individually or collectively.

Every prisoner of war shall have at his disposal the credit balance of his account as provided for in the following Article, within the limits fixed by the Detaining Power, which shall make such payments as are requested. Subject to financial or monetary restrictions which the Detaining Power regards as essential, prisoners of war may also have payments made abroad. In this case payments addressed by prisoners of war to dependents shall be given priority.

In any event, and subject to the consent of the Power on which they depend, prisoners may have payments made in their own country, as follows: the Detaining Power shall send to the afore-said Power through the Protecting Power, a notification giving all the necessary particulars concerning the prisoners of war, the beneficiaries of the payments, and the amount of the sums to be paid, expressed in the Detaining Power's currency. The said notification shall be signed by the prisoners and countersigned by the camp commander. The Detaining Power shall debit the prisoners' account by a corresponding amount; the sums thus debited shall be placed by it to the credit of the Power on which the prisoners depend.

To apply the foregoing provisions, the Detaining Power may usefully consult the Model Regulations in Annex V of the present Convention. (GPW, art. 63 )

### 140 Prisoners' Accounts

The Detaining Power shall hold an account for each prisoner of war, showing at least the following.

- (1) The amounts due to the prisoner or received by him as advances of pay, as working pay or derived from any

other source; the sums in the currency of the Detaining Power which were taken from him; the sums taken from him and converted at his request into the currency of the said Power.

- (2) The payments made to the prisoner in cash, or in any other similar form; the payments made on his behalf and at his request; the sum transferred under Article 63, third paragraph. (*GPW, art 64.*)

#### 141. Management of Prisoners' Accounts

Every item entered into the account of a prisoner of war shall be countersigned or initialled by him, or by the prisoners' representative acting on his behalf.

Prisoners of war shall at all times be afforded reasonable facilities for consulting and obtaining copies of their accounts, which may likewise be inspected by the representatives of the Protecting Powers at the time of visits to the camp.

When prisoners of war are transferred from one camp to another, their personal accounts will follow them. In case of transfer from one Detaining Power to another, the monies which are their property and are not in the currency of the Detaining Power will follow them. They shall be given certificates for any other monies standing to the credit of their accounts.

The Parties to the conflict concerned may agree to notify to each other at specific intervals through the Protecting Power, the amount of the accounts of the prisoners of war. (*GPW, art 65*)

#### 142. Winding Up of Accounts

On the termination of captivity, through the release of a prisoner of war or his repatriation, the Detaining Power shall give him a statement, signed by an authorized officer of that Power, showing the credit balance then due to him. The Detaining Power shall also send through the Protecting Power to the government upon which the prisoner of war depends, lists giving all appropriate particulars of all prisoners of war whose captivity has been terminated by repatriation, release, escape, death or any other means, and showing the amount of their credit balances. Such lists shall be certified on each sheet by an authorized representative of the Detaining Power

Any of the above provisions of this Article may be varied by mutual agreement between any two Parties to the conflict.

The Power on which the prisoner of war depends shall be responsible for settling with him any credit balance due to him from the Detaining Power on the termination of his captivity. (*GPW, art 66.*)



#### 143. Adjustments Between Parties to the Conflict

Advances of pay, issued to prisoners of war in conformity with Article 60, shall be considered as made on behalf of the Power on which they depend. Such advances of pay, as well as all payments made by the said Power under Article 63, third paragraph, and Article 68, shall form the subject of arrangements between the Powers concerned, at the close of hostilities. (GPW, art. 67.)

#### 144. Claims for Compensation

Any claim by a prisoner of war for compensation in respect of any injury or other disability arising out of work shall be referred to the Power on which he depends, through the Protecting Power. In accordance with Article 54, the Detaining Power will, in all cases, provide the prisoner of war concerned with a statement showing the nature of the injury or disability, the circumstances in which it arose and particulars of medical or hospital treatment given for it. This statement will be signed by a responsible officer of the Detaining Power and the medical particulars certified by a medical officer.

Any claim by a prisoner of war for compensation in respect of personal effects, monies or valuables impounded by the Detaining Power under Article 18 and not forthcoming on his repatriation, or in respect of loss alleged to be due to the fault of the Detaining Power or any of its servants, shall likewise be referred to the Power on which he depends. Nevertheless, any such personal effects required for use by the prisoners of war whilst in captivity shall be replaced at the expense of the Detaining Power. The Detaining Power will, in all cases, provide the prisoner of war with a statement, signed by a responsible officer, showing all available information regarding the reasons why such effects, monies or valuables have not been restored to him. A copy of this statement will be forwarded to the Power on which he depends through the Central Prisoners of War Agency provided for in Article 123. (GPW, art. 68)

### Section XIV. RELATIONS OF PRISONERS OF WAR WITH THE EXTERIOR

#### 145. Notification of Measures Taken

Immediately upon prisoners of war falling into its power, the Detaining Power shall inform them and the Powers on which they depend, through the Protecting Power, of the measures taken to carry out the provisions of the present Section. They shall likewise inform the parties concerned of any subsequent modifications of such measures (GPW, art. 69.)

#### 146. Capture Card

Immediately upon capture, or not more than one week after arrival at a camp, even if it is a transit camp, likewise in case of sickness or transfer to hospital or to another camp, every prisoner of war shall be enabled to write direct to his family, on the one hand, and to the Central Prisoners of War Agency provided for in Article 123, on the other hand, a card similar, if possible, to the model annexed to the present Convention, informing his relatives of his capture, address and state of health. The said cards shall be forwarded as rapidly as possible and may not be delayed in any manner. (GPW, art. 70.)

#### 147. Correspondence

Prisoners of war shall be allowed to send and receive letters and cards. If the Detaining Power deems it necessary to limit the number of letters and cards sent by each prisoner of war, the said number shall not be less than two letters and four cards monthly, exclusive of the capture cards provided for in Article 70, and conforming as closely as possible to the models annexed to the present Convention. Further limitations may be imposed only if the Protecting Power is satisfied that it would be in the interests of the prisoners of war concerned to do so owing to difficulties of translation caused by the Detaining Power's inability to find sufficient qualified linguists to carry out the necessary censorship. If limitations must be placed on the correspondence addressed to prisoners of war, they may be ordered only by the Power on which the prisoners depend, possibly at the request of the Detaining Power. Such letters and cards must be conveyed by the most rapid method at the disposal of the Detaining Power; they may not be delayed or retained for disciplinary reasons.

Prisoners of war who have been without news for a long period, or who are unable to receive news from their next of kin or to give them news by the ordinary postal route, as well as those who are at a great distance from their homes, shall be permitted to send telegrams, the fees being charged against the prisoners of war's accounts with the Detaining Power or paid in the currency at their disposal. They shall likewise benefit by this measure in cases of urgency.

As a general rule, the correspondence of prisoners of war shall be written in their native language. The Parties to the conflict may allow correspondence in other languages.

Sacks containing prisoner of war mail must be securely sealed and labeled so as clearly to indicate their contents, and must be addressed to offices of destination. (GPW, art. 71.)

#### 148. Relief Shipments

Prisoners of war shall be allowed to receive by post or by any other means individual parcels or collective shipments containing, in particular, foodstuffs, clothing, medical supplies and articles of a religious, educational or recreational character which may meet their needs, including books, devotional articles, scientific equipment, examination papers musical instruments sports outfits and materials allowing prisoners of war to pursue their studies or their cultural activities.

Such shipments shall in no way free the Detaining Power from the obligations imposed upon it by virtue of the present Convention.

The only limits which may be placed on these shipments shall be those proposed by the Protecting Power in the interest of the prisoners themselves, or by the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other organization giving assistance to the prisoners, in respect of their own shipments only, on account of exceptional strain on transport or communications.

The conditions for the sending of individual parcels and collective relief shall, if necessary, be the subject of special agreements between the Powers concerned, which may in no case delay the receipt by the prisoners of relief supplies. Books may not be included in parcels of clothing and foodstuffs. Medical supplies shall, as a rule be sent in collective parcels. (GPW, art 72)

#### 149 Special Agreements for Collective Relief Shipments

In the absence of special agreements between the Powers concerned on the conditions for the receipt and distribution of collective relief shipments, the rules and regulations concerning collective shipments, which are annexed to the present Convention, shall be applied.

The special agreements referred to above shall in no case restrict the right of prisoners' representatives to take possession of collective relief shipments intended for prisoners of war, to proceed to their distribution or to dispose of them in the interest of the prisoners.

Nor shall such agreements restrict the right of representatives of the Protecting Power, the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other organization giving assistance to prisoners of war and responsible for the forwarding of collective shipments, to supervise their distribution to the recipients. (GPW, art. 73.)

## 150. Exemption From Postal and Transport Charges

### a. Treaty Provision

All relief shipments for prisoners of war shall be exempt from import, customs and other dues.

Correspondence relief shipments and authorized remittances of money addressed to prisoners of war or dispatched by them through the post office, either direct or through the Information Bureaux provided for in Article 122 and the Central Prisoners of War Agency provided for in Article 123, shall be exempt from any postal dues, both in the countries of origin and destination, and in intermediate countries.

If relief shipments intended for prisoners of war cannot be sent through the post office by reason of weight or for any other cause, the cost of transportation shall be borne by the Detaining Power in all the territories under its control. The other Powers party to the Convention shall bear the cost of transport in their respective territories.

In the absence of special agreements between the Parties concerned, the costs connected with transport of such shipments, other than costs covered by the above exemption, shall be charged to the senders.

The High Contracting Parties shall endeavour to reduce, so far as possible, the rates charged for telegrams sent by prisoners of war, or addressed to them. (GPW, art 74.)

b The Universal Postal Convention provides that correspondence, parcel post, insured letters and boxes and postal money orders addressed to, or sent by, prisoners of war and interned civilians are exempt from postal charges (Article 37, Universal Postal Convention of 1952, T I A. S 2800)

To enjoy these franking privileges the article must bear the notation "*Service des prisonniers de guerre*" (Prisoners of War Service) or "*Service des internes*" (Internees Service) which may be followed by a translation.

## 151 Special Means of Transport

Should military operations prevent the Powers concerned from fulfilling their obligation to assure the transport of the shipments referred to in Articles 70, 71, 72 and 77, the Protecting Powers concerned, the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other organization duly approved by the Parties to the conflict may undertake to ensure the conveyance of such shipments by suitable means (railway wagons, motor vehicles, vessels or aircraft, etc.) For this purpose, the High Contracting Parties shall endeavour to supply them with such transport and to allow its circulation, especially by granting the necessary safe-conducts.

Such transport may also be used to convey.

- (a) correspondence, lists and reports exchanged between the Central Information Agency referred to in Article 123 and the National Bureaux referred to in Article 122;
- (b) correspondence and reports relating to prisoners of war which the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other body assisting the prisoners, exchange either with their own delegates or with the Parties to the conflict.

These provisions in no way detract from the right of any Party to the conflict to arrange other means of transport, if it should so prefer, nor preclude the granting of safe-conducts, under mutually agreed conditions, to such means of transport.

In the absence of special agreements, the costs occasioned by the use of such means of transport shall be borne proportionately by the Parties to the conflict whose nationals are benefited thereby. (GPW, art. 75)

#### 152. Censorship and Examination

The censoring of correspondence addressed to prisoners of war or dispatched by them shall be done as quickly as possible. Mail shall be censored only by the dispatching State and the receiving State, and once only by each.

The examination of consignments intended for prisoners of war shall not be carried out under conditions that will expose the goods contained in them to deterioration; except in the case of written or printed matter, it shall be done in the presence of the addressee, or of a fellow-prisoner duly delegated by him. The delivery to prisoners of individual or collective consignments shall not be delayed under the pretext of difficulties of censorship.

Any prohibition of correspondence ordered by Parties to the conflict either for military or political reasons, shall be only temporary and its duration shall be as short as possible. (GPW, art 76)

#### 153. Preparation, Execution, and Transmission of Legal Documents

The Detaining Powers shall provide all facilities for the transmission, through the Protecting Power or the Central Prisoners of War Agency provided for in Article 123, of instrument papers or documents intended for prisoners of war or dispatched by them, especially powers of attorney and wills.

In all cases they shall facilitate the preparation and execution of such documents on behalf of prisoners of war; in particular, they shall allow them to consult a lawyer and shall take what measures are necessary for the authentication of their signatures. (GPW, art 77)

## Section XV. RELATIONS OF PRISONERS OF WAR AND THE AUTHORITIES

### 154. Complaints and Requests

Prisoners of war shall have the right to make known to the military authorities in whose power they are, their requests regarding the conditions of captivity to which they are subjected.

They shall also have the unrestricted right to apply to the representatives of the Protecting Powers either through their prisoners' representative or, if they consider it necessary, direct, in order to draw their attention to any points on which they may have complaints to make regarding their conditions of captivity.

These requests and complaints shall not be limited nor considered to be a part of the correspondence quota referred to in Article 71. They must be transmitted immediately. Even if they are recognized to be unfounded, they may not give rise to any punishment.

Prisoners' representatives may send periodic reports on the situation in the camps and the needs of the prisoners of war to the representatives of the Protecting Powers. (*GPW, art. 78.*)

### 155. Election of Prisoners' Representatives

In all places where there are prisoners of war, except in those where there are officers, the prisoners shall freely elect by secret ballot, every six months, and also in case of vacancies, prisoners' representatives entrusted with representing them before the military authorities, the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross and any other organization which may assist them. These prisoners' representatives shall be eligible for re-election.

In camps for officers and persons of equivalent status or in mixed camps, the senior officer among the prisoners of war shall be recognized as the camp prisoners' representative. In camps for officers, he shall be assisted by one or more advisers chosen by the officers; in mixed camps, his assistants shall be chosen from among the prisoners of war who are not officers and shall be elected by them.

Officer prisoners of war of the same nationality shall be stationed in labour camps for prisoners of war, for the purpose of carrying out the camp administration duties for which the prisoners of war are responsible. These officers may be elected as prisoners' representatives under the first paragraph of this Article. In such a case the assistants to the prisoners' representatives shall be chosen from among those prisoners of war who are not officers.

Every representative elected must be approved by the Detaining Power before he has the right to commence his duties. Where

the Detaining Power refuses to approve a prisoner of war elected by his fellow prisoners of war, it must inform the Protecting Power of the reason for such refusal.

In all cases the prisoners' representative must have the same nationality, language and customs as the prisoners of war whom he represents. Thus, prisoners of war distributed in different sections of a camp, according to their nationality, language or customs, shall have for each section their own prisoners' representative, in accordance with the foregoing paragraphs (GPW, art. 79)

#### 156. Duties of Prisoners' Representatives

##### *a Treaty Provision*

Prisoners' representatives shall further the physical, spiritual and intellectual well-being of prisoners of war.

In particular, where the prisoners decide to organize amongst themselves a system of mutual assistance, this organization will be within the province of the prisoners' representative, in addition to the special duties entrusted to him by other provisions of the present Convention.

Prisoners' representatives shall not be held responsible simply by reason of their duties, for any offences committed by prisoners of war. (GPW, art. 80.)

*b. Rights and Duties* The rights and duties of prisoners' representatives are set forth in the following articles of GPW. 57 (par 133); 78-81 (pars 154-157), 98 (par 174), 104 (par 180); 107 (par 183); 125 (par. 206), and 127 (par 14)

#### 157. Prerogatives of Prisoners' Representatives

Prisoners' representatives shall not be required to perform any other work, if the accomplishment of their duties is thereby made more difficult.

Prisoners' representatives may appoint from amongst the prisoners such assistants as they may require. All material facilities shall be granted them, particularly a certain freedom of movement necessary for the accomplishment of their duties (inspection of labour detachments, receipt of supplies, etc.).

Prisoners' representatives shall be permitted to visit premises where prisoners of war are detained, and every prisoner of war shall have the right to consult freely his prisoners' representative.

All facilities shall likewise be accorded to the prisoners' representatives for communication by post and telegraph with the detaining authorities the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross and their delegates, the Mixed Medical Commissions and the bodies which give assistance to prisoners of war. Prisoners' representatives of labour detachment shall

enjoy the same facilities for communication with the prisoners' representatives of the principal camp. Such communications shall not be restricted, nor considered as forming a part of the quota mentioned in Article 71.

Prisoners' representatives who are transferred shall be allowed a reasonable time to acquaint their successors with current affairs.

In case of dismissal, the reasons therefor shall be communicated to the Protecting Power. (*GP W, art. 81.*)

#### Section XVI. PENAL AND DISCIPLINARY SANCTIONS

##### 158. Applicable Legislation

###### *a. Prisoners of War.*

A prisoner of war shall be subject to the laws, regulations and orders in force in the armed forces of the Detaining Power; the Detaining Power shall be justified in taking judicial or disciplinary measures in respect of any offence committed by a prisoner of war against such laws, regulations or orders. However, no proceedings or punishments contrary to the provisions of this Chapter shall be allowed.

If any law, regulation or order of the Detaining Power shall declare acts committed by a prisoner of war to be punishable, whereas the same acts would not be punishable if committed by a member of the forces of the Detaining Power, such acts shall entail disciplinary punishments only. (*GPW, art 82.*)

*b Retained Medical Personnel, Chaplains, and Persons of Like Status* Retained medical personnel, chaplains, and persons of like status benefit from the disciplinary and penal safeguards prescribed by Articles 82-108, *GPW* (pars 158-184)

##### 159 Choice of Disciplinary or Judicial Proceeding

In deciding whether proceedings in respect of an offence alleged to have been committed by a prisoner of war shall be judicial or disciplinary, the Detaining Power shall ensure that the competent authorities exercise the greatest leniency and adopt, wherever possible, disciplinary rather than judicial measures. (*GPW, art 83*)

##### 160 Courts

A prisoner of war shall be tried only by a military court, unless existing laws of the Detaining Power expressly permit the civil courts to try a member of the armed forces of the Detaining Power in respect of the particular offence alleged to have been committed by the prisoner of war

In no circumstances whatever shall a prisoner of war be tried by a court of any kind which does not offer the essential guaran-



tees of independence and impartiality as generally recognized, and, in particular, the procedure of which does not afford the accused the rights and means of defence provided for in Article 105. (GPW, art 84.)

#### 161. Acts Committed Before Capture

##### *a. Treaty Provision.*

Prisoners of war prosecuted under the laws of the Detaining Power for acts committed prior to capture shall retain, even if convicted, the benefits of the present Convention. (GPW, art. 85)

*b. Applicability.* The foregoing provision applies only to personnel who are entitled to treatment as prisoners of war, including prisoners accused of war crimes under international or national law.

*c.* In signing and ratifying GPW several nations indicated that they would not consider themselves bound by the obligation which follows from the foregoing provision to extend the application of the Convention to prisoners of war who have been convicted of having committed war crimes and crimes against humanity and that persons so convicted would be subject to the conditions obtaining in the country in question for those who undergo punishment.

#### 162. Repetition of Punishment

No prisoner of war may be punished more than once for the same act or on the same charge. (GPW, art. 86.)

#### 163. Penalties

##### *a. Treaty Provision*

Prisoners of war may not be sentenced by the military authorities and courts of the Detaining Power to any penalties except those provided for in respect of members of the armed forces of the said Power who have committed the same acts

When fixing the penalty, the courts or authorities of the Detaining Power shall take into consideration, to the widest extent possible, the fact that the accused, not being a national of the Detaining Power, is not bound to it by any duty of allegiance, and that he is in its power as the result of circumstances independent of his own will. The said courts or authorities shall bear liberty to reduce the penalty provided for the violation of which the prisoner of war is accused, and shall therefore not be bound to apply the minimum penalty prescribed.

Collective punishment for individual acts, corporal punishment, imprisonment in premises without daylight and, in general, any form of torture or cruelty, are forbidden.

No prisoner of war may be deprived of his rank by the Detaining Power, or prevented from wearing his badges (GPW, art. 87.)

*b. Persons to Whom Applicable* The foregoing provision applies

only to personnel who are entitled to treatment as prisoners of war, including prisoners accused of war crimes.

#### 164. Execution of Penalties

Officers, non-commissioned officers and men who are prisoners of war undergoing a disciplinary or judicial punishment, shall not be subjected to more severe treatment than that applied in respect of the same punishment to members of the armed forces of the Detaining Power of equivalent rank.

A woman prisoner of war shall not be awarded or sentenced to a punishment more severe, or treated whilst undergoing punishment more severely, than a woman member of the armed forces of the Detaining Power dealt with for a similar offence.

In no case may a woman prisoner of war be awarded or sentenced to a punishment more severe, or treated whilst undergoing punishment more severely, than a male member of the armed forces of the Detaining Power dealt with for a similar offence.

Prisoners of war who have served disciplinary or judicial sentences may not be treated differently from other prisoners of war. (*GPW, art. 88.*)

#### 165. Forms of Disciplinary Punishment

The disciplinary punishments applicable to prisoners of war are the following:

- (1) A fine which shall not exceed 50 per cent of the advances of pay and working pay which the prisoner of war would otherwise receive under the provisions of Articles 60 and 62 during a period of not more than thirty days.
- (2) Discontinuance of privileges granted over and above the treatment provided for by the present Convention.
- (3) Fatigue duties not exceeding two hours daily.
- (4) *Confinement.*

The punishment referred to under (3) shall not be applied to officers

In no case shall disciplinary punishments be inhuman, brutal or dangerous to the health of prisoners of war (*GPW, art. 89*)

#### 166. Duration of Disciplinary Punishment

The duration of any single punishment shall in no case exceed thirty days. Any period of confinement awaiting the hearing of a disciplinary offence or the award of disciplinary punishment shall be deducted from an award pronounced against a prisoner of war.

The maximum of thirty days provided above may not be exceeded, even if the prisoner of war is answerable for several acts

at the same time when he is awarded punishment whether such acts are related or not.

The period between the pronouncing of an award of disciplinary punishment and its execution shall not exceed one month.

When a prisoner of war is awarded a further disciplinary punishment, a period of at least three days shall elapse between the execution of any two of the punishments, if the duration of one of these is ten days or more. (GPW, art. 90.)

#### 167. Successful Escape

The escape of a prisoner of war shall be deemed to have succeeded when:

- (1) he has joined the armed forces of the Power on which he depends, or those of an allied Power;
- (2) he has left the territory under the control of the Detaining Power, or of an ally of the said Power;
- (3) he has joined a ship flying the flag of the Power on which he depends, or of an allied Power, in the territorial waters of the Detaining Power, the said ship not being under the control of the last named Power.

Prisoners of war who have made good their escape in the sense of this Article and who are recaptured, shall not be liable to any punishment in respect of their previous escape (GPW, art 91.)

#### 168. Unsuccessful Escape

A prisoner of war who attempts to escape and is recaptured before having made good his escape in the sense of Article 91 shall be liable only to a disciplinary punishment in respect of this act, even if it is a repeated offence.

A prisoner of war who is recaptured shall be handed over without delay to the competent military authority.

Article 88, fourth paragraph, notwithstanding, prisoners of war punished as a result of an unsuccessful escape may be subjected to special surveillance. Such surveillance must not affect the state of their health, must be undergone in a prisoner of war camp, and must not entail the suppression of any of the safeguards granted them by the present Convention. (GPW, art 92)

#### 169. Connected Offences

Escape or attempt to escape, even if it is a repeated offence, shall not be deemed an aggravating circumstance if the prisoner of war is subjected to trial by judicial proceedings in respect of an offence committed during his escape or attempt to escape.

In conformity with the principle stated in Article 83, offences committed by prisoners of war with the sole intention of facilitating their escape and which do not entail any violence

against life or limb, such as offences against public property, theft without intention of self-enrichment, the drawing up or use of false papers, or the wearing of civilian clothing, shall occasion disciplinary punishment only.

Prisoners of war who aid or abet an escape or an attempt to escape shall be liable on this count to disciplinary punishment only. (GPW, art. 93.)

#### 170. Notification of Recapture

If an escaped prisoner of war is recaptured, the Power on which he depends shall be notified thereof in the manner defined in Article 122, provided notification of his escape has been made. (GPW, art. 94.)

#### 171. Confinement Awaiting Hearing

A prisoner of war accused of an offence against discipline shall not be kept in confinement pending the hearing unless a member of the armed forces of the Detaining Power would be so kept if he were accused of a similar offence, or if it is essential in the interests of camp order and discipline.

Any period spent by a prisoner of war in confinement awaiting the disposal of an offence against discipline shall be reduced to an absolute minimum and shall not exceed fourteen days.

The provisions of Articles 97 and 98 of this Chapter shall apply to prisoners of war who are in confinement awaiting the disposal of offences against discipline. (GPW, art 95)

#### 172. Competent Authorities and Right of Defense

##### a Treaty Provision

Acts which constitute offences against discipline shall be investigated immediately.

Without prejudice to the competence of courts and superior military authorities, disciplinary punishment may be ordered only by an officer having disciplinary powers in his capacity as camp commander, or by a responsible officer who replaces him or to whom he has delegated his disciplinary powers.

In no case may such powers be delegated to a prisoner of war or be exercised by a prisoner of war

Before any disciplinary award is pronounced, the accused shall be given precise information regarding the offences of which he is accused, and given an opportunity of explaining his conduct and of defending himself. He shall be permitted, in particular, to call witnesses and to have recourse, if necessary, to the services of a qualified interpreter. The decision shall be announced to the accused prisoner of war and to the prisoners' representative.

A record of disciplinary punishments shall be maintained by the camp commander and shall be open to inspection by representatives of the Protecting Power. (GPW, art. 96.)

*b Officers Exercising Disciplinary Jurisdiction.* Either a camp commander, or a responsible officer who replaces him, or an officer to whom he has delegated disciplinary powers may impose disciplinary punishments on prisoners of war interned by the United States within the permissible limits established in Article 89, GPW (par 165). It is not necessary that he be designated as summary court officer, and he is not subject to the limitations on the duration of commanding officers' nonjudicial punishment established by Article 15 of the Uniform Code of Military Justice

### 173. Premises for Execution of Punishment

Prisoners of war shall not in any case be transferred to penitentiary establishments (prisons, penitentiaries, convict prisons, etc.) to undergo disciplinary punishment therein.

All premises in which disciplinary punishments are undergone shall conform to the sanitary requirements set forth in Article 25. A prisoner of war undergoing punishment shall be enabled to keep himself in a state of cleanliness, in conformity with Article 29.

Officers and persons of equivalent status shall not be lodged in the same quarters as non-commissioned officers or men.

Women prisoners of war undergoing disciplinary punishment shall be confined in separate quarters from male prisoners of war and shall be under the immediate supervision of women. (GPW, art 97)

### 174. Essential Safeguards During Punishment

A prisoner of war undergoing confinement as a disciplinary punishment, shall continue to enjoy the benefits of the provisions of this Convention except in so far as these are necessarily rendered inapplicable by the mere fact that he is confined. In no case may he be deprived of the benefits of the provisions of Articles 78 and 126

A prisoner of war awarded disciplinary punishment may not be deprived of the prerogatives attached to his rank.

Prisoners of war awarded disciplinary punishment shall be allowed to exercise and to stay in the open air at least two hours daily.

They shall be allowed, on their request, to be present at the daily medical inspections. They shall receive the attention which their state of health requires and, if necessary, shall be removed to the camp infirmary or to a hospital.

They shall have permission to read and write, likewise to send and receive letters. Parcels and remittances of money however, may be withheld from them until the completion of the punishment; they shall meanwhile be entrusted to the prisoners' representative, who will hand over to the infirmary the perishable goods contained in such parcels. (GPW, art. 98.)

#### 175. Judicial Proceedings: General Principles

No prisoner of war may be tried or sentenced for an act which is not forbidden by the law of the Detaining Power or by international law, in force at the time the said act was committed.

No moral or physical coercion may be exerted on a prisoner of war in order to induce him to admit himself guilty of the act of which he is accused.

No prisoner of war may be convicted without having had an opportunity to present his defence and the assistance of a qualified advocate or counsel. (GPW, art 99.)

#### 176. Death Penalty

Prisoners of war and the Protecting Powers shall be informed as soon as possible of the offences which are punishable by the death sentence under the laws of the Detaining Power.

Other offences shall not thereafter be made punishable by the death penalty without the concurrence of the Power on which the prisoners of war depend.

The death sentence cannot be pronounced on a prisoner of war unless the attention of the court has, in accordance with Article 87, second paragraph, been particularly called to the fact that since the accused is not a national of the Detaining Power, he is not bound to it by any duty of allegiance, and that he is in its power as the result of circumstances independent of his own will. (GPW, art. 100.)

#### 177. Delay in Execution of the Death Penalty

If the death penalty is pronounced on a prisoner of war, the sentence shall not be executed before the expiration of a period of at least six months from the date when the Protecting Power receives, at an indicated address, the detailed communication provided for in Article 107. (GPW, art 101 )

#### 178. Conditions for Validity of Sentence

##### a Treaty Provision.

A prisoner of war can be validly sentenced only if the sentence has been pronounced by the same courts according to the same procedure as in the case of members of the armed forces of the Detaining Power, and if, furthermore, the provisions of the present Chapter have been observed (GPW, art 102.)

*b. Interpretation.* Prisoners of war, including those accused of war crimes against whom judicial proceedings are instituted, are subject to the jurisdiction of United States courts-martial and military commissions. They are entitled to the same procedural safeguards accorded to military personnel of the United States who are tried by courts-martial under the Uniform Code of Military Justice or by other military tribunals under the laws of war. (See UCMJ, arts 2 (9), 18, and 21.)

#### 179. Confinement Awaiting Trial

Judicial investigations relating to a prisoner of war shall be conducted as rapidly as circumstances permit and so that his trial shall take place as soon as possible. A prisoner of war shall not be confined while awaiting trial unless a member of the armed forces of the Detaining Power would be so confined if he were accused of a similar offence, or if it is essential to do so in the interests of national security. In no circumstances shall this confinement exceed three months.

Any period spent by a prisoner of war in confinement awaiting trial shall be deducted from any sentence of imprisonment passed upon him and taken into account in fixing any penalty.

The provisions of Articles 97 and 98 of this Chapter shall apply to a prisoner of war whilst in confinement awaiting trial. (GPW, art 103)

#### 180. Notification of Proceedings

In any case in which the Detaining Power has decided to institute judicial proceedings against a prisoner of war, it shall notify the Protecting Power as soon as possible and at least three weeks before the opening of the trial. This period of three weeks shall run as from the day on which such notification reaches the Protecting Power at the address previously indicated by the latter to the Detaining Power.

The said notification shall contain the following information:

- (1) Surname and first names of the prisoner of war, his rank, his army, regimental, personal or serial number, his date of birth, and his profession or trade, if any;
- (2) Place of internment or confinement;
- (3) Specification of the charge or charges on which the prisoner of war is to be arraigned, giving the legal provisions applicable;
- (4) Designation of the court which will try the case, likewise the date and place fixed for the opening of the trial.

The same communication shall be made by the Detaining Power to the prisoners' representative.

If no evidence is submitted, at the opening of a trial, that the notification referred to above was received by the Protecting

Power, by the prisoner of war and by the prisoners' representative concerned, at least three weeks before the opening of the trial, then the latter cannot take place and must be adjourned. (GPW, art. 104.)

#### 181. Rights and Means of Defense

The prisoner of war shall be entitled to assistance by one of his prisoner comrades, to defence by a qualified advocate or counsel of his own choice, to the calling of witnesses and, if he deems necessary, to the services of a competent interpreter. He shall be advised of these rights by the Detaining Power in due time before the trial.

Failing a choice by the prisoner of war, the Protecting Power shall find him an advocate or counsel, and shall have at least one week at its disposal for the purpose. The Detaining Power shall deliver to the said Power, on request, a list of persons qualified to present the defence. Failing a choice of an advocate or counsel by the prisoner of war or the Protecting Power, the Detaining Power shall appoint a competent advocate or counsel to conduct the defence.

The advocate or counsel conducting the defence on behalf of the prisoner of war shall have at his disposal a period of two weeks at least before the opening of the trial, as well as the necessary facilities to prepare the defence of the accused. He may, in particular, freely visit the accused and interview him in private. He may also confer with any witnesses for the defence, including prisoners of war. He shall have the benefit of these facilities until the term of appeal or petition has expired.

Particulars of the charge or charges on which the prisoner of war is to be arraigned, as well as the documents which are generally communicated to the accused by virtue of the laws in force in the armed forces of the Detaining Power, shall be communicated to the accused prisoner of war in a language which he understands, and in good time before the opening of the trial. The same communication in the same circumstances shall be made to the advocate or counsel conducting the defence on behalf of the prisoner of war.

The representatives of the Protecting Power shall be entitled to attend the trial of the case, unless, exceptionally, this is held *in camera* in the interest of State security. In such a case the Detaining Power shall advise the Protecting Power accordingly. (GPW, art 105)

#### 182 Appeals

Every prisoner of war shall have, in the same manner as the members of the armed forces of the Detaining Power, the right



of appeal or petition from any sentence pronounced upon him, with a view to the quashing or revising of the sentence or the reopening of the trial. He shall be fully informed of his right to appeal or petition and of the time limit within which he may do so. (GPW, art. 106.)

### 183. Notification of Finding and Sentence

Any judgment and sentence pronounced upon a prisoner of war shall be immediately reported to the Protecting Power in the form of a summary communication, which shall also indicate whether he has the right of appeal with a view to the quashing of the sentence or the reopening of the trial. This communication shall likewise be sent to the prisoners' representative concerned. It shall also be sent to the accused prisoner of war in a language he understands, if the sentence was not pronounced in his presence. The Detaining Power shall also immediately communicate to the Protecting Power the decision of the prisoner of war to use or to waive his right of appeal.

Furthermore, if a prisoner of war is finally convicted or if a sentence pronounced on a prisoner of war in the first instance is a death sentence, the Detaining Power shall as soon as possible address to the Protecting Power a detailed communication containing:

- (1) the precise wording of the finding and sentence;
- (2) a summarized report of any preliminary investigation and of the trial, emphasizing in particular the elements of the prosecution and the defence;
- (3) notification, where applicable, of the establishment where the sentence will be served.

The communications provided for in the foregoing subparagraphs shall be sent to the Protecting Power at the address previously made known to the Detaining Power. (GPW, art 107)

### 184. Execution of Penalties

Sentences pronounced on prisoners of war after a conviction has become duly enforceable, shall be served in the same establishments and under the same conditions as in the case of members of the armed forces of the Detaining Power. These conditions shall in all cases conform to the requirements of health and humanity.

A woman prisoner of war on whom such a sentence has been pronounced shall be confined in separate quarters and shall be under the supervision of women

In any case, prisoners of war sentenced to a penalty depriving them of their liberty shall retain the benefit of the provisions of Articles 78 and 126 of the present Convention. Furthermore,

they shall be entitled to receive and despatch correspondence, to receive at least one relief parcel monthly, to take regular exercise in the open air, to have the medical care required by their state of health, and the spiritual assistance they may desire. Penalties to which they may be subjected shall be in accordance with the provisions of Article 87, third paragraph. (GPW, art. 108.)

#### Section XVII. TERMINATION OF CAPTIVITY

##### 185. Parole Permitted If Laws of Their Country Allow

###### *a Treaty Provision.*

Prisoners of war maybe partially or wholly released on parole or promise, in so far as is allowed by the laws of the Power on which they depend. Such measures shall be taken particularly in cases where this may contribute to the improvement of their state of health. No prisoner of war shall be compelled to accept liberty on parole or promise.

Upon the outbreak of hostilities, each Party to the conflict shall notify the adverse Party of the laws and regulations allowing or forbidding its own nationals to accept liberty on parole or promise. Prisoners of war who are paroled or who have given their promise in conformity with the laws and regulations so notified, are bound on their personal honour scrupulously to fulfil, both towards the Power on which they depend and towards the Power which has captured them, the engagements of their paroles or promises. In such cases, the Power on which they depend is bound neither to require nor to accept from them any service incompatible with the parole or promise given. (GPW, art 21, 2d and 3d pars )

*b Violation of Parole* Persons who violate the terms of their paroles are, upon recapture, treated as prisoners of war but may be punished under the provisions of Article 134 of the Uniform Code of Military Justice for violation of parole

##### 186. Form and Substance of Parole

The parole should be in writing and signed by the prisoner. It should state in clear and unequivocal language exactly what acts the prisoner is obligated not to do, particularly as to whether he is bound to refrain from all acts against the captor or only from taking part directly in military operations

##### 187. Parole of United States Personnel

*a. General Prohibition.* Subject to the exception set forth in the following subparagraph, military personnel of the United States Army are forbidden to give their parole to a Detaining Power.

*b Temporary Parole.* A member of the United States Army may be authorized to give his parole to the enemy that he will not attempt

to escape, if such parole is authorized for the specific purpose of permitting him to perform certain acts materially contributing to the welfare of himself or of his fellow prisoners. Such authorization will extend only for such a short period of time as is reasonably necessary for the performance of such acts and will not normally be granted solely to provide respite from the routine rigors of confinement or for other purely personal relief. A parole of this nature may be authorized, for example, to permit a prisoner to visit a medical establishment for treatment or to allow a medical officer or chaplain to carry out his normal duties. A member of the United States Army may give a parole of this nature only when specifically authorized to do so by the senior officer or non-commissioned officer exercising command authority.

#### 188. Direct Repatriation and Accommodation in Neutral Countries of Wounded and Sick

Subject to the provisions of the third paragraph of this Article, Parties to the conflict are bound to send back to their own country, regardless of number or rank, seriously wounded and seriously sick prisoners of war, after having cared for them until they are fit to travel, in accordance with the first paragraph of the following Article.

Throughout the duration of hostilities, Parties to the conflict shall endeavour, with the cooperation of the neutral Powers concerned, to make arrangements for the accommodation in neutral countries of the sick and wounded prisoners of war referred to in the second paragraph of the following Article. They may, in addition, conclude agreements with a view to the direct repatriation or internment in a neutral country of able-bodied prisoners of war who have undergone a long period of captivity.

No sick or injured prisoner of war who is eligible for repatriation under the first paragraph of this Article, may be repatriated against his will during hostilities. (GPW, art 109.)

#### 189 Cases of Repatriation and Accommodation

The following shall be repatriated direct.

- (1) Incurately wounded and sick whose mental or physical fitness seems to have been gravely diminished.
- (2) Wounded and sick who, according to medical opinion, are not likely to recover within one year, whose condition requires treatment and whose mental or physical fitness seems to have been gravely diminished.
- (3) Wounded and sick who have recovered, but whose mental or physical fitness seems to have been gravely and permanently diminished.

The following may be accommodated in a neutral country:

- (1) Wounded and sick whose recovery may be expected within one year of the date of the wound or the beginning of the illness, if treatment in a neutral country might increase the prospects of a more certain and speedy recovery.
- (2) Prisoners of war whose mental or physical health, according to medical opinion, is seriously threatened by continued captivity, but whose accommodation in a neutral country might remove such a threat.

The conditions which prisoners of war accommodated in a neutral country must fulfill in order to permit their repatriation shall be fixed, as shall likewise their status, by agreement between the Powers concerned. In general, prisoners of war who have been accommodated in a neutral country, and who belong to the following categories, should be repatriated:

- (1) Those whose state of health has deteriorated so as to fulfil the conditions laid down for direct repatriation;
- (2) Those whose mental or physical powers remain, even after treatment, considerably impaired.

If no special agreements are concluded between the Parties to the conflict concerned, to determine the cases of disablement or sickness entailing direct repatriation or accommodation in a neutral country, such cases shall be settled in accordance with the principles laid down in the Model Agreement concerning direct repatriation and accommodation in neutral countries of wounded and sick prisoners of war and in the Regulations concerning Mixed Medical Commissions annexed to the present Convention. (*GPW, art 110*)

#### 190. Internment in a Neutral Country

The Detaining Power, the Power on which the prisoners of war depend, and a neutral Power agreed upon by these two Powers, shall endeavour to conclude agreements which will enable prisoners of war to be interned in the territory of the said neutral Power until the close of hostilities. (*GPW, art 111.*)

#### 191. Mixed Medical Commissions

Upon the outbreak of hostilities, Mixed Medical Commissions shall be appointed to examine sick and wounded prisoners of war, and to make all appropriate decisions regarding them. The appointment, duties and functioning of these Commissions shall be in conformity with the provisions of the Regulations annexed to the present Convention.

However, prisoners of war who, in the opinion of the medical authorities of the Detaining Power, are manifestly seriously

injured or seriously sick, may be repatriated without having to be examined by a Mixed Medical Commission. (GPW, art. 112.)

#### 192. Prisoners Entitled to Examination by Mixed Medical Commissions

Besides those who are designated by the medical authorities of the Detaining Power, wounded or sick prisoners of war belonging to the categories listed below shall be entitled to present themselves for examination by the Mixed Medical Commissions provided for in the foregoing Article:

- (1) Wounded and sick proposed by a physician or surgeon who is of the same nationality, or a national of a Party to the conflict allied with the Power on which the said prisoners depend, and who exercises his functions in the camp.
- (2) Wounded and sick proposed by their prisoners' representative.
- (3) Wounded and sick proposed by the Power on which they depend, or by an organization duly recognized by the said Power and giving assistance to the prisoners.

Prisoners of war who do not belong to one of the three foregoing categories may nevertheless present themselves for examination by Mixed Medical Commissions, but shall be examined only after those belonging to the said categories.

The physician or surgeon of the same nationality as the prisoners who present themselves for examination by the Mixed Medical Commission, likewise the prisoners' representative of the said prisoners, shall have permission to be present at the examination. (GPW, art 113)

#### 193. Prisoners Meeting With Accidents

Prisoners of war who meet with accidents shall, unless the injury is self-inflicted, have the benefit of the provisions of this Convention as regards repatriation or accommodation in a neutral country. (GPW, art 114)

#### 194. Prisoners Serving a Sentence

No prisoner of war on whom a disciplinary punishment has been imposed and who is eligible for repatriation or for accommodation in a neutral country, may be kept back on the plea that he has not undergone his punishment

Prisoners of war detained in connection with a judicial prosecution or conviction and who are designated for repatriation or accommodation in a neutral country, may benefit by such measures before the end of the proceedings or the completion of the punishment, if the Detaining Power consents

**Parties to the conflict shall communicate to each other the names of those who will be detained until the end of the proceedings or the completion of the punishment. (GPW, art. 115.)**

#### **195. Costs of Repatriation**

**The cost of repatriating prisoners of war or of transporting them to a neutral country shall be borne, from the frontiers of the Detaining Power, by the Power on which the said prisoners depend. (GPW, art 116.)**

#### **196. Activity After Repatriation**

##### *a Treaty Provision*

**No repatriated person may be employed on active military service. (GPW, art 117.)**

*b. Interpretation.* The foregoing applies only to persons repatriated under Articles 109 through 116, GPW (pars. 188-195), by reasons of wounds or sickness. Although it is not possible to frame any comprehensive rule concerning what constitutes "active military service," Article 117 does not preclude a repatriated person from performing medical or strictly administrative duties but does foreclose service in combat against the power formerly detaining the individual or an ally thereof

#### **197. Exchange of Prisoners of War**

Exchange of prisoners of war, other than those whose repatriation is required by GPW, may be effected by agreement between the belligerents. No belligerent is obliged to exchange prisoners of war, except if a general cartel requiring such exchange has been concluded. The conditions for exchange are as prescribed by the parties thereto, and exchanges need not necessarily be on the basis of number for number or rank for rank. (See par 469)

#### **198. Release and Repatriation at Close of Hostilities**

**Prisoners of war shall be released and repatriated without delay after the cessation of active hostilities.**

In the absence of stipulations to the above effect in any agreement concluded between the Parties to the conflict with a view to the cessation of hostilities, or failing any such agreement, each of the Detaining Powers shall itself establish and execute without delay a plan of repatriation in conformity with the principle laid down in the foregoing paragraph.

In either case, the measures adopted shall be brought to the knowledge of the prisoners of war.

The costs of repatriation of prisoners of war shall in all cases be equitably apportioned between the Detaining Power and the

Power on which the prisoners depend. This apportionment shall be carried out on the following basis:

- (a) If the two Powers are contiguous, the Power on which the prisoners of war depend shall bear the costs of repatriation from the frontiers of the Detaining Power.
- (b) If the two Powers are not contiguous, the Detaining Power shall bear the costs of transport of prisoners of war over its own territory as far as its frontier or its port of embarkation nearest to the territory of the Power on which the prisoners of war depend. The Parties concerned shall agree between themselves as to the equitable apportionment of the remaining costs of the repatriation. The conclusion of this agreement shall in no circumstances justify any delay in the repatriation of the prisoners of war. (GPW, art. 118)

#### 199. Asylum

A Detaining Power may, in its discretion, lawfully grant asylum to prisoners of war who do not desire to be repatriated

#### 200. Details of Procedure

Repatriation shall be effected in conditions similar to those laid down in Articles 46 to 48 inclusive of the present Convention for the transfer of prisoners of war, having regard to the provisions of Article 118 and to those of the following paragraphs.

On repatriation, any articles of value impounded from prisoners of war under Article 18, and any foreign currency which has not been converted into the currency of the Detaining Power, shall be restored to them. Articles of value and foreign currency which, for any reason whatever, are not restored to prisoners of war on repatriation, shall be dispatched to the Information Bureau set up under Article 122

Prisoners of war shall be allowed to take with them their personal effects, and any correspondence and parcels which have arrived for them. The weight of such baggage may be limited, if the conditions of repatriation so require, to what each prisoner can reasonably carry. Each prisoner shall in all cases be authorized to carry at least twenty-five kilograms [55 pounds]

The other personal effects of the repatriated prisoner shall be left in the charge of the Detaining Power which shall have them forwarded to him as soon as it has concluded an agreement to this effect, regulating the conditions of transport and the payment of the costs involved, with the Power on which the prisoner depends.

Prisoners of war against whom criminal proceedings for an indictable offence are pending may be detained until the end of such proceedings, and, if necessary, until the completion of the punishment. The same shall apply to prisoners of war already convicted for an indictable offence.

Parties to the conflict shall communicate to each other the names of any prisoners of war who are detained until the end of the proceedings or until punishment has been completed.

By agreement between the Parties to the conflict, commissions shall be established for the purpose of searching for dispersed prisoners of war and of assuring their repatriation with the least possible delay. (GPW, art 119)

#### 201. Death

Wills of prisoners of war shall be drawn up so as to satisfy the conditions of validity required by the legislation of their country of origin, which will take steps to inform the Detaining Power of its requirements in this respect. At the request of the prisoner of war and, in all cases, after death, the will shall be transmitted without delay to the Protecting Power; a certified copy shall be sent to the Central Agency.

Death certificates, in the form annexed to the present Convention, or lists certified by a responsible officer, of all persons who die as prisoners of war shall be forwarded as rapidly as possible to the Prisoner of War Information Bureau established in accordance with Article 122. The death certificates or certified lists shall show particulars of identity as set out in the third paragraph of Article 17, and also the date and place of death, the cause of death, the date and place of burial and all particulars necessary to identify the graves.

The burial or cremation of a prisoner of war shall be preceded by a medical examination of the body with a view to confirming death and enabling a report to be made and, where necessary, establishing identity.

The detaining authorities shall ensure that prisoners of war who have died in captivity are honourably buried, if possible according to the rites of the religion to which they belonged, and that their graves are respected, suitably maintained and marked so as to be found at any time. Wherever possible, deceased prisoners of war who depended on the same Power shall be interred in the same place.

Deceased prisoners of war shall be buried in individual graves unless unavoidable circumstances require the use of collective graves. Bodies may be cremated only for imperative reasons of hygiene, on account of the religion of the deceased or in ac-



cordance with his express wish to this effect. In case of cremation, the fact shall be stated and the reasons given in the death certificate of the deceased.

In order that graves may always be found, all particulars of burials and graves shall be recorded with a Graves Registration Service established by the Detaining Power. Lists of graves and particulars of the prisoners of war interred in cemeteries and elsewhere shall be transmitted to the Power on which such prisoners of war depended. Responsibility for the care of these graves and for records of any subsequent moves of the bodies shall rest on the Power controlling the territory, if a Party to the present Convention. These provisions shall also apply to the ashes, which shall be kept by the Graves Registration Service until proper disposal thereof in accordance With the wishes of the home country. (GPW, art 120.)

#### 202. Prisoners Killed or Injured in Special Circumstances

Every death or serious injury of a prisoner of war caused or suspected to have been caused by a sentry, another prisoner of war, or any other person, as well as any death the cause of which is unknown, shall be immediately followed by an official enquiry by the Detaining Power.

A communication on this subject shall be sent immediately to the Protecting Power. Statements shall be taken from witnesses, especially from those who are prisoners of war, and a report including such statements shall be forwarded to the Protecting Power.

If the enquiry indicates the guilt of one or more persons, the Detaining Power shall take all measures for the prosecution of the person or persons responsible. (GPW, art 121 )

### Section XVIII. INFORMATION BUREAUS AND RELIEF SOCIETIES FOR PRISONERS OF WAR

#### 203. National Bureaus

Upon the outbreak of a conflict and in all cases of occupation, each of the Parties to the conflict shall institute an official Information Bureau for prisoners of war who are in its power. Neutral or non-belligerent Powers who may have received within their territory persons belonging to one of the categories referred to in Article 4, shall take the same action with respect to such persons. The Power concerned shall ensure that the Prisoners of War Information Bureau is provided with the necessary accommodation, equipment and staff to ensure its efficient working. It shall bear liberty to employ prisoners of war in such a Bureau

under the conditions laid down in the Section of the present Convention dealing with work by prisoners of war.

Within the shortest possible period, each of the Parties to the conflict shall give its Bureau the information referred to in the fourth, fifth and sixth paragraphs of this Article regarding any enemy person belonging to one of the categories referred to in Article 4, who has fallen into its power. Neutral or non-belligerent Powers shall take the same action with regard to persons belonging to such categories whom they have received within their territory.

The Bureau shall immediately forward such information by the most rapid means to the Powers concerned, through the intermediary of the Protecting Powers and likewise of the Central Agency provided for in Article 123.

This information shall make it possible quickly to advise the next of kin concerned. Subject to the provisions of Article 17, the information shall include, in so far as available to the Information Bureau, in respect of each prisoner of war, his surname, first names, rank, army, regimental, personal or serial number, place and full date of birth, indication of the Power on which he depends, first name of the father and maiden name of the mother, name and address of the person to be informed and the address to which correspondence for the prisoner may be sent.

The Information Bureau shall receive from the various departments concerned information regarding transfers, releases, repatriations, escapes, admissions to hospital, and deaths, and shall transmit such information in the manner described in the third paragraph above.

Likewise, information regarding the state of health of prisoners of war who are seriously ill or seriously wounded shall be supplied regularly, every week if possible.

The Information Bureau shall also be responsible for replying to all enquiries sent to it concerning prisoners of war, including those who have died in captivity, it will make any enquiries necessary to obtain the information which is asked for if this is not in its possession.

All written communications made by the Bureau shall be authenticated by a signature or a seal.

The Information Bureau shall furthermore be charged with collecting all personal valuables, including sums in currencies other than that of the Detaining Power and documents of importance to the next of kin, left by prisoners of war who have been repatriated or released, or who have escaped or died, and shall forward the said valuables to the Powers concerned. Such articles shall be sent by the Bureau in sealed packets which shall

be accompanied by statements giving clear and full particulars of the identity of the person to whom the articles belonged, and by a complete list of the contents of the parcel. Other personal effects of such prisoners of war shall be transmitted under arrangements agreed upon between the Parties to the conflict concerned. (GPW, art 122.)

#### 204. Central Agency

A Central Prisoners of War Information Agency shall be created in a neutral country. The International Committee of the Red Cross shall, if it deems necessary, propose to the Powers concerned the organization of such an Agency.

The function of the Agency shall be to collect all the information it may obtain through official or private channels respecting prisoners of war, and to transmit it as rapidly as possible to the country of origin of the prisoners of war or to the Power on which they depend. It shall receive from the Parties to the conflict all facilities for effecting such transmissions.

The High Contracting Parties, and in particular those whose nationals benefit by the services of the Central Agency, are requested to give the said Agency the financial aid it may require.

The foregoing provisions shall in no way be interpreted as restricting the humanitarian activities of the International Committee of the Red Cross, or of the relief societies provided for in Article 125. (GPW, art 123)

#### 205. Exemption From Charges

The national Information Bureaux and the Central Information Agency shall enjoy free postage for mail, likewise all the exemptions provided for in Article 74, and further, so far as possible, exemption from telegraphic charges or, at least, greatly reduced rates. (GPW, art 124)

#### 206. Relief Societies and Other Organizations

Subject to the measures which the Detaining Powers may consider essential to ensure their security or to meet any other reasonable need, the representatives of religious organizations, relief societies, or any other organization assisting prisoners of war, shall receive from the said Powers, for themselves and their duly accredited agents, all necessary facilities for visiting the prisoners, for distributing relief supplies and material, from any source, intended for religious, educational or recreative purposes, and for assisting them in organizing their leisure time within the camps. Such societies or organizations maybe constituted in the territory of the Detaining Power or in any other country, or they may have an international character.

The Detaining Power may limit the number of societies and organizations whose delegates are allowed to carry out their activities in its territory and under its supervision, on condition, however, that such limitation shall not hinder the effective operation of adequate relief to all prisoners of war.

The special position of the International Committee of the Red Cross in this field shall be recognized and respected at all times.

As soon as relief supplies or material intended for the above-mentioned purposes are handed over to prisoners of war, or very shortly afterwards, receipts for each consignment, signed by the prisoners' representative, shall be forwarded to the relief society or organization making the shipment. At the same time, receipts for these consignments shall be supplied by the administrative authorities responsible for guarding the prisoners. (GPW, art. 125.)

## 207. Supervision

Representatives or delegates of the Protecting Powers shall have permission to go to all places where prisoners of war may be, particularly to places of internment, imprisonment and labour, and shall have access to all premises occupied by prisoners of war; they shall also be allowed to go to the places of departure, passage and arrival of prisoners who are being transferred. They shall be able to interview the prisoners, and in particular the prisoners' representatives, without witnesses, either personally or through an interpreter.

Representatives and delegates of the Protecting Powers shall have full liberty to select the places they wish to visit. The duration and frequency of these visits shall not be restricted. Visits may not be prohibited except for reasons of imperative military necessity, and then only as an exceptional and temporary measure.

The Detaining Power and the Power on which the said prisoners of war depend may agree, if necessary, that compatriots of these prisoners of war be permitted to participate in the visits.

The delegates of the International Committee of the Red Cross shall enjoy the same prerogatives. The appointment of such delegates shall be submitted to the approval of the Power detaining the prisoners of war to be visited (GPW, art. 126)

## CHAPTER 4 THE WOUNDED AND SICK

---

### Section I. GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### 208. Protected Persons

*a. Prisoners of War* GWS applies to the wounded and sick belonging to the categories of persons listed in paragraph A of Article 4, GPW; paragraph 61 herein (GWS, art. 13).

*b. Other Persons* Wounded and sick persons who are in the hands of the enemy but who are not prisoners of war benefit from those provisions of GC pertaining to the treatment and protection of the wounded and sick.

#### 209. Wounded, Sick, and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea

*a. Hospital Ships* Military hospital ships, which are to be marked in the manner specified by Article 43, GWS Sea, may in no circumstances be attacked and captured but must be respected and protected, provided their names and descriptions have been notified to the Parties to the conflict ten days before those ships are employed (GWS Sea, art. 22.) Any hospital ship in a port which falls into the hands of the enemy is to be authorized to leave the port (GWS Sea, art. 29.)

*b. Treaty Provision*

Hospital ships entitled to the protection of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea of August 12, 1949, shall not be attacked from the land (GWS, art. 20.)

*c. Coastal Rescue Craft* Small craft employed by a State or by the officially recognized lifeboat institutions for coastal rescue operations are to be respected and protected, so far as operational requirements permit (GWS Sea, art. 27.)

*d. Retained Personnel and Wounded and Sick Put Ashore* The religious, medical, and hospital personnel of hospital ships retained to care for the wounded and sick are on landing subject to GWS (GWS Sea, art. 37.) Other forces put ashore become subject to GWS (GWS Sea, art. 4.)

#### 210. Application by Neutral Powers

Neutral Powers shall apply by analogy the provisions of the present Convention to the wounded and sick, and to members of the medical personnel and to chaplains of the armed forces of

the Parties to the conflict, received or interned in their territory, as well as to dead persons found. (GWS, art. 4.)

#### 211. Duration of Application

For the protected persons who have fallen into the hands of the enemy, the present Convention shall apply until their final repatriation. (GWS, art. 5.)

#### 212. Special Agreements

In addition to the agreements expressly provided for in Articles 10, 15, 23, 28, 31, 36, 37 and 52, the High Contracting Parties may conclude other special agreements for all matters concerning which they may deem it suitable to make separate provision. No special agreement shall adversely affect the situation of the wounded and sick, of members of the medical personnel or of chaplains, as defined by the present Convention, nor restrict the rights which it confers upon them.

Wounded and sick, as well as medical personnel and chaplains, shall continue to have the benefit of such agreements as long as the Convention is applicable to them, except where express provisions to the contrary are contained in the aforesaid or in subsequent agreements, or where more favourable measures have been taken with regard to them by one or other of the Parties to the conflict. (GWS, art 6 )

#### 213. Non-renunciation of Rights

Wounded and sick, as well as members of the medical personnel and chaplains, may in no circumstances renounce in part or in entirety the rights secured to them by the present Convention, and by the special agreements referred to in the foregoing Article, if such there be. (GWS, art 7.)

#### 214. Prohibition of Reprisals

Reprisals against the wounded, sick, personnel, buildings or equipment protected by the Convention are prohibited. (GWS, art 46 )

### Section II. WOUNDED AND SICK

#### 215 Protection and Care

##### *a Treaty Provision*

Members of the armed forces and other persons mentioned in the following Article, who are wounded or sick, shall be respected and protected in all circumstances.

They shall be treated humanely and cared for by the Party to the conflict in whose power they may be, without any adverse distinction founded on sex, race, nationality, religion, political opinions, or any other similar criteria Any attempts upon their

lives, or violence to their persons, shall be strictly prohibited; in particular, they shall not be murdered or exterminated, subjected to torture or to biological experiments; they shall not wilfully be left without medical assistance and care, nor shall conditions exposing them to contagion or infection be created.

Only urgent medical reasons will authorize priority in the order of treatment to be administered.

Women shall be treated with all consideration due to their sex.

The Party to the conflict which is compelled to abandon wounded or sick to the enemy shall, as far as military considerations permit, leave with them a part of its medical personnel and material to assist in their care. (GWS, art. 12.)

*b. National Habits and Backgrounds* The foregoing is not intended to prohibit concessions, particularly with respect to food, clothing, and shelter, which take into account the different national habits and backgrounds of the wounded and sick

#### 216. Search for Casualties

At all times, and particularly after an engagement, Parties to the conflict shall, without delay, take all possible measures to search for and collect the wounded and sick, to protect them against pillage and ill-treatment, to ensure their adequate care, and to search for the dead and prevent their being despoiled.

Whenever circumstances permit, an armistice or a suspension of fire shall be arranged, or local arrangements made, to permit the removal, exchange and transport of the wounded left on the battlefield.

Likewise, local arrangements may be concluded between Parties to the conflict for the removal or exchange of wounded and sick from a besieged or encircled area, and for the passage of medical and religious personnel and equipment on their way to that area. (GWS, art 15)

#### 217. Wounded Falling Into Enemy Hands

Parties to the conflict shall record as soon as possible, in respect of each wounded, sick or dead person of the adverse Party falling into their hands, any particulars which may assist in his identification.

These records should if possible include:

- (a) designation of the Power on which he depends;
- (b) army, regimental, personal or serial number;
- (c) surname;
- (d) first name or names;
- (e) date of birth;
- (f) any other particulars shown on his identity card or disc;
- (g) date and place of capture or death;

**(h) particulars concerning wounds or illness, or cause of death.**

As soon as possible the above mentioned information shall be forwarded to the Information Bureau described in Article 122 of the Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of August 12, 1949, which shall transmit this information to the Power on which these persons depend through the intermediary of the Protecting Power and of the Central Prisoners of War Agency.

Parties to the conflict shall prepare and forward to each other through the same bureau, certificates of death or duly authenticated lists of the dead. They shall likewise collect and forward through the same bureau one half of a double identity disc, last wills or other documents of importance to the next of kin, money and in general all articles of an intrinsic or sentimental value, which are found on the dead. These articles, together with unidentified articles, shall be sent in sealed packets, accompanied by statements giving all particulars necessary for the identification of the deceased owners, as well as by a complete list of the contents of the parcel. (*GWS, art 16.*)

#### **218. Graves Registration Service**

Parties to the conflict shall ensure that burial or cremation of the dead, carried out individually as far as circumstances permit, is preceded by a careful examination, if possible by a medical examination, of the bodies, with a view to confirming death, establishing identity and enabling a report to be made. One half of the double identity disc, or the identity disc itself if it is a single disc, should remain on the body.

Bodies shall not be cremated except for imperative reasons of hygiene or for motives based on the religion of the deceased. In case of cremation, the circumstances and reasons for cremation shall be stated in detail in the death certificate or on the authenticated list of the dead

They shall further ensure that the dead are honorably interred, if possible according to the rites of the religion to which they belonged, that their graves are respected, grouped if possible according to the nationality of the deceased, properly maintained and marked so that they may always be found. For this purpose, they shall organize at the commencement of hostilities an Official Graves Registration Service, to allow subsequent exhumations and to ensure the identification of bodies, whatever the site of the graves, and the possible transportation to the home country. These provisions shall likewise apply to the ashes, which shall be kept by the Graves Registration Service until proper disposal thereof in accordance with the wishes of the home country.



As soon as circumstances permit, and at latest at the end of hostilities, these Services shall exchange, through the Information Bureau mentioned in the second paragraph of Article 16, lists showing the exact location and markings of the graves, together with particulars of the dead interred therein. (GWS, art. 17.)

#### 219. Voluntary Care

##### *a. Treaty Provision.*

The military authorities may appeal to the charity of the inhabitants voluntarily to collect and care for, under their direction, the wounded and sick, granting persons who have responded to this appeal the necessary protection and facilities. Should the adverse Party take or retake control of the area, he shall likewise grant these persons the same protection and the same facilities.

The military authorities shall permit the inhabitants and relief societies, even in invaded or occupied areas, spontaneously to collect and care for wounded or sick of whatever nationality. The civilian population shall respect these wounded and sick, and in particular abstain from offering them violence.

No one may ever be molested or convicted for having nursed the wounded or sick.

The provisions of the present Article do not relieve the occupying Power of its obligation to give both physical and moral care to the wounded and sick (GWS, art 18)

*b Compulsion in Occupied Areas* An occupying authority may not bring pressure to bear on the population in order to induce them to give treatment to the wounded and sick

### Section III. MEDICAL UNITS, ESTABLISHMENTS, PERSONNEL AND TRANSFERS

#### 220. Protection

##### *a Treaty Provision*

Fixed establishments and mobile medical units of the Medical Service may in no circumstances be attacked, but shall at all times be respected and protected by the Parties to the conflict. Should they fall into the hands of the adverse Party, their personnel shall be free to pursue their duties, as long as the capturing Power has not itself ensured the necessary care of the wounded and sick found in such establishments and units.

The responsible authorities shall ensure that the said medical establishments and units are, as far as possible, situated in such a manner that attacks against military objectives cannot imperil their safety. (GWS, art 19)

*b Nature of Protection Required* See paragraph 225b.

### **221. Search of Medical Units, Establishments, and Transports**

*GWS* does not confer immunity from search by the enemy on medical units, establishments, or transports.

### **222. Discontinuance of Protection of Medical Establishments and Units**

The protection to which fixed establishments and mobile medical units of the Medical Service are entitled shall not cease unless they are used to commit, outside their humanitarian duties, acts harmful to the enemy. Protection may, however, cease only after a due warning has been given, naming, in all appropriate cases, a reasonable time limit, and after such warning has remained unheeded. (*GWS*, art. 21 )

### **223. Conditions Not Depriving Medical Units and Establishments of Protection**

#### *a. Treaty Provision*

The following conditions shall not be considered as depriving a medical unit or establishment of the protection guaranteed by Article 19:

- (1) That the personnel of the unit or establishment are armed, and that they use the arms in their own defense, or in that of the wounded and sick in their charge.
- (2) That in the absence of armed orderlies, the unit or establishment is protected by a picket or by sentries or by an escort.
- (3) That small arms and ammunition taken from the wounded and sick and not yet handed to the proper service, are found in the unit or establishment.
- (4) That personnel and material of the veterinary service are found in the unit or establishment, without forming an integral part thereof.
- (5) That the humanitarian activities of medical units and establishments or of their personnel extend to the care of civilian wounded or sick. (*GWS*, art. 22 )

*b Self-Defense Defined.* Although medical personnel may carry arms for self-defense, they may not employ such arms against enemy forces acting in conformity with the law of war. These arms are for their personal defense and for the protection of the wounded and sick under their charge against marauders and other persons violating the law of war. Medical personnel who use their arms in circumstances not justified by the law of war expose themselves to penalties for violation of the law of war and, provided they have been given due warning to cease such acts, may also forfeit the protection of the medical unit or establishment of which they form part or which they are protecting

*c Arms and Ammunition Taken From the Wounded and Sick*  
As provided in substance by the foregoing article, the presence of such

arms and ammunition in a medical unit or establishment is not of itself cause for denying the protection to be accorded such organizations under GWS. However, such arms and ammunition should be turned in as soon as practicable and, in any event, are subject to confiscation

#### **224. Hospital Zones and Localities**

In time of peace, the High Contracting Parties and, after the outbreak of hostilities, the Parties thereto, may establish in their own territory and, if the need arises, in occupied areas, hospital zones and localities so organized as to protect the wounded and sick from the effects of war, as well as the personnel entrusted with the organization and administration of these zones and localities and with the care of the persons therein assembled.

Upon the outbreak and during the course of hostilities, the Parties concerned may conclude agreements on mutual recognition of the hospital zones and localities they have created. They may for this purpose implement the provisions of the Draft Agreement annexed to the present Convention, with such amendments as they may consider necessary.

The protecting Powers and the International Committee of the Red Cross are invited to lend their good offices in order to facilitate the institution and recognition of these hospital zones and localities (GWS, art. 23)

#### **225. Protection of Permanent Personnel**

- a. *Treaty Provision* See Article 24, GWS (par 67)
- b. *What Is Meant by Respect and Protection.* The respect and protection accorded personnel of certain categories by Articles 19 (par 220), 24 (par. 67), and 25 (par 226), GWS, mean that they must not knowingly be attacked, fired upon, or unnecessarily prevented from discharging their proper functions. The accidental killing or wounding of such personnel, due to their presence among or in proximity to combatant elements actually engaged, by fire directed at the latter, gives no just cause for complaint

#### **226. Protection of Auxiliary Personnel**

- a. *Treaty Provision*  
Members of the armed forces specially trained for employment, should the need arise, as hospital orderlies, nurses or auxiliary stretcher-bearers, in the search for or the collection, transport or treatment of the wounded and sick shall likewise be respected and protected if they are carrying out these duties at the time when they come into contact with the enemy or fall into his hands. (GWS, art 25.)

*b Nature of Protection.* See paragraph 225 *b*, and Article 29, GWS (par. 68)

**227. Personnel of Aid Societies**

See Article 26, GWS (par 69).

**228. The American National Red Cross**

The American National Red Cross is the only voluntary aid society now authorized by this Government to render aid to the Army Medical Service in time of war, and any other society desiring to render similar assistance can do so only through the American National Red Cross (Pres. Proc., 22 Aug 1911, 37 Stat 1716). The President is authorized to accept the assistance tendered by the Red Cross and to employ the same under the Armed Forces (act 17 Jul 1953, 67 Stat. 178; 36 U.S.C. 17, 17a.) Personnel of the Red Cross serving with or accompanying an armed force in the field in time of war or serving with or accompanying the armed forces without the continental limits of the United States and certain named territories are subject to the Uniform Code of Military Justice (USMJ, Art. 2 (10) (11))

**229. Societies of Neutral Countries**

A recognized Society of a neutral country can only lend the assistance of its medical personnel and units to a Party to the conflict with the previous consent of its own Government and the authorization of the Party to the conflict concerned. That personnel and those units shall be placed under the control of that Party to the conflict.

The neutral Government shall notify this consent to the adversary of the State which accepts such assistance. The Party to the conflict who accepts such assistance is bound to notify the adverse Party thereof before making any use of it.

In no circumstances shall this assistance be considered as interference in the conflict

The members of the personnel named in the first paragraph shall be duly furnished with the identity cards provided for in Article 40 before leaving the neutral country to which they belong. (GWS, art 97.)

**230. Retained Personnel**

*a. Treaty Provision*

Personnel designated in Articles 24 and 26 who fall into the hands of the adverse Party, shall be retained only in so far as the state of health, the spiritual needs and the number of prisoners of war require

Personnel thus retained shall not be deemed prisoners of war. Nevertheless they shall at least benefit by all the provisions of the

Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of August 12, 1949. Within the framework of the military laws and regulations of the Detaining Power, and under the authority of its competent service, they shall continue to carry out, in accordance with their professional ethics, their medical and spiritual duties on behalf of prisoners of war, preferably those of the armed forces to which they themselves belong. They shall further enjoy the following facilities for carrying out their medical or spiritual duties:

- (a) They shall be authorized to visit periodically the prisoners of war in labour units or hospitals outside the camp. The Detaining Power shall put at their disposal the means of transport required.
- (b) In each camp the senior medical officer of the highest rank shall be responsible to the military authorities of the camp for the professional activity of the retained medical personnel. For this purpose, from the outbreak of hostilities, the Parties to the conflict shall agree regarding the corresponding seniority of the ranks of their medical personnel, including those of the societies designated in Article 26. In all questions arising out of their duties, this medical officer, and the chaplains, shall have direct access to the military and medical authorities of the camp who shall grant them the facilities they may require for correspondence relating to these questions.
- (c) Although retained personnel in a camp shall be subject to its internal discipline, they shall not, however, be required to perform any work outside their medical or religious duties

During hostilities the Parties to the conflict shall make arrangements for relieving where possible retained personnel, and shall settle the procedure of such relief.

None of the preceding provisions shall relieve the Detaining Power of the obligations imposed upon it with regard to the medical and spiritual welfare of the prisoners of war. (GWS, art 28.)

*b Discipline.* See paragraph 67.

## 231 Return of Religious and Medical Personnel

### *a Treaty Provision*

Personnel whose retention is not indispensable by virtue of the provisions of Article 28 shall be returned to the Party to the conflict to whom they belong, as soon as a road is open for their return and military requirements permit.

Pending their return, they shall not be deemed prisoners of war. Nevertheless they shall at least benefit by all the provisions of the

Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of August 12, 1949. They shall continue to fulfill their duties under the orders of the adverse Party and shall preferably be engaged in the care of the wounded and sick of the Party to the conflict to which they themselves belong.

On their departure, they shall take with them the effects, personal belongings, valuables and instruments belonging to them. (GWS, art. 30)

*b. Security Measures.* Nothing in the foregoing article precludes reasonable measures to prevent such personnel, upon their return to their own army, from carrying information of strategic or tactical value. The movements and activities of religious and medical personnel whose return is contemplated may be restricted as far as reasonably necessary to prevent their acquisition of such information, provided they are not thereby denied the facilities afforded them by Article 28, GWS (par 230). Should they become possessed of such information, their return to their own army may be delayed until the information has ceased to be of substantial value.

### 232. Selection of Personnel for Return

The selection of personnel for return under Article 30 shall be made irrespective of any consideration of race, religion or political opinion, but preferably according to the chronological order of their capture and their state of health.

As from the outbreak of hostilities, Parties to the conflict may determine by special agreement the percentage of personnel to be retained, in proportion to the number of prisoners and the distribution of the said personnel in the camps. (GWS, art 31)

### 233 Return of Personnel Belonging to Neutral Countries

#### *a Treaty Provision*

Persons designated in Article 27 who have fallen into the hands of the adverse Party may not be detained.

Unless otherwise agreed, they shall have permission to return to their country, or if this is not possible, to the territory of the Party to the conflict in whose service they were, as soon as a route for their return is open and military considerations permit.

Pending their release, they shall continue their work under the direction of the adverse Party; they shall preferably be engaged in the care of the wounded and sick of the Party to the conflict in whose service they were.

On their departure, they shall take with them their effects, personal articles and valuables and the instruments, arms and if possible the means of transport belonging to them.

The Parties to the conflict shall secure to this personnel, while in their power, the same food, lodging, allowances and pay as are

granted to the corresponding personnel of their armed forces. The food shall in any case be sufficient as regards quantity, quality and variety to keep the said personnel in a normal state of health. (*GWS, art 32.*)

*b Security Measures* Security measures similar to those taken with respect to religious and medical personnel (par. 231*b*) may be applied to personnel of aid societies of neutral countries.

#### 234. Buildings and Stores

##### *a. Treaty Provision*

The material of mobile medical units of the armed forces which fall into the hands of the enemy, shall be reserved for the care of wounded and sick.

The buildings, material and stores of fixed medical establishments of the armed forces shall remain subject to the laws of war, but may not be diverted from their purpose as long as they are required for the care of wounded and sick. Nevertheless, the commanders of forces in the field may make use of them, in case of urgent military necessity, provided that they make previous arrangements for the welfare of the wounded and sick who are nursed in them.

The material and stores defined in the present Article shall not be intentionally destroyed. (*GWS, art. 33.*)

*b Material of Mobile Medical Units.* The material of mobile medical units falling into the hands of the enemy need not be restored to the belligerent from whom it was taken. It must, however, be used only for the care of the wounded and sick, and does not constitute war booty, within the meaning of Article 53, *HR* (pars 403, 408) or unwritten international law, until *GWS* ceases to be operative

#### 235 Property of Aid Societies

The real and personal property of aid societies which are admitted to the privileges of the Convention shall be regarded as private property.

The right of requisition recognized for belligerents by the laws and customs of war shall not be exercised except in case of urgent necessity, and only after the welfare of the wounded and sick has been ensured (*GWS, art 34.*)

#### 236. Protection of Medical Transports

##### *a Treaty Provision*

Transports of wounded and sick or of medical equipment shall be respected and protected in the same way as mobile medical units.

Should such transports or vehicles fall into the hands of the adverse Party, they shall be subject to the laws of war, on condi-

**tion that the Party to the conflict who captures them shall in all cases ensure the care of the wounded and sick they contain.**

**The civilian personnel and all means of transport obtained by requisition shall be subject to the general rules of international law. (GWS, art. 35.)**

**b. Civilian Personnel** The rules of international law applicable to civilians connected with medical transports may vary depending on whether such persons accompany the armed forces (GPW, art. 4A (4); par. 61 herein) are members of the staff of voluntary aid societies either of a belligerent State (GWS, art. 26; par. 69 herein) or of a neutral State (GWS, art. 27; par. 229 herein), or are civilians not otherwise protected by GWS or GPW (GC, art. 4; par. 247 herein).

### **237. Medical Aircraft**

#### **a Treaty Provision**

**Medical aircraft, that is to say, aircraft exclusively employed for the removal of wounded and sick and for the transport of medical personnel and equipment, shall not be attacked, but shall be respected by the belligerents, while flying at heights, times and on routes specifically agreed upon between the belligerents concerned**

**They shall bear, clearly marked, the distinctive emblem prescribed in Article 38, together with their national colours, on their lower, upper and lateral surfaces. They shall be provided with any other markings or means of identification that may be agreed upon between the belligerents upon the outbreak or during the course of hostilities.**

**Unless agreed otherwise, flights over enemy or enemy-occupied territory are prohibited**

**Medical aircraft shall obey every summons to land. In the event of a landing thus imposed, the aircraft with its occupants may continue its flight after examination, if any**

**In the event of an involuntary landing in enemy or enemy-occupied territory, the wounded and sick, as well as the crew of the aircraft shall be prisoners of war. The medical personnel shall be treated according to Article 24 and the Articles following. (GWS, art. 36)**

**b Converted Aircraft.** It is not necessary that the aircraft should have been specially built and equipped for medical purposes. There is no objection to converting ordinary aircraft into medical aircraft or to using former medical aircraft for other purposes, provided the distinctive markings are removed



## Section IV. THE RED CROSS EMBLEM

### 238. Emblem of the Convention

#### *a. Treaty Provision.*

As a compliment to Switzerland, the heraldic emblem of the red cross on a white ground formed by reversing the Federal colours, is retained as the emblem and distinctive sign of the Medical Service of armed forces.

Nevertheless, in the case of countries which already use as emblem, in place of the red cross, the red crescent or the red lion and sun on a white ground, those emblems are also recognized by the terms of the present Convention. (*GWS, art 38.*)

*b. Emblems Other Than the Red Cross.* Turkey uses the Red Crescent; Iran, the Red Lion and Sun. Israel signed *GWS* subject to the reservation that it will use a Red Shield of David as its distinctive sign.

*c. Misuse of the Emblem.* See Article 23 (f), *HR* (par. 52). See also pertinent United States statutes.

### 239. Use of the Emblem

Under the direction of the competent military authority, the emblem shall be displayed on the flags, armbands and on all equipment employed in the Medical Service. (*GWS, art. 39.*)

### 240. Identification of Medical and Religious Personnel

The personnel designated in Article 24 and in Articles 26 and 27 [Articles 36 and 37 of *GWS Sea*] shall wear, affixed to the left arm, a water-resistant armband bearing the distinctive emblem, issued and stamped by the military authority.

Such personnel, in addition to wearing the identity disc mentioned in Article 16 [Article 19 of *GWS Sea*], shall also carry a special identity card bearing the distinctive emblem. This card shall be water-resistant and of such size that it can be carried in the pocket. It shall be worded in the national language, shall mention at least the surname and first names, the date of birth, the rank and the service number of the bearer, and shall state in what capacity he is entitled to the protection of the present Convention. The card shall bear the photograph of the owner and also either his signature or his finger-prints or both. It shall be embossed with the stamp of the military authority.

The identity card shall be uniform throughout the same armed forces and, as far as possible, of a similar type in the armed forces of the High Contracting Parties. The Parties to the conflict may be guided by the model which is annexed, by way of example, to the present Convention. They shall inform each other, at the outbreak of hostilities, of the model they are using. Identity

cards should be made out, if possible, at least in duplicate, one copy being kept by the home country.

*In no circumstances may the said personnel be deprived of their insignia or identity cards nor of the right to wear the armlet. In case of loss, they shall be entitled to receive duplicates of the cards and to have the insignia replaced. (GWS, art. 40.)*

#### 241. Identification of Auxiliary Personnel

The personnel designated in Article 25 shall wear, but only while carrying out medical duties, a white armlet bearing in its centre the distinctive sign in miniature; the armlet shall be issued and stamped by the military authority.

Military identity documents to be carried by this type of personnel shall specify what special training they have received, the temporary character of the duties they are engaged upon, and their authority for wearing the armlet. (GWS, art. 41.)

#### 242. Marking of Medical Units and Establishments

The distinctive flag of the Convention shall be hoisted only over such medical units and establishments as are entitled to be respected under the Convention, and only with the consent of the military authorities.

In mobile units, as in fixed establishments, it may be accompanied by the national flag of the Party to the conflict to which the unit or establishment belongs

Nevertheless, medical units which have fallen into the hands of the enemy shall not fly any flag other than that of the Convention.

Parties to the conflict shall take the necessary steps, in so far as military considerations permit, to make the distinctive emblems indicating medical units and establishments clearly visible to the enemy land, air or naval forces, in order to obviate the possibility of any hostile action. (GWS, art. 42)

#### 243. Marking of Units of Neutral Countries

The medical units belonging to neutral countries which may have been authorized to lend their services to a belligerent under the conditions laid down in Article 27, shall fly, along with the flag of the Convention, the national flag of that belligerent, wherever the latter makes use of the faculty conferred on him by Article 42.

Subject to orders to the contrary by the responsible military authorities, they may, on all occasions, fly their national flag, even if they fall into the hands of the adverse Party. (GWS, art. 43.)

#### 244. Restrictions in the Use of the Emblem

With the exception of the cases mentioned in the following paragraphs of the present Article, the emblem of the Red Cross on

a white ground and the words "Red Cross", or "Geneva Cross" may not be employed, either in time of peace or in time of war, except to indicate or to protect the medical units and establishments, the personnel and material protected by the present Convention and other Conventions dealing with similar matters. The same shall apply to the emblems mentioned in Article 38, second paragraph, in respect of the countries which use them. The National Red Cross Societies and other Societies designated in Article 26 shall have the right to use the distinctive emblem conferring the protection of the Convention only within the framework of the present paragraph

Furthermore, National Red Cross (Red Crescent, Red Lion and Sun) Societies may, in time of peace, in accordance with their national legislation, make use of the name and emblem of the Red Cross for their other activities which are in conformity with the principles laid down by the International Red Cross Conferences. When those activities are carried out in time of war, the conditions for the use of the emblem shall be such that it cannot be considered as conferring the protection of the Convention; the emblem shall be comparatively small in size and may not be placed on armlets or on the roofs of buildings.

The international Red Cross organizations and their duly authorized personnel shall be permitted to make use, at all times, of the emblem of the Red Cross on a white ground.

As an exceptional measure, in conformity with national legislation and with the express permission of one of the National Red Cross (Red Crescent, Red Lion and Sun) Societies, the emblem of the Convention may be employed in time of peace to identify vehicles used as ambulances and to mark the position of aid stations exclusively assigned to the purpose of giving free treatment to the wounded or sick. (*GWS, art. 44*)

#### 245 United States Reservation

The United States, in ratifying the Geneva Convention \* \* \* does so with the reservation that \* \* \* nothing contained therein shall make unlawful, or obligate the United States of America to make unlawful, any use or right of use within the United States of America and its territories and possessions of the Red Cross emblem, sign, insignia, or words as was lawful by reason of domestic law and a use begun prior to January 5, 1905, provided such use by pre-1905 users does not extend to the placing of the Red Cross emblem, sign, or insignia upon aircraft, vessels, vehicles, buildings or other structures, or upon the ground. (*T I A S 3362*)

## CHAPTER 5 CIVILIAN PERSONS

---

### Section I. GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### 246. Protection of Civilians Generally

The protection of civilian persons is governed by both *GC* and *HR*, the former supplementing the latter insofar as both relate to occupied territory. Certain provisions of *GC* are applicable only in the territory of a party to the conflict, others to belligerently occupied territory, a number to both or to civilian populations generally. Those relating exclusively to occupied areas appear in chapter 6, while the requirements of *GC* having to do with the territory of a belligerent or with both such territory and occupied territory or with the general protection of civilian persons are set forth in this chapter.

#### 247. Definition of Protected Persons

##### *a. Treaty Provision*

Persons protected by the Convention are those who, at a given moment and in any manner whatsoever, find themselves, in case of a conflict or occupation, in the hands of a Party to the conflict or Occupying Power of which they are not nationals.

Nationals of a State which is not bound by the Convention are not protected by it. Nationals of a neutral State who find themselves in the territory of a belligerent State, and nationals of a co-belligerent State, shall not be regarded as protected persons while the State of which they are nationals has normal diplomatic representation in the State in whose hands they are.

The provisions of Part II are, however, wider in application, as defined in Article 13.

Persons protected by the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of August 12, 1949, or by the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of Wounded, Sick and Shipwrecked Members of Armed Forces at Sea of August 12, 1949, or by the Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of August 12, 1949, shall not be considered as protected persons within the meaning of the present Convention. (*GC, art 4*)

*b. Interpretation* Subject to qualifications set forth in paragraph 248, those protected by *GC* also include all persons who have engaged in hostile or belligerent conduct but who are not entitled to treatment as prisoners of war

c. *Wider Scope of Certain Articles* Part II, GC (sec II of this chapter), has a broader scope than the rest of GC. (See GC, art. 13; par. 252 herein.)

#### 248. Derogations

##### a. *Domestic and Occupied Territory*

Where, in the territory of a Party to the conflict, the latter is satisfied that an individual protected person is definitely suspected of or engaged in activities hostile to the security of the State, such individual person shall not be entitled to claim such rights and privileges under the present Convention as would, if exercised in the favour of such individual person, be prejudicial to the security of such State.

Where in occupied territory an individual protected person is detained as a spy or saboteur, or as a person under definite suspicion of activity hostile to the security of the Occupying Power, such person shall, in those cases where absolute military security so requires, be regarded as having forfeited rights of communication under the present Convention.

In each case such persons shall nevertheless be treated with humanity, and in ease of trial, shall not be deprived of the rights of fair and regular trial prescribed by the present Convention. They shall also be granted the full rights and privileges of a protected person under the present Convention at the earliest date consistent with the security of the State or Occupying Power, as the case may be. (GC, art 5.) (See also par 73.)

b. *Other Area* Where, in territories other than those mentioned in a above, a Party to the conflict is satisfied that an individual protected person is definitely suspected of or engaged in activities hostile to the security of the State, such individual person is similarly not entitled to claim such rights and privileges under GC as would, if exercised in favor of such individual person, be prejudicial to the security of such State

c. *Acts Punishable* The foregoing provisions impliedly recognize the power of a Party to the conflict to impose the death penalty and lesser punishments on spies, saboteurs and other persons not entitled to be treated as prisoners of war, except to the extent that that power has been limited or taken away by Article 68, GO (par 438)

#### 249. Beginning and End of Application

##### a. *Treaty Provision*

The present Convention shall apply from the outset of any conflict or occupation mentioned in Article 2.

In the territory of Parties to the conflict, the application of the present Convention shall cease on the general close of military operations.

In the case of occupied territory, the application of the present Convention shall cease one year after the general close of military operations; however, the Occupying Power shall be bound, for the duration of the occupation, to the extent that such Power exercises the functions of government in such territory, by the provisions of the following Articles of the present Convention: 1 to 12, 27, 29 to 34, 47, 49, 51, 52, 53, 59, 61 to 77, 143.

Protected persons whose release, repatriation or re-establishment may take place after such dates shall meanwhile continue to benefit by the present Convention. (*GC, art 6.*)

*b. Reestablishment of Protected Persons* The word "reestablishment," as used in a, refers to protected persons who cannot be repatriated because, for example, they would be liable to persecution in their own country, or because their homes have been destroyed.

#### 250 Special Agreements

In addition to the agreements expressly provided for in Articles 11, 14, 15, 17, 36, 108, 109, 132, 133 and 149, the High Contracting Parties may conclude other special agreements for all matters concerning which they may deem it suitable to make separate provision. No special agreement shall adversely affect the situation of protected persons, as defined by the present Convention, nor restrict the rights which it confers upon them.

Protected persons shall continue to have the benefit of such agreements as long as the Convention is applicable to them, except where express provisions to the contrary are contained in the aforesaid or in subsequent agreements, or where more favourable measures have been taken with regard to them by one or other of the Parties to the conflict (*GC, art 7*)

#### 251. Non-renunciation of Rights

Protected persons may in no circumstances renounce in part or in entirety the rights secured to them by the present Convention, and by the special agreements referred to in the foregoing Article, if such there be. (*GC, art 8*)

### Section II. GENERAL PROTECTION OF POPULATIONS AGAINST CERTAIN CONSEQUENCES OF WAR

#### 252 Field of Application

##### *a Treaty Provision*

The provisions of Part II cover the whole of the populations of the countries in conflict, without any adverse distinction based, in particular, on race, nationality, religion or political opinion,

and are intended to alleviate the sufferings caused by war. (GC art. 13.)

*b The State and Its Own Nationals.* The provisions mentioned in a concern not only the relations between a given nation and aliens but also the relations between a nation and its own nationals, and also apply to neutral inhabitants of the countries in conflict.

### 253. Hospital and Safety Zones and Localities

In time of peace, the High Contracting Parties and, after the outbreak of hostilities, the Parties thereto, may establish in their own territory and, if the need arises, in occupied areas, hospital and safety zones and localities so organized as to protect from the effects of war, wounded, sick and aged persons, children under fifteen, expectant-mothers and mothers of children under seven.

Upon the outbreak and during the course of hostilities, the Parties concerned may conclude agreements on mutual recognition of the zones and localities they have created. They may for this purpose implement the provisions of the Draft Agreement annexed to the present Convention, with such amendments as they may consider necessary.

The Protecting Powers and the International Committee of the Red Cross are invited to lend their good offices in order to facilitate the institution and recognition of these hospital and safety zones and Localities (GC, art. 14)

### 254 Neutralized Zones

#### *a Treaty Provision*

Any Party to the conflict may, either directly through a neutral State or some humanitarian organization, propose to the adverse Party to establish, in the regions where fighting is taking place, neutralized zones intended to shelter from the effects of war the following persons, without distinction:

- (a) wounded and sick combatants or non-combatants;
- (b) civilian persons who take no part in hostilities, and who, while they reside in the zones, perform no work of a military character

When the Parties concerned have agreed upon the geographical position, administration, food supply and supervision of the proposed neutralized zone, a written agreement shall be concluded and signed by the representatives of the Parties to the conflict. The agreement shall fix the beginning and the duration of the neutralization of the zone (GC, art 15)

*b By Whom Agreements Concluded* The agreements mentioned in a and elsewhere in this section may be concluded either by the governments concerned or by subordinate military commanders.

#### 255. General Protection of Wounded and Sick

The wounded and sick, as well as the infirm, and expectant mothers, shall be the object of particular protection and respect.

As far as military considerations allow, each Party to the conflict shall facilitate the steps taken to search for the killed and wounded, to assist the shipwrecked and other persons exposed to grave danger, and to protect them against pillage and ill-treatment. (*GC, art. 16.*)

#### 256. Evacuation of Wounded and Sick

The Parties to the conflict shall endeavour to conclude local agreements for the removal from besieged or encircled areas, of wounded, sick, infirm, and aged persons, children and maternity cases, and for the passage of ministers of all religions, medical personnel and medical equipment on their way to such areas. (*GC, art. 17.*)

#### 257. Protection of Hospitals

Civilian hospitals organized to give care to the wounded and sick, the infirm and maternity cases, may in no circumstances be the object of attack, but shall at all times be respected and protected by the Parties to the conflict.

States which are Parties to a conflict shall provide all civilian hospitals with certificates showing that they are civilian hospitals and that the buildings which they occupy are not used for any purpose which would deprive these hospitals of protection in accordance with Article 19

Civilian hospitals shall be marked by means of the emblem provided for in Article 38 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of August 12, 1949, but only if so authorized by the State.

The Parties to the conflict shall, in so far as military considerations permit, take the necessary steps to make the distinctive emblems indicating civilian hospitals clearly visible to the enemy land, air and naval forces in order to obviate the possibility of any hostile action.

In view of the dangers to which hospitals may be exposed by being close to military objectives, it is recommended that such hospitals be situated as far as possible from such objectives. (*GC, art 18*)

#### 258. Discontinuance of Protection of Hospitals

##### *a Treaty Provision*

The protection to which civilian hospitals are entitled shall not cease unless they are used to commit, outside their humanitarian



duties, acts harmful to the enemy. Protection may, however, cease only after due warning has been given, naming, in all appropriate cases, a reasonable time limit, and after such warning has remained unheeded.

The fact that sick or wounded members of the armed forces are nursed in these hospitals, or the presence of small arms and ammunition taken from such combatants and not yet handed to the proper service, shall not be considered to be acts harmful to the enemy. (GC, art. 19.)

*b. Meaning of Acts Harmful to the Enemy.* Acts harmful to the enemy are not only acts of warfare proper but any activity characterizing combatant action, such as setting up observation posts or the use of the hospital as a liaison center for fighting troops

#### 259. Hospital Staff

##### *a. Treaty Provision.*

Persons regularly and solely engaged in the operation and administration of civilian hospitals, including the personnel engaged in the search for, removal and transporting of and caring for wounded and sick civilians, the infirm and maternity cases, shall be respected and protected.

In occupied territory and in zones of military operations, the above personnel shall be recognizable by means of an identity card certifying their status, bearing the photograph of the holder and embossed with the stamp of the responsible authority, and also by means of a stamped, water-resistant armband which they shall wear on the left arm while carrying out their duties. This armband shall be issued by the State and shall bear the emblem provided for in Article 38 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of August 12, 1949.

Other personnel who are engaged in the operation and administration of civilian hospitals shall be entitled to respect and protection and to wear the armband, as provided in and under the conditions prescribed in this Article, while they are employed on such duties. The identity card shall state the duties on which they are employed.

The management of each hospital shall at all times hold at the disposal of the competent national or occupying authorities an up-to-date list of such personnel. (GC, art 20)

*b Interpretation* The persons "regularly and solely engaged in the operation and administration of civilian hospitals" include all members of the professional staff and all employees of hospitals, whether or not in direct contact with the wounded and sick, provided they have no occupation other than their work in the hospitals

#### 260. Land and Sea Transport

Convoys of vehicles or hospital trains on land or specially provided vessels on sea, conveying wounded and sick civilians, the infirm and maternity cases, shall be respected and protected in the same manner as the hospitals provided for in Article 18, and shall be marked, with the consent of the State, by the display of the distinctive emblem provided for in Article 38 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of August 12, 1949. (GC, art 21)

#### 261. Air Transport

Aircraft exclusively employed for the removal of wounded and sick civilians, the infirm and maternity cases, or for the transport of medical personnel and equipment, shall not be attacked, but shall be respected while flying at heights, times and on routes specifically agreed upon between all the Parties to the conflict concerned

They may be marked with the distinctive emblem provided for in Article 38 of the Geneva Convention for the Amelioration of the Condition of the Wounded and Sick in Armed Forces in the Field of August 12, 1949.

Unless agreed otherwise, flights over enemy or enemy-occupied territory are prohibited.

Such aircraft shall obey every summons to land. In the event of a landing thus imposed, the aircraft with its occupants may continue its flight after examination if any. (GC, art. 22)

#### 262. Consignments of Medical Supplies, Food, and Clothing

Each High Contracting Party shall allow the free passage of all consignments of medical and hospital stores and objects necessary for religious worship intended only for civilians of another High Contracting Party, even if the latter is its adversary. It shall likewise permit the free passage of all consignments of essential foodstuffs, clothing and tonics intended for children under fifteen, expectant mothers and maternity cases.

The obligation of a High Contracting Party to allow the free passage of the consignments indicated in the preceding paragraph is subject to the condition that this Party is satisfied that there are no serious reasons for fearing:

- (a) that the consignments may be diverted from their destination,
- (b) that the control may not be effective, or
- (c) that a definite advantage may accrue to the military efforts or economy of the enemy through the substitution of the above-mentioned consignments for goods which

would otherwise be provided or produced by the enemy or through the release of such material, services or facilities as would otherwise be required for the production of such goods.

The Power which allows the passage of the consignments indicated in the first paragraph of this Article may make such permission conditional on the distribution of the persons benefited thereby being made under the local supervision of the Protecting Powers.

Such consignments shall be forwarded as rapidly as possible, and the Power which permits their free passage shall have the right to prescribe the technical arrangements under which such passage is allowed. (*GC, art. 23.*)

#### 263. Measures Relating to Child Welfare

The Parties to the conflict shall take the necessary measures to ensure that children under fifteen, who are orphaned or are separated from their families as a result of the war, are not left to their own resources, and that their maintenance, the exercise of their religion and their education are facilitated in all circumstances. Their education shall, as far as possible, be entrusted to persons of a similar cultural tradition.

The Parties to the conflict shall facilitate the reception of such children in a neutral country for the duration of the conflict with the consent of the Protecting Power, if any, and under due safeguards for the observance of the principles stated in the first paragraph.

They shall, furthermore, endeavour to arrange for all children under twelve to be identified by the wearing of identity discs, or by some other means. (*GC, art. 24.*)

#### 264 Family News

All persons in the territory of a Party to the conflict, or in a territory occupied by it, shall be enabled to give news of a strictly personal nature to members of their families, wherever they may be, and to receive news from them. This correspondence shall be forwarded speedily and without undue delay.

If, as a result of circumstances, it becomes difficult or impossible to exchange family correspondence by the ordinary post, the Parties to the conflict concerned shall apply to a neutral intermediary, such as the Central Agency provided for in Article 140, and shall decide in consultation with it how to ensure the fulfillment of their obligations under the best possible conditions, in particular with the cooperation of the National Red Cross (Red Crescent, Red Lion and Sun) Societies

If the Parties to the conflict deem it necessary to restrict family correspondence, such restrictions shall be confined to the compulsory use of standard forms containing twenty-five freely chosen words, and to the limitation of the number of these forms dispatched to one each month. *(GC, art 25.)*

#### 265. Dispersed Families

Each Party to the conflict shall facilitate enquiries made by members of families dispersed owing to the war, with the object of renewing contact with one another and of meeting, if possible. It shall encourage, in particular, the work of organizations engaged on this task provided they are acceptable to it and conform to its security regulations. *(GC, art. 26.)*

### Section III. PROVISIONS COMMON TO THE TERRITORIES OF THE PARTIES TO THE CONFLICT AND TO OCCUPIED TERRITORIES

#### 266. General

Protected persons are entitled, in all circumstances, to respect for their persons, their honour, their family rights, their religious convictions and practices, and their manners and customs. They shall at all times be humanely treated, and shall be protected especially against all acts of violence or threats thereof and against insults and public curiosity.

Women shall be especially protected against any attack on their honour, in particular against rape, enforced prostitution, or any form of indecent assault.

Without prejudice to the provisions relating to their state of health, age and sex, all protected persons shall be treated with the same consideration by the Party to the conflict in whose power they are, without any adverse distinction based, in particular, on race, religion or political opinion.

However, the Parties to the conflict may take such measures of control and security in regard to protected persons as may be necessary as a result of the war. *(GC, art. 27)*

#### 267. Danger Zones

The presence of a protected person may not be used to render certain points or areas immune from military operations. *(GC, art 28)*

#### 268. Responsibilities

The Party to the conflict in whose hands protected persons may be, is responsible for the treatment accorded to them by its agents, irrespective of any individual responsibility which may be incurred. *(GC, art. 29.)*

#### 269. Application to Protecting Powers and Relief Organizations

Protected persons shall have every facility for making application to the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross, the National Red Cross (Red Crescent, Red Lion and Sun) Society of the country where they may be, as well as to any organization that might assist them.

These several organizations shall be granted all facilities for that purpose by the authorities, within the bounds set by military or security considerations.

Apart from the visits of the delegates of the Protecting Powers and of the International Committee of the Red Cross, provided for by Article 143, the Detaining or Occupying Powers shall facilitate as much as possible visits to protected persons by the representatives of other organizations whose object is to give spiritual aid or material relief to such persons. (GC, art. 30)

#### 270. Prohibition of Coercion

##### *a Treaty Provision*

No physical or moral coercion shall be exercised against protected persons, in particular to obtain information from them or from third parties (GC, art. 31)

*b Guides* Among the forms of coercion prohibited is the impressment of guides from the local inhabitants.

#### 271. Prohibition of Corporal Punishment, Torture, Etc.

The High Contracting Parties specifically agree that each of them is prohibited from taking any measure of such a character as to cause the physical suffering or extermination of protected persons in their hands. This prohibition applies not only to murder, torture, corporal punishment, mutilation and medical or scientific experiments not necessitated by the medical treatment of a protected person, but also to any other measures of brutality whether applied by civilian or military agents. (GC, art. 32.)

#### 272. Individual Responsibility, Collective Penalties, Reprisals, Pillage

No protected person may be punished for an offence he or she has not personally committed. Collective penalties and likewise all measures of intimidation or of terrorism are prohibited

Pillage is prohibited

Reprisals against protected persons and their property are prohibited. (GC, art. 33) (See also pars. 47 and 397.)

#### 273. Hostages

The taking of hostages is prohibited. (GC, art. 34)

#### Section IV. ALIENS IN THE TERRITORY OF A PARTY TO THE CONFLICT

##### 274. Right to Leave the Territory

All protected persons who may desire to leave the territory at the outset of, or during a conflict, shall be entitled to do so, unless their departure is contrary to the national interest of the State. The applications of such persons to leave shall be decided in accordance with regularly established procedures and the decision shall be taken as rapidly as possible. Those persons permitted to leave may provide themselves with the necessary funds for their journey and take with them a reasonable amount of their effects and articles of personal use.

If any such person is refused permission to leave the territory, he shall be entitled to have such refusal reconsidered as soon as possible by an appropriate court or administrative board designated by the Detaining Power for that purpose.

Upon request, representatives of the Protecting Power shall, unless reasons of security prevent it, or the persons concerned object, be furnished with the reasons for refusal of any request for permission to leave the territory and be given, as expeditiously as possible, the names of all persons who have been denied permission to leave. (GC, art 35.)

##### 275. Conditions of Departure

Departures permitted under the foregoing Articles shall be carried out in satisfactory conditions as regards safety, hygiene, sanitation and food. All costs in connection therewith, from the point of exit in the territory of the Detaining Power, shall be borne by the country of destination, or, in the case of accommodation in a neutral country, by the Power whose nationals are benefited. The practical details of such movements may, if necessary, be settled by special agreements between the Powers concerned.

The foregoing shall not prejudice such special agreements as may be concluded between Parties to the conflict concerning the exchange and repatriation of their nationals in enemy hands. (GC, art 36)

##### 276. Persons in Confinement

Protected persons who are confined pending proceedings or serving a sentence involving loss of liberty, shall during their confinement be humanely treated.

As soon as they are released, they may ask to leave the territory in conformity with the foregoing Articles. (GC, art. 37.)

##### 277. Non-repatriated Persons: General

With the exception of special measures authorized by the present Convention, in particular by Articles 27 and 41 thereof,

the situation of protected persons shall continue to be regulated, in principle, by the provisions concerning aliens in time of peace. In any case, the following rights shall be granted to them:

- (1) They shall be enabled to receive the individual or collective relief that may be sent to them.
- (2) They shall, if their state of health so requires, receive medical attention and hospital treatment to the same extent as the nationals of the State concerned.
- (3) They shall be allowed to practise their religion and to receive spiritual assistance from ministers of their faith.
- (4) If they reside in an area particularly exposed to the dangers of war, they shall be authorised to move from that area to the same extent as the nationals of the State concerned.
- (5) Children under fifteen years, pregnant women and mothers of children under seven years shall benefit by any preferential treatment to the same extent as the nationals of the State concerned. (*GC, art. 38.*)

#### 278. Non-repatriated Persons: Means of Existence

Protected persons who, as a result of the war, have lost their gainful employment, shall be granted the opportunity to find paid employment. That opportunity shall, subject to security considerations and to the provisions of Article 40, be equal to that enjoyed by the nationals of the Power in whose territory they are

Where a Party to the conflict applies to a protected person methods of control which result in his being unable to support himself, and especially if such a person is prevented for reasons of security from finding paid employment on reasonable conditions, the said Party shall ensure his support and that of his dependents.

Protected persons may in any case receive allowances from their home country, the Protecting Power, or the relief societies referred to in Article 30. (*GC, art. 39.*)

#### 279. Non-repatriated Persons: Employment

Protected persons may be compelled to work only to the same extent as nationals of the Party to the conflict in whose territory they are

If protected persons are of enemy nationality, they may only be compelled to do work which is normally necessary to ensure the feeding, sheltering, clothing, transport and health of human beings and which is not directly related to the conduct of military operations.

In the cases mentioned in the two preceding paragraphs, protected persons compelled to work shall have the benefit of the

same working conditions and of the same safeguards as national workers, in particular as regards wages, hours of labour, clothing and equipment, previous training and compensation for occupational accidents and diseases.

If the above provisions are infringed, protected persons shall be allowed to exercise their right of complaint in accordance with Article 30. (GC, art. 40.)

#### 280. Internment or Assigned Residence

##### *a. Treaty Provision.*

Should the Power in whose hands protected persons may be consider the measures of control mentioned in the present Convention to be inadequate, it may not have recourse to any other measure of control more severe than that of assigned residence or internment, in accordance with the provisions of Articles 42 and 43.

In applying the provisions of Article 39, second paragraph, to the cases of persons required to leave their usual places of residence by virtue of a decision placing them in assigned residence elsewhere, the Detaining Power shall be guided as closely as possible by the standards of welfare set forth in Part III, Section IV of this Convention (GC, art. 41.)

*b Penal Legislation* The foregoing provision does not preclude the application of ordinary penal legislation to protected persons.

#### 281. Grounds for Internment or Assigned Residence; Voluntary internment

The internment or placing in assigned residence of protected persons may be ordered only if the security of the Detaining Power makes it absolutely necessary.

If any person, acting through the representatives of the Protecting Power, voluntarily demands internment and if his situation renders this step necessary, he shall be interned by the Power in whose hand he may be. (GC, art. 42)

#### 282. Procedure

##### *a Treaty Provision*

Any protected person who has been interned or placed in assigned residence shall be entitled to have such action reconsidered as soon as possible by an appropriate court or administrative board designated by the Detaining Power for that purpose. If the internment or placing in assigned residence is maintained, the court or administrative board shall periodically, and at least twice yearly, give consideration to his or her case with a view



to the favorable amendment of the initial decision, if circumstances permit.

Unless the protected persons concerned object, the Detaining Power shall, as rapidly as possible, give the Protecting Power the names of any protected persons who have been interned or subjected to assigned residence, or who have been released from internment or assigned residence. The decisions of the courts or boards mentioned in the first paragraph of the present Article shall also, subject to the same conditions, be notified as rapidly as possible to the Protecting Power. (GC, art 43.)

*b Prohibited Areas* The term "assigned residence" refers to measures taken with respect to individuals or families and does not include prohibitions on entry into or residence in specified zones, which have been imposed on groups of people by reason of their nationality or like criteria

### 283. Refugees

#### *a Treaty Provision*

In applying the measures of control mentioned in the present Convention, the Detaining Power shall not treat as enemy aliens exclusively on the basis of their nationality *de jure* of an enemy State, refugees who do not, in fact, enjoy the protection of any government. (GC, art 44.)

*b Purpose.* The purpose of the foregoing article is to insure that refugees who may only technically remain enemy aliens are not on that basis automatically subject to control measures, notwithstanding the fact they actually are not protected by their government. However, the quoted provision does not in any way deny the right of a State to intern any such person or subject him to any other recognized measure of control when there is any additional reason that renders necessary the taking of such action as may be required for the security of the State in a moment of national crisis

### 284. Transfer to Another Power

Protected persons shall not be transferred to a Power which is not a party to the Convention.

This provision shall in no way constitute an obstacle to the repatriation of protected persons, or to their return to their country of residence after the cessation of hostilities.

Protected persons may be transferred by the Detaining Power only to a Power which is a party to the present Convention after the Detaining Power has satisfied itself of the willingness and ability of such transferee Power to apply the present Convention. If protected persons are transferred under such circumstances, responsibility for the application of the present Convention rests

on the Power accepting them, while they are in its custody. Nevertheless, if that Power fails to carry out the provisions of the present Convention in any important respect, the Power by which the protected persons were transferred shall, upon being so notified by the Protecting Power, take effective measures to correct the situation or shall request the return of the protected persons. Such request must be complied with.

In no circumstances shall a protected person be transferred to a country where he or she may have reason to fear persecution for his or her political opinions or religious beliefs.

The provisions of this Article do not constitute an obstacle to the extradition, in pursuance of extradition treaties concluded before the outbreak of hostilities, of protected persons accused of offences against ordinary criminal law. (*GC, art 45.*)

#### 285. Cancellation of Restrictive Measures

In so far as they have not been previously withdrawn, restrictive measures taken regarding protected persons shall be cancelled as soon as possible after the close of hostilities.

Restrictive measures affecting their property shall be cancelled, in accordance with the law of the Detaining Power, as soon as possible after the close of hostilities. (*GC, art 46.*)

### Section V. REGULATIONS FOR THE TREATMENT OF INTERNEES

#### 286. Cases of Internment and Provisions Applicable

The Parties to the conflict shall not intern protected persons, except in accordance with the provisions of Articles 41, 42, 43, 68 and 78. (*GC, art. 79.*)

#### 287. Civil Capacity

Internees shall retain their full civil capacity and shall exercise such attendant rights as may be compatible with their status. (*GC, art. 80*)

#### 288. Maintenance

Parties to the conflict who intern protected persons shall be bound to provide free of charge for their maintenance, and to grant them also the medical attention required by their state of health

No deduction from the allowances, salaries or credits due to the internees shall be made for the repayment of these costs.

The Detaining Power shall provide for the support of those dependent on the internees, if such dependents are without adequate means of support or are unable to earn a living. (*GC, art 81*)

#### 289. Grouping of Internees

The Detaining Power shall, as far as possible, accommodate the internees according to their nationality language and customs. Internees who are nationals of the same country shall not be separated merely because they have different languages.

Throughout the duration of their internment, members of the same family, and in particular parents and children, shall be lodged together in the same place of internment, except when separation of a temporary nature is necessitated for reasons of employment or health or for the purposes of enforcement of the provisions of Chapter IX of the present Section. Internees may request that their children who are left at liberty without parental care shall be interned with them.

Wherever possible, interned members of the same family shall be housed in the same premises and given separate accommodations from other internees, together with facilities for leading a proper family life (GC, art 82.)

#### 290. Location of Places of Internment

The Detaining Power shall not set up places of internment in areas particularly exposed to the dangers of war.

The Detaining Power shall give the enemy Powers, through the intermediary of the Protecting Powers, all useful information regarding the geographical location of places of internment.

Whenever military considerations permit, internment camps shall be indicated by the letters IC, placed so as to be clearly visible in the daytime from the air. The Powers concerned may, however, agree upon any other system of marking. No place other than an internment camp shall be marked as such. (GC, art 83.)

#### 291. Separate Internment

Internees shall be accommodated and administered separately from prisoners of war and from persons deprived of liberty for any other reason. (GC, art 84)

#### 292. Accommodation; Hygiene

The Detaining Power is bound to take all necessary and possible measures to ensure that protected persons shall, from the outset of their internment, be accommodated in buildings or quarters which afford every possible safeguard as regards hygiene and health, and provide efficient protection against the rigours of the climate and the effects of the war. In no case shall permanent places of internment be situated in unhealthy areas, or in districts the climate of which is injurious to the internees. In all cases where the district, in which a protected person is temporarily

interned, is in an unhealthy area or has a climate which is harmful to his health, he shall be removed to a more suitable place of internment as rapidly as circumstances permit.

The premises shall be fully protected from dampness, adequately heated and lighted, in particular between dusk and lights out. The sleeping quarters shall be sufficiently spacious and well ventilated, and the internees shall have suitable bedding and sufficient blankets, account being taken of the climate, and the age, sex, and state of health of the internees.

Internees shall have for their use, day and night, sanitary conveniences which conform to the rules of hygiene and are constantly maintained in a state of cleanliness. They shall be provided with sufficient water and soap for their daily personal toilet and for washing their personal laundry; installations and facilities necessary for this purpose shall be granted to them. Showers or baths shall also be available. The necessary time shall be set aside for washing and for cleaning.

Whenever it is necessary, as an exceptional and temporary measure, to accommodate women internees who are not members of a family unit in the same place of internment as men, the provision of separate sleeping quarters and sanitary conveniences for the use of such women internees shall be obligatory. (*GC, art 85.*)

### 293. Premises for Religious Services

The Detaining Power shall place at the disposal of interned persons, of whatever denomination, premises suitable for the holding of their religious services. (*GC, art.. 86*)

### 294. Canteens

#### *a Treaty Provision*

Canteens shall be installed in every place of internment except where other suitable facilities are available. Their purpose shall be to enable internees to make purchases, at prices not higher than local market prices, of foodstuffs and articles of everyday use, including soap and tobacco, such as would increase their personal well-being and comfort

Profits made by canteens shall be credited to a welfare fund to be set up for each place of internment, and administered for the benefit of the internees attached to such place of internment. The Internee Committee provided for in Article 102 shall have the right to check the management of the canteen and of the said fund

When a place of internment is closed down, the balance of the welfare fund shall be transferred to the welfare fund of a place

of internment for internees of the same nationality, or, if such a place does not exist, to a central welfare fund which shall be administered for the benefit of all internees remaining in the custody of the Detaining Power. In case of a general release, the said profits shall be kept by the Detaining Power, subject to any agreement to the contrary between the Powers concerned. (GC, art. 87.)

*b. Limitation on Privilege.* Interned persons are not entitled to more favorable treatment than the population at large with respect to canteen facilities and are equally subject to regulations, such as those pertaining to rationing, which are applied to the population generally.

#### 295. Air-Raid Shelters and Protective Measures

In all places of internment exposed to air raids and other hazards of war, shelters adequate in number and structure to ensure the necessary protection shall be installed. In case of alarms, the internees shall be free to enter such shelters as quickly as possible, excepting those who remain for the protection of their quarters against the aforesaid hazards. Any protective measures taken in favour of the population shall also apply to them.

All due precautions must be taken in places of internment against the danger of fire. (GC, art. 88.)

#### 296 Food

Daily food rations for internees shall be sufficient in quantity, quality, and variety to keep internees in a good state of health and prevent the development of nutritional deficiencies. Account shall also be taken of the customary diet of the internees.

Internees shall also be given the means by which they can prepare for themselves any additional food in their possession.

Sufficient drinking water shall be supplied to internees. The use of tobacco shall be permitted.

Internees who work shall receive additional rations in proportion to the kind of labour which they perform.

Expectant and nursing mothers, and children under fifteen years of age, shall be given additional food, in proportion to their physiological needs. (GC, art. 89)

#### 297. Clothing

When taken into custody, internees shall be given all facilities to provide themselves with the necessary clothing, footwear and change of underwear, and later on, to procure further supplies if required. Should any internees not have sufficient clothing, account being taken of the climate, and be unable to procure any,

it shall be provided free of charge to them by the Detaining Power.

The clothing supplied by the Detaining Power to internees and the outward markings placed on their own clothes shall not be ignominious nor expose them to ridicule.

Workers shall receive suitable working outfits, including protective clothing, whenever the nature of their work so requires. (GC, art. 90.)

#### 298. Medical Attention

Every place of internment shall have an adequate infirmary, under the direction of a qualified doctor, where internees may have the attention they require, as well as an appropriate diet. Isolation wards shall be set aside for cases of contagious or mental diseases.

Maternity cases and internees suffering from serious diseases, or whose condition requires special treatment, a surgical operation or hospital care, must be admitted to any institution where adequate treatment can be given and shall receive care not inferior to that provided for the general population.

Internees shall, for preference, have the attention of medical personnel of their own nationality.

Internees may not be prevented from presenting themselves to the medical authorities for examination. The medical authorities of the Detaining Power shall, upon request, issue to every internee who has undergone treatment an official certificate showing the nature of his illness or injury, and the duration and nature of the treatment given. A duplicate of this certificate shall be forwarded to the Central Agency provided for in Article 140.

Treatment, including the provision of any apparatus necessary for the maintenance of internees in good health, particularly dentures and other artificial appliances and spectacles, shall be free of charge to the internee. (GC, art 91 )

#### 299. Medical Inspection

Medical inspections of internees shall be made at least once a month. Their purpose shall be, in particular, to supervise the general state of health, nutrition and cleanliness of internees, and to detect contagious diseases, especially tuberculosis, malaria, and venereal diseases. Such inspections shall include, in particular, the checking of weight of each internee and, at least once a year, radioscopic examination. (GC, art. 92)

#### 300. Religious Freedoms

Internees shall enjoy complete latitude in the exercise of their religious duties including attendance at the services of their

faith, on condition that they comply with the disciplinary routine prescribed by the detaining authorities.

Ministers of religion who are interned shall be allowed to minister freely to the members of their community. For this purpose, the Detaining Power shall ensure their equitable allocation amongst the various places of internment in which there are internees speaking the same language and belonging to the same religion. Should such ministers be too few in number, the Detaining Power shall provide them with the necessary facilities, including means of transport, for moving from one place to another, and they shall be authorized to visit any internees who are in hospital. Ministers of religion shall be at liberty to correspond on matters concerning their ministry with the religious authorities in the country of detention and, as far as possible, with the international religious organizations of their faith. Such correspondence shall not be considered as forming a part of the quota mentioned in Article 107. It shall, however, be subject to the provisions of Article 112.

When internees do not have at their disposal the assistance of ministers of their faith, or should these latter be too few in number, the local religious authorities of the same faith may appoint, in agreement with the Detaining Power, a minister of the internees' faith or, if such a course is feasible from a denominational point of view, a minister of similar religion or a qualified layman. The latter shall enjoy the facilities granted to the ministry he has assumed. Persons so appointed shall comply with all regulations laid down by the Detaining Power in the interests of discipline and security. (GC, art. 93.)

### 301. Recreational Study, Sports, and Games

The Detaining Power shall encourage intellectual, educational and recreational pursuits, sports and games amongst internees, whilst leaving them free to take part in them or not. It shall take all practicable measures to ensure the exercise thereof, in particular by providing suitable premises.

All possible facilities shall be granted to internees to continue their studies or to take up new subjects. The education of children and young people shall be ensured; they shall be allowed to attend schools either within the place of internment or outside.

Internees shall be given opportunities for physical exercise, sports and outdoor games. For this purpose, sufficient open spaces shall be set aside in all places of internment. Special playgrounds shall be reserved for children and young people. (GC, art. 94.)

### 302. Working Conditions

#### a. Treaty Provision.

The Detaining Power shall not employ internees as workers, unless they so desire. Employment which, if undertaken under compulsion by a protected person not in internment, would involve a breach of Articles 40 or 51 of the present Convention, and employment on work which is of a degrading or humiliating character are in any case prohibited.

After a working period of six weeks, internees shall be free to give up work at any moment, subject to eight days' notice.

These provisions constitute no obstacle to the right of the Detaining power to employ interned doctors, dentists and other medical personnel in their professional capacity on behalf of their fellow internees, or to employ internees for administrative and maintenance work in places of internment and to detail such persons for work in the kitchens or for other domestic tasks, or to require such persons to undertake duties connected with the protection of internees against aerial bombardment or other war risks. No internee may, however, be required to perform tasks for which he is, in the opinion of a medical officer, physically unsuited.

The Detaining Power shall take entire responsibility for all working conditions, for medical attention, for the payment of wages, and for ensuring that all employed internees receive compensation for occupational accidents and diseases. The standards prescribed for the said working conditions and for compensation shall be in accordance with the national laws and regulations, and with the existing practice; they shall in no case be inferior to those obtaining for work of the same nature in the same district. Wages for work done shall be determined on an equitable basis by special agreements between the internees, the Detaining Power, and, if the case arises, employers other than the Detaining Power, due regard being paid to the obligation of the Detaining Power to provide for free maintenance of internees and for the medical attention which their state of health may require. Internees permanently detailed for categories of work mentioned in the third paragraph of this Article, shall be paid fair wages by the Detaining Power. The working conditions and the scale of compensation for occupational accidents and diseases to internees thus detailed, shall not be inferior to those applicable to work of the same nature in the same district (*GC, art. 95.*)

b *Wages* Since internees are free of normal financial responsibilities, they are not entitled to receive from the Detaining Power by way of wages the whole of the amount paid over by their employers



### 303. Labor Detachments

All labour detachments shall remain part of and dependent upon a place of internment. The competent authorities of the Detaining Power and the commandant of a place of internment shall be responsible for the observance in a labour detachment of the provisions of the present Convention. The commandant shall keep an up-to-date list of the labour detachments subordinate to him and shall communicate it to the delegates of the Protecting Power, of the International Committee of the Red Cross and of other humanitarian organizations who may visit the places of internment. *(GC, art 96.)*

### 304. Valuables and Personal Effects

Internees shall be permitted to retain articles of personal use. Monies, cheques, bonds, etc., and valuables in their possession may not be taken from them except in accordance with established procedure. Detailed receipts shall be given therefor.

The amounts shall be paid into the account of every internee as provided for in Article 98. Such amounts may not be converted into any other currency unless legislation in force in the territory in which the owner is interned so requires or the internee gives his consent.

Articles which have above all a personal or sentimental value may not be taken away.

A woman internee shall not be searched except by a woman.

On release or repatriation, internees shall be given all articles, monies or other valuables taken from them during internment and shall receive in currency the balance of any credit to their accounts kept in accordance with Article 98, with the exception of any articles or amounts withheld by the Detaining Power by virtue of its legislation in force. If the property of an internee is so withheld, the owner shall receive a detailed receipt.

Family or identity documents in the possession of internees may not be taken away without a receipt being given. At no time shall internees be left without identity documents. If they have none, they shall be issued with special documents drawn up by the detaining authorities, which will serve as their identity papers until the end of their internment.

Internees may keep on their persons a certain amount of money, in cash or in the shape of purchase coupons, to enable them to make purchases. *(GC, art. 97.)*

### 305. Financial Allowance and Individual Accounts

All internees shall receive regular allowances, sufficient to enable them to purchase goods and articles, such as tobacco,

toilet requisites, etc. Such allowances may take the form of credits or purchase coupons.

Furthermore, internees may receive allowances from the Power to which they owe allegiance, the Protecting Powers, the organizations which may assist them, or their families, as well as the income on their property in accordance with the law of the Detaining Power. The amount of allowances granted by the Power to which they owe allegiance shall be the same for each category of internees (infirm, sick, pregnant women, etc.), but may not be allocated by that Power or distributed by the Detaining Power on the basis of discriminations between internees which are prohibited by Article 27 of the present Convention.

The Detaining Power shall open a regular account for every internee, to which shall be credited the allowances named in the present Article, the wages earned and the remittances received, together with such sums taken from him as may be available under the legislation in force in the territory in which he is interned. Internees shall be granted all facilities consistent with the legislation in force in such territory to make remittances to their families and to other dependants. They may draw from their accounts the amounts necessary for their personal expenses, within the limits fixed by the Detaining Power. They shall at all times be afforded reasonable facilities for consulting and obtaining copies of their accounts. A statement of accounts shall be furnished to the Protecting Power on request, and shall accompany the internee in case of transfer (*GC, art 98.*)

### 306. Camp Administration

Every place of internment shall be put under the authority of a responsible officer, chosen from the regular military forces or the regular civil administration of the Detaining Power. The officer in charge of the place of internment must have in his possession a copy of the present Convention in the official language, or one of the official languages, of his country and shall be responsible for its application. The staff in control of internees shall be instructed in the provisions of the present Convention and of the administrative measures adopted to ensure its application.

The text of the present Convention and the texts of special agreements concluded under the said Convention shall be posted inside the place of internment, in a language which the internees understand, or shall be in the possession of the Internee Committee

Regulations, orders, notices and publications of every kind shall be communicated to the internees and posted inside the places of internment, in a language which they understand.

Every order and command addressed to internees individually, must likewise, be given in a language which they understand. (GC, art. 99.)

### 307. General Discipline

The disciplinary regime in places of internment shall be consistent with humanitarian principles, and shall in no circumstances include regulations imposing on internees any physical exertion dangerous to their health or involving physical or moral victimization. Identification by tattooing or imprinting signs or markings on the body, is prohibited.

In particular, prolonged standing and roll-calls, punishment drill, military drill and manoeuvres, or the reduction of food rations, are prohibited. (GC, art 100.)

### 308. Complaints and Petitions

#### a. Treaty Provision

Internees shall have the right to present to the authorities in whose power they are, any petition with regard to the conditions of internment to which they are subjected.

They shall also have the right to apply without restriction through the Internee Committee or, if they consider it necessary, direct to the representatives of the Protecting Power, in order to indicate to them any points on which they may have complaints to make with regard to the conditions of internment.

Such petitions and complaints shall be transmitted forthwith and without alteration, and even if the latter are recognized to be unfounded, they may not occasion any punishment.

Periodic reports on the situation in places of internment and as to the needs of the internees, may be sent by the Internee Committees to the representatives of the Protecting Powers. (GC, art 101.)

b *Censorship* The Detaining Power has the right to examine and censor the complaints, petitions, and reports referred to above in the same manner as correspondence addressed to internees or dispatched by them. It may also examine such complaints and reports to the representatives of the Protecting Power to verify that they are what they purport to be and to delete matter not constituting either a complaint or a report within the meaning of the foregoing provision.

### 309. Election of Internee Committees

In every place of internment, the internees shall freely elect by secret ballot every six months, the members of a Committee em-

powered to represent them before the Detaining and the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross and any other organization which may assist them. The members of the Committee shall be eligible for re-election.

Internees so elected shall enter upon their duties after their election has been approved by the detaining authorities. The reasons for any refusals or dismissals shall be communicated to the Protecting Powers concerned. (*GC, art. 102.*)

### 310. Duties of Internee Committees

The Internee Committees shall further the physical, spiritual and intellectual well-being of the internees.

In case the internees decide, in particular, to organize a system of mutual assistance amongst themselves, this organization would be within the competence of the Committees in addition to the special duties entrusted to them under other provisions of the present Convention. (*GC, art. 103*)

### 311. Prerogatives of Internee Committees

Members of Internee Committees shall not be required to perform any other work, if the accomplishment of their duties is rendered more difficult thereby.

Members of Internee Committees may appoint from amongst the internees such assistants as they may require. All material facilities shall be granted to them, particularly a certain freedom of movement necessary for the accomplishment of their duties (visits to labour detachments, receipt of supplies, etc.).

All facilities shall likewise be accorded to members of Internee Committees for communication by post and telegraph with the detaining authorities, the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross and their delegates, and with the organizations which give assistance to internees. Committee members in labour detachments shall enjoy similar facilities for communication with their Internee Committee in the principal place of internment. Such communications shall not be limited, nor considered as forming a part of the quota mentioned in Article 107.

Members of Internee Committees who are transferred shall be allowed a reasonable time to acquaint their successors with current affairs. (*GC, art 104*)

### 312. Notification of Measures Taken

Immediately upon interning protected persons, the Detaining Powers shall inform them, the Power to which they owe allegiance and their Protecting Power of the measures taken for executing the provisions of the present Chapter. The Detaining Powers

shall likewise inform the Parties concerned of any subsequent modifications of such measures. (GC, art, 106.)

### 313. Internment Card

As soon as he is interned, or at the latest not more than one week after his arrival in a place of internment, and likewise in cases of sickness or transfer to another place of internment or to a hospital, every internee shall be enabled to send direct to his family, on the one hand, and to the Central Agency provided for by Article 140, on the other, an internment card similar, if possible, to the model annexed to the present Convention, informing his relatives of his detention, address and state of health. The said cards shall be forwarded as rapidly as possible and may not be delayed in any way. (GC, art. 106.)

### 314. Correspondence

Internees shall be allowed to send and receive letters and cards. If the Detaining Power deems it necessary to limit the number of letters and cards sent by each internee, the said number shall not be less than two letters and four cards monthly; these shall be drawn up so as to conform as closely as possible to the models annexed to the present Convention. If limitations must be placed on the correspondence addressed to internees, they may be ordered only by the Power to which such internees owe allegiance, possibly at the request of the Detaining Power. Such letters and cards must be conveyed with reasonable despatch; they may not be delayed or retained for disciplinary reasons.

Internees who have been a long time without news, or who find it impossible to receive news from their relatives, or to give them news by the ordinary postal route, as well as those who are at a considerable distance from their homes, shall be allowed to send telegrams, the charges being paid by them in the currency at their disposal. They shall likewise benefit by this provision in cases which are recognized to be urgent

As a rule, internees' mail shall be written in their own language. The Parties to the conflict may authorize correspondence in other languages. (GC, art 107)

### 315. Relief Shipments

Internees shall be allowed to receive, by post or by any other means, individual parcels or collective shipments containing in particular foodstuffs, clothing, medical supplies, as well as books and objects of a devotional, educational or recreational character which may meet their needs. Such shipments shall in no way free the Detaining Power from the obligations imposed upon it by virtue of the present Convention.

Should military necessity require the quantity of such shipments to be limited, due notice thereof shall be given to the Protecting Power and to the International Committee of the Red Cross, or to any other organization giving assistance to the internees and responsible for the forwarding of such shipments.

The conditions for the sending of individual parcels and collective shipments shall, if necessary, be the subject of special agreements between the Powers concerned, which may in no case delay the receipt by the internees of relief supplies. Parcels of clothing and foodstuffs may not include books. Medical relief supplies shall, as a rule, be sent in collective parcels. (GC, art 108.)

### 316. Collective Relief

In the absence of special agreements between Parties to the conflict regarding the conditions for the receipt and distribution of collective relief shipments, the regulations concerning collective relief which are annexed to the present Convention shall be applied.

The special agreements provided for above shall in no case restrict the right of Internee Committees to take possession of collective relief shipments intended for internees, to undertake their distribution and to dispose of them in the interests of the recipients.

Nor shall such agreements restrict the right of representatives of the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross, or any other organization giving assistance to internees and responsible for the forwarding of collective shipments, to supervise their distribution to the recipients. (GC, art 109)

### 317. Exemption From Postal and Transport Charges

#### *a Treaty Provision*

All relief shipments for internees shall be exempt from import, customs and other dues.

All matter sent by mail, including relief parcels sent by parcel post and remittances of money, addressed from other countries to internees or dispatched by them through the post office, either direct or through the Information Bureaux provided for in Article 136 and the Central Information Agency provided for in Article 140, shall be exempt from all postal dues both in the countries of origin and destination and in intermediate countries. To this end, in particular, the exemption provided by the Universal Postal Convention of 1947 and by the agreements of

the Universal Postal Union in favour of civilians of enemy nationality detained in camps or civilian prisons, shall be extended to the other interned persons protected by the present Convention. The countries not signatory to the above-mentioned agreements shall be bound to grant freedom from charges in the same circumstances.

The cost of transporting relief shipments which are intended for internees and which, by reason of their weight or any other cause, cannot be sent through the post office, shall be borne by the Detaining Power in all the territories under its control. Other Powers which are Parties to the present Convention shall bear the cost of transport in their respective territories.

Costs connected with the transport of such shipments which are not covered by the above paragraphs, shall be charged to the senders

The High Contracting Parties shall endeavour to reduce, so far as possible, the charges for telegrams sent by internees, or addressed to them. (GC, art 110)

*b Exemption Under Universal Postal Convention of 1952. See paragraph 150b*

### 318. Special Means of Transport

Should military operations prevent the Powers concerned from fulfilling their obligation to ensure the conveyance of the mail and relief shipments provided for in Articles 106, 107, 108 and 113, the Protecting Powers concerned, the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other organization duly approved by the Parties to the conflict may undertake the conveyance of such shipments by suitable means (rail, motor vehicles, vessels or aircraft, etc.). For this purpose, the High Contracting Parties shall endeavour to supply them with such transport, and to allow its circulation, especially by granting the necessary safe-conducts

Such transport may also be used to convey:

- (a) correspondence, lists and reports exchanged between the Central Information Agency referred to in Article 140 and the National Bureaux referred to in Article 136;
- (b) correspondence and reports relating to internees which the Protecting Powers, the International Committee of the Red Cross or any other organization assisting the internees exchange either with their own delegates or with the Parties to the conflict

These provisions in no way detract from the right of any Party to the conflict to arrange other means of transport if it should

so prefer, nor precluding the granting of safe-conducts, under mutually agreed conditions, to such means of transport.

The costs occasioned by the use of such means of transport shall be borne, in proportion to the importance of the shipments, by the Parties to the conflict whose nationals are benefited thereby. (GC, art. 111.)

### 319. Censorship and Examination

#### *a. Treaty Provision*

The censoring of correspondence addressed to internees or dispatched by them shall be done as quickly as possible.

The examination of consignments intended for internees shall not be carried out under conditions that will expose the goods in them to deterioration. It shall be done in the presence of the addressee, or of a fellow-internee duly delegated by him. The delivery to internees of individual or collective consignments shall not be delayed under the pretext of difficulties of censorship.

Any prohibition of correspondence ordered by the Parties to the conflict either for military or political reasons, shall be only temporary and its duration shall be as short as possible. (GC, art. 112.)

*b. Material Subject to Censorship* The Detaining Power may examine and censor all communications sent to or by internees, including correspondence and telegrams (GC, art. 107; par. 314 herein) and relief shipments (GC, art. 108, par. 315 herein) with a view to deleting matter prejudicial to its military security. See paragraph 308b concerning the censorship of complaints, petitions, and reports submitted pursuant to Article 101, GC.

### 320. Execution and Transmission of Legal Documents

The Detaining Powers shall provide all reasonable facilities for the transmission through the Protecting Power or the Central Agency provided for in Article 140, or as otherwise required, of wills, powers of attorney, letters of authority, or any other documents intended for internees or dispatched by them.

In all cases the Detaining Powers shall facilitate the execution and authentication in due legal form of such documents on behalf of internees, in particular by allowing them to consult a lawyer. (GC, art. 123.)

### 321. Management of Property

The Detaining Power shall afford internees all facilities to enable them to manage their property, provided this is not incompatible with the conditions of internment and the law which is applicable. For this purpose, the said Power may give them permission to leave the place of internment in urgent cases and if circumstances allow. (GC, art. 114.)



### 322. Facilities for Preparation and Conduct of Cases

In all cases where an internee is a party to proceedings in any court, the Detaining Power shall, if he so requests, cause the court to be informed of his detention and shall, within legal limits, ensure that all necessary steps are taken to prevent him from being in anyway prejudiced, by reason of his internment, as regards the preparation and conduct of his case or as regards the execution of any judgment of the court. *(GC, art 115.)*

### 323. Visits

Every internee shall be allowed to receive visitors, especially near relatives, at regular intervals and as frequently as possible.

As far as is possible, internees shall be permitted to visit their homes in urgent cases, particularly in cases of death or serious illness of relatives. *(GC, art. 116)*

### 324. Penal and Disciplinary Sanctions: General Provisions

Subject to the provisions of the present Chapter, the laws in force in the territory in which they are detained will continue to apply to internees who commit offences during internment.

If general laws, regulations or orders declare acts committed by internees to be punishable, whereas the same acts are not punishable when committed by persons who are not internees, such acts shall entail disciplinary punishments only.

No internee may be punished more than once for the same act, or on the same count. *(GC, art 117)*

### 325. Penalties

The courts or authorities shall in passing sentence take as far as possible into account the fact that the defendant is not a national of the Detaining Power. They shall be free to reduce the penalty prescribed for the offence with which the internee is charged and shall not be obliged, to this end, to apply the minimum sentence prescribed.

Imprisonment in premises without daylight and; in general, all forms of cruelty without exception are forbidden.

Internees who have served disciplinary or judicial sentences shall not be treated differently from other internees.

The duration of preventive detention undergone by an internee shall be deducted from any disciplinary or judicial penalty involving confinement to which he may be sentenced

Internee Committees shall be informed of all judicial proceedings instituted against internees whom they represent, and of their result. *(GC, art 118)*

### 326. Disciplinary Punishments

The disciplinary punishments applicable to internees shall be the following:

- (1) A fine which shall not exceed 50 per cent of the wages which the internee would otherwise receive under the provisions of Article 95 during a period of not more than thirty days.
- (2) Discontinuance of privileges granted over and above the treatment provided for by the present Convention.
- (3) Fatigue duties, not exceeding two hours daily, in connection with the maintenance of the place of internment.
- (4) Confinement.

In no case shall disciplinary penalties be inhuman, brutal or dangerous for the health of internees. Account shall be taken of the internee's age, sex and state of health.

The duration of any single punishment shall in no case exceed a maximum of thirty consecutive days, even if the internee is answerable for several breaches of discipline when his case is dealt with, whether such breaches are connected or not. (GC, art 119.)

### 327. Escapes

Internees who are recaptured after having escaped or when attempting to escape, shall be liable only to disciplinary punishment in respect of this act, even if it a repeated offence.

Article 118, paragraph 3, notwithstanding, internees punished as a result of escape or attempt to escape, may be subjected to special surveillance, on condition that such surveillance does not affect the state of their health, that it is exercised in a place of internment and that it does not entail the abolition of any of the safeguards granted by the present Convention

Internees who aid and abet an escape or attempt to escape, shall be liable on this count to disciplinary punishment only. (GC, art 120)

### 328. Connected Offences

Escape, or attempt to escape, even if it is a repeated offence, shall not be deemed an aggravating circumstance in cases where an internee is prosecuted for offences committed during his escape.

The Parties to the conflict shall ensure that the competent authorities exercise leniency in deciding whether punishment inflicted for an offence shall be of a disciplinary or judicial nature, especially in respect of acts committed in connection with an escape, whether successful or not. (GC, art 121.)

### 329. Investigations and Confinement Awaiting Hearing

Acts which constitute offences against discipline shall be investigated immediately. This rule shall be applied, in particular, in cases of escape or attempt to escape. Recaptured internees shall be handed over to the competent authorities as soon as possible.

In cases of offences against discipline, confinement awaiting trial shall be reduced to an absolute minimum for all internees, and shall not exceed fourteen days. Its duration shall in any case be deducted from any sentence of confinement.

The provisions of Articles 124 and 125 shall apply to internees who are in confinement awaiting trial for offences against discipline. (GC, art 122)

### 330. Procedure

Without prejudice to the competence of courts and higher authorities, disciplinary punishment may be ordered only by the commandant of the place of internment, or by a responsible officer or official who replaces him, or to whom he has delegated his disciplinary powers.

Before any disciplinary punishment is awarded, the accused internee shall be given precise information regarding the offences of which he is accused, and given an opportunity of explaining his conduct and of defending himself. He shall be permitted, in particular, to call witnesses and to have recourse, if necessary, to the services of a qualified interpreter. The decision shall be announced in the presence of the accused and of a member of the Internee Committee.

The period elapsing between the time of award of a disciplinary punishment and its execution shall not exceed one month.

When an internee is awarded a further disciplinary punishment, a period of at least three days shall elapse between the execution of any two of the punishments, if the duration of one of these is ten days or more.

A record of disciplinary punishments shall be maintained by the commandant of the place of internment and shall be open to inspection by representatives of the Protecting Power. (GC, art. 123.)

### 331. Premises for Disciplinary Punishments

Internees shall not in any case be transferred to penitentiary establishments (prisons, penitentiaries, convict prisons, etc.) to undergo punishment therein.

The premises in which disciplinary punishments are undergone shall conform to sanitary requirements; they shall in particular be provided with adequate bedding. Internees undergoing pun-

ishment shall be enabled to keep themselves in a state of cleanliness.

Women internees undergoing disciplinary punishment shall be confined in separate quarters from male internees and shall be under the immediate supervision of women. (*GC, art. 124.*)

### 332. Essential Safeguards

Internees awarded disciplinary punishment shall be allowed to exercise and to stay in the open air at least two hours daily.

They shall be allowed, if they so request, to be present at the daily medical inspections. They shall receive the attention which their state of health requires and, if necessary, shall be removed to the infirmary of the place of internment or to a hospital.

They shall have permission to read and write, likewise to send and receive letters. Parcels and remittances of money, however, may be withheld from them until the completion of their punishment; such consignments shall meanwhile be entrusted to the Internee Committee, who will hand over to the infirmary the perishable goods contained in the parcels.

No internee given a disciplinary punishment may be deprived of the benefit of the provisions of Articles 107 and 143 of the Present Convention. (*GC, art. 125.*)

### 333. Provisions Applicable to Judicial Proceedings

The provisions of Articles 71 to 76 inclusive shall apply, by analogy, to proceedings against internees who are in the national territory of the Detaining Power (*GC, art. 126.*)

### 334 Transfers: Conditions

The transfer of internees shall always be effected humanely. As a general rule, it shall be carried out by rail or other means of transport, and under conditions at least equal to those obtaining for the forces of the Detaining Power in their changes of station. If, as an exceptional measure, such removals have to be effected on foot, they may not take place unless the internees are in a fit state of health, and may not in any case expose them to excessive fatigue

The Detaining Power shall supply internees during transfer with drinking water and food sufficient in quantity, quality and variety to maintain them in good health, and also with the necessary clothing, adequate shelter and the necessary medical attention. The Detaining Power shall take all suitable precautions to ensure their safety during transfer, and shall establish before their departure a complete list of all internees transferred.

Sick, wounded or infirm internees and maternity cases shall not be transferred if the journey would be seriously detrimental to them, unless their safety imperatively so demands.

If the combat zone draws close to a place of internment, the internees in the said place shall not be transferred unless their removal can be carried out in adequate conditions of safety, or unless they are exposed to greater risks by remaining on the spot than by being transferred.

When making decisions regarding the transfer of internees, the Detaining Power shall take their interests into account and, in particular, shall not do anything to increase the difficulties of repatriating them or returning them to their own homes. (GC, art. 127.)

### 335. Transfers: Method

In the event of transfer, internees shall be officially advised of their departure and of their new postal address. Such notification shall be given in time for them to pack their luggage and inform their next of kin.

They shall be allowed to take with them their personal effects, and the correspondence and parcels which have arrived for them. The weight of such baggage may be limited if the conditions of transfer so require but in no case to less than twenty-five kilograms per internee [55 pounds]

Mail and parcels addressed to their former place of internment shall be forwarded to them without delay.

The commandant of the place of internment shall take, in agreement with the Internee Committee, any measures needed to ensure the transport of the internees' community property and of the luggage the internees are unable to take with them in consequence of restrictions imposed by virtue of the second paragraph. (GC, art. 128.)

### 336. Wills and Death Certificates

The wills of internees shall be received for safe-keeping by the responsible authorities, and in the event of the death of an internee his will shall be transmitted without delay to a person whom he has previously designated

Deaths of internees shall be certified in every case by a doctor, and a death certificate shall be made out, showing the causes of death and the conditions under which it occurred.

An official record of the death, duly registered, shall be drawn up in accordance with the procedure relating thereto in force in the territory where the place of internment is situated, and a duly certified copy of such record shall be transmitted without

delay to the Protecting Power as well as to the Central Agency referred to in Article 140. (GC, art 129.)

### 337. Burial and Cremation

The detaining authorities shall ensure that internees who die while interned are honorably buried, if possible according to the rites of the religion to which they belonged, and that their graves are respected, properly maintained, and marked in such a way that they can always be recognized.

Deceased internees shall be buried in individual graves unless unavoidable circumstances require the use of collective graves. Bodies may be cremated only for imperative reasons of hygiene on account of the religion of the deceased or in accordance with his expressed wish to this effect. In case of cremation, the fact shall be stated and the reasons given in the death certificate of the deceased. The ashes shall be retained for safe-keeping by the detaining authorities and shall be transferred as soon as possible to the next of kin on their request.

As soon as circumstances permit, and not later than the close of hostilities, the Detaining Power shall forward Mite of graves of deceased internees to the Powers on whom the deceased internees depended, through the Information Bureaux provided for in Article: 136. Such lists shall include all particulars necessary for the identification of the deceased internees, as well as the exact location of their graves. (GC, art 130.)

### 338. Internees Killed or Injured in Special Circumstances

#### *a Treaty Provision*

Every death or serious injury of an internee, caused or suspected to have been caused by a sentry, another internee or any other person, as well as any death the cause of which is unknown, shall be immediately followed by an official inquiry by the Detaining Power.

A communication on this subject shall be sent immediately to the Protecting Power. The evidence of any witnesses shall be taken, and a report including such evidence shall be prepared and forwarded to the said Protecting Power.

If the enquiry indicates the guilt of one or more persons, the Detaining Power shall take all necessary steps to ensure the prosecution of the person or persons responsible. (GC, art. 131.)

*b Criminal Prosecution* If a criminal prosecution is undertaken on the facts revealed on preliminary investigation, there need not be any other official inquiry.

**339. Release, Repatriation, and Accommodation in Neutral Countries  
During Hostilities or Occupation**

Each interned person shall be released by the Detaining Power as soon as the reasons which necessitated his internment no longer exist.

The Parties to the conflict shall, moreover, endeavour during the course of hostilities, to conclude agreements for the release, the repatriation, the return to places of residence or the accommodation in a neutral country of certain classes of internees, in particular children, pregnant women and mothers with infants and young children, wounded and sick, and internees who have been detained for a long time. (*GC, art. 132.*)

**340. Release, Repatriation and Accommodation in Neutral Countries  
After the Close of Hostilities**

Internment shall cease as soon as possible after the close of hostilities.

Internees in the territory of a Party to the conflict against whom penal proceedings are pending for offences not exclusively subject to disciplinary penalties may be detained until the close of such proceedings and, if circumstances require, until the completion of the penalty. The same shall apply to internees who have been previously sentenced to a punishment depriving them of liberty.

By agreement between the Detaining Power and the Powers concerned, committees may be set up after the close of hostilities, or of the occupation of territories, to search for dispersed internees. (*GC, art 133*)

**341. Repatriation and Return to Last Place of Residence**

The High Contracting Parties shall endeavour, upon the close of hostilities or occupation, to ensure the return of all internees to their last place of residence, or to facilitate their repatriation. (*GC, art 134.*)

**342. Costs**

The Detaining Power shall bear the expense of returning released internees to the places where they were residing when interned, or, if it took them into custody while they were in transit or on the high seas, the cost of completing their journey or of their return to their point of departure

Where a Detaining Power refuses permission to reside in its territory to a released internee who previously had his permanent domicile therein, such Detaining Power shall pay the cost of the said internee's repatriation. If, however, the internee elects to return to his country on his own responsibility or in obedience to the

Government of the Power to which he owes allegiance, the Detaining Power need not pay the expenses of his journey beyond the point of his departure from its territory. The Detaining Power need not pay the costs of repatriation of an internee who was interned at his own request.

If internees are transferred in accordance with Article 45, the transferring and receiving Powers shall agree on the portion of the above costs to be borne by each.

The foregoing shall not prejudice such special agreements as may be concluded between Parties to the conflict concerning the exchange and repatriation of their nationals in enemy hands. *(GC, art. 135.)*

#### Section VI. INFORMATION BUREAUS, CENTRAL AGENCY, AND RELIEF SOCIETIES

##### 343. National Bureaus

Upon the outbreak of a conflict and in all cases of occupation, each of the Parties to the conflict shall establish an official Information Bureau responsible for receiving and transmitting information in respect of the protected persons who are in its power.

Each of the parties to the conflict shall, within the shortest possible period, give its Bureau information of any measure taken by it concerning any protected persons who are kept in custody for more than two weeks, who are subjected to assigned residence or who are interned. It shall, furthermore, require its various departments concerned with such matters to provide the aforesaid Bureau promptly with information concerning all changes pertaining to these protected persons, as, for example, transfers, releases, repatriations, escapes, admittances to hospitals, births, and deaths. *(GC, art 136)*

##### 344. Transmission of Information

Each national Bureau shall immediately forward information concerning protected persons by the most rapid means to the Powers of whom the aforesaid persons are nationals, or to Powers in whose territory they resided, through the intermediary of the Protecting Powers and likewise through the Central Agency provided for in Article 140. The Bureaus shall also reply to all enquiries which may be received regarding protected persons.

Information Bureaus shall transmit information concerning a protected person unless its transmission might be detrimental to the person concerned or to his or her relatives. Even in such a case, the information may not be withheld from the Central Agency which, upon being notified of the circumstances, will take the necessary precautions indicated in Article 140.



All communications in writing made by any Bureau shall be authenticated by a signature or a seal. (*GC, art. 137.*)

#### 345. Particulars Required

The information received by the national Bureau and transmitted by it shall be of such a character as to make it possible to identify the protected person exactly and to advise his next of kin quickly. The information in respect of each person shall include at least his surname, first names, place and date of birth, nationality, last residence and distinguishing characteristics, the first name of the father and the maiden name of the mother, the date, place and nature of the action taken with regard to the individual, the address at which correspondence may be sent to him and the name and address of the person to be informed.

Likewise, information regarding the state of health of internees who are seriously ill or seriously wounded shall be supplied regularly and if possible every week. (*GC, art. 138.*)

#### 346. Forwarding of Personal Valuables

Each national Information Bureau shall, furthermore be responsible for collecting all personal valuables left by protected persons mentioned in Article 136, in particular those who have been repatriated or released, or who have escaped or died; it shall forward the said valuables to those concerned, either direct, or, if necessary, through the Central Agency. Such articles shall be sent by the Bureau in sealed packets which shall be accompanied by statements giving clear and full identity particulars of the person to whom the articles belonged, and by a complete list of the contents of the parcel. Detailed records shall be maintained of the receipt and despatch of all such valuables. (*GC, art. 139*)

#### 347. Central Agency

A Central Information Agency for protected persons, in particular for internees, shall be created in a neutral country. The International Committee of the Red Cross shall, if it deems necessary, propose to the Powers concerned the organization of such an Agency, which may be the same as that provided for in Article 123 of the Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of August 12, 1949

The function of the Agency shall be to collect all information of the type set forth in Article 136 which it may obtain through official or private channels and to transmit it as rapidly as possible to the countries of origin or of residence of the persons concerned, except in cases where such transmissions might be detrimental to the persons whom the said information concerns, or to

their relatives. It shall receive from the Parties to the conflict all reasonable facilities for effecting such transmissions.

The High Contracting Parties, and in particular those whose nationals benefit by the services of the Central Agency, are requested to give the said Agency the financial aid it may require.

*The foregoing provisions shall in no way be interpreted as restricting the humanitarian activities of the International Committee of the Red Cross and of the relief societies described in Article 142. (GC, art. 140)*

#### 348. Exemption From Charges

The national Information Bureau and the Central Information Agency shall enjoy free postage for all mail, likewise the exemptions provided for in Article 110, and further, so far as possible, exemption from telegraphic charges or, at least, greatly reduced rates. *(GC, art 141)*

#### 349. Relief Societies and Other Organizations

Subject to the measures which the Detaining Powers may consider essential to ensure their security or to meet any other reasonable need, the representatives of religious organizations, relief societies, or any other organizations assisting the protected persons, shall receive from these Powers, for themselves or their duly accredited agents, all facilities for visiting the protected persons, for distributing relief supplies and material from any source, intended for educational, recreational or religious purposes, or for assisting them in organizing their leisure time within the places of internment. Such societies or organizations may be constituted in the territory of the Detaining Power, or in any other country, or they may have an international character.

The Detaining Power may limit the number of societies and organizations whose delegates are allowed to carry out their activities in its territory and under its supervision, on condition, however, that such limitation shall not hinder the supply of effective and adequate relief to all protected persons.

The special position of the International Committee of the Red Cross in this field shall be recognized and respected at all times. *(GC, art 142)*

#### 350 Supervision

Representatives or delegates of the Protecting Powers shall have permission to go to all places where protected persons are, particularly to places of internment detention and work.

They shall have access to all premises occupied by protected persons and shall be able to interview the latter without witnesses, personally or through an interpreter.

Such visits may not be prohibited except for reasons of imperative military necessity, and then only as an exceptional and temporary measure. Their duration and frequency shall not be restricted.

Such representatives and delegates shall have full liberty to select the places they wish to visit. The Detaining or Occupying Power, the Protecting Power and, when occasion arises, the Power of origin of the persons to be visited, may agree that compatriots of the internees shall be permitted to participate in the visits.

The delegates of the International Committee of the Red Cross shall also enjoy the above prerogatives. The appointment of such delegates shall be submitted to the approval of the Power governing the territories where they will carry out their duties.  
(GC, art. 143)

## CHAPTER 6

### OCCUPATION

---

#### Section I. GENERAL

##### 351. Military Occupation

Territory is considered occupied when it is actually placed under the authority of the hostile army.

The occupation extends only to the territory where such authority has been established and can be exercised. (*HR, art. 42.*)

##### 352. Invasion Distinguished

a. *Nature of Invasion* If resistance is offered, the state of invasion within any portion of a belligerent's territory corresponds with the period of resistance. If the invasion is unresisted, the state of invasion lasts only until the invader has taken firm control of the area with the intention of holding it. Invasion is not necessarily occupation, although occupation is normally preceded by invasion and may frequently coincide with it. An invader may attack with naval or air forces or its troops may push rapidly through a large portion of enemy territory without establishing that effective control which is essential to the status of occupation. Small raiding parties or flying columns, reconnaissance detachments or patrols moving through an area cannot be said to occupy it. Occupation, on the other hand, is invasion plus taking firm possession of enemy territory for the purpose of holding it.

b. *Application of Law of Occupation* The rules set forth in this chapter apply of their own force only to belligerently occupied areas, but they should, as a matter of policy, be observed as far as possible in areas through which troops are passing and even on the battlefield.

##### 353. Subjugation or Conquest Distinguished

Belligerent occupation in a foreign war, being based upon the possession of enemy territory, necessarily implies that the sovereignty of the occupied territory is not vested in the occupying power. Occupation is essentially provisional.

On the other hand, subjugation or conquest implies a transfer of sovereignty, which generally takes the form of annexation and is normally effected by a treaty of peace. When sovereignty passes, belligerent occupation, as such, of course ceases, although the territory may and usually does, for a period at least, continue to be governed through military agencies.

### **354. Friendly Territory Subject to Civil Affairs Administration Distinguished**

Civil affairs administration is that form of administration established in friendly territory whereby a foreign government pursuant to an agreement, expressed or implied, with the government of the area concerned, may exercise certain authority normally the function of the local government.

Such administration is often established in areas which are freed from enemy occupation. It is normally required when the government of the area concerned is unable or unwilling to assume full responsibility for its administration. Territory subject to civil affairs administration is not considered to be occupied.

If circumstances have precluded the conclusion of a civil affairs agreement with the lawful government of allied territory recovered from enemy occupation or of other territory liberated from the enemy, military government may be established in the area as a provisional and interim measure (see par 12 b and c). A civil affairs agreement should, however, be concluded with the lawful government at the earliest possible opportunity.

### **355. Occupation as Question of Fact**

Military occupation is a question of fact. It presupposes a hostile invasion, resisted or unresisted, as a result of which the invader has rendered the invaded government incapable of publicly exercising its authority, and that the invader has successfully substituted its own authority for that of the legitimate government in the territory invaded.

### **356. Effectiveness of Occupation**

It follows from the definition that belligerent occupation must be both actual and effective, that is, the organized resistance must have been overcome and the force in possession must have taken measures to establish its authority. It is sufficient that the occupying force can, within a reasonable time, send detachments of troops to make its authority felt within the occupied district. It is immaterial whether the authority of the occupant is maintained by fixed garrisons or flying columns, whether by small or large forces, so long as the occupation is effective. The number of troops necessary to maintain effective occupation will depend on various considerations such as the disposition of the inhabitants, the number and density of the population, the nature of the terrain, and similar factors. The mere existence of a fort or defended area within the occupied district, provided the fort or defended area is under attack, does not render the occupation of the remainder of the district ineffective. Similarly, the mere existence of local resistance groups does not render the occupation ineffective.

### **357. Proclamation of Occupation**

In a strict legal sense no proclamation of military occupation is necessary. However, on account of the special relations established between the inhabitants of the occupied territory and the occupant by virtue of the presence of the occupying forces, the fact of military occupation, with the extent of territory affected, should be made known. The practice of the United States is to make this fact known by proclamation.

### **358. Occupation Does Not Transfer Sovereignty**

Being an incident of war, military occupation confers upon the invading force the means of exercising control for the period of occupation. It does not transfer the sovereignty to the occupant, but simply the authority or power to exercise some of the rights of sovereignty. The exercise of these rights results from the established power of the occupant and from the necessity of maintaining law and order, indispensable both to the inhabitants and to the occupying force.

It is therefore unlawful for a belligerent occupant to annex occupied territory or to create a new State therein while hostilities are still in progress (See *GC*, art 47; par 365 herein)

### **359. Oath of Allegiance Forbidden**

**It is forbidden to compel the inhabitants of occupied territory to swear allegiance to the hostile Power. (*HR*, art. 45.)**

### **360. Maintenance of Occupation**

Occupation, to be effective, must be maintained. In case the occupant evacuates the district or is driven out by the enemy, the occupation ceases. It does not cease, however, if the occupant, after establishing its authority, moves forward against the enemy, leaving a smaller force to administer the affairs of the district. Nor does the existence of a rebellion or the activity of guerrilla or para-military units of itself cause the occupation to cease, provided the occupant could at any time it desired assume physical control of any part of the territory. If, however, the power of the occupant is effectively displaced for any length of time, its position towards the inhabitants is the same as before occupation.

### **361. Termination of Occupation**

The law of belligerent occupation generally ceases to be applicable under the conditions set forth in paragraphs 353 and 360. However, with respect to the provisions of *GC* alone, Article 6 of that Convention provides

**In the case of occupied territory, the application of the present Convention shall cease one year after the general close of military operations; however, the Occupying Power shall be**

**bound, for the duration of the occupation, to the extent that such Power exercises the functions of government in such territory, by the provisions of the following Articles of the present Convention; 1 to 12, 27, 29 to 34, 47, 49, 51, 52, 53, 59, 61 to 77, 143.**

**Protected persons whose release, repatriation or re-establishment may take place after such dates shall meanwhile continue to benefit by the present Convention. (GC, art. 6, 3d and 4th pars.)**

## **Section II. ADMINISTRATION OF OCCUPIED TERRITORY**

### **362. Necessity for Military Government**

**Military government is the form of administration by which an occupying power exercises governmental authority over occupied territory. The necessity for such government arises from the failure or inability of the legitimate government to exercise its functions on account of the military occupation, or the undesirability of allowing it to do so. (See par. 12, which discusses military government, and par 354, dealing with civil affairs administration.)**

### **363. Duty to Restore and Maintain Public Order**

**The authority of the legitimate power having in fact passed into the hands of the occupant, the latter shall take all the measures in his power to restore, and ensure, as far as possible, public order and safety, while respecting, unless absolutely prevented, the laws in force in the country (HR, art. 43.)**

### **364 Occupation Costs**

**The economy of an occupied country can only be required to bear the expenses of the occupation, and these should not be greater than the economy of the country can reasonably be expected to bear.**

### **365. Inviolability of Rights**

**Protected persons who are in occupied territory shall not be deprived, in any case or in any manner whatsoever, of the benefits of the present Convention by any change introduced, as the result of the occupation of a territory, into the institutions or government of the said territory, nor by any agreement concluded between the authorities of the occupied territories and the Occupying Power, nor by any annexation by the latter of the whole or part of the occupied territory. (GC, art 47.)**

### **366. Local Governments Under Duress and Puppet Governments**

**The restrictions placed upon the authority of a belligerent government cannot be avoided by a system of using a puppet government, central or local, to carry out acts which would be unlawful if performed directly by the occupant. Acts induced or compelled by the occupant are nonetheless its acts**

### 367. Functions of Government

a. *Paramount Authority of Occupant.* The functions of the hostile government—whether of a general, provincial, or local character—continue only to the extent they are sanctioned by the occupant.

b. *Functions of Local Government.* The occupant may, while retaining its paramount authority, permit the government of the country to perform some or all of its normal functions. It may, for example, call upon the local authorities to administer designated rear areas, subject to the guidance and direction of the occupying power. Such action is consistent with the status of occupation, so long as there exists the firm possession and the purpose to maintain paramount authority.

### 368. Nature of Government

It is immaterial whether the government over an enemy's territory consists in a military or civil or mixed administration. Its character is the same and the source of its authority the same. It is a government imposed by force, and the legality of its acts is determined by the law of war.

### 369. Local Law and New Legislation

The penal laws of the occupied territory shall remain in force, with the exception that they may be repealed or suspended by the Occupying Power in cases where they constitute a threat to its security or an obstacle to the application of the present Convention. Subject to the latter consideration and to the necessity for ensuring the effective administration of justice, the tribunals of the occupied territory shall continue to function in respect of all offences covered by the said laws.

The Occupying Power may, however, subject the population of the occupied territory to provisions which are essential to enable the Occupying Power to fulfil its obligation under the present Convention, to maintain the orderly government of the territory, and to ensure the security of the Occupying Power, of the members and property of the occupying forces or administration, and likewise of the establishments and lines of communication used by them. (*GC, art 64*)

### 370. Laws in Force

In restoring public order and safety, the occupant will continue in force the ordinary civil and penal (criminal) laws of the occupied territory except to the extent it may be authorized by Article 64, *GC* (par 369), and Article 43, *HR* (par 363), to alter, suspend, or repeal such laws (see also *HR art 23 (h)*, par. 372 herein, and *GC, art 51, par 418* herein). These laws will be administered by the local officials as far as practicable. Crimes not of a military nature and not



affecting the occupant's security are normally left to the jurisdiction of the local courts

### **371. Nature of Laws Suspended or Repealed**

The occupant may alter, repeal, or suspend laws of the following types

a. Legislation constituting a threat to its security, such as laws relating to recruitment and the bearing of arms.

b. Legislation dealing with political process, such as laws regarding the rights of suffrage and of assembly.

c. Legislation the enforcement of which would be inconsistent with the duties of the occupant, such as laws establishing racial discrimination

### **372. Prohibition as to Rights and Rights of Action**

It is especially forbidden \* \* \* to declare abolished, suspended, or inadmissible in a court of law the rights and actions of the nationals of the hostile party. (*HR, art. 23, par. (h)*)

### **373. Suspension of Ordinary Courts**

The ordinary courts of justice should be suspended only if:

a. Judges and magistrates abstain from fulfilling their functions (see *GC, art 54; par 422* herein); or

b. The courts are corrupt or unfairly constituted; or

c. Local judicial administration has collapsed during the hostilities preceding the occupation and the occupant must set up its own courts to ensure that offenses against the local laws are properly tried.

In such cases, the occupant may establish courts of its own and make this measure known to the inhabitants

### **374. Immunity of Occupation Personnel From Local Law**

Military and civilian personnel of the occupying forces and occupation administration and persons accompanying them are not subject to the local law or to the jurisdiction of the local courts of the occupied territory unless expressly made subject thereto by a competent officer of the occupying forces or occupation administration. The occupant should see to it that an appropriate system of substantive law applies to such persons and that tribunals are in existence to deal with civil litigation to which they are parties and with offenses committed by them

### **375. Freedom of Movement**

The occupant may withdraw from individuals the right to change their residence, restrict freedom of internal movement, forbid visits to certain districts, prohibit emigration and immigration (but see *GC, art 48; par 381* herein), and require that all individuals carry identification documents

### 376. Commercial Restrictions

The occupant has the right to regulate commercial intercourse in the occupied territory. It may subject such intercourse to such prohibitions and restrictions as are essential to the purposes of the occupation. The commander of the occupying forces will usually find it advisable to forbid intercourse between the occupied territory and the territory still in the possession of the enemy.

### 377. Censorship

The belligerent occupant may establish censorship of the press, radio, theater, motion pictures, and television, of correspondence, and of all other means of communication. It may prohibit entirely the publication of newspapers or prescribe regulations for their publication and circulation. The occupant is not required to furnish facilities for postal service, but may take charge of them itself, especially if the officials of the occupied district fail to act or to obey its orders.

### 378. Means of Transportation

The belligerent occupant exercises authority over all means of transportation, both public and private, within the occupied district, and may seize them and regulate their operation.

## Section III. RIGHTS OF THE POPULATION OF OCCUPIED TERRITORY

### 379. Other Provisions of Law

Articles 27-34, *GC* (pars 266-273), apply to occupied territory and should be read together with the provisions of this section.

### 380. Respect for Human Rights

Family honour and rights, the lives of persons, and private property, as well as religious convictions and practice, must be respected. (*HR*, art 46, 1st par.)

### 381. Special Cases of Repatriation

Protected persons who are not nationals of the Power whose territory is occupied, may avail themselves of the right to leave the territory subject to the provisions of Article 35, and decisions thereon shall be taken according to the procedure which the Occupying Power shall establish in accordance with the said Article. (*GC*, art. 48.)

### 382. Deportations, Transfers, Evacuations

Individual or mass forcible transfers, as well as deportations of protected persons from occupied territory to the territory of the Occupying Power or to that of any other country, occupied or not, are prohibited, regardless of their motive.

Nevertheless, the Occupying Power may undertake total or partial evacuation of a given area if the security of the population or imperative military reasons so demand. Such evacuations may not involve the displacement of protected persons outside the bounds of the occupied territory except when for material reasons it is impossible to avoid such displacement. Persons thus evacuated shall be transferred back to their homes as soon as hostilities in the area in question have ceased.

The Occupying Power undertaking such transfers or evacuations shall ensure, to the greatest practicable extent, that proper accommodation is provided to receive the protected persons, that the removals are effected in satisfactory conditions of hygiene, health, safety and nutrition, and that members of the same family are not separated.

The Protecting Power shall be informed of any transfers and evacuations as soon as they have taken place.

The Occupying Power shall not detain protected persons in an area particularly exposed to the dangers of war unless the security of the population or imperative military reasons so demand.

The Occupying Power shall not deport or transfer parts of its own civilian population into the territory it occupies (*GC, art. 49.*)

### 383. Children

The Occupying Power shall, with the cooperation of the national and local authorities, facilitate the proper working of all institutions devoted to the care and education of children.

The Occupying Power shall take all necessary steps to facilitate the identification of children and the registration of their parentage. It may not, in any case, change their personal status, nor enlist them in formations or organizations subordinate to it.

Should the local institutions be inadequate for the purpose, the Occupying Power shall make arrangements for the maintenance and education, if possible by persons of their own nationality, language and religion, of children who are orphaned or separated from their parents as a result of the war and who cannot be adequately cared for by a near relative or friend.

A special section of the Bureau setup in accordance with Article 136 shall be responsible for taking all necessary steps to identify children whose identity is in doubt. Particulars of their parents or other near relatives should always be recorded if available.

The Occupying Power shall not hinder the application of any preferential measures in regard to food, medical care and protection against the effects of war, which may have been adopted prior to the occupation in favour of children under fifteen years, ex-

pectant mothers, and mothers of children under seven years.  
(GC, art. 50.)

#### 384. Food and Medical Supplies for the Population

##### *a Treaty Provision*

To the fullest extent of the means available to it, the Occupying Power has the duty of ensuring the food and medical supplies of the population; it should, in particular, bring in the necessary foodstuffs, medical stores and other articles if the resources of the occupied territory are inadequate.

\* \* \* \* \*

The Protecting Power shall, at any time, be at liberty to verify the state of the food and medical supplies in occupied territories, except where temporary restrictions are made necessary by imperative military requirements (GC, art. 55, 1st and 3d pars.)

*b. Other Articles To Be Supplied* The other articles which the occupant is required to provide under the above provision include all urgently required goods which may be essential to the life of the territory

#### 385. Hygiene and Public Health

To the fullest extent of the means available to it, the Occupying Power has the duty of ensuring and maintaining, with the cooperation of national and local authorities, the medical and hospital establishments and services, public health and hygiene in the occupied territory, with particular reference to the adoption and application of the prophylactic and preventive measures necessary to combat the spread of contagious diseases and epidemics. Medical personnel of all categories shall be allowed to carry out their duties

If new hospitals are setup in occupied territory and if the competent organs of the occupied State are not operating there, the occupying authorities shall, if necessary, grant them the recognition provided for in Article 18. In similar circumstances, the occupying authorities shall also grant recognition to hospital personnel and transport vehicles under the provisions of Articles 20 and 21.

In adopting measures of health and hygiene and in their implementation, the Occupying Power shall take into consideration the moral and ethical susceptibilities of the population of the occupied territory. (GC, art 56)

#### 386. Requisition of Hospitals

The Occupying Power may requisition civilian hospitals only temporarily and only in cases of urgent necessity for the care of military wounded and sick, and then on condition that suitable

arrangements are made in due time for the care and treatment of the patients and for the needs of the civilian population for hospital accommodation.

The material and stores of civilian hospitals cannot be requisitioned so long as they are necessary for the needs of the civilian population. *(GC, art. 57.)*

#### 387. Spiritual Assistance

The Occupying Power shall permit ministers of religion to give spiritual assistance to the members of their religious communities.

The Occupying Power shall also accept consignments of books and articles required for religious needs and shall facilitate their distribution in occupied territory. *(GC, art. 58.)*

### Section IV. RELIEF

#### 388. Collective Relief

If the whole or part of the population of an occupied territory is inadequately supplied, the Occupying Power shall agree to relief schemes on behalf of the said population, and shall facilitate them by all the means at its disposal.

Such schemes, which may be undertaken either by States or by impartial humanitarian organizations such as the International Committee of the Red Cross, shall consist, in particular, of the provision of consignments of foodstuffs, medical supplies and clothing.

All Contracting Parties shall permit the free passage of these consignments and shall guarantee their protection.

A Power granting free passage to consignments on their way to territory occupied by an adverse Party to the conflict shall, however, have the right to search the consignments, to regulate their passage according to prescribed times and routes, and to be reasonably satisfied through the Protecting Power that these consignments are to be used for the relief of the needy population and are not to be used for the benefit of the Occupying Power. *(GC, art. 59.)*

#### 389. Responsibilities of the Occupying Power

Relief consignments shall in no way relieve the Occupying Power of any of its responsibilities under Articles 55, 56 and 59. The Occupying Power shall in no way whatsoever divert relief consignments from the purpose for which they are intended, except in cases of urgent necessity, in the interests of the population of the occupied territory and with the consent of the Protecting Power. *(GC, art. 60.)*

### 390. Distribution

The distribution of the relief consignments referred to in the foregoing Articles shall be carried out with the cooperation and under the supervision of the Protecting Power. This duty may also be delegated, by agreement between the Occupying Power and the Protecting Power, to a neutral Power, to the International Committee of the Red Cross or to any other impartial humanitarian body.

Such consignments shall be exempt in occupied territory from all charges, taxes or customs duties unless these are necessary in the interests of the economy of the territory. The Occupying Power shall facilitate the rapid distribution of these consignments.

All Contracting Parties shall endeavour to permit the transit and transport, free of charge, of such relief consignments on their way to occupied territories. (*GC, art 61.*)

### 391. Individual Relief

Subject to imperative reasons of security, protected persons in occupied territories shall be permitted to receive the individual relief consignments sent to them. (*GC, art. 62*)

### 392. National Red Cross and Other Relief Societies

Subject to temporary and exceptional measures imposed for urgent reasons of security by the Occupying Power:

- (a) recognized National Red Cross (Red Crescent, Red Lion and Sun) Societies shall be able to pursue their activities in accordance with Red Cross principles, as defined by the International Red Cross Conferences Other relief societies shall be permitted to continue their humanitarian activities under similar conditions;
- (b) the Occupying Power may not require any changes in the personnel or structure of these societies, which would prejudice the aforesaid activities

The same principles shall apply to the activities and personnel of special organizations of a non-military character, which already exist or which may be established, for the purpose of ensuring the living conditions of the civilian population by the maintenance of the essential public utility services, by the distribution of relief and by the organization of rescues. (*GC, art 63*)

## Section V. TREATMENT OF ENEMY PROPERTY

### 393 Destruction and Seizure of Property

#### a. Prohibition.

It is especially forbidden \* \* \* to destroy or seize the enemy's

property, unless such destruction or seizure be imperatively demanded by the necessities of war. (HR, art. 23, par. (g).)

*b. Occupying Power.*

Any destruction by the Occupying Power of real or personal property belonging individually or collectively to private persons, or to the State, or to other public authorities or to social or cooperative organizations, is prohibited, except where such destruction is rendered absolutely necessary by military operations. (GC, art 53.)

*c. General Devastation.* See paragraph 56.

### 394. Determination Whether Property Is Public or Private

*a. Beneficial Ownership.* Under modern conditions, the distinction between public and private property is not always easy to draw. For the purpose of treatment of property under belligerent occupation, it is often necessary to look beyond strict legal title and to ascertain the character of the property on the basis of the beneficial ownership thereof. Thus, for example, trust funds, pension funds, and bank deposits generated by private persons are not to be regarded as public property simply by reason of their being held by a State-owned bank.

*b. Property of Mixed Ownership.* For the purpose of determining what type of control the occupant may exercise over property (by way of confiscation, seizure, requisition, etc.), the most cogent evidence of public character is such a complete or partial assumption by the State of the economic risk involved in the holding and management of the property in question that, the State, rather than private individuals or corporation, would be subjected to a substantial portion of the loss were the property to be appropriated for the use of the occupant. Should property which is ostensibly private be subjected to a large measure of governmental control and management or perform functions which are essentially public, these facts would tend to indicate that the property should be regarded in practice as public.

If property which is appropriated by the occupant is beneficially owned in part by the State and in part by private interests, the occupation authorities should compensate the private owners to the extent of their interest. Such compensation should bear the same relationship to the full compensation which would be paid if the property were entirely privately owned as their interest bears to the total value of the property concerned. The occupant may take what measures it deems necessary to assure that no portion of the compensation paid on account of private interests accrues to the State.

*c. Property of Unknown Ownership.* If it is unknown whether certain property is public or private, it should be treated as public property until its ownership is ascertained.

### 395. Seized Property

Valid capture or seizure of property requires both an intent to take such action and a physical act of capture or seizure. The mere presence within occupied territory of property which is subject to appropriation under international law does not operate to vest title thereto in the occupant

### 396. Title to Captured or Seized Enemy Property

Public property captured or seized from the enemy, as well as private property validly captured on the battlefield and abandoned property, is property of the United States (see *U. S. Const., Art. I, sec. 8, cl. 11*), and failure to turn over such property to the proper authorities or disposal thereof for personal profit is a violation of Article 103 of the Uniform Code of Military Justice.

### 397. Pillage

*a Treaty Provision.*

**Pillage is formally forbidden.** (*HR, art. 47*) (See also *HR, art. 28; par 47* herein; *GC, art 33, par 272* herein.)

*b Violation of military law* A member of the armed forces who before or in the presence of the enemy quits his place of duty to plunder or pillage is guilty of the offense of misbehavior before the enemy (*UCMJ, Art 99(6)*)

### 398. Private Gain by Officers and Soldiers

Neither officers nor soldiers of the United States are allowed to make use of their position or power in the hostile country for private gain, not even for commercial transactions otherwise legitimate.

### 399 Property Control

Property within occupied territory may be controlled by the occupant to the degree necessary to prevent its use by or for the benefit of the hostile forces or in a manner harmful to the occupant. Conservators may be appointed to manage the property of absent persons (including nationals of the United States and of friendly States) and of internees, property managed by such persons, and property of persons whose activities are deemed to be prejudicial to the occupant. However, when the owners or managers of such property are again able to resume control of their property and the risk of its hostile use no longer exists, it must be returned to them

Measures of property control must not extend to confiscation. However, the authority of the occupant to impose such controls does not limit its power to seize or requisition property or take such other action with respect to it as may be authorized by other provisions of law



#### 400. Real Property of a State

The occupying State shall be regarded only as administrator and usufructuary of public buildings, real estate, forests, and agricultural estates belonging to the hostile State, and situated in the occupied country. It must safeguard the capital of these properties, and administer them in accordance with the rules of usufruct. (*HR, art. 55.*)

#### 401. State Real Property Susceptible of Direct Military Use

Real property of a State which is of direct military use, such as forts, arsenals, dockyards, magazines, barracks, railways, bridges, piers, wharves, airfields, and other military facilities, remains in the hands of the occupant until the close of the war, and may be destroyed or damaged, if deemed necessary to military operations.

#### 402. Occupant's Disposition of Real Property of a State

Real property of the enemy State which is essentially of a non-military nature, such as public buildings and offices, land, forests, parks, farms, and mines, may not be damaged or destroyed unless such destruction is rendered absolutely necessary by military operations (see Art. 53, GC; par 393 herein). The occupant does not have the right of sale or unqualified use of such property. As administrator or usufructuary he should not exercise his rights in such a wasteful and negligent manner as seriously to impair its value. He may, however, lease or utilize public lands or buildings, sell the crops, cut and sell timber, and work the mines. The term of a lease or contract should not extend beyond the conclusion of the war.

#### 403. Movable Property of a State

An army of occupation can only take possession of cash, funds, and realizable securities which are strictly the property of the State, depots of arms, means of transport, stores and supplies, and, generally, all movable property belonging to the State which may be used for operations of the war.

All appliances, whether on land, at sea, or in the air, adapted for the transmission of news, or for the transport of persons or things, exclusive of cases governed by naval laws, depots of arms, and, generally, all kinds of ammunition of war, may be seized, even if they belong to private individuals, but must be restored and compensation fixed when peace is made. (*HR, art 53.*)

#### 404. Classes of Movable Property

All movable property belonging to the State susceptible of military use may be taken possession of and utilized for the benefit of the occupant's government. Under modern conditions of warfare, a large proportion of State property may be regarded as capable of being used

for military purposes. However, movable property which is *not* susceptible of military use must be respected and cannot be appropriated.

#### 405. Municipal, Religious, Charitable, and Cultural Property

##### *a. Treaty Provision.*

The property of municipalities, that of institutions dedicated to religion, charity and education, the arts and sciences, even when State property, shall be treated as private property.

All seizure or destruction of, or wilful damage to, institutions of this character, historic monuments, works of art and science, is forbidden, and should be made the subject of legal proceedings.

*(HR, art. 56.)*

*b. Use of Such Premises.* The property included in the foregoing rule may be requisitioned in case of necessity for quartering the troops and the sick and wounded, storage of supplies and material, housing of vehicles and equipment, and generally as prescribed for private property. Such property must, however, be secured against all avoidable injury, even when located in fortified places which are subject to seizure or bombardment

*c. Religious Buildings, Shrines, and Consecrated Places.* In the practice of the United States, religious buildings, shrines, and consecrated places employed for worship are used only for aid stations, medical installations, or for the housing of wounded personnel awaiting evacuation, provided in each case that a situation of emergency requires such use

#### 406 Private Property: General

##### *a Treaty Provision*

Private property cannot be confiscated. *(HR, art. 46, 2d par.)*

*b. Prohibited Acts* The foregoing prohibition extends not only to outright taking in violation of the law of war but also to any acts which, through the use of threats, intimidation, or pressure or by actual exploitation of the power of the occupant, permanently or temporarily deprive the owner of the use of his property without his consent or without authority under international law

#### 407. Private Real Property

Immovable private enemy property may under no circumstances be seized. It may, however, be requisitioned (see par 412)

#### 408. Private Movable Property Susceptible of Direct Military Use

See Article 53, *HR* (par 403)

#### 409. Receipts

If private property is seized in conformity with the preceding paragraph, a receipt therefor should be given the owner or a record made of the nature and quantity of the property and the name of the owner

or person in possession in order that restoration and compensation may be made at the conclusion of the war

#### 410. Types of Private Property Susceptible to Direct Military Use

*a Seizure.* The rule stated in the foregoing paragraph includes everything susceptible of direct military use, such as cables, telephone and telegraph plants, radio, television, and telecommunications equipment, motor vehicles, railways, railway plants, port facilities, ships in port, barges and other watercraft, airfields, aircraft, depots of arms, whether military or sporting, documents connected with the war, all varieties of military equipment, including that in the hands of manufacturers, component parts of or material suitable only for use in the foregoing, and in general all kinds of war material

*b Destruction* The destruction of the foregoing property and all damage to the same is justifiable only if it is rendered absolutely necessary by military operations. (See *GC, art. 53; par. 393b herein.*)

#### 411. Submarine Cables

##### *a Treaty Provision*

Submarine cables connecting an occupied territory with a neutral territory shall not be seized or destroyed except in the case of absolute necessity. They must likewise be restored and compensation fixed when peace is made. (*HR, art. 54.*)

*b Application* The foregoing provision applies only to activities on land and does not deal with seizure or destruction of cables in the open sea

#### 412. Requisitions

##### *a Treaty Provision.*

Requisitions in kind and services shall not be demanded from municipalities or inhabitants except for the needs of the army of occupation. They shall be in proportion to the resources of the country, and of such a nature as not to involve the population in the obligation of taking part in operations of the war against their country.

Such requisitions and services shall only be demanded on the authority of the commander in the locality occupied.

Contributions in kind shall, as far as possible, be paid for in cash; if not, a receipt shall be given and the payment of the amount due shall be made as soon as possible. (*HR, art. 52.*)

*b What May Be Requisitioned* Practically everything may be requisitioned under this article that is necessary for the maintenance of the army, such as fuel, food, clothing, building materials, machinery, tools, vehicles, furnishings for quarters, etc. Billeting of troops in occupied areas is also authorized

#### **413. Requisitioning of Foodstuffs and Medical Supplies**

The Occupying Power may not requisition foodstuffs, articles or medical supplies available in the occupied territory, except for use by the occupation forces and administration personnel, and then only if the requirements of the civilian population have been taken into account. Subject to the provisions of other international Conventions, the Occupying Power shall make arrangements to ensure that fair value is paid for any requisitioned goods. (*GC, art. 55, 2d par.*)

#### **414. Requisition of Hospitals**

See Article 57, *GC* (par. 386).

#### **415. Method of Requisitioning**

Requisitions must be made under the authority of the commander in the locality. No prescribed method is fixed, but if practicable requisitions should be accomplished through the local authorities by systematic collection in bulk. They may be made direct by detachments if local authorities fail or if circumstances preclude resort to such authorities.

#### **416. Prices and Compensation for Requisitioned Articles and Services**

The prices of articles and services requisitioned will be fixed by agreement if possible, otherwise by military authority. Receipts should be taken up and compensation paid promptly.

#### **417. Method of Enforcing Requisition**

Coercive measures will be limited to the amount and kind necessary to secure the articles requisitioned.

### **Section VI. SERVICES OF INHABITANTS AND OF OFFICIALS**

#### **418. Labor of Protected Persons**

The Occupying Power may not compel protected persons to serve in its armed or auxiliary forces. No pressure or propaganda which aims at securing voluntary enlistment is permitted.

The Occupying Power may not compel protected persons to work unless they are over eighteen years of age, and then only on work which is necessary either for the needs of the army of occupation or for the public utility services, or for the feeding, sheltering, clothing, transportation or health of the population of the occupied country. Protected persons may not be compelled to undertake any work which would involve them in the obligation of taking part in military operations. The Occupying Power may not compel protected persons to employ forcible means to ensure the security of the installations where they are performing compulsory labour.

The work shall be carried out only in the occupied territory where the persons whose services have been requisitioned are. Every such person shall, so far as possible, be kept in his usual place of employment. Workers shall be paid a fair wage and the work shall be proportionate to their physical and intellectual capacities. The legislation in force in the occupied country concerning working conditions, and safeguards as regards, in particular, such matters as wages, hours of work, equipment, preliminary training and compensation for occupational accidents and diseases, shall be applicable to the protected persons assigned to the work referred to in this Article.

In no case shall requisition of labour lead to a mobilization of workers in an organization of a military or semi-military character. (GC, art 51) (See also HR, art 23, 2d par.; par. 32 herein)

#### 419. Services Which May be Requisitioned

The services which may be obtained from inhabitants by requisition include those of professional men, such as engineers, physicians and nurses and of artisans and laborers, such as clerks, carpenters, butchers, bakers, and truck drivers. The officials and employees of railways, trucklines, airlines, canals, river or coastwise steamship companies, telegraph, telephone, radio, postal and similar services, gas, electric, and water works, and sanitary authorities, whether employed by the State or private companies, may be requisitioned to perform their professional duties only so long as the duties required do not directly concern the operations of war against their own country. The occupant may also requisition labor to restore the general condition of the public works to that of peace, including the repair of roads, bridges, and railways, and to perform services on behalf of the local population, such as the care of the wounded and sick and the burial of the dead.

#### 420. Prohibited Labor

The prohibition against forcing the inhabitants to take part in military operations against their own country precludes requisitioning their services upon works directly promoting the ends of the war, such as construction of fortifications, entrenchments, and military airfields or the transportation of supplies or ammunition in the zone of operations. There is no objection in law to their being employed voluntarily and for pay in such work.

#### 421. Protection of Workers

No contract, agreement or regulation shall impair the right of any worker, whether voluntary or not and wherever he may be,

to apply to the representatives of the Protecting Power in order to request the said Power's intervention.

All measures aiming at creating unemployment or at restricting the opportunities offered to workers in an occupied territory; in order to induce them to work for the Occupying Power, are prohibited. (GC, art. 52.)

#### 422. Judges and Public Officials

The Occupying Power may not alter the status of public officials or judges in the occupied territories, or in any way apply sanctions to or take any measures of coercion or discrimination against them, should they abstain from fulfilling their functions for reasons of conscience.

This prohibition does not prejudice the application of the second paragraph of Article 51. It does not affect the right of the Occupying Power to remove public officials from their posts. (GC, art. 54.)

#### 423. Oath of Officials

The occupant may require such officials as are continued in their offices to take an oath to perform their duties conscientiously and not to act to its prejudice. Every such official who declines to take such oath may be removed; but, whether he does so or not, he owes strict obedience to the occupant as long as he remains in office.

#### 424. Salaries of Officials

The salaries of civil officials of the hostile government who remain in the occupied territory and continue the work of their offices, especially those who can properly continue it under the circumstances arising out of the war--such as judges, administrative or police officers, officers of city or communal governments--are paid from the public revenues of the occupied territory, until the military government has reason wholly or partially to dispense with their services. Salaries or incomes connected with purely honorary titles are always suspended.

### Section VII PUBLIC FINANCE

#### 425. Taxes

##### a Treaty Provision

If, in the territory occupied, the occupant collects the taxes, dues, and tolls imposed for the benefit of the State, he shall do so, as far as is possible, in accordance with the rules of assessment and incidence in force, and shall in consequence be bound to defray the expenses of the administration of the occupied territory to the same extent as the legitimate Government was so bound. (HR, art. 48)

*b. Surplus.* The first charge upon such taxes is for the cost of the administration of the occupied territory. The balance may be used for the purposes of the occupant

#### 426. Changes in Taxes

*a. When Existing Rules May Be Disregarded.* If, due to the flight or unwillingness of the local officials, it is impracticable to follow the rules of incidence and assessment in force, then the total amount of taxes to be paid may be allotted among the districts, towns, etc., and the local authorities required to collect it.

*b. New Taxes.* Unless required to do so by considerations of public order and safety, the occupant must not create new taxes

#### 427. Taxes Collected by Local Authorities

The words "for the benefit of the State" were inserted in the foregoing article (*HR, art. 48; par. 425 herein*) to exclude local taxes, dues, and tolls collected by local authorities. The occupant may supervise the expenditure of such revenue and prevent its hostile use

#### 428. Contributions

##### *a. Treaty Provision*

**If, in addition to the taxes mentioned in the above Article, the occupant levies other money contributions in the occupied territory, this shall only be for the needs of the army or of the administration of the territory in question. (*HR, art. 49.*)**

*b. Prohibited Purposes.* Contributions may not be levied for the enrichment of the occupant, for the payment of war expenses generally, or for other than the needs of the occupying forces and the administration of the occupied territory

#### 429. Methods of Levying Contributions

No contribution shall be collected except under a written order, and on the responsibility of a Commander-in-chief.

The collection of the said contribution shall only be effected as far as possible in accordance with the rules of assessment and incidence of the taxes in force.

For every contribution a receipt shall be given to the contributors. (*HR, art 51.*)

#### 430. Currency and Exchange Controls

The occupying power may leave the local currency of the occupied area in circulation. It is also authorized to introduce its own currency or to issue special currency for use only in the occupied area, should the introduction or issuance of such currency become necessary. The occupant may also institute exchange controls, including clearing arrangements, in order to conserve the monetary assets of the occupied territory. Such measures must not, however, be utilized to en-

rich the occupant or other-wise circumvent the restrictions placed on requisitions, contributions, seizures, and other measures dealing with property. Intentional debasement of currency by the establishment of fictitious valuation or exchange rates, or like devices, as well as failure to take reasonable steps to prevent inflation, are violative of international law

#### **431. Expropriation of Property for Local Benefit**

In order to ensure public order and safety, as required by Article 43, *HR*, (par. 363) an occupant is authorized to expropriate either public or private property solely for the benefit of the local population. The occupant is obliged, unless absolutely prevented, to respect the laws in force in the occupied area in so doing.

### **Section VIII. SECURITY OF THE OCCUPANT: PENAL LEGISLATION AND PROCEDURE**

#### **432 Enforcement of Obedience**

Subject to the restrictions imposed by international law, the occupant can demand and enforce from the inhabitants of occupied territory such obedience as may be necessary for the security of its forces, for the maintenance of law and order, and for the proper administration of the country. It is the duty of the inhabitants to carry on their ordinary peaceful pursuits, to behave in an absolutely peaceful manner, to take no part whatever in the hostilities carried on, to refrain from all injurious acts toward the troops or in respect to their operations, and to render strict obedience to the orders of the occupant. As to neutrals resident in occupied territory, see paragraphs 547-551

#### **433 Security Measures**

##### *a Treaty Provision.*

If the Occupying Power considers it necessary, for imperative reasons of security, to take safety measures concerning protected persons, it may, at the most, subject them to assigned residence or to internment.

Decisions regarding such assigned residence or internment shall be made according to a regular procedure to be prescribed by the Occupying Power in accordance with the provisions of the present Convention. This procedure shall include the right of appeal for the parties concerned. Appeals shall be decided with the least possible delay. In the event of the decision being upheld, it shall be subject to periodical review, if possible every six months, by a competent body setup by the said Power.



Protected persons made subject to assigned residence and thus required to leave their homes shall enjoy the full benefit of Article 39 of the present Convention. (GC, art 78.)

*b Function of Competent Body.* "Competent bodies" to review the internment or assigned residence of protected persons may be created with advisory functions only, leaving the final decision to a high official of the Government.

#### 434. Penal Legislation

See paragraphs 369-371, regarding penal legislation which may be repealed or suspended and legislation which may be promulgated by the occupant.

#### 435. Publication

*a. Treaty Provision*

The penal provisions enacted by the Occupying Power shall not come into force before they have been published and brought to the knowledge of the inhabitants in their own language. The effect of these penal provisions shall not be retroactive. (GC, art. 65)

*b Form of Publication* The penal provisions referred to in the foregoing article must be promulgated in written form. It is not sufficient that they be announced by radio or loudspeakers.

#### 436. Competent Courts

In case of a breach of the penal provisions promulgated by it by virtue of the second paragraph of Article 64, the Occupying Power may hand over the accused to its properly constituted, non-political military courts, on condition that the said courts sit in the occupied country. Courts of appeal shall preferably sit in the occupied country (GC, art. 66)

#### 437. Applicable Law

The courts shall apply only those provisions of law which were applicable prior to the offence, and which are in accordance with general principles of law, in particular the principle that the penalty shall be proportionate to the offence. They shall take into consideration the fact that the accused is not a national of the Occupying Power. (GC, art 67)

#### 438. Penalties

*a. Treaty Provision*

Protected persons who commit an offence which is solely intended to harm the Occupying Power, but which does not constitute an attempt on the life or limb of members of the occupying

forces or administration, nor a grave collective danger, nor seriously damage the property of the occupying forces or administration or the installations used by them, shall be liable to internment or simple imprisonment, provided the duration of such internment or imprisonment is proportionate to the offence committed. Furthermore, internment or imprisonment shall, for such offences, be the only measure adopted for depriving protected persons of liberty. The courts provided for under Article 66 of the present Convention may at their discretion convert a sentence of imprisonment to one of internment for the same period.

The penal provisions promulgated by the Occupying Power in accordance with Articles 64 and 65 may impose the death penalty on a protected person only in cases where the person is guilty of espionage, or serious acts of sabotage against the military installations of the Occupying Power or of intentional offences which have caused the death of one or more persons, provided that such offences were punishable by death under the law of the occupied territory in force before the occupation began.

The death penalty may not be pronounced against a protected person unless the attention of the court has been particularly called to the fact that since the accused is not a national of the Occupying Power, he is not bound to it by any duty of allegiance.

In any case, the death penalty may not be pronounced against a protected person who was under eighteen years of age at the time of the offence. (*GC, art 68*)

*b Reservation as to Death Penalty* The United States has reserved the right to impose the death penalty in accordance with the provisions of Article 68, 2d paragraph, without regard to whether the offenses referred to therein are punishable by death under the law of the occupied territory at the time the occupation begins

*c Other Offenses and Penalties* The foregoing article does not preclude the imposition of penalties, such as fines, not depriving the protected person of liberty. Acts in violation of the laws promulgated by the Occupying Power which are not solely intended to harm that Power, as, for example, traveling without a permit or violating exchange control regulations, are also punishable by internment or imprisonment or other penalties depriving the protected person of liberty

#### 439 Deduction From Sentences of Period Spent Under Arrest

In all cases, the duration of the period during which a protected person accused of an offence is under arrest awaiting trial or punishment shall be deducted from any period of imprisonment awarded. (*GC, art 69*)

#### 440. Offenses Committed Before Occupation

Protected persons shall not be arrested, prosecuted or convicted by the Occupying Power for acts committed or for opinions expressed before the occupation, or during a temporary interruption thereof, with the exception of breaches of the laws and customs of war.

Nationals of the occupying Power who, before the outbreak of hostilities, have sought refuge in the territory of the occupied State, shall not be arrested, prosecuted, convicted or deported from the occupied territory, except for offences committed after the outbreak of hostilities, or for offences under common law committed before the outbreak of hostilities which, according to the law of the occupied State, would have justified extradition in time of peace. (GC, art 70.)

#### 441. Penal Procedure

No sentence shall be pronounced by the competent courts of the Occupying Power except after a regular trial.

Accused persons who are prosecuted by the Occupying Power shall be promptly informed, in writing, in a language which they understand, of the particulars of the charges preferred against them, and shall be brought to trial as rapidly as possible. The Protecting Power shall be informed of all proceedings instituted by the Occupying Power against protected persons in respect of charges involving the death penalty or imprisonment for two years or more; it shall be enabled, at any time, to obtain information regarding the state of such proceedings. Furthermore, the Protecting Power shall be entitled, on request, to be furnished with all particulars of these and of any other proceedings instituted by the Occupying Power against protected persons.

The notification to the Protecting Power, as provided for in the second paragraph above, shall be sent immediately, and shall in any case reach the Protecting Power three weeks before the date of the first hearing. Unless, at the opening of the trial, evidence is submitted that the provisions of this Article are fully complied with, the trial shall not proceed. The notification shall include the following particulars:

- (a) description of the accused;
- (b) place of residence or detention;
- (c) specification of the charge or charges (with mention of the penal provisions under which it is brought);
- (d) designation of the court which will hear the case;
- (e) place and date of the first hearing. (GC, art 71)

#### 442. Right of Defense

Accused persons shall have the right to present evidence necessary to their defence and may, in particular, call witnesses. They shall have the right to be assisted by a qualified advocate or counsel of their own choice, who shall be able to visit them freely and shall enjoy the necessary facilities for preparing the defence.

Failing a choice by the accused, the Protecting Power may provide him with an advocate or counsel. When an accused person has to meet a serious charge and the Protecting Power is not functioning, the Occupying Power, subject to the consent of the accused, shall provide an advocate or counsel.

Accused persons shall, unless they freely waive such assistance, be aided by an interpreter, both during preliminary investigation and during the hearing in court. They shall have the right at any time to object to the interpreter and to ask for his replacement. (GC, art 72 )

#### 443. Right of Appeal

A convicted person shall have the right of appeal provided for by the laws applied by the court. He shall be fully informed of his right to appeal or petition and of the time limit within which he may do so.

The penal procedure provided in the present Section shall apply, as far as it is applicable, to appeals. Where the laws applied by the Court make no provision for appeals, the convicted person shall have the right to petition against the finding and sentence to the competent authority of the Occupying Power. (GC, art 73 )

#### 444. Assistance by the Protecting Power

Representatives of the Protecting Power shall have the right to attend the trial of any protected person, unless the hearing has, as an exceptional measure, to be held in camera in the interests of the security of the Occupying Power, which shall then notify the Protecting Power. A notification in respect of the date and place of trial shall be sent to the Protecting Power.

Any judgment involving a sentence of death, or imprisonment for two years or more, shall be communicated, with the relevant grounds, as rapidly as possible to the Protecting Power. The notification shall contain a reference to the notification made under Article 71, and, in the case of sentences of imprisonment, the name of the place where the sentence is to be served. A record of judgments other than those referred to above shall be kept by the court and shall be open to inspection by representatives of the Protecting Power. Any period allowed for appeal in the case of sentences involving the death penalty, or imprisonment

of two years or more, shall not run until notification of judgment has been received by the Protecting Power. (GC, art. 74.)

#### 445. Death Sentence

In no case shall persons condemned to death be deprived of the right of petition for pardon or reprieve.

No death sentence shall be carried out before the expiration of a period of at least six months from the date of receipt by the Protecting Power of the notification of the final judgment confirming such death sentence, or of an order denying pardon or reprieve.

The six months period of suspension of the death sentence herein prescribed may be reduced in individual cases in circumstances of grave emergency involving an organized threat to the security of the Occupying Power or its forces, provided always that the Protecting Power is notified of such reduction and is given reasonable time and opportunity to make representations to the competent occupying authorities in respect of such death sentences (GC, art. 76.)

#### 446. Treatment of Detainees

Protected persons accused of offences shall be detained in the occupied country, and if convicted they shall serve their sentences therein. They shall, if possible, be separated from other detainees and shall enjoy conditions of food and hygiene which will be sufficient to keep them in good health, and which will be at least equal to those obtaining in prisons in the occupied country.

They shall receive the medical attention required by their state of health.

They shall also have the right to receive any spiritual assistance which they may require.

Women shall be confined in separate quarters and shall be under the direct supervision of women.

Proper regard shall be paid to the special treatment due to minors.

Protected persons who are detained shall have the right to be visited by delegates of the Protecting Power and of the International Committee of the Red Cross, in accordance with the provisions of Article 143.

Such persons shall have the right to receive at least one relief parcel monthly. (GC, art 76 )

#### 447. Close of Occupation

Protected persons who have been accused of offences or convicted by the courts in occupied territory, shall be handed over

at the close of occupation, with the relevant records, to the authorities of the liberated territory. (*GC, art. 77.*)

**448. Penalty for Individual Acts of Inhabitants**

No general penalty, pecuniary or otherwise shall be inflicted upon the population on account of the acts of individuals for which they cannot be regarded as jointly and severally responsible. (*HR, art. 50*) (See also *GC, art. 33*; par. 272 herein.)

## CHAPTER 7

### NONHOSTILE RELATIONS OF BELLIGERENTS

---

#### Section I. GENERAL

##### 449. Nonintercourse

All intercourse between the territories occupied by belligerent armies, whether by traffic, communication, travel, or in any other way, ceases. This is the general rule to be observed without special proclamation

##### 450. Exceptions to Rule

Exceptions to this rule, whether by safe-conduct, license to trade, exchange of mails, or travel from one territory into the other, are made on behalf of individuals only with the approval of the Government or the highest military authority.

##### 451. Forms of Nonhostile Relations of Belligerents

The conduct of war and the restoration of peace require certain nonhostile relations between belligerents. These relations are conducted through parlementaires, military passports, safe-conducts, safeguards, cartels, capitulations, and armistices

##### 452. Communication Between Belligerent States and Armies

One belligerent may communicate with another directly by radio, through parlementaires, or in a conference, and indirectly through a Protecting Power, a third State other than a Protecting Power, or the International Committee of the Red Cross.

##### 453. Good Faith Essential

It is absolutely essential in all nonhostile relations that the most scrupulous good faith shall be observed by both parties, and that no advantage not intended to be given by the adversary shall be taken

#### Section II. MILITARY PASSPORTS, SAFE-CONDUCTS AND SAFEGUARDS

##### 454. General

Persons within an area occupied by a belligerent may be protected from molestation or interference through military passports, safe-conducts, and safeguards. These devices are a matter of international law only when granted or posted by arrangement with the enemy.

#### 455. Military Passport

A military passport is a document issued by order of a commander of belligerent forces, authorizing a person or persons named therein, *residing or sojourning within territory occupied by such forces*, to travel unmolested within such territory, with or without permission to pass, or to pass and return, by designated routes, through the lines, subject to such further conditions and limitations as the commander may prescribe.

#### 456. Safe-Conduct

*a General* Documents like passports, issued by the same authority and for similar purposes, to persons *residing or sojourning outside of the occupied area*, who desire to enter and remain within or pass through such areas, are called safe-conducts. Similar documents, issued by the same authority, to persons residing within or without the occupied areas, to permit them to carry specified goods to or from designated places within those areas, and to engage in trade otherwise forbidden by the general rule of nonintercourse, are also called safe-conducts. Safe-conducts for goods in which the grantee is given a continuing right for a prescribed period, or until further orders, to engage in the specified trade, are sometimes called licenses to trade.

*b Safe-Conducts for Ambassadors and Diplomatic Agents.* Ambassadors and other diplomatic agents of neutral powers, accredited to the enemy, may receive safe-conducts through the territories occupied by the belligerents, unless there are military reasons to the contrary and unless they may reach the place of their destination conveniently by another route. There is, however, no legal requirement that such safe-conducts be issued. Safe-conducts of this nature are usually given by the supreme authority of the State and not by subordinate officers.

#### 457. Safeguard

A safeguard is a detachment, guard, or detail posted by a commander for the protection of persons, places, or property of the enemy, or of a neutral. The term also includes a written order left by a commander with an enemy subject or posted upon enemy property for the protection of the individual or property concerned. It is usually directed to the succeeding commander and requests the grant of protection. The effect of a safeguard is to pledge the honor of the nation that the person or property shall be respected by the national armed forces. The violation of a safeguard is a grave violation of the law of war and, if committed by a person subject to the Uniform Code of Military Justice, is punishable under Article 102 thereof with death or such other punishment as a court-martial may direct.



Soldiers on duty as safeguards occupy a protected status. They may not be attacked, and it is customary to send them back, together with their equipment and arms, to their own army when the locality is occupied by the enemy and as soon as military exigencies permit.

### Section III. PARLEMENTAIRES

#### 458. Negotiations Between Belligerents

In the past, the normal means of initiating negotiations between belligerents has been the display of a white flag. In current practice, radio messages to the enemy and messages dropped by aircraft are becoming increasingly important as a prelude to conversations between representatives of the belligerent forces.

The white flag, when used by troops, indicates a desire to communicate with the enemy. The hoisting of a white flag has no other signification in international law. It may indicate that the party hoisting it desires to open communication with a view to an armistice or a surrender. If hoisted in action by an individual soldier or a small party, it may signify merely the surrender of that soldier or party. It is essential, therefore, to determine with reasonable certainty that the flag is shown by actual authority of the enemy commander before basing important action upon that assumption.

The enemy is not required to cease firing when a white flag is raised. To indicate that the hoisting is authorized by its commander, the appearance of the flag should be accompanied or followed promptly by a complete cessation of fire from that side. The commander authorizing the hoisting of the flag should also promptly send a parlementaire or parlementaires.

#### 459. Parlementaires

Parlementaires are agents employed by commanders of belligerent forces in the field, to go in person within the enemy lines, for the purpose of communicating or negotiating openly and directly with the enemy commander.

#### 460. Inviolability of Parlementaire

A person is regarded as a parlementaire who has been authorized by one of the belligerents to enter into communication with the other, and who advances bearing a white flag. He has a right to inviolability, as well as the trumpeter, bugler or drummer, the flag-bearer and the interpreter who may accompany him. (HR, art 32.)

#### 461. Fire Not To Be Directed on the Parlementaire

Fire should not be intentionally directed on parlementaires or those accompanying them. If, however, the parlementaires or those near them present themselves during an engagement and are killed or wounded, it furnishes no ground for complaint. It is the duty of the

parlementaire to select a propitious moment for displaying his flag, such as during the intervals of active operations, and to avoid dangerous zones by making a detour

#### 462. Credentials of Parlementaire

Parlementaires must be duly authorized in a written instrument signed by the commander of the forces

#### 463. Reception of Parlementaire

**The commander to whom a parlementaire is sent is not in all cases obliged to receive him**

**He may take all the necessary steps to prevent the parlementaire taking advantage of his mission to obtain information.**

**In case of abuse, he has the right to detain the parlementaire temporarily. (HR, art. 33.)**

#### 464. Conditions for Receipt of Parlementaire

A commander may declare the formalities and conditions upon which he will receive a parlementaire and fix the hour and place at which he must appear. The present rule is that a belligerent may not declare beforehand, even for a specified period-except in case of reprisal for abuses of the flag of truce-that he will not receive parlementaires. An unnecessary repetition of visits need not be allowed.

While within the lines of the enemy, the parlementaire must obey all instructions given him. He may be required to deliver his message to a subordinate of the commander

#### 465. Detention of Parlementaire

In addition to the right of detention for abuse of his position, a parlementaire may be detained in case he has seen anything or obtained knowledge which may be detrimental to the enemy, or if his departure would reveal information on the movement of troops. He should be detained only so long as circumstances imperatively demand, and information should be sent at once to his commander as to such detention, as well as of any other action taken against him or against his party

#### 466. Loss of Inviolability

**The parlementaire loses his rights of inviolability if it is proved in a clear and incontestable manner that he has taken advantage of his privileged position to provoke or commit an act of treachery. (HR, art. 34)**

#### 467. Abuse of Flag of Truce

It is an abuse of the flag of truce, forbidden as an improper ruse under Article 23 (f), HR (par. 52), for an enemy not to halt and cease firing while the parlementaire sent by him is advancing and being received by the other party, likewise, if the flag of truce is made

use of for the purpose of inducing the enemy to believe that a parlementaire is going to be sent when no such intention exists. It is also an abuse of a flag of truce to carry out operations under the protection accorded by the enemy to it and those accompanying it. An individual or a party acts treacherously in displaying a white flag indicative of surrender as a ruse to permit attack upon the forces of the other belligerent. An abuse of a flag of truce may authorize a resort to reprisals.

#### **468. Neutral Areas**

If it is anticipated that negotiations between belligerents may be prolonged, a neutralized area may by agreement of the parties be set aside for the site of the negotiations. The belligerents may agree that no combat activity will take place within or over the area and that forces will be detailed to maintain the security of the area. The area designated as neutral on maps interchanged by representatives of the belligerents may be marked with searchlights, balloons, and other devices to insure that it will not be attacked.

### **Section IV. CARTELS**

#### **469. Cartels**

In its narrower sense, a cartel is an agreement entered into by belligerents for the exchange of prisoners of war. In its broader sense, it is any convention concluded between belligerents for the purpose of arranging or regulating certain kinds of nonhostile intercourse otherwise prohibited by reason of the existence of the war. Both parties to a cartel are in honor bound to observe its provisions with the most scrupulous care, but it is voidable by either party upon definite proof that it has been intentionally violated in an important particular by the other party. (See par. 197.)

### **Section V. CAPITULATIONS**

#### **470. Capitulation Defined**

A capitulation is an agreement entered into between commanders of belligerent forces for the surrender of a body of troops, a fortress, or other defended locality, or of a district of the theater of operations. A surrender may be effected without resort to a capitulation.

#### **471. Military Honor in Capitulations**

Capitulations agreed upon between the contracting parties must take into account the rules of military honour.

Once settled, they must be scrupulously observed by both parties. (*HR, art. 35*)

#### **472. Powers of Commanders**

Subject to the limitations hereinafter indicated, the commander of a body of troops is presumed to be duly authorized to enter into

capitulations In the case of a commander of a military force of the United States, if continued battle has become impossible and he cannot communicate with his superiors, these facts will constitute proper authority to surrender. If a commander of military forces of the United States surrenders unnecessarily and shamefully or in violation of orders from higher authority, he is liable to trial and punishment (see *UCMJ*, Art. 99 (2)). The fact that any commander surrenders in violation of orders or the law of his own State does not impair the validity of the surrender. A commanding officer's powers do not extend beyond the forces and territory under his command. Unless so authorized by his government, he does not possess power to bind his government to a permanent cession of the place or places under his command, or to any surrender of sovereignty over territory, or to any cessation of hostilities in a district beyond his command, or to agree to terms of a political nature or such as will take effect after the termination of hostilities

#### **473. Surrenders Concluded by Political Authorities**

The surrender of a place or force may also be arranged by the political authorities of the belligerents without the intervention of the military authorities. In this case the capitulation may contain other than military stipulations

#### **474. Form of Capitulations**

There is no specified form for capitulation. They may be concluded either orally or in writing, but in order to avoid disputes, they should be reduced to writing. The agreement should contain in precise terms every condition to be observed on either side, excepting such conditions as are clearly imposed by the laws of war. Details of time and procedure should be prescribed in the most exact and unequivocal language. Even in case of an unconditional surrender, when the terms are dictated by the victor, they should nevertheless be embodied in a written capitulation as soon as practicable

#### **475. Subjects Usually Regulated**

In the capitulation (the instrument of surrender), the following subjects are usually dealt with, insofar as they are relevant to the circumstance of the particular surrender

a The force or territory which is surrendered and the exact time at which the surrender is to take effect

b Disposition of the enemy forces. A stipulation is normally included concerning the movements and administration of the surrendered force after the surrender. The provisions of the capitulation may, for example, require that the troops assemble at designated points or that they remain in their present positions. It is normally understood that the surrendered forces are to become prisoners of war. In the event both belligerents are parties to *GPW*, little or noth-

ing more on that subject need be included in the capitulation. However, special circumstances, such as inability of the victor to guard, evacuate, and maintain large numbers of prisoners of war or to occupy the area in which enemy military forces are present, may justify the victorious commander in allowing the defeated force to remain in its present positions, to withdraw, or to disperse after having been disarmed and having given their paroles, provided that the giving of paroles is not forbidden by the laws of their own country and that they are willing to give their paroles (see par, 185).

c. If a place or area is surrendered, provisions relative to the withdrawal of the defenders and the entering into possession of the victorious troops. These matters should be fixed in advance with precision.

d. Disposition of medical personnel and the wounded and sick.

e. Disposition of prisoners of war, civilian internees, and other persons held in the custody of the surrendered troops.

f. Disarmament. Normally provisions are included to govern the disposition of enemy arms, equipment, and other property in the hands of the force which has surrendered. Officers are sometimes allowed to retain their side arms in addition to the articles they are allowed to keep under Article 18, *GPW* (par. 94).

g. Prohibition of destruction by the surrendered forces of their materiel or installations, or communications, transportation facilities, and other public utilities in the area concerned.

h. The provision of facilities and of information on such matters as minefield and other defense measures.

i. The civil administration of the area concerned, if a place or area is surrendered.

j. Orders given by the victor. It is normally stipulated that the orders of the victorious commander will be scrupulously carried out by the surrendered forces and that those who fail to comply with such orders or with the terms of the surrender itself will be severely punished.

#### **476. Damage or Destruction of Property Prohibited After Surrender**

From the moment of surrender the party surrendering has no right to demolish, destroy, or injure facilities, installations, or materiel under his control, unless otherwise stipulated in the capitulation. Nothing, however, prevents a commander who intends to surrender from carrying out such destruction, provided he does so before signing the capitulation.

#### **477. Violation of Terms of a Capitulation**

Violation of the terms of a capitulation by individuals is punishable as a war crime. If the violation is directed by the commander who capitulated or by higher authority, the other belligerent may denounce

the capitulation and resume hostilities. Like action may also be taken if the capitulation was obtained through a breach of faith.

#### **478. Unconditional Surrender**

An unconditional surrender is one in which a body of troops gives itself up to its enemy without condition. It need not be effected on the basis of an instrument signed by both parties. Subject to the restrictions of the law of war, the surrendered troops are governed by the directions of the State to which they surrender.

### **Section VI. ARMISTICES**

#### **479. Definition**

An armistice (or truce, as it is sometimes called) is the cessation of active hostilities for a period agreed upon by the belligerents. It is not a partial or temporary peace, it is only the suspension of military operations to the extent agreed upon by the parties.

#### **480. Effect of Armistice**

An armistice suspends military operations by mutual agreement between the belligerent parties. If its duration is not defined, the belligerent parties may resume operations at any time, provided always that the enemy is warned within the time agreed upon, in accordance with the terms of the armistice. (*HR, art 36.*)

#### **481. Armistice No Excuse for Lack of Vigilance**

The existence of an armistice does not warrant relaxation of vigilance in the service of security and protection, or in the preparedness of troops for action, or exposing positions to the enemy.

#### **482. Kinds of Armistice**

An armistice may be general or local. The first suspends the military operations of the belligerent States everywhere; the second only between certain fractions of the belligerent armies and within a fixed radius. (*HR, art 37.*)

#### **483. General Armistices**

General armistices are usually of a combined political and military character. They usually precede the negotiations for peace, but may be concluded for other purposes. Due to its political importance, a general armistice is normally concluded by senior military officers or by diplomatic representatives or other high civilian officials. If an armistice contains political terms, it must be made under authorization from the governments concerned or subject to approval by them.

#### **484. Local Armistices**

A local armistice suspends operations between certain portions of the belligerent forces or within a designated district of the theater of operations. A local armistice may be concluded by the military

forces only, or by the naval forces only, or between a less number than all of the belligerents at war. Commanders of the forces concerned are presumed to be competent to conclude local armistices, and ratification upon the part of their governments is not required unless specially stipulated in the armistice agreement.

It is always a condition of a local armistice that a considerable part of the forces and the region of war must be included and that the cause for which it is concluded is not merely some pressing local interest, as in the case of a suspension of arms (see next paragraph), but one of a more general character, such as a general exhaustion of the opposing belligerent in one part of the theater of war.

#### 485. Suspension of Arms

A suspension of arms is a form of armistice concluded between commanders of military forces for some local military purpose, such as to bury the dead, to collect the wounded, to arrange for exchange of prisoners, or to enable a commander to communicate with his government or superior officer.

#### 486 Form of Armistice

No special form for an armistice is prescribed. It should, if possible, be reduced to writing, in order to avoid misunderstandings and for the purpose of reference should differences of opinion arise. It should be drafted with the greatest precision and with absolute clearness

#### 487. What Stipulations an Armistice Should Contain

Stipulations covering the following matters should be incorporated in an armistice

*a. Precise Date, Day, and Hour of Commencement of the Armistice.* The precise date, day, and hour for the suspension of hostilities should also be stipulated. The effective times may be different in different geographical areas. An armistice commences, in the absence of express mention to the contrary, at the moment it is signed.

*b. Duration of the Armistice.* The duration may be for a definite or indefinite period. In case it is indefinite, a belligerent may resume operations at any time after notice. The terms and manner of giving such notice should be specified. If a term is fixed and no agreement has been made for prolonging it, hostilities may be resumed without notice at the expiration of the term in the absence of positive agreement to the contrary.

*c. Principal Lines and All Other Marks or Signs Necessary To Determine the Locations of the Belligerent Troops.* For this purpose maps with the lines indicated thereon may be attached to and made part of the armistice. Provision may be included for a neutral zone between the two armies. It is usually agreed that these lines are not to be crossed or the neutral zone entered except by parlementaires or

other parties by special agreement for specified purposes, such as to bury the dead and collect the wounded

*d. Relation of the Armies With the Local Inhabitants.* If it is desired to make any change during the armistice in the relations between the opposing forces and the peaceable inhabitants, this must be accomplished by express provision. Otherwise these relations remain unchanged, each belligerent continuing to exercise the same rights as before, including the right to prevent or control all intercourse between the inhabitants within his lines and persons within the enemy lines.

*e. Acts To Be Prohibited During the Armistice.* In the absence of stipulations to the contrary, each belligerent is authorized to make movements of troops within his own lines, to receive reinforcements, to construct new fortifications, installations, and bases, to build and repair transportation and communications facilities, to seek information about the enemy, to bring up supplies and equipment, and, in general, to take advantage of the time and means at his disposal to prepare for resuming hostilities

*f. Disposition of Prisoners of War.* If it is desired that prisoners of war and civilian internees should be released or exchanged, specific provisions in this regard should be made (See *GPW, art 118; par 198* herein )

*g. Consultative Machinery* It is generally desirable to provide for the establishment of a commission, composed of representatives of the opposing forces, to supervise the implementation of the armistice agreement. Additional commissions, composed of representatives of the belligerents or of neutral powers or both, may be constituted to deal with such matters as the repatriation of prisoners of war.

#### **488. Political and Military Stipulations in General Armistices**

In addition to the provisions set forth in the preceding paragraph, general armistices normally contain a number of political and military stipulations concerning such matters as the evacuation of territory, disposition of aircraft and shipping, cooperation in the punishment of war crimes; restitution of captured or looted property, communications facilities and public utilities, civil administration, displaced persons, and the dissolution of organizations which may subvert public order

#### **489. Intercourse in Theater of Operations**

##### *a. Treaty Provision*

It rests with the contracting parties to settle, in the terms of the armistice, what communications may be held in the theatre of war with the inhabitants and between the inhabitants of one belligerent State and those of the other. (*HR, art 39*)

*b. Rule in Absence of Stipulation* If nothing is stipulated, the intercourse remains suspended, as during actual hostilities



#### 490. Notification of Armistice

**An armistice must be notified officially and in good time to the competent authorities and to the troops. Hostilities are suspended immediately after the notification, or on the date fixed.** (HR, art. 38.)

#### 491. When Binding

An armistice is binding upon the belligerents from the time of the agreed commencement, but the officers of the armies are responsible only from the time when they receive official information of its existence

#### 492. Denunciation of Armistice

**Any serious violation of the armistice by one of the parties gives the other party the right of denouncing it, and even, in cases of urgency, of recommencing hostilities immediately.** (HR, art. 40.)

#### 493. Denunciation Must Not Involve Perfidy

An armistice, like other formal agreements between belligerents, engages the honor of both parties for the exact and complete fulfillment of every obligation thereby imposed. It would be an outrageous act of perfidy for either party, without warning, to resume hostilities during the period of an armistice, with or without a formal denunciation thereof, except in case of urgency and upon convincing proof of *intentional and serious violation of its terms by the other party*. Nevertheless, under the article last above quoted, upon definite proof of such a violation of the armistice, if the delay incident to formal denunciation and warning seems likely to give the violator a substantial advantage of any kind, the other party is free to resume hostilities without warning and with or without a formal denunciation.

#### 494. Violations of Armistice by Individuals

##### *a Treaty Provision*

**A violation of the terms of the armistice by private persons acting on their own initiative only entitles the injured party to demand the punishment of the offenders or, if necessary, compensation for the losses sustained** (HR, art 41 )

*b Private Individuals Defined* A private individual, in the sense of the foregoing article, refers to any person, including a member of the armed forces, who acts on his own responsibility

*c Effect of Violation of Armistice by Individuals* Violation of the terms of an armistice by individuals is punishable as a war crime. Such violations by individual soldiers or subordinate officers do not justify denunciation of the armistice unless they are proved to have been committed with the knowledge and actual or tacit consent of their own government or commander. Consent may be inferred in the event of a persistent failure to punish such offenders

CHAPTER 8  
REMEDIES FOR VIOLATION OF INTERNATIONAL LAW; WAR  
CRIMES

---

Section I. REMEDIES AND REPRISALS

**495. Remedies of Injured Belligerent**

In the event of violation of the law of war, the injured party may legally resort to remedial action of the following types:

a Publication of the facts, with a view to influencing public opinion against the offending belligerent

b Protest and demand for compensation and/or punishment of the individual offenders. Such communications may be sent through the protecting power, a humanitarian organization performing the duties of a protecting power, or a neutral state, or by parlementaire direct to the commander of the offending forces. Article 3, *H IV*, provides in this respect

**A belligerent party which violates the provisions of the said Regulations shall, if the case demands, be liable to pay compensation. It shall be responsible for all acts committed by persons forming part of its armed forces.**

c Solicitation of the good offices, mediation, or intervention of neutral States for the purpose of making the enemy observe the law of war. See Articles 11, *GWS*, 11, *GWS Sea*, 11, *GPW*, 12, *GC* (par 19), concerning conciliation procedure through the protecting powers

d. Punishment of captured offenders as war criminals

e Reprisals

**496. Inquiry Concerning Violations of Geneva Conventions of 1949**

*GWS*, *GWS Sea*, *GPW*, and *GC* contain a common provision that—

**At the request of a Party to the conflict, an enquiry shall be instituted, in a manner to be decided between the interested Parties, concerning any alleged violation of the Convention.**

If agreement has not been reached concerning the procedure for the enquiry, the Parties should agree on the choice of an umpire who will decide upon the procedure to be followed

Once the violation has been established, the Parties to the conflict shall put an end to it and shall repress it with the least possible delay. (*GWS*, art 52, *GWS Sea*, art. 53, *GPW*, art. 132, *GC*, art 149)

#### 497. Reprisals

*a. Definition.* Reprisals are acts of retaliation in the form of conduct which would otherwise be unlawful, resorted to by one belligerent against enemy personnel or property for acts of warfare committed by the other belligerent in violation of the law of war, for the purpose of enforcing future compliance with the recognized rules of civilized warfare. For example, the employment by a belligerent of a weapon the use of which is normally precluded by the law of war would constitute a lawful reprisal for intentional mistreatment of prisoners of war held by the enemy.

*b. Priority of Other Remedies.* Other means of securing compliance with the law of war should normally be exhausted before resort is had to reprisals. This course should be pursued unless the safety of the troops requires immediate drastic action and the persons who actually committed the offenses cannot be secured. Even when appeal to the enemy for redress has failed, it may be a matter of policy to consider, before resorting to reprisals, whether the opposing forces are not more likely to be influenced by a steady adherence to the law of war on the part of their adversary.

*c. Against Whom Permitted.* Reprisals against the persons or property of prisoners of war, including the wounded and sick, and protected civilians are forbidden (*GPW, art. 13; GC, art. 33*). Collective penalties and punishment of prisoners of war and protected civilians are likewise prohibited (*GPW, art. 87; GC, art. 99*). However, reprisals may still be visited on enemy troops who have not yet fallen into the hands of the forces making the reprisals.

*d. When and How Employed.* Reprisals are never adopted merely for revenge, but only as an unavoidable last resort to induce the enemy to desist from unlawful practices. They should never be employed by individual soldiers except by direct orders of a commander, and the latter should give such orders only after careful inquiry into the alleged offense. The highest accessible military authority should be consulted unless immediate action is demanded, in which event a subordinate commander may order appropriate reprisals upon his own initiative. Ill-considered action may subsequently be found to have been wholly unjustified and will subject the responsible officer himself to punishment for a violation of the law of war. On the other hand, commanding officers must assume responsibility for retaliative measures when an unscrupulous enemy leaves no other recourse against the repetition of unlawful acts.

*e. Form of Reprisal.* The acts resorted to by way of reprisal need not conform to those complained of by the injured party, but should not be excessive or exceed the degree of violence committed by the enemy.

*f. Procedure.* The rule requiring careful inquiry into the real occurrence will always be followed unless the safety of the troops requires immediate drastic action and the persons who actually committed the offense cannot be ascertained.

*g. Hostages.* The taking of hostages is forbidden (*GC, art. 34*). The taking of prisoners by way of reprisal for acts previously committed (so-called "reprisal prisoners") is likewise forbidden (See *GC, art. 33*.)

## Section II. CRIMES UNDER INTERNATIONAL LAW

### 498. Crimes Under International Law

Any person, whether a member of the armed forces or a civilian, who commits an act which constitutes a crime under international law is responsible therefor and liable to punishment. Such offenses in connection with war comprise

- a* Crimes against peace.
- b* Crimes against humanity
- c* War crimes

Although this manual recognizes the criminal responsibility of individuals for those offenses which may comprise any of the foregoing types of crimes, members of the armed forces will normally be concerned, only with those offenses constituting "war crimes."

### 499. War Crimes

The term "war crime" is the technical expression for a violation of the law of war by any person or persons, military or civilian. Every violation of the law of war is a war crime.

### 500. Conspiracy, Incitement, Attempts, and Complicity

Conspiracy, direct incitement, and attempts to commit, as well as complicity in the commission of, crimes against peace, crimes against humanity, and war crimes are punishable.

### 501. Responsibility for Acts of Subordinates

In some cases, military commanders may be responsible for war crimes committed by subordinate members of the armed forces, or other persons subject to their control. Thus, for instance, when troops commit massacres and atrocities against the civilian population of occupied territory or against prisoners of war, the responsibility may rest not only with the actual perpetrators but also with the commander. Such a responsibility arises directly when the acts in question have been committed in pursuance of an order of the commander concerned. The commander is also responsible if he has actual knowledge, or should have knowledge, through reports received by him or through other means, that troops or other persons subject to his control are about to commit or have committed a war crime and he fails

to take the necessary and reasonable steps to insure compliance with the law of war or to punish violators thereof

#### 502. Grave Breaches of the Geneva Conventions of 1949 as War Crimes

The Geneva Conventions of 1949 define the following acts as "grave breaches," if committed against persons or property protected by the Conventions:

##### a. *GWS and GWS Sea*

Grave breaches to which the preceding Article relates shall be those involving any of the following acts, if committed against persons or property protected by the Convention: wilful killing, torture or inhuman treatment, including biological experiments, wilfully causing great suffering or serious injury to body or health, and extensive destruction and appropriation of property, not justified by military necessity and carried out unlawfully and wantonly. (*GWS, art 50; GWS Sea, art 51.*)

##### b. *GPW*

Grave breaches to which the preceding Article relates shall be those involving any of the following acts, if committed against persons or property protected by the Convention: wilful killing, torture or inhuman treatment, including biological experiments, wilfully causing great suffering or serious injury to body or health, compelling a prisoner of war to serve in the forces of the hostile Power, or wilfully depriving a prisoner of war of the rights of fair and regular trial prescribed in this Convention. (*GPW, art 130.*)

##### c. *GC*

Grave breaches to which the preceding Article relates shall be those involving any of the following acts, if committed against persons or property protected by the present Convention: wilful killing, torture or inhuman treatment, including biological experiments wilfully causing great suffering or serious injury to body or health, unlawful deportation or transfer or unlawful confinement of a protected person, compelling a protected person to serve in the forces of a hostile Power, or wilfully depriving a protected person of the rights of fair and regular trial prescribed in the present Convention, taking of hostages and extensive destruction and appropriation of property, not justified by military necessity and carried out unlawfully and wantonly. (*GC, art 147*)

#### 503. Responsibilities of the Contracting Parties

No High Contracting Party shall be allowed to absolve itself or any other High Contracting Party of any liability incurred by itself or by another High Contracting Party in respect of breaches

referred to in the preceding Article. (GWS, art. 51; GWS Sea, art. 52; GPW, art. 131; GC, art. 148.)

#### 504. Other Types of War Crimes

In addition to the "grave breaches" of the Geneva Conventions of 1949, the following acts are representative of violations of the law of war ("war crimes"):

- a. Making use of poisoned or otherwise forbidden arms or ammunition.
- b. Treacherous request for quarter
- c. Maltreatment of dead bodies
- d. Firing on localities which are undefended and without military significance
- e. Abuse of or firing on the flag of truce
- f. Misuse of the Red Cross emblem.
- g. Use of civilian clothing by troops to conceal their military character during battle
- h. Improper use of privileged buildings for military purposes
- i. Poisoning of wells or streams
- j. Pillage or purposeless destruction
- k. Compelling prisoners of war to perform prohibited labor.
- l. Killing without trial spies or other persons who have committed hostile acts
- m. Compelling civilians to perform prohibited labor
- n. Violation of surrender terms

### Section III. PUNISHMENT OF WAR CRIMES

#### 505. Trials

a. *Nature of Proceeding* Any person charged with a war crime has the right to a fair trial on the facts and law

b. *Rights of Accused* Persons accused of "grave breaches" of the Geneva Conventions of 1949 are to be tried under conditions no less favorable than those provided by Article 105 and those following (par 181 and following) of GPW (GWS, art 49, GWS Sea, art 50, GPW, art. 129, GC, art. 146, 4th par only; par 506 herein)

c. *Rights of Prisoners of War* Pursuant to Article 85, GPW (par 161), prisoners of war accused of war crimes benefit from the provisions of GPW, especially Articles 82-108 (pars 158-184)

d. *How Jurisdiction Exercised* War crimes are within the jurisdiction of general courts-martial (UCMJ, Art 18), military commissions, provost courts, military government courts, and other military tribunals (UCMJ, Art. 21) of the United States, as well as of international tribunals

e. *Law Applied* As the international law of war is part of the law of the land in the United States, enemy personnel charged with war

crimes are tried directly under international law without recourse to the statutes of the United States. However, directives declaratory of international law may be promulgated to assist such tribunals in the performance of their function (See pars. 506 and 507.)

#### 506. Suppression of War Crimes

a. *Geneva Conventions of 1949.* The Geneva Conventions of 1949 contain the following common undertakings:

The High Contracting Parties undertake to enact any legislation necessary to provide effective penal sanctions for persons committing, or ordering to be committed, any of the grave breaches of the present Convention defined in the following Article.

Each High Contracting Party shall be under the obligation to search for persons alleged to have committed, or to have ordered to be committed, such grave breaches and shall bring such persons, regardless of their nationality, before its own courts. It may also, if it prefers, and in accordance with the provisions of its own legislation, hand such persons over for trial to another High Contracting Party concerned, provided such High Contracting Party has made out a *prima facie* case.

Each High Contracting Party shall take measures necessary for the suppression of all acts contrary to the provisions of the present Convention other than the grave breaches defined in the following Article.

In all circumstances, the accused persons shall benefit by safeguards of proper trial and defence, which shall not be less favorable than those provided by Article 105 and those following of the Geneva Convention relative to the Treatment of Prisoners of War of August 12, 1949 (*GWS, art 49, GWS Sea, art 50, GPW, art 129, GC, art. 146*)

b. *Declaratory Character of Above Principles.* The principles quoted in a, above, are declaratory of the obligations of belligerents under customary international law to take measures for the punishment of war crimes committed by all persons, including members of a belligerent's own armed forces

c. *Grave Breaches* "Grave breaches" of the Geneva Conventions of 1949 and other war crimes which are committed by enemy personnel or persons associated with the enemy are tried and punished by United States tribunals as violations of international law

If committed by persons subject to United States military law, these "grave breaches" constitute acts punishable under the Uniform Code of Military Justice. Moreover, most of the acts designated as "grave breaches" are, if committed within the United States, violations of domestic law over which the civil courts can exercise jurisdiction

#### 507. Universality of Jurisdiction

*a. Victims of War Crimes* The jurisdiction of United States military tribunals in connection with war crimes is not limited to offenses committed against nationals of the United States but extends also to all offenses of this nature committed against nationals of allies and of cobelligerents and stateless persons.

*b. Persons Charged With War Crimes.* The United States normally punishes war crimes as such only if they are committed by enemy nationals or by persons serving the interests of the enemy State. Violations of the law of war committed by persons subject to the military law of the United States will usually constitute violations of the Uniform Code of Military Justice and, if so, will be prosecuted under that Code. Violations of the law of war committed within the United States by other persons will usually constitute violations of federal or state criminal law and preferably will be prosecuted under such law (see pars 505 and 506) Commanding officers of United States troops must insure that war crimes committed by members of their forces against enemy personnel are promptly and adequately punished.

#### 508. Penal Sanctions

The punishment imposed for a violation of the law of war must be proportionate to the gravity of the offense. The death penalty may be imposed for grave breaches of the law. Corporal punishment is excluded. Punishments should be deterrent, and in imposing a sentence of imprisonment it is not necessary to take into consideration the end of the war, which does not of itself limit the imprisonment to be imposed

### Section IV. DEFENSES NOT AVAILABLE

#### 509. Defense of Superior Orders

*a* The fact that the law of war has been violated pursuant to an order of a superior authority, whether military or civil, does not deprive the act in question of its character of a war crime, nor does it constitute a defense in the trial of an accused individual, unless he did not know and could not reasonably have been expected to know that the act ordered was unlawful. In all cases where the order is held not to constitute a defense to an allegation of war crime, the fact that the individual was acting pursuant to orders may be considered in mitigation of punishment

*b* In considering the question whether a superior order constitutes a valid defense, the court shall take into consideration the fact that obedience to lawful military orders is the duty of every member of the armed forces, that the latter cannot be expected, in conditions of war discipline, to weigh scrupulously the legal merits of the orders received, that certain rules of warfare may be controversial, or that an act otherwise amounting to a war crime may be done in obedience



to orders conceived as a measure of reprisal. At the same time it must be borne in mind that members of the armed forces are bound to obey only lawful orders (e. g., *UCMJ, Art 92*)

**510. Government Officials**

The fact that a person who committed an act which constitutes a war crime acted as the head of a State or as a responsible government official does not relieve him from responsibility for his act.

**511. Acts Not Punished in Domestic Law**

The fact that domestic law does not impose a penalty for an act which constitutes a crime under international law does not relieve the person who committed the act from responsibility under international law.

## CHAPTER 9 NEUTRALITY

---

### Section I. GENERAL

#### 512. Definition

Traditionally, neutrality on the part of a State not a party to the war has consisted in refraining from all participation in the war, and in preventing, tolerating, and regulating certain acts on its own part, by its nationals, and by the belligerents. It is the duty of belligerents to respect the territory and rights of neutral States.

#### 513. Neutrality Under the Charter of the United Nations

In the event of any threat to the peace, breach of the peace, or act of aggression, the Security Council of the United Nations is authorized, under Articles 39 through 42 of the Charter, to make recommendations, to call for the employment of measures short of force, or to take forcible measures to maintain or restore international peace and security. Measures short of force or force itself may also be employed in pursuance of a recommendation of the General Assembly of the United Nations. Although these provisions of the Charter have not made it impossible for a State to remain neutral, the obligations which the Charter imposes have to a certain extent qualified the right of States in this respect. For example, if a State is called upon, under Articles 42 and 43 of the Charter, to take military action against an aggressor, that State loses its *right* to remain neutral but actually loses its neutrality only to the extent that it complies with the direction of the Security Council.

A military commander in the field is obliged to respect the neutrality of third States which "are not allied with the United States in the conduct of hostilities and are not violating their duty of neutrality toward this country, except to the extent that the State concerned has expressly qualified its neutrality."

#### 514. Notification of State of War to Neutrals

*a Treaty Provisions* See Articles 2 and 3, *H III* (pars 21 and 22)

*b Proclamations of Neutrality* When war occurs, neutral States usually issue proclamations of neutrality, in which they state their determination to observe the duties of neutrality and warn their nationals of the penalties they incur for joining or assisting a belligerent.

### 515. Inviolability of Territory

#### *a. Treaty Provisions.*

**The territory of neutral Powers is inviolable.** (H. V, art. 1.)

*b. Application of Role.* The foregoing rule prohibits any unauthorized entry into the territory of a neutral State, its territorial waters, or the airspace over such areas by troops or instrumentalities of war. If harm is caused in a neutral State by the unauthorized entry of a belligerent, the offending State may be required, according to the circumstances, to respond in damages

### 516. Movements of Troops and Convoys of Supplies

**Belligerents are forbidden to move troops or convoys of either munitions of war or supplies across the territory of a neutral Power.** (H. V, art. 2)

### 517. Convoys of Munitions and Supplies

A distinction must be drawn between the official acts of the belligerent State in convoying or shipping munitions and supplies through neutral territory as part of an expedition and the shipment of such supplies by private persons. The former is forbidden while the latter is not.

### 518. Neutral State Must Prohibit Acts On Its Own Territory

**A neutral Power must not allow any of the acts referred to in Articles II to IV to occur on its territory.**

**It is not called upon to punish acts in violation of its neutrality unless the said acts have been committed on its own territory.** (H. V, art. 5.)

### 519. Resistance to Violations of Neutrality

#### *a. Treaty Provision.*

**The fact of a neutral Power resisting, even by force, attempts to violate its neutrality cannot be regarded as a hostile act.** (H. V, art. 10)

*b. Patrolling the Frontier.* In order to protect its neutrality, a State whose territory is adjacent to a theater of war normally mobilizes a portion of its forces to prevent troops of either belligerent from entering its territory, to intern such as maybe permitted to enter, and generally to carry out its duties of neutrality

### 520. Effect of Failure to Prevent Violation of Neutrality by Belligerent Troops

Should the neutral State be unable, or fail for any reason, to prevent violations of its neutrality by the troops of one belligerent entering or passing through its territory, the other belligerent may be justified in attacking the enemy forces on this territory

## 521. Offenses Against Neutrality Defined by Statute

Supplementing the rules of international law, there are certain statutes of the United States that define offenses against neutrality and prescribe penalties therefor, some of which are effective only during a war in which the United States is neutral, and others of which are effective at all times (see *18 U. S. C. 956-968, 22 U. S. C. 441-457, 461-465*). The enforcement of these statutes devolves primarily upon the civil authorities, but under certain circumstances land or naval forces may be employed for that purpose (see, e. g., *22 U. S. C. 461*).

### Section II. RECRUITING IN NEUTRAL TERRITORY

## 522. Forming Corps of Combatants and Recruiting Forbidden

### a. Treaty Provision.

Corps of combatants cannot be formed nor recruiting agencies opened on the territory of a neutral Power to assist the belligerents. (*H. V., art. 4.*)

*b Application of Rule* The establishment of recruiting agencies, the enlistment of men; the formation and organization of hostile expeditions on neutral territory, and the passage across its frontiers of organized bodies of men intending to enlist are prohibited

*c Personnel of Voluntary Aid Societies* This prohibition does not extend to medical personnel and units of a voluntary aid society duly authorized to join one of the belligerents (See *GWS, art. 27, par. 229* herein )

## 523. Responsibility as to Individuals

The responsibility of a neutral Power is not engaged by the fact of persons crossing the frontier separately to offer their services to one of the belligerents. (*H. V., art. 6*)

## 524. Single Persons and Organized Bodies

*a Individual Persons Crossing the Frontier* The prohibition in Article 4, *H. V.* (par. 522), is directed against organized bodies which only require to be armed to become an immediate fighting force. Neutral States are not required to enact legislation forbidding their nationals to join the armed forces of the belligerents. Individuals crossing the frontier singly or in small bands that are unorganized similarly create no obligation on the neutral State. The foregoing rules do not, however, permit a State professing to be neutral to send regularly constituted military units across the frontier in the guise of "volunteers" or small unorganized bands.

*b Nationals of Belligerent Not Included* Nationals of a belligerent State are permitted freely to leave neutral territory to join the armies of their country.

### Section III. SUPPLIES AND SERVICES FROM NEUTRAL TERRITORY

#### 525. Neutral Not Bound to Prevent Shipment of Supplies

A neutral Power is not called upon to prevent the export or transport, on behalf of one or other of the belligerents, of arms, munitions of war, or, in general, of anything which can be of use to an army or a fleet. (*H. V, art. 7.*)

#### 526. Obligations of Neutral State as to Supplies

Although a neutral State is not required to prohibit the shipment by private persons of supplies or munitions of war, the neutral State, as such, is prohibited from furnishing such supplies or munitions and from making loans to a belligerent. It is also forbidden to permit the use of its territory for the fitting out of hostile expeditions

#### 527. Commercial Transactions Not Prohibited

Commercial transactions with belligerents by neutral corporations, companies, citizens, or persons resident in neutral territory are not prohibited. A belligerent may purchase from such persons supplies, munitions, or anything that may be of use to an army or fleet, which can be exported or transported without involving the neutral State

#### 528 Use of Neutral Territory for Establishment of Radio and Other Communications Facilities

Belligerents are likewise forbidden:

a. To erect on the territory of a neutral Power a wireless telegraphy station or any apparatus for the purpose of communicating with belligerent forces on land or sea;

b. To use any installation of this kind established by them before the war on the territory of a neutral Power for purely military purposes, and which has not been opened for the service of public messages. (*H. V, art. 3*)

#### 529. Means of Communication

A neutral Power is not called upon to forbid or restrict the use on behalf of the belligerents of telegraph or telephone cables or of wireless telegraphy apparatus belonging to it or to Companies or private individuals (*H. V, art. 8*)

#### 530. Impartiality in Allowing Use of Communication Facilities

The liberty of a neutral State, if it so desires, to transmit messages by means of its telegraph, telephone, cable, radio, or other telecommunications facilities does not imply the power so to use them or to permit their use as to lend assistance to the belligerents on one side only

### 531. Impartiality

Every measure of restriction or prohibition taken by a neutral Power in regard to the matters referred to in Articles VII and VIII must be impartially applied by it to both belligerents.

A neutral Power must see to the same obligation being observed by Companies or private individuals owning telegraph or telephone cables or wireless telegraphy apparatus. (H. V, art. 9.)

## Section IV. INTERNMENT OF BELLIGERENT FORCES AND TENDING OF WOUNDED AND SICK IN NEUTRAL TERRITORY

### 532. Internment

A neutral Power which receives on its territory troops belonging to the belligerent armies shall intern them, as far as possible, at a distance from the theatre of war.

It may keep them in camps and even confine them in fortresses or in places set apart for this purpose.

It shall decide whether officers can be left at liberty on giving their parole not to leave the neutral territory without permission. (H. V, art. 11.)

### 533. Duty of Neutral State

A neutral is not bound to permit belligerent troops to enter its territory. On the other hand, it may permit them to do so without violating its neutrality, but the troops must be interned or confined in places designated by the neutral. They must be disarmed and appropriate measures must be taken to prevent their leaving the neutral country. In those cases in which the States concerned are parties to *GPW*, Article 4, paragraph B(2), thereof requires that such persons, provided they are otherwise entitled to be treated as prisoners of war, are, as a minimum but subject to certain exceptions, to receive the benefit of treatment as prisoners of war under *GPW* (see par. 61)

### 534. Neutral Can Impose Terms

If troops or soldiers of a belligerent are permitted to seek refuge in neutral territory, the neutral is authorized to impose the terms upon which they may do so. In case of large bodies of troops seeking refuge in neutral territory, these conditions will usually be stipulated in a convention drawn up by the representatives of the neutral power and the senior officer of the troops.

### 535. Parole by Neutral

Officers and men interned in a neutral State may in the discretion of that State be released on their parole under conditions to be prescribed by the neutral State. If such persons leave the neutral State in violation of their parole, the State in whose armed forces they serve is obliged to return them to the neutral State at its request.

### 536. Disposition of Arms, Vehicles, Equipment, etc.

The munitions, arms, vehicles, equipment, and other supplies which the interned troops are allowed to bring with them into neutral territory are likewise detained by the neutral State. They are restored to the State whose property they are at the termination of the war.

### 537. Maintenance

In the absence of a special Convention the neutral Power shall supply the interned with the food, clothing, and relief required by humanity.

At the conclusion of peace the expenses caused by the internment shall be made good. (*H V, art 12.*)

### 538. Prisoners of War

A neutral Power which receives escaped prisoners of war shall leave them at liberty. If it allows them to remain in its territory it may assign them a place of residence.

The same rule applies to prisoners of war brought by troops taking refuge in the territory of a neutral Power. (*H V, art 13.*)

### 539. Passage of Sick and Wounded

A neutral Power may authorize the passage over its territory of wounded or sick belonging to the belligerent armies, on condition that the trains bringing them shall carry neither personnel or material of war. In such a case, the neutral Power is bound to take whatever measures of safety and control are necessary for the purpose.

The wounded or sick brought under these conditions into neutral territory by one of the belligerents, and belonging to the hostile party, must be guarded by the neutral Power so as to ensure their not taking part again in the operations of the war. The same duty shall devolve on the neutral State with regard to wounded or sick of the other army who may be committed to its care. (*H V, art 14*)

### 540. Passage and Landing of Medical Aircraft

Subject to the provisions of the second paragraph, medical aircraft of Parties to the conflict may fly over the territory of neutral Powers, land on it in case of necessity, or use it as a port of call. They shall give the neutral Powers previous notice of their passage over the said territory and obey all summons to alight, on land or water. They will be immune from attack only when flying on routes, at heights and at times specifically agreed upon between the Parties to the conflict and the neutral Power concerned.

The neutral Powers may, however, place conditions or restrictions on the passage or landing of medical aircraft on their terri-

tory. Such possible conditions or restrictions shall be applied equally to all Parties to the conflict.

Unless agreed otherwise between the neutral Power and the Parties to the conflict, the wounded and sick who are disembarked, with the consent of the local authorities, on neutral territory by medical aircraft, shall be detained by the neutral Power, where so required by international law, in such a manner that they cannot again take part in operations of war. The most of their accommodation and internment shall be borne by the Power on which they depend. (*GWS, art 37.*)

#### 541. Obligations of Neutral State

The neutral power is under no obligation to permit the passage of a convoy of sick and wounded through its territory, but when such a convoy is permitted to pass, the neutral must exercise control, must see that neither personnel nor material other than that necessary for the care of the sick and wounded is carried, and generally must accord impartiality of treatment to the belligerents

#### 542. Internment of Sick and Wounded Passing Through Neutral State

The sick and wounded of a belligerent maybe carried through neutral territory to the territory of the belligerent State. If, however, they are left in the neutral's territory, they must be interned so as to insure their not taking part again in the war

#### 543. Sick and Wounded Prisoners of War Brought Into Neutral State by Captor

Sick and wounded prisoners of war brought into neutral territory by the Detaining Power as part of a convoy of evacuation granted right of passage through neutral territory may not be transported to their own country or liberated, as are prisoners of war escaping into, or brought by troops seeking asylum in neutral territory, but must be detained by the neutral power, subject to the provisions contained in paragraphs 188 through 196

#### 544 Wounded, Sick, or Shipwrecked Persons in Maritime Warfare

##### a. *Placed on a Neutral Warship or Aircraft*

If wounded, sick or shipwrecked persons are taken on board a neutral warship or a neutral military aircraft, it shall be ensured, where so required by international law, that they can take no further part in operations of war. (*GWS sea, art 15.*)

##### b. *Landed in Neutral Ports*

Wounded, sick or shipwrecked persons who are landed in neutral ports with the consent of the local authorities, shall, failing arrangements to the contrary between the neutral and the bel-



**ligerent Powers, be so guarded by the neutral Power, where so required by international law, that the said persons cannot again take part in operations of war.**

**The costs of hospital accommodation and internment shall be borne by the Power on whom the wounded, sick or shipwrecked persons depend. (*GWS sea, art. 17.*)**

#### **545. Medical Personnel**

The medical personnel and chaplains (as defined in *GWS*, art. 24, par 67 herein) belonging to belligerent forces who have sought asylum under Article 11, *H. V* (par 532), may be retained and are required to be released as prescribed in Articles 28 and 80, *GWS* (pars. 230 and 231). Medical personnel and materials necessary for the care of the sick and wounded of a convoy of evacuation, permitted to pass through neutral territory under Article 14, *H V* (par. 539), may be permitted to accompany the convoy. Subject to the provisions of Articles 28 and 80, *GWS*, the neutral State may retain the necessary medical personnel and materiel for the care of the sick and wounded left in its care. Failing this, it must furnish such personnel and materiel, and the expense thereof must be refunded by the belligerent concerned not later than at the termination of the war.

#### **546 Accommodation in Neutral Territory of the Wounded, Sick, and Prisoners of War Who Have Been Long In Captivity**

Articles 109 through 117, *GPW*, authorize parties to the conflict to conclude arrangements with neutral States for the accommodation of the seriously wounded and sick and persons who have undergone a long period of captivity. See paragraphs 188 through 196 for provisions in this regard, including direct repatriation of certain wounded and sick from the neutral country.

### **Section V. NEUTRAL PERSONS**

#### **547. Neutral Persons**

**The nationals of a State which is not taking part in the war are considered as neutrals. (*H V, art 16*)**

#### **548. Neutral Persons Resident in Occupied Territory**

Neutral persons resident in occupied territory are not entitled to claim different treatment, in general, from that accorded the other inhabitants. They must refrain from all participation in the war, from all hostile acts, and observe strictly the rules of the occupant. All nationals of neutral powers, whether resident or temporarily visiting an occupied territory, may be punished for offenses committed by them to the same extent and in the same manner as enemy nationals. (See *GC, art 4; par 247* herein, regarding the protection of neutral persons.)

#### 549. Diplomatic Agents and Consuls in Occupied Territory

Diplomatic agents of neutral States must be treated with all courtesy and must be permitted such freedom of action as it is possible to allow, with due regard to the necessities of the war. The same is true of consular personnel of neutral States, except those who are enemy nationals.

#### 550. Forfeiture of Rights by Neutral Nationals

##### *a. Treaty Provision.*

**A neutral cannot avail himself of his neutrality:**

**a. If he commits hostile acts against a belligerent.**

**b. If he commits acts in favour of a belligerent, particularly if he voluntarily enlists in the ranks of the armed force of one of the parties.**

In such a case, the neutral shall not be more severely treated by the belligerent as against whom he has abandoned his neutrality than a national of the other belligerent State could be for the same act. (*H. V, art. 17.*)

*b Offenses in Occupied Territory* Nationals of neutral States, whether resident in or visiting occupied territory, may be punished for offenses in the same manner as enemy nationals. They may be deported or expelled for just cause. In the event that such a person is arrested, suspicions must be verified by a serious inquiry, and the arrested neutral person must be given an opportunity to defend himself, and to communicate with the consul of his country if he requests it

#### 551. Acts Not Favorable to One Belligerent

The following acts shall not be considered as committed in favour of one belligerent in the sense of Article XVII, letter *b*:

**a. Supplies furnished or loans made to one of the belligerents, provided that the person who furnishes the supplies or who makes the loans lives neither in the territory of the other party nor in the territory occupied by him, and that the supplies do not come from these territories;**

**b. Services rendered in matters of police or civil administration.**  
(*H V, art 18*)

### Section VI. RAILWAY MATERIAL

#### 552. Railway Material

Railway material coming from the territory of neutral Powers, whether it be the property of the said Powers or of Companies or private persons, and recognizable as such, shall not be requisitioned or utilized by a belligerent except where and to the extent that it is absolutely necessary. It shall be sent back as soon as possible to the country of origin.

**A neutral Power may likewise, in case of necessity, retain and utilize to an equal extent material coming from the territory of the belligerent Power.**

**Compensation shall be paid by one party or the other in proportion to the material used, and to the period of usage. (*H. V.*, art. 19.)**

## APPENDIX INDEX OF ARTICLES

### 1949 GENEVA CONVENTIONS

(Italics indicate a paragraph in which the article is quoted)

#### 1. GWS

Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph
2.....	8	20.....	209	37.....	540
3.....	11	21.....	222	38.....	238
4.....	210	22.....	223	39.....	239
5.....	211	23.....	224	40.....	240
6.....	212	24.....	67, 225, 545	41.....	241
7.....	213	25.....	68, 225, 226	42.....	242
8.....	16	26.....	69, 227, 545	43.....	243
9.....	17	27.....	67, 229, 236,	44.....	244
10.....	18		555	46.....	214
11.....	19, 495	28.....	230, 231, 545	47.....	14
12.....	215	29.....	68, 226	49.....	505, 506
13.....	208	30.....	231, 545	50.....	508
14.....	66	31.....	232	51.....	509
15.....	216	32.....	67, 233, 522	52.....	488
16.....	217	33.....	234	59.....	5
17.....	218	34.....	235	63.....	6
18.....	219	35.....	236		
19.....	220, 225	36.....	237		

#### 2. GWS Sea

Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph
2.....	8	15.....	544	48.....	14
3.....	11	17.....	544	50.....	505, 506
4.....	209	22.....	209	51.....	508
8.....	16	27.....	209	52.....	509
9.....	17	29.....	209	53.....	488
10.....	18	37.....	209	58.....	5
11.....	19, 495	43.....	209	62.....	6

#### 3. GPW

Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph
2.....	8	6.....	86	12.....	88
3.....	11	7.....	87	13.....	89, 497
4.....	60, 61, 64, 65, 72, 80, 208, 533	8.....	16	14.....	90
		9.....	17	15.....	91
		10.....	18	16.....	92
5.....	71, 73, 84	11.....	19, 495	17.....	93

### 3. GPW-Continued

Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph
18	59, 94, 475	59	135	98	156, 174, 158, 505
19	95	60	136	99	158, 175, 505
20	96	61	137	100	158, 176, 505
21	97, 185	62	138	101	158, 177, 505
22	98	63	139	102	158, 178, 505
23	99	64	140	103	158, 179, 505
24	100	65	141	104	156, 158, 180, 505
25	101	66	142	105	181, 158, 505
26	102	67	143	106	182, 158, 505
27	103	68	144	107	156, 183, 158, 505
28	104	69	145	108	184, 158, 505
29	106	70	146	109	188, 546, 196
30	107	71	147	110	189, 546, 196
31	108	72	148	111	190, 546, 196
32	109	73	149	112	191, 546, 196
33	97	74	150	113	192, 546, 196
34	110	75	151	114	193, 546, 196
35	111	76	152	115	194, 546, 196
36	112	77	153	116	195, 546, 196
37	113	78	154, 156	117	199, 546
38	114	79	155, 156	118	198
39	115	80	156	119	200
40	116	81	156, 157	120	204
41	117	82	158, 505	121	202
42	118	83	158, 159, 505	122	203
43	119	84	158, 160, 505	123	204
44	120	85	158, 161, 505	124	205
45	121	86	158, 162, 505	125	156, 206
46	122	87	163, 158, 497, 505	126	207
47	123	88	164, 158, 505	127	14, 156
48	124	89	168, 165, 172, 505	129	505, 506
49	125	90	158, 166, 505	130	502
50	126	91	158, 167, 505	131	503
51	127	92	158, 168, 505	132	498
52	128	93	158, 169, 505	134	5
53	129	94	158, 170, 505	135	5
54	130	95	158, 171, 505	142	6
55	131	96	158, 172, 505		
56	132	97	158, 173, 505		
57	133, 156				
58	134				

### 4. GC

Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph
2	8	8	251	15	254
3	11	9	16	16	255
4	73, 236, 247, 548	10	17	17	44, 256
5	248	11	18	18	45, 257
6	10, 249, 361	12	19, 495	19	45, 258
7	250	13	247, 252	20	259
		14	45, 253	21	260

GC—Continued

Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph	Article	Paragraph
22.....	261	64.....	369, 370, 434	108.....	315, 319
23.....	44, 269	65.....	435	109.....	316
24.....	263	66.....	436	110.....	317
25.....	264	67.....	437	111.....	318
26.....	265	68.....	72, 248, 438	112.....	319
27.....	266, 379	69.....	439	113.....	320
28.....	267, 379	70.....	440	114.....	321
29.....	268, 379	71.....	441	115.....	322
30.....	269, 379	72.....	442	116.....	323
31.....	270, 379	73.....	443	117.....	324
32.....	271, 379	74.....	444	118.....	325
33.....	272, 379, 397, 497	75.....	445	119.....	326
34.....	273, 497, 379	76.....	446	120.....	327
35.....	26, 274	77.....	447	121.....	328
36.....	275	78.....	448	122.....	329
37.....	276	79.....	286	123.....	330
38.....	277	80.....	287	124.....	331
39.....	278	81.....	288	125.....	332
40.....	279	82.....	289	126.....	333
41.....	27, 280	83.....	290	127.....	334
42.....	26, 27, 281	84.....	291	128.....	335
43.....	27, 282	85.....	292	129.....	336
44.....	27, 283	86.....	293	130.....	337
45.....	27, 284	87.....	294	131.....	338
46.....	285	88.....	295	132.....	339
47.....	358, 365	89.....	296	133.....	340
48.....	375, 381	90.....	297	134.....	341
49.....	382	91.....	298	135.....	342
50.....	383	92.....	299	136.....	343
51.....	370, 418	93.....	300	137.....	344
52.....	421	94.....	301	138.....	345
53.....	56, 393, 402, 410	95.....	302	139.....	346
54.....	373, 422	96.....	303	140.....	347
55.....	384, 413	97.....	304	141.....	348
56.....	385	98.....	305	142.....	349
57.....	386, 414	99.....	306	143.....	350
58.....	387	100.....	307	144.....	14
59.....	388	101.....	308, 319	146.....	505, 506
60.....	389	102.....	309	147.....	41, 502
61.....	390	103.....	310	148.....	503
62.....	391	104.....	311	149.....	496
63.....	392	105.....	312	154.....	5
		106.....	313	158.....	6
		107.....	314, 319		

## 1907 HAGUE CONVENTIONS

### H. III

<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
1.....	20	2.....	21, 514	3.....	22, 514

---

### HR

<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
22.....	33	30.....	78	43.....	363, 370, 431
23.....	28, 29, 31, 32, 34, 37, 52, 54, 58 238, 370, 372, 393, 414, 467	31.....	78	45.....	359
		32.....	480	46.....	380, 408
		33.....	463	47.....	397
		34.....	488	48.....	425, 427
		35.....	471	49.....	428
		36.....	480	50.....	448
24.....	48, 77	37.....	482	51.....	429
25.....	39	38.....	490	52.....	412
26.....	43	39.....	487, 489	53.....	234, 403, 408
27.....	45	40.....	492	54.....	411
28.....	47	41.....	494	55.....	400
29.....	75, 77	42.....	351	56.....	405

---

### H. V

<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
1.....	515	7.....	525	13.....	538
2.....	518	8.....	529	14.....	539, 545
3.....	528	9.....	531	16.....	547
4.....	522, 524	10.....	519	17.....	550
5.....	518	11.....	532, 545	18.....	551
6.....	523, 524	12.....	537	19.....	552

---

### H. IX

<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Article</i>	<i>Paragraph</i>
5.....	46				

---

## INDEX

	Paragraph	Page
Abbreviations.....	5	iii, 4
Accounts:		
Internees.....	305	119
Prisoners of war.....	94, 134-142	38, 51
Aerial bombardment.....	42	20
Aiding the enemy.....	79	33
Aid societies: ( <i>see also</i> Red Cross)		
Neutral countries.....	229, 522	90, 186
Neutrals, return of personnel.....	233	92
Personnel protected.....	227	90
Prisoners of war, aid to.....	69, 148-151, 206	30, 57, 81
Property.....	235	93
Airborne troops.		
Firing on persons descending by parachute.....	30	17
Prisoner of war status.....	63	27
Aircraft		
Bombardment.....	39, 42	19, 20
Medical uses.....	237, 261	94, 104
Aliens.....	274-285	108
Assigned residence.....	280-282	110
Confinement.....	276	108
Control:		
Measures of.....	280, 281	110
Nationality, basis of.....	283	111
Employment: ( <i>see also</i> Labor under Internees; Prisoners of war; Occupied territory).....	279	109
Enemy, status.....	25, 26	16
Expulsion.....	27	16
Extradition.....	284	111
Humane treatment: ( <i>see also</i> Internees—humane treat- ment).....	248, 277	99, 108
Internment ( <i>see also</i> Internees).....	280-282	110
Non-repatriated prisoners—generally.....	277-285	108
Refugees.....	280	110
Religious freedom.....	277	108
Restrictions other than internment:		
Duration and termination.....	278, 285	109, 112
Rights:		
Exit from territory.....	274, 275	108
Means of existence guaranteed.....	278	109
Protected rights of action in occupied territory.....	372	143
Wartime rights.....	277	108
Security measures.....	248, 266, 278-282	99, 106, 109



	Paragraph	Page
Status in territory of party to conflict.....	274	108
Transfer to another Power.....	284	111
Women, special mention ( <i>see also</i> Civillans; Internees)....	277	108
American National Red Cross ( <i>See</i> Red Cross.)		
Annexation ( <i>see</i> Occupied territory).....	358	140
Armed forces:		
Consist of combatants and noncombatants.....	62	27
Qualifications for recognition as lawful.....	62	27
Armistice.....	479-494	172
Activities authorized and prohibited during.....	480, 489, 494	172, 174, 175
Commencement.....	487, 491	173, 175
Defined.....	479, 483, 484	172
Denunciation.....	492-494	175
Duration.....	480, 487	172, 173
Effect.....	480, 481	172
Form.....	486, 487	173
General armistice; defined.....	482, 483, 488	172, 174
Hostilities:		
Cessation.....	487, 490, 491	173, 175
Resumption.....	492, 493	175
Inhabitants, effect.....	487	173
Intercourse in theater of operations.....	489	174
Lines.....	487	173
Local armistice, defined.....	482, 484	172
For search of battlefield.....	485	173
Notification.....	490, 491	175
Perfidy prohibited.....	50, 493	23, 175
Prisoners of war:		
Effect.....	487	173
Repatriation.....	487	173
Prohibited acts.....	487, 493	173, 175
Purpose.....	480, 483, 484, 485	172, 173
Search of battlefield during.....	485	173
Stipulations.....	487, 488	173, 174
Supervision.....	487	173
Suspension of arms.....	485	173
Termination.....	487, 492	173, 175
Types.....	482-485	172
Vigilance not to be relaxed.....	481	172
Violations:		
Effects.....	492-494	175
Individuals, violations.....	494	175
Perfidy.....	493	175
Arms ( <i>See</i> Weapons.)		
Army of occupation ( <i>See</i> Occupied territory.)		
Art, buildings devoted to, protection.....	45, 46, 57, 405	21, 24, 152
Assassination and outlawry.....	31	17
Assaults, bombardments, and sieges ( <i>See</i> Bombardments, assaults, and sieges.)		
Assigned residence.....	433	158
Asylum:		
Neutral territory, refuge in.....	534	188
Prisoner of war.....	199	77

	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Page</i>
Atomic weapons ( <i>See Weapons.</i> )		
Attachés of neutral country.....	83, 456, 549	34, 166, 192
Bacteriological warfare ( <i>see also Weapons</i> ).....	38	18
Basic rules and principles of land warfare.....	1-14	3
Belligerents: ( <i>see also Hostilities</i> ).		
Agreements:		
Armistices ( <i>See Armistices.</i> )		
Capitulation.....	470-478	169
Cartels.....	469	169
Armed forces of, who may generally comprise.....	62	27
Commencement of hostilities ( <i>See Hostilities—commence-</i> <i>ment</i> ).		
Communications:		
Methods.....	452, 458	165, 167
Neutral territory, communications.....	528, 530	187
Parlementaires.....	458-460	167
Good faith.....	453	165
Intercourse or negotiations between.....	449-453	165
Allowed only upon approval of government or highest military authority.....	450	165
Neutral diplomats may receive safe-conducts.....	456	166
Parlementaires ( <i>See Parlementaires.</i> )		
Rules for, generally.....	449, 450	165
White flag, rules relating to ( <i>See White flag.</i> )		
Neutrals, relations with: ( <i>see also Neutral Powers</i> )		
Belligerent acts committed by neutral persons.....	550, 551	192
Belligerents in neutral territory.....	532-534	188
Equipment of belligerents, disposition by neutrals of	536	189
railroad equipment in neutral territory.....	552	192
Internment of belligerents by neutrals.....	532, 533, 537	188, 189
Parole of belligerents.....	535	188
Nonhostile agreements ( <i>See Armistice; Capitulations;</i> <i>Cartels; Suspension of arms; Surrender.</i> )		
Nonhostile relations: ( <i>see also Armistices; Capitulation,</i> <i>Cartels; Surrender; Suspension of arms</i> ).....	449-494	165
Communications in general.....	452	165
Communications in neutral areas.....	468	169
Flags of truce.....	467	168
Forms of nonhostile relations.....	451	165
Good faith.....	453	165
Parlementaires ( <i>See Parlementaires.</i> )		
Passports, military.....	454, 455	165, 166
Safe conduct.....	454, 456	165, 166
Safeguards.....	457	166
Nonintercourse between.....	449, 450, 489	165, 174
Notification to neutrals ( <i>see also Protecting Powers—</i> <i>notification</i> ).....	21	15
Recognition as, qualifications.....	60-71	25
Besieged places.....	44	20
Buildings and areas protected.....	45, 46	21
Communication.....	44	20
Entry and exit.....	44	20
Inhabitants, treatment of ( <i>see also Wounded and sick</i> )....	44	20

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Besieged places—Continued</b>		
Neutral diplomats.....	44	20
Pillage forbidden.....	47	21
Bombardment, assaults and sieges.....	39-47	19
Aerial bombardment.....	42	20
Assaults and sieges.....	39-47	19
Buildings and areas protected.....	39, 45, 46	19, 21
Identification thereof.....	46	21
Undefended places.....	39	19
Warning required.....	43	20
Booty of war ( <i>see also</i> Pillage).....	47, 58, 59, 396	21, 24, 150
Buildings and monuments to be spared from bombardment..	45, 46	21
Bullets ( <i>See</i> Weapons.)		
Bureau of Information for prisoners of war ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war.)		
Burial ( <i>See</i> Dead.)		
Cables, submarine ( <i>See</i> Submarine cables.)		
Camp followers, treatment as prisoners of war ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war.)		
Camps and depots ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war—camps.)		
Canteens, prisoners of war ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war—Canteens.)		
Capitulation.....	470-478	169
Commanders, legal power to make.....	472	169
Defined.....	470	169
Destruction of property after signing.....	476	171
Forms.....	474, 475	170
Matters covered.....	475	170
Methods.....	474	170
Military honor.....	471	169
Observance.....	471	169
Political authorities, power.....	473	170
Violation.....	477	171
Captives ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war.)		
Captivity ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war—captivity.)		
Cartels.....	197, 469	76, 169
Censorship:		
Internees correspondence.....	319	126
Occupied territory.....	377	144
Prisoners of war correspondence.....	152	59
Central Prisoners of War Information Agency.....	204	80
Cessation of arms ( <i>See</i> Armistice; Suspension of Arms.)		
Chaplains:		
Prisoner of war, not to be considered as.....	67, 112	28, 44
Protection.....	225, 230	89, 90
Retention.....	111, 230, 232	44, 90, 92
Rights and duties, with respect to prisoners of war.....	111	44
Weapons, right to carry.....	223	88
Charity, protection of buildings devoted to ( <i>see also</i> Aid Societies; Red Cross).....	45, 46, 405	21, 152
Chemicals, use ( <i>See</i> Weapons.).....	38	18
Children:		
Aliens, rights.....	277	108
Besieged areas, evacuation.....	256	102
Identification discs.....	263	105

	Paragraph	Page
Children—Continued		
Occupied areas, rights.....	383	145
Orphans.....	263, 383	105, 145
Safety zones, protection.....	253	101
Welfare.....	262, 263	104, 105
Churches, protection.....	45, 46, 405	21, 152
Civil Affairs Administration.....	354, 368	139, 142
Civil capacity of prisoners of war ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war).....	90	86
Civil War.....	11	9
Civilians ( <i>see also</i> Aliens; Internees, Protected persons; occupied territory).....	246-350	98
Application of conventions.....	246, 252	98, 100
Assigned residence.....	280-282	110
Children.....	263	105
Civil capacity as internees.....	287	112
Coercion prohibited.....	270	107
Collective punishment prohibited.....	272	107
Confinement ( <i>see</i> Internees.)		
Correspondence permitted ( <i>see also</i> Censorship).....	264, 265	105, 106
Discriminations prohibited.....	252	100
Dispersed families.....	265	106
Employment ( <i>see also</i> Aliens).....	278	109
Enemy:		
Aiding.....	79	33
Status.....	25	16
Evacuation of wounded and sick ( <i>See</i> Wounded and sick.)		
Free passage of medical and religious supplies.....	262	104
Guides, impression.....	270	107
Hospitals ( <i>see also</i> Medical personnel; Medical units).....	253, 257-259, 385, 386	101, 102, 146
Hostages.....	273	107
Hostile acts.....	248	99
Humane treatment.....	266, 271	106-107
Information bureaus( <i>see</i> Information Bureaus).		
Internees ( <i>see</i> Internees).		
Internment.....	286, 290	112, 113
Interrogation, coercion prohibited.....	270	107
Medical personnel, civilian.....	236, 259	93, 103
Medical supplies, food and clothing.....	362	141
Neutralised zones, protection.....	254	101
Pillage prohibited.....	272	107
Prisoner of war, status.....	61, 64, 65, 73	25, 27, 28, 31
Prohibited acts toward.....	266, 271	100, 107
Protected persons, status ( <i>see also</i> Protected persons).....	247, 252	98, 100
Protecting power, relations.....	269	107
Protection.....	252, 266	100, 106
Duration.....	249	99
Responsibility.....	268	106
Punishment.....	248	99
Re-establishment.....	249	99
Relief Organizations ( <i>see also</i> Aid Societies, Red Cross).....	269	107
Relief shipments.....	388-391	147
Renunciation of rights prohibited.....	251	100
Repatriation.....	274, 275	108

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Civilians—Continued</b>		
Reprisals prohibited.....	272	107
Rights.....	266	108
Derogations.....	248	99
Exit from territory involved in conflict.....	274, 275	108
Safety zones.....	253	101
Security measures by occupying power or state.....	248	99
Special agreements with regard to.....	250	100
Torture and corporal punishment, prohibited.....	271	107
Treatment, responsibility.....	268	106
Use to immunise certain places, prohibited.....	267	106
Women, special mention ( <i>see also</i> Aliens; Occupied territory).....	253, 256, 262, 266	101, 102, 104, 108
Wounded and sick.....	255	102
Evacuation.....	256	102
Medical supplies.....	262	104
Protection generally.....	255	102
Transportation.....	260, 261	104
Treatment.....	219	87
Clothing: ( <i>See</i> Internees; Prisoners of war, etc.).		
Coastal rescue craft.....	209	88
Coercion prohibited ( <i>see</i> Civilians; Internees; Prisoners of war, etc.).		
Collective punishment prohibited ( <i>see</i> Civilians; Internees; Prisoners of war; occupied territory).		
Combatants, status as prisoners of war.....	62	27
Commanders: ( <i>see also</i> Officers).		
Neutrality, must respect.....	513	184
Power to capitulate.....	472	169
Prisoner of war, status.....	61	25
War crimes, responsibility with respect to.....	501, 507, 509	178, 182
Commandos, status as prisoners of war.....	63	27
Commerce:		
Neutrals, transactions of private persons.....	525-527	187
Non-intercourse.....	440, 450	165
Occupied territory.....	376	144
Relations between neutrals and belligerents.....	527	187
Communications:		
Between:		
Belligerents.....	452, 487	165, 178
Besieged and outside areas.....	44	20
During Armistice.....	377, 487	144, 178
Means:		
In neutral territory.....	528-531	187
Use of the white flag.....	458, 460, 467, 504	167, 168, 180
Complaints of:		
Internees.....	308	121
Prisoners of war.....	154	60
Conciliation procedures.....	19	14
Confinement. ( <i>See</i> Internees; Occupied territory; Prisoners of war.)		
Confiscation of enemy property prohibited.....	406	152

	Paragraph	Page
Constitutional provisions relative to declaration of war.....	24	16
Contributions in occupied territory.....	428, 429	157
Convoys:		
Munitions through neutral territory.....	516-518	185
Wounded and sick through neutral territory.....	539-544	189
Correspondence. (See Civilians; Internees; Prisoners of war.)		
Courts: (see also Courts-martial; Military commissions)		
In occupied territory.....	373, 436	143, 159
Prisoners of war.....	71, 160, 176, 178	30, 62, 68
Provost courts, jurisdiction.....	13	10
War crimes courts.....	505	180
Courts martial.....	13	10
Crimes:		
Against humanity.....	498	178
Against laws of war or "war crimes".....	498, 499, 502, 504	178, 179, 180
Against peace.....	498	178
Under international law.....	498-504	178
Cruelty, types prohibited. (See Prohibited acts.)		
Cultural buildings and property.....	45, 46, 57, 405	21, 24, 152
Customary laws of war.....	4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 11	4, 6, 7, 8, 9
Danger zones.....	267	106
Dead:		
Burials.....	201, 218, 337	78, 86, 132
Cremation.....	201, 218, 337	78, 86, 132
Death certificates.....	201, 218, 336	78, 86, 131
Examination of bodies.....	201, 218	78, 86
Graves.....	201, 218, 337	78, 86, 132
Graves registration service.....	201, 218	78, 86
Identification tags.....	218	86
Information with respect.....	201, 202, 336, 337	78, 79, 131, 132
Inquiry.....	202, 338	79, 132
Internees.....	336-338	131
Personal effects, disposition.....	201, 336	78, 131
Prisoners of war.....	201, 202	78, 79
Robbery and ill-treatment, protected from.....	218	86
Search of battlefield.....	216, 485	85, 173
Security measures.....	248, 268	99, 106
Treatment of bodies.....	202, 218, 336	79, 86, 131
Wills.....	201, 320, 336	78, 126, 131
Death penalty. (See Internees, Prisoners of war, Occupied territory.)		
Deception. (See Ruses of war )		
Declarations of war:		
Constitutional provisions.....	24	16
Effect.....	23	15
Necessity.....	9, 20, 24	8, 15, 16
Notification to neutrals.....	21	15
Defended place, defined.....	40	19
Deployment of prisoners of war. (See Prisoners of war.)		

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Deserters:</b>		
Captured.....	70	30
Enemy soldiers, inducing to desertion.....	49	22
<b>Destruction of property. (See Property. See also Devastation.)</b>		
<b>Detaining Power. (See Prisoners of war—Detaining Power.)</b>		
<b>Devastation:</b>		
In occupied areas, restricted.....	410, 411	153
Wanton, prohibited.....	41, 56, 58	19, 23, 24
<b>Diplomatic agents:</b>		
Enemy, may be made prisoners of war.....	70	30
<b>Neutrals:</b>		
Accompanying army.....	83	34
In besieged places.....	44	20
In occupied territory.....	456, 549	166, 192
Safe conducts.....	456	166
<b>Discipline (See Internees; Prisoners of war.)</b>		
<b>Discrimination. (See Civilians; Internees; Prisoners of war, etc.)</b>		
<b>Dispersed families.....</b>	<b>285</b>	<b>108</b>
<b>Dissemination of the 1949 Geneva Conventions.....</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>Education, internees.....</b>	<b>301</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>Emblem. (See Red Cross—emblem.)</b>		
<b>Enemy:</b>		
Aliens, effect of hostilities on. (See Aliens.)		
Flags, misuse of, forbidden.....	54	23
Forced partition in hostilities, forbidden.....	32	17
Insignia, misuse forbidden.....	54	23
Officials, neutrals, status as POW's.....	83	34
Population, status.....	60, 247	25, 98
Property. (See Property.)		
Territory. (See Occupied territory.)		
Uniform, misuse forbidden.....	54	23
<b>Escape:</b>		
Internees.....	327, 328	128
Prisoner of war.....	167, 168	65
<b>Espionage, sabotage and treason:</b>		
Aiding the enemy.....	79	33
Espionage (Spies):		
Civilians committing.....	76, 248	32, 99
Definitions.....	75, 76	31, 32
Immunity upon rejoining own forces.....	78	33
Lawful to use.....	49, 77	22, 33
Prisoner of war, status.....	81	34
Protected persons.....	248	99
Punishment.....	78, 248	33, 99
Trial.....	75, 78, 248	31, 33, 99
Use.....	49, 77	22, 33
Sabotage:		
Prisoner of war, status of saboteurs.....	81	34
Protected persons, status of saboteurs.....	248	99
Punishment.....	82, 248	34, 99
Spies (See this title—Espionage, above)		
Treason.....	79	33
<b>Evacuation of prisoners of war.....</b>	<b>95, 96, 543</b>	<b>89, 190</b>

	Paragraph	Page
Executions, summary, prohibited.....	85, 177	35, 68
Expulsion of enemy nationals.....	27	16
<b>Finances:</b>		
Currency in occupied territory.....	430	157
Prisoners of war ( <i>see also</i> Prisoners of war):		
Adjustments between parties to the conflict.....	143	55
Financial resources.....	134-144	51
Repatriation costs.....	195	75
<b>Flags:</b>		
Proper and improper use.....	52, 54	23
Red Cross emblem ( <i>See</i> Red Cross emblem.)		
Truce flag, misuse.....	53, 467, 504	23, 168, 180
<b>Food:</b>		
Free passage for certain purposes.....	262, 388	104, 147
Internees.....	296	115
Occupied territories.....	383, 384, 388, 412	145, 146, 147, 153
Prisoners of war.....	102, 105	41, 42
<b>Forbidden conduct (<i>See</i> Prohibited acts):</b>		
Gains, private, by officers and soldiers in occupied territory.....	398	150
Gases and chemicals, use.....	38	18
Geneva Conventions of 1929.....	5	4
Geneva Conventions of 1949.....	5	4
Articles cited ( <i>See</i> Index of 1949 Geneva Convention Articles.)		
Dissemination of Conventions.....	14	11
Grave breaches.....	502, 503, 506	179, 181
Interpretation.....	19	14
Protection of Civilian Persons Convention ( <i>See</i> Civilians.)		
Reservations by United States.....	245	97
Treatment of Prisoners of War Convention ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of War.)		
Violation.....	496, 502, 508	176, 179
Wounded and Sick Convention ( <i>See</i> Wounded and Sick.)		
Wounded, sick and shipwrecked Convention ( <i>See</i> Wounded and Sick—shipwrecked.)		
Geneva Cross ( <i>See</i> Red Cross).....	49	22
Good faith with enemy.....	49, 453	22, 165
Government, military ( <i>See</i> Military government.)		
Government officials ( <i>See</i> Officials under occupied territory, war crimes; <i>See also</i> officer.)		
Grave breaches of the Geneva Conventions ( <i>See</i> Geneva Con- ventions—grave breaches.)		
Graves registration service ( <i>See</i> Dead.)		
Grenades, use authorized.....	84	18
<b>Guerrillas:</b>		
Prisoner of war status.....	80	34
Protection.....	248	99
Guides, impression of enemy nationals forbidden.....	270	107
Hague Conventions, United States as a party to ( <i>see also</i> Index of Hague Convention Articles).....	5	4



	Paragraph	Page
Hospitals ( <i>See</i> Medical units; <i>see also</i> Medical personnel, medical stores and supplies).		
Hospital ships ( <i>see also</i> Medical units).....	209, 260, 544	83, 104, 190
Hospital zones.....	224, 253	89, 101
Hostages, use as means of reprisals prohibited.....	11, 273, 497	9, 107, 177
Hostile acts ( <i>See</i> Hostilities; prohibited acts.)		
Hostilities.....	20-59	15
Belligerents ( <i>See</i> Belligerents.)		
Cessation ( <i>See</i> Capitulation; Cartels; Armistice.)		
Commencement.....	20-27	15
Agreements of belligerents on money to be retained by prisoners.....	134	51
Appoint mixed medical commissions.....	191	74
Constitutional provisions.....	24	16
Declaration of war required.....	20, 24	15, 16
Effect on enemy nationals.....	25-27, 32	16, 17
Establishment of information bureaus.....	203, 243-350	79, 134
Exchange of titles and ranks.....	119	46
Hague Convention, date to be effective between parties..	22, 23	15
Notification to:		
Neutrals.....	21	15
Protecting Powers ( <i>See</i> Protecting Powers.)		
Organization of Graves Registration Service.....	218	86
Conduct of: ( <i>see also</i> Prohibited acts; Weapons)		
Aerial bombardment.....	42	20
Arms, etc., causing unnecessary injury ( <i>See</i> Weapons.)		
Assassination and outlawry forbidden ( <i>See</i> Prohibited acts.)		
Assaults ( <i>See</i> Bombardment, assaults and sieges.)		
Atomic weapons ( <i>See</i> Weapons.)		
Attack restricted to defended places ( <i>See</i> Prohibited acts.)		
Bacteriological warfare ( <i>See</i> Weapons.)		
Basic principles.....	1-14	3
Battlefield, search.....	216	85
Bombardments, assaults, and sieges ( <i>See</i> Bombardment assaults and sieges )		
Bullets, use of certain kinds forbidden ( <i>See</i> Weapons.)		
Compelling nationals to fight against own country....	32	17
Confiscation of private property ( <i>See</i> Property.)		
Contamination of water sources ( <i>See</i> Prohibited acts.)		
Cruelty prohibited ( <i>See</i> Prohibited acts )		
Dead ( <i>See</i> Dead.)		
Deception.....	50-55	22
Defended place defined.....	33, 34, 40	17, 18, 19
Destruction of property ( <i>See</i> Devastation.)		
Destruction of life or limb permitted.....	41	19
Drying or diverting water sources authorized.....	37	18
Enemy nationals not to be compelled to take part against own country.....	32	17
Enemy territory ( <i>See</i> Occupied territory.)		
Executions, summary, forbidden ( <i>See</i> Prohibited acts.)		
Flags, misuse of forbidden ( <i>See</i> Prohibited acts.)		
Forbidden conduct ( <i>See</i> Prohibited acts.)		

	<i>Paragraphs</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Commencement—Continued</b>		
<b>Conduct of—Continued</b>		
Gases and chemicals, use.....	38	18
Good faith must be observed.....	49, 453	22, 166
Grenades, authorized ( <i>See Weapons.</i> )		
Information, coercion prohibited.....	93, 270	37, 107
Injuring enemy, means limited ( <i>See Prohibited acts.</i> )		
Insignia, enemy, misuse forbidden ( <i>See Prohibited acts.</i> )		
Killing or wounding captives forbidden ( <i>See Prohibited acts.</i> )		
Military necessity.....	3	3
Offenders against the laws of war, treatment of ( <i>See War crimes.</i> )		
Parachutes, firing on persons descending.....	30	17
Perfidy, prohibited ( <i>See Prohibited acts.</i> )		
Pillage of towns and places forbidden ( <i>See Prohibited acts.</i> )		
Quarters, refusal of ( <i>See Prohibited acts.</i> )		
Requisition of supplies ( <i>See Requisitions</i> )		
Surrender, injuries after ( <i>See Prohibited acts</i> )		
Termination, effects of ( <i>See also Armistice; Capitulation; Suspension of arms; Surrender</i> ).....	10, 470	8, 169
United Nations Charter, applicability.....	23	15
Humane treatment ( <i>See Aliens; Civilians; Internees; Prisoners of war; Wounded and sick.</i> )		
Humanity, principles of, defined ( <i>see also Crimes against humanity</i> ).....	6	6
Hygiene ( <i>See Internees; Occupied territory; Prisoners of war.</i> )		
Identification cards, discs, etc. ( <i>See Children; Civilians; Dead; Internees, Prisoners of war; Medical personnel, etc</i> )		
Inducing enemy soldiers to desert.....	49	22
Information, coercion prohibited.....	93, 270	37, 107
Information Bureau. ( <i>see also Aid Societies, Red Cross</i> )....	203-207, 343-350	79, 134
Central Information Agency.....	204, 347	80, 135
Exemption from postal charges.....	205, 348	81, 136
National Bureau.....	203, 343	79, 134
Inhabitants of occupied territory ( <i>See Occupied territory—rights, etc., of inhabitants.</i> )		
Injuries after surrender.....	29	17
Insignia:		
Improper use.....	52, 55	23
Proper use.....	54	23
Intercourse between belligerents ( <i>See Belligerents—intercourse or negotiations between.</i> )		
International Committee of the Red Cross ( <i>See Red Cross</i> )		
International Law:		
Crimes under.....	498-504	178
Customary law.....	4, 6-9, 11	4, 6, 8, 9
Geneva Conventions ( <i>see also Geneva Conventions</i> )....	502, 503	179
Jurisdiction.....	502, 503	179
National law.....	7, 511	6, 183

	Paragraph	Page
<b>International Law—Continued</b>		
Punishments.....	508	182
Responsibility of nations for punishment.....	506	181
Treaty law, force.....	7	6
Trials.....	505	180
Violations ( <i>see also</i> War crimes).....	498, 507	178, 182
War crimes ( <i>See</i> War crimes.)		
<b>Internees:</b>		
Accommodations: ( <i>see also this title—Camps, And see</i> 286-342 Internment.)		112
Generally.....	289-292	113
In neutral countries.....	339	133
Accounts.....	305	119
Air raid shelters.....	295	115
Allowances.....	305	119
Burial and cremation.....	337	132
<b>Camps:</b>		
Administration.....	306	120
Geneva Conventions to be posted.....	306	120
Inspection.....	350	136
Location.....	290	113
Regulations, orders, etc., to be posted.....	306	120
Canteens.....	294	114
Censorship.....	308, 319	121, 126
Central Information Agencies.....	347	135
Civil capacity.....	287	112
Clothing.....	297	115
Coercion.....	270	107
Collective punishment prohibited.....	272	107
Collective relief shipments ( <i>see this title—Relief shipments.</i> )		
Compensation.....	302	118
Complaints.....	308	121
Confinement.....	329, 333	129, 130
Correspondence.....	313, 314, 318-320, 332	123, 125, 130
Censorship ( <i>see this title—Censorship.</i> )		
Court proceedings.....	322, 325, 328, 330-333	127, 128, 129
Death.....	336-338	131
Death certificates.....	336	131
<b>Discipline:</b>		
Disciplinary punishment.....	326-332	128
Generally.....	307	121
Discrimination.....	266	106
Education.....	301	117
Employment of ( <i>see this title—Labor.</i> )		
Escape, effect on other offenses.....	327, 328	128
Families.....	289	113
Financial allowances.....	305	119
Food rations.....	296	115
Graves registration.....	337	132
Groupings for housing purposes.....	289	113
Hazards of war, protection.....	295	115
Humane treatment.....	266, 307, 334	106, 121, 130

	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Internees—Continued</b>		
Hygiene and health.....	292	113
Identification and identity cards.....	304, 313, 337, 345	119, 123, 132, 135
Imprisonment.....	325, 326, 329, 331, 332	127, 128, 129, 130
Information Bureaus.....	343-349	134
Inspection of interment facilities.....	350	136
Intellectual pursuits.....	301	117
Internee committees.....	308-311	121
Internment ( <i>see this title—Accommodations.</i> )		
Internment cards.....	313	123
Investigations:		
Death or injury.....	338	132
Inspection of camp.....	350	136
Offenses of internees.....	329	129
Judicial proceedings ( <i>see this title—Court Proceedings.</i> )		
Killed or injured; special circumstances.....	338	132
Labor:		
Conditions.....	302	118
Labor detachments.....	303	119
Laws applicable.....	324	127
Lawsuits against.....	322	127
Legal aid.....	320, 322	126, 127
Legal documents.....	320, 336	126, 131
Maintenance.....	288	112
Medical examinations and care.....	298, 299	116
Moneys.....	304, 305	119
Notifications by Detaining Power.....	312, 336, 338, 343	122, 131, 132, 134
Offenses:		
Generally.....	324, 327, 328	127, 128
Investigation.....	329	129
Punishment ( <i>see this title—Punishments.</i> )		
Penal and disciplinary sanctions ( <i>See this title—Punishment.</i> )		
Personal effects.....	304, 346	119, 135
Petition, right.....	308	121
Postal exemptions.....	317	124
Prisoners of war, separation from.....	291	113
Property, personal ( <i>see also this title—Money</i> ):		
Forwarding of personal property.....	346	135
Management.....	321	126
Personal effects.....	304	119
Transfers.....	335	131
Protecting Powers:		
Complaints.....	308	121
Notification.....	312, 336, 338	122, 131, 132
Supervision.....	350	136
Visitations.....	350	136
Protection.....	295	115

Internees—Continued	Paragraph	Page
Punishment:		
Basis.....	331	129
Disciplinary.....	324-333	127
General provisions.....	324	127
Penalties prescribed.....	325	127
Procedures for imposing.....	330-333	129
Prohibited punishment.....	271, 272	107
Safeguards.....	331, 332	129, 130
Recreation.....	301	117
Release.....	339-342	133
Relief.....	315	123
Collective relief.....	316	124
Exemption from fees and duties.....	317	124
Relief shipments.....	315, 318, 349	123, 125, 136
Relief societies.....	349	136
Religious freedoms.....	293, 300	114, 116
Repatriation.....	339-341	133
Costs.....	342	133
Representatives of ( <i>see also this title—Protecting Powers</i> ).....	308-311	121
Residence, return.....	341, 342	133
Rights:		
Generally.....	266, 291, 307, 334	106, 113, 121, 130
During punishment.....	331, 332	129, 130
Sanitation measures.....	292	113
Transfers:		
Conditions.....	334	130
Methods.....	335	131
Visitors and visits ( <i>see also this title—Protecting Powers</i> ).....	323	127
Wills.....	320, 336	126, 131
Women.....	288, 289, 292, 296, 298, 304, 331	112, 113, 115, 116, 119, 129
Internment: ( <i>see also Assigned residence</i> )		
Areas.....	98, 290	39, 113
Civilian.....	286	112
Prisoners of war.....	97-100	39
Interrogation:		
Civilians, use of force prohibited.....	270	107
Prisoners of war.....	93	37
Invasion, occupation distinguished from.....	352	138
Invested areas, inhabitants.....	44	20
Jurisdiction:		
Military jurisdiction, defined.....	13, 505, 507	10, 180, 182
War crimes, jurisdiction over.....	505, 507	180, 182
Killing or wounding.		
After surrender.....	85	35
Limitations on means.....	33, 34, 41	17, 18, 19
Parliamentaries, accidental or otherwise.....	461	167

	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Page</i>
Labor ( <i>See</i> Labor under Aliens; Internees; Prisoners of war; Occupied territory.)		
Land warfare ( <i>See</i> Hostilities.)		
Laws of war:		
Applicability.....	7-10	6
Basic rules and principles.....	1-14	3
Binding effect.....	3	3
Civil war, applicability.....	11	9
Customary laws.....	4, 6-9, 11	4, 6, 8, 9
Declaration of war unnecessary to make applicable.....	9	8
Enforcement.....	15-19, 495-511	12, 176
Force.....	7	6
Interpretation of 1949 Geneva Conventions relating to.....	19	14
Jurisdiction to try offenses against.....	13, 505, 507	10, 180, 182
National law.....	511	183
Protecting Powers, role with regard to.....	15-19	12
Purpose.....	2	3
Sources.....	4	4
Termination of hostilities, effect.....	10	8
Treaties.....	4, 5, 7	4, 6
Unwritten rules ( <i>see this title</i> —Customary laws)		
Violations ( <i>see also</i> Prohibited acts, War crimes).....	495-511	176
Legal documents ( <i>see under</i> Internees, Prisoners of war)		
<i>Leves En Masse.</i>		
Defined.....	61, 65, 72	25, 28, 41
Treatment.....	65	28
Liberated Territory, Government.....	354	189
Looting.....	47, 272, 397	21, 107, 150
Mall ( <i>See</i> Correspondence under civilians; Internees; Prisoners of war, etc.) ( <i>see also</i> Censorship, Information bureaus)		
Manual, purpose.....	1	3
Martial law:		
Definition.....	12	10
Distinguished from military government.....	12	10
Medical commissions.....	191, 192	74
Medical examinations ( <i>see under</i> Internees; Prisoners of war)		
Medical personnel: ( <i>see also</i> Wounded and sick; Red Cross)		
Civilian hospitals, employed.....	259	103
Definition, persons included.....	67-69, 225, 226, 259	28, 89, 103
Emblem of protection.....	55, 238, 240, 259	23, 95, 103
Neutrals, status.....	229, 233, 545	90, 92, 191
Prisoners of war, status.....	67, 68, 230	28, 29, 90
Protection.....	223, 225, 226, 236	88, 89, 93
Retained personnel, status as.....	67, 68, 230-232	28, 29, 90
Return by the enemy.....	231-233	91
Security measures.....	231	91
Weapons, right to carry.....	223	88
Medical stores and supplies: ( <i>see also</i> Medical units)		
Free passage.....	262	104
Occupied territories, use.....	384, 413	146, 154
Protection.....	234	93
Regulation.....	386, 413-416	146, 154

	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Medical units: (Including hospitals and mobile units.) (see also Medical commissions)</b>		
Aircraft, use.....	237, 261, 540	94, 104, 189
Building, mobile units and stores, protection.....	220-223, 234, 253, 257-258, 260, 261	87, 93, 101, 102, 104
Civilian hospitals.....	257, 258, 385, 386	102, 146
Defense of, protective status not thereby denied.....	223	88
Emblem of protection.....	55, 242-245, 248, 257	23, 90, 99, 102
Hospital ships.....	209, 260, 544	83, 104, 190
Hospital zones.....	224, 253	80, 101
Hospitals ( <i>see this title—Buildings, etc.</i> )		
Location.....	220, 253	87, 101
Neutral territory, passage of units through.....	539, 540, 541	180, 190
Neutral units and the use of national flag.....	229, 243	90, 96
Occupied territory.....	257, 258, 386, 414, 415	102, 140, 154
Protection of ( <i>see this title—Buildings, etc.</i> )		
Requisition of hospitals and other units.....	386, 414-416	146, 154
Termination of protection.....	222	88
Transportation units.....	236	93
Utilization.....	222, 223	88
Weapons employed in connection with.....	223	88
Military attaches of neutral country.....	83, 457, 549	34, 166, 192
Military commissions.....	13, 505	10, 180
Military government: ( <i>see also</i> Occupied territory)		
Authority.....	367	142
Courts, suspension.....	373	143
Definition.....	362, 368	141, 142
Distinguished from martial law.....	12	10
Financing.....	364	141
Functions.....	363, 367	141, 142
Laws to be applied.....	369-372	142
Necessity.....	362	141
Puppet governments.....	366	141
Rights protected.....	365	141
Military jurisdiction.....	13, 505, 507	10, 180, 182
Military necessity.....	3	3
Military occupation ( <i>See</i> Occupied territory.)		
Military passports ( <i>See</i> Passport, military.)		
Militia:		
Definition.....	64	27
Prisoner of war status.....	61, 64, 74	25, 27, 31
Mixed medical commissions ( <i>See</i> Medical commissions.)		
Money:		
Internees.....	304, 305	119
Occupied territory, use of ( <i>see also</i> Taxation).....	430	157
Prisoners of war ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war—finances.)		
Monuments, protection.....	57, 405	24, 152

	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Munitions:</b>		
Neutral territories:		
Convoys.....	516-518	185
Purchases.....	527	187
Shipments.....	517, 518, 525-527	185, 187
Occupied territory:		
Seizure authorized.....	401, 403	151
Museums, protection.....	57, 406	24, 152
National Red Cross ( <i>See</i> Red Cross )		
Neutral Aid Societies ( <i>See</i> Aid Societies )		
Neutral commerce, shipment of supplies for belligerents.....	516-518, 525-527	185, 187
Neutral countries ( <i>See</i> Neutral Powers; neutral territory.)		
Neutral persons.....	547-551	191
Belligerent acts.....	519, 523, 524, 550, 551	185, 186, 192
Commerce with belligerents.....	525-527	187
Definition.....	547	191
Diplomatic personnel.....	83, 456, 549	34, 166, 192
Export of arms.....	525-527	187
Forfeiture of neutrality.....	550	192
Hostile acts.....	550	192
Medical personnel, security measures.....	229, 233, 545	90, 92, 191
Occupied territory:		
Diplomatic personnel ( <i>See</i> Diplomatic personnel above.)		
Offenses committed.....	550	192
Status.....	548	191
Protected persons, status.....	247	98
Rights, forfeiture.....	550	192
Neutral Powers:		
Asylum.....	534, 545	189, 191
Belligerents, relations with:		
Commercial shipment.....	516-518, 525-527	185, 187
Communication facilities, belligerents' use.....	528-531	187
Diplomatic agents.....	83, 456, 549	34, 166, 192
Equipment of belligerents, disposition.....	536, 552	189, 192
Export controls, impartiality.....	525-527	187
Force, use to enforce neutrality.....	519	185
Internment of belligerents.....	532, 535, 537	188, 189
Medical units and medical personnel.....	243, 540, 545	96, 189, 191 191, 185
Movement of troops and supplies.....	517, 518	185
Parole of belligerents.....	535	188
Treatment of belligerents.....	532, 533, 537	188, 189
Neutral territory ( <i>See</i> Neutral territory.)		
Neutrality ( <i>See</i> Neutrality.)		
Notification as to:		
Neutrality.....	514	184
State of war.....	21, 514	15, 184
Prisoners of war, duties concerning ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war.)		
Protecting Power, role as ( <i>See</i> Protecting Powers.)		



	Paragraph	Page
<b>Neutral Powers—Continued</b>		
Responsibilities.....	526	187
Shipwrecked belligerents, detention.....	523, 544	186, 190
Troop movements.....	516, 518	185
Violations of neutrality.....	519, 520	185
Weapons:		
Belligerents' weapons, disposition.....	536	189
Transport or export.....	516-518, 525-527	185, 187
Wounded and sick, duties toward ( <i>See</i> Wounded and sick.)		
Neutral territory: ( <i>see also</i> Neutral Powers.)		
Asylum.....	532, 534, 545	188, 191
Belligerents in ( <i>see also</i> under Neutral Powers).....	526, 532-535, 549	187, 188, 192
Communication facilities, use.....	528-531	187
Evacuation of prisoners of war.....	543	190
Inviolability.....	515	185
Medical aircraft.....	540	189
Medical personnel.....	545	191
Movements of troops and supplies through.....	516, 517	185
Prisoners of war, escapees.....	538	189
Radio stations, etc., forbidden.....	528-531	187
Railroad equipment.....	552	192
Recruitment of troops prohibited.....	523	186
Restrictions on territory.....	518	185
Sale of supplies to belligerents.....	525-527	187
Wounded and sick:		
Internment and passage.....	539-544	189
Neutrality: ( <i>see also</i> Neutral persons; Neutral Powers; Neutral territory.)		
Definition.....	512-552	184
Enforcement.....	519, 520	185
Forfeiture.....	550	192
Notification.....	514	184
United Nations Charter, effect.....	513	184
Violations:		
Defined.....	521	186
Failure to prevent, effect of.....	520	185
Individuals.....	523, 524	186
Prevention.....	519, 520	185
Punishment.....	521	186
Resistance.....	519	185
Neutralized zones, creation.....	254	101
Newspaper reporters, captured status.....	61	25
Newspapers in Occupied Territory ( <i>See</i> Occupied territory—newspapers.)		
Non-belligerent powers ( <i>see also</i> Neutral Powers).....	512, 513	184
Noncombatants:		
Besieged places.....	44	20
Prisoner of war status.....	62	27
Nonhostile agreements ( <i>See</i> Armistices; Capitulations; Cartels; Suspension of arms; Surrender)		
Nonhostile relations of belligerents ( <i>See</i> Belligerents—non-hostile relations.).....		
Nonintercourse.....	449-494	165
Notification to neutrals ( <i>see also</i> Protecting Powers).....	449, 450	165
Notification to neutrals ( <i>see also</i> Protecting Powers).....	21	15

	Paragraph	Page
Oath of allegiance to occupying power.....	359	140
Occupation ( <i>see also</i> Occupied territory).....	351-448	138
Annexation during.....	358, 359, 365	140, 141
Civil Affairs administration distinguished.....	354	139
Definition.....	351	138
Duration.....	352	138
Effectiveness.....	356, 360	139, 140
Government, nature.....	368	142
Invasion, distinguished from.....	352	138
Proclamation.....	357	140
Question of fact.....	355	139
Sovereignty not transferred.....	353, 358	138, 140
Subjugation or conquest, distinctions.....	353	138
Termination.....	361	140
Occupational accidents ( <i>See</i> Labor under internees; prisoners of war; Occupied territory.)		
Occupied territory: ( <i>see also</i> Civilians; Internees; neutral persons).....	351-448	138
Administration.....	362-378	141
Annexation.....	358, 359, 365	140, 141
Assigned residence.....	433	158
Billeting of occupation army, authorized.....	379	144
Censorship of press and mail.....	377	144
Charitable property ( <i>See</i> Property—religious, charitable, and cultural.)		
Children.....	262, 263, 383	104, 105, 145
Civil Affairs Administration, distinguished.....	354	139
Civil or military Government.....	368	142
Coercion of inhabitants to obtain information, prohibited..	270	107
Collective punishment ( <i>see this title</i> —Penal Law).		
Commercial intercourse, restrictions allowed.....	376	144
Commercial transactions, military personnel ( <i>see below</i> , under Private gain of.)		
Confinement: ( <i>see also</i> Assigned residence; Internment).		
Place.....	446	163
Pretrial.....	439	160
Treatment during.....	446, 447	163
Contributions: ( <i>see also this title</i> —Taxes.)		
Method of levy or collection.....	429	157
Purpose.....	428	157
Control of inhabitants.....	432, 433	158
Costs of occupation ( <i>see also</i> Contributions; Taxes.).....	364	141
Courts ( <i>see this title</i> —Penal law).....	372, 373, 436, 437	143, 159
Crimes ( <i>see this title</i> —Penal law.)		
Criminal procedure ( <i>see this title</i> —Penal law.)		
Currency and exchange controls.....	430	157
Death penalty ( <i>see this title</i> —Penal law.)		
Defenses at trials ( <i>see this title</i> —Trials.)		
Definition.....	351-356	138
Detainees, treatment ( <i>see this title</i> —Confinement, above)...	446	163
Deportations.....	382	144
Devastation.....	410, 411	153
Diplomatic personnel.....	83, 457, 549	34, 166, 192

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Occupied territory—Continued</b>		
Evacuations.....	382	144
Food and clothing:		
Generally.....	384, 388, 413	146, 147, 154
Requisition.....	413, 416	154
Freedom of movement.....	375	143
Government: ( <i>see also this title—Administration.</i> )		
Civil.....	368	142
Duress.....	366	141
Functions.....	367, 368	142
Local government.....	366	141
Military government.....	12, 362	10, 141
Nature.....	368	142
Puppet governments.....	366	141
Government officials ( <i>see this title—Officials.</i> )		
Guides, impression.....	270	107
Hospitals:		
Protection.....	257, 258	102
Requisition.....	386, 414, 415	146, 154
Zones.....	253	101
Hostages forbidden.....	273	107
Human rights of inhabitants.....	386	146
Hygiene and health.....	385	146
Inhabitants ( <i>see under appropriate subject headings here</i> )		
Institutions to be protected ( <i>see also Property</i> ).....	393, 405	148, 152
Internment ( <i>see also Internees</i> ).....	433	158
Judges ( <i>see this title—Officials, below.</i> )		
Labor: ( <i>see also this title—Officials</i> ).....	418-422	154
Prohibited labor.....	420	155
Protection of laborers.....	421	155
Requisitions.....	419, 420	155
Land, private and public ( <i>See Property.</i> )		
Laws: ( <i>see also this title—Penal law</i> ).....	369-372, 432, 437	142, 158, 159
Administration.....	370, 437	142, 159
Application.....	437	159
Immunity of occupation personnel from local laws....	374	143
Occupation laws, when applicable.....	352, 360, 374	138, 140, 143
Publication of new laws.....	435	159
Rights of action, not to be suspended.....	372	143
Repeal or suspension.....	370, 371, 434	142, 143, 159
Maintenance of occupation.....	360	140
Medical supplies.....	384, 386, 388, 413	146, 147, 154
Medical units.....	257, 258, 386, 414, 415	102, 146, 154
Military government, necessity for.....	362	141
Military services, recruitment, etc.....	418, 420	154, 155
Money ( <i>see this title—Currency.</i> )		
Movement, restrictions.....	375	143
National flags ( <i>See Flags—proper and improper use.</i> )		

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Occupied territory—Continued</b>		
<b>Nationals of the occupying power:</b>		
Immunity from local law.....	374	143
Offenses committed before occupation.....	440	161
Nationals of other powers, repatriation.....	381	144
Neutral persons ( <i>see</i> Neutral persons).....	551	192
Newspapers, control.....	377	144
Oaths ( <i>see also this title—Officials</i> ).....	359, 423	140, 156
Obedience to occupation authorities.....	359, 423, 432	140, 156, 158
<b>Occupation (<i>see this title—Occupation.</i>)</b>		
<b>Offenses before occupation (<i>see this title—Penal law.</i>)</b>		
<b>Officials of hostile government:</b>		
Coercion.....	422	156
Compensation.....	424	156
Oaths.....	423	156
Obedience.....	359, 423, 432	140, 156, 158
<b>Punishment (<i>see this title—Punishment.</i>)</b>		
Removal.....	422	156
Salaries.....	424	156
<b>Penal and disciplinary sanctions (<i>see this title—Penal law.</i>)</b>		
<b>Penal law (<i>see also this title—Laws</i>).....</b>	<b>432-448</b>	<b>158</b>
Appellate rights.....	443	162
Applicable law.....	369, 370, 434, 437	142, 159
Confinement.....	439, 446, 447	160, 163
Courts.....	373, 436, 437	143, 159
Defense at trial.....	442	162
Individual responsibility.....	448	164
Legislation.....	434	159
<b>Offenses:</b>		
Committed before occupation.....	440	161
Generally.....	438	159
Penalties.....	438	159
Procedure for trials.....	441-444	161
Publication of laws.....	435	159
Punishments.....	438-440	159
Collective punishment, prohibited.....	272, 448	107, 164
Confinement.....	438, 439, 446, 447	159, 160, 163
Death penalty.....	438, 444, 445	159, 162, 163
Notification to Protecting Power.....	444	162
Offense committed before occupation.....	440	161
Repeal or suspension.....	369	142
Pillage prohibited.....	897	150
Population, rights ( <i>see also appropriate subheadings under this title</i> ).....	379-387	144
Postal service.....	377	144
Press and radio.....	377	144
Prisoners of war, status of persons in occupied territory..	72	81
Private gains by officers and soldiers forbidden.....	398	150
Proclamation of occupation.....	357	140
Property ( <i>See</i> Property.)		

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Occupied territory—Continued</b>		
<b>Protecting Power: (see also Internees; Protecting Powers.)</b>		
Functions with respect to:		
Foods, medical supplies and relief.....	384, 388-390	146, 147
Labor.....	421	155
Trials.....	442, 444	162
Notification of:		
Transfers and deportations.....	382	144
Trials and sentences.....	441, 444, 446	161, 162, 163
Public finance.....	426-431	156
Public order.....	363, 369	141, 142
Punishment (see this title—Penal law.)		
Puppet Governments.....	366	141
Recruitment.....	418	154
Relief and relief shipments.....	388-391	147
Relief societies.....	392	148
Religion:		
Religious assistance.....	387	147
Religious freedom.....	252, 266, 380	100, 106, 144
Religious property, protection and use.....	405	152
Repatriation of nationals of other powers (see also Civilians; Internees).....		
Internees.....	381	144
Reprisals prohibited.....	272	107
Requisitions (See Requisitions.)		
Red Cross (See Red Cross.)		
Residence, assigned.....	433	158
Revenue (see this title—Taxes.)		
Rights of action.....	372	143
Rights of inhabitants.....	365, 379-387	141, 144
Schools.....	383	145
Security measures.....	248, 266, 369, 399	99, 106, 142, 150
Services, requisition.....	418, 419, 422	154, 155, 156
Sovereignty.....	353, 358	138, 140
Subjugation or conquest.....	353	138
Submarine cables.....	411	153
Taxes: (see also this title—Contributions.)		
Changes in tax law.....	426	157
Collection.....	425, 427	156, 157
Types.....	426	157
Use.....	425	156
Termination of occupation.....	360, 361, 447	140, 163
Transfers of populations.....	382	144
Transportation, control.....	378	144
Trials: (see also this title—Courts; Penal law.)		
Appellate rights.....	443	162
Defense, rights.....	441-445	161
Notification to Protecting Power.....	444	162
Women (see also Internees—women).....	253, 256, 262, 266, 271, 446	101, 102, 104, 106, 107, 163

	Paragraph	Page
Occupied territory—Continued		
Workers ( <i>see this title—Labor.</i> )		
Officers: ( <i>see also War crimes—officials.</i> )		
Captured ( <i>See Prisoners of war—officers.</i> )		
Gains, private, forbidden in occupied territory.....	398	150
Internment by Neutral Powers.....	532, 534	188
Liability for war crimes.....	501, 509, 510	178, 182, 183
Parole in neutral countries.....	535	188
Opening of hostilities ( <i>See Hostilities.</i> )		
Orders and regulations: ( <i>see also War crimes—orders of superiors.</i> )		
Prisoners of war, posting in prisoners' language.....	117	45
Orphans, care.....	268, 383	105, 145
Outlawry and assassination.....	81	17
Parachute, persons descending.....	30	17
Parliamentaries.....	458-468	167
Parole:		
In neutral territory.....	535	188
Prisoners of war ( <i>See Prisoners of war—parole.</i> )		
Passports, military.....	454, 455	165, 166
Penal and disciplinary sanctions ( <i>See Internees; Occupied territory; Prisoners of war.</i> )		
Perfidy.....	50, 493	22, 175
Permitted acts, specifically mentioned:		
Atomic weapons.....	36	18
Bombardment.....	42	20
Property destruction.....	56	23
Ruses.....	51	22
Spies.....	77	33
Stratagems.....	48	20
Weapons, employing fire.....	36	18
Personal Property ( <i>See Internees; Prisoners of war; Property; Wounded and sick.</i> )		
Physical examinations ( <i>See Internees, Prisoners of war.</i> )		
Pillage prohibited.....	47, 272, 397	21, 107, 150
Poison.....	87	18
Policing of battlefield.....	216	85
Populations shifts in occupied territory ( <i>See Occupied territory—transfers</i> )		
Political authorities, power to capitulate.....	473	170
Postage ( <i>See Mail.</i> )		
Principles, basic principles of the law of war.....	3	3
Prisoners of war.....	60-207	25
Accidents.....	193	75
Accommodations in neutral country.....	188-190, 194	73, 75
Accounts ( <i>See Finances, below.</i> )		
Accused prisoners, rights.....	175, 181, 382	68, 70
Acts committed prior to capture.....	161	63
Addresses of prisoners, belligerents to inform each other..	203	79
Administration of ( <i>see this title—Camps</i> )		
Agreements on treatment.....	86	35
Aid societies ( <i>see also Red Cross</i> ).....	69, 148-151, 208	20, 57, 81
Aiding the enemy.....	79	33

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Prisoners of war—Continued</b>		
Airborne troops.....	63	27
Appellate rights ( <i>see this title—Judicial proceedings.</i> )		
Armistice, disposition during.....	487	173
Authorities of detaining power, relations with.....	154-157	60
Asylum.....	199	77
Attachés and other diplomatic representatives of neutral powers.....	83	34
Badges and decorations.....	94, 116	38, 45
Books, may receive.....	148	57
Bureau of Information.....	203-205	79
Burial, certificates, etc.....	201	78
Camp followers, status.....	60, 70	25, 30
<b>Camps:</b>		
Administration.....	115	45
Geneva Conventions, regulations and orders, posting.....	117	45
Hygiene.....	106	42
Responsible officer.....	115	45
Screening.....	100	40
Supervision.....	207	82
Transit.....	100, 106	40, 42
Working.....	99	40
Canteens.....	104	42
<b>Captivity: (<i>see also this title—Capture</i>)</b>		
Beginning.....	93-96	37
Termination.....	185-202	72
<b>Capture:</b>		
Acts committed prior.....	161	63
Recapture.....	170, 185	66, 72
Capture cards.....	146	56
Cartels.....	197, 469	76, 169
Censorship.....	152	59
Central Prisoner of War Information Agency.....	204, 205	80, 81
Chaplains ( <i>see this title—Religious ministers.</i> )		
Civil capacity.....	90	36
Civil officials as prisoners of war.....	70	30
Civilians ( <i>See Civilians</i> )		
Clothing.....	103, 105	41, 42
<b>Coercion for:</b>		
Inducement to admit guilt.....	175	68
Obtaining information, prohibited.....	93	37
<b>Collective Punishment (<i>see this title—Punishment.</i>)</b>		
Combatants and noncombatants.....	62	27
Commandos.....	63	27
Compelling to serve in hostile forces, forbidden.....	502	179
Complaints and requests, right to make.....	154	60
<b>Confinement as punishment (<i>see also this title—Internment.</i>)</b>		
Conditions.....	173, 174, 179, 184	67, 69, 71
Duration.....	174	67
Hearings prior to.....	179	69
Place.....	173, 184	67, 71
Pre-trial.....	179	69

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Prisoners of war—Continued</b>		
Conviction:		
Appeal from.....	182	70
Enforcement.....	184	71
Notice.....	183	71
Correspondence:		
Capture card.....	146	56
Censorship and suspension.....	152	59
Dispatches.....	147, 150	56, 58
Exemption from postage and duties.....	150	58
General rules.....	147-153	56
Legal documents.....	153	59
Parcels.....	148, 149	57
Relief shipments.....	148	57
Special transport.....	151	58
Telegrams.....	147, 150	56, 58
Transfer.....	124	47
Courts.....	71, 160, 178	30, 62, 68
Dangerous work ( <i>see this title—Labor</i> )		
Dead:		
Burial.....	201, 202	76, 79
Special circumstances of death.....	202	79
Death penalty.....	176, 177, 183	68, 71
Definition:		
Persons included.....	60-71	25
Persons excluded.....	72-83	31
Deployment of prisoners ( <i>see also this title—Labor</i> ).....	99	40
Detaining power:		
Accounts maintained.....	140	53
Responsibility for treatment of prisoners.....	88, 91	36, 37
Detention in combat zone.....	99	40
Diplomatic personnel of neutral states.....	83	34
Discipline and disciplinary punishment ( <i>see also this title—Punishment</i> ).....		
Power to administer.....	115-118, 165, 166, 172	45, 64, 66
Right of defense.....	115, 172	45, 66
Right of defense.....	172	66
Discriminations.....	92	37
Documents, legal.....	153	59
Enemy, relations with.....	154-157	60
Escapee ( <i>see also this title—Punishment</i> ).....	167-170, 538, 543	65, 189, 190
Exchange.....	197, 487	76, 173
Exposure to combat fire.....	99	40
Exterior, relation with.....	145-153	55
Evacuation ( <i>see also this title—Transfers</i> ).....	95, 96, 543	39, 190
Finances:		
Accounts		
Maintained by detaining power.....	94, 134, 135, 140-144	38, 51, 53
Right of prisoners to inspect.....	141	54
Terminating.....	142	54
Adjustments between parties to conflict.....	143	55
Canteen funds.....	104	42



	Paragraph	Page
<b>Prisoners of war—Continued</b>		
<b>Finances—Continued</b>		
Claims for compensation.....	144	55
Money of prisoners of war.....	94, 134-143	38, 51
Pay advances.....	136, 140, 143	51, 53, 55
Ready money.....	134	51
Receipts issued for funds of prisoners.....	94, 139	38, 53
Restrictions by Detaining Power.....	136, 138, 139	51, 52, 53
Supplementary pay.....	137	52
Transfer of funds.....	139	53
Wages for labor or working pay.....	130, 133, 138, 140	50, 52, 53
<b>Food:</b>		
Generally.....	102, 105	41, 42
Mess supervision.....	120, 121	46
<b>Force used against (see this title—Coercion)</b>		
<b>Funds of prisoners (see this title—Finances)</b>		
General divisions of enemy populations.....	60	25
Geneva Conventions, posting of text.....	117	45
Gifts.....	148-151	57
Graves.....	201	78
Guerrillas.....	80	34
<b>Hospitalization (see this title—Medical Examination and care)</b>		
Humane treatment.....	89	36
Hygiene and health.....	106, 108, 184	42, 43, 71
Identification and identity cards.....	61, 93, 94, 201, 203	25, 37, 38, 78, 79
<b>Imprisonment (see this title—Confinement)</b>		
Infirmary.....	107	42
Information Bureaus.....	203-205	79
Information to be given by prisoners.....	93	37
Injuries.....	107, 130, 131, 193, 202	42, 50, 75, 79
Insignia of rank and badges.....	94, 116	38, 45
Insults and public curiosity, protection.....	89	36
Intellectual pursuits.....	114	45
Interim protection if status doubtful.....	71	30
<b>International Committee of Red Cross (See Red Cross)</b>		
Internees, to be separated.....	291	113
<b>Internment of prisoners:</b>		
Generally.....	97-100	39
In neutral country.....	190	74
Interrogation.....	93	37
Judicial proceedings.....	175-184	68
Appellate rights.....	182	70
Defense.....	175, 181	68, 70
<b>Notification of proceedings to:</b>		
Accused.....	180, 183	69, 71
<b>Protecting Powers (see this title—Protecting Powers)</b>		
Principles in general.....	175	68
Sentence, validity and execution.....	178, 183, 184	68, 71
Killing prohibited in certain instances.....	85	35

	<i>Paragraph</i>	
<b>Prisoners of war—Continued</b>		
<b>Labor:</b>		
Accidents, occupational.....	130, 131	50
Authorized labor.....	126, 128	48, 49
Complaints regarding.....	126, 133	48, 50
Conditions.....	127	49
Dangerous or humiliating labor, generally prohibited..	128	49
Detachments of labor, administration.....	132	50
Disease, occupational.....	130, 131	50
Duration of, hours and days.....	129	49
Employers, private.....	133	50
Generally.....	125	48
Medical examination and care.....	131	50
Officers and non-commissioned officers.....	125	48
Persons subject.....	125, 157	48, 61
Physical examination.....	131	50
Prisoners' representatives.....	157	61
Rest required.....	129	49
Wages.....	130, 133, 138, 140	50, 52, 53
War operations, relations to.....	126, 128	48, 49
Language employed.....	93, 117, 155	37, 45, 60
Laws and regulations applicable.....	117, 158	45, 62
Ex post facto laws prohibited.....	175	68
Legal documents.....	153	59
Legislation. ( <i>see this title—Laws.</i> )		
Letters. ( <i>see this title—Correspondence.</i> )		
Levee en masse.....	65	28
Maintenance.....	91, 136, 143	37, 51, 55
Medical duties.....	109	43
Medical examination and care ( <i>see also this title—Wounded and sick</i> ).....	107, 108, 131, 191, 192	42, 43, 50, 74
Medical commissions, mixed.....	191, 192	74
<b>Medical personnel:</b>		
Neutral personnel.....	233	92
Retained personnel.....	67, 68, 230-232	28, 29, 90
Status and duties.....	67, 68, 107, 109, 131, 230, 233	28, 29, 42, 43, 50, 90, 92
Voluntary aid society personnel.....	69, 230	30, 90
Mess supervision ( <i>see also this title—Food</i> ).....	120, 121	46
Militia and volunteer corps.....	61, 64, 74	25, 27, 31
Military attaches of neutral state.....	83	34
Ministers of religion. ( <i>See Religious Ministers, below.</i> )		
Money. ( <i>see this title—Finances</i> )		
Movement, liberty of.....	97	39
Neutral personnel ( <i>see also this title—Protecting Powers</i> )..	83, 233	34, 92
<b>Neutral territory:</b>		
Accommodation.....	188-191, 194, 196, 538, 546	73, 75, 76, 189, 191
Internment.....	190	74
Passage through.....	538, 543	189, 190
Treatment.....	538	189
Wounded and sick prisoners.....	188, 189	73

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Prisoners of war—Continued</b>		
Non-commissioned officers, supervisory work only.....	125	48
Notification by belligerents:		
To each other ( <i>see also this title—Information Bureau</i> ).....	119, 134, 145	46, 51, 55
To Protecting Power.....	145, 157, 170, 176, 177, 180, 181, 183, 202	55, 61, 66, 68, 69, 70, 71, 79
Occupational accidents. ( <i>see this title—Labor.</i> )		
Occupied areas, certain persons in.....	73	81
Offenses ( <i>see also this title—Punishment; Discipline</i> ).....	158	62
Committed prior to capture.....	161	63
Officers:		
Generally.....	115, 120	45, 46
Labor.....	126	48
Mess supervision.....	120	46
Prisoners' representatives.....	155	60
Quarters.....	173	67
Orders and regulations, posting.....	117	45
Parcels by mail may be received.....	148	57
Parole.....	185-187	72
Pay ( <i>see also this title—Finance.</i> )		
Advance pay.....	136	51
Labor, pay.....	130, 138	50, 52
Supplementary pay.....	187	52
Penal and disciplinary sanctions. ( <i>see this title—Punishment.</i> )		
Personal property ( <i>see also this title—Clothing</i> ).....	94, 217	38, 85
Physical exercise. ( <i>see this title—Recreation.</i> )		
Posting of Geneva Conventions, regulations, etc.....	117	45
Prisoners' representatives. ( <i>see this title—Representatives of prisoners.</i> )		
Protecting Powers:		
Complaints.....	154, 157	60, 61
Correspondence.....	147, 151	56, 58
Notification as to:		
Death penalty.....	176, 177	68
Judicial proceedings.....	180, 181	69, 70
Killed or injured prisoners.....	202	79
Labor.....	182	50
Measures taken concerning prisoners.....	145	55
Recapture.....	170	66
Supervision of camps.....	207	82
Visitation of camps.....	207	82
Protection:		
Commencement and termination.....	84	34
Generally.....	84-92	34
Hazards of war.....	99	40
Interim.....	71	30
Punishment..... 158-184 62		
Acts committed prior to capture.....	161	63
Appeal, right.....	182	70
Coercion.....	175	68
Collective punishment forbidden.....	163	63

	Paragraph	Page
Prisoners of war—Continued		
Punishment—Continued		
Confinement.....	173	67
Courts.....	160, 178	62, 68
Death penalty.....	176, 177, 183	68, 71
Defense, right.....	172, 181	66, 70
Disciplinary punishment ( <i>see also this title—Discipline</i> ).....	115-118, 165, 166, 172	45, 64, 66
Duration.....	166	64
Escape.....	167-170, 536, 543	65, 189, 190
<i>Ex post facto</i> laws prohibited.....	175	68
Execution of penalties.....	164, 173	64, 67
Forms.....	165	64
General principles.....	163-165, 175	63, 68
Leniency.....	159	62
Notice		
Proceeding for.....	180	69
Results.....	183	71
Place.....	173	67
Repatriation or accommodation in neutral country.....	194	75
Repetitive punishment prohibited.....	162	63
Rights during.....	174, 184	67, 71
Safeguards.....	174	67
Sentence, validity.....		
Quarters.....	101, 105	40, 42
Questioning.....	93	37
Rank:		
Notification to parties to conflict.....	119	46
Recognition.....	115, 119-121, 174	45, 46, 67
Rations ( <i>see this title—Food</i> ).....		
Recapture.....	167-170, 185	65, 72
Recreation.....	114	45
Red Cross ( <i>See Red Cross</i> ).....		
Release.....	185-200	72
Relief, shipments.....	148-151	57
Exemption from postal and transportation charges....	150	58
Transportation, special.....	151	58
Relief societies ( <i>See Aid Societies, Red Cross</i> ).....		
Religious freedoms.....	110-113	44
Religious ministers.....	67, 111-113	23, 44
Renunciation of rights prohibited.....	87	35
Repatriation ( <i>see also Exchange of prisoners; Release of prisoners</i> ):		
Activity of repatriated prisoners.....	196	76
Armistice to include provisions.....	487	173
Asylums permitted.....	199	77
Costs.....	195, 198	75, 76
Exchanges.....	197	76
Hostilities, end.....	198	76
Injured prisoners.....	193	75
Mixed medical commissions, examinations.....	192	74
Prisoners serving sentences.....	194	75
Procedures.....	200	77
Wounded and sick.....	66, 188, 189	28, 73

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Prisoners of war—Continued</b>		
Reports.....	154	60
Representatives of prisoners.....	154-157	60
Duties.....	156	61
Prerogatives.....	157	61
Reprisals prohibited.....	89	86
Retained personnel.....	67, 68, 230, 232	28, 29, 90, 92
Rights protected ( <i>see this title—Treatment</i> )		
Screening camps.....	100	40
Security measures.....	99	40
Segregation.....	92	37
Sick and wounded ( <i>see this title—Wounded and sick</i> )		
Special agreements concerning.....	86	35
Spies. ( <i>See Espionage, Sabotage, and Treason.</i> )		
Summary execution forbidden.....	99	40
Supervision by protecting powers ( <i>see this title—Protecting powers</i> ).		
Transactions with enemy prohibited.....	94	38
Transfers.....	122-124	47
Circumstances precluding.....	123	47
Conditions.....	122	47
Procedure.....	124	47
Transit camps.....	100	40
Treatment:		
General rights.....	84-92	34
Non-renunciation.....	87	35
Equality of treatment.....	92	37
Officers.....	120	46
Non-officers.....	121	46
Responsibility.....	88	36
Trial ( <i>see this title—Judicial proceedings; Punishment.</i> )		
Uniform, necessity for recognition as belligerent.....	74	31
Violence and intimidation prohibited.....	89	36
Visitation and supervision of camps by protecting powers ( <i>see this title—Protecting Powers.</i> )		
Voluntary aid societies for ( <i>See Aid Societies.</i> )		
Volunteer corps.....	61, 64, 74	25, 27, 31
Weapons to be used against prisoners of war.....	118	46
Wills.....	153, 201	59, 78
Women as prisoners of war, special mention:		
Protection generally.....	90, 92, 125, 184	36, 37, 48, 71
Punishments.....	164, 173, 184	64, 67, 71
Quarters.....	101, 106, 173, 184	40, 42, 67, 71
Work ( <i>See Labor.</i> )		
Wounded and sick:		
Evacuation.....	95	39
Medical examination.....	107, 108, 131, 191, 192	42, 43, 50, 74
Neutral countries, accomodation.....	188	73
Protection.....	211, 217	84, 85
Repatriation.....	188, 189, 193, 195	73, 75

	Paragraph	Page
Prisoners of war—Continued		
Sentenced prisoners.....	194	75
Special agreements with respect to.....	86, 212	85, 84
Status as prisoners.....	66	28
Transfers.....	123	47
Prisoners of War Information Bureau.....	203	79
Prohibited Acts: (see also Weapons)		
Assassination and outlawry.....	81	17
Bombardment of undefended places.....	39, 40	19
Civilians, certain acts towards.....	271-273	107
Commencing hostilities without declaration of war.....	20	15
Compelling enemy to participate in hostilities against own country.....	83	17
Confiscation of enemy property (See Property.)		
Destruction of:		
Historical and educational institutions.....	57	24
Property.....	58	24
Submarine cables (see this title—Submarine cables)....	411	158
Devastation (see also this title—Destruction).....	41, 56	19, 23
Flags and insignia, improper use of (see also Red Cross)....	52-55	23
Geneva Convention emblem, improper use.....	55	23
Germ Warfare.....	37, 38	18
Guides, impressment.....	270	107
Hostages, taking.....	273	107
Injury of enemy after surrender or by prohibited means....	29, 33	17
Ill-treatment of peaceful populations.....	11	9
Paratroopers, firing on.....	80	17
Perfidy (see this title—Treachery.)		
Pillage of civilians prohibited.....	272	107
Poison (See Weapons.)		
Prisoners of war:		
Discriminating treatment.....	92	37
Inhuman treatment.....	89	36
Killing or wounding.....	85	35
Status, non-renunciation.....	87	35
Punishment, collective punishment forbidden.....	163, 272, 448	63, 107, 164
Quarters, refusal.....	28	17
Red Cross emblem, improper use (See Red Cross.)		
Reprisals.....	214	84
Revengeful acts.....	497	177
Safeguard violations.....	457	166
Submarine cables, destruction of.....	411	153
Surrendered personnel, killing or wounding.....	29	17
Torture and other inhuman treatment.....	85	35
Treachery or perfidy.....	50	22
War crimes, acts included (See War crimes.)		
Weapons, certain weapons prohibited (See Weapons.)		
Wounded and sick, ill treatment.....	216, 502	85, 179
Property:		
Bombardment (See Bombardment.)		
Booty of war.....	59	24
Captured.....	59, 395, 396	24, 150

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Property—Continued</b>		
Charitable.....	45, 46, 57, 405	21, 24, 125
Combat, treatment during.....	56-59	23
Confiscation or seizure ( <i>see also this title—Requisitions;</i> Pillage).....	58, 393, 395, 396, 406, 409, 410	24, 148, 150, 152, 153
Control by occupying power.....	399	150
Cultural.....	45, 46, 57, 405	21, 24, 152
Destruction or Devastation.....	56, 58, 393, 410, 476	23, 24, 148, 153, 171
Expropriation.....	431	158
Internees, property.....	321	126
Military.....	401, 404	151
Municipal.....	405	152
Pillage, prohibited.....	47, 272, 397	21, 107, 150
Prisoner of war, property.....	59, 94	24, 38
Private gain by soldiers.....	398	150
Private property:		
Confiscation prohibited.....	406	152
Destruction.....	393, 410	148, 153
Distinguished from public.....	394	149
Immovable requisition or seizure.....	407	152
Military use.....	408, 410	152, 153
Movable.....	408-410	152
Prohibited acts with regard to ( <i>see also Prohibited</i> <i>acts</i> ).....	406	152
Realty.....	407	152
Seizure.....	408-410	152
Public property:		
Administration by Occupying Power.....	400	151
Disposition by Occupying Power.....	402	151
Distinguished from private property.....	394	149
Military use.....	401, 404	151
Movable.....	403, 404	151
Preservation.....	400	151
State property.....	400-404	151
Railway equipment ( <i>See Railway equipment.</i> )		
Religious, charitable, cultural, etc.....	45, 46, 57, 405	21, 24, 152
Requisitions.....	407, 412-417	152, 153
Security measures.....	399	150
Seizure ( <i>see this title—Confiscation.</i> )		
State property ( <i>see this title—Public property.</i> )		
Submarine cables.....	411	153
Surrender, disposition of property.....	475, 476	170, 171
Undefended buildings, bombardment.....	39	19
Protected persons: ( <i>See also Aliens; Civilians; Internees.</i> )...	246-350	97
Coercion prohibited.....	270	108
Collective penalties prohibited.....	272	107
Definition.....	247	98
Derogations permitted.....	248	99

	Paragraph	Page
<b>Protected persons—Continued</b>		
Neutrals.....	247	98
Reestablishment.....	249	99
Rights, non-renunciation.....	251	100
Special agreements.....	250	100
Treatment, responsibilities.....	268	106
Protecting Powers, application to and visits by.....	269, 350, 446	107, 136, 163
Protecting Powers.....	15-19	12
Arbitration and conciliation procedures.....	19	14
Complaints from:		
Internees.....	308	121
Prisoners of war.....	154, 157	60, 61
Defined.....	15-19	12
Failure to function, remedies.....	18	13
Functions.....	15-19	12
Generally.....	16	12
International Red Cross Committees, no obstacle to functioning.....	17	13
Notification with respect to		
Internees.....	312, 336, 338	122, 131, 132
Prisoners of war.....	145, 157, 176-177, 180, 181	55, 61, 68, 69, 70
Protected persons.....	183, 202, 382, 441, 445	71, 79, 144, 161, 163
Substitutes for.....	18	13
Supervision of prisoners of war.....	207	82
Trials, representatives at.....	181, 444	70, 162
Visitations by.....	207, 446	82, 163
Provoost courts, jurisdiction.....	13	10
Punishment of:		
Inhabitants of occupied territory. ( <i>See</i> Occupied ter- ritory.)		
Prisoners of war. ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war.)		
Spies. ( <i>See under</i> Espionage, Sabotage, and Treason.)		
War criminals. ( <i>See</i> War crimes.)		
Purpose of manual.....	1	3
Quarters ( <i>See also</i> Internees; Prisoners of war.)		
Refusal.....	28	17
Radios:		
In neutral territory.....	528-531	187
In occupied territory.....	377	144
Railway equipment:		
Neutrality rules concerning.....	552	192
Rank ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war <i>see also</i> Officers)		
Recapture ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war.)		
Recruitment:		
Neutral territory.....	522	186
Occupied territory.....	418	154
Red Crescent ( <i>see also</i> Red Cross—emblem).....	238, 204	95, 105



	Paragraph	Page
<b>Red Cross (see also Aid Societies; Medical personnel; Medical units.)</b>		
American National Red Cross.....	228	90
Emblem.....	238-245	95
Auxiliary personnel, use.....	241	96
Form.....	238	95
Hospitals and other medical units and establishments; marking.....	242, 257, 266	98, 102 106
Improper use, prohibited.....	55, 244, 245	23, 96, 97
Medical personnel, use.....	240, 259	95, 103
Peacetime use.....	244, 245	98, 97
Religious personnel, use.....	240	95
Transports, land, sea, and air.....	260, 261	104
United States reservations to 1949 Geneva Conven- tion.....	245	97
Family news, facilitation.....	264	105
International Committee of Red Cross activities.. 17-19, 148, 149		13, 57
Hospital Zones, good offices for establishment.. 204, 224, 253		80, 89, 101
Prisoners' representatives, right to consult with....	155, 157	60, 61
Purpose.....	204, 347	80, 135
Relief Shipments of Central Agency (See Relief shipments.).....	204, 347	80, 135
Special status to be given recognition.....	206, 349	81, 136
Substitute for Protecting Power (see also Protecting Powers).....	18	18
Visits, with respect to:		
Prisoners of war.....	206, 207	81, 82
Protected persons.....	350, 446	136, 163
National Red Cross societies, status of personnel.....	69	30
Prisoners of war status of medical personnel.....	69	30
Protected Persons, right to complain.....	269	107
Relief activities..... 148, 149, 151, 315, 316, 318, 388, 390, 392		57, 58, 123, 124, 125, 147, 148
Red Lion and Sun (see also Red Cross—emblem).....	238, 264	95, 105
Red Shield of David (see also Red Cross—emblem).....	238, 264	95, 105
Refugees.....	283	111
Relief shipments (see also Civilians, Internees).....	148-151-315	57, 123
Relief Societies (See Aid Societies; Red Cross)		
Religion:		
Religious activities and freedoms (see under Aliens; Ci- vilians; Internees, Prisoners of war; and Occupied territory.)		
Religious buildings, protection.....	45-47, 405	21, 152
Religious personnel (see also Chaplains.)		
Capture, retention or return by an enemy....	111, 230-232	44, 90
Emblem of protection.....	240	95
Security measures with respect to.....	231	91
Remedies Available for Violation of International Law....	495-511	176
Repatriation (See Occupied territory; Prisoners of war, Wounded and sick.)		

	Paragraph	Page
Representatives of:		
Belligerents ( <i>See</i> Parliamentaries.)		
Internees ( <i>See</i> Internees.)		
Neutral states ( <i>See</i> Neutral Powers—diplomatic agents.)		
Prisoners of war ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war.)		
Red Cross ( <i>See</i> Red Cross.)		
Reprisals.....	495, 497	176, 177
Requisitions ( <i>See</i> occupied territory.)		
Coercion, use of.....	417	154
Compensation.....	416	154
Enforcement.....	417	154
Food and medical supplies.....	413-416	154
Hospitals.....	414-416	154
Labor and other services.....	418-424	154
Method of requisitioning.....	412, 415	153, 154
Property.....	412	153
Reservations to 1949 Geneva Convention.....	245	97
Retained Personnel, medical and spiritual religious personnel	67, 68, 230-232	28, 29, 90
Retaliation ( <i>See</i> Reprisals.)		
Revengeful acts prohibited.....	497	177
Rewards for captured or killed enemy.....	31	17
Rockets, use.....	34	18
Rules of War ( <i>See</i> Laws of War.)		
Ruses of war.....	50-55	22
Sabotage ( <i>see under</i> Espionage, Sabotage, and Treason)		
Safe-conducts ( <i>see also</i> Passports, military).....	454-456	165
Distinguished from passports.....	455-456	166
Safety Zones ( <i>see also</i> Hospital zones; Neutralised zones).....	253	101
Safeguards.....	454, 457	165, 166
Sanitation:		
Internees.....	292	113
Prisoner of war camps.....	106	42
Science, buildings devoted to, protection.....	45, 46	21
Security measures ( <i>See</i> Aliens; Civilians; Occupied territory; Prisoners of war; Property; Religion—religious personnel.)		
Segregation ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war. <i>see also</i> Women)		
Shipments to prisoners of war.....	148	57
Relief shipments ( <i>see under</i> Relief shipments)		
Shipwrecked belligerents, detention by neutrals.....	547	191
Sick and wounded ( <i>See</i> Wounded and sick.)		
Sieges ( <i>See</i> Besieged places.)		
Signs, to distinguish protected buildings, etc.....	45, 46	21
Sources of law.....	4	4
Special agreements with respect to:		
Civilians, protection.....	250	100
Hospital and safety zones.....	224, 253	89, 101
Neutralised zones.....	254	101
Prisoners of war.....	86	35
Wounded and sick.....	212	84
Spies ( <i>See</i> Espionage, Sabotage, and Treason )		
Stratagems ( <i>see also</i> Prohibited Acts).....	48-55	22
Subjugation, distinguished from occupation ( <i>see also</i> Puppet governments).....	353	138

	Paragraph	Page
Submarine cables.....	411	158
Subordinates, responsibility for acts.....	501	178
Summary executions ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war.)		
Superior orders, no deference to war crimes.....	509	182
Supplies, requisition ( <i>See</i> Requisitions, above.)		
Surrender ( <i>see also</i> Capitulation; White flag).....	470, 478	169, 172
Surrendered places.....	41	19
Suspension of arms ( <i>see also</i> Armistice).....	485	178
<b>Taxes (<i>see</i> Occupied territory--taxes.)</b>		
<b>Telegraph and telephone:</b>		
In neutral territory.....	528-531	187
In occupied territory.....	377	144
Torture, forbidden ( <i>See</i> Civilians; Prisoners of war.)		
Transfers ( <i>See</i> Internees; Prisoners of war and occupied territory.)		
<b>Transit Prisoner of War Camps (<i>See</i> Prisoners of war.)</b>		
<b>Transportation:</b>		
In occupied territory.....	378	144
Wounded and sick.....	260-261	104
Travel, occupied territory.....	454-456	165
Treachery, forbidden.....	50, 493	22, 175
Treason ( <i>See</i> Espionage, Sabotage, and Treason)		
Treaties, generally ( <i>see also</i> Geneva Conventions, Hague Conventions).....	4, 5, 7	4, 6
Trials ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war; Occupied territory; War crimes.)		
Truce ( <i>See</i> Armistice.)		
Undefended places, attacks or bombardment.....	39, 40, 45, 46	19, 21
Uniform, necessity for status as belligerent.....	74	31
<b>Uniform of enemy:</b>		
Improper use.....	52	23
Proper use.....	54	23
United Nations.....	513	15, 184
United States Reservations to 1949 Geneva Conventions.....	245	97
Universal Postal Conventions.....	150	58
Unwritten rules of land warfare.....	4, 6-9, 11	4, 6, 9
Violations of the laws of war ( <i>see also</i> War crimes.).....	495-497	176
Volunteer aid societies ( <i>See</i> Aid Societies; <i>see also</i> Red Cross)		
Volunteer corps of belligerents.....	61, 64, 74	25, 27, 31
Volunteers to care for wounded and sick.....	219	87
<b>War:</b>		
Declaration.....	9, 20, 21, 23, 24	8, 15, 16
Definition.....	8	7
Laws of ( <i>See</i> Laws of war.)		
War crimes.....	495, 498-511	176, 178
Acts which constitute.....	494, 499, 502, 504	175, 178, 179, 180
Armistice, violation.....	494	175
Attempts.....	500	178
Collective punishment ( <i>see this title</i> --Punishment.)		
Complicity.....	500	178
Conspiracy.....	500	178

	Paragraph	Page
Death penalty ( <i>see this title—Punishment.</i> )		
Defenses.....	509-511	182
Definition ( <i>see also this title—Acts which constitute.</i> )..	499	178
Execution, without trial, forbidden.....	504	180
Geneva conventions, grave breaches.....	502, 503, 506	179, 181
Government officials.....	501, 510	178, 183
Hostages, taking of.....	502	179
Incitement.....	500	178
Individual responsibility.....	498	178
International law, violations.....	498	178
Jurisdiction.....	13, 505, 507	10, 180, 182
Laws applicable.....	505, 507	180, 182
Mitigation because of superior orders.....	509	182
National law no defense.....	511	183
Officials of the government.....	501, 510	178, 183
Orders of superiors.....	509	182
Prisoners of war, liability.....	161, 163	63
Punishment:		
Amount.....	508	182
Collective punishment prohibited.....	508	182
Corporal punishment prohibited.....	508	182
Death penalty.....	508	182
Responsibilities.....	506	181
Remedial action other than punishment.....	495	176
Subordinates, responsibility for acts.....	501	178
Superior officers, responsibility for acts of subordinates..	501	178
Superior orders.....	509	182
Suppression.....	506	181
Trials.....	163, 505, 507	63, 180, 182
War Criminals ( <i>See War crimes.</i> )		
Warfare ( <i>See Hostilities; Bacteriological warfare.</i> )		
War treason ( <i>See Espionage, sabotage, and treason.</i> )		
Weapons:		
Atomic.....	35	18
Bullets, certain types prohibited.....	34	18
Causing unnecessary injury, forbidden.....	34	18
Gases, chemicals and bacteriological warfare.....	38	18
Grenades, use authorized.....	34	18
Medical units and personnel, authority to use.....	223	88
Poisons.....	37	18
Prisoners of war, use against.....	118	46
Rockets.....	34	18
Suspension of arms.....	485	173
Use of fire.....	36	18
White Flag, use of.....	53, 458, 460, 467, 504	23, 167, 169, 180
Wills:		
Internees.....	320, 336	126, 131
Prisoners of war.....	201	78
Women ( <i>see under Aliens; Internees; Prisoners of war and occupied territory.</i> )		

	Paragraph	Page
Workers ( <i>See</i> Internees—labor; Occupied territory; labor; Prisoners of war—labor).		
Wounded and sick ( <i>see also</i> Prisoners of war; Red Cross).....	208-245	83
Abandoned, medical personnel to be left with.....	215	84
American National Red Cross ( <i>see under</i> Red Cross.)		
Arm and ammunition.....	223	88
Bombardments and sieges, spared in.....	45, 209, 220, 222-224	21, 83, 87, 88
Captured, status as prisoners of war.....	208	83
Care and treatment.....	215, 216, 219	84, 87
Casualties, search and removal.....	216	85
Civilians ( <i>See</i> Civilians—wounded and sick.)		
Coastal rescue craft.....	209	33
Convoys.....	539-544	189
Death.....	236-237, 260, 261	93, 104
Defense ( <i>see this title</i> —Protection.....)	217, 218	85, 86
Detention in neutral territory.....	542-544	190
Emblems, use.....	238-245	95
Evacuation.....	256	102
Examination by medical commissions.....	191, 192	74
Exchange of wounded and sick.....	216	85
Geneva Conventions, execution of.....	214	84
Graves Registration Service.....	218	86
Hospitals ( <i>See</i> Medical units )		
Hospital ships.....	209	83
Hospital zones.....	224	89
Humane treatment.....	215, 216	84, 85
Identification.....	217	85
Ill-treatment.....	216	85
Information to be exchanged.....	217	85
Inhabitants may be asked to care for.....	219	87
Internment in neutral state.....	542	190
Medical personnel ( <i>See</i> Medical personnel.)		
Medical units ( <i>See</i> Medical units )		
Money and personal effects.....	217	85
Neutral territory:		
Accommodation.....	188, 189, 546	73, 191
Detention.....	542-544	190
Entrance into, rules governing.....	539, 541, 544	189, 190
Internment.....	542	190
Neutral ports of entry.....	544	190
Passage through.....	539-542	189
Neutral Powers, duties toward ( <i>see also this title</i> —Neutral territory.).....	210, 541	83, 190
Neutral ships, transportation on.....	544	190
Personal effects.....	217	85
Prisoners of War ( <i>See</i> Prisoners of war—wounded and sick.)		
Protected persons.....	208	83
Protection.....	211, 215	84
Records regarding Red Cross ( <i>See</i> Red Cross.).....	217	85
Repatriation.....	188, 189, 193, 195	73, 75
Reprisals prohibited.....	213	84
Rescue craft.....	209	83

	<i>Paragraph</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Defense—Continued</b>		
Rights, non-renunciation.....	213	84
Robbery and ill-treatment, protection from.....	215, 216	84, 85
Shipwrecked or at sea.....	209	83
Special agreements with respect to.....	212	84
Transfers.....	123	47
Transportation, vehicles used.....	236-237	98
Voluntary care may be requested.....	219	87
Weapons taken from.....	223	88

[AG 385 (10 May 56)]

By Order of *Wilber M. Brucker*, Secretary of the Army:

**MAXWELL D. TAYLOR,**  
*General, United States Army,*  
*Chief of Staff.*

Official:

**JOHN A. KLEIN,**  
*Major General, United States Army,*  
*The Adjutant General*

Distribution

*Active Army*

Gen Staff, DA (5)  
SS, DA(2) except TJAG(300)  
Tec Svc DA (5)  
Admn & Tec Svc Bd (1)  
Hq CONARC (15)  
CONARC Bd (1)  
Army AA Comd (5)  
OS Maj Comd (50)  
OS Base Comd (10)  
Log Comd (10)  
MDW (15)  
Corps (5)  
Div (10)  
Brig (5)  
Regt/Gp (5)  
Bn (3) except Sep Bn (5)  
Co (2)  
Ft & Cp (8)  
USMA (50)  
Gen & Br Svc Sch (10)  
PMST (2)  
Gen Depots (3)

NG State AG (3).

USAR None

For explanation of abbreviations used, see SR 320-50-1

Sup Sec. Gen Depots (2)  
Depots (2)  
AH (5)  
Tag Cen (10)  
Pers Cen (5)  
Reception Sta (3)  
Trans Terminal Comd (10)  
PG (3)  
Arsenals (1)  
DB (5)  
Cruit Dist (1)  
Cruit Main Sta (1)  
Disp (1)  
FOUSA (1)  
Div Engr (1)  
Engr Dist (2)  
Mil Dist (2)  
Proc Dist (1)  
MAAG (2)  
Mil Man (1)  
ARMA (1)